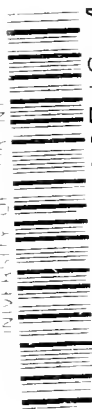


UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



3 1761 01530718 4



















# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

FOR THE USE OF  
CONTINENTAL, ESPECIALLY DUTCH, STUDENTS,

BY

H. POUTSMA,

*sometime English Master in the Municipal "Gymnasium", Amsterdam.*



## PART II THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

### SECTION II, THE VERB AND THE PARTICLES.





## P R E F A C E.

---

Although the compiling of this Grammar has throughout been a labour of love, I have no hesitation in saying that I feel greatly relieved now that it has been completed, and the strain of many a long year of strenuous work has been removed. Whoever attempts to bring a knotty and controverted problem, of idiom or grammar to clearness, i. e. into a state in which it can be submitted to competent opinion in all or most of its bearings, will find that he has engaged in an undertaking of unlooked-for difficulty, tasking his energies in no common degree and engrossing the best part of his leisure time. Many results giving satisfaction for the moment will prove to require re-consideration on conflicting evidence turning up, often from undreamt-of sources. This not seldom means that the whole ingeniously constructed fabric has to be pulled down and to be rebuilt, in which, indeed, the collected materials can mostly be turned to excellent account, but have to undergo a thorough re-arrangement. Such at least has been my own experience. I have been fain to submit many portions of this grammar to repeated rehandlings, and not a few, even in their present shape, give me but moderate satisfaction. Imperfect as I know my work to be, I take comfort from the thought that I may have stimulated the younger generation of students to an assiduous effort at illumining some of the innumerable problems of the language and investigating its bewildering usages. I flatter myself that I have, at least, given them some hints as to the way in which grammatical subjects may be handled.

It has been my constant endeavour to arrive at facts from the materials at my disposal. I have, indeed, made occasional attempts to account for these facts on psychological, logical or historical grounds, but in the majority of cases I have contented myself with ascertaining the actual forms of speech, and marshalling them in an orderly and methodical way. There is, in my opinion, little use in enquiring into the 'why' until the 'how' has been firmly established.

The English I have especially drawn within the sphere of my investigations is, as the title of my book indicates, that of the last 150 or 200 years, during which the language has undergone but few striking changes. I have, indeed, repeatedly traced the growth of an idiom to the days of Shakespeare, and occasionally to earlier times, but my excursions into the domain of Middle or Old English have been few and far between. The reason is that my official duties have never allowed me to penetrate deeply into these fields of the language. What references there are to the older forms of speech are mostly based on the results obtained by other scholars.

All along I have striven to give adequate details as to the place of the quotations used, but, unfortunately through neglect or haste, I have in some few cases been unable to do so. This applies especially to those which I collected in the early part of my career, when I had no thought of committing my observations to the press. The works quoted from are not, one and all, original editions. Some, especially those of the earlier periods, give, I regret to say, the text in modernized spelling. Thus also my numerous quotations from the Scriptures are not drawn from the Authorized Version of the year 1611, but from the Oxford Bible for Teachers. I am aware that quoting from modernized texts detracts from the value of my book, which makes some pretensions to rest on a scientific basis; but lack of means and leisure have sometimes made it impossible for me to procure costly editions or to consult them in libraries. Not a few of the quotations have been taken from newspapers, chiefly the weekly editions of the Times, the Westminster Gazette, and the Manchester Guardian, which seem to me, although as a foreigner I am not, perhaps, qualified to give an opinion, to contain many specimens of what may be regarded as Standard English of the present day.

Some people may complain of my book having assumed inordinate dimensions. But I can honestly say that I have not seen my way to make it shorter without defeating its object, i. e. to give a detailed and adequately documented description of the innumerable niceties of speech that will press themselves upon the attention of any serious student, and ask for set discussion. Nor should it be forgotten that the great bulk of the work is in large measure due to the numerous quotations with which I have thought it necessary to support my views. It is these quotations which, after all, may prove to be of some permanent value, even when the statements they are meant to

support have been found to be fallacious. I may mention here the curious fact that I have sometimes been questioned why I had not treated a given subject at greater length, and in fuller detail than I have done. I might have considerably reduced the size of my book if I had strictly confined myself to grammar proper, and rigidly discarded everything that may be reckoned to belong to the department of lexicography. But, apart from the fact that it is exceedingly difficult to delimit the two departments, this would have materially diminished the usefulness of my book, which, before everything, aims at giving practical instruction.

I have, I think, successfully withstood the temptation of drawing other languages of which I have any knowledge within the sphere of my observations. When I have occasionally done so, it was because the nature of the subject made this practically unavoidable. Although an ardent advocate of spelling reform in my country, I have used the orthodox spelling of Dutch in my book, simply because, when I began writing it, the movement towards modernizing Dutch spelling was still in its infancy, and had not yet found the numerous advocates in intellectual circles which it has to-day.

Not a few of the subjects discussed in the present volume have also been dealt with in earlier volumes of this grammar. In the text I have been careful to make due reference to the places where additional illustration or supplementary information may be found. I am aware that in discussing certain subjects more than once, I have laid myself open to the charge of unduly repeating myself, but it should not be forgotten that many subjects lend themselves to discussion from different points of view and, consequently, require treatment more than once. Some parts contained in the present volume may be regarded as rather extensive abstracts of separate treatises which I have committed to the press in the last few years. It is hardly necessary to say that in the framework of the whole work they could not very well be omitted. The numbering of the sections is practically the same, so that students will have little difficulty in turning up the pages where they may find fuller detail and ampler illustration.

In the full description of the works quoted from, which is appended to the Grammar, I have not thought it necessary to mention the date of publication. Apart from the fact that it would in many cases involve an inordinate expense of leisure to ascertain the exact time

at which the work in question first saw the light, the student for whom my book is intended receives sufficient information as to the period of the publication from the name of the book and its writer. I have also abstained, in most cases, from naming the place of issue, it being understood that the publishing house is established in London, unless otherwise indicated, in which case the letter T stands for the well-known firm of Tauchnitz in Leipzig.

As to the grammars and grammatical treatises which I have consulted with more or less attention, I have felt obliged to confine myself to enumerating only such as have appeared separately. The numberless articles bearing on my subject, contained in the files of *Anglia*, *Englische Studien*, *Herrig's Archiv*, *English Studies*, *Neophilologus*, *De Drie Talen*, *Taalstudie*, and a few other periodicals, have, accordingly, been excluded from my "Bibliography." Important as I have found some of them to be, I have not seen my way to spare room for the almost endless list. As in the course of my expositions I have constantly made a point of referring to other works dealing with the subjects discussed, this omission will not, it is hoped, be regarded as a serious neglect of duty. It is almost needless for me to acknowledge the great obligations I owe to that wonderful monument of English scholarship, the *Oxford English Dictionary*, without which any detailed grammatical work that claims to be scientific can hardly be satisfactorily written. Also A. Schmidt's invaluable *Shakespeare Lexicon*, I need hardly say, has been useful in many ways. Some debt I owe, too, to the *Bible Word-Book*, written by W. A. Wright and published by Macmillan & Co. in 1884.

As to the copious descriptive index which is appended to this volume, I have only to say that I am rather sanguine that it will satisfy all reasonable demands. The courteous reader will surely not take it amiss that in many descriptions accuracy has had to give way to brevity.

As the present volume was passing through the press I have had the inestimable privilege of having it commented on by my friend, the eminent grammarian, Dr. E. KRUISINGA. With untiring patience and unflagging interest he has furnished the proof-sheets with numerous marginal notes calling my attention to what seemed to him inadequate, inaccurate or wrong. At the same time he has been at great pains to refer me to those sections in his own grammar, which had just left the press in a fourth edition, where I could find a fuller exposition



of his views. I regret to say that only a few (far too few) of his observations could be turned to account in the printing stage of my book. Most of them, indeed, I have to regard as meant for my private instruction. I have great pleasure in stating that I have largely profited by his singular acumen, wide reading and profound knowledge of the older stages of the language. He may rest assured that I shall hold his disinterested help in thankful remembrance as long as memory lasts.

I have had no assistance in correcting the scribal errors and printing mistakes which in a work like the present with its large variety of types, which had to be set up by a compositor 'not to the manner born', are apt to 'come not single spies, but in battalions'. I have, therefore, to address an urgent appeal to the 'gentle reader' to use some of his inborn forbearance, if he should be annoyed by any considerable number. If blame he must, let him lay the blame at the door of the writer, not at that of the compositor, who through all the weary pages of this bulky volume has taken laudable pains to turn my trying manuscript into print to the best of his ability.

Last, but not least, my sincere thanks are due to the firm of P. NOORDHOFF for their generous readiness to bring out my voluminous work, which is no small venture in these days of universal distress, and cannot be expected to yield any worldly profit to the publisher.

In conclusion I wish to say that any criticisms tending to ameliorate a future edition, should any ever be called for, will be gratefully accepted.

H. POUTSMA.

AMSTERDAM, January 1926.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER XLV.	
Introductory Survey . . . . .	3
CHAPTER XLVI.	
Transitive and Intransitive . . . . .	43
CHAPTER XLVII.	
The Passive Voice . . . . .	91
CHAPTER XLVIII.	
The Middle or Reflective Voice . . . . .	141
CHAPTER XLIX.	
Mood . . . . .	159
CHAPTER L.	
Tense . . . . .	203
CHAPTER LI.	
Aspect . . . . .	285
CHAPTER LII.	
The Expanded Form of the English Verb . . . . .	315
CHAPTER LIII.	
Variable Applicability of the Predicate . . . . .	349
CHAPTER LIV.	
Analysis of the Predicate into a Connective and a Significant Part . . . . .	385
CHAPTER LV.	
The Infinitive . . . . .	401
CHAPTER LVI.	
The Gerund . . . . .	465
CHAPTER LVII.	
The Participles . . . . .	515
CHAPTER LVIII.	
Conjugation . . . . .	565
CHAPTER LIX.	
Adverbs . . . . .	605
CHAPTER LX.	
Prepositions . . . . .	707
CHAPTER LXI.	
Conjunctions . . . . .	813
CHAPTER LXII.	
Interjections . . . . .	827

---

# THE VERB.





## CHAPTER XLV.

---

### INTRODUCTORY SURVEY.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Definition of Predication and Predicate . . . . .	1
Variable applicability of the Predicate . . . . .	2
Verbal and Nominal Predicates . . . . .	3—4
Grammatical, Logical and Psychological Subject. Impersonal and Quasi-impersonal Predicates . . . . .	5
Person and Number of the Verb . . . . .	6
Tense of the Verb . . . . .	7
Mood of the Verb . . . . .	8
Voice of the Verb . . . . .	9
Aspect of the Verb . . . . .	10
Inflection . . . . .	11
Auxiliaries . . . . .	12
Verbs of Incomplete Predication . . . . .	13—14
Analytical Character of English . . . . .	15
Verbs divided according to their meaning . . . . .	16
Verbs divided into objective and subjective, transitive and intransitive verbs . . . . .	17—25
Verbs denoting accessory circumstances . . . . .	26
Nominal Predicates, Adverbs, Prepositional Phrases and Prepositions requiring a Complement . . . . .	27
Verbs compared with Nouns of Action . . . . .	28
Verbals (Infinitive, Gerund and Participles) . . . . .	29

---



1. A verb is a word by means of which an action, state or quality is predicated of a person or thing, or a number of persons or things. As a general term for the action, state or quality predicated the term *predication* may be used. The word(s) expressing the predication may be called the *predicate*.
2. Many predicates are capable of a variety of applications consisting in the fact that the participants in the predication they indicate may be represented to be concerned in it in different ways, as appears from their being mentioned in different elements of the sentence. The result is that these predicates may be furnished with subjects, objects or other adjuncts standing for heterogeneous notions. Thus we say not only *This undertaking succeeded (with him)*, but also *He succeeded in this undertaking*; not only *Our tea ran short (with us)*, but also *We ran short of tea*; not only *The nurse is in charge of the child*, but also *The child is in charge of the nurse*; not only *He heaped a profusion of boiled beef upon my plate*, but also *He heaped my plate with a profusion of boiled beef*. For detailed discussion see Ch. LIII.
3. The predication is effected either by the verb itself, as in *The boy speaks*, or by a verb together with a nominal or nominal equivalent, as in *The boy is asleep*, *The boy is an office-clerk*, *The boy is to blame*, *The boy is at home*. We may, accordingly, distinguish verbal and nominal predicates.
4. a) Verbs which are joined with a nominal or nominal equivalent to effect a predication are called *copulas*. Copulas are of three kinds, i. e. they indicate that a person or thing
  - 1) is in a certain state or has a certain quality, e. g.: *He is idle*, *He is lazy*;
  - 2) continues to be in a certain state or continues to have a certain quality, e. g.: *He remains hungry*, *He continues poor*;
  - 3) gets into a certain state or assumes a certain quality, e. g.: *He gets sleepy*, *He gets lazy*.

The verb *to be*, when used as a copula, does not express any activity; may, indeed, be said to be devoid of all meaning, when connected with an adjective or noun; thus in *John is happy*, *John is a soldier*. When followed by an adverbial adjunct, it implies some faint notion of activity approaching to that which is more explicitly expressed by some such

verb as *to lie, to stand, to sit, to rest*, etc. Thus in *My bed is (stands) close to the wall, The book is (lies) on the table*.

Also in connexion with an infinitive in such sentences as *He is to blame, It was not to be endured*, some faint meaning clings to the verb *to be*, corresponding, as the case may be, to that of a weak *ought* (or *must*) or *can*.

The notion of an obligation or compulsion incumbent on the subject is quite distinct in other combinations of *to be* with an infinitive, such as are found in *You are to give this to John, The life that is to come, She is to be married next week*, etc., discussed in Ch. I, 29—31. In these the verb *to be* can, therefore, hardly be apprehended as a mere copula, although it must be admitted that no strict line of demarcation can be drawn between the two functions of *to be* here referred to. For further details see Ch. LV, 71.

All the other copulas express dimmed forms of activity, approaching more or less closely to those which are indicated by these verbs in their original applications. For detailed discussion and illustration of the verbs which may do duty as copulas see Ch. I, 2—12. Compare also SWEET, N. E. Gr. § 263, where the term link-word is, however, used in a wider application.

b) Also the verbs *to seem* and *to appear* are mostly included among the copulas. These verbs, however, although no doubt effecting the connexion between the subject and the nominal, express a purely adverbial notion, indicating as they do certain attitudes of uncertainty on the part of the speaker with regard to the predication. The fact is that in such a sentence as *He seems (or appears) happy* the meaningless *to be* may be assumed to be understood: it is, indeed, oftener than not added to the verb, the above sentence becoming *He seems (or appears) to be happy*.

This twofold form may, it is true, also be observed in sentences with *to get, to grow* and some other verbs which do duty as copulas (Ch. I, 10), but it should be remembered that these verbs, in their function of copulas, are employed in a highly faded meaning, while *to seem* and *to appear* lose none of their semantic significance when, with or without *to be*, they are connected with a nominal.

Again, while such a sentence as *He seems (or appears) to be happy* admits of being expanded into *It seems (or appears) that he is happy*, which distinctly brings out the full meaning of the verbs in question (Ch. II, 33), no such expansion is possible with sentences containing *to get, to grow*, or any of the other quasi-copulas referred to above (Ch. I, 33). Compare also 12, d, 2.

In passing it may be observed that the expanded and the contracted construction are not always identical in meaning, as they are in the above pair of examples. Thus there is an appreciable difference in meaning between *It seemed that she had little cause for anxiety* (MAC., Fred., 665b) and the corresponding contracted form *She seemed to*

*have little cause for anxiety.* The latter implies that the phenomena giving rise to the statement have been observed in the person referred to, the former that they have been perceived in facts lying outside this person. The former denies the existence of alarming symptoms, the latter does not; the former is objective, the latter subjective.

c) Even less justifiable is the practice followed in some Latin Grammars of reckoning such passives as *videri*, *appellari*, *vocari*, etc. among the copulas, these verbs owing their connexion with a nominal in the nominative merely to the fact that the double accusative with which they are construed when used actively, has been turned into a double nominative when used passively. Compare 13, *b*.

5. a) The person or thing from which the predication is considered to originate is called its subject. In some cases this person or thing is not denoted by the word(-group) which determines the form of the predicate; in other words the logical subject, i. e. the subject of the predication, does not always correspond to the grammatical subject, i. e. the word(-group) which determines the form of the predicate. A predicate whose subject does not correspond to the subject of the predication may be called *illogical*.

Illogical predicates mostly stand in what is called the passive voice of the verb, as in *He was killed in action*. For detailed discussion see Ch. XLVII. But also a verb in the active voice may constitute an illogical predicate; thus in *The book sells well*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 249. Further details in Ch. XLVI, 32 ff. Another kind of illogical predicate may be seen in sentences in which an intransitive or a transitive verb is used in a causative meaning, as in:

He walked me into the parlour. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23*b*.

He led the clerks a dire life in the city. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VII, 73. (The O. E. D., s.v. *lead*, 7, has another explanation.)

Further details in Ch. XLV, 37 ff.

By the side of the grammatical and logical subject we have to distinguish the psychological subject, i. e. the notion which is foremost in the speaker's thoughts, and which is, accordingly, the real theme of his communication or question. Thus in the following quotations the italicized words denote the psychological subject:

*The tongue* can no man tame; it is an unruly evil. Bible, James, III, 8.

Unto *the pure* all things are pure. Id., Titus, I, 15.

In no country that is called Roman Catholic has the Roman Catholic Church, during several generations, possessed so little authority as in *France*. MAC., *Hor. Walp.*, I, Ch. I, 48.

When not preceded by any qualifying adjective, *subject* is understood to stand for *grammatical subject* in the following discussions.

For the sake of brevity the unqualified word is occasionally used also for the thing indicated by it.

b) Sometimes a predication is mentioned without any originator being thought of. The predicate expressing it is then mostly furnished with a meaningless word by way of grammatical subject. The word which is used for this purpose in English is the indefinite pronoun *it*; the predicate of which it is the subject is said to be *impersonal*. The use of the meaningless subject serves at least this useful purpose that in principal sentences it helps to show, by its position, whether we have to deal with a statement or a question. Compare *It rained, It was very hot that day, It was ten o'clock* with *Did it rain? Was it hot that day? Was it ten o'clock?* In subordinate clauses it is without this power, its place being uniformly before the predicate. Compare *I told him that it rained* with *I asked him whether it rained*.

Impersonal predicates are capable of showing the distinctions of tense and mood. Naturally they can undergo no modification for person, number or voice (6). For further discussion of impersonal predicates see Ch. II, 2—9, where the meaningless subject is called *sham object*, as a rendering of the Dutch *loos onderwerp*. Compare also Ch. XL, 63.

Impersonal predicates should be distinguished from such as have for their subject the anticipating *it*, as in *It is necessary that he should exert himself, It took him a long time to write that letter*. Standing as it does for a well-defined notion, this *it* is not, accordingly, an indefinite, but a personal pronoun. In many connexions, however, the notion indicated by this *it* is far from distinct, so that it is not clearly distinguished from the indefinite *it*; thus in *It is ten hours since I had anything to eat, It is ten minutes' walk from here to the station*. The O. E. D., acknowledging the vagueness of *it* in such and some other connexions, describes it as *quasi-impersonal*. For details about the use of anticipating *it* see Ch. II, 10 ff. Constructions with the indefinite or quasi-impersonal *it* have been largely replaced by personal constructions, especially in the later stages of the language. For detailed discussion see Ch. LIII, 5 ff.

c) The imperative of a verb being used only in address, it is but natural that it mostly stands without a subject. For the discussion of the cases in which it is furnished with a subject see Ch. XLIX, 58.

d) The non-finite forms of the verb, i. e. the infinitive, the gerund and the participles, stand without any indication of the originator of the predication they express, when the latter is not thought of in connexion with any particular person(s) or thing(s). See also Ch. XVIII, 1; Ch. XIX, 1; Ch. XX, 1.

- i. It is more blessed *to give* than *to receive*.
- ii. *Playing* with fire is dangerous.
- iii. Humanly *speaking*, the patient is out of danger.
- iv. We will keep moving south, and *given* luck, we may fall in with Bassetti's relief column before many days. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of the Eagle*, I, Ch. V, 51.

6. Owing to the varied nature of the subject the verbal predicate or the copula of a nominal predicate may assume different forms, some of which are called its person and number. Thus in *I walk* the form of the verb differs from that in *thou walkest* and *he walks*, because in the first the subject denotes the speaker, in the second the person spoken to, and the third a person other than either the speaker or the person spoken to. Again the difference in the form of the verb in *he walks* and *they walk* is due to the fact that in the first the subject denotes one person, in the second a plurality of persons.

Some languages, such as Latin and Greek, show a greater variety of forms depending on the nature of the subject than English. Owing to the levelling process, which from early times has affected the whole of its accidence, it has even lost some distinctions of person and number which it possessed in its earliest stages. The distinctions of person and number require no further discussion in this place. For comments on concord as to number and person see Ch. XXVI.

7. The predicate is also, to a certain extent, capable of showing by a particular form, called its tense, the time-sphere to which the predication belongs. Thus in *I hear a noise* and *I heard a noise* the forms *hear* and *heard* represent the action of hearing as belonging, respectively, to the present and past time-sphere.

Like other Germanic languages, English has no special forms to represent a predication as belonging to a time-sphere subsequent to the moment of speaking or writing, or to a time-sphere subsequent to a moment in the past. certain verbs, especially *shall* and *will*, being employed to make up the deficiency. Nor does it possess separate forms to express the notion of an action or state having reached the stage of completion. This is done by the verbs *to have* and *to be*, the latter having fallen into disuse for this purpose in the latest English. The formation of the tenses and the conditions determining their use will be amply discussed in Ch. L.

8. a) Another source of variation in the form of the predicate is its capability of expressing the speaker's mental attitude regarding the fulfilment of the predication. The forms of the predicate which correspond to this attitude are called moods. In this grammar four moods are distinguished, viz.: the Indicative, the Subjunctive, the Conditional and the Imperative, severally

represented by such sentences as *I have read this book, Long live the King, It were well all that were forgot now* (SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. III, 34), *Leave the room!*

The Indicative mood often implies no particular attitude of the speaker and is, accordingly, often to be regarded as a neutral mood.

The subjunctive mood implies some psychical disposition (Dutch *gemoedstoestand*) besides the attitude of uncertainty regarding the fulfilment of the predication, such as volition, hope, fear, concession, etc. Thus the subjunctive in *Long live the King!* implies a wish or hope, that in *We will start to-morrow, though it rain cats and dogs* a concession.

It should be distinctly understood that the form of the verb in these two sentences implies a psychical disposition of the speaker, but does not express it. This is more or less unequivocally done by certain verbs, viz. *may, might, let, shall, should* or *would*, which are added to the abstract form of the verb, the infinitive, with which they form a kind of unit. It stands to reason that these verbs are often resorted to to make up the inadequacy of the mood-forms as linguistic expedients to express human thought and feeling. Thus *may attend* would express explicitly the notion of a wish, which is implicitly denoted by the subjunctive *attend* in *All happiness attend you and yours* (SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. XXIX, 293). Comparing the first with the second member in *Sit we down, And let us hear Bernardo speak* (SHAK., Hamlet, I, I, 34), we find that the hortative notion implied in the first is indicated by the imperative *let* in the second. Such a sentence as *I desire that she come back* (THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 170) admits of three variations, respectively with *may, shall* and *should*, indicating shades of volition which the mere subjunctive fails to express. See Ch. XLIX, 20—21.

The conditional, on the other hand, by choosing a preterite tense-form for what belongs to the present or future time-sphere, indicates, in a manner not to be mistaken, the unreal or fancied nature of the predication. Its most frequent periphrasis with *should* or *would*, found in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, does not go beyond that. Thus *It were well all that were forgot now* and *It would be well all that were forgot now*, bating the fact that they belong to different kinds of diction, are absolutely identical. In the protasis of a conditional or concessive sentence the periphrases with *should* and *were to* imply, indeed, secondary notions beyond that of irreality conveyed by the mood-form, but these notions are not perceptibly associated with the primary meanings of these verbs (XLIX, 40).

Combinations with *may, might, let, shall, should, would*, and *were to*



which serve as substitutes for the subjunctive or conditional proper, may be called periphrastic subjunctive or conditional respectively, as opposed to the mood-forms proper, which may be called the inflectional subjunctive or conditional.

b) The above verbs, and also *must* and *will* are, besides, often used, for a similar purpose, in combinations with infinitives for which there is no corresponding mood-form; thus in *The train may be late; Speak harshly to no soul whom you may meet, and stand by the word you shall speak* (KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, II, 112); *From whom should the letter come?* (SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, II, Ch. V, I, 111); *I must have been mistaken; This will be the Tower of London, I suppose* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2249). The term mood in the sense conveyed by the above definition, cannot be applied to these combinations. In this grammar they have, therefore, been discussed under another heading. See Ch. I, 16—27.

c) Some grammarians are for building a mood-system on what may be called an emotional basis, comprising under the term mood all the forms of the predicate, whether synthetical or analytical, by which the speaker may express his psychical disposition regarding the predication, thus not narrowing it, as is done in these pages, to the forms which are available to express whether its fulfilment is thought of as certain, uncertain, or only suppositional. It is clear that, the number of conceivable psychical dispositions being endless, this system, if consistently applied, would lead to the distinction of a practically countless number of moods. Thus there would be a mood of fear, hope, scorn, expectation, positiveness, doubt, hesitation, etc., etc., as expressed in such sentences *I fear (hope, scorn) to meet him, He expects to succeed, You did say this, It may rain to-morrow, I may assent to the proposal*, etc., etc.

It follows that in the mood-system which is offered in these pages there is, strictly speaking, no stringent occasion to distinguish an Imperative Mood. But the fact that in English, as in many other languages, the uncertainty of fulfilment incidental to a command or request is indicated by a special form of the predicate is sufficient justification for adopting it as a special mood.

DEUTSCHBEIN, in his stimulating *System der neuenglischen Syntax*, Ch. IX, has elaborated a detailed system on an emotional basis. He distinguishes four main moods, which he styles der *Kogitativus*, der *Optativus*, der *Voluntativus* and der *Expektativus*. The *Kogitativus* includes an Indicative, an Irrealis, a Potentialis and a Necessarius; the *Optativus* a Normal Optative, an Optative Irrealis, an Emphatic (*gesteigert*) Optative and a Permissive; the *Voluntativus* a Simple Voluntative, an Emphatic Voluntative, a Future

Voluntative and a Voluntative Irrealis; the Exspektativus a Simple Expectative, an Emphatic Expectative, a Dubitative, and an Expectative Irrealis. When it is borne in mind that in most of these subdivisions several shades are distinguished, it will be evident that the result is an exceedingly complicated and, accordingly, utterly unworkable system. Other grammarians, i. a. MASON (Eng. Gram., § 192), limit the number of moods to three, considering the conditional as a variety of the subjunctive. But seeing that these two forms of the predicate represent distinctly different mental attitudes and are rigidly distinguished in form, it seems unadvisable to merge the former into the latter.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2279) confines the term conditional to combinations with *should* or *would* which are not clearly futures, thus ignoring the identity in function of such forms as *were* and *should* (or *would*) *be* in sentences like *It were damnation | To think so base a thought* (SHAK., Merch., II, 7, 49) and *It would be damnation* etc. Nor does his definition of mood as given in his N. E. Gr., § 293: "By the moods of a verb we understand grammatical forms expressing different relations between subject and predicate" square with the definition given by the present writer. The function of the moods does not consist in expressing the relation between subject and predicate, but rather in denoting the speaker's attitude to that relation.

KRUISINGA also distinguishes four moods; i. e. besides the indicative the subjunctive (which in his system includes the conditional), and the imperative, he adopts an emphatic mood, which in speech is evidenced by a particularly strong stress of the finite verb of the predicate, and in the printed or written language by *to do* and sometimes by italicizing, as in *I do like this picture; I am an admirer of this picture*. See his Handbook<sup>3</sup>, § 222. It is hardly necessary to observe that such forms of the predicate fall under the definition of mood only so far as they serve to express emphatic assertion or negation and can hardly find a place in the mood-system of the present writer. Nor does DEUTSCHBEIN find room for this emphatic form of the predicate in his comprehensive scheme of moods, including it among the 'Aktionarten' of the verb.

d) The cases in which the subjunctive and conditional moods are used are by no means the same in different languages. Nor can it be said that a given language carries out its peculiar mood-system with rigid consistency. This can create small wonder when it is borne in mind,

1) that the mental attitude which might give rise to either of them naturally stands forth with unequal and variable distinctness with different speakers,

2) that the sentence often contains words or phrases marking these attitudes unequivocally, so that the use of special forms of the predicate for the same purpose will appear needless or even pleonastic (Ch. XLIX, 2, Obs. II; 15).

As to this last point we may call attention to such sentences as *God grant you become a braver man than he* (KINGSLEY, Westw.

Ho!, Ch. I, 7b) and *I tremble lest he be discovered* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2274), in which there is no call for the speaker to express his attitude with regard to the predication contained in the subordinate statement, either by mood-inflection or its periphrastic substitute, seeing that this attitude appears clearly from the preceding head-sentence. The first of the above examples shows at the same time that in the head-sentence the subjunctive or its periphrastic substitute is indispensable, because the sentence contains no other intimation of the speaker's attitude regarding its predication.

In these circumstances it is not to be wondered at that in not a few cases the use of the subjunctive in a given language appears to be a matter of mere convention, baffling all rational explanation.

e) As will appear in Chapter XLI, specially devoted to the subject, ordinary language has almost entirely discarded mood-inflection and even, to a large extent, its periphrastic substitute, in all cases where they are not needed, substituting for them the indicative, or rather the neutral mood.

f) The subjunctive is never used when the speaker's attitude of uncertainty towards the predication is denoted by an adverbial adjunct, such as *perhaps*, *possibly*, *peradventure*, etc., although *may* as an additional expression of this attitude is not seldom found together with one or other of these adjuncts. See Ch. I, 20, Obs. I.

9. Some languages, such as Latin and Greek, have special forms for certain illogical predicates (5). Largely coinciding with these, the Greek has, besides, a set of forms which serve the purpose of indicating the fact that the subject of the predication is also thought of as undergoing an action or, at least, as closely concerned in it in some way.

The particular form which a predicate assumes in virtue of the relation in which the person(s) or thing(s) indicated by the grammatical subject stand(s) to the predication is called its *genus* or *voice*, the latter being the ordinary term used in English grammars. We may, therefore, distinguish three genera or voices, i. e. the active, the passive and the middle voice, the term middle voice to be understood as a rendering of *medium* in Greek grammars, which is meant to indicate the fact that the form expresses a meaning that is intermediate between that of the active and the passive.

In English the meaning of the passive voice of the classical languages is normally expressed by a combination consisting of the verb *to be* and the past participle, the combination itself being also loosely called the passive voice of the verb concerned. In a similar function we sometimes meet with *to become*, *to get*, and

*to grow*, as in *to become Christianised*, *to get married*, *to grow startled*, which, as we shall see in Ch. XLVII, 7 f, imply some secondary notion besides that of passivity. Also certain transitive verbs admit of being used in a passive meaning without the aid of any additional verb; thus in such a sentence as *The book sells well* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 249). For further discussion see Ch. XLVI, 32 f.

The meaning of the Greek medium is normally expressed in English by aid of reflexive or, less frequently, reciprocal pronouns. Thus *χρίω* = I anoint; *χρίομαι* = I anoint myself.

*ἀμυλλῶνται* = They contend with each other.

*παύω τὸν παῖδα ᾄδοντα* = I make the boy stop his singing; *παύομαι ᾄδων* = I cause myself to stop singing (or simply: I stop singing).

*ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῖς στρατιώταις σῖτον πορίζει* = The general procures his soldiers corn; *οἱ στρατιῶται σῖτον πορίζονται* = The soldiers procure themselves corn.

*ἀμύνω τῇ πατρίδι τοὺς πολέμιους* = I ward off the enemies from the country [i. e. my native country]; *ἀμύνομαι τοὺς πολέμιους* = I ward off the enemies from me.

The other functions of the medium may here be passed over in silence.

The term middle voice has found no acceptance in English grammar and will not, therefore, be used in the following pages. Verbs furnished with a reflexive pronoun will be simply called reflexive verbs.

As will be shown in Ch. XLVII and Ch. XLVIII, the reflexive or reciprocal pronoun is, for several reasons, apt to be omitted, the omission converting the verb into an intransitive. The discussions in the same chapters will at the same time bring out the fact that the notion underlying a passive verb often approaches closely to that of a reflexive or an intransitive verb.

10. Slavonic languages have special forms to denote different characters, mostly called aspects, of predications: i. e. one by which a predication is represented as consisting of a single act, the beginning and the end coinciding; one by which a predication is represented as consisting of a continuous succession of like acts; one by which a predication is represented as consisting of a succession of like acts indefinitely repeated. Thus according to DELBRÜCK (*Vergleichende Syntax der indogermanischen Sprache*, II, Ch. XVI), in Old Bulgarian *biti* = *to be in the act of striking*, *ubiti* = *to strike dead*, *bivati* = *to strike repeatedly*.

In English, as in other Germanic languages, the various aspects

are partly implied in the meaning of the predication, partly indicated by words modifying its meaning, partly suggested by the context of the sentence. Thus *to arrive* expresses a momentaneous act, *to stay* one of some measurable duration, *to pant* one of a succession of like acts indefinitely repeated. Again the addition of the adverb *down* distinctly changes the aspect of the predication indicated by *to lie*. Compare *He lay on the floor* with *He lay down on the floor*. A similar duty is performed by *to get* when prefixed to such a verb as *to know*, as will appear from a comparison of *I knew that man* and *I got to know that man*. We see a change of aspect of the same description effected by the context alone in *She went to bed and slept instantly* (HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. I, 8), in which *slept* has the value of *went to sleep*, which, in its turn, might be given as an instance of a verb being used for the special purpose of indicating a changed aspect.

A detailed discussion of the various ways in which changes of aspect in a given predication may be denoted will be found in Ch. LI.

The so-called Expanded (or Progressive) Form of the verb, consisting of the verb *to be* + present participle, which the English language employs to particular advantage to mark unequivocally and emphatically the durative aspect of the predication, besides some interesting secondary notions, will be treated in a separate chapter. See Ch. LII.

11. The various forms which a predicate may assume in connexion with the above-mentioned accessory notions of person, number, tense, mood, voice and aspect are called its inflections.
12. Verbs which are used as substitutes for the inflections of tense, mood voice, or aspect are styled auxiliaries. We may, accordingly, distinguish auxiliaries of tense, mood, voice and aspect. From the preceding discussions it follows that in English the term auxiliary has not always the same value. Whereas in this language the auxiliaries of mood take the place of modal inflections actually existing in the language, assist in expressing notions which are not adequately denoted by the latter and, accordingly, can rightly lay claim to the term auxiliary in the strict sense of the word, the other auxiliaries have no such title and owe their denomination only to the fact that their office is the same as that which is held by inflections in some cognate language or languages, with which English is compared.

The auxiliaries of the subjunctive mood are distinguished from the other auxiliaries in another respect. Whereas the latter are merely matter-of-fact words, the auxiliaries of the subjunctive mood are distinctly emotional; i. e. they express not only that

by taking account of certain circumstances the speaker has come to a conclusion as to the possible fulfilment of an action or state, but also how he is disposed towards it (8, *a*).

All auxiliaries are verbs whose original meaning is weakened. The weakening appears in various degrees. Sometimes the original meaning may be said to be practically obliterated, as in the case of *to have* when used to form the perfect tenses, or *to be* when assisting in the formation of the passive voice; sometimes it stands forth with considerable clearness, as may be observed in the auxiliaries of the subjunctive mood. In *shall* and *will* when used to form the future tenses there is sometimes hardly any trace of their original meaning, but, as we shall see in Ch. L, 19 ff, the various functions of these verbs often overlap and shade off into each other in various degrees.

Considering the highly weakened meaning in which *to go* appears in such a sentence as *I am afraid it is going to rain*, which differs but slightly from *I am afraid it will rain*, we are justified in calling *to be going* an auxiliary phrase.

Many grammarians extend the term auxiliaries to other verbs than the above, including, besides, among them all such verbs as are joined to an infinitive to form a kind of unit with it; accordingly the finite verbs used in such sentences as *I do not understand this*, *Do you understand this?* *I do understand this*. *I can (will, must, have to, am to, should, ought to; dare not, need not) do this*; *You may go now*; *Thou shalt not steal*. They do so mainly on the strength of the fact that, apart from this coalescing with the following infinitive, they find in them some of the grammatical features by which the indubitable auxiliaries of mood are distinguished, i.e. their government of an infinitive without *to*, their liability of dropping the infinitive in certain sentences such as *Can you come?* *Yes I can* (Ch. XXXII, 37), their rejection of the construction with *to do*. A little reflection will show that this leads to serious inconsistencies. Thus it may be asked why should *to dare* and *to need* be regarded as auxiliaries, although they do not discard the infinitive in the same kind of sentences as *can*, *will*, etc.; and why should they only be accounted auxiliaries when rejecting *to* before the infinitive and the construction with *to do*?

From a semantic point of view the inclusion of the above verbs among the auxiliaries seems even less justifiable. Why, indeed, should *will* in *I will come to you to-morrow* be accounted an auxiliary and this name be denied to *to want*, *to wish*, *to desire* in the same connexion? As to their meaning these verbs differ only in that they denote different shades of a movement of the human will. Add to this that they are alike in not giving complete sense by themselves and, accordingly, form a kind of unit with the following infinitive.

Nobody can for a moment entertain the notion that such verbs as *can*, *will*, etc. in the application referred to serve the same purpose as the indubitable modal auxiliaries, i.e. that of expressing the speaker's

attitude of uncertainty regarding the fulfilment of the predication. In such a sentence as *I can come to you to-morrow* the coming is, of course, understood to be uncertain, as every happening belonging to the future time-sphere is understood to be uncertain, but this would equally apply to *I hope to come to you to-morrow*, and a host of similar sentences. And nobody has ever thought of calling *to hope* a modal auxiliary. No uncertainty, be it observed, is ascribed to the capability denoted by *can*, any more than to the hoping indicated by *hope*. This might, of course, be done by the addition of a modal adverb, such as *perhaps*, or a modal verb (not a modal auxiliary), such as *may*: *I can, perhaps, come to you to-morrow; I may be able to come to you to-morrow*.

The O. E. D. distinguishes "auxiliaries of periphrasis, which assist in expressing the interrogative, negative, and emphatic forms of speech, viz. *do (did)*; auxiliaries of tense, *have, be, shall, will*; of mood, *may, should, would*; of voice, *be*; of predication (i.e. verbs of incomplete predication which require a verbal complement), *can, must, ought, need, also shall, will, may*, when not auxiliaries of tense or mood".

Thus also SPEYER (Lat. *Spraakkunst*<sup>2</sup>, § 585) includes *posse, velle, solere, cœpisse, desinere, debere*, and similar verbs when connected with an infinitive, among the auxiliaries, arguing that *Possum facere (I can do)* is as much one notion as *faciam (I shall do)*.

Some grammarians widen the range of auxiliaries still further, reckoning among them the copulas *to be, to remain, to become*, etc., and all such verbs as through a weakening of meaning functionally approximate to copulas; some even go so far as to include such passives as *videri, appellari, existimari, haberi*, etc. (4).

But it seems needless to labour this subject any more. Suffice it to say that in this grammar the term auxiliary is rigidly employed in the strict sense defined above, which is practically the same as that attached to it by MÄTZN. (Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, I, 422) and MASON (Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, § 185). For a detailed exposition of the nature of the English subjunctive mood and the auxiliaries used as substitutes for it, see especially a pamphlet published separately by the last-mentioned grammarian, entitled *Remarks on the Subjunctive and the so-called Potential Mood*.

Only one thing more. It may be convenient to consider modal auxiliaries as a variety of modal verbs, the latter term being also applicable to verbs which, although not corresponding to modal inflections, also serve the purpose of denoting the speaker's attitude as to the fulfilment of a prospective action or state (8, b).

13. The copulas and the auxiliaries have been called verbs of incomplete predication, the former requiring a nominal (or nominal equivalent), the latter another verb in the shape of a participle or an infinitive to form the predicate. The term is, with more or less justice, also applicable to:

a) verbs which in their faded meaning approximate to copulas (Ch. I, 5—12).

The Baron *sate* thoughtful. LYTTON, *My Nov.*, II, X, Ch. XVIII, 226.

He *lived* happy, ever afterwards. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 391.

Miss Jessie *went* very white, then *flushed* scarlet. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 44.

The verbs *to live* and *to sit*, as used in the above examples, appear sufficiently faded in meaning to justify their being called quasi-copulas (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 264 styles them half-link verbs), i.e. as a variety of verbs of incomplete predication, and the adjectives by which they are followed as nominal parts of the predicate (called *predicaatsnomina* in Dutch grammars). But it will hardly do to extend these terms to the respective elements in such a sentence as *They went along singing*, as is done by MASON (*Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 391). In this sentence *to go along* has its full meaning, and *singing* hardly appears as an indispensable complement to it, being rather a predicative adnominal adjunct, a *bepaling van gesteldheid* of Dutch grammars. Compare also Ch. I, 12, Obs. IV.

b) verbs which are construed with a predicative adnominal adjunct of the second kind. (Ch. VI, 11—27). With some of these this construction is the usual, with others it is rather an occasional one. With all of them the adjunct appears as an indispensable complement.

He *believed* the man insane. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 397.

Much learning *makes* thee mad. Bible, Acts, XXVI, 24.

They *appointed* him a member of council at Madras. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (600b).

ii. One would have *guessed* him some ten years younger than the man beside him. MRS. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, I, Ch. I, 1a

The Lord *anointed* thee King over Israel. Bible, Sam., A, XV, 17.

It would have killed me or *sent* me mad. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XII, Ch. I, 332.

She *wish'd* me happy. TEN., *Mil. Daught.*, XVIII.

Many of these verbs are in this construction more or less frequently followed by the conjunction *as* or the preposition *for* (Ch. VI; Ch. LX, 84).

i. The world *counted* her as a heretic. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 77.

ii. And be he dead, I *count* you *for* a fool. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 548.

Most of them, with or without *as*, admit of being used passively; with some this is even the more usual construction.

Pen *was pronounced* a tremendous fellow. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 188.

Boy as he was, he *was chosen* king. GREEN.

Mr. Hoare *was elected* as treasurer of the society. II. Lond. News.

It seemed by no means improbable he would *be chosen* as the new Pope. Rev. of Rev.

Also verbs construed with an accusative + infinitive may be included among this group (Ch. XVIII, 30 ff).

c) the verb *to do*, whether or no used for emphasis (Ch. I, 64—74).



d) verbs which stand with another verb or group-verb and express an accessory notion by which the action or state denoted by the latter is attended (26). They include :

1) modal verbs (8, *b*; 12).

Among these we may also reckon the verb *to fail* when used to negative a predication, as in *I fail to understand what you mean* = *I do not understand* etc.

2) verbs expressing, in the speaker's view, a greater or less approach to fact, such as *to appear* and *to seem* (4, *b*). Compare also Ch. I, 33.

3) verbs expressing the fortuity of an action or state, such as *to chance*, *to happen* (Ch. I, 32).

He *chanced* to remark the agitation under which she laboured. THACK., *Van Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 80.

The cards of invitation happened to come from some very exalted personages. Id., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 45.

Of a similar nature is the verb *to come* in such a sentence as:

Whenever I fall into trouble or fall in love, I shall always tell you if you'll let me — even when I *come* to fall in love in earnest. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XIX, 138*a*.

4) verbs serving, in a manner, to indicate the aspect of the action denoted by the following verb or group-verb. Such are i. a. *to begin*, *to commence*; *to get*, *to grow*, *to fall*; *to come*, *to go* (Ch. LI, 15); and *to continue*, *to go on*, *to keep (on)*, *to remain* (Ch. LI, 25).

i. The garrison *began* to feel the pressure of hunger. MAC., *Clive*.

He *got* to be a great man. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 88.

He *grew* to believe that his denial had borne its intended fruit. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 81.

And so at last she *fell* to canvass you. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 24. (Now an unusual construction.)

Come away from the place, poor Clive! *Come* sit with your orphan little boy and bear him on your knee. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XLII, 341. (Now an unusual construction.)

Mrs. Dickens and the children *went* to live at the Marshalsea MARZIALS, *Life of Ch. Dick.*, Ch. I, 20.

ii. The commonwealth which William had liberated for ever from Spanish tyranny *continued* to exist as a great and flourishing republic during more than two centuries. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898*a*.

The fashion, like all fashions, *went on* spreading. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 64.

My lord still *kept on* looking very fiercely at me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 31.

Mrs. Goddard *remained standing* an unreasonably long time. MAR. CRAW, *Lonely Parish*, Ch. IX, 71.

5) verbs expressing some form of a capability, possibility, necessity, volition, or recurrency such as the defective *can*, *may*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, *will* (and their non-defective synonyms, such as *to have*, *to be*, *to need*); *to want*, *to wish*, *to desire*, *to hope*, *to intend*, *to mean*, etc.; also *used*. See the examples in 12 and

the copious illustration in Ch. I, 28—62. To these we may add *had* in the phrases *had better* (*rather, sooner, as lief, as soon, need*), illustrated in Ch. II, 27 and partly again in Ch. LV, 32.

6) verbs expressing a psychical disposition called forth by the prospective or present fulfilment of an action or state mentioned by the following verb or group-verb, as in *I fear* (*dread, like hate, etc.*) *to do that* (*to be in suspense*).

Such verbs can hardly be included here if the disposition they indicate is thought of as depending on the fulfilment of the action or state referred to by the following verb, as in *I trembled to think of the disastrous consequences that might ensue from such rash actions* (= *I trembled if (or when) I thought etc.*)

14. Obs. I. The above enumeration admits of considerable, nay almost unlimited extension, the number of verbs which, apart from being necessarily associated with a (pro)noun by way of subject, do not convey complete sense by themselves being practically endless. This, for example, applies to all such verbs as require an object, whether prepositional or non-prepositional and, accordingly, also to those with which the object is represented by an infinitive or a gerund. A substantial claim could also be established for the verbs in such verbal phrases as *to go in search of, to set to work, etc.* For practical purposes it seems, however, advisable to confine the term to such verbs as express a notion which is distinctly subservient to that indicated by the following nominal (or nominal equivalent) or infinitive. Such verbs as *to wish, to fear, to like, etc.*, mentioned above, have, therefore, only a doubtful claim to be admitted to the list. This claim is all the more questionable because many of them may also be construed with the gerund, i. e. the more distinctly substantival form of the verb.

II. As the need is often felt of using auxiliaries of tense, mood or voice together, or of using them together with verbs denoting any of the accessory circumstances by which the predication may be attended, it often happens that two or more verbs of incomplete predication are found in one and the same sentence.

Meanwhile... he (sc. young Shakespeare) was taken from school and appears to have been made to assist his father in business. JOHN W. COUSIN, *A short Biogr. Dict.*, 335.

He seems at once to have turned to the theatres. *ib.*

It is, perhaps, worth observing that the verbs mentioned under *d*, 2—6 with the exception of *can, may, must, ought, shall* and *will*, may be subjected to the modifications of tense and mood and adopt the construction with *to do*, in like manner as ordinary verbs.

i. Nobody had happened to say what time he was arriving. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. II, 34.

ii. We want five of you, named herein, and all others that may happen to be found in your company. DISR., *Syb.*, V, Ch. VIII, 339.

iii. Time would have seemed to creep to the watchers by the bed, if it had only been measured by the doubtful distant hope which kept count of the moments within the chamber. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VII, 222.

iv. My unfortunate friend the waiter did not appear to be disturbed by this. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35a.

III. Predicates which contain one or more verbs of incomplete predication may be said to be *complex*. The term is also used in a more limited sense, being restricted to nominal or verbal predicates which contain an auxiliary of tense, mood or voice, a modal verb, one of the verbs *can, may, must, need, shall (should), or will* when not used in a modal function, or one of the verbs *to do, to dare or ought*; all of which are supposed to form a closer union with the following infinitive than any of the other verbs of incomplete predication that are followed by an infinitive.

IV. It may be observed that in the case of the predicate being complex the subject stands none the less for the originator or the recipient, as the case may be, of the action or state denoted by the main (last) word of the predicate. Thus in *I closed the door, I have closed the door, I shall close the door, I may close the door, I should like to close the door, I happened to close the door* etc., it is invariably the speaker that is represented as the originator of the action of closing, while in *The door was closed, The door has been closed*, etc. it is invariably the door which is represented as the recipient of the action of closing (Ch. LIII, 2).

15. a) Such a sentence as *you might have killed* affords a striking instance of the analytical character of the English language, as compared with Latin and Greek, which would express the whole of the notions separately denoted by the verbs of incomplete predication in the above example by one particular form of the predicate, viz.: *interficeres, ἀπέκτεινας ἄν.*

It is hardly necessary to state that the analytical tendency of the English language is not confined to the way in which predicates may be expressed: it shows itself also in the frequent substitution of constructions with prepositions for case-forms and the frequent use of *more* and *most* for the terminations of the comparative and superlative of adjectives and adverbs.

b) Whereas English in constructions like the above is in no way distinguished from other West-European languages, it exhibits its analytical character more markedly than most of the latter in other respects. Thus it has a distinct tendency to express a predication in two parts, the first purely or mainly connective, the second distinctly significant. This analytical tendency is especially exhibited in:

- 1) the construction with *to do*, discussed in Ch. I, 64 ff.
- 2) the combination of the copula *to be*, not only with the present participle in the so-called expanded or progressive form of the verb (Ch. LII), but also with numerous adjectives derived from a verb or suggestive of a verb. Thus in:

Bob's voice *was tremulous* when he told them this, and trembled more when he said that Tiny Tim was growing strong and hearty. *Dick., Christm. Car.* 5, III, 67. (Observe that *was tremulous* has exactly the same meaning as *trembled*.)

For further discussion see Ch. LIV.

Also in such a sentence as *The Baron sate thoughtful* (LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. XVIII, 226) the verb *sate*, although not, of course, devoid of meaning, is chiefly used to connect the subject with the adjective *thoughtful*, which is the bearer of the principal notion of the predication.

3) the combination of a verb of vague or weakened meaning, especially *to do*, *to give*, *to have* or *to make* with a noun of action or a gerund. Thus in:

i. He was in full vigour of intellect and health, and able *to do battle* for the Liberal party.

I am willing *to do copying*. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XIII, 106.

ii. The poor woman *gave a scream*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 405.

iii. Rex *has had a fall*. G. ELIOT, *Dan Der.*, I, Ch. VII, 109.

iv. At (this) speech Miss Amelia only *made a smile* and a blush. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

For further discussion see Ch. LIV.

While in the constructions mentioned under *b*) analysis has the effect of throwing the significant part of the predicate into prominence, this is not the case with that in the constructions mentioned under *a*), where it rather serves the purpose of indicating the grammatical distinctions of mood, voice and tense separately and, consequently, more clearly than can be attained by synthesis.

16. *a*) Leaving the auxiliaries and the modal verbs apart, verbs have been divided, according to their meaning, into:

1) such as denote a physical, mental or moral activity, e. g.: *to run*, *to ride*, *to shine*; *to think*, *to understand*, *to remember*; *to deceive*, *to lie*, *to betray*, etc.

2) such as denote a mere existence, a physical, mental or moral state, or disposition, e. g.: *to exist*, *to subsist*, *to be*, *to live*; *to stand*, *to stay*, *to rest*, *to float*, *to sleep*, *to glow*; *to fear*, *to hope*, *to like*, *to wish*, etc.

This group also includes the defective verbs *can*, *may*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, *should* in such sentences as *you can (may, must, ought to, shall, should) obey the doctor's prescriptions*; likewise the verbs *to dare* and *to need*.

The distinction cannot be rigidly upheld, even a mere existence, as opposed to non-existence, postulating some manifestation of activity. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 246. The meaning of the word activity may, accordingly, be stretched so far as to apply to all the above verbs. Nor can the distinction be said to be of much practical value for grammatical purposes. It follows also that, activity being associated with some form of life, any originator is more or less thought of as a living thing. Thus when we say *The apple fell from the tree*, we assign some life to the apple. Even in such a sentence as *The singing pleased*

*me* the living principle is not utterly denied to the singing. When in speaking of an inanimate thing, the living principle is considerably tinged with personal manifestations, it is called personification. Personification is, accordingly, a floating notion. Thus it is unmistakable in:

On the brow of Dombey Time and his brother Care had set some marks, as on a tree that was to come down in good time. DICK., *Dombey*, Ch. I, 1.

It is more or less questionable in:

Time rolls his ceaseless course. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, I, 1.

She made a pretence of being anxious that I should go to Dover, to see that all was working well at the cottage. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 279b.

b) A subdivision of the first group is formed by the so-called mutative verbs, i.e. such as denote a passing from one place or state (in)to another, e.g.: *to fall, to rise, to arrive; to blacken, to wither, to melt, to die*, etc. They are distinguished by their forming the perfect tenses, in Old English, by aid of the auxiliary *to be*, in an analogous way as this is done in Dutch by *zijn* and in German by *sein*. The distinction has lost most of its practical value so far as Present English is concerned, all verbs being now conjugated with *to have*. For traces of the older practice see Ch. L, 16 f. Mutative verbs are intransitive (20). Many of them admit of being used in a non-mutative sense, either as transitives or intransitives. Thus not only *The butter has melted*, but also *She has melted the butter*; not only *The leaves have reddened*, but also *The frost has reddened the leaves*; not only *He has walked into an ambush*, but also *He has walked all the way*; not only *He has danced into the room*, but also *He has danced all the evening*; not only *He has climbed up a tree*, but also *He has climbed so long that he is utterly exhausted*, and *He has climbed several mountains*; not only *He has swum across the river*, but also *He has swum too long*, and *He has swum the river*.

Such transitives as *to melt* and *to redden* may be understood as mutatives used in a causative meaning, i.e. as a variety of illogical predicates (5).

It may here also be observed that some English passives correspond to mutatives in other languages. Thus *to be killed (or slain)* has practically the same meaning as the Dutch *sneuvelen*. For further instances see Ch. XLVII, 10.

c) Verbs denoting a psychical disposition, such as *to fear, to like, to hope*, etc., are, naturally, characterized by being exclusively connected with a person-(or animal-)subject and expressing a manifestation of existence beyond the control of the human or animal will. They have this in common with verbs indicating a sense-impression, such as *to see, to hear, to smell*, etc. This last feature deserves particular attention, because it accounts

satisfactorily for the fact that these two groups of verbs are only exceptionally found in the expanded or progressive form. See Ch. LII, 41 f.

Students interested in a more detailed discussion of the numerous groups into which predications may be divided according to their meaning, are recommended to turn to SUNDEN, *The Predicational Categories in English*.

17. From another semasiological point of view verbs have been divided into objective and subjective, and transitive and intransitive verbs. For the right understanding of these distinctions it is necessary to go into some considerable detail even in this introductory chapter.
18. Besides an originator of some kind (5), with which any activity is necessarily associated, many verbs suggest another party concerned in it. In contradistinction to the former, its primary participant, we may call the latter its secondary participant. The relations in which this secondary participant is conceived to stand to the activity are of an endless variety, difficult, if not impossible, to comprehend under one general description. The following, among some other possible types, often branching off into, or overlapping one another, may be distinguished. The secondary participant is thought of as:
  - a) subjected to, or the aim of, some activity of our physical mental, moral or spiritual faculties,
    - 1) the result not being mentioned by any nominal or nominal equivalent. The verb may be construed:
      - a) without a preposition, as in *He carried a bag, He punished the boy, You hurt me, He contemplated the scene, He watched the proceedings, He acquired great wealth, He lost his money, He continued his occupation. He discontinued his visits; He considered our proposals, He weighed the advantages of the project, He explained the matter; He betrayed his friend, He deceived his wife; He desired my assistance, He deprecated her interference, Your singing pleased me*, etc. etc.
      - β) with a preposition, as in *He looked at the sky, He listened to the noise, The surgeon operated upon the patient, They laughed at her credulity, He aimed at the animal's eye, He presided over the meeting, He objected to the scheme; I never thought of this, He accounted for the phenomenon, He touched upon a few important points; He imposed upon everybody; He wished for no luxury, I can dispense with all this, I can do without all this*, etc.
    - 2) the result being mentioned by a nominal or nominal equivalent; thus in *They beat him black and blue, Raise your head a little higher; They kicked him out of the room, He sent the applicant away, He cast off the dog, He called out the military; They*

*elected him chairman. They proclaimed him king; He talked himself hoarse, etc.*

Some of these verbs have a vague meaning, not denoting the nature of the activity producing the altered condition; thus in *This made him angry, This caused him to look round, This set them laughing*. In this case there is sometimes a simple verb conveying approximately the same meaning as the verb of the indefinite meaning together with the nominal. Thus *This angered (annoyed) him* = *This made him angry. Railway travelling tires me dreadfully* = *Railway travelling makes me dreadfully tired*.

In some cases the verb is so closely linked with the complement denoting the result of the activity that it forms a kind of compound with it. Thus in *He called out the military, He cast off the dogs, He threw up his post; He made good his title (his flight, his losses), He laid waste the country*. The close union of verb with its complement accounts for the fact that in many such combinations they can hardly be separated by the object, unless the latter is a personal pronoun. Thus we could hardly say *\*He called the military out, \*He cast the dogs off, \*He threw his post up, \*He made his title good, \*He made his flight good, \*He made his losses good, \*He laid the country waste*. Compare also, *Take back the books* (= Dutch *Neem de boeken weer terug*) and *Take the books back* (= Dutch *Bren g de boeken weer terug*). For discussion see also Ch. VIII, 35 and 118.

b) judged, declared or known to be in a certain state mentioned by a nominal or nominal equivalent. Thus in *They thought him innocent, They declared him guilty. They knew him innocent, etc.*

c) giving rise to a physical, mental or spiritual impression. The verb may be:

1) construed without a preposition, as in *He saw the ship, He heard a noise, He felt a wound; I understood every word, He mistook my meaning; I like singing, Most people hate street-noises, I admire this painting, I scorn lying, I detest a falsehood, He venerated the Bible, She esteemed him highly, We honour the King, etc.*

2) with a preposition, as in *I wonder at his impudence, I approve of the project, etc.*

d) owned or possessed, as in *I have a copy of this edition, He owned a large house, He possessed a large estate.*

e) as brought forth through some activity, as in *He wrote a letter, He built a house, She sang a song, He spoke a few words, He did not say a word, This moved laughter, This caused a sensation, etc.*

19. Sometimes the verb suggests two secondary participants, one thought of as a person, and one thought of as a thing, differing in their relation to the activity. The verb may be construed:

a) without a preposition, as in *I gave the boy money, He told us the whole story, He spared me some disappointment, He brought*

*me my supper, He taught the dog tricks, I asked him a question, I wrote him a long letter, etc.*

*b) with a preposition, as in He gave all his money to the poor, He told the story to all his friends, He played an unfair trick upon his partner, He bestowed a trifle upon the beggar, He robbed the throne from the King his father, He asked me for money, They accused him of theft, She taxed him with inconstancy, They robbed him of his money, etc.*

The statement that when a verb is attended by two objects, one of them is thought of as a person and one as a thing, is hardly weakened by the fact that in some cases both objects, considered in their strict meaning, indicate either persons or things.

If both denote persons, the context represents one of them more or less as stripped of personal qualities; thus in:

He saved me a steward. THACK., VAN FAIR, I, Ch. VII, 71.

And she almost envied Grace Crawley her lover. TROL., LAST CHRON., Ch. XXVIII<sup>1)</sup>.

For my part I never had any ancestors. But I do not grudge them to you. Graph.

If both denote things, the context represents one of them more or less as endowed with personal qualities; thus in:

He struck the table a heavy blow. DICK., COP., Ch. III, 17a.

We wish this publication all success. Academy.

20. The (pro)nouns indicating the secondary participants in an activity are called objects. Verbs governing one or two objects are called objective verbs, those which do not suggest a secondary participant, such as those in *he laughed (breathed, slept, etc.)* being denominated subjective verbs. Verbs which take an object without a preposition are said to be transitive, the others are called intransitive.

In some cases the transitivity of verbs furnished with a complement without a preposition is doubtful; i.e. the complement which, from a syntactical point of view, is a non-prepositional object has no distinct meaning of its own or bears another relation to the governing verb than any of those mentioned in 18. For discussion see Ch. XLVI, 3—7.

When a transitive verb governs two objects, both without a preposition, the one which denotes a thing, or a person thought of as a thing, is mostly called the direct object, the one which indicates a person, or a thing thought of as a person, the indirect object. In this grammar the terms person- and thing-object have been preferred as describing their nature more accurately and admitting of extension to prepositional objects, i.e. objects which belong to verbs construed with a preposition.

---

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, H a n d b., § 1873.



Among the transitive verbs a separate group is formed by causative, by some grammarians also called factitive verbs, i. e. such as express an activity which causes another activity, e. g.: *to fell*, as in *He felled the tree* = He caused the tree to fall. Several intransitive verbs may be turned into causative verbs without any change of form, e. g.: *to walk*, as in *He walked the horse up and down*. Also some transitive verbs have evolved a causative application, e. g.: *to lose*, as in *This lost him his situation*. For detailed discussion of these peculiarly English idioms see Ch. XLVI, 37 ff. Both intransitive and transitive verbs which, without a change of form, are used in a causative meaning, form illogical predicates (5).

Objects denoting the product of the activity, as in *to build a house*, *to write a letter*, etc., have been called effective objects, in contradistinction to such as denote things thought of as affected by it, which have been styled affective objects. The names are a reflex of the terms *verba efficiendi* and *verba afficiendi*, used in Latin grammars. Grammarians who adhere to the erroneous view that English nouns still have more than two cases, i. e. the common or neutral case and the genitive, and, accordingly, distinguish a nominative, a dative and an accusative, sometimes affect the term accusative of result for effective object.

Objects which repeat the meaning of the verb in the shape of a noun of action, as in *to die the death*, *to dream a dream*, *to fight the good fight*, etc., are mostly called cognate objects, and in the nomenclature of the aforesaid grammarians also cognate accusatives. Dutch grammars often use the terms *accusatief van inhoud*, *accusatief van inwendig object* or *verbale accusatief*. SPEYER (Lat. Spraakk., § 382) styles it *accusativus etymologicus*. DEUTSCHBEIN (Syst. der neueng. Synt., § 19, 8) uses the term *figura etymologica*.

The cognate object bears some resemblance to the effective object, from which it differs, α) in that it is represented by a noun of action instead of a material thing, β) mostly stands after an originally intransitive verb and is, consequently, less distinctly transitive, and γ) in its purest form is almost regularly attended by an adjective with which it forms a combination that has the value of an adverbial adjunct of quality. Thus *to live a life of the utmost simplicity* is practically equivalent to *to live as simply as possible* or *to live with the utmost simplicity*.

In such combinations as *to tell a tale*, *to speak a language*, the object does not denote an action, but rather its immaterial result, and is hardly distinguished from an ordinary effective object.

For further discussion see Ch. XLVI, 44. Compare also MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 372; KRUISINGA, *Handbook*<sup>3</sup>, § 1860.

Another kind of object that bears some affinity to the effective object is that which we find in such sentences as *She bowed her gratitude*, *He laughed an answer*, etc., in which the verb denotes a kind of uttering tinged by the emotion of which the verb is the symbol. For further details see Ch. XLVI, 46; and compare DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 118, 3, c.

The question may be raised whether the term *prepositional object* should be given to the whole combination, preposition + (pro)noun, or to the (pro)noun alone which is one of its constituent elements. In consideration of the fact that, as we shall see (24, c), the preposition forms a kind of unit with the verb by which it is governed, one would be inclined to answer the question in favour of the latter view. But bearing in mind that when, for some reason, the combination is divided from the governing verb, also the preposition is divided from the verb, there can be no doubt that it is more justifiable to bestow the term on the whole combination.

21. Not all verb-modifiers consisting of a (pro)noun or containing a (pro)noun are objects. Thus in the following examples the verb-modifiers would not be set down as objects: *He lay on the floor*, *He travelled to Italy*, *He lives at Folkestone*; *He came in good time*, *He arrived after his brother*, *It happened yesterday*; *He perished by an accident*, *He called by appointment*, *I chuckled for pleasure*, *The child sickened from want and cold*; *He fought for his King*, *He died for his country*; *He fought with great gallantry*, *He spoke in a loud voice*; *The book costs a shilling*, *He weighs ten stone*, *He walked a long distance*.

It is not difficult to see the difference between the modifiers in the above examples and those given in the preceding sections. While the latter answer the question (to) *whom?* or (to) *what?*, those given above answer the question *where?*, *when?* *in what manner?* *why?* *for what purpose?*, *how?* *how much?* *how far?* etc. Many of them can also be told by their serving the same function as certain adverbs. Thus in *He lay on the floor* the word-group *on the floor* is related to *lay* in like manner as *there* is related to it in *He lay there*. Similarly:

*He travelled to Italy* corresponds to *He travelled thither* (or *there*).

<i>It happened yesterday</i>	„	„	<i>It happened recently.</i>
<i>He perished by an accident</i>	„	„	<i>He perished accidentally.</i>
<i>He spoke in a loud voice</i>	„	„	<i>He spoke loudly.</i>
<i>He worked with diligence</i>	„	„	<i>He worked diligently.</i>
<i>The book cost five shillings</i>	„	„	<i>The book cost much.</i>
<i>He walked a long distance</i>	„	„	<i>He walked very far.</i>
<i>It lasted a day</i>	„	„	<i>It lasted long.</i>

In contradistinction to objects these verb-modifiers may, therefore, be called **adverbial adjuncts**.

In many cases the distinction between the two kinds of verb-modifiers is far from evident, which makes it advisable to enter into some detailed discussion of what characterizes objects from the other verb-modifiers.

22. The most characteristic feature of objects is the fact that they are felt as necessary complements of the predicate. This feature may be observed in all the examples given in 18 and 19.

a) It is not found in the personal pronouns *me* and *you* when they merely serve to give some emotional colouring to the sentence, as in:

i. As I was smoking a musty room, comes *me* the prince and Claudio, hand in hand, in sad conference. SHAK., *Much ado*, I, 3, 61.

One Colonna cuts *me* the throat of Orsini's baker. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. III, 22.

ii. I will roar *you* as gently as any sucking dove. SHAK., *Mids*, I, 2, 73.

Nothing introduces *you* a heroine like soft music. SHER., *Crit.*, II, 2.

In grammatical jargon these pronouns are said to stand in the **ethical dative**.

This also applies to *me* in the function of a reflexive pronoun used for the same purpose, especially with verbs expressing doubt, fear or conviction. For illustration see also Ch. III, 6, a, 2; and Ch. XXXIV, 2, Obs. II.

I doubt *me* very much if the modesty of the unknown and unheralded is responsible for the strict anonymity of the book. T. P.'s Weekly No. 483, 167a.

I fear *me* the mistake hath cost him dear. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 16.

I warrant *me* there's not one in them but, in describing the battle of Minden, would manage to bring Prince Ferdinand . . . into presence. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 68.

Also reflexive pronouns, or personal pronouns doing duty as such, which, in literary or archaic language, are sometimes found added to intransitive verbs for rhythmical or rhetorical purposes are, in a manner, to be regarded as expletives. For illustration see also Ch. XXIV, 23.

She sat herself down before a cheerful fire. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII.

The rector sat him down to his task. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm*, II, 151.

b) Nor can those modifiers be said to be necessary complements of the verb which indicate the person in whose behalf the action is said to take place, whether they consist of a bare (pro)noun or contain the preposition *for* or *to* (Ch. III, 6, b); thus in:

i. Moses, fill *the gentleman* a bumper. SHER., *School*, III, 3, (398).

I never go into the kitchen, but there is a saucepan on the fire, cooking *him* some dainty. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XV, 313.

Will you write *me* a statement to that effect? ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 101.

Mr. Bosinney was building *Soames* a house. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. VI, 82.

I've tried to plan *you* a house here with some self-respect of its own. *ib.*

Mrs. Barnstaple wanted to choose *him* a doctor. WELLS, *Men like Gods*, § 2, 17 (T.).

ii. \* He put a chair *for me* at the table. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. V, 34a.

Old John opened the dining-room *for the Major*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

\*\* And again, as they opened the front-door *to him*, and he stepped out into the dark wintry night, he looked back. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. VIII, 73.

From a semantic point of view the modifiers referred to in the above constructions are not, accordingly, to be regarded as objects, but as adverbial adjuncts. It is only natural that they cannot be made the subject of a passive sentence. See, however Ch. XLVII, 36, *b*.

23. a) Conversely the fact that a verb-modifier appears as a necessary complement to the verb does not always constitute it an object. Thus in *The bag weighs twenty pounds*, *The book costs twenty shillings*, *The storm lasted an entire day*, the modifier is a pure adverbial adjunct, having the same grammatical value as an adverb (21).

Likewise the second modifier of the verb is no object, but an adverbial adjunct, in:

I took John a new way. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XII, 122.

Take me a walk before dinner. Mrs. WARD, *Mar. of Wil. Ashe*, II, 48. (T.)

I shall never forget the drive he took me. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VII, 207.

b) Sometimes, however, through a modification of the meaning of the verb, an adverbial adjunct assumes the character of an object; thus in the following quotations the noun standing after:

*to stalk*: Well, I propose we have a few minutes' rest, and we will occupy ourselves in watching Waveny *stalk* those mergansers. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

*to thread*: Upon this, the prim master of the ceremonies, *threading his path* through the now fast-filling room, approached towards Lucy to obey Mr. Clifford's request. LYTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XV, 178.

*to travel*: He now and then also informed me to whom the different seats belonged that lay in our view as we travelled the road. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. III. He travels the Continent. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 331.

*to walk*: He walks the London streets. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 180. I know a man... who was walking the hospitals here. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 332.

For discussion of the last mentioned constructions see also Ch. III, 35 and Ch. V, 11.

c) Of an uncertain nature are the adjuncts after *to stay* and *to stop* as used in the following quotations:

i. They stay | The first departing of the king for Ireland. SHAK., *Rich.*, II, II, 1, 289.

We intended to stay the farce. Miss BURNEY, *Evelina*, XX, 77.

I am going to stay tea. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 87.

ii. You'll stop the Sacrament next time. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*.

In the application in which these verbs are here used they may also be construed with temporal *till* or final *to*, which leads to the view that they are not to be apprehended as real transitives, prepositions being frequently dropped in adverbial adjuncts (Ch. LX, 107). This view is corroborated by the fact that passive conversion is here out of the question.

Compare: Stay to luncheon. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Land.*, II, Ch. IX, 170. She had been persuaded to stay to tea Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VI, 103.

Also: Miss Munro used to think he would have been glad to stay and lunch at their early dinner. Mrs. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. IV, (432).

In passing it may be observed that the construction with *to* appears to be the only one in actual use after *to remain*.

The present week is yet but at Thursday, and on Monday, the curate of Briarfield, came to breakfast and stayed dinner; on Tuesday Mr. Malone and Mr. Sweeting, of Nunnely, came to tea, remained to supper. Ch. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. I, 4, T.

They remained to luncheon. *Morning Post*.

Although present usage would tolerate no preposition after *to wait* as in the following quotations, the verb is related to its adjunct very much in the same way as *to stay* and *to stop* described above.

I never wait supper for anybody. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IX.

You have not waited dinner, I hope Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 144.

I don't want to keep Mrs. Levison waiting tea. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 12.

For illustration of the above applications of *to stay*, *to stop* and *to wait* see also Ch. V, 11.

24. Of an uncertain nature are a great many verb-modifiers containing a preposition, the characterizing features distinguishing prepositional objects from adverbial adjuncts containing a preposition being often vague and floating. Those features are three in number, which should all be distinctly discernible in any verb-modifier that can be called an indubitable prepositional object.
- a) The first and most important of them is that the modifier should be felt as a necessary complement of the verb. There is no difficulty in finding this indispensability in the examples given in 18, *a* and *c*; 19, *b*.

The same indispensability is met with in such sentences as *Late at night he arrived at his destination*, *They repaired to their several homes*, *He departed to Spain*, *He embarked for Australia*, etc. But in these examples the thing for which the noun in question stands is not felt to be a secondary participant in the action expressed by the verb, and the modifiers cannot, therefore, be considered prepositional objects.

Indispensability also attaches to the verb-modifiers in sentences like *He rode on a mule*, *He jumped over a wall*, *He slept in a bed*, etc. Nor can it be truly said that the things mentioned in

the modifiers are not concerned in the activity expressed by the verb. But the preposition is here used in its full local meaning and can hardly be said to form an unmistakable unit with the verb, so that the word-groups do not clearly possess either of the two other features of the true prepositional objects described below. As to this last point they bear, however, some resemblance to the latter, as becomes evident from the fact that:

1) the verb + preposition is practically equivalent to some transitive verb, either in the same language or, at least, in one or more of the cognate languages. Thus *He leaped over the fence* does not materially differ from *He cleared the fence*, any more than *He has slept in this bed* differs from the Dutch *Hij heeft dit bed beslapen*, or, conversely, the French *Il entra dans la chambre* from *He entered the room*.

2) the (pro)noun connected with the preposition can be made the subject of a passive sentence e. g.: *The mule has been ridden on*, *The wall has been leaped over*, *The bed has been slept in*. For further discussion see Ch. XLVII, 30.

b) Another feature of prepositional objects is the fact that the preposition in them is distinctly vague in meaning, conveying little or none of the relations of place, time, cause, purpose, agency, instrumentality, etc., some one of which is always distinctly discernible in the preposition of adverbial adjuncts. This appears, for example, from a comparison of *He imposed (up)on everybody*, *He prevailed (up)on me to stay*, *He meditated (up)on revenge* etc. with *He jumped (up)on the table*; *He cannot dispense with a dictionary*, *He meddled with politics*, *This does not tally with your former statement*, etc. with *He wrote with a quill*; *The ship abounds in conveniences*, *A Bengalee seldom engages in a personal conflict*, *He never faltered in his work*, etc. with *He breakfasted in his friend's room*. (Ch. LX, 103 ff.)

This vagueness of the preposition in prepositional objects follows from the metaphorical meaning in which the verb they modify is used. Thus while in *He arrived at Dover last night* the verb has its original meaning and *at* expresses a distinct relation of place, neither one nor the other is the case in *He arrived at this conclusion*, *arrived* being used in a metaphorical meaning and *at* indicating but faintly a relation of place. Similar changes may respectively be observed in:

Her whole fate *hung on* his answer. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 508, T.

Patient investigation, with a resolve *to come at* the truth, is a training that at once instructs and ennobles. SKEAT, *Principles of Eng. Etym.*, II, Ch. XXVI, 462.

She *went about* her duties as usual. TEMPLE, THURSTON, *Traffic*, III, Ch. V, 156.

c) Prepositional objects are further distinguished by the preposition being intimately connected with the governing verb. The two may, indeed, be said to form a kind of unit, as becomes evident from the fact that in not a few cases there is a simplex, either in the same or in some cognate language, which conveys approximately the same meaning. Thus *to laugh at a thing* differs but slightly from *to deride a thing* or the Latin *ridere aliquid*; *to impose upon a person* is practically equivalent to *to deceive a person*, to the French *décevoir une personne*, to the German *jemand betrügen* and to the Dutch *iemand bedriegen*; *to listen to a person* is a strict translation of the French *écouter une personne*. Conversely *to answer the purpose* has practically the same meaning as the Dutch *aan het doel beantwoorden*, and *to resist a measure* corresponds to the French *résister à une mesure* and the Dutch *zich tegen een maatregel verzetten*. For further illustration see Ch. XLVI, 13—17; Ch. XLVII, 33; Ch. LX, 45. The union of verb and preposition appears to be more intimate in English than in either Dutch or German. Thus they would be separated in both the Dutch and German renderings of *The tracing of the two women I have already provided for* (WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, I, Ch. XV, 106) = *Voor het nasporen van de twee vrouwen heb ik reeds gezorgd*. *Für das Nachspüren der zwei Frauen habe ich schon gesorgt*.

It must not, however, be supposed that instances of separation are wanting in English. Thus we have it in:

On Jacobites, as Jacobites, he never showed any inclination to bear hard. MAC, *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 14.

See also Ch. XLVII, 42.

This close union may account for the remarkable fact that, among the West-European languages, it is only English that admits of the (pro)noun of most prepositional objects being used as the subject of a passive sentence. It may as well be observed already in this place that idiom not seldom stands in the way of this practice. Thus no conversion into the passive voice is possible of *The ship abounds in conveniences*, *The book belongs to me*. For further discussion see Ch. XLVII, 23 ff.

It may also be responsible for the frequent occurrence of one and the same (pro)noun depending on verbs with different constructions. It should be observed that if one of these verbs is transitive, it mostly stands last (Ch. III, 45).

If your thoughts should assume so unhappy a bent, you will the more want some mild and affectionate spirit to watch over and console you. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

I must have a woman that can sympathise with and appreciate me. BROWNING, *A Soul's Tragedy*, II, (33).

But, at five precisely, whether Hamilton had arrived or not, Glenlyon was to fall on, and to slay every Macdonald under seveny. MAC., *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 22.

He hastened after and overtook her. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XV, 313.

ii. I am particularly glad to see and shake hands with you. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 449.

iii. The only serious quarrel they had ever had... had arisen from the refusal of the younger (cousin) to accept of and profit by these elegant presents. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. VI, 107.

The passive voice has the effect of knitting the verb and the preposition more intimately together than the active voice. Thus while one considers the preposition as a connecting link of verb and (pro)noun in *He laughed at my indiscretion*, one does not feel *at* to be a separate part of the sentence in *His indiscretion was laughed at*. The union may be said to be complete when the combination past participle + preposition is used as an attributive adjunct, as in *the longed-for peace, the agreed-upon price, a tenderly cared-for child*. For further illustration see Ch. LVII, 30. Compare also JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14; 341; DEUTSCHBEIN, *Syst.*, § 43, 3; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 394—6. Similarly the two words are sometimes joined to form a compound gerund. Compare Ch. LVI, 41.

That needs no accounting for. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. L, 389a.

He gave him a good talking-to. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 106, 264.

If should be observed that these quasi-compounds, whether participial or gerundial, are restricted to some few cases. Thus such combinations as *\*the laughed at man* *\*the accounted for facts* (instead of *the man laughed at*, *the facts accounted for*); or such sentences as *\*This subject requires a patient inquiring into*, *\*He had to listen to a long speaking to* are either impossible or utterly unidiomatic.

For the rest the union of verb and preposition is not, however, close enough for a real compound to be formed, the two words being always separated when for some syntactical reason the verb has to be divided from its object. Compare Ch. VIII, 34.

He stands much upon his dignity. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. XV, 128. On an understanding between these three men depends the happiness of Ireland. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 16, 317b.

Thus even in the passive voice verb and preposition may bear separation.

Raffden must be dealt handsomely with. LYTTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XIV, 161.

As compared with prepositional objects, there is little coalescing of verb and preposition in the case of adverbial adjuncts similarly composed. Indeed in such sentences as *He lay on the floor*, *He chuckled for pleasure*, the preposition is not felt to be connected with the verb so much as with the following noun.



Again, while in the above examples the prepositional word-groups convey at least some sense by themselves, such word-groups are well-nigh unintelligible when detached from the rest of the sentence in *He imposed on everybody*, *He parted with his house*. To put it in another way, while in *He lay | on the floor* the different notions conveyed by the sentence might be marked off by a line drawn before the preposition, such a line would have to be drawn after the preposition in *He imposed on | everybody*. Compare DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 43, Anm. 2; and especially, § 116, 4.

As has already been observed higher up (24, a), some prepositional word-groups, as in *He leaped over the fence*, *He has slept in this bed*, occupy an intermediate position. It stands to reason that the practice of placing a participle + preposition attributively before a noun; and also the formation of a kind of compound gerund, of which the language sometimes admits in the case of a prepositional object, is utterly impossible when the prepositional word-group is an adverbial adjunct. Thus we could not say *\*the lain on floor*, *\*the leaped over fence*, *\*the slept in bed*; nor yet *\*The floor showed traces of lying on*, *\*The hedge was so high as to make a leaping over impossible*.

25. Obs. I. DEUTSCHBEIN (System, § 26, 3; § 43, 3, Anm. 2) makes out that the movement of the preposition from the (pro)noun to the verb, by which prepositional objects are characterized, causes it to assume the function of an adverb, the adverbial function being especially pronounced in passive constructions. But it is difficult to see that this movement should affect the grammatical function of the word. The fact is that, except for passive constructions, the preposition preserves its function as a connective link between verb and (pro)noun as strictly as in the case of adverbial adjuncts. This is evidenced by its always retaining its weak stress as opposed to the strong stress which a real adverb has in, apparently, similar combinations, such as *He called out the military*, *He cast off the dogs* (Ch. VIII, 35). Moreover, this view would lead to difficulties in establishing the grammatical status of the second particle in sentences like *He fell in with a stranger*, *He made away with his money*, *He looked down upon his fellow-travellers*, etc., in all of which it is a constituent of a prepositional object (Ch. XLVII, 25). Compare SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 396), who observes that "although detached prepositions approach very near to adverbs, yet they cannot be regarded as full adverbs for the simple reason that those prepositions which are otherwise never used as adverbs, such as *of*, can be detached with perfect freedom". For a discussion of the relation of prepositions and adverbs see 27 (the end), and especially Ch. LX, 117 ff.

II. The number of prepositions with which a verb may be connected to form a prepositional object, although in some cases considerable enough, is strictly limited. Thus we have *to despair of (success)*; *to*

*impose (up)on (a person); to tally with (fact); to abound in (conveniences), — with discomforts; to listen (to advice), — for footsteps; to stick at trifles, — by (one's friends), — to (a cause); to speak at and to (a person), — about, against, of and (up)on (a subject or a person).* But beyond the above there are hardly any combinations with these verbs that could be called prepositional objects. Such a verb as *to speak* is, of course, often attended by other prepositions than the above, as, for example, in *to speak in the House of Commons, — at a meeting, — with enthusiasm, — in the cause of liberty, — to excellent purpose*, etc. But in none of the above prepositional word-groups is there any trace of the above-mentioned features.

It will, however, hardly do to regard this limitation of the number of prepositions as a test whereby to tell a prepositional object. In many cases the preposition in an adverbial adjunct is with equal strictness suggested by the verb with which it stands; thus in *to arrive at (a town), to start for (a country), to repair to (one's home)*.

III. The foregoing exposition leads inevitably to the conclusion that there is no rigid line of demarcation between objects and adverbial adjuncts, and that the distinction in some cases is more or less arbitrary. The difference of extreme cases may stand out boldly enough, but, as may be observed in most groupings, the two kinds of verb-modifiers in some of their varieties present features which betray a strong family likeness. Floating as the line of demarcation admittedly is, it would certainly be better not to insist on discrimination, if it did not offer the substantial advantage of facilitating the defining of certain grammatical phenomena with more precision than would otherwise be possible. Thus in Ch. XXXIX, 28 it has been helpful in telling the cases in which the preposition admits of being shifted to the end of the relative clause. Its usefulness will again appear in the discussion of the various ways in which objective verbs may pass into subjective verbs, and vice versa (Ch. XLVI, 30), and especially in the investigation of the peculiar application of illogical predicates in English (Ch. XLVII, 23 ff).

26. A separate group of verbs is formed by such as are placed before an infinitive to denote some accessory circumstance attending the attribute indicated by the latter (13, *d*). Unlike other verbs which, when modified by an object or an adverbial adjunct, have the status of principals, these verbs are rather placed in the subservient position of adjuncts. Their function, indeed, is more or less on a par with that of adverbial adjuncts, and adverbial verbs may, accordingly, be considered a suitable appellation in referring to them.

The adverbial function is unmistakable in *to seem* and *to appear*, and in *to chance* and *to happen*. It can hardly fail to be observed in the modal verbs. It is also discernible in the defective verbs denoting some form of capability, possibility, necessity, coercion, volition or recurrency, such as *can, may, must, ought, shall, will*;

the verbs *to have* and *to be* when expressing a necessity or coercion; the phrases *had better*, *had rather*, etc.

It is questionable in the non-defective verbs expressing a movement of the human will such as *to need*, *to want*, *to wish*, *to desire*, *to hope*, *to intend*, *to mean*; in the verbs denoting a psychical disposition, such as *to fear*, *to like*, *to hate*; in the verbs which serve to denote a particular character (or aspect) of the predication, such as *to begin*, *to get*, *to grow*, *to fall*, *to come*, *to go*; *to continue*, *to go on*, *to keep (on)*, *to remain*. These verbs may also be apprehended as principals to which the following verb appears as a necessary complement. Some of them may also be construed with a gerund, or a noun of action, which shows that they are, after all, largely felt as ordinary objective verbs.

As to some of the verbs mentioned in this section their adverbial force appears from the fact that there is an adverbial adjunct, either in English or in some cognate language, which conveys approximately the same meaning. Thus:

The conversation happened to turn on the lottery. GENTL. MAG., 172. (= Het gesprek kwam toevallig op de loterij.)

By the bye. Mr. Giles, have you, by any chance, heard anything lately of my child? DISR., Loth., I, Ch. VI, 33. (= .. do you happen to have heard etc. = .. hebt ge onlangs soms ook iets gehoord van mijn kind?)

Follow her: she may want your assistance. SHER., School, I, 2. (= .. she will, perhaps, want your assistance. = .. zij zal misschien uw hulp noodig hebben.)

I should like to know. O. E. D. (= Ik zou gaarne (willen) weten = Ich möchte gern wissen.)

But what he fain had seen | He could not see. TEN., En. Ard., 575. (= But what he would have liked to see etc. = Maar wat hij graag had gezien etc.)

Sometimes an adverbial verb and an adverbial adjunct belong to one and the same predicate. Thus:

Do you *happen* to have a knife *by chance*? ELINOR GLYN, Refl. of Ambros., I, Ch. I, 13

*Perhaps* we *may* see something of Captain Carter before he goes. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. VII, 36.

27. a) It is not only verbal, but also nominal predicates which may require complements. Thus in *He is fond of music* the word-group *of music* appears as distinctly as a necessary complement of *fond* as is the case with *music* in *He likes music*. A similar analogy may be observed between *He was an applicant for this post* and *He applied for this post*. In the last example the complement belongs to a noun and is, therefore, called an adnominal adjunct.

The number of adjectives which may take an object without a preposition is very small, and among these the majority are

also construed with a preposition. Thus *busy*, but also *busy about*, *in*, *on*, *over* and *with*; *(un)like*, but also *(un)like to*; *proof*, but also *proof against*; *worth*; *(un)worthy*, but also *(un)worthy of*. For discussion see Ch. III, 12 ff.

Adjectives like the above, in fact all those which require some complement, may as properly be called objective adjectives as verbs requiring a complement are called objective verbs. The term objective may also be extended to the numerous phrases that have the value of a predicative adjective and are regularly followed by a preposition -- (pro)noun, such as *in favour (of the measure)*, *at variance (with the principle)*, *in harmony (with public opinion)*, *at strife (with the world)*, etc.

Similarly to bare prepositions which are equivalent to such phrases -- the required preposition, as, for example, *against* in *against the measure* which differs in no way from *opposed to the measure*.

b) The argument leads inevitably to further conclusions. There is no essential difference between the relation of objective verbs and their prepositional complements and that between certain adverbs or phrases and their prepositional complements, as in *agreeably to ancient usage*, *conformably to Christian doctrine*; *in opposition to my wishes*, *in spite of the storm*, etc.; in which adverb (or phrase) + preposition in its turn is grammatically equivalent to a preposition; compare the Dutch *overeenkomstig oud gebruik*, *volgens de Christelijke leer*; *tegen mijn wenschen*, *niettegenstaande de storm*. In these prepositional word-groups adjectives sometimes take the place of adverbs, for example in *prior to the war*, *contrary to my advice*, *preparatory to taking his departure*. In not a few cases the adverbial and the adjectival forms are used side by side. Thus we find both *relatively* and *relative to the business in hand*, *agreeably* and *agreeable to the order of the day* etc. (Ch. LX, 13—33).

c) Even bare prepositions, excepting such as *of*, *for*, *to* and *by*, when serving some syntactical purpose, can mostly be said to be related to the (pro)noun with which they are connected very much in the same way as a transitive verb to its object. Prepositions may, indeed, be regarded as adverbs governing a complement. Compare *He is in* with *He is in the room*. The subject will be worked out in further detail in Ch. LX, 117.

28. Verbs bear some resemblance, on one side, to nouns denoting an action or state, mostly called nouns of action as a translation of the Latin *nomina actionis*, on the other, to adjectives. From both they differ, however, materially from a semantic as well as from a syntactic point of view.

a) Nouns of action differ from verbs:

1) semantically, in that they denote an attribute thought of as an element or unit fitted to be made a separate object of thought, in like manner as may be done with the material things in which these attributes have been observed. Thus in *the departure of the steamer, the illness of the mother*.

2) grammatically, in that they admit of none of the modifications of person, tense or mood, and cannot be connected with the verb *to be* to express a passive meaning, and also in that they cannot form the predicate by themselves, but, for this purpose, require the assistance of *to be* or some other copula.

It should further be noted that these nouns can take no non-prepositional object, the (pro)noun standing in this function with a verb figuring as part of an adnominal adjunct with *of* when a noun of action is used. Compare *She arranged the flowers* with *The arrangement of the flowers is a favourite pastime of hers*. Prepositional objects and adverbial adjuncts containing a preposition, however, preserve their grammatical character to a certain extent when modifying a noun of action. Thus in *His persistence in the scheme had fatal consequences, His disappearance from the House of Commons will be felt as a serious loss*. But in this application such word-groups are usually apprehended as adnominal modifiers (Ch. LVI, 45, b).

b) Adjectives are distinguished from verbs:

1) semantically, in that they do not imply, as the latter do, that the attribute they express is restricted to some length of time. Thus in *The tall man laughed* the verb *laughed* implies a state of silence previous and subsequent to the time of laughing, while any absence of tallness previous or subsequent to that time is not in the least thought of. When the attribute expressed by an adjective is connected in our thoughts with some time-restriction, this notion is not suggested by the adjective but by some verb. Thus, although the two predicates in the following quotation are practically identical in meaning, the notion of limited duration adherent to both predications, is expressed in the first by the copula *to be*.

Bob's voice was *tremulous* when he told them this, and *trembled* more when he said that Tiny Tim was growing strong and hearty. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, III, 67.

Similarly it is the verb which imparts the notion of limited duration to the predication in:

The Baron *sate thoughtful*. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. XVIII, 226.

The attribute we ascribe to a person or thing may be one that is not thought of as restricted to any particular time, as in *A cipher placed after an integer increases its value tenfold, The*

*sun gives us light and heat, Gold and silver are precious metals.* But even in this case the attribute is thought of in relation to time, although indefinite time.

Another, perhaps, the most striking feature of the verb, which distinguishes it from the adjective, is that it serves the express purpose of ascribing an attribute to the thing in which it has been observed (1), while the latter represents this attribute as taken for granted. This becomes clear from a comparison of the two attributes mentioned in such a sentence as *The tall boy smiled.* In a sentence like *The boy is tall for his age* the verb *to be*, which is devoid of all meaning, even has no further duty than this linking function.

It may, further, be observed that verbs cannot indicate a quality, which is the characteristic function of most adjectives. On the strength of their capability of expressing a change, i. e. a kind of activity, they may, however, denote the assuming of a quality, as in *His pace quickened*, or the imparting of a quality, as in *He quickened his pace.*

2) grammatically, not only in that, like nouns, they are incapable of expressing the variations of person, tense, mood and voice, and, so far as English is concerned, of number; but also in that, so far as their meaning or form goes, they admit of expressing gradations of intensity by suffixes.

For a comparison of verbs with nouns of action and adjectives compare also DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 9 and § 75; PAUL, *Prinz.*, § 252—3; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 20.

29. a) Intermediate between nouns denoting an action or state and verbs, as bearers of the distinctions of person, number, tense mood and voice, are those forms of the verb which are called the infinitive and the gerund. These forms, by the aid of auxiliaries, can show the distinction of voice, and, partly, that of tense, but they are neutral as to person and mood, and also as to the number of the originator of the action or state they express. Conversely they may be used in most of the grammatical functions of ordinary nouns, while the gerund admits of inflection for number and case and of modification by every variety of adnominal adjuncts. For discussion of the functions of the infinitive and the gerund in the sentence, and for comparison of their respective areas of application, see Ch. XVIII and Ch. XIX. For details as to their grammatical character and further comparison of gerunds with nouns of action see Ch. LV and Ch. LVI.
- b) The language has also two forms which partake both of the character of verbs and that of adjectives, viz. the participles. They are both neutral as to person, number and mood, but one of them, the so-called present participle, is capable of expressing,

by the aid of auxiliaries, the distinction of voice and, partly, that of tense.

The functions which participles may hold in the sentence have been discussed in detail in Ch. XX. Further particulars of their grammatical features will be given in Ch. LVII. Compare also DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III. § 9 and §§ 97—101; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, §§ 330—5.

c) The infinitive, the gerund and the two participles are mostly comprised under the general designation of *verbals*. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 101, § 103 and § 319, and compare also the *O. E. D.*, where the term is defined with a wider meaning. JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, § 142) prefers the term *verbid*, but this word, although more appropriate, has not yet found currency. The infinitive and the gerund are called *substantival verbals*, the two participles *adjectival verbals*. In contradistinction to the verbals, the other forms of the verb, that is those which show all the grammatical distinctions of which it is capable, are called the *finite verbs*, or collectively the *finite verb*. Another, more suitable, term is the *predicative verb*.





## CHAPTER XLVI.

### TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Floating Nature of Transitivity . . . . .	1—17
Verbs which are used both Transitively and Intransitively . .	18—54
The Transitive and the Intransitive Use appearing equally natural . . . . .	19—23
Transitives turned into Intransitives and vice versa . . .	24—54
Transitives turned into Intransitives . . . . .	25—35
Through absorption of the Object . . . . .	25—31
Through being used passively without a change of voice	32—34
Through no evident process . . . . .	35
Intransitives turned into Transitives . . . . .	36—54
Through being used in a Causative Meaning . . . .	37—43
Through being furnished with a Cognate Object . . .	44—45
Through denoting a kind of Uttering . . . . .	46—47
Through taking an Effective Object . . . . .	48—49
Through Absorption of a Preposition . . . . .	50—54
Intransitives as component parts of Transitive Group-verbs or Transitive Derivatives . . . . .	55—57



## The Floating Nature of Transitivity.

1. In Ch. XLV, 18—25 an attempt has been made to tell the peculiar nature of objects as compared with adverbial adjuncts. Distinct hints have been thrown out there not only that the line of demarcation dividing them is of a fluctuating nature, but also that one and the same verb often admits of being used with and without an object. In this chapter we shall be chiefly concerned with the floating nature of transitivity and the various processes by which transitive verbs pass into intransitives and vice versa.
2. One of the first facts which cannot fail to strike the observant reader when he passes in review a considerable number of English verbs from a syntactical point of view and especially when he compares them with their approximate equivalents in cognate languages is that the distinction between transitive and intransitive is, to a considerable extent, rather a syntactic than a semantic one. See also PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 105; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 251.

To take an instance from French grammar. It is difficult to see why French idiom should require *le* (*la*) in a sentence like *Je l'ai entendu (vu) sortir*, and *lui* in *Je lui ai entendu (vu) fermer la porte*, simply because in the latter sentence the infinitive governs an object. ROBERT, *Gram. Franc.*, § 289.

3. The verb is only syntactically, but not semantically transitive,
  - a) when its complement is the indefinite pronoun *it*, representing a vague cognate object (Ch. XLV, 20). Compare MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 372, A, 3 foot-note.

I say, young Copperfield, you're going *it*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 43a.

If I hooked *it*, everybody would say I was an adventurer. A. BENNETT, *The Great Adventure*, III, 2, (115).

For further illustration see Ch. I, 19, *b*.

*b*) when its complement is a reflexive pronoun without a distinct semantic significance, i. e. one which does not call forth the notion of an activity that is undergone. Compare DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 82. This applies to:

1) practically all verbs which are used solely in connexion with a reflexive pronoun. For full illustration see Ch. XXXIV, 6 and Ch. XLVIII, 4.

Twice or thrice a week Miss Briggs used to betake herself to a bathing machine. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 267.

2) verbs which when used reflexively are distinctly modified in

meaning. Ample illustration may be found in Ch. XXXIV, 5 and Ch. XLVIII, 5.

He had availed himself of the permission. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 263.

Also when the verb in connexion with the reflexive pronoun cannot be said to have lost its proper meaning, the semantic transitivity is sometimes considerably faded (Ch. XLVIII, 6); thus in:

Life in those days presented itself to her mostly as an amusing game. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sylvia Scarlett*, I, Ch. I, 38.

In this sentence *presented itself to her* has practically the same meaning as *appeared to her*.

4. Most verbs which stand before other verbs and denote some accessory circumstance by which the attribute expressed by the latter is attended (Ch. XLV, 13, *d*), can hardly be called transitive from a semantic point of view.

This applies indubitably to 1) the modal verbs, 2) the verbs *to seem* and *appear*, 3) the verbs *to chance* and *to happen*.

In a less marked degree this may be said of 4) the verbs which indicate the aspect of what is expressed by the following verb or group-verb, 5) the verbs which express some form of capability, possibility, necessity, volition or recurrency, 6) the verbs which denote a psychological disposition called forth by the prospective or present fulfilment of the action or state mentioned by the following verb or group-verb.

From a semantic point of view all these verbs partake more or less of the nature of adverbial adjuncts (Ch. XLV, 26).

5. There are many more verbs governing a complement without a preposition whose transitivity is more or less questionable. This applies to:

*a) to become, to befit, to befall, to behove, to fail, to last, to misgive, to resemble, to suffice, to suit*, all of them expressing notions which do not fall under any of the groups mentioned in Ch. XLV, 18. They would be construed with a dative, if this case had been preserved.

Thought does not become a young woman. *SHER., Riv.*, I, 2, (219).

A similar occasion had befallen him at Amsterdam. *G. ELIOT, Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. XV, 250.

It behoved him to keep on good terms with his pupils. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 346.

We cannot undertake this task .. if public opinion fails us. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5484, 1c.

It will last me eight months. *CONC. OXF. DICT.*

Torrida's heart misgave her. *KINGSLEY, Herew.*, Ch. XIII, 56b.

Had he not resembled | My father as he slept. I had done it. *SHAK., Macb.*, II, 2, 13.

Half-a-dozen sufficed him. *CONC. OXF. DICT.*

Harriis said that the river would suit him to a "T." *JEROME, Three Men*, Ch. I, 13.

*b) to make* in the greatly reduced meaning of *to produce*, as in:

This makes diverting reading W. J. DAWSON, *Makers of Eng. Fict.*, Ch. I, 9.

Often further weakened so as to become practically equivalent to *to become* (by development or training), or even to the copula *to be*. Cf. O. E. D. s.v. *make*, 28.

i. He only in a general honest thought | And common good to all, made one of them. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, V, 5, 72.

My thought was I shall make a very bad soldier, and my brother would be a very good one. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 630. (Note the alternate use of *to make* and *to be* in practically identical connexions.)

ii. I am told he makes a handsome corpse. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man.*, I. The Elliot pride could not endure to make a third in a one-house chaise. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. X, 92.

Maggie thought it would make a very nice heaven to sit by the pool in that way. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 32.

Observe that the verb may be accompanied by another non-prepositional adjunct denoting the person that is benefited by what is expressed by the quasi-object.

You'll make my child a good husband. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. XXXIV, 342.

c) *to cost*. See the comment in O. E. D. The transitiveness is least questionable when the verb is used in a figurative meaning, as in:

The construction of their combs costs them a great deal of labour. GOLDSMITH, *Nat. Hist.*, VIII, 72.<sup>1)</sup> (= almost *caused*.)

The pearl island had cost John Oxenham his life. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XVIII, 135b. (= almost *caused ... the loss of*.)

The journey having cost a little more than 14 hours. TYNDALL, *Glac.*, I, XIV, 99.<sup>1)</sup> (= almost *taken*.)

6. verbs which by some process are converted from intransitives into transitives often exhibit their altered application but feebly. This is the case with:

a) verbs that are furnished with a cognate object which is attended by an adnominal adjunct. Thus in such a sentence as *He lived a simple life* the word-group *a simple life* has practically the same value as the adverb *simply*. Similarly *They fought a gallant action* does not materially differ from *They fought gallantly*. Only the fact that in such sentences the complement of the verb is also felt to denote the result of the activity justifies the denomination object. For illustration and further discussion see below, 44 f.

b) verbs which are used to express a mode of uttering, the thing uttered being a kind of sentiment, as in *He smiled approbation* *He looked inquiry*. In sentences of this description the noun may often be understood to indicate the manner in which the action is performed, so that it is, semantically, equivalent to an adverb

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

of quality. In fact the above sentences differ little in meaning from respectively *He smiled approvingly* and *He looked inquiringly*. At the same time the noun is more or less felt to express the result or effect of the activity, i. e. as a kind of cognate object (44, *b*). For further discussion see 46 and Ch. LIX, 101, *a*.

*c*) verbs which are attended by a noun imagined to denote the product of the activity, but mainly serving the purpose of expressing great intensity. Thus *He wept hot tears* comes near to *He wept vehemently*. Similarly *It was raining cats and dogs* is a picturesque expression for *It was raining tremendously*. For further comment see below 48 f.

*d*) verbs that owe their altered application to the absorption of a preposition, as in *to run an errand*, which is practically equivalent to *to run on an errand*; *to talk business*, which is short for *to talk about business*. For further discussion see 50 ff.

7. Conversely a verb may be a genuine transitive, although not furnished with a (pro)noun doing duty as non-prepositional object. The fact is that the object is often to be inferred from the context, no necessity being felt to repeat it in the shape of a pronoun. The verb may then be said to be used absolutely.
8. The suppression of the object is regular when it would represent a subordinate question to be inferred from a preceding part of the discourse. For full illustration see Ch. XXXII, 23.

"Lydia, what is the reason of this?" — "Ask the gentleman, ma'am." SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3, (265).

9. The suppression of the object is more or less common after a great many verbs when it would represent a subordinate statement, an infinitive phrase or an ordinary noun to be inferred from an earlier or subsequent part of the discourse. For illustration see also Ch. XXXIV, 25 ff.

i. \* "Arnoul killed?" shrieked Torfrida. — "Is it possible that you do not know?" — "How should I know?" CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew*, Ch. XXXV, 149*a*.  
 "Would the theatres and halls find it pay, if they were open on Sundays?" — "I doubt." *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 5*b*.

\*\* I should like to ask you one question, if you will allow me. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 185.

You never hold trumps, you know — I always do. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. III, 24.

Gwendolen was pressed to keep her seat (sc. at the piano) and double the general pleasure, and she did not refuse. *id.*, *Dan. Der.*, I, 1, Ch. V, 66.

His hand actually seemed like a steel vice that could have crushed mine, if he had chosen. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. II, 15.

\*\*\* "Have you a secret, Mr. Curphew?" — "I have, I have always intended to tell him, but I wanted you to know it first." *Punch*, 1893, 136*b*.

ii. Mon ami — you forget, I have introduced you to this gentleman. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVII, 168.

I don't know how I knew, but I did know that that house was a home of love. HALL CAINE, *The Woman Thou Gavest me*, Ch. VI, 22.

**Note.** Sometimes the suppression seems to impart a modified meaning to the verb, so that it may be apprehended as intransitive (Ch. XXXIV, 25).

Regular subscribers may have six of these (sc. lists of Books Wanted) inserted monthly, provided space admits. *Bookman*, 1897, 39a. (= approximately *is not unfavourable*.)

- 10.** The suppression of the object-pronoun illustrated by the following examples, appears to be unusual:

I put the Moor | At least into a jealousy so strong | That judgement cannot cure. SHAK., *Oth.*, II, I, 311.

Madame saw all this, but she still pretended not to see. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. X, 113.

They are fond of the latest news for its own sake; they like to receive it and to impart. Sir EDW. COOK, *Delane and "The Times"*, Ch. II, 11.

- 11.** Likewise when a (pro)noun is replaced by an adverb, the verb may be said to retain its transitive character.

As has been shown in Ch. XXXIV, 26 ff, it is especially *so* which often has the same function as *it* or *that (this)*, the choice depending on a delicate distinction of meaning, which in some cases it is hard to define. We need only repeat here that the objective *so* may represent a subordinate statement after verbs of judging or declaring, or an infinitive(-clause) after *to do*.

i. "I wonder whether Mrs. Rashleigh will let him and his friend photograph the ruins." — "I hope so." Mrs. ALEXANDER, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. III, 40.

ii. "I write", said Warrington. "I don't tell the world that I do so," he added with a blush. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 332.

- 12.** Also other adverbs may assume a substantival character and, consequently, become adapted to supply the place of objects.

He wished his niece well. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, I, Ch. IV, 52. (*well* has approximately the same meaning as *all good things*.)

When do you leave here to catch your train? HARDY, *Jude*, IV, Ch. I, 256. (*here* is practically equivalent to *this place*.)

Rumours of separate Italian negotiations reached here some time ago. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 18, 365a.

It was his sensitiveness that played him false. *Times*, Lit. Sup., No. 990 6b. (*false* might be replaced by *a trick*.)

He had not very much longer to enjoy it. GALSW., *Ind. Sum.*, Ch. I, (381) (= *a very much longer time*.)

- 13.** The floating nature of transitiveness appears especially from the fact that:

a) some verbs have in course of time changed their status, transitives having become intransitives, and vice versa;

b) some verbs are used transitively and intransitively without an appreciable difference in meaning;

c) some transitives have practically the same meaning as intransitives + preposition;

d) some transitives correspond in cognate languages to verbs requiring a preposition or governing another case than the accusative, and vice versa.

14. a) A good many verbs which in the earlier stages of the language are found construed without a preposition now regularly, or all but regularly, take one. Numerous instances are given by FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 630. Compare also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 29. Thus SHAKESPEARE has:

<i>to arrive a point</i>	for Pres. Eng. <i>to arrive at a point.</i>
<i>to associate friends</i>	" " " <i>to associate with friends.</i>
<i>to chat a person</i>	" " " <i>to chat of a person.</i>
<i>to depart the field</i>	" " " <i>to depart from the field.</i>
(We still say <i>to depart this life</i> .)	
<i>to despair a charm</i>	" " " <i>to despair of a charm.</i>
<i>to listen a person</i>	" " " <i>to listen to a person.</i>
<i>to look a person</i>	" " " <i>to look for a person.</i>
<i>to moralize a spectacle</i>	" " " <i>to moralize about a spectacle.</i>
<i>to part a town</i>	" " " <i>to depart from a town.</i>
<i>to rejoice a thing</i>	" " " <i>to rejoice at a thing.</i>
<i>to scoff a thing</i>	" " " <i>to scoff at a thing.</i>
<i>to smile a speech</i>	" " " <i>to smile at a speech.</i>

Sometimes a particular application of a transitive verb has become obsolete. Thus SHAKESPEARE has:

<i>to fail an obligation</i>	for Pres. Eng. <i>to fail to fulfil an obligation.</i>
<i>to possess a person</i>	" " " <i>to inform a person.</i>
<i>to swear the Gods</i>	" " " <i>to adjure the Gods.</i>

Want of space forbids ample illustration. The following must suffice:

i. But ere we could arrive the point proposed, | Cæsar cried, 'Help me, Cassius, or I sink!' *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 110.

Also MILTON repeatedly uses *arrive* as a transitive verb.

Who shall . . . spread his airy flight, | Upborne with indefatigable wings, | Over the vast abrupt ere he arrive, | The happy isle? *Par. Lost*, II, 410.

ii. Listening their fear, | I could not say 'Amen', | When they did say 'God bless us'. *Macb.*, II, 2, 29. (Thus also *Much Ado*, III, 1, 12; *Rich II.*, II, 1, 9; *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 1, 41; *Henry VI. A.*, V, 3, 103.)

b) Change in the opposite direction seems to be less common.

SHAKESPEARE has a solitary instance of *to obey to* instead of the transitive Present English *to obey*. French has still *obéir à*.

Let the bird of loudest lay, | On the sole Arabian tree, | Herald sad and trumpet be, | To whose sound chaste wings obey. *The Phoenix and the Turtle*, 4.

The O. E. D. quotes two instances of *to enjoy of* dated respectively 1515 and 1557, in which Present English would have the transitive *to enjoy*. Compare the French *jouir de*. We copy the latest:

Of all that I have had, possessed, attained, und whereof I have enjoyed, I have onely two thinges, etc. *NORTH, Diall of Princes*, 238 a l.

SHAKESPEARE has three instances of *to flatter with* (a person), Present English acknowledging only *to flatter* (a person). In the first of the following quotations the folios omit the preposition. For *to flatter with* see also ABBOTT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 194, Note.



Should dying men flatter with those that live? *Rich. II, II, 1, 88.*

Unless I flatter with myself too much. *Two Gent.: IV, 4, 193.*

Desire him not to flatter with his lord nor hold him up with hopes. *Twelfth Night, I, 5, 322.*

c) Further instances of SHAKESPEARE'S practice deviating from present usage are found in:

Disorder, horror, fear and mutiny, | Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd | The field of Golgotha and dead men's skulls. *SHAK., Rich II, IV, 1, 143,* (Thus also *Mac b., III, 4, 105.* Compare: Not a leaf moved in there, no living thing stirred; so might an earth be where only trees inhabited. *GALSWORTHY, Beyond, IV, Ch. III, 371.*)

I am the King's friend, and will rid his foe. *Rich. II, V, 4, 11.* (Thus also *Henry VI, C, V, 5, 67.*)

It must not be supposed that the obsolete transitive constructions here referred to are the only, or even ordinary ones in the older writers. On the contrary some, if not most of them, will, on prolonged investigation, most probably be found to be rather exceptional than the reverse. Thus in SHAKESPEARE the transitive instances of *to arrive* are far outnumbered by the intransitive.

15. In Present English there are numerous verbs which are construed both as transitives and as intransitives, sometimes with a variety of prepositions, with hardly any or no appreciable difference in meaning. Thus it is difficult to see much difference between *to approve* and *to approve of a measure*, *to attain* and *to attain to an honourable position*, *to attend* and *to attend on (or to) a patient*, *to cease* and *to cease from troubling*, *to drink* and *to drink to a person's health*, *to flee* and *to flee from a country*, *to fly* and *to fly from a country*, *to forbear* and *to forbear from molesting a person*, *to jar* and *to jar (up)on (or against) a person*, *to jump (or to leap)* and *to jump (or to leap) over a wall (or ditch)*, *to mock* and *to mock at a person*, *to ponder* and *to ponder on or over a subject*, *to tread* and *to tread on a thing*. The matter being of some practical importance, ample illustration will not be deemed out of place.

*to approve*: i. These were symptoms which I did not internally approve. *GOLDSMITH, Vic, Ch. VI, (268).*

You will approve what I have done. *LYTTON, Night and Morn., 102.*

ii. I know he would not approve of me. *EDNA LYALL, Knight Errant, Ch. V, 40.*

His respect and affection for Mr. Hobbs were so great that he admired and approved of all his remarks. *MISS BURNETT, Little Lord, 29.*

WEBSTER, Dict., s.v. *approve* observes, "This word when it signifies *to be pleased*, is often followed by *of* . . . , as, *I approve of the measure*. But the tendency of modern usage is to omit *of*; as, *I approve the measure*."

*to attain*: i. He had never yet attained the modest object of his ambition. *DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. V, 47.*

By his own strength of character (he) not only attained an honourable position

for himself, but also achieved just distinction as a public man and useful citizen *Academy*.

She now attains her majority. *Times*, 1898, 551 c.

ii. If we would attain to knowledge of anything in God's true Creation, let us disbelieve them (sc. such theories) wholly. *CARLYLE*, *Hero-Worship*, 41.

It is true that he will only attain to art by practising it. *Acad.*, 1894, 228.

He attained to an honourable age and only lately left me. *SARAH GRAND*, *Our man*. *Nat.*, 77.

*to attend*: i. You must go on attending Fred. *G. ELIOT*, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXVI, 191.

He had been attending me for insomnia. *WATTS DUNTON*, *Aylwin*, XVI, 463.

ii. You called him in to attend on Fred. *G. ELIOT*, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXVI, 225.

iii. In consideration of a small sum the medical man attends to all the members. *ESCOTT*, *England*, Ch. II, 12.

The doctor was called in to attend to the child. *Illustr. Mag.*, 1889, 62.

*to cease*: i. "Well, my dear", said he, when she ceased speaking, "I have no more to say". *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. IX, 371.

On account of the snow the cars on the tramways ceased running at eight o'clock. *O. E. D.*, s. v. *car*, 2.

ii. Where the wicked cease from troubling and the weary are at rest. *Bible*, *Job*, III, 17.

Many a time did Charlotte and Anne drop their sewing, or cease from their writing. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 279.

*to flee*: i. Many families had already fled the city. *DICK.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. LVI.

He had no course open but to flee the country and take refuge in France. *Graphic*, 1889, 713 b.

ii. Clive fled from the town by night. *MAC.*, *Clive*.

He fled from the city of destruction. *BAIN.*, *H. E. Gr.*, 86.

*to fly*: i. I must fly this kingdom instantly. *SHER*, *Riv.*, V, 1.

He evaded a trial by flying his convent and taking refuge in Rome. *Lit. World*, 1889, 244 c.

ii. You fly from some danger, some pursuit. *LYTTON*, *Night and Morn*, 31.

The defeated army flying from the victorious Jutes. *WALT. BESANT*, *Lond.*, I, 34.

*to forbear*: i. I cannot forbear condemning this sentiment. *HUME*, *Es.*, III, 13.

I cannot forbear to give another quotation. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, *Angler*.

ii. He forbore from molesting Miss Amory. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 73.

*to jar*: i. For the first time David was jarred. *Mrs. WARD*, *Dav. Grieve*, II, 162.

The sound jarred him. *KATH. CECIL THURSTON*, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. I, 8.

ii. The iniquity of the proposal jarred against the public conscience. *GREEN*, *Short Hist.*, VI, v, 328.

iii. The scene had jarred upon his nerves. *G. ELIOT*, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 395. The constable's cheery voice jarred on him. *KATH. CECIL THURSTON*, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. I, 3.

*to mock*: i. You always mock me. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVII, 303.

II. Whig and Tory journals alike mocked at me for my persistent resistance. *ANNIE BESANT*, *Autobiography*, 289.

*to play*: i. Catherine played three instruments, but she did not sing. *G. ELIOT*, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. V, 62.

Tom Pinch played the organ for nothing. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 247 b.

II. He played tolerably on the fiddle. WASH. IRV., DOLF. HEYL. (STOF., Handl., I, 111).

Gwendolen had played on the piano. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, Ch. III, 46.

*to ponder*: i. He (stared) at the crumbs upon the glistening damask, as he pondered the question. MISS BRADDON, Lady Audley, I, Ch. XXV, 294. It is good, too, that these crimes should be remembered and freshly pondered. MOTLEY, Rise, III, Ch. VIII, 501 a.

ii. Pondering on what the Ghost had said, Scrooge did so now. DICK., Christm. Car.

iii. As Clark sat and pondered over these things, the expression of his face grew overcast and moody. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

*to tread*: i. And Arthur came, and labouring up the pass, ... unawares | Had trodden that crown'd skeleton. TEN., Lanc. and El., 49.

ii. When a traveller ... | Treads on a snake unseen. BOWEN, Æneid, II, 380.<sup>1)</sup>

Such differences of construction are not, of course, confined to English. Thus there is no material difference between the Latin *adire locum* and *adire ad locum*, *celare aliquem aliquid* and *celare aliquem de aliqua re*, *desperare aliquid* and *desperare de aliqua re*, *dolere aliquid* and *dolere de aliqua re*, *laetari aliquid* and *laetari de aliqua re*, *queri aliquid* and *queri de aliqua re*, *sequi aliquid* and *sequi de aliqua re*, *sperare aliquid* and *sperare de aliqua re*.

16. Among English transitives which are practically equivalent to English intransitives mention may be made of *to address* = *to speak to* (a person), *to deceive* = *to impose (up)on* (a person), *to deride* = *to laugh at* (a thing), *to discuss* = *to treat* (of a subject), *to get* = *to prevail (up)on* (a person to do a thing).
17. A diligent and patient search would have no difficulty in bringing to light numerous cases in which English verbs are differently construed from their approximate equivalents in cognate languages. We must confine ourselves to the following instances:

- |                                  |                                           |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| i. <i>to deride a thing</i>      | = Dutch <i>om iets lachen</i> .           |
| ii. <i>to add to a thing</i>     | = „ <i>iets verhoogen</i> .               |
| <i>to detract from a thing</i>   | = „ <i>iets verminderen</i> .             |
| <i>to dispense with a thing</i>  | = „ <i>iets missen</i> .                  |
| <i>to operate upon a patient</i> | = „ <i>een patient opereeren</i> .        |
| <i>to pay for a thing</i>        | = „ <i>iets betalen</i> .                 |
| <i>to preside over a meeting</i> | = „ <i>een vergadering presideeren</i> .  |
| <i>to spy on actions</i>         | = „ <i>handelingen bespionneeren</i> .    |
| i. <i>to abuse a thing</i>       | = French <i>abuser de quelque chose</i> . |
| <i>to applaud a thing</i>        | = „ <i>applaudir à quelque chose</i> .    |
| <i>to enjoy a thing</i>          | = „ <i>jouir de quelque chose</i> .       |
| <i>to obey a person</i>          | = „ <i>obéir à quelqu'un</i> .            |
| <i>to oppose a measure</i>       | = „ <i>opposer à une mesure</i> .         |

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s. v. tread, 4.

<i>to resist a person or thing</i>	=	French <i>résister à quelqu'un</i> or <i>quelque chose.</i>
<i>to renounce a thing</i>	=	" <i>renoncer à quelque chose.</i>
<i>to succeed a person</i>	=	" <i>succéder à quelqu'un.</i>
<i>to survive a person</i>	=	" <i>survivre à quelqu'un.</i>
ii. <i>to aim at a thing</i>	=	" <i>viser quelque chose.</i>
<i>to listen to a thing</i>	=	" <i>écouter quelque chose.</i>
<i>to ring for the servant</i>	=	" <i>sonner la servante.</i>
<i>to tumble down the stair- case</i>	=	" <i>dégringoler l'escalier.</i>

### Verbs which are used both transitively and intransitively.

18. Almost all verbs are used both transitively and intransitively.
- Sometimes the two applications appear to be equally natural, so that it would be difficult, or indeed impossible, to tell which is the original.
  - Sometimes one application is clearly felt to be a modification of the other. It is especially this transition which is of peculiar interest to the student of English.

The transitive and intransitive use equally natural.

19. a) When the transitive and intransitive application of a verb seem to be equally natural, this is mostly owing to the fact that the action it denotes, although originated by a force lying outside a person or thing, is fancied to lie within that person or thing; in other words the person or thing which is in reality the recipient of the action is at the same time thought of as its originator. Thus when we say *The door opened* we fancy the door to be endowed with some power to set itself in motion, although a moment's reflection makes us aware that the movement is in reality due to the operation of some outside agent: some person or animal, a puff of wind, etc. When the notion of a self-originating movement makes itself strongly felt, there will be a tendency to furnish the verb with a reflexive pronoun; i. e. such a sentence as *The door opened* will be changed into *The door opened itself*. In the above example such a notion would hardly rise to the speaker's mind, unless he wanted to describe a remarkable phenomenon. The reflexive pronoun, however, would then be turned into an emphatic reflexive pronoun (XLVIII, 10, d). It need hardly be observed that this process restores to the verb its transitivity.
- In passing it may be observed that the fancied transference of

the moving power from the originator to the recipient of the action postulates some form of personification (Ch. XLIV, 16), which is naturally strongest when the predicate is made reflexive (Ch. XLVIII, 10, c).

*b*) In not a few cases the transitive use may be understood to be the causative application of the intransitive (37). Thus *to break the stick* may be apprehended to stand for *to cause the stick to break*. But in using the verb transitively we are not aware of any causative notion, and to our linguistic instinct there is, therefore, no occasion to consider this application less original than the intransitive.

20. Among the verbs whose transitive and intransitive application appear to be equally natural, a separate group is formed by such as have been formed from other parts of speech, especially adjectives and nouns, either in the vernacular or in the language from which they have been taken. As intransitives these verbs mostly have an ingressive, as transitives a causative meaning. Thus *to blacken* may have the value of either *to become black* or *to make black*. Sometimes the first, sometimes the second is the commoner application. Sometimes also each application is current in only one particular shade of meaning. For the rest it need hardly be said that discussion and illustration of the various shades of meaning of these verbs belongs to the department of lexicography.

Many of these verbs are uniform with the part of speech from which they have been formed; thus, among many others, the native *to brown*, *to clear*, *to crimson*, *to employ*, *to grey*, *to near*, *to slow*; and the foreign *to benefit*, *to colour*, *to feast*. Others, all of them belonging to the native element of the language, have been formed by the suffix *en*; thus, among many others, from adjectives: *to blacken*, *to darken*, *to deepen*, *to fatten*, *to harden*, *to lessen*, *to moisten*, *to quicken*, *to redden*, *to sicken*, *to whiten*, *to worsen*; from nouns: *to hasten*, *to heighten*, *to lengthen*, *to strengthen*.

Besides *to (a)waken* the language has *to (a)wake*, the different forms being used indiscriminately in the literal sense with no further limitation than follows from the desire to satisfy the needs of metre or rhythm. To the above we may add numerous verbs which, though not directly derived from adjectives, are distinctly suggestive of adjectives, such as *to blanch*, *to enlarge*, *to fill*.

For illustration we may refer to the dictionary. The following must suffice in this place:

*awaken*: i. Debora awakened from her dreams and smiled. MARY WEBB, *The Golden Arrow*. Ch. I, 5.

ii. Even this failed to awaken the sleeper. DICKENS, *Barn Rudge*, Ch. XVII.

*to benefit*: i. You've been born when there was the march o' intellect .. and naturally you've benefited thereby. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I, (16).  
Some one will benefit some day! GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, I, Ch. III, 27.

ii. A system of duties which injures our interests without benefiting those of the colonies. LUBBOCK, *Addr. Pol. and Educ.*, I, 8.<sup>1)</sup>

*to blanch*: i. Alick and David blanch to hear Maggie speaking softly as if to John. BARRIE, *What Every Woman knows*, II, (42).

ii. Deem'st thou I tremble for my life? | Sir Childe, I'm not so weak; | But thinking on an absent wife | Will blanch a faithful cheek BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, XIII, 6.

*to chafe*: i. "Nina — I mean Miss Ross — is an old friend of mine", he said, just beginning to chafe a little. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XIV.

ii. She .. laid his head upon her lap .. and chafed his hands. TEN, *Pas. of Arth.*, 387.

*to darken*: i. The men's faces darkened a shade. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, XVIII, 40.

ii. (Her) eyes seemed to darken their whole neighbourhood in her face. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 7a.

*to enlarge*: i. An estate enlarges by good management. A volume of air enlarges by rarefaction. WEBST., *Dict.*

ii. A good man rejoices to enlarge the sphere of his benevolence. Knowledge enlarges the mind. *ib.*

*to hasten*: i. Scotland .. hastened to sign the Covenant. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VIII, § 7, 551.

ii. She feared from his looks, that the same unfortunate persuasion, which had hastened him away from the Concert Room, still governed. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXII, 228.

*to heighten*: i. The public anxiety heightened at every stage of the disorder. FREEMAN, *Norm. Cong.*, III, xi, 9<sup>1)</sup>.

ii. This remarkable fact served to heighten his determination on another day. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XIII, 192.

*to slant*: i. An aged oak, | That slanted from the islet rock. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xvii.

ii. He presently slanted me off the scale and pushed me over to him. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37a.

*to sweeten*: i. She set her mother's milk-pails upside-down on the garden hedge to sweeten. MARY WEBB, *The Golden Arrow*, Ch. I, 2.

ii. Graver hours that bring constraint | To sweeten liberty. GRAY, *Eton*, 34.

21. Another group of verbs whose transitive and intransitive application appears to be equally natural is formed by such as may denote either an activity of the senses or the giving of a sense-impression; e. g. *to feel*, *to smell*, *to taste*. Thus not only *The doctor felt the pulse*, but also *The bed felt hard* (i. e. was hard to the sense of feeling); not only *He tasted the food*, but also *The food tasted bitter* (i. e. The food was bitter to the sense of taste).

The nature of the sense-impression is mostly indicated by an adjective; thus in:

The bed feels hard. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 183.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

The temperature is now plus 5° Fahr., but it feels much warmer, for there is a dead calm and the sun is shining. SHACKLETON, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, Ch. XI, 158.

Compare also the following quotation, in which to *have a feel* is equivalent to *to feel* and also the nature of the sense-impression is indicated by an adjective:

The Cathedral had both a damp feel and a damp touch this afternoon. DICK., *Edw. Drood*, Ch. II, (18).

*to smell*: The dinner smelt delicious. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVII, 298a.

Everything smells good in England. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. VI, 144.

The rose smells sweet. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 393, N.

*to sound*: The voice sounded harsh. *ib.*

*to taste*: The dinner tasted flat. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. II, 32.

Also *to sit* as used in the following quotation may be mentioned here as a kind of synonym of *to feel*:

They'll (sc. the fetters will) sit as easy as a glove. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II, 1.

22. Obs. 1. The nature of the sense-impression may also be expressed by:

α) an adverb, e. g. in:

The rags smelt unpleasantly. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XVI, 305.

It smelt abominably. WELLS, *Kipps*, III, Ch. I, § 5, 286.

"Joi" sounds oddly to us when applied to a liquid. Note to Shak. *Merch.*, IV, 1, 302 (Clar. Press).

I own it tastes well. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

Thus also with *to sit*, as in:

It sits so softly on the shoulder that [etc.]. Whiteley's *Diary*, Advertisement.

In questions it is always the adverb *how*, or the adverbial word-group *what like*, that is used with the above verbs.

Let us listen .. and find how it (sc. a marriage) feels to us when performed in a church. HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. IV, 358.

How it feels to be in England. Manch. *Guard*.

He told her .. what it felt like to be gassed. GALSW., *To let*, I, Ch. XII, (898).

β) a noun used adverbially the mind supplying such a word as *like* before it, e. g. in:

it sounded to me the sweetest music I had heard for may a long day. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 75.

γ) an adverbial clause, e. g. in:

Jenny's heart felt as though it were bursting. FRANK SWINNERTON, *September*, III, Ch. XII, III, 247.

All her body felt as if on fire. GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, III, Ch. VI, 283.

In these last sentences the use of an adverbial clause is, apparently, resorted to, because no single adjective or adverb is available to indicate the nature of the sense-impression.

In such a sentence as *The food smelled (or tasted) of mint*, the noun standing after the preposition *of* may be said to indicate the cause of a sense-impression, whose nature is left unexpressed from want of an adequate adjective. If this interpretation is accepted, *of* must be assumed to have a causal meaning.

III. The construction in the following sentences admits of two interpretations:

The room struck cold Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, Prol., Ch. I, 21.

Summer nightwear "strikes chilly" Manch. Guard., IX, 14, 1b.

We may understand the originally transitive *strike* to have become intransitive through absorption of the object (26); but we feel also the affinity with such a sentence as *The bed felt cold*. Indeed the first sentence may be interpreted thus: *The room revealed itself to be cold, the person concerned being struck with its coldness*. An analogous interpretation may be put upon the second sentence. The latter interpretation appears to be the more plausible one when viewed in the light of the impersonal use of the verb *to strike*, as in:

It struck cold that morning in the church. GALSWORTHY, *Tatterdemalion*, I, Ch. I, 14.

23. Besides the above groups of verbs there are hosts of others which offer no obvious features justifying a pronouncement as to the relative priority of their transitive or intransitive application. Their definition and illustration belongs to the task of the lexicographer and need not, therefore, be attempted in these pages. It is, perhaps, worth observing that some in their intransitive application may be assumed to have absorbed some object; thus, for example, *to read*, *to sing*, *to speak* and *to write*, as used in the following sentences. Compare 28 and 29.

She could neither read nor write. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, IV, Ch. III, 105.

Gwendolen . . . had sung to her hearers' admiration. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, I, Ch. III, 46.

Catherine plays three instruments, but she does not sing. *ib.*, I, I, Ch. V, 62.

The child speaks already. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 182.

The transitive application turned into an intransitive and vice-versa.

24. The processes which are at work in causing transition from transitive into intransitive, and vice-versa, are very numerous and may, most of them, be observed also in Dutch and other cognate languages. As the following discussions will show, these forces operate more energetically and in another way in English than in most other languages, so that some of the changes cannot fail to strike the observant student with surprise or even astonishment.

#### Transitives turned into Intransitives.

25. Transitives are turned into intransitives *a)* through absorption of the object; *b)* through being used in a passive meaning without a change of voice; *c)* through no clear process.



Transitives turned into Intransitives through  
absorption of the object.

26. A great many transitive verbs are often used intransitively through having the object absorbed into them. The verb may then be said to be used in a *pregnant* meaning, more being meant than is actually expressed. The pregnant use of a verb is to be distinguished from the absolute (6), which latter term should be restricted to that application of a verb, or any other part of speech, in which the complement is not expressed, because it is to be found in, or may be supplied from, an earlier or, occasionally, subsequent part of the discourse. Compare DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 40, 4.
27. A notable case of absorption is the frequent loss of the reflexive and the occasional loss of the reciprocal pronoun (Ch. XLVII and Ch. XLVIII). The following quotation contains several instances:  
I see him shaving before a cracked mirror at the door of his dug-out, with the shells bursting on the hill-side, and at all odd moments indefatigably brushing, cleaning, washing, polishing, so that he may go smart, as a soldier should, in this world of mud and vermin. Westm. Gaz., No. 8539, 1a.
28. Very frequently some object is more or less distinctly suggested by the circumstances of the case described. Thus *to build* may sometimes be assumed to stand for *to build nests*, *to exhibit* for *to exhibit pictures*. In the following quotations the object suggested is added and placed within brackets.
- to arrange*: I'll write you a note this afternoon as soon as I've arranged with the clergyman. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. IX, 169. (sc. the matter in hand.)
- to approach*: A man in the light drab clothes of an old-fashioned country tradesman approached from round the corner, reeling as he came. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, III, Ch. I, 55. (sc. the place where the speakers were standing)
- to adjourn*: After dinner we immediately adjourned to the school-room. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 57. (sc. the meeting.)
- to bear*: We can look at the ice and see whether it will bear to-morrow. MAR. CRAWF., A Tale of a Lonely Parish, Ch. V, 49. (sc. a grown-up person.)
- to build*: Some of the rarest birds built in the old mossy trees. SWEET, The Old Chap. (sc. nests)
- to carry on*: As divisional officer commanding, he was quite satisfied to carry on, till the executive meeting. Manch. Guard., VIII, 15, 288 b. (sc. the business in hand.)
- to conduct*: It is some sixteen years since Weingartner conducted here. ib., VIII, 22, 435 b. (sc. concerts.)
- to cut*: I am obliged to cut and contrive. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, Ch. III, 44. (sc. expenses.)
- to drink*: Even when he had been drinking, (he) said little. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, II, 53. (sc. spirits.)
- to exhibit*: I never exhibited in the Academy. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, IV, Ch. IV, 216. (sc. my pictures.)

*to explain*: "All crime and all excellence depend on a good choice of words." I see you look puzzled; I will explain. LYTTON, *Paul Cliff*, Ch. X, 97. (sc. what I mean.)

*to fail*: Soon after dawn the speech of the dying man failed. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 12. (sc. him.)

*to feel*: I feel for the girl. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. III, 49. (sc. pity.)

*to fix*: Gus Hoskins and I.. had fixed on a very snug little cottage in Camden Town. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 95. (sc. our choice.)

*to forget*: The vanquished never forgets. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 339, 235*b*. (sc. that he has been vanquished.)

*to hear*: It was three weeks since she had heard at all. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVIII, 165. (sc. any news.)

Have you heard from Rosa lately? HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. II, 60. (sc. any news.)

As the village girl, | Who sets her pitcher underneath the spring, | Musing on him that used to fill it for her, | Hears and not hears, and lets it overflow. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 219. (sc. the noise of the flowing water.)

She .. shot a few hints of a notion having got abroad that he was a disappointed adorer. Grandcourt heard with quietude, but with attention. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XV, 234. (sc. this talk.)

*to lay*: All the eggs but one were taken in order to find out if the birds would lay again. SHACKLETON, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, App. I, 357. (sc. eggs.)

*to lay on*: The father might lay on, but he could not beat him from the pig. CH. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, *Dis. on Roast Pig*, 225. (sc. the rod. Compare *O. E. D.*, s. v. *lay on*, *b*; and especially ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Syn t.*, § 104, Note).

*to learn*, He thought that they might get on better if they drilled by themselves a bit, and that if he helped them and they helped him, they would soon learn. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, IV, 9. (sc. whatever there was to learn. Compare *O. E. D.*, s. v. *learn*, 2.)

*to leave*: Since she was forbidden to walk and bustle about, and, indeed, could not do so, it became her duty to leave. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies* I, Ch. I, 15. (sc. her service.)

She implored him to leave immediately. *ib.*, VI, Ch. III, 159. (sc. her, or the spot where they stood.)

*to lock up*: 'You can go to bed, Parfitt', said Jolyon. 'I will lock up and put out.' GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. II, 40. (sc. the doors, the lights.)

*to pay*: "Hang the expense for once", he said. "I'll pay!" HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, IV, Ch. I, 94. (sc. whatever there is to pay.)

*to promise*: She had promised Humphrey Gould, and it was only his assumed faithlessness which had led her to treat that promise as nought. *ib.*, VI, Ch. IV, 165. (sc. to become his wife.)

*to read*: As he walked he read persistently. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. II, 59. (sc. the book he had in his hand.)

*put to*: You know how impossible my father would deem it that James should put to for such a purpose. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXVI, 214. (sc. the horses.)

*to repent*: What a fine thing capital punishment is! Dead men never repent. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IX. (sc. their misdeeds.)

*to sell*: We have sold to thousands of people this way for the past ten years. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 338, *Adv.* (sc. these articles.)

*to send*: Have you sent to Bottom's house? SHAK., *Mids*, IV, 2, 1. (sc. a message, or a messenger.)

I shall send to you. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I.

*to set down*: The door was open, and a number of carriages full of ladies were drawing up and setting down. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 22. (sc. passengers. Compare: Shall we have the pleasure of setting you down anywhere? *ib.*, Ch. III, 28.)

*to strike*: i. The London omnibus men struck in a body. Sat. Rev., 21, 1892, 101. (sc. work. Compare: I am afraid I must strike work. Mrs. GASK., Cous. Phil., II, 46.)

ii. The first match fizzed along the box as it was struck, and immediately went out. "Oh, do hurry up!" cried Emmy in a whisper, thinking he was still sporting with her. "Don't keep on larking about, Alf!" — "I'm not!" indignantly answered the delinquent. "It wouldn't strike." FR. SWINNERTON, Nocturne, III, Ch. XI, xi, 237. (sc. a light.)

*to take*: The new melodrama .. takes mightily. Miss MITFORD.<sup>1)</sup> (sc. the fancy of the people.)

*to throw up*: I must manage the whole election on our side, and unite all our shaky votes, which I can best do by standing myself in the first instance, reserving it to after consideration whether I shall throw up at the last. LYTON, My Novel, II. XII, Ch. XII, 424. (sc. my candidature.)

*to try*: On parade, as long as we were trying, his smile encouraged us. DON. HANKEY, The Beloved Capt., IV, 10. (sc. to do our best)

*to turn*: The house .. was covered by Virginia creeper just turning. GALS-WORTHY, Beyond, III, Ch. XI, 325. (sc. colour.)

*to weigh*: Shelley and Williams weighed for Leghorn. Acad. and Lit. (sc. anchor.)

*to write*: At length he sent her a brief line, positively requesting her to write. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, IV, Ch. III, 103. (sc. a letter.)

Note especially *to suffer* which in older English often stands for *to suffer death*. Compare the Latin *obiit Kal. Mart.* = *obiit mortem Kal. Mart.* = He died on the first of March.

He suffered under Pontius Pilate. Apostles' Creed.

He suffered and was buried. Nicene Creed.

This is no fish, but an islander, that hath lately suffered by a thunderbolt. SHAK., Temp., II, 2, 34.

In *to sell out* (*of the army*) the verb *to sell* appears to stand for *to sell one's commission*. *out* (*of the army*) denoting the result of the transaction.

The Major .. had sold out and gone upon half-pay. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 22.

It was in this period that he quitted the Guards and sold out of the army. *id.*, Van. Fair., II, Ch. I, 3

29. In many cases, however, no particular object is suggested by the context, nothing more special than things in general being imaginable as a complement to the action expressed by the verb. What is predicated of the subject is, indeed, often nothing beyond a certain faculty, quality or state. Thus *to hear* may be equivalent to *to have the faculty of hearing*; *to endure* to *to be* (or *to become*) *long-suffering*; *if opportunity serves* (or *favours*) *to if opportunity is* (or *becomes*) *serviceable* (or *favourable*). Approximate equivalents of the verbs in the following quotations

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

are added to bring out the vague nature of the absorbed object. Naturally there is no strict distinction between the absorbed objects referred to in this section and those mentioned in the preceding section.

*to do*: If Augustine fussed any more, she would send her away and do for herself. GALSWORTHY, *Tatterdemalion*, I, 1, 16. (= do things.)

*to endure*: Strong in that hope she continued to endure, MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, Ch. V, 31. (= to be enduring or long-suffering.)

*to favour*: He might not be sorry, if law and opportunity favoured, to kick that Blue editor to a deeper shade of his favourite colour. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VII, 230. (= were favourable.)

*to grind*: If the mills of God grind slowly, they grind exceeding small. *Manch. Guard*, 28,3, — 24, 242*b*. (= grind things.)

*to manage*: I managed very well before we were married. LICK, *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 25*b*. (= managed things.)

*to mistake*: If i mistake not, a strong sense of duty is no bad part of a woman's portion. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXIII, 255. (= am not mistaken.)

*to see*: Blind men saw. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 248. (= saw things in general, or became endowed with sight.)

*to serve*: He intends, if opportunity serves, to move that [etc.] *Times*. (= is serviceable.)

*to take*: And then, they say, no spirit can walk abroad; | The nights are wholesome; then no planets strike, | No fairy takes. SHAK, *Hamlet*, I, 1, 163. (= has the power of striking with disease. Compare: There he blasts the tree and takes the cattle *Merry Wives*, IV, 4, 32 Bless thee from whirlwinds, star-blast ng and taking. *Lear*, III, 4, 61)

*to tell*: If the Church is to keep its position, ability and character ought to tell. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, 1, Ch. III, 46 (= to count for something.)

His speeches have not told. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/22, 1922, 2*a*. (= been effective.)

The following quotations contain more than one instance:

If her face is not her fortune, her face and her brains together will be, if I observe and contrive aright. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. II, 60. Whenever there is need to do things quickly — and in the legislative field in present circumstances all things must be done quickly — the peers have the power to obstruct and delay, if not actually to destroy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8574, 2*a*.

Note the idiomatic use of *to know better* (= to have learnt better (things) from experience; and *to know better than* (= to be more prudent or discreet than). See also Ch. XVIII, 7, Note; 28, *e*; Ch. XXX, 7, *b* and Ch. LV, 48, *a*, 2.

i. To the ignorant it may seem that the duke lives on the land, lies soft, and has no cares. But we know better. We know that if he worked only half as hard as the average working-man, he would get twice as much satisfaction out of his life. EDWIN PUGH, *Pity the Poor Dukes* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 1*b*).

ii. Roland knew better than to stop. *Story of Rob Roy*.

They might know better than the leave their clocks so very lank and unprotected, surely. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 4.

30. Also prepositional adjuncts or adverbial adjuncts are often implied in the verb or the adjective, standing for either rather defined or vague notions. After what has been said in the two preceding sections, it seems unnecessary to insist on possible distinctions.

The following quotations are, therefore, simply given with observation of the alphabetical succession of the verbs, or adjectives concerned.

*to arrive*: We do arrive fast in America. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 207. (sc. at our goal.)

*to belong*: Did I tell you that I have been elected a member of the Senior Dramatic Club? .. Do you think, as a consistent socialist, that I ought to belong? *ib.*, 192. (sc. to that club.)

*to comply*: "Draw your chair up to the table." The dismal man readily complied. DICK, *Pickwick*, Ch. III, 29. (sc. with the request.)

*to domineer*: The two grandmothers of Lovel's children were domineering over that easy gentleman, as women — not grandmothers merely, but sisters, wives, aunts, daughters, when the chance is given them — will domineer. THACK., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. III, 45. (sc. over the persons with whom they live.)

*to go*: "Oh, she's all right. I saw her on one of those whirligig things, talking to her young man as I came in. But I'll go if you wish, though I'd rather go a hundred miles the other way. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, IV, Ch. II, 96. (sc. to one of those whirligig things.)

*to submit*: "I doubt if you have heard it, my dear", the cherub submitted with hesitation. DICK., *Our Mut Friend*, IV, Ch. V, 67. (sc. to the opinion of those present.)

*to tally*: They had a description of his person which, though, as I afterwards found, it disagreed from mine in several material articles, appeared to tally to the minutest tittle. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, III, Ch. V, 333. (= sc. with mine.)

*to wait*: She had even offered to send Mr Mulliner to wait. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XVI, 302. (sc. at table.)

*aware*: "Mr. Helstone is somewhat prejudiced against me at present." — "I am aware." CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 300. (sc. of this.)

It is probable that she had lost her heart to Matthäus before she was herself aware. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, VI, Ch. I, 157. (sc. of having lost it.)

### 31. Also verbs that ordinarily have two objects not seldom have one of them understood.

That gives a man to think. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. II, 41. (sc. matter.)

No beggars implored him to bestow a trifle. DICK, *Christm. Car.* I. (sc. upon them.)

When a verb which governs a person-object and a thing-object has the latter understood, it is sometimes more or less modified in meaning, so that the person-object is felt to denote the direct recipient of the action.

I am not a good manager, but Henry has taught me. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. III, 44. (= instructed me.)

It was Mr. Fitz-boodle .. who offered me the cigar, and I did not like to refuse him. THACK., *Fitz-Boodle's Conf.*, I, 207. (almost = displease him.)

Transitives turned into Intransitives through being used passively without a change of voice.

### 32. Many transitives admit of being used intransitively through being used in a passive meaning without a change of voice. Predicates

formed by such verbs in this application may be said to be illogical (Ch. XLV, 5).

In many cases the change may be traced to a dropping or absorption of the reflexive or reciprocal pronoun (27), to be discussed in Ch. XLVII and Ch. XLVIII.

But the change may frequently be observed also without there being any clear notion of an original reflexiveness. The passiveness attaching to the verbs here referred to is not so pronounced as in the case of a passive voice, but the activity which is always ascribed to the subject when connected with a verb in the active voice, is here of the slightest. It is, therefore, only natural that these verbs are in this application almost exclusively found with non-personal subjects. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 249) calls the verbs thus used *passival verbs*.

*adjourn*: The meeting adjourned with acclamations. DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. II, 9*b*.

*to baptize*: An anabaptist is one who baptizes over again, whether frequently as a point of ritual, or once as a due performance of what has been ineffectually performed previously. O. E. D., s. v. *anabaptist*.

*to cancel out*: Between the two parties in the Coalition, Government policy cancelled out into zero. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8503, 4*b*. (Compare: But what policy is there? None at all, if the Coalition method of cancelling out Home Rule against Ulsterism is to go. *ib.* 5*a*.)

If the two things cancel out, the Chancellor of the Exchequer will be unable to make any serious reduction in his scale of taxation. *ib.*, No. 8591, 2*b*.

*to catch*: The light caught on the glossy raven hair. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XX, 127.

*to derive*: No actor can play Hamlet or Romeo or Shylock without the subtle unconscious criticisms which derive from the secret springs of his personality. *Westm. Gaz.*, 28/10, —22, 13*b*.

*to hatch*: Wy should .. hateful cuckoos hatch in sparrows' nests? SHAK., *Lucrece*, 849.

After this they put in the eggs to hatch. CHAMBERS, *Cycl.*, s. v. *Hatching*.<sup>1)</sup>

*to let*: There was some reason to suppose that all the mortgaged houses would speedily let. Sir J. BACON (in *Law Times Rep.* VII, 570/2<sup>1</sup>).

*to miscarry*: I reason'd with a Frenchman yesterday, | Who told me, in the narrow seas that part | The French and English, there miscarried | A vessel of our country richly fraught. SHAK., *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 8, 29.

I supposed that my letter had miscarried. BORROW, *Bible in Spain*, Ch. XXXV.

*to pull*: I pulled on shore. MARRYAT, *Peter Simple*, Ch. XLII, 473. (The context shows that the meaning is, 'I was pulled on shore by the crew.' Compare: They were pulled to shore and landed with great dignity at the pier. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXIII, 249.)

*to read*: There lay on the table a letter in his wife's handwriting. Mrs. Borradale had already opened it. It read: — (follows the letter). *Times*, No. 2305, 192*c*.

His note reads to see us all. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, I, Ch. I, 2.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

The item, "From Edinburgh University £ 11 10 s.," in an earlier list, should have read, "From the Students of German in Edinburgh University". *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 24, IIIc.

*to scatter*: The troops have arrived, and the rioters are scattering. *Mrs. WARD, Cous. Phil.*, Ch. VII, 153.

*to sell*: They sell at about a shilling a dozen. *Ht. MARTINEAU, Brooke Farm*, V, 63.<sup>1)</sup>

They (sc. the small-clothes) had cost exactly what the medallion had sold for. *LYTTON, My Novel*, I, II, Ch. VII, 109.

It (sc. the desirable residence) had sold within a week. *GALSWORTHY, In Chancery*, Ch. IV, (473).

*to take*: The bait took. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 183.

Mr. William Pitt .. took ill and died after Austerlitz. *TREVELYAN (in Independent Rev.)*, 1903, Dec., 409).<sup>1)</sup>

33. Obs. 1. Such a verb then frequently denotes a process of which the subject admits or to which it is liable. It is, accordingly, often preceded by *can*, *may*, or the iterative *will*, the verb-group having the value of an adjective in *able* or *ible*.

*to compare*: Mr. Swinnerton has written four or five other novels before this one, but none of them compare with it in quality. *WELLS, Pref. to Swinnerton, Nocturne*. (*can* might be supplied before *compare*.)

There is no bird in England can compare with the sweetness of his (sc. the blackcap's) voice. *TEMPLE THURSTON, The Open Window*, I, 6.

As a strengthening stimulating beverage no ordinary meat-extract can compare with bovril. *Il. Lond. News*.

*to construe*: This passage does not construe (i.e. admit of grammatical analysis). *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

*to digest*: Are you not aware .. that the unvarnished truth does not answer; that plain facts will not digest? *CH. BRONTË, Shirley*, II, Ch. XX, 393.

*to exchange*: Only the day-by-day production of food, or of commodities which will exchange for food, can do that (sc. feed a starving populace. *Contemp. Rev.*, No. 668, 167.

*to keep*: Meat will not keep in hot weather. *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 249.

He brought home more venison than would keep in the hot weather. *MARRYAT, Childr. of the New For.*, Ch. V.

Your story, however, can keep. *CON. DOYLE, Micah Clarke*, Ch. XI, 92.

*to lock*: It (sc. the door) won't lock. *HARDY, Jude*, IV, Ch. IV, 284.

*to spoil*: Fruit will soon spoil in hot weather. *WEBST., Dict.*

II. The sentence often contains:

a) an adverb, mostly *well*, denoting the degree of facility with which the subject allows of the process indicated by the verb.

*to eat*: They'll (sc. the rabbits) eat much better smothered with onions. *FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Stratagem*, I, I, (367).

*to fish*: The Kennet and Colne are other rivers which should fish well. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6153, 8c.

*to let*: The forests where the deer is trailed, and which were the costlies have not let well. *The Evening News*, No. 12394, 1d.

*to peel*: This orange peels easily. *WEBST., Dict.*

*to scan*: The verse scans well and offends against none of the laws of metre. *Acad.*

*to sell*: The book sells well. *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 249.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

H. POUTSMA, IIII.

Note. This verb appears to be the only one which has an agent-noun in the corresponding meaning; as yet current only in the language of the trade.

This remarkable toy is a great attraction and big seller. *Times*, 1921, 14 Jan., 29c.

This success has rendered Miss V(ictoria) C(ross) Griffin one of "the best sellers". *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8563, 12b.

*to translate*: The Welsh, I suspect, is not a language which translates well. *SOUTHEY, Lett.*, IV, 64.1)

*to transplant*: Nearly everything will transplant well now. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8209, 24b.

*to wear*: I chose my wife as she did her wedding-gown, not for a fine glossy surface, but such qualities as would wear well. *GOLDSMITH, Vic.*, Ch. I. (Observe that "I want a cloth that will wear" and "I want a cloth that will not wear" mean exactly the same thing. See *BRADLEY, The Making of English*, Ch. V, 189. Observe also that *to wear* and *to be worn* are used in precisely the same meaning in: One must always be guarded at the Fair against the assumption that all the bright thoughts in colour and shape in the cases are meant to wear, or perhaps one should say are likely to be worn. *Manch. Guard.*, 10 10, 1924, 316d.

β) an adverbial adjunct indicating the favourable or unfavourable result of the process to which the subject is subjected.

*to compare*: Pen's healthy red face compared oddly with the waxy debauched little features of Foker's chum. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53. (i. e. The comparison had an odd result.)

This compares favourably with the inertness of England. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *compare*, 4, b.

A landscape which will compare not unfavourably with the masterpieces of the Dutch school. *ib.* (Observe that *will* is the ordinary tense auxiliary, differing from the iterative *will*, as used in the quotations higher up.)

*to read*: All that reads oddly enough to-day. *Westm. Gaz.*, 11 11, 1922, 21a.

an adjective, or adjective equivalent, indicating a quality or state which is revealed in the subject on being subjected to the process denoted by the verb.

*to cut*: The meat cuts tough. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 183 shows itself to be tough when cut).

*to eat*: The cakes eat short and crisp. *ib.*

*to eat*: O father, the pig, the pig! do come and taste how nice the burnt pig eats. *LAMB, Es. of El.*, Dis. upon Roast Pig.

*to read*: The letters read full of a sparkling pleasure in the incidents of the tour. *MARJ. Bow.*, *The Rake's Prog.*, I, Ch. I, 2.

The Jugurtha, as the present translator hints, reads very much like a historical novel of the better class. *Times, Lit. Sup.*, No. 999, 156 a.

The speeches of the Ulster Premier .. read for the most part like counsels of rebellion and violence. *Manch. Guard.*, 9 5, 1924, 361b.

III. In many cases the passive meaning of the intransitive has become so usual as to make us forget that we have to deal with a changed application.

*to drive*: The carriage drove off swiftly. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XIV, 152. The Major drove rapidly from the station. *ib.*, 152.

<sup>31</sup>) *O. E. D.*



*to mend*: His prospects were good and daily mending. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.

That would mend with time. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 194.

*to miscarry*: I believed that I would never miscarry in this project through any neglect of mine. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, III, Ch. IV, 321.

34. Infinitives, gerunds and present participles often have a passive meaning in the active voice, which is not shared by the finite forms of the verb. This is, evidently, owing to the fact that these verbals were in the older stages of the language neutral to voice and have, to a certain extent, preserved this neutrality. For further discussion and illustration see the respective chapters LV, LVI and LVII.

For the delay the Great Powers are largely to blame. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 8, 343*b*.

To a Greek poetry was primarily a thing to hear and not to read. *ib.*, VIII, 21, 403*c*.

ii. How 'scaped I killing when I cross'd you so? SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 3, 150. He wanted comforting. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XVIII, 175.

iii. The good people knew all that was doing at London. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, V, Ch. VIII, 317.

I can't say how I knew it was my dear, dear mother's coffin that they went to look at. I had never heard one making. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 63.

Transitives turned into Intransitives through  
no evident process.

35. In very many cases it would be difficult, if not impossible, to tell by what process an originally transitive verb has come to be used intransitively. Thus it would be hard to trace the development of the intransitive use of *to catch*, as in:

i. \* If any critic catches at the word genius. BURNS, *Pref. to first Ed.*

\*\* Formerly I should have caught at the opportunity of speaking to a gracious audience. RUSKIN, *The Crown of Wild Olive*, *Traffic*, 51.

ii. If she .. caught on, there was no knowing what he might not get for her. HALL CAINE, *Chr. st.*, I, 255.

You've caught on here. People like your work immensely. RUDY KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. III, 37.

or of *to count*, as in:

They all knew by now that she was a cypher, — that she was not to count. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, *Prol.*, Ch. II, 25.

#### Intransitives turned into Transitives.

36. The processes by which intransitives are turned into transitives are very numerous. In some cases the changed application is so common as to escape notice (39). Some modes of conversion are common enough in Dutch also, but others appear to be

peculiar to English, and strike the non-English student of the language as unjustifiable licences or even misuses of language.

Intransitives turned into Transitives through  
being used in a causative meaning.

37. A peculiar feature of English is the adaptability of many intransitive verbs to be used in a causative meaning (Ch. XLV, 20), the modified application naturally turning them into transitive verbs. Thus *The groom walks the horse about* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 250) has approximately the same meaning as *The groom makes (or has) the horse walk about* or *causes the horse to walk about*. In the following examples the verbs, most of them expressing a moving, are clearly felt to have undergone this conversion. The various shades of meaning in which some intransitives are used may have corresponding causative conversions. See the quotations below under *to rest* and *to run*.

Some of the verbs mentioned in this section would appear to have an incongruous effect in literary language (See the O. E. D., s.v. *stand*, 65). In some writers this conversion strikes one as a singularly affected mannerism.

*to amble*: Sabre, ambling his bicycle along the pleasant lanes, . . . was met in his thoughts by observation . . . of the galloping progress of the light railway. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, II, I, 63.

*to breathe*: After him came spurring hard | A gentleman . . . | That stopped by me to breathe his bloodied horse. SHAK., *Henry IV*, B, I, I, 38.

*to burst*: You'll burst some vessel in your head. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 107.

*to curdle*: M. Andel Lefèvre curdled the blood of the Chamber last week with the scenario of Germany's plot to recommence war. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 24, 490c.

*to dance*: There was a pretty woman at the back shop dancing a little child in her arms. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXI, 150b.

*to float*: Rivers and seas were formed to float their ships. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. I, 6.

The sea might rise in the night and float the boat away. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. X, 71b. His boat would not have floated a mouse. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 13a.

*to gallop*: He used to gallop Rebecca over the neighbouring Dumpling Downs. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36.

*to graze*: When Jacob graz'd his uncle Laban's sheep. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, 3, 72 (This *graze*, in its turn, may be used pregnantly, i.e. with its object understood, e.g.: My own friends, who grazed on the marshes. *Within Hour Lond.*, XIII, 266.<sup>1)</sup>)

*to hang*: Amelia, hanging down her head, blushed. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 29.

Scrooge hung his head before this ghost. DICK., *Christm. Car.*

The blue lilies . . . hung their flowers. RID. HAG., *Jess*, I.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s.v. *graze*, 5.

*to hurry*: She hurried Mrs. Friend to the door. Mrs. WARD, Cousin Philip, Ch. I, 17.

*to jump*: He has only one pretty daughter, .. the playfellow of every brat under three years old, whom she jumps, dances, dandles, and feeds all day. Miss MITFORD, Our Vill., Ch. I, 12.

You will be expected to jump the baby. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, 28.

*to march*. Lord Dalhousie marched a force into the Punjaub. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch., XIII, 175.

Almost at the same moment war was declared against Persia...in consequence of the Shah having marched an army into Herat. *ib.*, 176.

*to quiver*: The mare continued to quiver her beautiful nostrils at him. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, II, Ch. I, IV, 67.

*to repose*: The hardy chief upon the rugged rock .., Fearless of wrong, reposed his weary strength. COWPER, Task, I, 15.

*to rest*: i. I told Poore to rest the men and horses, while .. I went on ahead. BADEN POWELL, Matabele Campaign, Ch. XIII.<sup>1)</sup>

It rests him to come down here for Sundays. Mrs. WARD, Cous. Phil., Ch. X, 159.

ii. A large old pointer dog rested its massive head on the knee of one girl. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXVIII, 407.

"Rex had a fall," said Mr. Gascoigne, curtly, throwing himself into an arm chair, resting his elbows and fitting his palms and fingers together. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, Ch. VII, 109.

Amyas rested the point of his sword on the ground, and his hands upon the hilt. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXIV.

He rested the bicycle against his hip. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, II, Ch. III, I, 86.

iii. Mr. Lloyd George at Manchester rested his strongest claim for the Coalition on the possibility of obtaining through that instrument an agreed settlement of the Irish problem. Westm. Gaz., No. 5263, 1a.

He (sc. The Home Secretary) decided not to rest his defence of the deportations upon the ordinary law of extradition, but to rest it upon a support so obsolete and decayed as the emergency Coercian Act passed to assist the Hamar Greenwood regime before the treaty. Manch. Guard., VIII, 16, 302c.

*to retire*: French himself took out two brigades of cavalry to Thaba 'Nchu, and retired one of them on Bloemfontein. Morn. Lead.

The reasons for her enthusiasm retired him at once into a shell. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, II, Ch. I, II, 64.

*to roll*: As he rolled his great green eyes over the fat meadow-lands... his heart yearned after the damsel who was to inherit these domains. WASH. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 352.

*to run*: i. I run a horse now and then; but I don't go in for the thing as some men do. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, Ch. XI, 164.

You must not .. run her on a tight rein. Mrs. WARD, Cousin Philip, Ch. I, 10.

ii. I ran a thorn into my finger. SWEET, N. E. Gr., 250.

iii. He ran his eye over the newspaper. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. VI, 60.

iv. Herr T. proposes to take away all the poetry from the Jungfrau by running a railway right up to the top. Graph.

v. They (sc. the girls) want to run the colleges — as they please — and make all rules themselves. Mrs. WARD, Cousin Philip, Ch. I, 9.

They'll (sc. the girls) run the show. *ib*

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s.v. *rest*, 8.

*to sit down*: You may sit down twenty with ease. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

I sat him down in a chair and began filling my pipe at the mantelpiece. BRADBY, *Dick.*, Ch. VI, 60

*to stand*: Another apple-faced boy whom he stood upon the floor. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. II, 13.

While he played, Angela stood the girls in a row before her. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men.*, Ch. XI, 93.

There is an ink-spot in the middle (sc. of the rug). I stand the chair over the spot. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 28.

The artist washed his brush and stood his picture against the trunk of a tree. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Antag.*, Ch. IX, 71.

*to tumble*: The Major beckoned to him gravely, and tumbling down his books, Pen went across. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 28.

It is she who has tumbled my hopes and all my pride down. *ib.*, *Van. Fair.* I; Ch. XXXV, 389.

Their task was to tumble all the bodies into a dry well. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 190.

You tumble the paper into the desk. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, II, 28.

*to walk*: He walked me into the parlour. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23*b*.

The butler walked him up and down several times between his own seat and the sideboard. *id.*, *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 107.

*to work*: Agassiz worked his men ruthlessly. *Times*, *Lit. Sup.*, No. 993, 49*d*.

38. Of some verbs the causative application has fallen into disuse, or is now met with only sporadically. See especially FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 630, *c*; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 291.

*to fail*: He failed two second mates this morning before your turn came. CONRAD, *Chance*, I, Ch. I, 5. (= the colloquial *plucked*)

*to fall*: The common executioner, | Whose heart the accustom'd sight of death makes hard, | Falls not the axe upon the humbled neck, | But first begs pardon. SHAK., *As you like it*, III, 5, 5.

*to fear*: I tell thee, lady, this aspect of mine | Hath fear'd the valiant. *id.*, *Merch.*, II, I, 9.

*to feast*: Return in haste, for I do feast to-night | My best-esteem'd acquaintance. *ib.*, II, 2, 180.

*to issue*: Here is the letter, lady, | The paper as the body of my friend, | And every word in it a gaping wound. | Issuing life-blood. *ib.*, III, 2, 269.

*to linger*: He is a flatterer, | A parasite, a keeper back of death, | Who gently would dissolve the bands of life, | Which false hopes lingers in extremity. *id.*, *Rich.*, II, II, 2, 72.

*to sleep*: They went rapidly through Sir Timothy's rooms with the great state-bed where he had slept his royal master. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XVI, 185.

*to run*: She dreamt to-night she saw my statua, | Which like a fountain with an hundred spouts, | Did run pure blood. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 2, 78. (Taus also *ib.*, III, 2, 193.)

And down a street-way hung with folds of pure | White samite, and by fountains running wine, | (Lancelot) Moved to the lists. TEN., *Last Tourn.*, 141.

*to stream*: Had I as many eyes as thou hast wounds, | Weeping as fast as they stream forth thy blood, | It would become me better, than to close | In terms of friendship with thine enemies. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, III, I, 201.

He took a large purse from his bosom, .. and streamed a shower of small silver pieces into the goblet. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. IV.

*to toil*: Why this same strict and most observant watch | So nightly toils the subject of the land. *id.*, *Hamlet*, I, I, 72. (Thus also. *id.*, *Mids.*, V, I, 74.)

39. Conversely in not a few cases the changed application has become so common that the verb is no longer, or only dimly apprehended as a causative, particularly when it is used in a figurative meaning. Thus, perhaps, in some of the examples cited in 37, and especially in such collocations as: *to bleed a patient*; *to breed cattle*; *to crack a whip, a joke*; *to drop one's voice, a penny*, etc.; *to fly a kite*; *to grow potatoes*; *to marry one's daughter*; *to pass a law*; *to return an answer, a book*, etc.; *to sink a well, a ship, a sum of money*; *to start an undertaking, a horse*; *to starve a man*; *to swear a person*.

*to drop*: She dropped her voice. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 32.

*to freeze*: The nights and mornings no longer by their Canadian temperature froze the very blood in our veins. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IX, 86.

*to pass*: The Government .. have passed through the National Assembly a measure for finding the Opposition guilty of high treason if it uses what might be its most effective "plank". *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 301b.

*to sink*: All that would sink another ten fathom deep seems but to make him float the more easily. *MCCARTHY*, *Hist. of our own Times*, II, 127. T.

*to start*: He started his pony into a fast trot. *MISS BRADDON*, *My First happy Christm.* (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 87).

*to starve*: He starved his mother and founded a fortune. *Strand Mag.*, No. 325, 20a.

He remarked that there was no necessity to go on starving the nation in order to reduce debt abnormally. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 302a.

*to swear*: Swear this person! *DICK.*, *Ol. Twist.*, Ch. XI, 106. (In the following quotation the conversion would hardly escape notice: In Parthia did I take thee prisoner; | And then I swore thee, saving of thy life, | That whatsoever I did bid thee do | Thou shouldst attempt it. *SHAK.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, V, 3, 38.)

40. Some transitives may be understood as causative conversions of intransitives although there is no apparent ground for assuming priority of the intransitive application. Thus among many others the verbs in: *to bathe a child, a wound*; *to boil water*; *to break a stick*; *to burn wood*; *to melt butter*; *to ring the bell*.

41. Obs. I. The paraphrasing of some causative converted intransitives may yield another construction than an accusative + infinitive.

a) *To have* followed by an accusative + past participle would be required in paraphrasing the following sentences with:

*to catch*: The Squire caught his foot in the rope. *LYTTON*, *My Novel*, I, Ch. II, 14. (= had his foot caught in the rope.)

*to enter*: I shall enter myself at an Inn of Court. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 288. (= have myself entered.)

In a few months the brothers left the village of their birth to enter themselves in a training college for schoolmasters. *HARDY*, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. I, 57.

*to freeze*: When John Thornton froze his feet in the previous December, his partners had made him comfortable and left him to get well. JACK LONDON, *The Call of the Wild*, Ch. VI, 122. (= had his feet frozen.)

β) *To have* followed by an accusative + final infinitive (or adverbial phrase) would be required in paraphrasing the following sentences with:

*to dine*: How many can we dine in this room? MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*. (= How many can we have to dine or to dinner?)

They .. dined each other round in the moonlight nights twice a year. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 20.

γ) Sometimes it would be rather another member of the sentence which would figure as the accusative. Thus *It is intended the follow the ten volumes with an eleventh* might be more naturally turned into *It is intended to cause an eleventh volume to follow the ten*. As this application of *to follow* is not registered by the O. E. D., the following illustrative quotations may be deemed acceptable:

He never inflicted a chastisement without following it by the assurance, so consolatory to the smarting urchin, that "he would remember it and thank him for it the longest day he had to live." WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 345.

It is intended to follow the ten volumes of the text with an eleventh containing explanatory notes. Cambridge University Press, Advertisement.

The mass of Tariff Reformers are as determined as ever to treat a victory at this election as a victory for Tariff Reform and follow it as rapidly as possible with practical measures for carrying the policy into effect. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5478, 1b.

*To follow* up is used in the same meaning and appears to be more common.

Scrooge having no better answer ready on the spur of the moment said, "Bah!" again, and followed it up with "Humbug." DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I. Mrs. Davilow followed up Gwendolen's brief triumphant phrases with [etc.]. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, I, Ch. VII, 108.

Edith went straight to the piano in the next room, and without explanation thumped out "Rule Britannia." She followed it up with the "Marseillaise". E. F. BENSON, *Dodo Wonders*, Ch. III, 60.

II. A verb that has been turned into an intransitive through absorbing the reflexive pronoun (27) may in its turn be converted into a transitive with a causative meaning. Thus *to move on*, for *to move oneself on*, may be used in the sense of *to cause to move on*.

I remember last time I saw him, the poor man was being moved on for obstructing the traffic. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sylvia Scarlett*, Ch. II, 73.

III. Of particular interest to the Dutch student are such causative converted intransitives as would ordinarily require an adverbial adjunct with *met* in the Dutch translation as the representative of the object in English. Thus the ordinary Dutch equivalent of *She leant her elbows on the drawing-board* (Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audl.*, I, Ch. I, 13) would be *Zij leunde met haar ellebogen op het teekenbord*. The example shows that the noun figuring as the object in the English sentence may be understood to denote the instrument by which the action is effected. A similar interpretation may be put upon the following sentences with:

*to beat*: They were beating their hands upon their breasts and stamping their feet upon the pavement to warm them. DICK., *Christm. Car.*

*to clap*: All the boys clapped hands in token of applause and sympathy. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 47.

*to dab*: She dabbed a powder-puff across her forehead. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. XII, 254.

*to fidget*: A change came over Mrs. Baynes. She rose too; her lips twitched, she fidgeted her hands. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 258.

*to glance*: She could not help frequently glancing her eye at Mr. Darcy. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 103.

On glancing her eye towards Jane Fairfax, she caught the remains of a smile. *id.*, *Emma*, Ch. XXVIII, 228.

"He will not be engaged long, I dare say", returned Randal, glancing his shrewd, inquiring eye over the stranger's person. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. XIII, 69.

*to lean*: "It strikes me, Dick," said Marjory leaning her elbows on the table and resting her chin between the palms of her hands, "it strikes me that you have not much spirit." MRS. ALEXANDER, *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. VI, 94. T.

*to snap*: "Lord! Chopper, what a marriage we'll have!" Mr. Osborne said to his clerk, snapping his big fingers, and jingling all the guineas and shillings in his great pockets as he eyed his subordinate with a look of triumph. THACK., *VAN. FAIR.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 242.

*to smack*: The post-boy smacked his whip incessantly. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 193.

*to stamp*: She stamped her foot. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. VII, 357.

*to stay*: He stay'd his arms upon his knee. TEN., *Vict.*, IV.

*to strike*: Missing his aim he (*sc.* the dog) fell into the ditch, turning completely over as he went; and, striking his head against a stone, dashed out his brains. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. L, 472.

In some cases the transitive use is so common as not to strike us as a conversion. Thus *to point*, which we may be excused for illustrating rather copiously, because the O. E. D. fails to register this application of the verb.

He pointed the trowel to Mr. Pecksniff. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. XXXV, 281*b*.

He pointed his pen towards his patron's door. THACK., *Van. Fair.*, , Ch. XXXV, 241.

Pointing the weapon straight towards the hiding-place of the unlucky girl. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 34.

He pointed his spear at the dead hound. *ib.*

That would give them an opportunity of pointing a finger of malice at you. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XVIII, 156.

She pointed a wavering finger at the clock. FRANK SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, Ch. III, II, 73.

IV. The majority of causative converted intransitives admit of being used in the passive voice, those mentioned in the preceding observation excepted. *To point*, however, is frequently found in the passive voice, e. g.: *His spear was pointed at the dead hound*. The following verbs have been found in the passive voice:

*to alternate*: Curtains, of that antique chintz in which fascies of stripes are alternated by rows of flowers, filled the interstices of three windows. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XXXV, 414.

*to graze*: Great numbers of cattle, and of long-wooled sheep, are grazed in the fens. MC CULLOCK, Acc. Brit. Emp., I, 181.<sup>1)</sup>

*to march*: Paul found himself suddenly marched off between two tall fellows. LYTTON, Paul Clif., Ch. VI, 61.

In the afternoon they were all marched back to Lumsdon. HARDY, Jude, II, Ch. V, 130.

*to stand*: Will the white cups with the gold rim and the beautiful gold flower inside . . . be stood upon a bracket, and dusted only by the lady of the house? JEROME, Three Men, Ch. VI, 67.

*to swear*: You have been sworn. DICK., Ol. Twist., Ch. XI, 108.

*to trot out*: So 'Jonah's whale' is once more trotted out. Westm. Gaz., No. 8127, 26a.

*to wither*: He, too, was struck, and day by day | Was wither'd on the stalk away. BYRON, Pris. of Chil., VIII.

V. Also some of the verbs mentioned in 32, (transitives turned into intransitives through being used in a passive meaning) may be used causatively, and thus become transitives again; thus:

*to let*: The point of good stabling was expected to let the house. Mrs. GASK., The Squire's Story, (217). (= caused the house to let, or to be let.)

*to sell*: It was Johnson's name that sold Boswell's book. JOHN BAILEY, Dr. Johnson and his Circle, Ch. I, 13. (= caused Boswell's book to sell, or to be sold.)

42. The language still has a few pairs of verbs only differing as to the vowel, one of each pair being an intransitive, the other representing the corresponding causative transitive. Such are *to bite* — *bait*, *to drink* — *drench*, *to fall* — *fell*, *to lie* — *lay*, *to rise* — *raise*, *to sit* — *set*. It should be observed that the ordinary meaning of the intransitive is but feebly discernible in that of the causatives *to bait* and *to drench*.

*to bait*: When they stopped to bait the horse, and ate and drank and enjoyed themselves, I could touch nothing that they touched. DICK., Cop., Ch. IX, 64a.

*to drench*: The rain was drenching the occupants of the dog-cart to the skin. EDNA LYAL, Don., I, 39. (T)

In vulgar language *to lay* and *to set* are not unfrequently used as intransitives see FRANZ, Die Dialektsprache bei Ch. Dickens (Eng. Stud., XII), STORM, Eng. Phil., 812; ALFORD, The Queen's Eng., § 23.

*to lay*: While I laid in the mud, I'm pretty sure I heard you snigger. Miss BURNEY, Evelina, Let. XIX (72).

Called at the Post-Office just now, and found this here letter, as has laid there for two days. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVIII, 160. (The speaker is Sam Weller.)

I knew your father before you. He was five foot nine and half, and he lays in five and twenty foot of ground . . . He lays in five and twenty foot of ground, if he lays in a fraction. DICK., Cop., Ch. IX, 63a. (The speaker is Mr. Omer, the undertaker.)

The hill yonder keeps off the east wind; and the place lays to the south. LYT., My Novel, I, III, Ch. XXI, 185. (The speaker, Lenny Fairfield, an unlettered youth, is promptly corrected by his interlocutor, Dr. Riccabocca, who kindly remarks, "Lies, not lays, Lenny".)

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.



Well-known is BYRON's sacrificing grammatical propriety to the requirements of rhyme in his magnificent address to the ocean in *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*, IV, CLXXX:

The vile strength he wields | For earth's destruction thou dost all despise, | Spurning him from thy bosom to the skies, | And send'st him, shivering in thy playful spray | And howling, to his Gods, where haply lies | His petty hope in some near port or bay, | And dashest him again to earth: — there let him lay.  
*to set*: You must always go and be a-settin' on our steps, must you? DICK., *Chimes*, I, 18. (The speaker is Alderman Cute's footman.)

Am thinking if I set here until I'm paid my wages, I shall set a precious long time, Mrs. Raggles: and set I will, too. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XX, 213. (The speaker is the cook in Mr. Raggles's establishment)

When you two was a-settin' by the pool, a-eatin' the breakfiss, I was a-lookin' at you round the corner of the rock. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, VII, II, 253.

43. Also some transitive verbs admit of being used causatively; thus:

*to lead*: He led his clerks a dire life in the City. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VII, 73.

She led her parent .. the life of a dog. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXX, 239*b*.

You are leading me the life of a dog. GALSWORTHY, *The Country Life*, III, Ch. II, 227.

*to lose*: The publication of an article on "the Ideals of Modern Culture" lost him a probable scholarship Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elms.*, I, 93. (=.. caused him to lose ..)

Stambuliski's refusal to adopt a 'national policy' as regards Macedonia lost him much popularity. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 24, 465*a*

*to earn*: (This) has earned the Fascist Minister De Stefanie the deserved respect even of his opponents. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 23, 447*b*. (=.. caused the Fascist Minister .. to earn ...)

*to win*: The forwards were clearly superior in midfield play, but their shooting was defective, and in the first half-hour they lost chances which might easily have won England the match. *Manch. Guard.*, V, No. 17, 340*a*. (=.. might easily have caused England to win the match)

Another interpretation that may be put upon these constructions is to regard the verb as one that takes a person- and a thing-object. The difference between *to lead a person the life of a dog* and such a combination as *to lead a person a dance or a chase* (O. E. D., s.v. *lead*, 7) is, however, striking enough. Observe that both admit of the same passive conversion:

One can only say that if they continue to accept his guidance, they will be led a giddy dance, which will sooner or later take them over the precipice. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8491, 5*a*.

In the following examples the construction is convertible into an accusative + passive participle:

*to lose*: She made good view of me; indeed, so much, | That sure methought her eyes had lost her tongue, | For she did speak in starts distractedly. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, II, 2, 21. (= .. had caused her tongue to be lost.)

The scruple, if it existed, lost the throne, in which we are far from saying that France suffered any great loss. MCCARTHY, *Hist. of our Own Times*, II, 58. (T.) (= .. caused the throne to be lost.)

The aristocracy lost the American colonies. *Manch. Guard.*, 95, 1924, 362*d*. (= .. caused the American colonies to be lost.)

*to sell*: To defend a suit only made a London holiday, and sold the newspapers. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Ch. VI, 705. (= .. caused the newspapers to be sold.)

b) Also the construction in the following sentence admits of two interpretations:

This decided him o par with Sidney whenever he should be found. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 140.

It may be understood to stand for  $\alpha$ ) *This caused him to decide to part with Sidney* etc., in which the second infinitive fills the function of a non-prepositional object, or  $\beta$ ) *This induced him to part with Sidney* etc., in which the infinitive represents a prepositional object.

Of a similar nature is the construction in:

It determined him to leave Lyme. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXIII, 251.

That delight and the favourable opinion of his tutor, determined him to try for a mathematical scholarship. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVI, 261.

The infinitive is understood in:

The vehement ringing of the bell decided me. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 32.

She will then hear something to decide her. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XIV, 221.

Intransitives turned into Transitives through being furnished with a Cognate Object.

44. Some intransitives may be followed by a noun of action which repeats the meaning of the verb in a substantival form and, in a manner, states the result or effect of the activity (Ch. XLV, 20). This noun, which in English grammars is mostly called the cognate object, may be:

a) uniform with the verb, in which case it is mostly attended by an adnominal modifier; thus in *to sleep the sleep of the just, to fight the good fight* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 253).

In the comparatively rare case that there is no such modifier, the construction serves the purpose of emphasizing the nature of the action; thus in:

I lay in my bed in my house at dingy Hammersmith thinking about it all; and trying to consider if I was overwhelmed with despair at finding I had been dreaming a dream; and strange to say, I found that I was not so despairing. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXXII, 237.

In the majority of cases the cognate object together with its modifier has semantically the value of an adverbial adjunct, mostly one of quality, so that the transitiveness of the verb is somewhat problematical, and passive conversion is often inadmissible (6).

*to dream*: I sometimes dream melancholy dreams. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 303. (Compare: When he dropped at last into an uneasy slumber, he dreamed a hundred disquieting and uncomfortable things. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XIV, 36.)

*to flush*: He had flushed the peculiar flush which always centred between his eyes. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. VI, 338.

*to laugh*: The second performance sent Shirley to the window to laugh her silent but irrepressible laugh unseen. *ib.*, Ch. XV, 354.

*to live*: I was living a myriad lives in one. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LI, 123.

I wanted to live a large life. *ib.*, 130.

A fellow must live his own life. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VII, 203.

They live a life of panic. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8557, 2a.

She lives a life of the utmost simplicity. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 22, 435d.

*to sleep*: Had she done .. aught to .pleasure those dear ones who slept their last sleep? GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XXII, 309.

*to smile*: In another half-hour he was on the coach on his way to Liverpool, smiling the smile of the triumphant wicked. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, I, (483).

Soames smiled a sneering smile. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. II, 137.

Then Miss Pink, smiling her forced smile, colouring a little, answered [etc.]. *id.*, II, Ch. VIII, 213.

When the cognate object does not denote the manner of the action and is not, accordingly, attended by an adnominal adjunct, passive conversion is not unusual.

What is life worth if it is only to be lived at somebody else's dictation? MRS. WARD, *Cousin Philip*, Ch. II, 60.

For further illustration see Ch. XLVII, 18, *b*.

*b*) not uniform with the verb; thus in *to fight a battle*, *to run a race* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 253). In this case the cognate object mostly denotes a variety of what would be expressed by the noun of action uniform with the verb; thus in the above examples. Sometimes it only remotely resembles the verb in meaning as in *What language does he speak? He told me a funny tale. Speak the speech, I pray you, as I pronounced it to you, trippingly on the tongue* (SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 1.)

The dissimilarity imparts to the noun almost the nature of a pure effective object, which may account for the fact that there is often nothing unusual in the passive conversion of the verb, whether the object stands by itself, or is attended by an adjective of quality. Thus *A (gallant) action was fought. A (hot) race was run*. See the second group of the following examples.

It cannot, however, be denied that also in this case the word-group adjective + (cognate) object mostly has the value of an adverbial adjunct of quality. Thus *They fought a gallant action* is practically equivalent to *They fought gallantly*.

i. \* I've half a mind to fight a duel. SHELLEY, *Peter Bell*, VI, IX, 5.

We pursued them (sc. the Boers) drove them out of Natal, invaded the Orange Free State, fought battles with imperfect results. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 46.

\*\* Her violent partizanship was fighting Soames' battle. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. III, (588).

\*\*\* I would fain die a dry death. SHAK., *Temp.*, I, 1.

The Cape Dutch resisted — fought a gallant action, in which they were largely helped by native allies. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 43.

They bobbed awkward little bows. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*. Ch. II, IV, 21.

ii. A severe action was fought in the street. MARRYAT, *Childr. of the New For.*, Ch. XXVII.

My Arthur, whom I shall not see | Till all my widow'd race be run. TEN., *In Mem.*, IX, v.

Note α) In Early Modern English *to die the death* is generally, but not uniformly, applied in the sense of *to die the death inflicted by law*. She hath betray'd me, and shall die the death. SHAK., *Ant. & Cleop.*, IV, 14, 26.

For God commanded, saying, Honour thy father and mother; and, He that curseth father or mother, let him die the death. Bible, *Matth.*, XV, 4.

"Villain!" said Henry, "you are discovered, and you shall die the death!" SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. IV, 46.

β) The cognate object appears but rarely to take the shape of a gerund. Before he could speak a word to comfort her, she has burst into the wildest, dreariest crying ever mortal cried. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. VIII, 67.

γ) A verb with a cognate object may at the same time be furnished with a person-object.

He struck me a blow. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 85, 2.

I came into papa's room just after he had struck Mr. Dunster the blow. Mrs. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XVI, (583).

45. Obs. I. As has already been hinted at in the preceding section, it is sometimes doubtful whether the complement of the verb should be regarded as a cognate object or as an adverbial adjunct of quality. It is of some interest to mention a few cases in which the former view is open to even more serious doubt.

α) The Parliament was playing the fool in Paris. JAMES, *J. Marston Hall*, VIII.<sup>1)</sup>

*To play the fool* may be understood to stand for *to play the part of a fool*, in which *part* is best apprehended as a cognate object; but the phrase is meant to indicate foolish behaviour, i. e. as equivalent to *to play* or *behave foolishly*.

β) Soames revolved thoughts bitter as death. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. IV, (591).

All through that silent drive back to Green Street, the souls of both of them revolved a single thought. *ib.*, (599).

*To revolve* may be understood in the sense of *to consider*, *to think over*, but also in that of *to turn over* (in the mind). See O. E. D., s.v. *revolve*, 4. If the former interpretation is adopted, *thoughts* may be apprehended as a cognate object.

γ) Time rolls his ceaseless course. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, 1.

If *to roll* is understood as a variation of *to course*, the following noun would be a cognate object. But the ordinary meaning of the verb shows so distinctly in it as to make this interpretation doubtful.

δ) I shall never be able to fight a blow. SHAK., *Henry VI*, B, I, 3, 220.

*To fight a blow* is practically equivalent to *to fight at all*, so that a *blow* is best understood as an adverbial adjunct of degree.

II. The cognate object may be assumed to be understood after superlatives preceded by a possessive pronoun in constructions like the

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s.v. *fool*, 2, b.

following: *The birds were singing their loudest* (sc. *singing*). *He was trying his hardest* (sc. *trying*). For illustration see Ch. XXX, 37.

Thus also we may supply a noun in the function of a cognate object after *last*, as used in:

When the poor exiles, every pleasure past, | Hung round the bowers, and fondly looked their last. GOLDSMITH, *Des.* VII, 366. (= looked their last look.) (He went) into the great front bed-room, where Lady Crawley had slept her last. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 72. (= slept her last sleep.)

Their captain after fight, | His comrades having fought their last below, Was climbing up the valley. TEN., *Aylmer's Field*, 227. (= having fought their last fight.)

III. a) Substitution of a simple noun for adjective + noun may be assumed to lie at the bottom of such an expression as *to talk sense* (= to talk sensible language), although the rise of the idiom is, no doubt, due to such combinations as *to talk French*, *to talk gibberish*, *to talk slang*, *to talk Somerset*, *to talk sailor* (= to use nautical language), etc. See O. E. D., s.v. *talk*, 6, b.

Why, now you talk sense, — absolute sense — I never heard anything more sensible in my life. SHER., *Riv.*, III, I, (240).

β) Similarly *that past* may be understood to be short for *that life of the past* in:

You haven't lived that past. GALSW., *To Let.*, II, Ch II, (927).

γ) *The poems* may be apprehended to stand for *the emotional lives incidental to the conception and writing of the poems* in:

It does seem sometimes that Dorothy and William lived the poems together. *Manch. Guard*, 30 5, 1924, 434b.

IV. A peculiar variety of cognate object is that found in a construction which is the result of a process opposite to that underlying the preceding cases, i.e. the coining of a verb that is uniform with the object. In this construction the verb is regularly attended by the so-called ethical dative *me*. Ch. XLV, 22. Instances are chiefly met with in the higher literary style.

Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle. SHAK., *Rich.* II, II, 3, 87.

Thank me no thankings, nor proud me no prouds. *id.*, *Rom. and Jul.*, III, 5, 153.

But he (sc. Lancelot) answer'd, "Diamond me | No diamonds! for God's love, a little air! | Prize me no prizes, for my prize is death. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 512—514

In colloquial language we sometimes meet with *But me no buts!* (= Dutch *Geen maren!*)

But me no buts! LYTTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XIV, 157.

But me no buts, or I won't stir a finger towards helping you. KINGSLEY, *Yeast*, Ch. XV, 259.

V. The construction with a cognate object preceded by an adjective is often resorted to as a convenient substitute for an undesirable construction with an adverb. See VAN DOORN, *Berichten en Mededeelingen*, No. 32. Thus *The minister preaches long sermons* is preferred to *The minister preaches long*; similarly *The girl plays a good game of tennis* to *The girls plays tennis very well*. For further discussion see Ch. LIX, 101.

There, I never favoured long preachings, and I've said my say. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, IV, (108).

I have said my say. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, II, (55).

VI. Also some transitive verbs are sometimes found construed with a cognate object.

For saving I be join'd | To her that is the fairest under heaven, | I seem as nothing in the mighty world, | And cannot will my will, nor work my work | Wholly, nor make myself in mine own realm | Victor and lord. TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 84—89.

Thus especially converted intransitives that owe their transitivity to the addition of an adverb (55).

I wanted to live out the life that was in me. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, II, Ch. LI, 123.

You will live out your life like a man. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 125.

Intransitives turned into Transitives through  
denoting a kind of uttering.

46. Some intransitives, especially such as express an emotional action, are sometimes used to denote a kind of uttering and, consequently, turned into transitives (6, *b*). What stands by way of object with such verbs in this peculiar function is:

*a*) a noun meant to describe the manner of the activity and, therefore, semantically equivalent to an adverbial adjunct of quality. At the same time it is more or less distinctly felt to denote a result or effect of the description referred to under 44, *b*. For further discussion see also Ch. LIX, 101. The following verbs have been found in the altered function described:

*to bow*: Nydia bowed her gratitude. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. XI, 89*b*.

Morley bowed his thanks in silence. DISR., *Syb.*, VI, Ch. IX, 406.

*o flash*: He turned, fiercely enough, and saw behind him, her eyes flashing fury and contempt, old Miriam. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. VIII, 41*b*.

*to laugh*: Marius Lyndwood laughed an answer. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, I, Ch. I, 8.

*to look*: Some women use their tongues—she look'd a lecture, | Each eye a sermon, and her brow a homily. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, xv.

He stopped in his earnestness to look the question, and the expression of his eyes overpowered her. JANE AUSTEN *Emma*, Ch. XLIX, 405.

Robert looked inquiry. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 46.

The furious mate looked assault and battery. JACOBS, *A Master of Craft*, Ch. XXI, 1, 106*b*.

*to nod*: The Jew nodded assent. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XIII, 125.

Torpenhow nodded forgiveness. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. X, 129.

*to smile*: She smiled her acceptance. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLII, 345.

Madame saw me at work and smiled approbation. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XII, 132.

*to sob*: His wife and daughter sobbed a violent negative. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sylvia Scarlett*, I, Ch. I, 27.

*b*) a sentence or equivalent phrase, whose function differs in no way from that of an effective object (Ch. XLV, 18, *e*). In the examples that have come to hand the following verbs are found:

i. *to laugh*: "If I don't get the hydrophoby —" — "It'll be because you was born to hang," laughed the saloon-keeper. JACK LONDON, *The Call of the Wild*, Ch. I, 9.

*to smile*: "Yes, Marius," smiled Miss Chressham. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, I, Ch. I, 8.

*to take up*: "What is that to me?" old Jolyon took him up. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. V, 185.

ii. *to frown*: Miss Murdstone frowned to me to go away. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 67b. (= told me by a frown that I was to go away.)

47. Obs. I. A similar interpretation may be put upon the verb *to breathe* as used in the following quotations, although this application of the verb is so usual as not to strike us as a conversion of the ordinary sense:

Mr. Pickwick .. breathed a bold defiance. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 130.

All the scene outwardly breathed peace. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. I, 57.

II. There is hardly any trace of the function of an object in:

He looked daggers at me. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 372.

The old lady .. drew herself up, and looked carving-knives at the hard-headed delinquent. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 46.

He gazed his fill. JACOBS, *A Master of Craft*, Ch. I, 9b.

III. The construction described under a) in the preceding section, often affords a convenient expedient to avoid the harsh succession of two adverbs in *ly*. For further discussion see Ch. LIX, 101. Compare also DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 104, 1, b. In the following examples the construction used is distinctly preferable to the alternative, added for comparison:

Doctor Slammer looked unutterable ferocity. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 15. (instead of: unutterably ferociously.)

"The man is mad", says Mammom, smiling supercilious pity. KINGSLEY, *Cheap Clothes and Nasty*, (63). (instead of: superciliously piteously.)

#### Intransitives turned into Transitives through taking an Effective Object.

48. Like many transitives, some intransitives may be attended by a noun denoting the product of the action, which, accordingly, assumes the function of an effective object (Ch. XLV, 20). The construction serving mainly the purpose of denoting a great intensity of the action, the object often has, from a semantic point of view, somewhat the value of an adverbial adjunct of degree, which accounts for the passive conversion being impossible. Instances are naturally unfrequent: only the following converted intransitives have been found furnished with an effective object:

*to bleed*: She did, with an 'Alas', I would fain say, bleed tears, for I am sure my heart wept blood. SHAK., *Winter's Tale*, V, 2, 96.

*to cry*: She put her arms down on the wooden division, and laid her head on it, and cried quiet tears. MRS. GASK. *Cous. Phil.*, III, 74.

H. POUTSMA, III 1.

*to dream*: I am but a dream that thou'rt dreaming, SHAW, Saint Joan, Epil., (101).

*to flash*: The young man whose blue eyes were by this time flashing fire .. brought his fist down with a bang upon the writing-table by way of emphasizing his words. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. II, 14.

*to shine*: A supremely airy and careless and bold spirit looked through those eyes and shone through them flashes and glints and sparkles of diamond light. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, II, Ch. I, IV, 67.

*to scintillate*: His eyes scintillated an extraordinary light. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, III, Ch. V, I, 186.

*to sweat*: The old steward had, as he said, sweated blood and water in his efforts to overcome the scruples and evasions of the moorland farmers. SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. II, 26.

*to weep*: He wept hot tears upon the books. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, III, Ch. II, 65.

49. a) The changed function is sometimes extended to impersonal verbs, e. g.: *It rained blood (frogs, invitations, tracts, etc.)* (Conc. Oxf. Dict.); *to rain fire and brimstone* (MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 372, foot-note).

It rained a November drizzle. CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XXI, 285.

Note. With these verbs the noun loses much of its objective function when it serves to express a great intensity of the phenomenon; thus in *It was blowing a gale, It was raining cats and dogs*.

b) When these verbs stand with a personal subject, they may have the value of causative transitives (Ch. XLV, 29). Thus *He rained benefits upon us* (Conc. Oxf. Dict.) may be interpreted to stand for *He caused benefits to rain upon us*. Like ordinary causatives, they admit, in this application, of passive conversion. Thus the above sentence could be turned into *Benefits were rained upon us*.

Fierce fiery warriors fight upon the clouds, | In ranks and squadrons, and right form of war, | Which drizzled blood upon the Capitol. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, 3, 21.

There couldn't well be more ink splashed about it, if it had been roofless from its first construction and the skies had rained, snowed, hailed and blown ink through the varying seasons of the year. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 39a.

It was he who rained the blows now. TEMPLE THURSTON, Antag., Ch. VII, 56.

#### Intransitives turned into Transitives through Absorption of a Preposition.

50. Through what appears to be absorption of a preposition some intransitives are used as transitives (6, a). The conversion is rather a syntactical than a semantic one, and but dinly affects the meaning of the verb, so that these converted intransitives are but rarely found in the passive voice.
51. The subjective intransitives which are capable of being used as transitives are chiefly such as have been described as mutative verbs (Ch. XLV, 16, b). The thing over or along which the



travelling person or thing moves, or the purpose for which the action takes place, is then vaguely thought of as subjected to, or as the aim of the activity expressed by the verb (Ch. XLV, 18, *a*); thus in *to walk the boards, the chalk, the hospitals, the plank, the streets; to run the streets, the gauntlet; to run an errand, a message*.

In *to run a chance, a danger, a risk* the original meaning of the verb is hardly discernible.

Here follows an enumeration of some of the commoner verbs of this description. In most of them a differentiation, mostly slight enough, is observed between the construction with and that without the preposition. A discussion of the differences is held over for a book dealing with the varied constructions incidental to verbs, adjectives and nouns, for which the present writer has been collecting materials for a long time past.

*to escape*, as in: Clearly she no longer sought to escape him. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XXIII, 313. (Compare: She panted to escape from her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 203.)

*to enter*, as in: The band of monks entered Canterbury, bearing before them a silver cross. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, Sect. III, 18. (Compare: Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven. Bible, Matth., XVIII, 3.)

*to flee*, as in: Many families had already fled the city. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. LVI. (Compare: He fled from the city of destruction. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 86.)

*to fly*, as in: I must fly this kingdom instantly. SHER., *Riv.*, V, I. (Compare: You fly from some danger, some pursuit. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 31. T.)

*to range*, as in: A man is never a man till he can defy wind and weather, range the woods and wilds, sleep under a tree and live on hunter's fare. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 133).

*to roam*, as in: She wish'd | The Prince had found her in her ancient home; | Then let her fancy flit across the past, | And roam the goodly places that she knew. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 646.

He is roaming the country and stirring up the peasantry to resistance. *Man ch. Guard.*, VIII, 24, 465*a*.

*to rove*, as in: For Arthur, long before they crown'd him king, | Roving the trackless realms of Lyonesse, | Had found a glen, gray boulder and black tarn. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 35.

*to swim*, as in: "A man below", said he, | "Has got, my lord, the finest fish | That ever swam the sea!" SAXE, *The Fisherman and the Porter*, II.

*to travel*, as in: I was on my downward way then, but the dreary, dreary road I have travelled since! DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 287*b*.

He travels the Continent. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 331.

*to vault*, as in: She saw Robert stride the tombs and vault the wall. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 328.

*to walk*, as in: Why do spirits walk the earth; and why do they come to me? DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 25.

I know a man who was walking the hospitals here. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 332.

Lord Curzon, the other day the spoilt darling of Unionism, has now to walk the plank. *Morning Leader*.

The following quotations show that the passive voice of these verbs, although uncommon, is not non-existent:

The evil she wished to avert was almost escaped. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVI, 368.

There is the difficulty of admitting some degree of error and of finding a line of approach which can be travelled without hurt to anybody's pride. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 282*b*.

Devonshire, to be properly seen, should be walked. *Good Words* of 1864. 516/2.<sup>1)</sup>

52. Among the transitives that correspond to converted non-mutative intransitives special mention may be made of *to stand*, as in *to stand a siege, fire; an assault; an examination, a trial, a test; a contested election, one's chance, the event (hazards) of a fight (contest, etc.); one's ground; cold, heat; insults, ill-treatment, a drink*. It will be observed that in all these collocations hardly any trace of the original meaning of the verb is to be found.

Further instances of converted intransitives of this description are found in the following quotations with:

*to relive*: She went back over the earlier rows, re-living them. FRANK SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, I, Ch. IV, I, 88.

*to sit*: She had a spirit — you might see it in her eye and the way she sat her horse. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, *Introd.*, II. (The transitive use of *to sit* has arisen from the weakening of *on* to *a* in the Middle English *to sitte on horse* and to the fact that *a* was subsequently apprehended as the indefinite article.)

Instances of passive conversion have not come to hand.

53. In such a collocation as *to talk business* the complement of the predicate may be assumed to stand for a prepositional object: *about business*.

They talked business all the evening. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

Similar collocations are quite frequent, especially in colloquial language.

They talk Dante — write Dante — and think and dream Dante. BYRON, *Diary*, 29/1. 1921.<sup>2)</sup>

In *to talk shop* the original meaning has widened, the expression being now currently used to denote a conversing about one's special line of business or profession, no matter of what description.

54. Obs. I. The apparent absence of a preposition does not always constitute a substantive (or substantival equivalent) with its adnominal adjuncts an object. Thus its function is clearly that of:

a) an adverbial adjunct in such connexions as are found in *He walked ten miles, We stayed there all the summer*. Similarly in:

One night came on a hurricane, | The sea was mountains rolling. WILLIAM PITT, *The Sailor's Consolation*, I (*Rainbow*, I, 43).

May I sing the two remaining engagements if I take no more after those. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XX, 292.

There was just one small cloud that had turned all the colours of the rainbow. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8209, 26.

1) O. E. D., s.v. *walk*, 15, *b*.

2) O. E. D., s.v. *talk*, 7.

Take me a walk before dinner. Mrs. WARD, *Mar. of W. Ashe*, II, 48. (T). Also in the following sentences the italicized words are best apprehended as adverbial adjuncts:

Yet do I fear thy nature: | It is too full o' the milk of human kindness | To catch *the nearest way*. SHAK., *Macb.*, I, 5, 19. (= to catch success by the nearest way.)

When I came to the practical part, I could retrench *nothing*. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIV, 337.

b) a predicative adnominal adjunct in such connexions as are found in:

In the evening he found the dinner-table laid for four, but they sat down only three. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. II, 58*b*.

He lay his broad widespread length upon the floor. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. I, 3.

II. An intermediate stage between object and adverbial adjunct, but partaking more of the latter than the former, are the complements of the predicate in the following collocations, in which the function of the noun approaches to that of a cognate object:

a) *to come a long (short, etc.) journey, to go a journey* (as an occasional variant of *to go on a journey*), *to go a walk* (as an occasional variant of *to go for a walk*), *to walk a journey*. See also Ch. IV, 11.

i. Bernardine saw that she had come a long journey. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VII, 28.

ii. One of the pleasantest things in the world is going a journey. HAZLITT, *On going a Journey*.

We are going the campaign together. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 93.

He had left word that he was going a long walk. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 143.

In the evening they sometimes went walks together. GALSWORTHY, *Saint's Prog.*, III, IV, 2, § 260.

Note the idiom in: Opposing all half-measures and preferring to go the extreme animal. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. III. (a variant of *to go the whole hog*.)

iii. He'd walk the journey in two days. DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. V, 115*a*.

β) *to stay (or stop) dinner, supper, etc.* (varying with *to stay (or stop) to dinner, supper, etc.*); *to wait dinner (supper, etc.)*. See also Ch. V, 11; and Ch. XLV, 23, *c*.

i. We intended to stay the farce. FANNY BURNEV, *Evelina*, XX, 77.

I am not going to stay tea. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI.

Compare: Stay to luncheon. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. IX, 170

I don't think I'll stop to dinner. JEROME, *Miss Hobbs*, IV, (66).

ii. I never wait supper for anybody. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IX.

Shall we wait luncheon for your assistants? BIRMINGHAM, *The Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. V, 119.

In older English such constructions seem to have been of wider application.

Slubber not business for my sake, Bassanio, | But stay the very riping of the time. SHAK., *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 8, 40.

My father stays my comtng. *id.*, *Two Gent.*, II, 2, 13.

I cannot tarry dinner. *id.*, *Henry IV*, B, III, 2, '204.

Here's a Bohemian-Tartar tarries the coming down of thy fat woman *id.*, *Merry Wives*, IV, 5, 21.

γ) *to write a good hand, to sleep a wink, to play cricket, football, etc.*

i. Do you write a good hand? THACK., *Van Fair.*, I, Ch. VII, 71.

- ii. I didn't sleep one single wink. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 77.
- iii. Girls can't really play cricket. J. M. BARRIE, Peter Pan, Ch. I, 9.

### Intransitives as component parts of transitive group-verbs or transitive derivatives.

55. Many intransitives may be coupled with an adverb or adverbial word-group to form with it a kind of transitive group-verb; e.g.: *to stare a man down*, *to stare a man out of countenance*. The transitiveness clearly appears from the fact that most of these group-verbs can be freely placed in the passive voice. This is not, of course, possible, when the object is preceded by a possessive pronoun indicating the same person as that denoted by the subject, as in *She cried her eyes out* (Ch. XLVII, 16, c). In the majority of cases the adverb or adverbial word-group denotes a locality or a state into which the person or thing indicated by the object is brought through the action denoted by the verb. Thus, for example, in *He bowed me out of the room*, *He bowed me out*; *They talked her into hysterics*, *They talked her round*. Of the same kind are the examples in the first group of the following quotations:

i. *to bow*: I. The manager .. regretted that speculative loans were contrary to the custom of the bank, and politely bowed her out. RID. HAG., Mees. Willz, Ch. III, 28.

*to cry*: She had a violent headache and was crying her eyes out. JEROME, Miss Hobbs, II, (26).

*to laugh*: They laughed the idea down. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XL, 314a.

They laughed him to scorn. ONIONS, Adv. Eng.-Syn t., § 83, 2.

*to last*: He gave every appearance of lasting the others out. GALSW., Man of Prop., II, Ch. VII, 197.

*to live*: I never thought he would live out the night. O. E. D., s.v. *live*, 9, f. This act of barbarity .. will take Greece a long time to live down. Westm. Gaz., 1922, 2, 12, 2a.

He knew that if he had not possessed in great measure the eye for what he wanted .. he could never .. have lived it all through. GALSW., Man of Prop., II, Ch. X, 233.

*to preach*: O, I see thee old and formal, fitted to thy petty part, | With a little hoard of maxims preaching down a daughter's heart. TEN., Locksley Hall, 94.

*to sit*: Mr Farquhar has sat out two other guests with whom he has been dining at Mr. Ely's. G. ELIOT, Scenes, I, Ch III, 32.

*to talk*: The boy had almost talked over his mother. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 80.

The boy has actually talked the woman round. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 83.

Talk that out with the girl. RUDY. KIPL., Light, Ch. X, 131.

Mr. Baldwin had a good fling at all the clever fellows who, in the old phrase, can talk the hind legs off a donkey. Manch. Guard., 14, 3, 1924, 202c.

*to walk*. She slaved, toiled .. for old Sedley, walked him out sedulously into Kensington Gardens. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch XXII, 242.

I could walk down most of the boys. Mrs. WARD, Cousin Philip, Ch. I, 16.

The following quotation contains several instances:

I would rather wait him out, and starve him out, than fight him out. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 270.

ii. *to huddle*: He seldom drank too much, and never was late for business, or huddled over his toilet, however brief had been his sleep. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 91.

*to look*: She looked me through seachingly. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. I, 14.

Louie looked him up and down defiantly. Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, I, 151.

The woman looked him all over from head to foot. *ib.*, II, 124.

*to pass*: I am as well bred as the Earl's grand-daughter, for all her fine pedigree; and yet every one passes me by here. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 14.

It is quite possible for a woman to be both useful and happy, although youth be fled, and the crowning joys of life — wife- and motherhood — have passed her by. Rev. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. II, 29.

*to run*: I will run you through the body. THACK., *Barry Lynd.*, Ch. III, 59.

I ran over her accomplishments. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XXIV, 257.

An elderly Englishman is sitting on her trunk trying to run through the last hundred pages of a novel from the hotel library. *Punch*, 1891, 208a.

*to stare*: She did not stare young men out of countenance. LYTTON, *Godolphin*, Ch. XXIII.

56. Obs. I. Also in sentences like *You must not look a gift horse in the mouth*, *That stood me in good stead* (Ch. III, 16), the verb and the adverbial adjunct may be understood to form a kind of unit: *to look in the mouth* and *to stand in good stead* approximating, respectively, *to criticise*, *to suit*. The transitiveness is, however, less apparent than in the word-groups mentioned in the preceding section, as is evidenced by the fact that the passive voice would be impossible in the case of the last example, and highly incongruous in the case of the first.

II. Adverbs and adverbial word-groups denoting the changed locality or state of the object naturally assume an adnominal function. Indeed adjectives may be found in the same position and function; thus in: A lover's eyes will gaze an eagle blind. SHAK., *Love's Labour Lost*, IV, 3, 334.

III. Special mention may be made of converted intransitives whose object is a reflexive pronoun. They admit of no passive conversion (Ch. XLVI, 16, b).

I cried myself to sleep. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22b.

The chill screamed itself black in the face. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

I have talked myself hoarse. *ib.*

He swore himself black in the face. EM. LAWLESS, *A Col. of the Emp.*, Ch. IV.

IV. It is not always easy to tell off-hand whether such words as *over*, *through*, etc., as used in the above connexions, should be considered as adverbs or prepositions, when they stand in immediate succession to the verb; in other words, whether or no the latter forms a kind of transitive group-verb with the particle; thus, for example, in *The motor-car ran over a child*, *The mouse gnawed through the*

*rope*. A mechanical way to decide the question is to read such sentences out loud. When the particle has full or medium stress, and follows the verb without a pause, it is to be set down as an adverb and forms a kind of transitive with the verb with which it is linked (KRUIS., Eng. Sounds<sup>3</sup>, § 264). In the alternative case it is a preposition and the intransitive verb has undergone no conversion. When this test is applied to the above examples, it appears that the view of regarding the particles as adverbs is the more plausible. The adverbial function seems to be unmistakable in:

He managed to run through a splendid fortune. L. STEPHEN, *Pope*, VI, 139.

In this sentence the O. E. D. evidently regards *through* as a preposition, the example appearing under the combination *run* + preposition *through*. Thus also in:

She had thought over matters at night, and communicated to Rawdon the result of her determinations. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 165.

Conversely the particle is best apprehended as a preposition in:

i. So the Major was forced to wait over that night. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXIII, 230.

We reached Dresden on the Wednesday evening and stayed there over the Sunday. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. VIII, 133.

I mean to sleep over it. (?) Miss Providence Ch. II.

ii. Becky used to go through dialogues with it (sc. the doll). THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 12.

She speedily went through the little course of study which was considered necessary for ladies in those days. *ib.*, I, Ch. II, 14.

It was not Deronda's disposition to escape from ugly scenes: he was more inclined to sit through them and take care of the fellow least able to take care of himself. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVI, 267.

He was unable to sit through a forlorn performance at a wretched country theatre, without longing to add a sovereign to the four and ninepence which he had made out in the house when he entered. WARD, *Dick.*, Ch. I, 12.

The same wavering may be felt in pronouncing on the grammatical function of these particles when they stand with a verb which in its ordinary application is a transitive, such as *to see*. Thus there is some hesitation whether in the following quotations we have to understand *to see through* as a kind of group-verb governing an object, or to apprehend *to see* as an intransitive and *through* as a preposition. Considered in the light of the Dutch translation, which would have *doorzien* as the equivalent of *to see through*, the first view would seem to be more plausible than the second.

I suppose Amelia's father and mother saw through the intentions of the Major. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 392.

What I blame myself for .. is that I didn't see through him before. JEROME, *Paul Kever*, I, Ch. VII, 57a.

He sees through all my manœuvres. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 183.

In such a sentence as *Mr. Brittling sees it through*, the particle is, of course, an indubitable adverb. Thus also in:

From being merely a joker in search of amusement, George felt that he must see the poor chap through. GALSWORTHY, *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. IV, 321.

Conversely *to search* is best apprehended as an intransitive, and *through* as a preposition in:

The curious eye will search through history or fiction in vain for any picture more thrilling with the suggestions of an awful catastrophe. [McCarthy, Short Hist.

In *to sleep the clock round* (ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 83, 3 and § 104, Obs.) *to sleep* distinctly preserves its intransitive function, *the clock round* answering the question *how long*? In this adverbial word-group *through* is best considered as a preposition which has left its ordinary place before the noun, the word-group denoting the length of time needed for the hour-hand to travel round the (dial of the) clock.

It is also transposition of the preposition which has given rise to the incongruous construction in:

In stooping her over to kiss her, I saw the little book of Hartlight's drawings half hidden under her pillow. WILK. COL., Woman, 145.

Conversely *round* is an adverb in the following quotation, where it has approximately the meaning of *in all directions*, without, however, forming a transitive group-verb with the following verb, modifying as it does the preceding noun adnominally:

Gawain the while thro' all the region round | Rode with his diamond. TEN., Lanc. & El., 611.

V. Although forming a kind of group-verb with the verb with which they are connected, the adverbs cannot be said to constitute a compound with it, as they do when they precede. The group-verb and the compound mostly differ materially in meaning. Compare *to throw a man over* with *to overthrow a man*, *to stay the night out* with *to outstay one's welcome*, *to look over a letter* with *to overlook a mistake*. The definition of the meanings belongs to the department of the dictionary and cannot, therefore, be attempted here.

Sometimes, however, a compound verb and a group-verb of the same constituents have practically the same meaning. Thus the alternative form might be used in:

The next few miles would be 'no light thing for the whaleboats to overpass. KIPL., Light, Ch. II. (= to pass over.

*To outcry*, as used in the following sentence, is not to be apprehended as a compound composed of the verb *to cry* and the adverb *out*, but as a verb formed from the noun *outcry*:

He outcried at the enormity of Pen's transgression. THACK., Pend, I, Ch. XXI, 216.

VI. A comparison of such a sentence as *The landlord bounced out of the house and looked after Mr. Pecksniff* (DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXX, 279b) with its Dutch equivalent *De waard vloog het huis uit en keek Mr. Pecksniff achterna* shows that the English may have a construction with a preposition where the Dutch has one with an adverb forming a separable compound with the verb (Ch. III, 18). In fact compounds of the latter description are not nearly so common in English as they are in Dutch (Ch. III, 18).

Sometimes the English admits of both constructions implying practically the same notion. Thus the alternative might be used in:

The canopy of smoke that overhung the town, was brighter and more beautiful

to them than if the richest silks of Persia had been waving in the air. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 278a. (= hung over.)

57. Some intransitives are turned into transitives by taking a prefix, especially:

a) *be* (O. E. D., s.v. *be*, 5). The following formations, one and all, belong to the literary language:

*to belie*: He had belied all the traditions of his house by declining at the very outset a military career. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. I, 12.

*to bemoan*: She never bemoaned her reduced circumstances. GALSW., *Saint's Prog.*, I, VIII, 2 §, 84.

*to bespeak*: in a variety of meanings, for which see the dictionary:

No less rejoiced | His mother bad, and thus bespake her sire. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, II, 849.

These letters, too, bespeak the character of this gentleman. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 310.

No epitaph tells their virtues, bespeaks their wives' griefs. LYTON, *Caxt.*, IV, Ch. V, 104.

*to bewail*: The crazy old woman was too much occupied in bewailing the loss of her cloak. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 63.

He made no answer being occupied in mentally bewailing the loss of the flute. *ib.*, Ch. XIII.

*to bewEEP*: When in disgrace with fortune and men's eyes | I all alone bewEEP my outcast state. SHAK., *Son.*, XXIX.

I have bewept a worthy husband's death. *id.*, *Rich.* III, II, 2, 49.

Sometimes the simplex admits of being used transitively in practically the same meaning as the derivative; thus:

*to wail*: My lord, wise men ne'er sit and wail their woes. SHAK., *Rich.* II, III, 3, 178.

*to weep*: We, wandering, go | Through dreary wastes, and weep each woe. POPE.

b) *out*, mostly expressing a surpassing in the action denoted by the simplex (O. E. D., s.v. *out* in combination, 17); thus:

*outlive*: He had outlived nearly all his early friends and foes. MCCARTHY, *Hist of our Own Times*, IV, LXVII, 253.

*outrun*: Silence, maiden, thy tongue outruns thy discretion. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III.

If a man outruns his income and does not pay his bills, he must go to gaol. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 350.

*outstay*: The guest had again and again to remind himself that he must not outstay his welcome. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XVI.

c) *over* in numerous meanings, for which see the O. E. D., s.v. *over* in combination. The following examples must suffice:

*overleap*: Let us overleap two or three hundred years. MAC., *Hal.*, (69b)

*overlive*: Overlive it — lower yet — be happy! wherefore should I care? TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 97.

*to override*: This law overrides all previous acts. WEBST., *Dict.*

He never tried to override my judgment. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 178.



## CHAPTER XLVII.

---

### THE PASSIVE VOICE.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Formation of the Passive Voice . . . . .	1—8
Function of the Passive Voice . . . . .	9—42
Usefulness of the Passive Voice . . . . .	9
Passiveness compared with Intransitiveness . . . . .	10—11
Frequency of the Passive Voice in English . . . . .	12—13
Application of the Passive Voice in English . . . . .	14—42
Passive Conversion of Verbs and Group-verbs that govern one Non-prepositional Object . . . . .	15—22
Passive Conversion of Verbs and Group-verbs that govern one Prepositional Object . . . . .	23—31
Passive Conversion of Verbs and Group-verbs that govern two Non-prepositional Objects . . . . .	32—40
Passive Conversion of Verbs that govern two objects, one prepositional and one non-prepositional . . . . .	41—42
Passiveness expressed by other means than the Passive Voice	43—51

---



## Formation of the Passive Voice.

1. As has already been stated in Ch. XLV, 5, the logical object of a sentence may be made its grammatical subject. This is mostly done by a change in the form of the predicate, effected, in English, by combining a form of the verb *to be* with the past or passive participle. This combination is called the passive voice of the verb.

Also the infinitive, gerund and present participle of a verb can, in like manner, be made to express a passive meaning by connecting its past participle with respectively the infinitive, the gerund or the present participle of the verb *to be*; e. g.: *to be killed, being killed*.

2. The construction with *has been* and *had been*, which are largely used in Present English as respectively a perfect and pluperfect passive, appears to be of rather recent growth. In SHAKESPEARE it is still uncommon. See JESPERSEN (*Tid og Tempus*, 397), who cites the following examples of *is (or are) + past participle* where Present English would require *has (or have) been + past participle*:

So all my best is dressing old words new, | Spending again what is already spent: | For as the sun is daily new and old, | So is my love still telling what is told. SHAK., *Son.*, LXXVI.

Besides, I met Lord Bigot and Lord Salisbury, | With eyes as red as new-  
enkindled fire, | And others more, going to seek the grave | Of Arthur, whom  
they say is kill'd to-night | On your suggestion. *id.*, *King John*, IV, 2, 165.  
Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteous' sake: for their's is the  
kingdom of heaven. Bible, Matthew, V, 10. (for which the Revised Edition  
of 1881 has: have been persecuted.)

3. For obvious reasons (9) the logical subject of a passive predicate is mostly left unexpressed. When it is indicated, this is mostly done by an adjunct of the predicate containing the preposition *by*. This adjunct is called by SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 313) the *inverted subject*, by JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 1.64) the *converted subject*; the grammatical subject of the passive predicate being styled by SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 313) the *inverted object*.

It seems to be more appropriate to assign the term *inverted* or *converted* subject to the (pro)noun contained in the *by*-adjunct rather than to the whole *by*-adjunct. It is in this sense that the term will be employed in the following discussions.

4. Obs. I. In Older English *of* appears to have been the ordinary preposition before the inverted subject, *by* being used, by the side of *through*, in the sense of *by the instrumentality or mediation of*. The different shades of meaning conveyed by *of* and *by* are aptly illustrated by:

Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying [etc.] Bible, Matth., I, 22.

In passages of this description the Revisers of 1881 added *through* in the margin; but the American Committee recorded their preference for *through* in the text. EARLE, Phil.<sup>5</sup>, § 522, footnote.

With the above quotation compare:

For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world through him might be saved. Bible, John, III, 17.

None through their cold disdain are doom'd to die, | As moon-struck bards complain, by Love's sad archery. BYRON, Child of Har., I, LXXII. (Observe that *through* and *by* are used in the same function. Different shades of meaning are expressed by *by* and *through* in succession in, "This led them to inquire into the lives of the men by and through whom they had been executed." Athen.)

Here follow some further examples with agency-*of* from Early Modern English:

That the Scripture of God may be read in English of all his obedient subjects. LATIMER, Rem., 240. 1)

I think it is not meet. | Mark Antony, so well belov'd of Cæsar, | Should outlive Cæsar. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, I, 156.

O, that a lady, of one man refused, | Should of another therefore be abused. id., Mids., II, 2, 133.

Then was Jesus led up of the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. Bible, Matth., IV, 1.

II. The use of *of* before the inverted subject survives in the latest English chiefly in the higher literary style. Its partial preservation in this function may, to a certain extent, be due to the influence of:

a) the *of*-construction as an equivalent of the subjective genitive, as in: Go forth, beloved of Heaven. | Go and return in glory | To Clusium's royal dome. MAC., Lays, Hor., X.

β) a good many combinations with *of* in which it denotes a relation of agency or originating (Obs. IV), such as *of one's own accord*, *of one's own free will*, *of one's own knowledge*, *of one's own right*, *of one's own act*; *of set purpose*, *of design*, *of necessity*; (*difficulties*) *of his own creation* (or *creating*), (*tea*) *of my mother's making*, etc.

According to MURRAY (in O. E. D., s.v. *of*, V, 15) "the use of *of* is most frequent after past participles expressing a continued non-physical action (as in *admired*, *loved*, *hated*, *ordained of*), or a condition resulting from a definite action (as in *abandoned*, *deserted*, *forgotten*, *forsaken of*, which approach branch II (sc. liberation and privation). It is also occasional with participial adjectives in *un-*, as *unseen of*, *unowned of*. *Of* often shows an approach to the subjective genitive: cf. 'he was chosen of God to this work' with 'he was the chosen of the electors'

1) W. A. WRIGHT, Bible Word-Book, 432.

In other senses the agent has passed into the cause, as in *afear'd*, *afraid*, *frightened*, *terrified of*; or the source or origin, as in *born of*". A few instances, drawn from Late Modern English, both prose and poetry, of *of* after past participles may be acceptable.

i. Mrs. Sparsit saw him languishing down the street on the shady side of the way, observed of all the town. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch I, 54*b*.

Many times I went into Creyneesh without being seen of any man HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXXVIII, 289.

He sat down in such a position that he could see Miss Smithers without being seen of his uncle. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. I, 7.

ii. Much nave I seen and known; cities of men | And manners, climates, councils, governments, | Myself not least, but honour'd of them all. TEN., *Ulysses*, 15.

Then the great knight, the darling of the court, | Loved of the loveliest, into that rude hall | Stept with all grace. *id.*, *Lanc. & El.*, 26.

There he died much honoured of the strange people. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, Prol.

The phrase *understanded of the people*, according to STOFFEL (*Stud. in Eng.* 168), has been preserved in Present English owing to its occurrence in the 39 Articles of Religion of the Church of England, printed in the Book of Common Prayer:

It is a thing plainly repugnant to the Word of God .. to minister the Sacraments in a tongue not understood of the people.

However poor the translation may be, the fact that it is sung in a tongue understood of the people brings the plot within the reach of all Graph.

Observe that in the following quotation *of* has been preserved although *to understand* is conjugated in the ordinary way:

He calls it (sc. his book) an attempt to understand the state of present-day Russia and its possibilities and to make them understood of other people. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 15, 287*b*.

It is hardly necessary to observe that in all these combinations ordinary Standard English now has *by*.

He was much beloved by the poor, because he was thoroughly kind and very fatherly to them. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. IV, 63.

After *born* the preposition *of* seems to be used to the exclusion of *by*; but then it may also be understood to denote a relation of originating (Obs. IV). Compare the O. E. D.'s comment on *born of* cited above.

I believe .. in Jesus Christ .. who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin Mary. *Book of Common Prayer*.

Great heaps of sea-weed clung to its base, and storm-birds — born of the wind, one might suppose, as sea-weed of the water — rose and fell about it, like the waves they skimmed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>12</sup>, III, 80.

And at this very hour, when the brothers were talking .. Cyril Morland's son was being born of Noel, a little before his time. GALSWORTHY, *Saint's Prog.*, II, x, 3 §, 213.

She at times, when he had been provoking or obtuse, so shook with hysterical anger, born of the inevitable days in his society and in the kitchen, that she could have thrown at him the battered pot which she carried. FRANK SWINERTON, *Nocturne*, I, Ch. III, 24.

Observe also the use of *born of* in:

There was a boy born of our marriage eight months after I left you. HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. III, 343.

*Of* is also regularly used in the expressions *to be brought to bed* and *to be confined of a child*.

III. On the analogy of *afraid of* past participles denoting fear, in which the adjective character is particularly prominent, naturally take *of* rather than *by*. See the O. E. D.'s comment upon such participles cited above.

I never believed in the devil enough to be scared of him. CONRAD, *Chance*, I, Ch. I, 9.

She was frightened of him. *Times*, No. 2301, 101c.

Every man is frightened of marriage when it comes to the point. SHAW, *You never can tell*, IV, (319).

It should be observed that these participial adjectives are also found construed with *at*.

I looked up the tree, and was scared at its height. HAR. MARTINEAU, *Autobiography*, I, 1, 13.

"George", said Robert, after watching him for some time, "are you frightened at the lightning?" — "No", he answered curtly. — "But, my dear fellow, some of the most courageous men have been frightened at it." Miss BRADDON, *Audl*, I, Ch. IX, 104.

IV. There is not anything surprising in the use of *of* after a passive participle, seeing that an action represented as performed by a person or thing may also be thought of as originating from a person or thing. In fact the two notions are inextricably mixed, with the result that in some connexions *by*, which is now the normal symbol of the former varies with *of*, which at one time was the normal symbol of the latter, but has now been largely superseded by *from*. Thus we could say *We listened to a speech by, of or from the Prime Minister*. Compare Ch. XXIV, 35. The close affinity of the notions is corroborated by the fact that the genitive may stand for both. Compare *Elizabeth's reign*, which is a genitive of agency, with *David's psalms*, which is a genitive of origin.

V. The employment of *of* in the function here described has a parallel in the archaic use of *van* in Dutch, as in *van Godts blixem getroffen*. VONDEL, *Lucifer*, *Berecht*. Present Dutch still has *van de pokken geschonden*.

The analogous regular use of *von* in German, and that of *de* in French after verbs denoting a psychical disposition, is too well-known to require illustration.

VI. Also *with*, the typical preposition in Present English to denote instrumentality, is not unfrequently met with after a passive participle in a function which is difficult to distinguish from that of *by* or *of*. Instances are quite frequent in SHAKESPEARE, and are by no means wanting even in the latest English. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 193.

I took him to be killed with a thunderstroke. SHAK., *Temp.*, II, 2, 96.

I marvel your ladyship takes delight in such a barren rascal: I saw him put down the other day with an ordinary fool that has no more brain than a stone. *id.*, *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 75.

Love is a smoke-raised with the fume of sighs. *id.*, *Rom. and Jul.*, I, 1, 194.

They .. put a barren sceptre in my gripe, | Thence to be wrench'd with an unlineal hand. *id.*, *Macb.*, III, 1, 62.

Look you here, | Here is himself marr'd, as you see, with traitors. *id.*, *J u l. C æ s.*, III, 2, 201.

They were parted | With foul and violent tempest. *id.*, *O t h.*, II, 1, 34.

The infernal serpent: he it was, whose guile, | Stirred up with envy and revenge, deceived | The mother of mankind. *MILTON*, *P a r. L o s t*, I, 35.

Then would Philip, his blue eyes | All flooded with the helpless wrath of tears. | Shriek out 'I hate you, Enoch'. *T E N.*, *E n. A r d.*, 32.

Mr. Gladstone undertook the congenial task of abolishing the duty on paper. He was met with strong opposition from both sides of the House. *MCCARTHY*, *S h o r t H i s t.*, Ch. XVII, 228.

Five years ago King's Lynn was visited with a serious outbreak of typhoid fever. *T i m e s*, 1897, 775*d.*

Compare with these quotations that with *with* after an active voice in: General Balbo .. desired entirely to replace the national army with the Fascist militia. *M a n c h. G u a r d.*, VIII, 23, 447*b.*

There is nothing unusual in participles being construed with *with* when they assume the character of adjectives, as in:

Dolf felt struck with awe on entering into the presence of this learned man. *WASH. I R V.*, Dolf Heyl. (*S T O F.*, *H a n d l.*, I, 106.)

Peter de Groot struck with the youngster's gallant appearance .. observed etc. *ib.*, III.

Mr. Tracy Tupman, being quite bewildered with wine, negus, lights and ladies, thought the whole affair an exquisite joke. *D I C K.*, *P i c k w.*, Ch. II, 15.

But in view of the following quotations with *by* it can hardly be said that the adjectival and verbal character of participles are always distinctly distinguished:

You must not be hurt by my sister's abrupt manner. *Mrs. GASK.*, *M r. H a r r i s o n's C o n f e s s i o n s*, Ch. XIV, (429).

An Englishman who begins to learn German cannot fail to be struck by the resemblance which that language presents to his native tongue. *B R A D L E Y*, *T h e M a k i n g o f E n g l i s h*, Ch. I, 1.

VII. In conclusion mention may be made of *in* in a function approximating to that of agency. Thus in *SHAKESPEARE* in the following quotations:

Our feast shall be much honoured in your marriage. *SHAK.*, *M e r c h.*, III, 2, 213.

What! quite unmann'd in folly. *id.*, *M a c b.*, III, 4, 73.

Compare with this the celebrated passage in *Henry IV*, A, V, 4, 122: The better part of valour is discretion; in the which better part I have saved my life.

Later examples may be seen in:

I called, as in duty bound, to extend him the right hand of fellowship. *LESLEY KEITH*, *T h e M i s c h i e f m a k e r*, Ch. I,

Every penny of it has to be raised in voluntary subscriptions. *P a l l M a l l B u d g e t.*<sup>1)</sup>

Thus also, perhaps, in *We were caught in the rain* (*O. E. D.*, s.v. *catch*, 8); with which compare *The rain caught us just as we had reached the shoulder of the hill* (*ib.*).

Similarly in: an easy chair covered in black leather on the hearth. *SHAW*. You never can tell, I, (207).

<sup>1)</sup> *T E N B R U G.*, *T a a l s t.*, XI.

*H. P O U T S M A*, III 1.

He wears a suit of terra cotta cashmere, the elegantly cut frock coat lined in brown silk. *ib.*, (211).

VIII. The adjective *dead* is evidently sometimes felt to have the value of the past participle of a transitive verb, inasmuch as it is sometimes followed by *by* or *of*. Compare, however, 6, *c*.

Unionism is dead by the Irish settlement *Manch. Guard*, VI, 3, 41a.

They (*sc.* these plays) are dead of their own artificiality. *ib.*, V, 25, 527 *d*.

5. In such a passive sentence as *He was crowned King*, corresponding to the active *They crowned him King*, in which *King* is a predicative adnominal adjunct of the second kind (Ch. VI, 1, *b*); both *he* and *King* are inverted objects. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 314.

In a passive sentence like *A new cycle was promised him by his father*, one of the conversions of *His father promised him a new cycle*, we find the object-word *him* retained in the same form. It is, therefore, called a retained object, and the same name is given to the object-word *a new cycle* in the other conversion of which the above sentence is capable: *He was promised a new cycle by his father*. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 315. If in the last conversion the object-word is a pronoun which has different forms for the nominative and the objective, it would be placed in the latter case, e. g.: *I was promised him as my husband, not his brother*. But such a construction, if used at all, is certainly very rare, the following being the only instance that has come to hand.

Nolly believed all these statements, and wasn't hoaxing. He had been told them by others, Big Boys, and passed them on to me. *DE MORGAN, Vance*, Ch. II, 104.

6. The verb *to be* is also joined to the past past participle of a transitive verb to express a state which is the result of the action. In this case its grammatical function is that of a copula, while the participle has retained its original character of an adjective. Such a sentence as *The bottle was broken* is, accordingly, ambiguous, and its exact meaning can only appear from the context. But there is no mistaking the meaning of the combination *to be* + past participle, when there is an adjunct denoting particulars of the action. Compare *His bills are paid regularly every month*, with *His bills are paid, so that he owes nothing now*; and *When I came at five o'clock, the door was shut*, with *I do not know when it was shut*. (The first *shut* is the opposite of *open*, the second of *opened*). Compare also Ch. LI, 37. Thus also in the following quotations the context affords sufficient evidence for the participles to be adjectival:

The young man's life is just beginning: the boy's leading-strings are cut, and he has all the novel delights and dignities of freedom. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 172.

These made the party who were collected three times each day for breakfast, luncheon, and dinner in the "Australasian's" saloon. *FROUDE, O c.*, Ch. II, 28.



They suspected that the captain and officers were interested in the matter. *ib.*, 30.

We were all as cramped and uncomfortable as possible. *Punch*, 1894, 150.

It is of some interest to compare the two functions of *spent*, the first as distinctly verbal as the second is adjectival, in:

Money spent on education is invested rather than spent. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8574, 4a. (= Money that has been spent ...)

Note. In Old-English there was no ambiguity: the present and preterite of the passive verb being expressed by the auxiliary *weorthan*, Dutch *worden*, which in later English was unfortunately lost. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 68.

b) To obviate the ambiguity resulting from the twofold application of *to be*, certain verbs that more or less partake of the character of copulas, such as *to feel*, *to stand*, may be used to advantage when no passiveness is intended (Ch. I, 12, Obs. II). For the use of *to get* and its synonyms for the same purpose see the next section and Ch. I, 12 Obs. III.

I felt compelled to retire up the canon. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 23.

He stood transfixed to the spot. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 29.

But some ambiguity may attach even to such combinations of *to stand* with the past participle. The following quotations, at least, may be apprehended in a passive sense:

The civil crime of which you stand accused is that of high treason. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXI, 93 b.

The tidings of the revocation of the edict of Nantes reached England about a week before the day to which the Parliament stood adjourned. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. VI, 251

He took the key and opened the lid, when the cakes and wine stood revealed in all their damning profusion. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. V, 112.

The meeting stands adjourned to five o'clock. GALSWORTHY, *Strife*, I, (203).

c) It stands to reason that the ambiguity often attaching to the combination *to be* + past participle of transitive verbs does not concern those which express an activity or a psychical disposition without any result or conclusion being thought of. The following sentences, accordingly, admit of only one interpretation: *The boy was rebuked, punished, rewarded; The pictures were admired, criticised.* Compare JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, (394—5).

There is, naturally, rarely any ambiguity if the combination is followed by a prepositional word-group containing the inverted subject, as in *The bottle was broken by the servant.* The following sentence, however, admits of a twofold interpretation notwithstanding the inverted subject:

The girls indulged unrestrained in their grief. The gloom-stricken old father was still more borne down by his fate and sorrow. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 384.

See also 4, Obs. VIII.

7. Also copulas of the third kind, i. e. such as are used to express the changing of a state into another (Ch. I, 10), are not unfrequently

combined with a past participle to form a construction that bears a strong resemblance to the passive voice. Naturally the participle is not so entirely devoid of adjectival characteristics in these combinations as it is in a pure passive voice. Instances with *to get* are quite common, especially in colloquial style; *to become* and *to grow* being far less frequent in this function. For illustration see also Ch. I, 12, Obs. III; and compare WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, I, 33; KRUISINGA, *Handbook*<sup>3</sup>, 63 f.

i. Beatrice .. became more and more influenced by Randal's arguments. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. III, 83.

Not many weeks after this was written, Charlotte also became engaged as a governess. Mrs. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 127.

The populations of India became stricken with alarm as they saw their native princes thus successively dethroned. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 176.

O'Connell became seized with a profound melancholy. *id.*, *Hist. of Our Own Times*, I, 228. T.

The Scandinavian invaders had become christianized and civilized also. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. IV, 32a.

For the first time .. the immensity of what she was doing became borne in upon her. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. V, 65.

ii. He went to Africa and got eaten by a lion. O. E. D.

You now tinker chairs and get paid a shilling an hour. W. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XXXVIII, 257.

My mother got run over and killed coming back from a funeral. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, I, Ch. II, 45.

One of my aunts got married to a man who knew the firm. *ib.*

Imposto s invariably g<sup>e</sup>t lound out. *Athen.*

iii. I grew startled to see how, year by year, wayward humours possessed me. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. VIII, 107.

Riccabocca's curiosity grew aroused. *ib.*, II, IX, Ch. III, 82.

8. Obs. I. Comparing the combinations with *to get* with those containing *to become* or *to grow*, we find that, while the former are hardly distinguishable from a purely passive construction with *to be*, the latter only vaguely express passiveness: in other words *to get*, when connected with a past participle, has lost almost entirely its power of indicating incipient action and may, accordingly, be called an auxiliary of the passive voice, but *to become* and *to grow* show this force in only a slightly weakened form. It follows that only *to get* is practically available as an expedient to preclude the ambiguity commented on in the preceding section. It may be added that *to get* never loses its force as a pure copula when it is placed in the Expanded Form as in:  
Extraordinary place that City. An astonishing number of men always are getting disappointed there. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXII, 286.

Things were not getting done. *Daily Telegraph*.

II. The difference between the combinations with *to become* and *to be* is unmistakable in:

I become neglected and am provided for. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 67a.

Conversely there is hardly an appreciable difference between these combinations in:

BASS. For the which, as I told you, Antonio shall be bound. SHY. Antonio shall become bound; well? SHAK., *Merch. of Ven.*, I, Ch. III, 10—11.

## Function of the Passive Voice.

### Usefulness of the Passive Voice.

9. a) The principal occasion of the use of the passive voice is the desire of the speaker to avoid mentioning the primary participant in the action, because not clearly known or thought of no importance, or because involving the possibility of compromising him. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 313. One quotation may suffice to illustrate this.

When the improved (Enfield) rifle was introduced into the Indian army in 1856, the idea got abroad that the cartridges were made up in paper greased with a mixture of cow's fat and hog's lard ... Now a mixture of cow's fat and hog's lard would have been, above all things, unsuitable for the use of cartridges to be distributed among our Sepoys, for the Hindoo regards the cow with religious veneration; and the Mohammedan looks upon the hog with utter loathing. In the mind of the former something sacred to him was profaned; in that of the latter something unclean and abominable was forced upon his daily use. Various efforts were made to allay the panic among the native troops. The use of the cartridges complained of was discontinued by orders issued in January 1857. The Governor-General sent out a proclamation in the following May, assuring the army of Bengal that the tales told to them of offence to their religion or injury to their caste being meditated by the Government of India were all malicious inventions and falsehoods. Still the idea was strong among the troops that some design against their religion was meditated. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 170 - 171,

b) Conversely the passive construction is frequently resorted to to serve the diametrically opposite purpose of giving prominence to the primary participant in the action, by mentioning it expressly at the end of the sentence. Thus in *The dog was killed by his own master* the back-position of the inverted subject is an excellent expedient to draw the attention to the originator of the action.

Sometimes the passive construction would even hardly convey complete sense without it. Thus the omission would deprive the following sentences of all point:

He was fed by a wild beast. He was wounded by an arrow. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synl.*, § 27.

In some contexts the inverted subject is even absolutely indispensable; thus in:

He was frequently met in the lanes by pedestrians and others without his seeing them. HARDY, *Jude*, I, Ch. V, 35

c) The use of the passive voice entails a transposing of the verb and its objective complement and, accordingly, destroys some of the connexion between these two elements of the sentence. It is, therefore, only natural that when these two elements are so closely connected as to hardly bear separation, passive conversion is impracticable. Thus it is impossible of such sentences as *He changed colour*, *He took hold of my hand*. Compare 22.

d) The passive construction represents the object of the action more distinctly and emphatically as undergoing an activity than

the active. It is, therefore, apt to be preferred when this notion is particularly prominent in the speaker's mind. Thus it appears to be chosen for this reason in:

When he had despatched the note by a boy, he regretted that in his hurry he should have suggested to her to meet him out of doors, when he might have said he would call upon her. It was, in fact, the country custom to meet thus, and nothing else had occurred to him. Arabella had been met in the same way, unfortunately, and it might not seem respectable to a dear girl like Sue. HARDY, *Jude*, II, Ch. IV, 120.

e) From the above observations it follows that it is a mistaken notion that an active sentence and its passive conversion are identical in meaning, there being a distinct difference in the prominence assigned by the speaker to the two participants in the action, and in the degree of passiveness in which the object of the activity is represented. Compare *De Drie Talen*, No. XXXI, (1 Jan. 1915).

Some harshness, consequently, attaches to constructions in which a passive and an active verb are predicated of one and the same subject or some other element of the sentence, as in:

He bid her dry her eyes, and be comforted. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. XI, 57a.

In 1760, on George the Third's accession, Johnson was offered, and accepted, a pension of £ 300 a year. JEBB, *Essays and Addresses*, Samuel Johnson, 480.

He was offered, but declined, the laureateship. Dict. of Eng. Lit., s.v. Sam. Rogers (*Everyman's Lib.*, 320)

### Passiveness compared with Intransitiveness.

10. a) When the inverted subject is left unexpressed, the passive voice of a verb often has the value of an intransitive verb (Ch. XLV, 16, b). Thus *I was left behind*, *We were driven to the station* are practically equivalent to, respectively, *I remained behind*, *We drove to the station*.

It is, therefore, only natural that in not a few cases a passive voice in one language corresponds to an intransitive in another. Compare *to be blown away* with *wegwaaien*, *to be blown down* with *omwaaien*, *to be blown off* with *afwaaien*, *to be blown up* with *in de lucht vliegen*, *to be burnt down* with *afbranden*, *to be capsized* with *omslaan*, *to be drowned* with *verdrinken*, *to be killed* (or *slain*) with *sneuvelen*, *to be left* with *overblijven*, *to be performed* (or *done*) with *geschieden*, *to be upset* with *omslaan*, *to be taken ill* with *ziek worden*.

Thus also *to be born* (= Dutch *geboren worden*) = French *naitre*. MURRAY (in the O. E. D., s.v. *born*) significantly observes,

'In modern use the connexion with *bear* is no longer felt; the phrase *to be born* has become virtually an intransitive verb'.

The following illustrative quotations may be acceptable:

*to blow, to burn*: Three of the strongest Chinese war-ships were sunk, while another was burnt and blown up. *Il. Lond. News*, 1894, 404. (= *verbrandde en in de lucht vloog*.)

*to drown*: He that is born to be hanged will never be drowned. Proverb. (= *zal nooit verdrinken*.)

*to capsize*: If Norman had not stretched out his firm hand, and pulled the little fellow in, we should certainly have been capsized. *Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero*, 31. (= *zouden zijn omgeslagen*.)

*to hush*: And presently the voices of the two speakers were hushed. *THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. IV*, 70 (= *werden stil or zween*.)

*to leave*: I was left far behind at the first mouthful. *DICK., Cop.*, *Ch. V*, 34b. (= *bleef achter*.)

Jos was left alone with Rebecca. *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV*, 38. (= *bleef alleen*.)

They are left sufficiently strong to provide an opposition. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8239, 4a. (= *blijven*.)

*to perform*: The ordeal by fire was performed either by taking in the hand a piece of red-hot iron, or by walking barefoot and blindfold over nine red-hot plough-shares laid lengthwise and at unequal distances. *WEBST. Dict.*, s.v. *ordeal*. (= *geschiedde*.)

*b*) Of a good many verbs the passive and the intransitive form are used side by side, naturally with this difference that the activity expressed by the verb is ascribed to different agencies. In the case of the passive this agency is, however, but dimly thought of, so that the two constructions may be said to be practically equivalent in meaning. Thus not only *to be blown away* (*down, off or up*), but also *to blow* (*away, down, off or up*). Compare the following quotations with the first given above under 10, *a*:

*to blow*: Her cap blew off, her gown blew up. *TEN., Goose*, 51.

"Can I come to your room and do my hair, Deb?" she asked "The curls do blow about so. I should think you're glad yours is straight and never blows out in curls." *MARY WEBB, The Golden Arrow*, *Ch. I*, 5.

On Sunday morning the Naval Magazine between La Seyne and Toulon blew up. *Graph*.

Her candle, caught in some draught, blew out. *HUGH WALPOLE, The Captives*, *I, Ch. II*, 30.

Here follow some groups of examples with the passive and intransitive verb expressing practically the same meaning:

*to burn*: i. The first and second floors of the front building were burned out, roofs off. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *burn*, 8, *b*.

ii. The fire has burnt out to a spark. *ib.*, 2, *c*.

*to freeze*: i. He was frozen to death.

ii. I looked at the stars and considered how awful it would be for a man to turn his face up to them as he froze to death. *DICK., Great Exp.*, *Ch. VII*, 61.

*to marry*: i. That she was to be married some time or other she would have felt obliged to admit. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der.*, *I, Ch. IV*, 52.

In due time she is married to an Austrian officer. *Lit. World*, 1891, 367a.

ii. If at the age of eighteen she marries, she becomes little more than the chattel of her husband. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. X, 137.

He had just married and brought to his house a young American lady. ANTH. HOPE, *The King's Mirror*, Ch. II, 25.

Note: The passive voice is distinctly preferred when the ceremony is referred to. In the following example *was married to* stands for *had married* or *had been married to*: Sir Hugo wrote word that he was married to Miss Raymond, a sweet lady whom Daniel must remember having seen. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVI, 259.

c) The infinitive when not part of the future or conditional, the gerund and the present participle being often neutral as to the distinctions of voice (and tense), the active voice of the above verbs seems to be the rule in these forms.

*to drown*: i. Many jumped overboard and let themselves drown. *Lit. World*, 1891, 222 c.

The men must drown. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VII, 73.

Well, she'll have to marry somebody some day — and the rest of us may drown! MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. VIII, 126

ii. Halcyone saw him drowning. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, 27.

iii. A drowning man catcheth at a straw. *Prov.*

I am drowning, we will suppose. *Lit. World*, 1891, 485 c.

*to upset*: i. You will find the boat easier to pull then, and it will not be so liable to upset. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. III, 30.

ii. She seemed in continual danger either of upsetting or of running ashore. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Hand.*, I, 83).

Note: The passive voice appears to be quite usual also: Overcrowded as it (sc. the boat) was, there was danger of the boat being upset. *Tit-bits*, 1895, 15 Jan., 184 c.

11. a) The similarity of passiveness and intransitiveness also appears from the fact that a passive predicate is often preceded by weak *there*, in like manner as an intransitive predicate, when the subject has post-position on account of its particular weight. Compare 13, b; and Ch. VIII, 10.

There had been taken to the Marshalsea Prison . . a debtor with whom this narrative has some concern. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 296.

And days went on and there was born a boy | To William. TEN., *Dora*, 88.

The school only took her mornings, and for the afternoon there was proposed to her the teaching of the little Baxendales. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. V, 67.

From the instant that the lips of the little old lady touched Jill's, there was sealed a bond. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. VIII, 288.

There is some free hitting, there is some fair bowling, fielding, and catching. Certainly there is displayed a great deal of courage, and certainly there is enjoyed a great deal of fun. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8603, 11a.

A negative adverbial adjunct in front-position causes *there* to be placed after the auxiliary (Ch. VIII, 7, a Note).

In no land, perhaps, is there found so commonly the love at first sight, which in France is a jest and in England a doubt. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VII, 50.

b) When in such a passive sentence with weak *there* the subject is placed between the verb *to be* and the participle, the predicate loses some of its passive nature, *to be* assuming more or less the character of a full verb approaching in meaning to *to exist*.

Thus *There never was such a story written* may be interpreted to stand for *There never was such a story, i. e. in a written form*. Comparing this sentence with *There never was written such a story*, or in better English *Never was there written such a story*, we find that in the former *written* expresses almost as prominent an idea as *story*, while in the latter the idea expressed by *written* is distinctly subservient to that denoted by *story*. Accordingly there is no distinct difference in stress between the noun and the participle in the former, while in the latter the participle has far less stress than the noun.

Thus also in the following quotations the participle, owing to its being placed after the noun, has more stress than it would have had if placed before it. It stands to reason that the intensity of its stress depends in some measure on its semantic significance. From a comparison of these quotations with those under *a*) it would appear that in not a few cases the alternative arrangement could also have been used without implying an appreciable difference in meaning.

There is no harm intended to your person. SHAK., JUL. CÆS., III, 1, 89.

There were generally some last words bawled after him just as he was turning the corner. WASH. IRV., DOLF HEYL. (STOF., HAND 1, 1, 110).

Bob said he didn't believe there ever was such a goose cooked. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR., III.

But all along the lane there has been no word spoken, unbecoming the ear either of the rector or the young lady. TROL., GOOD WORDS.

There is no other Tory candidate spoken of. G. ELIOT, FEL. HOLT, I, Ch 1, 24.

For some weeks there was hardly anything talked of, we might almost say hardly anything thought of in England, but the story of the rebellion that had taken place in the island of Jamaica. MCCARTHY, SHORT HIST., Ch XX, 281. There is more sentimental nonsense talked about childhood than on any other subject whatever, not excluding village life, which topic runs it a good second. WESTM. GAZ., No 8615, 8a.

c) In the following quotations hardly any trace of passiveness is discernible:

There's no love lost between us. GOLDSMITH, SHE STOOPS, IV, (214).

There is no harm done. MISS MITFORD, OUR VILLAGE, Ch. II, 23.

Sometimes even the participle almost has the character of an adjective; thus in:

There was no insult intended. JEROME, MISS HOBBS, IV, 59. (almost = no intentional insult.)

All the same there's dinner cooked and ready for him, and the table laid every day, year in year out. RICH. BAGOT, DARNELEY PLACE, I, Ch. II, 19. (*Cooked* implies the same notion as *ready*.)

## Frequency of the Passive Voice in English.

12. The passive voice is more extensively used in English than in any of the cognate languages. This is due to a variety of causes:

- a) the levelling of the distinctions between the dative and accusative cases and the consequent loss of differentiation between the notions underlying them;
- b) the close coalescing of the preposition of a prepositional object with the verb, which imparts to the combination almost the character of a compound transitive verb (Ch. XLV, 24, c);
- c) the absence of an indefinite pronoun in the function of the Dutch *men*, German *man* or French *on*, by which the English language is sensibly incommoded (Ch. XL, 150 f);
- d) the heaviness of the reflexive pronouns, which renders reflexive verbs less adaptable to express passiveness than is the case in either German or French. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 396, § 2813; JESPERSEN, *Prog.*, § 181 f; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 632; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 43; MÄTZN, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 63, 172 ff; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*, § 363.

A striking feature of English is its frequent use of the passive construction in what has been styled the *Nominative with Infinitive* (Ch. XVIII, 41 ff).

In conclusion it should be observed that in the language of illiterate people the passive voice is rather uncommon, the active voice, as being more concise and more to the point being more natural to their speech. Compare KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*, § 360.

13. a) Conversely the passive voice is never used of subjective verbs (Ch. XLV, 20) in Modern English, which is often done in Dutch and German. Thus *Er werd gedanst* (*Es wurde getanzt*), *Er werd gelachen* (*Es wurde gelacht*), *Eindelijk werd gerust* (*Endlich wurde gerastet*), etc., could not be rendered by a passive voice in English. This construction which may be called the impersonal passive construction, mostly corresponds to one in which the subjective verb is represented by *to be* + gerund or noun of action, e. g.: *There was (some) dancing*, *There was (some) laughter*, etc.

There was no fight; but there was chanting. THACK., *Pend. I*, Ch. V, 55.

After some laughing, the gentleman whom he had called Quinion said: [etc.] DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 12b.

There was more laughter, more chit-chat. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, 75.

No wonder there is cursing in the land of Goschen. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8373, 4b.

When night fell, there was anxious whispering between mother and daughter. *ib.*, 28 10, 1922, 16b.

For further illustration see also Ch. II, 5.

- b) It may be added that also the construction with weak *there* + passive objective verb (Ch. XLV, 20), so common in Dutch, is unusual in English. Thus the ordinary rendering of such Dutch sentences as *Er werden vele brieven geschreven*, *Er werd lang over de zaak gesproken* would be *Many letters were written*, *The matter was long spoken about*.



Naturally the particular length or prominence of the subject, or the requirements of metre or rhythm may cause it to be fixed on (11). The following quotations are intended to bring this out:

Music was soon begun. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. V, 65. (= *Er werd spoedig met muziek begonnen*.)

Nothing could be done for the present. *id.*, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. XII, 220. (= *Er kon voorloopig niets gedaan worden*.)

They will be written about in newspapers and talked about as the special Nimrods of their age. TROL., *Good Words*. (= *Er zal over hen in de couranten geschreven worden etc.*)

Similarly: Her bed had not been slept in. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 219. (= *Er was niet in haar bed geslapen*.)

### Application of the Passive Voice in English.

14. In illustrating the application of the passive voice in English it seems expedient to distinguish between  $\alpha$ ) verbs or group-verbs that govern one non-prepositional object;  $\beta$ ) such as govern one prepositional object;  $\gamma$ ) such as govern two non-prepositional objects; and  $\delta$ ) such as govern two objects, one prepositional, one non-prepositional.

#### Passive conversion of verbs or group-verbs that govern one non-prepositional object.

15.  $\alpha$ ) The use of the passive voice of verbs governing a single non-prepositional object requires no illustration. It should, however, be observed that it is common only when the object is felt to be a person or thing:

1) that is subjected to an activity, as in *He was betrayed by his friend*, *He was beaten black and blue* (Ch. XLV, 18,  $\alpha$ );

2) that is judged, declared or known to be in a certain state, as in *He was declared (or known) to be innocent* (Ch. XLV, 18,  $\beta$ );

3) that is brought forth through an activity, as in *The house was built by his grandfather* (Ch. XLV, 18,  $\gamma$ ).

$\beta$ ) Whenever none of these notions is felt to underlie the relation between the activity expressed by the verb and the thing denoted by the object, passive conversion is highly unusual or even impossible. This may be owing to:

1) the nature of the object;

2) the nature of the verb either  $\alpha$ ) in its ordinary application or  $\beta$ ) in a changed application;

3) the close connexion of the verb and the object, which brooks no separation.

16. a) It stands to reason that when the object is represented by the indefinite pronoun *it*, which stands for a vague cognate object (Ch. XLVI, 3), passive conversion is out of the question. Thus it is impossible of:

We can walk it perfectly well. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. IV.

We will battle it out together. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch XXXIX, 304b.

b) It is equally clear that the passive voice is unthinkable when the object is a reflexive pronoun, the reflexive verb as it stands already representing the subject as undergoing some activity. Thus no conversion is possible of *He killed himself*.

When the reflexive verb is semantically equivalent to an intransitive verb (Ch. XLVI, 2 ff), there is an additional reason why the passive voice is impossible. Thus in *He betook himself to a stratagem*, *He bore himself with dignity*.

The same reasoning does not apply to the combination with the reciprocal pronoun, the passive conversion, although certainly uncommon, not being precluded by the relation between verb and object. Only the use of the passive voice postulates separation of the two members of which the reciprocal pronoun is composed. Thus *They betrayed each other* admits of being changed into *Each was betrayed by the other*.

c) For a similar reason the passive voice is out of the question when the object is preceded by a possessive pronoun denoting the same person as that indicated by the subject, as in *He lost his purse*, *He cut his finger*, *She cried her eyes out*.

Also when for some reason the possessive pronoun is dropped, the passive conversion seems to be impossible. Thus in *They clapped hands*. See also 18, a.

d) For reasons of syntax the passive voice is rarely used when the object is represented by a clause or infinitive, unless it keeps the position which it has in the active sentence, i. e. is placed after the governing verb. The construction then necessitates the use of the anticipating *it* in the head-sentence. Thus, although such sentences as *It was assumed that the man was not in his right mind*, *It was determined to set to work at once* are exceedingly common, the language hardly admits of such constructions as *\*That the man was not in his right mind was assumed*, *\*To set to work at once was determined*. See also 38. In such a sentence as *That Newton was a great genius cannot be denied* the subordinate statement is, indeed, followed by a passive verb, but then the whole combination *cannot be denied* has the value of an adjective in *able*, viz. *undeniable*, so that it is but vaguely felt as a passive.

17. Among the verbs which in their ordinary application are never, or hardly ever, used in the passive voice, we may distinguish:
- a) those in which the older force which caused them to govern

a dative still lingers, such as *to become*, *to befit*, *to befall*, *to fail*, *to behove*, *to last*, *to misgive*, *to resemble*, *to suffice*, *to suit*. A further reason why these verbs do not admit of passive conversion is the fact that, with the possible exception of *to befall* and *to misgive*, they express rather a state than an activity. For illustration of these verbs see Ch. XLVI, 5, *a*.

b) 1) the verb *to have* in its ordinary meaning of *to be in possession of* or some slight modification of this meaning. Thus no passive conversion is possible of the following examples: *I have many shares in this company. Their policy had the desired effect. He has very bad health.* In these and similar connexions the verb does not express any activity, much less an activity to which a person or thing is subjected.

Instances of passive constructions with *to have* especially in shades of meaning which differ materially from those referred to above, are occasionally met with.

i. I hate to be thought men's property in that way, though possibly I shall be had some day. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. IV, 32.

ii. Some answer must be had to these questions. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 523.

iii. I had made inquiries about Sinfi, but had been told that she was not now to be had (sc. as a model). WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XVI, 462.

Crum was in town and an introduction to Cynthia Dark to be had for the asking. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. VII, (617).

iv. A great laugh was had at my expense. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 52.

v. "Let me have two words with you." The two words were had apart. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. IV, 20*a*.

vi. The memory of such men should be had in reverence. MAC., *Sir James Mackintosh*.

vii. The best Sèvres dinner-set was had out. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. VII, 60.

viii. The fellow was had up, and Frank was had up for a witness. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, VIII, Ch. XI, 154*b*.

I've never been had up in a police-court before. GALSWORTHY, *The Silver Box*, III, (85).

ix. The next day Richard was had to the Tower and there committed to safe custody. HOLINSHED, 1110—11, Note to Rich. II, V, 2, 7 (in *Clar. Press Ed.*).

2) What has been said of *to have* naturally applies also to its synonyms *to own* and *to possess*. Thus the passive conversions of such sentences as *He owns several houses in the City, He does not possess these shares any more* would have an incongruous effect.

The following quotations can hardly be considered to afford instances of passive conversion, the participle having the character of an adjective and the preceding form of *to be* that of a copula. Indeed *to be possessed by* corresponds not to the Dutch *\*bezeten worden* door, but to *in het bezit zijn van*, in which *in het bezit* is an adjective equivalent. Nor should it be urged that the preposition

*by* shows the preceding verb-group to be a passive voice, seeing that there is nothing uncommon in the use of *by* after adjectives derived from past participles. See Ch. LVII, 36, Obs. I.

i. The deep affections of the breast | That heaven to living things imparts,  
| Are not exclusively possessed | By human hearts. CAMPBELL, *The Parrot*, I.  
In the reign of George the First, this moderate but ancient inheritance was  
possessed by Mr. Richard Clive. MAC., *Clive*, (498a).

ii. To the east of it (sc. No. 5) stood several houses once owned by that  
bright and gifted soul, Horace Walpole. *Strand Mag.*, 325, 15a.

3) Similarly *to contain*, when its meaning falls little short of that of *to have*, expresses a notion which is incompatible with the function of the passive voice. Such a sentence as *This letter contains some useful information* can, indeed, be turned into *Some useful information is contained in (not by) this letter*, but in this conversion the verb *to be* is the copula, not the auxiliary of the passive voice.

Sometimes the whole letter was contained on a mere scrap of paper. MRS. GASK, *Cranf.*, 90 (Tauch.).

4) Also *to know* in the ordinary meaning of *to have knowledge of*, *to be possessed of knowledge of*, naturally hardly tolerates passive conversion. Thus *I do not know your name*, *The boy does not know his lesson* could not be converted into *\*Your name is not known by me*, *\*The lesson is not known by the boy*. We could, of course, say *Your name is not known to me*, but this sentence is not passive, the verb *to be* being a copula and *known* an adjective.

In the following examples *to know* is practically equivalent to *to acquire knowledge of*. Hence there is not anything incongruous about the passive use of the verb in:

She knew far too little of even what there is to be known. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud*, I, Ch. V, 93.

He seemed to know all that was to be known about music. GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, Ch. III, 36.

5) Lastly mention may here be made of *to lack* and its synonym *to want*, both of them equivalent to *to have* negated, as verbs which owing to their meaning have no passive. Thus no passive conversion is possible of such sentences as *This man lacks experience*, *This shop wants customers*.

c) the verb *to make* in a greatly reduced meaning (Ch. XLVI, 5, b), as in *She would make a good wife* (THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 34).

d) verbs of asking or requesting, especially when the object is a noun of action, in this connexion mostly preceded by a subjective genitive or a possessive pronoun in like function. See Ch. III, 17; Ch. XXIV, 26, b, 1; Ch. XXXIII, 14, b. Thus no passive conversion is possible of:

I beg my friend's Winkle's pardon. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

If I could have seen my mother, I should have .. besought her forgiveness. id., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 30a.

I did not mean to wound you. I beg pardon. LYTTON, *What will he do with it?* I, Ch. VIII, 26.

The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

Her pardon was duly begged at the close of the song. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXVI, 213.

It may as well be stated in this place that when these verbs govern two objects, the passive construction is usual only in case the thing-object is represented by an infinitive. Thus *They requested him to withdraw his claim* may be turned into *He was requested to withdraw his claim*.

But the following examples bear no passive conversion, any more than those given higher up:

i. I beg your ladyship ten thousand pardons. SHER., *School for Scand.*, V, 3, (436).

I beg my friends in the United States pardon for calling these zealous senators men. Eng. Rev., 1912, May, 305.

ii. The wretch .. besought him for mercy. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 995.

iii. But we beg pardon of our readers for arguing a point so clear. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (609b).

Also such a sentence as *They were all asked for money by the porter*, corresponding to *The porter asked them all for money* (THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, VII, 73) would jar upon an English ear.

18. It has been repeatedly observed in Ch. XLVI, 41 ff, that a noun with its adjunct, although syntactically related to the governing verb as a non-prepositional object, may in reality denote particulars characterizing the action it expresses. This is the reason why the passive voice is never or rarely used of:

a) causative converted intransitives when the object indicates the instrument by which the action is effected. Thus the passive conversion is practically impossible of most of the examples mentioned in Ch. XLVI, 41, Obs. III.

She leant her elbows on the drawing-board before her. Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audl.*, I, Ch. I, 12.

The post-boy smacked his whip incessantly. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 193

For the rest most causative converted intransitives admit of being used in the passive voice. To the instances given in Ch. XLVI, 41, Obs. IV we may add the following:

He was marched in front of the troops. II. Lond. News.

The table looks as if it would go over the instant anything was rested on it. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

Morland was retired on pension. Westm., *Gaz.*, 7/10, 1922, 9a.

Some conversions, however, have an incongruous effect. Such is the case with those in:

If she were to let go her hold of the railings for one moment, the balloons would lift her up and she would be flown away. J. M. BARRIE, *Peter Pan*, Ch. I, 2.

Should he try to repeat the offence, he will be stood in the corner. PUNCH.<sup>1)</sup>  
 b) converted intransitives which owe their application as transitives to their being furnished with a cognate object, especially if the latter is attended by an adnominal modifier which, from a semantic point of view, denotes the quality of the activity (Ch. XLVI, 44). Thus passive conversion is impracticable not only of such collocations as *to sleep the sleep of the just, to fight a good fight* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 253), in which the cognate object is uniform with the verb, but also of those illustrated by the following quotations:

Death grinned horrible a ghastly smile. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, II, 846.

Some day he would marry a good match, with a good fortune. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. VIII, 91.

But when the cognate object is not attended by an adnominal modifier, so that no description of the manner of the activity is intended, the verb may assume a meaning which is not incompatible with the function of the passive voice; thus in:

The sin is sinn'd, and I | Lo! I forgive thee as Eternal God | Forgives. TEN., *Guin.*, 540.

Domestic felicity must be earned — by loving consideration for the tastes, and even for the faults of him or her with whom life is to be lived. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 12.

Life cannot be understood without much charity, cannot be lived without much charity. OSC. WILDE, *The Ideal Husband*, II.

Life is not meant to be questioned. It is meant to be lived. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 5.

Nor is there anything unusual in the passive conversion when the similarity in meaning of the verb and the object is far from evident. This is shown by the following examples:

Meanwhile war arose, | And fields were fought in Heav'n. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, II, 768.

Mr. Bailey's mortal course was run. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLII, 330 a.

We have no fatal accidents to record, such as those which shocked all Europe when the Paris—Bordeaux race was run. TIMES.

This is the part of the Broad Walk where all the big races are run. J. M. BARRIE, *Peter Pan*, Ch. I, 6.

Thus even in the following quotation the passive conversion does not strike us as unidiomatic, notwithstanding the adnominal modifier of the object:

A severe action was fought in the streets. MARRYAT, *Childr. New-For*, Ch XXVII.

c) converted intransitives which express a kind of uttering, the noun figuring as the object practically indicating the manner in which the action takes place (Ch. XLVI, 46). Thus passive conversion is utterly impossible of:

Nydia bowed her gratitude. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. X, 89 b.

The Jew nodded assent. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XIII, 125.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, *Handb.* 3, § 168.

*d*) converted intransitives which take an effective object (Ch. XLVI, 48). As the latter, often together with an adnominal adjunct, mainly serves the purpose of expressing a high intensity of the action, the passive conversion of the verb is mostly out of the question. Thus it is impossible of:

He wept hot tears upon the books. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. II, 65.

Naturally also when the verb is impersonal, as in:

It was raining cats and dogs. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 372.

Only when such a verb assumes the function of a causative (Ch. XLVI, 49, *b*) does it seem to admit of passive conversion. Thus we could say *Benefits were rained upon us*.

19. *a*) Among the verbs that have become transitive through absorption of a preposition it is only such as in their primary application were mutatives, which at all afford instances of passive conversion. To those given in Ch. XLVI, 51 a few are added in this place. It will be observed that the passive construction sometimes has an incongruous effect.

When the house of the massacre itself was entered, its floors and its walls told with terrible plainness of the scene they had witnessed. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 190.

There shall be escaped the incapacities and the slow annihilation which unwise habits entail. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 16*b*.

Chillon! thy prison is a holy place | And thy sad floor an altar — for 'twas trod | Until his very steps have left a trace | Worn . . . By Bonnivard! BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*

One more stage of the heavy pilgrimage towards the peace which Ireland has still to add to freedom has been travelled. MANCH. GUARD., VI, 14, 273*b*.

The majority of such verbs do not, however, admit of being used in the passive voice. Thus it is impossible of *to fly a town*, *to flee the city*, *to range the woods*, *to roam the country*, *to rove the wilderness*.

When the original meaning has faded to a degree as to be barely discernible, the passive voice appears to be quite natural.

All ventures must be run . . . all risks must be run. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. X, 119.

*b*) Converted intransitives which go back to non-mutative verbs appear, one and all, to reject passive conversion. Thus it is impossible of the numerous collocations with *to stand*, such as *to stand a siege*, *fire*, *an assault*, etc. mentioned in Ch. XLVI, 52; also of *to relive a scene*, *to sit a horse*, *to talk business* (XLVI, 53).

20. *a*) Many transitive group-verbs resulting from the junction of an intransitive with an adverb or adverbial word-group (Ch. XLVI, 55) can be freely used in the passive voice, because the object denotes a thing that is thought of as subjected to an activity or as brought into a locality or state (15). Thus we could say *He was run* H. POUTSMA, III 1.

*through the body, I was bowed out of the room, The woman was easily talked round.*

The park was let out in pasture and fed down by sheep and cattle. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 21.

The book was an old one — thirty years old, soiled, scribbled wantonly over with a strange name in every variety of enmity to the letterpress. HARDY, *Jude*, I, IV, 31.

b) But not a few of these group-verbs hardly admit of passive conversion. Thus no instances have turned up of the rather numerous combinations with *to look* (mentioned in Ch. III, 16 and Ch. XLVI, 55), such as *to look in the eyes (in the mouth), to look through (up and down, all over)*. The reason why passive conversion of these combinations is probably non-existent seems to be that the addition of the adverbial adjunct has not sufficiently divested the verb of its original intransitive nature, although it is not difficult to give approximate transitive equivalents. Thus *to look in the eyes (or face)* differs little from *to confront*, and *to look up and down (or all over)* has practically the same meaning as *to survey*.

Similarly *to stand in good stead*, as in *This stood me in good stead*, cannot be turned into the passive voice, although *to suit* comes near to express the same idea.

21. As to transitives that have been formed from intransitives through prefixes (Ch. XLVI, 57) we find that passive conversion is practically excluded. This is natural enough so far as those containing the adverbs *out* and *over* are concerned, but it is rather astonishing that it should also apply to the formations with the prefix *be*, seeing that the transitive meaning mentioned in 15, a) 1) shines distinctly through them. The following sentences cannot, accordingly, be thrown into the passive voice:

She bemoaned her miseries in the sweetest voice. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. LIX.

These letters, too, bespeak the character of this gentleman. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 310.

Silence, maiden, thy tongue outruns thy discretion. SCOTT., *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III.  
He had outlived nearly all his early friends and foes. MCCARTHY, *Hist. of Our Own Times*, IV, Ch. LXVII, 253.

In the following quotation *bespeak* is not used passively, the participle being prominently adjectival and *to be* having the function of a copula. "Oh, may I be the bride, father?" — "No," said the father, "that character is bespoken." EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. IV, 29.

No incongruity seems to attach to the passive conversion of *to survive*, although a strict synonym of *to outlive*. This may be owing to the fact that it does not suggest an intransitive base.

If he is survived by children of brothers predeceased, the inheritance belongs to all of them. MUIRHEAD, *Gains*, III, § 16.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s. v. *survive*, 2, a.



Gay, who spent most of his time with the Queensberrys, faded out when Pope was little more than forty, and was survived but three years by the beloved Arbuthnot. *Times*, Lit.<sup>1)</sup>

22. The use of the passive voice having the effect of making us think separately of the notions expressed by the verb and its object, it is but natural that it is rare when these elements are felt to express a unit and, consequently, bear no separation (9, e). In fact many such combinations have the value of intransitives or equivalent passives. Thus *to take flight* has practically the same meaning as *to flee* (or *to fly*), and *to take alarm* differs but little from *to be alarmed*. Some also may be replaced by a word-group consisting of a copula — adjective, e. g.: *to lose patience* = *to become impatient*.

Further instances of such inseparable phrases are *to cast* (*to heave* and *to weigh*) *anchor*; *to take up* (*to bear* and *to carry*) *arms*; *to accept* (*to cease*, *to give* and *to join*) *battle*; *to touch bottom*; *to change countenance*; *to change* (*to lose*, *to regain* and *to turn*) *colour*; *to lose* (*to pluck up* and *to take*) *courage*; *to disappoint* (and *to fulfil*) *expectation*; *to keep* (and *to mount*) *guard*; *to lose* (*to gather*, *to keep* (up), *to pluck up* and *to take*) *heart*; *to take leave*; *to take orders*; *to hoist* (*to lower*, *to make* and *to strike*) *sail*; *to shut up shop*; *to keep* (and *to break*) *silence*; *to spoil sport*; *to keep vigil*; *to take wing*; *to keep word*. In all the above phrases the union is strengthened by the suppression of the possessive pronoun or the definite article (Ch. XXX, 63, and Ch. XXXIII, 16). In not a few even the use of the possessive pronoun hardly weakens it, so that passive conversion is equally impracticable. Thus it is impossible with *to make one's appearance*; *to keep one's countenance*; *to make one's escape*; *to lose one's patience*; *to take up one's residence*.

#### Passive Conversion of Verbs and Group-verbs that govern one prepositional Object.

23. a) The close union of the preposition with the verb governing a prepositional object has been given as one of the causes why sentences containing such a combination admit of passive conversion (Ch. XLV, 24, c). This close union becomes apparent from the combination being often practically equivalent to a transitive verb, either in English itself or in some one of the cognate languages. Thus, to repeat a few of the examples given in Ch. XLVI, 16 and 17, *to impose* (up)on = *to deceive*; *to laugh*

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., *Handb.*<sup>3</sup>, § 163.

*at* = *to deride, to ridicule*; *to speak to* = *to address*; *to treat of* = *to discuss*; *to aim at* = *viser*; *to listen to* = *écouter*; *to preach to* = *prêcher*; *to ring for* = *sonner*.

Also Dutch and, no doubt, German and French have, indeed, similar pairs of equivalents, but in these languages the preposition is too intimately connected with the following (pro)noun to bear separating from it. Thus in Dutch *over een zaak spreken* does not differ materially from *een zaak bespreken*, any more than *om iemand lachen*, does from *iemand uitlachen*. But we cannot say *Deze zaken hebben zij lang en breed gesproken over* instead of *Over deze zaken hebben zij lang en breed gesproken*. Compare the English *These things they have long spoken about*, not \**About these things they have long spoken*.

b) The development of the passive construction of verbs governing a prepositional object may also have been furthered α) by the similarity in form of these combinations to those with adverbs that are uniform with prepositions, and β) by its offering facilities for obtaining smoothness of style when an inverted object is to be connected with verbs governing different constructions (Ch. XLV, 24, c).

i. The staff would be paid off forthwith, the stock disposed of and the place closed up. JOHN OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler* (SWAEN, Sel. II, 142).

ii. It was stipulated and agreed upon that I should lie in my black silk breeches all night. STERNE, *Sent. Journey, The Case of Delicacy*, 42a.

It was insisted upon, and stipulated for, by the lady, that after Monsieur was got to bed, and the candle and fire extinguished, Monsieur should not speak one single word the whole night. ib.

Crowds followed her wherever she moved: nothing was talked of, or dreamed of, toasted or betted on, but Lucy Brandon. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XV, 166.

c) In conclusion it should be remarked again that it is the passive voice itself which is largely instrumental in linking preposition and verb together, the union being less sensibly felt in the active voice (Ch. XLV, 24, c).

24. From the beginning of the Modern English period the passive voice has been extensively used of verbs governing a prepositional object. In Middle English instances appear to be only sporadically met with. See JESPERSEN, *Prog.*, § 181; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 26, 3; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 632.

The following examples will show that what has been observed in 15 about the passive conversion of verbs with a non-prepositional object also applies to that of verbs which govern a prepositional object.

*to act on*: I wish the maxim were more generally acted on in all cases. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. VI, 29b.

*to arrive at*: A definite settlement must be arrived at with regard to both reparations and international debts. *Westm. Gaz.* 7/18, 1922, 31a.

*to breathe (up)on*: Geraint could never take again | That comfort from their converse which he took | Before the Queen's fair name was breathed upon. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 950.

*to come to*: Nor have I ever regretted for one hour that resolution come to in solitude, .. to devote to that sacred cause every power of brain and tongue that I possessed. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 188.

A decision having been come to not to speak of Irene's flight, no view was expressed by any other member of the family as to the right course to be pursued. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. VI, 345.

*depart from*: If he found that that order was departed from, he would cast the offender from him. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 13.

*impose (up)on*: It seemed to him that his fellow creatures were sadly imposed upon by their tailors. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. II, 32.

*to look (up)on*: The production of a new English opera is naturally looked upon as an event of historic importance. *Acad.*

*to part with*: These doubtless were keepsakes that .. had been parted with only when life and all were going. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 190.

*to rely (up)on*: In this ungrateful world fellow-creatures are not to be relied upon. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. II, 32.

*to respond to*: This long address was responded to at equal length by Jacob Maas, member of the Council of Brabant. MOTLEY, *Rise*, Ch. II, 57*b*.

*to run after*: The places were so run after that he got a premium of 400 or 500 pounds with each young gent. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 11.

*to send to*: Magistrates were sent to, large dogs borrowed, blunderbusses cleaned, and a subscription made throughout the parish for the raising of a patrol. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XIII, 143.

*to stand against*: Then an impulse not to be stood against drove her on. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 201.

*to talk about*: He has been more generally talked about than almost any other member of Parliament. *Graph.*

*to think of*: I liked to be thought well of by my companions. THACK., *Sam. Titm.* Ch. IV, 41.

The visit would never have been thought of, if England and Austria had not been on the best possible terms. *Graph.*

*to write about*: It is not to be supposed that such men will be written about in newspapers and talked about as the special Nimrods of their age. TROL., *Good Words*.

— *to*: Emily was written to. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. VII, 101.

*to work for*: Domestic felicity, like everything else worth having, must be worked for. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 12.

*to yield to*: It is a strange fancy of Sinfi's, but I feel that it must be yielded to. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. XII, 453.

25. The prepositional object may belong to a semi-compound consisting of a verb and an adverb. ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 28) offers the following illustration: *Such a state of things cannot be put up with. This practice has long been done away with. The tragedy is led up to by a pathetic love-story.*

*He was done out of £1000*, which he mentions in the same breath, ought not to have been included here, *out of* being a group-preposition and *to do* a transitive verb (LX, 34, c, 36).

Further illustration is afforded by the passive conversion of:

*to bow down to*: If she was sufficiently bowed down to by the party, there was every chance of her enjoying herself. E. F. BENSON, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. I, 19.

*to fly out at*: It was by no means the first time she had been flown out at in somewhat of this fashion. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XIV, 172.

*to go through with*: Well, it must be gone through with, and he said "What made you ask?" GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, I, Ch. II, 23.

*to look down (up) on*: She knew that Dissenters were looked down upon by those whom she regarded as the most refined classes. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. VI, 112.

*to make away with*: Oh, the poor lad, the poor lad! He has been made away with. DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. VI, 118b.

*to run away with*: He had run away with girls, he had been run away with by girls. WELLS, *Kipps*, II, Ch. VI, § 3, 205.

In the following quotation the hyphens seem to show that the writer wishes *in-a-cart* to be apprehended as part of a compound verb:

It is commonly believed that donkeys will not "go". This is a fallacy. But, of course, it is not everyone who has been run-away-with-in-a-cart by a donkey. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16 12, 1922, 11b.

26. Also in such verbal phrases as *to pay attention (to)*, *to take care (of)* etc. the component parts form no real separate subjects of thought, so that they can, in a manner, be said to make up a group-verb. The preposition with which they are construed does not belong to the verb, but either to the noun alone or, more frequently, to the phrase as a whole. The verb cannot, therefore, with strict justice, be said to govern two objects, one without and one with a preposition, as we often find it stated. The close union of verb and noun appears from the fact that in the case of most of these phrases there is a simplex, either in English or some one of the cognate languages, of approximately the same value. Thus *to pay attention to*, *to pay heed to*, *to make allowance for*, *to take hold of* do not materially differ from, respectively, *to attend to*, *to heed*, *to allow for*, *to seize*. It deserves notice that these equivalents are either transitives or objective intransitives, the latter equally capable as the former of passive conversion.

The union is also shown by the marked phonetic subserviency of the verb to the noun, which is distinctly less pronounced in other combinations of a verb with a non-prepositional object. Compare, for example, *He paid attention to my words* with *He paid five pounds to my brother*. Observe that in the latter example the preposition belongs not to the noun but to the verb. It is but natural that the closeness with which verb and noun in these phrases are knit together appears in different degrees of intensity.

a) In some the two parts are virtually inseparable, so that but one conversion, that with the (pro)noun governed by the preposition as the subject, is at all current. This is, for example, the case

with *to give chase to*; *to take compassion (or pity) on*; *to give effect to*; *to find fault with*; *to set fire to*; *to make fun (game or sport) of*; *to poke fun at*; *to take heed of*; *to pay heed to*; *to catch (get, lay, lose, seize and take) hold of*; *to take refuge in*; *to catch (and lose) sight of*; *to bear testimony to*.

b) In some the connexion is rather loose, with the result that the alternative passive construction, the one with the noun in the phrase as the subject, is practically the only one in ordinary use. This applies, for example, to *to make allowance for*; *to make allusion to*; *to attach importance to*; *to make mention of*; *to raise objection to (or against)*; *to take possession of*; *to lay stress on*; *to set value on*; *to bring (leave and send) word of*.

c) Others, again, occupy in intermediate position and, consequently, admit currently of two passive conversions. Such are, for example, *to take advantage of*; *to pay attention to*; *to take care of*; *to take exception to*; *to take notice of*; *to have recourse to*; *to make short work of*; *to set store by*.

It stands to reason that no rigid line of demarcation can be drawn between these groups, and no strict rule can be given as to which verbal phrases admit of only one, which of two passive constructions. Nor should it be forgotten that the choice between the two passive constructions largely depends on the structure of the sentence as a whole: a long element, for example, being, as a rule, most conveniently placed at the end of the sentence and, accordingly, hardly fitted to be made the subject of a passive sentence, whose ordinary place is at the head, adverbial adjuncts, of course, frequently opening the sentence (40).

In most of these phrases, especially those mentioned under *b)* and *c)*, the union of verb and noun is not so close as not to admit of being broken by some adjunct placed before the latter. Such an adjunct is mostly an indefinite numeral or adjective denoting a degree, e. g. *much*, *little*, *no*, *every*, *some*, *any*; *great*, *small*, etc., occasionally an adjective indicating a quality. As in this case the noun in the verbal phrase represents the foremost notion in the speaker's mind, it follows that the passive construction with this element as the subject is the most frequent one. In fact it may be said that whenever the noun in some way or other re-asserts its individuality, the verb governs two objects, one with and one without a preposition. The discussion of these phrases might in this case be relegated to another heading. See below under 41. Compare also 38.

The union is, of course, entirely destroyed when verb and noun, the latter furnished with an definitive adjunct, are placed in different members of a complex sentence, as in:

He insisted many times to the groom on the care that was to be taken of the black pony. G. E. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVI, 258.

The following examples, arranged according to the alphabetical position of the nouns contained in the phrases are regrettably very inadequate to illustrate their possible passive conversions. In many cases they cannot even be regarded to represent the most usual practice. Some of them, indeed, have a harsh effect and would hardly be used by careful stylists. Not a few of the phrases mentioned under *a*) may even be said to tolerate no passive conversion at all. H. T. PRICE, (*Anglia*, Beibl., XXIV, V, 156), however, overstates the case in observing, "*He would have been made an end of, This must be kept tight hold of*, although allowable in conversation, would be monstrosities in literature".

*allowance*: Allowance must, no doubt, be made for the astonishing rapidity of communication in these days. *Times*.

Every allowance is made for difficulties. *ib.*

*allusion*: Allusion has already been made to the fact that the boarders to be accommodated at this Government table are to be picked men. *Times*. She wondered that .. no allusion was made to the strike then pending. Mrs. GASK., *North and South*, Ch. XX, 128.

*attention*: Attention was given to the avoidance of fatigue. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/10, 1922, 25*b*.

(Also to pay a person attention, as in: They pay us no attention at all. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, II, Ch. II, 94.)

*care*: If I waited to be taken care of by my wife, mia'am, I believe you know pretty well I should wait till Doomsday. DICK, *Hard Times*, II, Ch. IX, 86*b*. The child was being taken care of. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. XV, 116.

She sent word the child should be taken all imaginable care of. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, I, I, (260).

She shall be taken tender care of. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, Ch. XX, 336.

*fault*: It was solemnly argued that not more than three million pounds could be profitably spent in two years, and on this basis fault was found with the Government proposals of financial assistance. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8144, 8*a*.

No fault was found with my suggestions. T. W. ERLE, *Law Times*.<sup>1)</sup>

*fire*: When the powder in the barrel of a gun is set fire to, it explodes, and drives out the bullet with great force. SWEET, *Elementarbuch*, 64.

*fun*: He was always made fun of as a poet. BIRRELL.<sup>2)</sup>

*hold*: The old woman I mentioned .. is not laid hold of. DICK, *Hard Times*, II, Ch. XI, 91*a*.

The robber must be laid hold of. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. V, 37.

If he can be laid hold of any sooner, he shall have an earlier opportunity of clearing himself. *ib.*, III, Ch. IV, 113*a*.

*mention*: Mention need only be made of Mr. McKenna's speech to the American Bankers' Association 'Convention. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/10, 1922, 31*a*.

*notice*: My mother .., now apprehending that I had the greater share of my father's affection, and finding, or at least thinking, that I was more taken

1) O. E. D., s.v. *fault*, 6, *b*.

2) GÜNTHER, *Man.*, § 582.

notice of by some gentlemen of learning .. than my brother, she now hated my sight. FIELD, *Tom Jones*, VIII, Ch. XI, 152 *a*.

But isn't it odd they never were taken notice of, not even by the commander-in-chief? SHER., *Crit.*, II, 2, (468).

*objection*: In a review of the work .. objection was raised to the existence of subterranean water-supplies. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6594, 16 *a*.

*offence*: During the Corn-Law agitation offence was taken at his having attended a debate in the House of Commons. *Times*.

*pity*: I am only a poor girl .. I was separated from my father .. and taken pity on by Mr. Gradgrind. DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. II, 105 *a*.

*possession*: He was boarded and taken possession of. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup>

*recourse*: i. New means must of necessity be had recourse to. CARLYLE.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. Recourse was had to the present participle. ABBOT, *Shak.*, *Gram.*<sup>3)</sup>, § 349.

Recourse was had to a figure of speech. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.* Ch. II, 66.

Resort = thing to which recourse is had. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

*resort*: No inquiry can be regarded as complete which does not show why resort is had to dynamite. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6117, 2 *b*.

*siege*: Her Majesty's dominions were immediately invaded by the two Republics, siege was laid to three towns within the British frontier. *Daily Chronicle*.

*sight*: Some things had been lost sight of. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. IV, 159.

*stress*: In Lord Roberts's dispatch .. stress is again laid on the day's food available for the Yeomanry. *Daily News*.

*word*: But word was brought, as he sat at meat, | Of a damsel fair and sad. *The Eng. Merch. and the Saracen Lady*, XII (*Rainb.*<sup>3)</sup>, II, 56).

*work*: Certain Japanese sympathisers in Nankin were caught by the invading army and made short work of. *W. W.*<sup>2)</sup>

Note. Some phrases in which also the verb is distinctly subservient to the noun, are not construed with a preposition, so that their passive conversion differs in no way from that of verbs which govern a non-prepositional object.

Care is taken that the nation shall get good money's worth for the very generous terms it offers. *Graph*.

Occasion has been taken to include in the Text and Appendices a considerable number of poems, fragments, now published for the first time. E. H. COLERIDGE, Pref. to the *Poems of S. T. Coleridge*.

27. Nearly allied to the above phrases, and grammatically dealt with in the same way, are certain expressions in which the noun is preceded by the indefinite article. They also vary as to their capability of passive conversions. A good many have *to make* as their verbal constituent, such are *to make a butt (an end, an example, a fool, a show, a target and a victim) of*. Other verbs are found in *to have a laugh at; to put a stop to*.

The following examples have come to hand:

1) FOELS-KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 183, 3, Anm. 2

2) WENDT, *Synt.*, II, 119.

I am made a great fool of. HARDY, *The Return of the Native*, II, Ch. VII, 187. (Compare: One must be made a fool very often in order not to be fooled at last. LYT, *Eug. Ar.*, Ch. IX, 69.)

They only came to stare at a poor wild Indian girl, and she would not be made a show of. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 216.

All arts of which he does not himself approve are evil; a stop must be put to them at once. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 63, 379.

The whole time they were crossing they were made a target of. *Times*.

He certainly felt no vexation at being made so easy a victim of. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. XX, 172.

28. Similar to the above phrases as to their capability of passive conversion are the following expressions:

*to make little (or tight) of*, and *to make much of* (Ch. XL, 67, Obs. V; and 93, Obs. VII): I was not a little pleased .. to be made much of. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 56.

One child in a household of grown people is usually made very much of, and in a quiet way I was a good deal taken notice of by Mrs. Bretton. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. I, 1.

*to shake hands with*: He was too rheumatic to be shaken hands with. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXI, 153a.

*to get the better of*: And my gentleman had baffled him, he could not quite tell how; but he had been got the better of. MEREDITH, *Harrington*, Ch. V, 54. 1)

*to get rid of*: Most of them (sc. grounds of difference) have been completely and easily got rid of. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 23, 486a.

29. In conclusion it should be observed that a good many phrases, apparently not differing from those mentioned in the preceding sections as to their grammatical construction, appear to admit of no passive conversion at all. Such are, probably among many others, *to pay (one's) court to*; *to keep company with*; *to give ear to*; *to take example by*; *to set eyes on*; *to break (keep, pledge, plight and violate) faith to*; *to set foot on*; *to join hands with*; *to take leave of*; *to take refuge in*; *to rub shoulders with*; *to bear witness to*.

The phrases in the following examples, could not, accordingly, be thrown into the passive voice:

They would do well .. to take example by you. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. I, 52b.

I know already; you will not refuse to keep company with me in my little holiday. LYTTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XIII, 151.

(His face) had grown thin and careworn since Jude last set eyes on him. HARDY, *Jude*, II, Ch. IV, 122.

I will never set foot on German soil again. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. VIII, 141.

30. In Ch. XLV, 24 and 25 it has been observed that the line of demarcation between prepositional objects and adverbial adjuncts cannot be rigidly drawn. It has also been hinted at in Ch. XLV, 24, a) that some adjuncts occupy an intermediate position,

1) KRIEISINGA, *Handb.*, § 179.



insomuch that the combination in which they are contained admits of passive conversion, such conversion being practically confined to those combinations in which the preposition has a local meaning. In many of them the (pro)noun is distinctly felt to denote a person or thing subjected to an activity. See below 15, *a* and Ch. XLV, 18, *a*. It may here be repeated that in not a few cases the verb - preposition suggests a transitive verb in the same or in a cognate language of approximately the same meaning. Compare *to leap over a fence* with *to clear a fence*, *to sleep in a bed* with *een bed beslapen*, *to go upon a journey* with *een reis ondernemen*, *to walk past a house* with *to pass a house* and *een huis passeeren*, *to return to a book* with *een boek weer opnemen*. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 394. It may further be remarked that the preposition occupies a distinctly subservient position in regard to the verb and, consequently, has weak stress (Ch. LX, 103, 104).

In the following examples practically all the commoner local prepositions are represented. A few are added in which the preposition has not a distinctly local meaning.

*to brush*: She sat pale and erect in her corner, brushed against by silks and satins, chattered across by this person and that. MRS. WARD, *Mar.c.*, III, 138.

*to go*: A walking tour should be gone upon alone. STEVENSON, *Walking Tours* (PEACOCK, *Sel. Eng. Es.*, 536).

*to hover*: All the land | Was hovered over by vulture ills | That snuff decaying empire from afar. LOWELL, *Dora*, I.

*to knock*: He was being constantly knocked against and tumbled over by that excited young gentleman. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. VI, 56.

*to lie*: The bed had not been lain on. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXX, 113a.

*to leap*: Those walls might have been leaped over as easily as that of Romulus. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 186.

*to look*: The windows were looked out of, often enough to justify the imposition of an additional duty upon them. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 468.

*to rain*: Near the cart was a half-dozing cow chewing the cud, and standing patiently to be rained on. WASH. IRV., *Bracebridge Hall* (STOF., *Leesb.*, I, 6).

*to reside*: Northrepps was only visited, never resided at for many months together, HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. II, IV, 164.

*to return*: Into this house we moved on my eighth birthday and for eleven years it was 'home' to me, left always with regret and returned to always with joy. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 33—34.

It is not a book to be written about in a hasty review of a thousand words. It is one to be perused and appreciated at leisure — to be returned to again and again. *Daily Telegraph*,

*to run*: A dark store-room opens out of the long passage, and that is a place to be run past at night. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 7b.

With this sublime address Mr. Pecksniff departed. But the effect of his departure was much impaired by his being immediately afterwards run against and nearly knocked down by a little man. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. LII. 410b.

*to rush*: He has been rushed past by Miss Farey on the stairs. JEROME, Miss Hobbs, I, (II).

*to sit*: The first time that hat's sat on it's done for. Punch, No. 3987, 385. He (sc. this duke of Clarence) has, perhaps, been too much sat upon by a father who was anxious to make up by severity to his son for the undue laxity of his own life. Rev. of Rev., 1892, 11.

*to sleep*: Her bed had not been slept in. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., II, 219.

The house you see on that hill over there was formerly slept in by Charles the Second. Punch.

*to tread*: You will have only yourself to thank if your toes are trodden on. RUDYARD KIPLING, The Gadsbys, 15.

Martha regarded him as something of a worm, expressly made to be trodden on. DOR. GERARD, Exotic Martha, Ch. XIV, 174.

*to walk*: "What are we to do, Lady Frensham?" — "Tell people how serious it is." — "You mean, tell the Irish Nationalists to lie down and be walked over." WELLS, Britling, I, Ch. II, § 4, 41.

ii. *to play*: Frank was never allowed to have an opinion, was laughed at before his words were out of his mouth, was played with and shaken in a way which seemed alternately to enrage and enchant him. Mrs. WARD, Marc., III, 134.

*to sin*: Perhaps this lady may have been greatly sinned against. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. X, 83.

*to spit*: In the evening we boarded our return for the return journey. We were spat upon, stones were thrown at us, and stones and earth struck the carriage windows. Manch. Guard., VI, 26, 542*b*.

*to walk*: I am glad when I see Regret walked with as a friend. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, 33.

*to work*: Noble ideals of a future, not immediately realisable in truth, but to be worked towards and rendered possible in the days to come. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 305.

31. It remains to say a few words of verbs governing a prepositional object that do not admit of passive conversion. Such are, among many others, *to abound (in luxuries)* *to abound with (inconveniences)*, *to abut (on the river)*, *to accord (with a principle)*, *to admit (of variation)*, *to belong (to a person)*.

The reason why these verbs cannot be used passively is not far to seek. They are none of them suggestive of a person or thing that is subjected to an activity, which alone would render passive conversion possible (15). This is borne out by a comparison of such a verb as *to belong (to)* with *to preach (to)*, *to write (to)* and other similar verbs construed with *to*, which freely admit of passive conversion.

Boys hate to be preached to. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 40.

He asked if she had been written to. DU MAURIER, Trilby, 252.

### Passive Conversion of Verbs that govern two non-prepositional Objects.

32. When a verb governs two non-prepositional objects, it often admits of two passive conversions, one with the thing-object (or

direct object), and one with the person-object (or indirect object) as the subject. In the following discussions they will, when necessary, be distinguished as the primary and the secondary passive conversion. The latter strikes us, Dutch students, as harsh or even illogical, accustomed as we are to the non-English view of considering only the thing-object as capable of being used as the subject of the passive conversion. It should, however, be observed:

a) that also in our language the line of demarcation between the two kinds of objects is not always a fixed one, the so-called dative-object having in many instances been levelled with the accusative-object. See also STOETT, (*Middel ned. Spraakk.*<sup>2</sup>, § 172), who observes. "Dezelfde wkw. die thans den datief regeeren, werden in het Mnl. ook met dien naamval geconstrueerd. Het gebruik was evenwel uitgebreider dan nu, zoodat men in het Mnl. vele wkw. aantreft met den datief, die thans den accusatief regeeren."

In Modern Dutch the verb *verzoeken* is quite currently used passively with the person-object as the subject, e. g.: *De heeren worden vriendelijk verzocht niet te rooken.*

In Greek there is nothing unusual in verbs governing a dative being used passively; e.g.: *πιστεύω αὐτῷ* *I believe (or trust) him*, passive *πιστεύεται ὑπ' ἐμοῦ* *He is believed (or trusted) by me.*

b) that the person-object, rather than the thing-object, is in many cases felt to be the direct aim of the action. Thus especially when the thing-object denotes an action, as in *He told me to leave the room.* Such a sentence as *He gave me to understand* is even practically equivalent to *He made me understand*, in which *me* is a direct object also from the Dutch or German point of view. An analogous observation may be made about the less usual *He gave me to know*, as in:

*My dear boy knows, and will give you to know, that though he come of humble parents, he come of parents that loved him as dear as the best could.* DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. V, 116 b.

c) that in Old English some few verbs, e. g. *ascian* (= to ask), *læran* (= to teach) could take two accusatives, possibly because both the person- and thing-object were felt, although in a different way, as the direct aim of the action.

Looked at from a Modern-English standpoint, *a question* in such a sentence as *I asked him a question* may be considered a cognate object standing with the transitive *to ask*; in like manner as *a blow* in *He struck the table a heavy blow* (DICK., *Cop*, Ch. III, 17a) of the transitive *to strike*.

Again *I taught him a trick* may be understood as an instance of *ἀπὸ χουροῦ*, i. e. as the result of the coalescing of *I taught him*

and *I taught a trick*. Similarly *The teacher heard me my lesson*. In this connexion the student may also be reminded of the fact that also the Latin verbs of asking, requesting or demanding, such as *poscere*, *rogare*, *interrogare*, *flagitare*, *orare* and *precari*, and those of teaching, such as *docēre* and *edocēre* may be construed with two accusatives. e.g.: *doceo vos linguam Latinam*, *pacem te poscimus omnes*. Compare SPEYER, *Lat. Spraakk.*<sup>2</sup>, § 387. For further discussion see also STOETT, *Middelned. Spraakk.*<sup>2</sup>, § 186; TEN BRUGGENCATE, *Taalstudie* X, No. 5; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 218.

d) that the early levelling of the dative and accusative, i.e. the disappearance of the datival *e* in the case of nouns proves that the distinction for many centuries past has lost its significance with ordinary speakers. See JESPERSEN, *Progr.*, § 182.

e) that we have only the word-order to guide us in telling the subject of the passive conversion when the person-object is a noun or pronoun which is neutral as to case and the two objects are, besides, of the same number. Even when the objects differ as to number there is, in the majority of cases, no other guide, seeing that the predicate mostly has the same form in the plural as it has in the singular; thus in:

The "Army prescription" had been given a fair trial and found wanting. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 5.

Such sentences may have been the intermediate stage between the Old-English system, which admitted only of the primary conversion, and the Modern-English system which admits of both the primary and the secondary conversion. While in such a sentence as *The boy was offered a reward*, the last word may originally have still been felt as the subject, the fact that in a normally constructed sentence the subject stands first may have led to this function being gradually transferred to *the boy*; and this may, in its turn, have paved the way to the same change of subject in sentences with case-indicating pronouns. Compare JESPERSEN, *Progr.*, § 181; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*, § 363; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 632.

33. The secondary passive conversion is of comparatively recent growth, no instances having, apparently, been found in Old English and next to none in Middle English. As it is already fully developed in SHAKESPEARE, it seems to have spread rapidly in the transition period between Late Middle English and Early Modern English.

It is, apparently, chiefly verbs belonging to the native element of the language which first adopted the twofold passive construction, such as were introduced through foreign influences readily following suit when denoting analogous meanings. Thus, for example, *to accord* and *to promise* on the analogy of *to give*.

34. When the thing-object is made the subject of the passive sentence, the person-object mostly receives the preposition *to*. Compare Ch. III, 31, *b*.

Much may be forgiven to a man who never, throughout his life, knew what it was to feel well. Athen.

But half Prague's troubles, one imagines, might have been saved to it, had it possessed windows less large and temptingly convenient. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. VIII, 148.

Long may the survivors be spared to the country. *Daily Mail*.

But as will appear from the following quotations, *to* is often dispensed with. Some verbs, indeed, seem to reject it in the majority of cases. ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 31) mentions *to deny*, *to do* (as *to do one a favour*), *to forgive*, *to pardon*, *to play* (as *to play one a trick*), *to reach* (as *reach me my hat*), *to save* (as *it saves me a deal of trouble*) and *to spare* as verbs with which "we cannot usually substitute an Adverb-phrase with a Preposition for the Indirect object." (The writer has usually printed in italics.) These verbs may, accordingly, be expected to stand usually without *to* before the person-object in the primary passive conversion. See, however, the above quotations. For *to play* see below.

Some verbs may take other prepositions. Thus verbs of asking or requesting take *of*, sometimes *from*; e. g.:

That was the question which was asked of the new-comer.

He did not concern himself about the duties asked from literature.

As *to play a person a trick* varies with *to play a trick (up)on a person*, we find the preposition (*up*)*on* before the person object in the primary passive conversion; thus:

We laughed heartily at the tricks which were played upon the poor man.

For an example of the secondary conversion of the above expression see 40.

35. *a*) Although in not a few cases two passive conversions are possible of verbs governing two non-prepositional objects, it must not be imagined that both are always in current use. ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 32) referring to this subject delivers himself as follows, "Observe, however, that this Pass. Constr. has limits and is impossible with particular verbs or particular objects; e. g.: we do not hesitate to say *The money was given to the boy*, *A long letter was written to him*, but such sentences as *The boy was given the money*, *He was written a long letter* are either awkward or quite impossible. Again, *The trouble was spared me* is hardly English, while *I was spared the trouble* is quite natural. The following uses seem to stand by themselves: *He was banished the realm*. *He was dismissed the service*. *They have been expelled the school*."

With the last three passive constructions compare the active in :

We banish you our territories. SHAK., Rich. II, I, 3, 239.

They dismissed them the society. DEFOE, Rob. Crus.<sup>1)</sup>

He expelled him the house. LYTTON, Caxt., III, Ch. VII, 78.

Also SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2313), observes that "we still hesitate over and try to evade such passive constructions as *she was given a watch*, *he was granted an audience*, because we still feel that *she* and *he* are in the dative, not in the accusative relation." It would seem that the statements of the two eminent English grammarians, who are deservedly held in high repute, should be accepted with some reserve. The frequency of such constructions as *The boy (or he) was given the money* and *The citizens (or they) were given certain privileges* seems to show that many speakers, and especially writers, do not think them awkward enough to make them forgo the decided advantages they offer. As to *to spare* it can hardly be maintained that the primary conversion is "hardly English", in face of the fact that instances are far from unfrequent. For illustration see below.

36. a) In general it may be said that the primary conversion is far more frequent than the secondary. Indeed among the verbs mentioned in Ch. III, § 33, and many more that might be added, the majority hardly admit of the secondary conversion at all. Thus this construction would seem to be impossible or, at least, highly unusual with *to advance*, *to apportion*, *to bate*, *to bear*, *to begrudge*, *to bequeath*, *to bet*, *to blow*, *to bode*, *to bring (in)*, *to cast*, *to catch*, *to cause*, *to certify*, *to concede*, *to cry*, *to create*, *to deign*, *to do*, *to drop*, *to entrust*, *to fling*, *to forward*, *to give in*, *to grudge*, *to hear*, *to hold out*, *to intend*, *to lead*, *to leave*, *to make*, *to mean*, *to notify*, *to occasion*, *to owe*, *to pass*, *to play*, *to portend*, *to prescribe*, *to prevent*, *to procure*, *to produce*, *to prohibit*, *to provide*, *to reach*, *to read*, *to reimburse*, *to remit*, *to restore*, *to return*, *to say*, *to secure*, *to serve*, *to sign*, *to signal*, *to stand*, *to sing*, *to strike*, *to sweep*, *to take*, *to throw*, *to transmit*, *to turn*, *to vote*, *to wage*, *to wager*, *to whisper*, *to work*, *to write*, *to yield (up)*.

Thus the secondary conversion of the following sentences would have a distinctly incongruous effect:

Annette could never bear him a son. GALSW., In Chanc., III, Ch. XIV, (765).

Play me some Chopin. id., Ind. Sum., (393).

As to some of the above verbs the incongruity of the secondary passive conversion may be due to the fact that the person-object not only indicates a person interested in the action, but also suggests a movement to a place, i. e. an adverbial relation. Thus the secondary passive conversion of the verbs in the following sentences, if used at all, would have an extremely harsh effect.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

*to blow*: He actually blew her a kiss. DICK., Nick., Ch. XXX, 200.

*to bring*: He brought his mother a tragedy. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 36. This brought her in £ 350 a year. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 25.

*to call*: Then he called her a hansom. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, Ch. XV, 121.

*to carry*: I will walk to the Moorlands, and carry Mr. Bates the comforter I have made for him. G. ELIOT, Scenes, II, Ch. VII, 126.

*to drop*: You might drop him a note to that effect. O. E. D., s. v. *drop*, verb, 15, b.

*to flash*: She flashed him a desperate glance. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of an Eagle, I, Ch. IV, 45.

*to take*: I had better go and take mamma up this cup of tea. MRS. GASK., North & South, Ch. VI, 42.

Perhaps I might take her a little preserve. *ib.*, Ch. XX, 124.

A few instances of the incongruous construction may be found in 40; see the quotations under *to bring* and *to fling*.

b) As has been observed in Ch. XLV, 22, b, the (pro)noun denoting the person in whose behalf an action takes place is not to be apprehended as an object in the sense in which this word is understood in these pages. Passive conversion with this (pro)noun as the subject is, therefore, practically impossible. The utter harshness of this construction in the following examples, the only ones that have come to hand, shows that it is extremely foreign to the genius of the language:

Annette was brought home from Edinburgh at the end of the term and was found a situation with an ironmaster's family named Tender. GILBERT CANNAN, Round the Corner, 63. 1)

On this generous hypothesis one unemployed man in about seventeen will be found work. Manch. Guard., V, No. 16, 302 b.

It should be added that in the primary passive conversion of these sentences the person interested is almost invariably indicated by an adverbial adjunct with *for*. The absence of *for*, as in the following quotation, strikes us as unidiomatic:

Brethren, how shall it fare with me | .. If it be proven that all my good, | And the greater good I will make, | Were purchased me by a multitude | Who suffered for my sake? RUDY KIPL., Sea Warfare, 221.

37. With some verbs the primary passive conversion seems to be impossible. This, as has already been pointed out in 35, is the case with *to banish*, *to dismiss* and *to expel*. Of these verbs it is, apparently only *to dismiss* which is used passively with any frequency. The O. E. D. does not register a solitary instance of *to expel*.

i. So may .. he ever flourish, | When I shall dwell with worms, and my poor name | Banish'd the kingdom! SHAK., Henry VIII, IV, 1, 127.

ii. But did you never .. express a desire that your grandson, Mr. Chuzzlewit, should be dismissed my house? DICK., Chuz., Ch. LII, 407a.

She saw her husband, who was afterwards dismissed the service, a strong,

1) KRUISINGA, Handb. of Pres-Day Eng.<sup>3</sup>, § 173.

H. POUTSMA, III 1.

powerful man, . . . pine and waste, inch by inch, from mere physical want, and at last die from hunger. LYT., Eug. Ar., Ch. VII, 55.

People had been dismissed the camp. BRET HARTE, Luck of Roar. Camp, 4.

He has been severely reprimanded and dismissed his ship. Rev. of Rev., No. 201 236a.

Besides the above also *to debar* and *to excuse* and, perhaps, some other verbs appear to tolerate no primary conversion by the side of the secondary.

i. You are debarred correspondence for the present. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LXII, 154a. (Compare: He debarred himself every kind of amusement. GODWIN, Cal. Wil., II, Ch. VII, 191.)

ii. He was excused the entrance-fee. O. E. D., s.v. excuse, 7 (Compare: We will excuse thee all. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 45.)

38. The primary conversion is practically non-existent in the case of the thing-object being represented by a clause, whether full or undeveloped. Conversely the secondary conversion is in this case particularly frequent. Thus while such sentences as *I was told that he would come*, and *I was allowed to go out*, etc. strike us as thoroughly idiomatic English, we could not tolerate *\*That he would come was told me*, or *\*To go out was allowed me*, etc. Also the primary conversion in which the objective clause is represented in the head-clause by *it* by way of anticipating subject is unusual. Thus such sentences as the following jar upon an English ear:

Is it permitted me to ask what your religion is? CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XVII, 229. (Instead of: Am I permitted.)

Is it not permitted us to describe human nature too accurately? GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. V, 65.

It may here be stated again that passive constructions with anticipating *it* are very frequent of verbs that take only one non-prepositional object. See 16, d.

39. Sometimes neither passive conversion is practicable. This is the case when the verb and the thing-object form no real separate subjects of thought, i. e. the verb has no distinct meaning of its own and has become subservient to the following noun, which is phonetically shown by the latter having stronger stress than the former. Compare 26. The following are instances of such combinations: *to bear* (or *to keep*) *a person company*; *to bear a person ill-feeling*.
40. The following quotations, divided into two groups, are intended to illustrate some exceptional or, at least, unusual conversions. Considering what has been said in 36, it will appear only natural that the first group contains more instances than the second. It will be observed that the fitness of one or the other conversion in many cases depends on the structure of the whole sentence, an object that is made up of many elements being not very well adapted to be made the subject of a passive sentence (26).



*to afford*: Daphne Wing was afforded every chance of being with her husband. Galsworthy, *Beyond*, II, Ch. XIV, 169.

*to allot*: She was allotted .. the spare room in Jude's house. Hardy, *Jude*, V, Ch IV, 353.

The zoologists were allotted .. one of the laboratories in the University Buildings. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3832, 454*a*.

*to allowance*: I am allowed two glasses three hours before dinner. Meredith, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVII, 119.

*to assign*: He was assigned, however, a residence in Bithoor. McCarthy, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 183.

*to assure*: If the treaty is enforced against the Bohemians and Jugo-Slavs, they must be assured the one compensating advantage which it leaves to them. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8062, 1*b*.

*to award*: Kenny was awarded the Victoria Cross. Brown, *French Rev. in Eng. Hist.*, *Introd.*, 13.

*to bereave*: Why am I thus bereaved thy prime decree? Milton, *Sam. Agon.*

*to bring*: "Good wine needs no bush" and from Portugal .. we are brought a light on the origin of that saying. *Graph.* 1811, 1819, 680*c*. (Compare what has been said in 36, *a*, the end.)

Whatever she said when he asked her, whichever way she answered him, he would be brought relief from his intolerable stress. Hutchinson, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. III, VIII, 175.

*to cause*: Nobody knows the heat and fret I have been caused by it. Hardy, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 468.

*to deny*: His elder brother hath been denied necessities for his sake. Field, *Tom Jones*, VIII, Ch. XI, 153*a*.

Is hope to be denied the tenderest passion? Sher., *School*, II, 2.

*to dispute*: All his concerns .. were disputed their place in his mind by the incredible and enormous events that each new hour discharged upon the world. Hutchinson, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. III, VIII, 176.

*to do (in)justice*: This is a well-balanced book, in which the amazing efforts, the dauntless courage, the splendid spirit of self-sacrifice, so often animating the white man, are done full justice. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7163, 19*b*.

That is no reason why they should be done injustice. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 75, 331. I trust no other writer on our great game is done injustice by the estimate above. Hor. Hutchinson (*Westm. Gaz.*, 28.10.1922, 7*a*).

*to fling*: While writing it (sc. the Vicar of Wakefield) Goldsmith had been hiding for debt, and had been flung half-crowns and even shillings by Newbery as generous advances. R. Ashe King, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. XIII, 145. (Compare what has been said in 36, *a*, the end.)

*to gainsay*: Had the latter half equalled the first .., then the book could not have been gainsaid its rightful place in the very front rank of the novels. Conan Doyle, *Magic Door*, 35*f*.<sup>1)</sup>

*guarantee*: If a man is guaranteed a good wage, there will be nothing to prevent him from going to his stall, hewing coal for half an hour and then going to sleep for the rest of the day. *Times*, No. 1835, 170*d*.

*to hand*: Then I was handed great bundles of letters and cablegrams. Shackleton, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, Ch. XXV, 343.

I was handed a copy of Lady Constance Lytton's new book. *Graph.*, No. 2310, 402*a*.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., *Handb.*<sup>3</sup>, §173.

He was handed a dress-basket full of valuable property. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5376, 8*d*.

*to interdict*: In Italy women are interdicted the Pleasures of Society and Conversation. STEELE, *Englishman*, No. 9, 7.<sup>1)</sup>

*to leave*: William Beckford .. was left a fortune of a million of money and £ 100.000 a year. Note to Byron's *Childe Har.* I, 275. (Chambers.) The simple Michel felt like a man who has suddenly been left a fortune. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 72, 445.

This is a reasonable provision if it stood by itself, and one which Germany should be able to fulfil, if she were left her other resources to do it with. KEYNES, *Econ. Conseq. of the Peace*, Ch. IV, 89.

*to owe*: When they walked away, forgetting, in the embarrassment of their happiness, what he (sc. the gondolier) was owed, he stepped forward and, very politely, touched John's arm. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. XII, 323. (Substituting *what they owed* for *what he was owed* would have done away with the awkward construction.)

*to pay*. This was only the second visit that the old gentleman had been paid. *id.*, *Mirage*, Ch. I, 9.

She was paid a higher wage than the girl who served behind the counter. *id.*, *Traffic*, III, Ch. IV, 146.

If a registered reader is killed by accident to a railway passenger-train, in which he or she is a fare-paying traveller, the next-of-kin will be paid £ 3.500. If both husband and wife are killed, £ 7.000 will be paid to the children or other legal personal representative. *Westm. Gaz.*, 4/11, 1922, 32*b*.

*to play*: He had been played that trick too many times to be unprepared. HARDY, *Jude*, II, Ch. V, 131.

*restore*: She was restored her dowry. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 485, 227*a*.

*to say*: The Black Douglasses .. are a race which will not be said nay. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. IX, 98.

*to secure*: He said he could do double the work, if he were secured solitude and freedom from interruption. UNA L SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. I, 11. The labourer must be secured a real living wage. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6359, 1*c*.

*to serve*: I remember an honest gentleman who was served such a trick in Charles II's time. *Spect.*, No. 335.

*to show*: You shall be shown your room. Mrs. Wood, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 13.

The Jews should be shown exceptional kindness when the war is over. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 75, 331.

We were shown the city by a lady from Aberdeen. *Westm. Gaz.*, 21/10, 1922, 8*a*.

Note. In *Mr. Guppy is shown the door* (Dick., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIII), *to show the door* is to be understood as a kind of unit, equivalent to a transitive verb, so that the alternative conversion would be impossible.

ii. *to allow*: Had time been permitted him, he would have stretched out a hand towards the shabby black box that, true to all miserly convention, occupied the space beneath his bed. Time was not allowed him. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. I, 3.

*to blame*: Much has been blamed to the body which should justly be laid on the mismanagement of its master. FRANCIS THOMPSON, *Health and Holiness*, 75.

*to owe*: Christian Cantle .. was loitering about in the hope of a supper which was not really owed him. HARDY, *Return of the Nat.*, III, Ch. VII, 271.

1) O. E. D., s.v. *interdict*, 2.

Much also is owed to the patience and forbearance of the eminent French member. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, IIIc.

The debts are menacing enough, but they are owed, in the main, to the inhabitants of the indebted countries. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8339, 2b.

**Note.** The secondary conversion is even more awkward: see the example above. Observe also that the present participle, active in form but passive in meaning, can mostly be substituted for the past or passive participle. Compare the two last quotations and also:

i. The debt has been owed these ten years. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, IV, Ch. IV, 174.

ii. He paid all that was owing. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

A man's property and the sum owing to him are called his *Assets*: the sums owing by him, his *Liabilities*. *HAMILTON & HALL, Book-keeping*, 5.

In the following quotation, given by *KRUIS., Handb.*<sup>3</sup>, § 174, the verb is erroneously put in the plural, the error being due to a mistaking of the subject: Saving a certain technical excellence, both they and their works are owed only the scantiest reverence. *Eng. Rev.*, 1914, April, 84.

*to permit*: They hoped that health and strength would be permitted General Buller to further honour the noble profession to which he belonged. *Graph.*

*to save*: Alas! what years of suffering and exile might have been saved your father, had he been more just to his early friend and kinsman. *LYTTON, My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. VIII, 279.

*to throw*: The drowning man clings to the rope which is thrown him. *BELLAMY, Looking Backw.*, Ch. III, 19.

We add a handful quotations illustrating, respectively, those passive conversions of *to give*, *to grant* and *to spare*, which have been pronounced more or less at variance with English idiom by *SWEET and ONIONS* (35).

*to give*: What name was I given? *OSC. WILDE, The Importance of being Earnest*, Ch. III, 177.

They are given gruel and bread for supper and for breakfast. *ANNA BUCKL., Our Nat. Inst.*, 96.

If they (sc. the Young Turks) are given time, they will overcome this difficulty (sc. the need of human material from which to make a competent Civil Service). *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4989, 2a.

It is the duty of the House of Lords to see to it . . . that the country is given an opportunity of pronouncing its opinion upon these clauses. *ib.*, No. 5036, 16c. We have been given a good many criticisms that seem to us singularly beside the mark. *ib.* No. 5507, 1b.

The mill-owners are given a free hand in securing workers. *Daily Mail*. Non-commissioned officers who fulfil the conditions laid down in the Royal Warrant, and are recommended by their commanding officers, are invariably given commissions. *ib.*

*to grant*: We are being granted it (sc. equality). *JEROME, The Master of Mrs. Chilvers*, I, (8).

Dick . . . might yet be granted the wish of his heart. *Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander*, Ch. XVI, 217.

Barring-out day. It was an old custom in the North Country on certain festivals, one of which was Shrove Tuesday, for school-children to get their master out of the school on some pretext or another, and then refuse to readmit him, unless they were granted a holiday. *Il. Lond. News*.

The Hon. Lady Monson, who has been granted a civil list pension. *ib.*

They will be granted certain privileges. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 75, 331.

Marshal Foch . . would hand them . . the terms on which Germany would be granted an armistice. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. XI, 188.

*to spare*: This danger, at any rate, is spared our brother. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 189.

All this pain might have been spared to both of us. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XI, 117.

What a world of suffering might have been spared me! TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 42.

Many a sad pang would have been spared to him. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 39.

### Passive Conversion of verbs that govern two objects one prepositional, one non-prepositional.

41. When a verb governs a prepositional object besides a non-prepositional object, it admits, as a rule, of only one passive conversion, i. e. with the latter as the subject. Thus such sentences as *He accused her of theft*, *He charged her with falsehood*, etc. have no other passive conversion than *She was accused (by him) of theft*, *She was charged (by him) with falsehood*, etc. This applies also to such verbs as *to give*, *to promise*, etc., when their person-object takes the preposition *to*, as is mostly the case when it is placed after the thing-object for emphasis. Thus also sentences like *I gave this knife to my brother*, *He promised a bicycle to his son*, etc. admit of no other conversion than *This knife was given (by me) to my brother*, *A bicycle was promised by him to his son*, etc.

The following quotations illustrate a construction that seems to be highly unusual:

Wee Willie Winkie had once been read to . . the history of the Princess and the Goblins. RUDY. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

I ought to note that even before he went to the University he had already achieved a certain amount of publication, and was predicted great things of by a small circle of admirers. DE MORGAN, *Joseph Vance*, Ch. XVIII, 178.<sup>1)</sup>

From what has been observed in 26 it follows that such conversions as *The boat was soon lost sight of in the fog*, *The luggage was taken care of by my brother*, etc., which are not, however, so frequent as is often supposed, can hardly be given as exceptions to the rule, the verb, be it remembered, forming a kind of unit with the following noun, to which the prepositional word-group stands by way of prepositional object.

42. The normal place of the retained prepositional object is after the verb, but considerations of stress, distinctness or euphony may cause front-position to be desirable.

To such a man (sc. Francis Sforza) much was forgiven, hollow friendship, ungenerous enmity, violated faith. MAC., *Macchiavelli* (36b).

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 181.

To those methods very serious objection has been taken. *Manch. Guard*, VI, 16, 318 a.  
 For of these wretches taken was no care. *Thomson, Castle of Indolence*, I, LXXIII.

### Passiveness expressed by other means than the Passive Voice.

43. Besides the passive voice the language has several other constructions representing a person or thing as subjected to an activity.

44. a) As has already been pointed out in Ch. XXXIV, 7, and will be discussed at greater length below (Ch. XLVIII, 16—18), the middle or reflexive voice in not a few cases has a meaning which approaches very closely to that of the passive voice. See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 316.

A wisdom and knowledge of the world manifested itself in the gifted youth. *Thacker., Pend.*, II, Ch. II, 17.

The whole of her emotions she put into the slam of the door behind her. The ornaments shivered. A cup sprang off a bracket and dashed itself to pieces on the floor. *Hutchinson, If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. III, 103.

b) The potential similarity of the two voices is, as a rule, more striking with non-personal than personal subjects. Thus while in the above quotations the reflexive voice could be replaced by the passive without any material change of meaning, we find distinctly less activity on the part of the subject implied in *Philip the Fair was enrolled as a member in one of these societies* (MOTLEY, *Rise* Introd., 47a) than in *Philip the Fair enrolled himself* etc., the latter sentence, indeed, striking us as equivalent to *Philip the Fair caused himself to be enrolled* etc. But in neither of the two last constructions is the subject represented as actually performing the activity expressed by the predicate, any more than in the first.

c) Similarly a passive meaning frequently attaches to verbs that have thrown off the reflexive pronoun and have thus become intransitive (Ch. XLVIII, 10, b).

Bright colour showed in her scarlet dress. *Marj. Bowen, The Rake's Progress*, Ch. III, 40.

45. a) Some transitive verbs in being turned into intransitives, without any clear notion of an original reflexiveness, have a vague passive meaning clinging to them. This may be observed in the verbs in such sentences as *The letter miscarried, These articles sell at a shilling a dozen, etc.* For further discussion and illustration see Ch. XLVI, 32 f.

b) Also in the case of some transitives the subject may sometimes with some justice be understood to denote the aim of the activity; thus in:

Luckily at this time he caught a liver-complaint. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. III, 22. (As a matter of fact it is rather the liver-complaint that caught him than the reverse. Strictly speaking the sentence ought, therefore, to run, "Luckily at this time he was caught by a liver-complaint".)

An analogous state of things underlies the facts described in:

The Squire caught his foot in the rope. LYTTON, My Novel, I, Ch. II, 14.

He caught his toe. HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 63.

He put his shoulder out, and got some bruises. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, I, Ch. VII, 109.

46. a) A convenient and frequent substitute for the passive voice, practised especially in cases where it is impracticable to make the non-prepositional person-object its subject, is a construction with *to have* + (pro)noun + past participle, in which *to have* has approximately the meaning of *to experience*. Thus, instead of the rather awkward *I was handed a note* (40), the language prefers *I had a note handed to me*. Compare also Ch. XVIII, 33, Obs. IV. It stands to reason that this construction often offers the additional advantage of meeting the requirements of relative stress and smoothness of diction; thus in:

I have had opera books sent me. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, Ch. IV, 174.

She besieged the War Office with such importunity that, had she been a widow, she must surely have had her request granted her. E. F. BENSON, Dodo Wonders, Ch XII, 194.

b) The construction also supplies a deficiency when one of the two objects of a verb has a preposition, in which case, as we have seen in 41, only one passive conversion is possible. Thus *I described the case to my brother* may be turned into *My brother had the case described to him (by me)*. Compare Ch. XVIII, 33, Obs. II. A similar construction is used in:

The poor have the gospel preached to them. Bible, Matth., XI, 5.

The enemy .. has had wrenched from him some of the strongest defences on this front. Westm. Gaz., No. 7577, 2 b.

c) But even verbs governing only one object sometimes prefer this construction to passive conversion. Thus reasons of convenience may cause such a sentence as *His horse was killed under him* to be replaced by *He had his horse killed under him*.

A good instance of this construction is afforded by:

A youngster at school, more sedate than the rest, | Had once his integrity put to the test. COWPER, The Sentimental Schoolboy, I.

47. a) The force of the passive voice, its power, that is, of representing a person or thing as undergoing an activity, may also be traced, in a modified way, in adjectives in *able* (or *ible*), the modification consisting in the additional notion that the person or thing referred to may (or should) undergo the action suggested by the adjective. Thus *The fruit is eatable* is approximately equivalent to *The fruit may be eaten* or *is capable of being eaten*. *The tree is discernible from a fair distance* is practically the same as

*The tree may or can be discerned from a fair distance.* In like manner *Such actions are highly blam(e)able* may be replaced by *Such actions should be highly blamed* or *are to be highly blamed*. Only *able* is a living suffix, being freely employed to form new adjectives.

The following examples must suffice:

To that hatred and distrust .. the anonymous letter .. was plainly attributable. WILK. COLLINS, *Woman in White*, I, 117.

No man can decide now to which of these motives such extraordinary scenes are referable. DICK., *A Tale of Two Cities*, III, Ch. VI, 318.

Much capital is not realisable or divisible at all. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8086, 2*b*.

*b*) Far less common than *able* (or *ible*) is the suffix *less* to express incapability of undergoing the action denoted by the verb to which it is attached.

The leopardess is tameless. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XIX, 381.

Right up to the end of his life he showed a tireless energy in literary and historical pursuits. *Manch. Guard*, 27/6. 1924, 524*a*.

Thus also *chainless* may have a passive meaning in:

Eternal Spirit of the chainless Mind! Brightest in dungeons, Liberty! thou art. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*, Son.

48. Obs. I. Some adjectives, especially such as end in *ible*, have been formed from a foreign base that is not used as a verb in English; e.g.: *audible*, *flexible*, *legible*, *permissible*, *visible*.

Others, all of them home-formations in *able*, come from a noun, e.g. *saleable*, or from a base which is used both as a noun and a verb, e.g.: *debatable*, *rat(e)able*, *pitiable*.

There is in some cases a distinction between actionable slander and vulgar abuse. *Manch. Guard.*, 21/11, 1924, 427*d*.

II. Also some intransitive verbs have yielded an adjective in *able*; e.g.: *available*, *dependable*, *dispensable*, *laughable*, *reliable*. For the protests raised at one time against *reliable* see the O.E.D., s.v.

Some of these formations strike one as hazardous innovations; thus those in:

All through their (sc. the two young ladies') visit .. we produced no such convenience in the house as a flirtable, danceable, small-talkable creature of the male sex. WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, I, Ch. VI, 36.

A few minutes before she was looking along an inescapable path of repulsive monotony. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, III, Ch. XXV, 24.

It was Emmy who hated him in the middle of her love, because he stood to her as the living symbol of her daily inescapable servitude in this household. FRANK SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, I, Ch. III, 24.

In some few new-formations the preposition with which the verb is construed is preserved; e.g.: *get-at-able*, *come-at-able*. Such formations are, however, felt as humorous colloquialisms, and would hardly be tolerated in serious literary language. Nor has the language gone beyond a few feeble attempts at word-formation of this description.

After these came a second set: among the most come-at-able of whom were Mrs. and Miss Bates. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. III, 20.

The placing of the preposition after the adjective in *able*, as in the following example, is distinctly rare:

London was not liveable in till I took up the question of whistling for caubs. G. MOORE (Manch. Guard., 12, 1924, 95*b*).

III. In some adjectives in *able*, dating from an early date, the passive meaning is hardly recognizable; thus in *comfortable*, *(dis)reputable*, *reasonable*, *suitable*.

Peggotty is quite comfortable now. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 68*b*.

I'm afraid I'm sometimes a little irritable; but I know what's right and reasonable all the time, even when I don't act on it. SHAW, *You never can tell*, IV, (298).

IV. Of some special interest are *inestimable* and *invaluable*, which are ordinarily used in the pregnant meaning of *incapable of being estimated* or *valued too highly*; e.g.: *an inestimable* or *invaluable treasure*.

V. Like passive verbs, adjectives in *able* (or *ible*) are sometimes followed by an adjunct with *by*, by way of inverted subject.

(Her son) was utterly unmanageable by her. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. VIII, 167.

The thirty-four volumes octavo render this opinion untenable by those who can read.<sup>1)</sup>

VI. The past participle *untired* is sometimes used in the sense of *incapable of being tired*. Compare the Dutch *onvermoeid*, which is currently used in an analogous meaning.

My enemy has shown himself inaccessible to entreaties and untired in persecution. GODWIN, *Cal. Will.*, Ch. I, I.

Other instances of past participles that are equivalent to adjectives in *able* (*ible*) or *less* have not come to hand.

49. Various phrases are available as substitutes for passive present participles (Ch. LVII, 27); thus those in:

i. \*France's greater claims are not in dispute. Manch. Guard., V, 24, 482*c*. (= being disputed.)

\*\*I learned to hold my hands this way, when I was upon drill for the militia. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, II, (178). (= being drilled.)

\*\*\*The Military Service Act was under discussion. *The Nation*, XX, 14, 490*b*. (= being discussed.)

ii. \*A Grand Morning Performance by the Riders, commencing at that very hour, was in course of announcement by the bellman. DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. VII, 124*b*. (= being announced.)

\*\*Mr. Asquith .. announced that a Coalition Government was in process of formation. *The New Age*, No. 1185, 73*b*. (= being formed.)

50. Also the turns of expression used in the following quotations may serve to replace the passive construction:

i. If thou consider rightly of the matter, I Cæsar has had great wrong. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 107. (= has been greatly wronged.)

Lord Reading had a wonderful reception on his arrival in New York. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 338, 91*a*. (= was wonderfully received.)

ii. His profound skill and abstruse knowledge were the talk and wonder of the common people far and near. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 107). (= were talked about and wondered at by the common people)

His trousers were the talk and the admiration of the British residents. CLARK RUSSELL, *Romance of a Midshipman*, Ch. II, 18. (= were talked about and admired by the British residents.)

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., *Handb.*<sup>3</sup>, § 1445.



At one time, while at Newcastle, he had the offer of a post which would have halved his work and doubled his salary. BROWN, *French Revol. in Eng. Hist.*, *Introd.*, 12. (= was offered a post.)

iii. The cigar was an abomination to the worthy gentleman. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 44. (= was abominated by the worthy gentleman.)

Wallingford .. was a walled and fortified town up to the time of the Parliamentary War, when it suffered a long and bitter siege from Fairfax. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XVIII, 229. (= was long and bitterly besieged by Fairfax.)

51. In conclusion attention may be drawn to pairs of verbs which express activities in opposite directions, such as to *give-receive*, to *lend-borrow*. Naturally the active voice of the one is approximately equivalent to the passive of the other. Thus *I lent him a book* does not materially differ from *A book was borrowed by him from me*. This fact is, no doubt, frequently turned to account in avoiding incongruous passives. Thus *I received this book as a birthday present* may be used, by the side of *I had this book given to me as a birthday present*, as a welcome alternative of *I was given this book as a birthday present*.



## CHAPTER XLVIII.

---

### THE MIDDLE OR REFLEXIVE VOICE.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Formation of the Reflexive Voice . . . . .	1
Function of the Reflexive Voice . . . . .	2--19
Significance of the Reflexive Pronoun . . . . .	2— 7
Omission of the Reflexive Pronoun . . . . .	8—10
Omission of the Reciprocal Pronoun . . . . .	11—13
Substitutes for the Reciprocal Pronoun . . . . .	14—15
The Reflexive Voice compared with the Passive Voice and Intransitiveness . . . . .	16—19

---



## Formation of the Reflexive Voice.

1. In Ch. XLV, 9 it has been observed that the meaning of the Greek medium is normally expressed by means of reflexive or, less frequently, reciprocal pronouns. In Ch. XXXIV the use of the reflexive pronouns and the personal pronouns, which anciently did duty for them and in some cases take their place to this day, has found ample discussion. Also the forms which perform the function of reciprocal pronouns have already been amply discussed. See Ch. XL, 37, 38, 39 and 56. In this chapter the combinations with the reflexive and reciprocal pronouns will be viewed exclusively as expedients to denote genus or voice.

## Function of the Reflexive Voice.

### Significance of the Reflexive Pronoun.

2. The English reflexive voice has two markedly different functions, according to the significance of the reflexive pronoun (or its substitute) it contains.

a) This pronoun may have the full significance of an ordinary non-prepositional object, or of the substantival constituent of a prepositional object or adverbial adjunct, occupying a particular position only in so far as it denotes the same person or thing as the subject.

i. He got into bed, covered himself up warm and fell asleep. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 121.

ii. Silas asked himself if he had been asleep. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 8.

iii. They reserved to themselves the right to reconsider the whole problem. *Times*, 1899, 500*a*.

iv. He took the girl's hand and drew her to himself. WALT. BESANT, *By Celia's Arbour*, I, Ch. I, 15.

In the case of the pronoun representing a single non-prepositional object the verb may be styled *transitive reflexive*.

b) The pronoun, although fulfilling syntactically the function of a non-prepositional object, is practically devoid of semantic significance, inasmuch as it does not indicate that the activity expressed by the verb is directed to the person or thing denoted by the subject or any other person or thing. The verb is, therefore, semantically an intransitive, either a subjective intransitive, as in

*Did you enjoy yourselves at the party?* (O. E. D.), or an objective intransitive, as in *I rather pride myself on my packing* (JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. IV, 42). It may, accordingly, in this case be termed *intransitive reflexive*.

When used in another grammatical function than that of a single, non-prepositional object, the reflexive pronoun always has its full semantic significance.

3. a) Intransitive reflexive verbs may often be told by their readily suggesting an ordinary intransitive, or a word-group consisting of *to be* or *to get* (etc.) + nominal or nominal equivalent, that has approximately the same meaning. If none such approximate equivalent is found in English, it may in many cases be met with in some one of the cognate languages. Compare *to overwork oneself* with *to work too hard*; *to betake oneself* with *to go*; *to bethink oneself* with *to think earnestly* or *to become thoughtful*; *to lose oneself* with the Dutch *verdwalen*; *to forswear oneself* with the Dutch *afvallig zijn* (or *worden*); *to perjure oneself* with the Dutch *meineedig zijn*.

Conversely a good many Dutch intransitive reflexives correspond to ordinary intransitives or word-groups with *to be* or *to get* (etc.) in English. Thus *zich haasten* = *to hasten* or *to hurry*; *zich ophouden* = *to stay*; *zich verheugen* = *to rejoice*; *zich ergeren* = *to be disgusted*; *zich schamen* = *to be ashamed*; *zich wachten* = *to beware* or *to be on one's guard*; *zich verbazen* (or *zich verwonderen*) = *to wonder* or *to be astonished* or *surprised*.

b) A similar equality in meaning cannot be discerned in the case of transitive reflexive verbs. Thus it is easy to see the difference between *to kill oneself* and *to get killed*, *to cover oneself up* and *to get covered up*, *to injure oneself* and *to get injured*, etc.

c) Some verbs admit of being used reflexively with different degrees of semantic transitivity. Thus *to deceive oneself* is a genuine transitive in *He deceives himself by drawing up cooked balance-sheets*, while it is only vaguely transitive in *You deceive yourself, if you think that you could betray me into such an indiscretion*. In the second example, indeed, it approximates very closely to *to err* or *to be mistaken*.

4. a) Distinctly intransitive, from a semantic point of view, are most verbs which never stand without a reflexive pronoun, such as:

*to bethink oneself*, as in: *Rip belthought himself a moment*. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V.

*to comport oneself*, as in: *He comported himself as stoutly as I could have desired*. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVII, 288.

*to deport oneself*, as in: *I am impatient to know how the little hussy deports herself*. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3, (249).

*to perjure oneself*, as in: A witness perjures himself when he swears to what he knows to be false. WEBST., Dict.

*to pique oneself* and its synonyms *to plume*, *pride* and *value oneself*, as in: He piqued himself upon the hearty abundance rather than the style in which he lived. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 351.

To these we may add the compounds with *over*, such as *to overeat oneself*, *to oversleep oneself*, *to overwork oneself*, etc.

b) But also of most of the other verbs of this group the semantic significance of the grammatical object is of the slightest; thus of:

*to bemean oneself*, as in: During the whole course of that miserable intrigue, Cecil so bemeaned himself as to avoid, first, the displeasure of Northumberland, and afterwards the displeasure of Mary. MAC., BURL., (222a).

*to bestir oneself*, as in: What is wanted is that the Americans shall bestir themselves to establish in every part of the Republic a system of judicial administration worthy of a free and great nation. GRAPH., 1891, 310b.

*to betake oneself*, as in: The next day .. I betook myself punctually to my engagement. LYTTON, PAUL CLIF., Ch. XV, 171.

*to demean oneself*, as in: Don't demean yourself. W. BESANT, All Sorts, Ch. XXXV, 238.

c) In a few the grammatical object may be understood to have some considerable semantic significance; thus in:

*to absent oneself*, as in: You have absented yourself, I do not doubt, upon some act of kindness to me. DICK., CHUZ., Ch. LII, 450b.

*to busy oneself*, as in: The King busied himself in the erection of numerous castles. GREEN, Short Hist.

*to compose oneself*, as in: It was long before he could compose himself to sleep. WASH. IRV., DOLF HEYL. (STOF. HANDL., I, 122).

*to intoxicate oneself*, as in: The driver went and intoxicated himself at the Yellow Lion. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. V, 53.

The two last are occasionally found with another object than the reflexive pronoun. For further illustration of the verbs mentioned in this section see Ch. XXXIV, 6.

5. Also a great many verbs which may have another object than the reflexive pronoun, but which, when connected with the latter, retain little of their original meaning, are semantically intransitive; thus, among many others:

*to bear oneself*, as in: She bears herself with dignity. PUNCH, 1889, 157b.

*to carry oneself*, as in: The Abbot-elect carried himself with more dignity than formerly. SCOTT, MON., Ch. XXXIV, 367.

*to collect oneself*, as in: Hilda Wade seemed to collect herself. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. IV, 111.

*to conduct oneself*, as in: You must conduct yourselves with the strictest decorum. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV.

For further instances of verbs of this description the student is recommended to consult Ch. XXXIV, 5.

6. But also when the addition of the reflexive pronoun does not cause the verb to depart materially from its primary meaning, it frequently assumes an intransitive function. This applies more or less forcibly to the reflexive verbs in the following quotations with:

*to better oneself*: Trade is already bettering itself. *Westm. Gaz.*, 212, 1922, 2*b*. (= getting better.)

*to burn oneself out*: It remains to be seen whether the fires .. have burnt themselves out. *Manch. Guard*, VI, 1, 2*a*.

*to shape oneself*: The plans that he was revolving in his mind gradually shaped themselves. *Times, Lit. Sup.*, No. 993, 53*a*.

*to spend oneself*: The cloud that had hung over Worsted Skeynes so long had spent itself and gone. *GALSW.*, *The Country House*, Ch. IX, 295.

*to spin oneself out*: It seemed merely part of the Christmas holidays which were spinning themselves out. *G. ELIOT*, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. VII, 114.

*to vest oneself*: Mrs. Pendennis had that vice .. namely pride; which did not vest itself so much in her own person as in that of her family. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24.

*to wind oneself*: There was much in Brandon that wound itself insensibly around the heart. *LYTTON*, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XXV, 291.

For further examples see also Ch. XXXIV, 7 and 8.

7. It will have been observed that this faded transitivity is especially met with in reflexive verbs whose subject denotes an inanimate thing. Indeed in comparing the examples in the preceding section with those given in Ch. XXXIV, 4, partly repeated above in 2, *a*), which with but one exception have a personal subject, we cannot fail to observe that the fading of the transitivity in the reflexive verbs found in them is due to the fact that little or no self-originated activity can be ascribed to lifeless things.

#### Omission of the Reflexive Pronoun.

8. The use of the reflexive pronoun suggesting some self-originated activity on the part of what is indicated by the subject, it is not to be wondered at that there is a tendency to drop it when, as is frequently the case with lifeless things, such an activity is not thought of or is out of the question. This tendency is particularly strong in English; it is, indeed, a striking feature of the language. Whereas in Dutch and German we find but a few solitary cases in which the reflexive pronoun is or may be dropped, there are in English hosts of verbs with which the omission is quite common. In Dutch we say *De drenkeling beweegt (zich)*. *Het gordijn beweegt (zich)*. *De aarde draait, wentelt (zich) om de zon*. *De deur draait (zich) naar buiten*. *Hij draait, keert (zich) om*. *Hij buigt (zich) voor zijn meerderen*. *Hij bukt (zich) om den brief op te rapen*. *Laten wij (ons) een oogenblik verpoezen*. *De kelk sluit (zich)*. *Men went (zich) aan alles, enz.* *DEN HERTOOG*, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 82.



German has *eilen* and *sich eilen*, *enden* (or less commonly *enden*) and *sich endigen* (or *enden*), *flüchten* and *sich flüchten*, *gebaren* and *sich gebaren*, *irren* and *sich irren*, *nahen* and *sich nähern*, *verbluten* and *sich verbluten*, *die Thür klemmt* and *die Thür klemmt sich*. CURME, *A Gram. of the Germ. Lang.*<sup>2</sup>, § 218, B, *a*.

Sometimes it is the construction with the reflexive pronoun, sometimes that without, which is commonly preferred. Sometimes also a difference is observed. Compare the Dutch *De jongens baden in de rivier* with *Die menschen baden zich in weelde*, the German *Er ruht auf seinen Lorbeeren aus* with *Ich habe mich ausgeruht*. (*Er setzte sich, um sich auszuruhen*), *Es erübrigt noch, auf den letzten Punkt der Tagesordnung einzugehen* with *Es erübrigt sich, auf diese Frage einzugehen*. CURME, *l. c.*

In English there appear to be more causes than the one mentioned above which may be considered to be responsible for the extraordinary frequency of the omission. There is first of all the particular heaviness of the pronoun and its frequent use as an emphatic pronoun (Dutch *zelf*) or emphatic reflexive pronoun (Dutch *zich zelf*), which may counteract its employment as a pure reflexive; and secondly the general economy of language, which appears to operate more strongly than in either Dutch or German towards dispensing with all words that are not felt to be strictly necessary to convey the meaning of the speaker.

It is only natural that the omission of the reflexive pronoun is more frequent in connexion with non-personal than personal subjects. For the rest the language is distinctly arbitrary in this respect, some verbs being more apt to discard the pronoun than others, often for no apparent reason. In not a few cases some differentiation is observed mostly depending on a greater or less intensity of self-originated activity ascribed to the person or thing indicated by the subject. Anything like a detailed discussion of the more important cases that would thrust themselves upon the notice of the student interested in the subject would run into page after page and cannot, therefore, be attempted in this place. Besides, the subject has already received considerable attention in Ch. XXXIV, 8—9, so that we may confine ourselves to a few observations.

*a)* When the subject is the name of a person, suppression appears to be regular, among other verbs, after *to engage*, *to unbend*.

He readily engaged for taking the earliest opportunity of waiting on her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 106.

These exhibitions endeared him to the common people, who always love to see the great unbend. *Mac., Hist., II, Ch. IV, 1.*

Suppression is frequent or occasional, among other verbs, after *to contain, to declare, to disport, to enlist, to feast, to form (up), to gorge, to hide, to hurry, to keep, to qualify, to reform, to separate, to submit, to surrender, to trouble, to turn, to wash, to withdraw, to work (up), to worry, to wrap (up)*. Some differentiation is more or less regularly observed in the case of *to apply, to behave, to draw up, to dress, to hurry, to indulge, to prepare, to recover, to refrain, to remove, to set, to settle (down), to shave, to shelter, to show*.

All these verbs have already met with some discussion in Ch. XXXIV, 9. Only two are here picked out to serve as illustration of the divided practice.

*to hide (oneself)*: i. I wonder where this Captain Absolute hides himself. *SHER., Riv., IV, 3, (265).*

ii. "There's father coming", cried the two young Cratchits, who were everywhere at once. "Hide, Martha, hide!" So Martha hid herself, and in came little Bob. *DICK., Christm. Car., III, 66.*

*to apply (oneself)*: i. (1) He was quick at his learning, whenever he could be brought to apply himself. *WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 104).* (= to do one's best, to exert oneself.)

(2) Mrs. Gummidge .. applied herself to blowing the fire. *DICK., Cop., Ch. X, 70 a.* (= to set herself.)

(3) He applied himself to study with vigour and success. *MAC., Mad. d'Arblay, (702 a).* (= to attend intently.)

Mr. Thornburgh would not apply himself to the case of Mary Backhouse. *Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 39.*

(4) An old woman applied herself to me for my my charity. *Spect., No. 117.* (= to address oneself.)

ii. (1) I found my pupil sufficiently docile, though disinclined to apply. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XI, 123* (= to do one's best, to exert oneself.)

He applied with such earnestness and resolve that his fame soon reached the ears of Audley. *LYTTON, My Novel, II, II, Ch. V, 96.*

(3) Had he afterwards applied to dramatic poetry, he would, perhaps, not have had many superiors. *JOHNSON, Savage, (318).* (= to attend intently.)

Catherine said no more; and with an endeavour to do right, applled to her work *JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. XXX, 233*

He seemed to apply to study. *LYTTON, Caxt., III, Ch. VII, 79.*

(4) A friend .. to whom she resolved to apply in her distress. *MAR. EDGEWORTH, Moral Tales, I, XII, 98. 1)* (= to address oneself.)

(5) Wanted a footman in a nobleman's family. No Irishman need apply. *STOF., Handl., II, 135.*

These quotations with *to apply* are intended to show:

α) that the choice between the two constructions is to a considerable extent a matter of individual practice;

β) that only in two shades of meaning, the second and the fifth, usage is fixed. As to the fourth prolonged reading will most probably show that instances with the reflexive pronoun are frequent enough in older

1) O. E. D.

English (many will be found in the papers of the *Spectator*), but are rare in recent and contemporary English. With regard to the first and third shades of meaning it may be observed that instances with the reflexive pronoun appear to outnumber those without.

b) When the subject is the name of a thing, omission seems to be regular, among many other verbs, after:

*to attach*: No discredit attaches to such persons. BELLAMY, *Look Back w.*, 44.

*to draw clear, up*: The boats drew clear of one another. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

The young gentleman's post-chaise drew up at the rustic inn. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 8.

*to fill*: My heart fills with gratitude. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XV, 155.

Omission is frequent or occasional, among many other verbs, after *to extend*, *to manifest*, *to move*, *to offer*, *to present*, *to spread*, some differentiation being more or less regularly observed in the case of *to develop*. For detailed discussion we may refer to Ch. XXXIV, 8. Here we will confine ourselves to some illustration of the practice observed with:

*to extend*: i. (It) not only comprehended the whole parish, but extended itself to two or three of the adjacent hamlets in the skirts of the next parish. STERNE, *Tristr. Shand.*, I, Ch. XIII, 10 a.

II. Neustria .. extended from the Meuse almost to the present southern limits of France. M. PATISON, *Ess.*, I, 16. 1)

*to develop*: i. Our constitutional system grows and develops itself year after year as our requirements and conditions change. MCCARTHY, *Hist. of our own Times*, I, Ch. XXII, 396.

ii. This function has developed naturally out of the other functions spoken of. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 110.

The reflexive pronoun seems to be retained, when the notion is *to come into a state nearer perfection*, and no other state is referred to.

9. In the case of some verbs the omission has become regular, almost to the point that all notion of a suppression has disappeared. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 255. Thus *to get* when used as a copula of the third kind, as in all the instances mentioned in Ch. I, 10. Compare, however:

He got himself mysteriously entangled with his gun. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 162.

He said her father was gone for the chaise, and he must make haste to get himself ready. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 64 a.

If Debora had lived, I've no doubt she would have seen after them (sc. the Notes), before they got themselves into this state. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XII, 248.

Do you mean, for instance, that I oughtn't to get myself married? MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 15 b.

They really do believe that the Budget .. will somehow or other .. get itself passed. *Spect. (Westm. Gaz., No. 5249, 16 c).*

1) O. E. D.

It will not escape notice that the verb when connected with the reflexive pronoun implies a considerable degree of activity on the part of the subject.

Thus also *to turn* in all the examples mentioned in Ch. I, § 10; *to stop* in such a sentence as *He stopped in-doors*; *to steal* in *He stole away*; *to keep* in *His wife kept continually dinning in his ears about his idleness*. See however Ch. I, 9.

Similarly *to make* in *to make merry*. Compare however:

With cunning and malice enough to make himself merry with all our embarrassments. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, IV.

Make yourself merry. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. LII, III, 425.

Also *to make* in *to make sure* (or *certain*). Compare however:

Peggotty likes to make herself as sure as she can that it's (sc. our house is) not being robbed. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 8a.

For discussion see also Ch. XXXIV, 10 and 12.

10. Recapitulating what has been observed in the preceding sections about the passing from transitive to intransitive through absorption of the reflexive pronoun, we find that:

a) sometimes there is a more or less distinct suggestion of an object subjected to an activity originated by that object itself. This is especially the case with personal subjects.

b) sometimes the notion of an object subjected to an activity is clearly discernible, but there is hardly any suggestion of the activity being originated by that object itself. In this case the verb is distinctly passive in meaning and the subject is mostly non-personal.

c) sometimes the notion of an object being subjected to an activity is hardly discernible or absent altogether.

The following quotations are, accordingly, divided into three groups, but it is hardly necessary to say that no rigid lines of demarcation are intended. Nor can it be thought surprising that some verbs are illustrated in more than one group. The student interested in the subject is recommended to read DEN HERTOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, 82, Opm. 2; also SNEYDERS DE VOGEL, *Verbes Pronominaux*, *Neophilologus*, II, IV, 248 ff.

a) *to bathe*: On the three great Church festivals . . the king was bound to bathe, and the waterman must bathe him without extra charge. MARY BATESON, *Mediæval England*, Ch. I, 7.

*to bend*: They dreamily bent over their books again. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. I, 56.

*to contain*: I can contain no longer. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (250).

*to concentrate*: I can concentrate in a way that hardly anyone else can. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. VIII, 142.

What are you going to concentrate on? *ib.*

*to disarm*: Both must be satisfied before they will disarm. Neither is likely to disarm except as a condition of a settlement. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 24, 466 b.

- to dress*: She had dressed with more than usual care. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 92.  
He dressed with great care. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, I, Ch. X, (525).
- to engage*: He had engaged to call again next day. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXIV, 123 *b*.
- to gorge*: Where shields and axes decked the wall, | They gorged upon the half-dressed steer. SCOTT, *Christmas Time*, 12.
- to hold back*: They would have talked to me too, but I held back. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 64 *a*.
- to keep*: She told him he must lie very quiet, or he would be ill again. So Oliver kept very still. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XII, 112.  
As he walked, he read persistently, only looking up once now and then to see that he was keeping on the foot-track. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, Ch. II, 57.
- to make fast*: At the end of an hour they managed to make fast to a line stretched from an anchor a few yards from the cliff. SHACKLETON, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, Ch. XXV, 338.
- to offer*: A more unobjectionable tenant, in all essentials, than Admiral Croft bid fair to be, could hardly offer. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. III, 24.
- to press*: Sir John Hawkins likewise pressed feverishly into the field by a too zealous desire for both profit and fame. WALDO H. DUNN, *Eng. Biogr.*, Ch. V, 113.
- to qualify*: Captain R— (was) the most dreaded of the three seamanship Examiners who at the time were responsible for the merchant service officers qualifying in the Port of London. CONRAD, *Chance*, I, Ch. I, 5.  
It was call-night at the Inner Temple, and at the head of the twenty-three students who have qualified was Miss Ivy Williams. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 19, 395 *a*.
- to pronounce*: The Church all over the world has pronounced in favour of it (sc. Woman's Suffrage). BIRMINGHAM, *The Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. III, 62.
- to report*: His furlough expired, he reported at his depôt. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XXII, 273.
- to submit*: He suppressed his feelings and submitted to be sworn at once. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XI, 106.
- to set*: It seems to me the time to ask Mr. Lyon to take a little rest, instead of setting on him like so many wasps. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, Ch. XXIV, 13.
- to train*: Mr. Crooks trains for the cavalry. PUNCH, *Almanac for 1919*.
- b) to carry*: The Executive's vague statement carried, and cannot be said to make any vital change in the attitude of the party. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 16, 317 *d*.  
His (sc. President Wilson's) bold and measured words carried to the peoples of Europe above and beyond the voices of their own politicians. KEYNES, *Econ. Conseq. of the Peace*, Ch. III, 35.
- to choke*: 'Yea lord', she said, | 'Thy hopes are mine', and saying that, she choked. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 604.
- to convert*: This intrusion shall, | Now seeming sweet, convert to gall. SHAK., *Rom. and Jul.*, I, 5, 95.
- to cure*: One desperate grief cures with another's languish. *ib.*, I, 2, 49.
- to derive*: The view which makes first love alone eternally valid derives from a conception of the nature of love, which, out of the realm of poetry, we may not entertain. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XX, 277.  
The description .. derives from Clarence's dream, in Shakespeare. *Bookman*, No. 316, 123 *b*.

*to dismiss*: The sirens fade into silence, the guns continue until, when the last guns dies away, the troops dismiss and the ceremony is over. *Manch. Guard.*, 1/2, 1924, 86*a*.

*to feed*: In the bakery two bakers fed in the house, and two travelling bakers were at wages. *MARY BATESON, Mediæval England*, Ch. I, 6.

*to hatch (out)*: Unmated birds .. amused themselves piling and stealing till the chicks began to hatch out. *SHACKLETON, The Heart of the Antarctic*, App. I, 351.

A few days after the eggs began to hatch there was a severe blizzard. *ib.*, 353.

*to kindle*: The sensation which kindles in large assemblies when they are relieved from a state of breathless suspense. *DICK., Old. Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXXVII, 137*b*.

*to modify*: The staidest opinions have modified. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 103, 544*a*.

*to pile up*: The case against the Government in respect of the reprisals inflicted by the police on the Irish people piles up day by day as fresh evidence comes in. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8533, 2*a*.

*to taint*: Till Birnam wood remove to Dunsinane, | I cannot taint with fear. *SHAK., Mac b.*, V, 3, 3.

*to turn*: There's something in that which may turn to advantage. *FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Strat.*, II, 2, (378).

*c) to attach*: Some blame attaches to poor Fanny. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. VIII, 121.

*to balance*: Her domestic Budget is far from balancing. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 3, 43*b*.

*to break (up, in)*: The sea breaks on the rocks. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 182.

The ordered mass broke up into scattered fragments. *MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter*, II, Ch. I, 43.

"You're the prize idiot of the Regiment!" Vincent broke in, half laughing, half exasperated. *ib.*, II, Ch. II, 54.

*to declare*: It was double pneumonia, of that sudden sort which declares for life or death in forty-eight hours. *GALSWORTHY, Tatterdemalion*, I, 1, 19.

*to develop*: Maggie developed marvellously during her first weeks in London. *HUGH WALPOLE, The Captives*, II, Ch. II, 93.

She had been sitting there, tranquil, soothed with a happy sense that her new life was developing securely for her in the way that she would have it. *ib.*, 104.

*to dissolve*: "Oh, don't pretend you don't know nothing about it," Maudie cried, dissolving into tears. *COMPTON MACKENZIE, Sylvia Scarlett*, Ch. II, 63.

*to draw (up)*: Will you draw up to the table? *G. ELIOT, Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. V, 101.

The boats drew clear of one another. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 182.

*to drill*: He thought that they might get on better if they drilled by themselves a bit. *DON. HANKEY, The Beloved Captain*, IV, 9. (Compare: Then he started to drill the platoon.)

*to fasten*: see under *to fold*.

*to feed*: It (sc. the chick) was too much frightened to feed, *SHACKLETON, The Heart of the Antarctic*, App. I, 357.

*to fold*: The garment folds round the body fastening at right side. *Punch's Almanack for 1919*.

*to form (up)*: To-day the picture would not form so easily. *HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy*, Ch. VII, 3, 174.

It cannot truthfully be said that the resolve that was forming in Jeremy's head had its birth in any fine, noble idealisms. *id.*, Ch, VII, 4, 181.

The battalion formed up in column of companies. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, XVIII, 40.

*to show*: Thou art too wild, too rude and bold of voice, | Parts that become thee happily enough, | And in such eyes as ours appear not faults; | But where thou art not known, why, there they show | Something too liberal. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 2, 193. (Compare *show* with the preceding *appear*, with which it is identical.)

The young maiden .. showed, amidst the rest of the dancing-ladies, like a flower among vegetables. HARDY, *Under the Greenwood Tree*, I, Ch. VII, 61.

Few houses showed, but fields and trees faintly glistened, away to a loom of down. GALSW., *Ind. Sum.*, (390).

All his fine white teeth were showing. *id.*, *To Let*, II, Ch. IV, (947).

*to spread*: The clouds spread over the sky. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 182

*to stop*: Are you stoppin' in this house, old 'un? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 140.

*to turn*: The needle turns towards the pole. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 182.

*to throw off*: "Where have you been with him (sc. the horse)?" — "To the Three Barns to see the hounds throw off." G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. VIII, 105.

*to wear away*: That iron is a cankering thing! | For in these limbs its teeth remain, | With marks that will not wear away. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*, II.

### Omission of the Reciprocal Pronoun.

11. It is not often that a verb absorbs the reciprocal pronoun in the function of the non-prepositional object and is thus turned into an intransitive. In the following quotation there are two examples: The consequence was that Simmins and Timmins cut when they met at Westminster. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. III.

The omission of the reciprocal pronoun after *to cut* appears to be exceptional, after *to meet* it is rather the rule than the exception. Thus the pronoun strikes us as redundant in:

Each morning the regular water-drinkers met each other. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVI, 331.

The two had never met each other before. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 342.

When a number of young men and young women meet each other day after day on the lawn-tennis ground [etc.]. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VII, 99.

It is a rather curious fact that the synonymous *to encounter*, apparently, never drops the reciprocal pronoun.

Parties of fugitives encountered each other. LYTTON, *Pompey*, V, Ch. VII, 147b. These groups encountered each other. *ib.*

Also the following quotation contains two examples, both of them representing exceptional practice:

Distant parties (sc. of penguins) salute in this way and continue calling till they get pretty close. SHACKLETON, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, App. I, 346.

Further instances are contained in the following sentences with:

*to cross*: The correspondence .. was originated simultaneously by both Ministers, whose letters crossed. *Manch. Guard.*, 30 5, 1924, 422*a*. (The absorption appears to be exceptional; compare: The Foreign Office on Wednesday issued the letters exchanged this month between the British and French Prime Ministers, beginning with those dated May 14, which crossed each other. *ib.*, 430*a*).

*to kiss*: Seventeen she had told him had been her age, and they had kissed in the dark, midway between two lamps. *COMPT. MACK., Sinister Street*, 839.<sup>1)</sup> (The absorption may be common enough.)

*to marry*: The boys will have nothing, and Gwendolen will have nothing. They can't marry. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. III, 50. (The addition of the pronoun would strike us as redundant.)

*to meet*: There was a troubled fascination when their eyes met. *MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. V, 33.

*to suit*: I think we should suit. *CH. BRONTË, Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 271. Caroline Helstone — if you really are what at present to me you seem — you and I will suit. *ib.*, 278. (The absorption strikes us as abnormal.)

12. Far more frequently it is a word-group made up of a preposition + reciprocal pronoun which may be supplied.

a) We are hardly aware of an omission after:

*to (dis)agree*, as in: Friends agree best separate. *A d a g e*.

In ev'ry age and clime we see | Two of a trade can ne'er agree. *GAY, Fables*, I, XXI, 43.

Men who hoped against hope that the jury would disagree. *Spectator*, 13.6, 833, 1.<sup>2)</sup>

*to fraternize*, as in: When these fraternised, they either talked shop or told broad stories. *MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter*, II, Ch. I, 44.

*to harmonize*, as in: Miss Keeldar and her uncle had characters that would not harmonize. *CH. BRONTË, Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 185.

*to join*, as in: The Mohammedan and the Hindoo forgot their own religious antipathies to join against the Christian. *MCCARTHY, Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 170.

*to separate*, as in: They stood invisible for a little while in the shadow of a wall, where they separated. *HARDY, Life's Little Ironies*, IV, Ch. II, 98.

The couples separate in alarm. *OSC. WILDE, The Imp. of being Earn.*, III, 149.

*to unite*, as in: If business men of all the Allied countries would unite in pledging themselves to uphold such boycott, it would wield enormous weight. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 938, 91*b*.

b) We are more inclined to supply mentally a preposition with a reciprocal pronoun after:

*o fall in love*, as in: My design is .. that the two cousins may fall in love, and get married. *EM. BRONTË, Wuthering Heights*, Ch. XXI, 108*a*.

When you were away in Paris, Val Dartie and I fell in love. *GALSW., In Chanc.*, III, Ch. III, (690).

*to introduce*, as in: They could not talk to one another, because they had not been introduced. *SWEET, A Story of Two Englishmen*.

*to speak*, as in: The consequence (sc. of the squabble) is that we haven't

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, *Handb.* 3, § 1872.

<sup>2)</sup> O. E. D.



spoken for more than a week, and it looks as though we might never speak again. KEBLE HOWARD, *One of the Family*, I, Ch. VII, 114.

They never, indeed, spoke during Byron's last year at school. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, I, Ch. VII, 114.

13. Quite frequently can a word-group consisting of a preposition + reciprocal pronoun be supplied after (participial) adjectives, or adjectival word-groups, and the corresponding nouns. Thus after:
- i. *alike*, as in: They are become so much alike, you can scarce distinguish one shilling from another. STERNE, *Sentim. Journ.*, II, 87.<sup>1)</sup>
  - attached*, as in: Never were sisters so attached. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VI, 33.
  - devoted*, as in: They're awfully devoted. GALSW., *To Let*, I, Ch. I. (811).
  - engaged*, as in: I never flattered you, James, even when we were engaged. PETT RIDGE, *The Eloquent Partner* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6963, 13*b*). (Compare: Before the autumn was at an end, my brother and Bertha were engaged to each other. G. ELIOT, *The Lifted Veil*, 310.)
  - like*, as in: They are as like as two peas. *Prov.*
  - near*, as in: The ridiculous and the sublime are near. SAM. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. I, 13.
  - reconciled*, as in: Robert is just now speaking to my uncle, and they are shaking hands; they are then reconciled. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVII, 399.
  - on good (bad, etc.) terms*, as in: They had previously been on the most affectionate terms. Sir J. HANNEN, in *Law Rep.*<sup>1)</sup> (Compare: They were on excellent terms with each other. PETT RIDGE, *The Eloquent Partner* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6963, 13*b*).
  - ii. *introduction*, as in: She thus described their introduction. ETHEL COLB. MAYNE, *Byron*, Ch. V, 71.

### Substitutes for the Reciprocal Pronoun.

14. Convenient substitutes for the reciprocal pronoun or the word-group with the reciprocal pronoun, only available, however, in certain cases, are the adverbs *together* and *mutually*, the adjective *mutual* sometimes taking the place of the latter.
- i. \*The two brothers met as brothers who loved each other fondly, yet meet rarely together. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIV, 146.  
So have we seen them meet together .. the two extremes of civilised society. LYTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. III, 42*a*.
  - \*\*In this particular, and perhaps in their success, the truth-finder and the gold-finder may very properly be compared together. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, VI, Ch. I, 85*b*
  - Two or three men, conversing together, ceased as he approached. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*.
  - \*\*\*There may be some place, "other side of nowhere", .. where  $2 + 2 = 5$ , and all bodies naturally repel one another, instead of gravitating together. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XVII 349.
  - \*\*\*\*Every one of them wore chains like Marley's ghost; some few .. were linked together. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.
  - \*\*\*\*\*For here two brothers one a king, had met | And fought together. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 40

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

ii. \* They mutually embraced. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 42.

\*\* In these games English families, whose members are at first mutually strangers, mix freely with each other. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VII, 99.

iii. Our mutual trust is sapped. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, II, 2, 2059.

15. In conclusion it may be observed that the reciprocal idea is also implied in certain compounds with *inter*, such as:

*to interchange*, as in: They .. interchanged opinions freely, and interchanged also good offices in perilous times. MAC., *Hist.*, IV, II, 543.<sup>1)</sup>

The shadows of the great goat's-willow swayed and interchanged upon the walls like a spectral army manœuvring. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies* III, Ch. I, 54.

*to intermarry*, as in: The inhabitants of the Hollow were of the primitive stock, and had intermarried .. from the earliest time of the province. WASH. IRV., *Wolfert's R.*, 15.<sup>1)</sup>

### The Reflexive Voice compared with the Passive Voice and Intransitiveness.

16. a) The fact that the construction with the reflexive pronoun represents an action as both originated and undergone by what is indicated by the subject naturally leads to a similarity in the functions of the reflexive and the passive voice, whenever the former notion is weakened from the circumstances of the case described. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 316. Thus in:

I bored myself to death, with an old volume of the *Lady's Magazine*. WASH. IRV., *Bracebridge Hall* (STOF., *Eng. Leesboek*, I, 56).

Here the activity which the speaker ascribes to himself is of the slightest, so that *I bored myself to death with* etc. hardly differs from *I was bored to death by* etc.

A distinctly passive meaning may be discerned in:

Console yourself, dear Miss Briggs. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 137. (almost = Allow yourself to be consoled.)

It is more or less questionable in:

Philip the Fair enrolled himself as a member in one of these societies. MOTLEY, *Rise. Hist. Introd.*, 47a. (Compare Ch. XLVII, 44.)

Reflexive verbs with a strongly marked passive meaning may be called *passive reflexive*.

b) It is especially with non-personal subjects that the reflexive voice often approaches to the passive voice. Thus it is difficult to think of any activity originated by the thing indicated by the subject in reading such sentences as:

Some such impression conveyed itself to the two men who were walking with Mrs. Reffold. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. III, 12.

Many points discover themselves upon which opinion has changed during the 19 months' duration of the struggle. *Times*.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

The convulsion soon exhausted itself. SHAW, *How he lied to her Husband*, Pref.

You know the dry trifles in which a lawyer's life wastes itself away. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XIV, 159.

The trouble about Hugh . . . resolved itself into nothing of any importance, and settled itself very easily. WELLS, *Britling*, I, Ch. V, § 4, 136

c) The meaning of the reflexive voice maintains itself best when the subject denotes a material body perceptible to the senses, the imagination being inclined to ascribe to that body itself a force to originate the activity when the real acting force is imperceptible or incomprehensible. Compare Ch. XLVI, 19. Thus in:

The cigar, dropping on the empty hearth, burned itself out. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. II, 25.

The earth, turning under the moon, generates the tidal wave, which, as the earth's rotation is from west to east, moves itself from east to west. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. V, 74.

Mrs. Jamieson had the sedan chair which had squeezed itself into Miss Barker's narrow lobby with some difficulty. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, 130. (T.)

d) When the reflexive pronoun is more or less emphatic, there is, naturally, hardly any trace of a passive meaning (Ch. XXXIV, 29—30).

Given stable international trade, unemployment and the accompanying social troubles will in large measure solve themselves. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/12, 1922, 31a. (logically equivalent to: . . . \*social troubles themselves will . . . solve themselves.)

Another point suggests itself. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 16, 318d. (logically equivalent to: \*Another point itself suggests itself.)

17. In all the examples given under *b*) in the preceding section the passive voice might be substituted for the reflexive voice without causing an appreciable change of meaning. Conversely we sometimes find the former where the latter would seem to be equally appropriate; thus in:

Leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way: first be reconciled to thy brother and then come and offer thy gift. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 24

And then I rose and was refreshed. LEIGH HUNT, *Mahmoud*.

Therefore I would rail in my writings and be revenged. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, I.

She wished to be revenged on that impudent postman. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. IV, 16.

I must be satisfied that she has not been so very happy in my absence. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (242).

In these examples, however, we may, with greater or less justice, consider the combination with *to be* to be indicative of a state, resulting from the action that would be expressed by the corresponding reflexive verb; i. e. *to be* may be understood as the copula, not the auxiliary of the passive voice. Hardly any other interpretation can be put upon the combination in:

The open square outside was bathed in light. CON. DOYLE, *The Siege of Sunda-Gunge*. (Observe that the Dutch would have *baadde zich*.)

There may be no sufficient ground for meddling with them so long as they are conducted as they have been. Times (= conducted themselves as they have done.)

18. In view of the semantic similarity of the reflexive and passive voice it is only natural that different languages do not always use the same voice in parallel cases. In fact we not seldom find the reflexive voice in either French or German where English has the passive voice, preferring it, perhaps, owing to the peculiar heaviness of the reflexive pronoun (8). This difference in the application of the two voices is especially met with in generalizing statements (or questions). Compare:

Le seigle se sème en automne with *Rye is sown in autumn.*

Ce mot ne s'emploie plus with *This word is no longer used.*  
 Cette lettre ne se prononce pas with *That letter is not pronounced.*

Cela s'apprend aisément with *That may be easily learned.*

Cela s'oublie vite with *That is soon forgotten.*

Cela ne se trouve nulle part with *That is nowhere (to be) found.*

Cette étoffe se vend à vil prix with *That material is sold at a low price (or sells at a low price).*

Das versteht sich with *That is easily understood (or That is easy to understand).*

Der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden with *The key has been found.*

Der weg verlор sich zwischen den Bäumen with *The way was lost between the trees (or lost itself between the trees).*

19. A passive meaning may also not seldom be observed in verbs that have thrown off the reflexive pronoun and have, consequently, become intransitive. Thus we find it more or less distinctly in the verbs used in:

Her eyes filled with tears. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18. (= got filled with tears.)

The worst of it was that I knew I should not eat anything when an opportunity offered. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 35*b*. (= was offered.)

The above expositions lead to the conclusion that in some cases there is only a slight difference between a converted intransitive and the original transitive used reflexively or passively. See also Ch. XXXIV, 12—15 and Ch. XLVIII, 10—11; 32.

# CHAPTER XLIX.

## MOOD.

### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Introduction . . . . .	1—5
The Subjunctive and Conditional Mood . . . . .	6—51
The Subj. or Cond. in Principal Sentences . . . . .	6—14
The Subj. or Cond. in Optative Sentences . . . . .	7—10
The Subj. in Hortative Sentences . . . . .	11—12
The Cond. in the Apodosis of Conditional Sentences . . . . .	13—14
The Subj. or Cond. in Subordinate Statements . . . . .	15—29
The Subj. or Cond. in Subord. Stat. expressing what is the subject of a Hope or Wish . . . . .	16—19
The Subj. in Subord. Stat. expressing what is the subject of some Movement of the Human Will . . . . .	20—21
The Subj. or Cond. in Subord. Stat. expressing what is thought necessary, advisable etc. . . . .	22—23
The Subj. in Subord. State expressing what is the sub- ject of a Proposal or Suggestion . . . . .	24—25
The Subj. in Subord. Stat. expressing what is the subject of a person's Care or Solitude . . . . .	26—27
The Subj. in Subord. Stat. expressing what is the sub- ject of an Apprehension . . . . .	28—29
The Subjunctive in Subordinate Questions . . . . .	30—31
The Subj. or Cond. in Adverbial Clauses . . . . .	32—51
The Subj. in Adverb. Clauses of Place . . . . .	32
The Subj. in Adverb. Clauses of Time . . . . .	33—34
The Subj. in Adverb. Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	35—36
The Subj. or Cond. in Adverb. Clauses of Condition . . . . .	37—40
The Subj. or Cond. in Adverb. Clauses of Concession . . . . .	41—49
The Cond. in Adverb. Clauses of Hypothetical Similarity . . . . .	50—51
Final Observations . . . . .	52—54
The Imperative Mood . . . . .	55—61



## Introduction.

1. In Ch. XLV, 8 some observations have been made about the Modern-English functions of the different moods as understood by the present writer. Partly repeating what has been remarked in that place, it may here be said that by mood we may understand a form of the finite verb or a verb-group, by means of which the speaker expresses his mental attitude towards the fulfilment of the action or state expressed by the predicate.

a) This attitude is, in the majority of cases, one of considering the fulfilment of the action or state as a fact, and the predication involving this attitude may, accordingly, be termed **Predication of Certainty**. It is symbolized by that form of the finite verb which is called the Indicative Mood.

The same form is also used when all thought of certainty or uncertainty is absent from the speaker's mind. It may then be called the **Neutral Mood**.

b) This attitude may be one of conviction arrived at by the process of reasoning, and the predication involving this attitude may be called **Predication of Conviction**. It is not symbolized by any particular form of the finite verb, but by the verb *must*. Thus in:

So it was all out! Shillioe must have been chattering. ARN. BENNETT, *The Card*, Ch. I, l. 29.

c) This attitude may be one of uncertainty, and the predication involving this attitude may, accordingly, be styled **Predication of Uncertainty**. It is symbolized by that form of the finite verb which is commonly called the Subjunctive (mood), or by a variety of auxiliaries, which are frequently used in analogous cases as the subjunctive, but not seldom have an application of their own, i. e. one which is not shared by the subjunctive. Thus *Long live the King!* and *May the King live long!* have practically the same meaning, and *may* as used in the last sentence, may, therefore, be called an auxiliary of the subjunctive mood or a subjunctive substitute. But such a sentence as *It may rain to-morrow* cannot be replaced by one with *rain* in the subjunctive mood, and the verb *may*, although certainly modal, as marking uncertainty, cannot be called an auxiliary of the subjunctive mood or a subjunctive substitute.

The auxiliaries of the subjunctive mood are *may* and *shall*, or if  
H. POUTSMA, III.1.

the time-sphere of the predication is the past, *might* and *should*. As will appear from the following discussions, *should* is frequently, and *might* occasionally, employed independently of the time-sphere. Besides the above verbs the imperative *let* is often employed as a substitute for the subjunctive in so-called hortative sentences (6, a, 2).

A verb-group that serves as a substitute for a subjunctive mood may be styled a Periphrastic Subjunctive, in contradistinction to which the subjunctive proper may be called the Inflectional Subjunctive.

Uncertainty of fulfilment naturally clings to a command or request. In English, as in many other languages, a special form of the predicate is available to express the particular psychical disposition giving rise to it. This form is called the Imperative Mood and is represented in English by the uninflected form of the verb.

d) The attitude of the speaker may be one of rejection, i. e. he may wish it to be understood that he rejects the fulfilment of the action or state, either as being contrary to some known fact, or as being a mere supposition with regard to the future or present made only for the sake of argument. The predication involving this attitude may be called Predication of Rejection and is symbolized by a form of the finite verb which in these pages is called the Conditional (mood), or by the auxiliaries *should*, *would* and *were (to)*.

In English, as well as in many other languages, the conditional has seized on tense-forms which are at variance with the time-sphere of the predication to express this attitude of rejection, the preterite being used to indicate present or future predications, the pluperfect those which are contemporaneous with a point of time in the past (39. 44). Hence the conditional has been called a Tense-mood. A good illustration of various functions of the conditional is afforded by the following quotation:

If it were done when 'tis done, then 'twere well | It were done quickly. SHAK., Mac b., I. 7. 1--2.

Note α) SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2279) uses the term conditional mood in a narrower sense, applying it to 'all combinations with *would* or *should* with infinitives which are not clearly future, even when their functions are not really conditional'. The inflectional form denoting rejected predication he calls Preterite Subjunctive. But it is difficult to see why different names should be given to two forms which, although somewhat divergent in application in their main functions, are practically identical in meaning.

β) *Should* is used not only as an auxiliary of the conditional, but also of the subjunctive, as a milder form than *shall*. It frequently has this function in a variety of subordinate statements, and in adverbial clauses of purpose introduced by *lest* (21, 23, 25, 27, 29, 36).



2. Obs. I. The speaker's attitude with regard to the fulfilment of an action or state may be expressed not only by a certain form of the verb or by a verb-group, but also by a variety of adverbial adjuncts, such as *needs*, *of necessity*, *perhaps*, *possibly*, etc. Such adverbial adjuncts may, therefore, be called Modal Adverbial Adjuncts. They mostly serve the purpose of expressing those shades of meaning which are beyond the scope of the moods of verbs or the modal verbs, but some of them are also employed to emphasize, or to add precision to the notions indicated by the latter. Thus modal *must* is often accompanied by *needs* or *of necessity*, modal *may* by *perhaps*; e. g.:

My head is twice as big as yours | They (sc. the hat and wig) therefore needs must fit. COWPER, John Gilpin, 188.

Perhaps she may be his daughter, though he is not married. DICK, Chuzzlewit, Ch. I, 4b.

It may be added that a modal adverbial adjunct denoting uncertainty never stands together with an inflectional subjunctive. For more detailed discussion see Ch. I, 16 ff.

II. In many cases also the attitude of uncertainty on the part of the speaker with regard to the fulfilment of an action or state is sufficiently clear from the head-sentence of a complex sentence. In this case there is, strictly speaking, no necessity to express it, either by inflection or by a modal verb, in the clause, so that the indicative, as a neutral mood, is often used instead; thus in:

I suppose he will be awfully proud. THACKERAY, Van Fair, I, Ch. VII, 68. (not, he may be awfully proud.)

I hope we shall never see you here again. DICK, Household Words (STOPEL, Leesb. I, 52).

When an inflectional or periphrastic subjunctive is used in a clause of this description, it serves the purpose of emphasizing the notion of uncertainty (15); thus in:

God grant that some, less noble and less loyal, | Nearer in bloody thoughts, but not in blood, | Deserve not worse than wretched Clarence did. SHAKESPEARE, Rich. III, II, I, 93.

I wish he may be an honest man, that's all. DICK, Barn Rudge, Ch. III, 12a.

III. Apart from *let*, which is an imperative, the auxiliaries of mood are either subjunctive or conditional forms. *May* and *shall* are subjunctives, and so are *might* and *should* when they are substituted for them owing to the time-sphere of the predication being shifted to the past. *Would* and *should*, whether as conditional or subjunctive substitutes, are conditionals.

3. a) Leaving the verb *to be* out of consideration, the English language has preserved special subjunctive forms only for the second and third persons singular present tense, which are distinguished from the corresponding indicative forms by the absence of inflectional endings (Ch. LVIII, 1, 8). In many cases, therefore, there are not any audible or visible signs betraying the speaker's attitude towards the fulfilment of the action or state described. This deficiency makes itself particularly felt in the preterite, which,

except for the verb *to be*, has the same forms for the subjunctive as for the indicative.

To obviate the inconvenience arising from this deficiency some writers have recently resorted to substitution of the present subjunctive for the preterite subjunctive; thus in:

At midnight Mr. Borden moved that the Committee rise and report progress. Times.<sup>1)</sup>

She insisted that he accept, and, indeed take her with him. RICE BURROUGHS, Tarzan of the Apes, Ch. I. 3.

b) The conditional mood, on the other hand, employing as it does tense-forms which are at variance with the time-sphere of the predication, has powerful and unequivocal means of marking the attitude of rejection. Strictly speaking this renders the use of a special conditional form, as opposed to a preterite indicative, unnecessary: *was* being, indeed, as unequivocal as a tense-mood as *were*. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 301; JESPERSEN, Phil. of Gram., Ch. XIX, 266.

Nor is the use of *was* instead of *were* uncommon. We find it quite frequently, even in literary style, except in clauses introduced by *if* or *as if* (or *as though*), where it imparts a more or less vulgar tinge to the language and is, accordingly, avoided by educated speakers. Compare the two following groups of quotations, the first literary, the second more or less vulgar:

i. The noble Brutus | Hath told you Caesar was ambitious; | If it were so, it was a grievous fault. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 76.

Oh! that I was safe at Clod Hall, or could be shot before I was aware. SHER., Riv., V, 2.

I wish there was something you could eat after your ride. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., III, VI, Ch. XLIV, 8.

ii. "If I was to be put upon my oath to-morrow" said Mrs. Chick, "I have no doubt I could venture to swear to those identical words." DICK., Domb., Ch. XVIII, 162.

Come in, you sneaking warmint (vulgar for 'vermin'); wot are you stopping outside for, as if you was ashamed of your master! id., Ol. Twist, Ch. XIII, 123.

Mr. Rummer . . bowed as gravely as if he was waiting upon the Lord Lieutenant of the county. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. IV, 45.

In the phrase *as it were*, in which *as* has the value of *as if*, substitution of *was* for *were* would hardly be tolerated even by half-educated persons.

My valour is certainly going! it is sneaking off! — I feel it oozing out, as it were, at the palms of my hands. SHER., Riv., V, 3.

4. a) The paucity of subjunctive inflections is richly compensated by the availability of numerous periphrases with modal auxiliaries. These periphrases offer the material advantage of denoting the

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., Handb.<sup>3</sup>, § 210.

secondary notions tinging the attitude of uncertainty of which mere modification of the form of the finite verb is utterly incapable (Ch. XLV, 8). The loss of inflections may, accordingly, be said to have occasioned an important and useful gain.

*b)* Few as the subjunctive inflections are, they are but sparingly used. This is due to a variety of causes:

1) The notion of uncertain fulfilment, although inherent in the predication, is not distinctly present to the speaker's mind.

2) The context or the general import of the sentence brings out this notion with sufficient clearness, so that the need of special verb-forms for this purpose is not felt by the speaker.

3) The inflections are totally inadequate to indicate the secondary notions with which the attitude of uncertainty is mostly attended.

4) The dearth of inflections in itself blunts the desire of discriminating between the subjunctive and the indicative. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 630.

The result is that whenever the periphrastic forms are not put in requisition, the indicative as a neutral mood is frequently used even in those cases in which the nature of the predication would appear to call for the use of the subjunctive. It should, however, be observed that the indicative, for obvious reasons, cannot take the place of the subjunctive in principal sentences (7, 11); nor is substitution possible in adverbial clauses of condition or concession that have the form of principal sentences with inverted word-order (12, Obs. III). Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2271.

*c)* Since the earliest times in the history of the English language the use of the inflectional subjunctive seems to have been constantly on the decline. In the beginning of the Modern-English period it was still fairly common. SHAKESPEARE and his contemporaries use it in many cases where, except for the higher flights of literature, it would be quite out of place now. In fact, apart from certain fossilized expressions, it may be said to have become extinct in ordinary Spoken English. Nor can it always be said to fulfil the function for which it was originally intended. In numerous instances, indeed, it seems to be employed to give a certain refined tinge to the diction, in like manner as *ye* is sometimes used for *you*.

5. In discussing the various moods in detail there seems to be no special call for a treatment of the indicative or neutral mood, it being understood that it is used whenever there is no occasion for any of the other moods. Nor is it necessary to discuss in this chapter the various applications of the various modal verbs that do not answer to modal inflection: these have already been treated in considerable detail in Ch. I, 16—27.

Reasons of convenience make it desirable to discuss the Subjunctive and Conditional Moods under one and the same heading.

## The Subjunctive and Conditional Mood.

### The Subjunctive or Conditional in Principal Sentences.

6. In Modern English either the subjunctive or the conditional is met with in:

a) principal sentences, especially 1) optative sentences, i. e. such as express a wish or a hope (7). A separate category of optative sentences is formed by such as express an idle wish, i. e. one which the speaker knows or thinks to be incapable of fulfilment, called by SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2266) a wish of rejected fulfilment (9). Whereas ordinary wishes are only made with regard to the future, idle wishes may also refer to the past. Dealing with a state of things which, in the speaker's consciousness, is contrary to fact, or with a supposition regarding the future made merely for the sake of argument, the mood employed is the conditional.

2) hortative sentences, i. e. such as express an exhortation, an advice, an appeal or a command, addressed to the *you* included in *we*, or to (a) person(s) other than the person(s) spoken to.

Note a) When the exhortation, appeal etc. is addressed to the person(s) spoken to, the verb is placed in the Imperative Mood, which is characterized by the absence of all inflection and, in normal cases, by the subject being left unexpressed. As hortative sentences always have the verb in the present subjunctive, which also is characterized by the absence of all inflection, it follows that they are formally distinguished from imperative sentences with the subject expressed only by a difference of person.

β) When the subject of a hortative sentence is a word denoting an animal or an inanimate thing, the appeal etc. it expresses is not addressed to what is indicated by the subject, but to (a) person(s) also concerned in the predication. This person or these persons are mostly not indicated by any word, owing to their being but vaguely present to the speaker's mind. This is also the case when the predicate is in the passive voice, except for the exceptional case that that (those) person(s) is (are) mentioned in the so-called inverted subject; thus in:

- i. Be this purse an earnest of my thanks! LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. III, 26.
- ii. Let honour be given to whom honour is due.

γ) Hortative sentences often more or less distinctly imply a wish and are not, consequently, always distinguished from optative sentences, so far as they contain an inflectional subjunctive (11, a). The difference mostly becomes apparent from the periphrasis of which the subjunctive is capable: optative sentences having *may*, hortative sentences *let*. Sometimes, however, there is ambiguity, either periphrasis being possible; thus in:

Perish the Empire rather than that a Liberal Government should prevail. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6389, 1 *b*.

5) Sometimes a hortative sentence implies neither an appeal etc., nor a wish, but an apprehension; thus:

Woe betide us if we are late! *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2263.

3) consequent sentences (or consequence clauses as they are called by *SWEET*), belonging to hypothetical clauses of rejected fulfilment. The hypothetical clause or protasis expressing a mere conception of the mind, it follows that such is also the case with the head-sentence, i. e. the consequent sentence or apodosis. In both the verb is, accordingly, placed in the conditional (13).

*b*) subordinate clauses, especially 1) subordinate statements (15—29), 2), subordinate questions (30—31), and 3) adverbial clauses. Modern English affords no instances of the inflectional subjunctive or conditional being used in substantive or adnominal clauses (Ch. XV and Ch. XVI), although the periphrastic subjunctive is frequent enough in the latter on the strength of their semantic affinity with certain subordinate statements or adverbial clauses.

#### The Subjunctive or Conditional in Optative Sentences.

7. *a*) In Optative Sentences the Subjunctive is now chiefly met with in invocations and imprecations, the subject of the sentence being: 1) the name of the Deity, or of some being or personified abstraction to whom some supernatural power is ascribed.

God save the King!, God bless you!, God help him!, God forbid!; Heaven forbid!; Lord preserve us!; (the) Devil (Devil Plague, Perdition) take (or seize) that man!

Now Heaven send she may be too sullen to look round! *SHER.*, *Riv.*, IV, 2. (206).

God rest you, merry gentleman! *G. ELIOT*, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. X, 74.

Note. The subject is often understood; thus in *Bless you! Curse you! Confound you!*, etc.

2) the name of the person or thing on which a curse is invoked, the sentence being mostly passive.

Grammar be hanged!

Cursed be the social wants that sin against the strength of youth! *TEN.*, *Locksley Hall*, 59.

*b*) For the rest it is now distinctly rare, and except for some liturgical expressions, such as *Thy kingdom come! Thy will be done!* is used only in archaic language.

Success attend ych! *SHER.*, *Riv.*, IV, 1. (258).

All happiness attend you and yours! *SCOTT*, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XXIX, 293.

8. Obs. 1. It should be observed that most of the above examples admit of little or no variation. Thus although *Long live the King* is an every-day expression, *\*Soon die the King!* formed on the same pattern, would make an awkward impression, if understood at all.

II. A common substitute for the inflectional subjunctive in optative sentences, confined, however, to literary language, is a periphrastic form with *may*, itself a subjunctive.

God bless you, merry gentleman! | May nothing you dismay! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

May you be happy in the life you have chosen! *ib.*, II.

III. In ordinary language wishes are expressed by means of complex sentences with *I hope*, *I wish*, etc., and their variations (17).

✓ IV. Sometimes also a wish is expressed by an exclamation which has the form of a conditional clause introduced by *if*, the principal sentence being understood. Such an exclamation then contains the adverb *only* or *but* to express the speaker's misgiving about the wish being capable of fulfilment.

If I can only (but) come in time! If only (but) the garrison holds out another week!

9. In expressing an idle wish the inflectional conditional is used, the sentence being introduced by *Oh* (or *O*) or *Ah*! The construction is used only in the higher literary style.

O, had he lived! TEN., *The Brook*.

Ah! were she a little less giddy than she is, and had she but the sterling qualities of Cherry, my young friend! DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XVIII, 157*b*.

10. Obs. I. Idle wishes are often expressed, especially in rhetorical English, by exclamations which have the form of subordinate statements opening with *that*, or of conditional clauses opening with *if*, the principal sentence being understood or, in a manner, represented by the interjection *Oh* (or *O*)! or *Ah*! In the *if*-clause the adverb *only* (or *but*) is regularly used to express the unsatisfied wish that the actual state of things were reversed. The Dutch indicates this emotion by the adverb *maar*.

O! that we, then, could come by Cæsar's spirit, | And not dismember Cæsar! SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II. I, 169.

Ah! if I had only known! BEATR. HAR., *Ships.*, I, Ch. VI, 24.

II. Other forms of elliptical sentences expressing an idle wish are such as contain a detached infinitive, or a prepositional word-group with *for*. They are regularly introduced by either of the above mentioned interjections.

Oh, to be in England | Now that April's there! BROWN., *Home-thoughts from Abroad*, I.

Ah, for some retreat! Deep in yonder shining Orient, where my life began to beat! TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 154.

III. The ordinary way of expressing an idle wish is by means of *I* (*we*) *wish* placed before a subordinate statement containing a conditional.

I wish it were true. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 296.

Literary English often has *I* (*we*) *would* in the same function as *I* (*we*) *wish*. Before *would* the subject, when the first person singular, is often suppressed.

I would my daughter were dead at my foot, and the jewels in her ear! would she were hearsed at my foot, and the ducats in her coffin! SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 1, 92—94.

We would that we could believe that. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8267, 2*b*.

Note especially *Would to God!* a corruption of an earlier *Would God!* in which *God* is the subject. When it became unusual to place the subject after the predicate, *would* came to be mistaken for *I would* and *God* was apprehended as the object. On the analogy of *I wish to God* the preposition *to* was afterwards placed before *God*. JESPERSEN, *Prog.*, § 187; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 619, Anm. 3.

*Would to God I had done it!* THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. IV, 184.

Also *Would God!* is still occasionally met with.

*Would God that thou couldst hide me from myself!* TEN., *Guin.*, 117.

IV. Conditional and concessive clauses that do not open with a conjunctive have the form of optative sentences expressing an idle wish. Ch. XVII, § 78, *a*; 95, *a*.

i. Were we once on firm ground, I trust there is no man in the Life-Guards who supposes our squadrons . . . are unable to trample into dust twice the number of these unpractised clowns. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XV, 172.

ii. Were he my only son, . . . this is no cause and no time to spare him. *ib.*, 173.

### The Subjunctive in Hortative Sentences. X

11. *a*) So far as hortative sentences are concerned, ordinary English has preserved the subjunctive only in certain idioms, such as are illustrated by the following sentences, some of which may also be apprehended as optative sentences (6, *a*, Note *r*):

So be it! Be it so! Suffice it to say!

Miss Crawley, be it known, did not leave her room until near noon. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 169.

Not, be it understood, that there is the slightest air of familiarity in the attention she receives. GRAY, 1889, 277.

The literary works that have fascinated mankind and earned the lofty title of genius abound in strokes of invention: witness Homer, Shakespeare, etc. BAIN., *Rhet.*, 63.

The purely literary drama cannot now exist in England, as witness the failure of plays by Mr. James and Mr. Conrad. BOOKMAN, No. 266, 92 *b*.

Note. *Witness* as in the two last examples may originally have been a noun. Compare the use of *instance*, as in:

The arousing of a thought or feeling always involves the overcoming of a certain resistance, instance the fact that during nervous prostration [etc.]. SPENCER, *Induct. Biol.*<sup>1)</sup>

*b*) For the rest hortative sentences have the inflectional subjunctive only in archaic style, the subject being:

1) *We*: Praise we the Virgin all divine, | Who hath rescued thee from thy distress. COL., *Christ.*, I, 139.

Now then, return we to this all-important subject. LYTTON, *My Nov.*, II, X, Ch. II, 154.

2) a noun, or some pronoun other than *we*.

Come, fill each man his glass. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, I, (206).

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s.v. *instance* v., 4.

The stage-scene has dropped. Settle yourselves, my good audience; chat each with his neighbour. LYTTON, *Caxt.* XVII, Ch. I, 448.

12. Obs. I. In ordinary English the inflectional subjunctive in hortative sentences is replaced by a construction with *let*.

Oh, do not let us say that gold is dross, when it can buy such things as these. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XIX, 165*a*.

Do not let my respected reader exclaim against this unselfishness as unnatural. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

II. Some varieties of hortative sentences bear a close resemblance to sentences indicating a moral obligation or an expediency, which are normally expressed by means of *should* or *ought*. Thus such phrases as *be it known*, *be it understood* might be paraphrased not only by *let it be known*, *let it be understood*, but also by *it should be known*, *it should be understood*. Thus also the ordinary translation of the literary, though common, Dutch phrases *Men bedenke*, *De lezer vergeet niet* would be *It should be remembered*, *The reader should not forget*.

III. Certain adverbial clauses have the form of hortative sentences: viz.:

*a*) conditional clauses: To-morrow night, please the gods, we will have then a snug carousal. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. II, 41*b*.

*β*) concessive clauses: i. Come death, come anguish, come a whole life of sorrow, as the end of this love, wouldst thou yet repent that thou hast loved? *id.*, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. II, 85.

ii. No man, be he ever so rich, can pass those dismal walls. I think, without a shudder. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XI, 134.

In such concessive complexes as *be the weather what it may* (= *the weather be what it may*), *do all I can* (= *\*do I all I can*), *happen what might* (= *\*happen that which might*) the first member may be understood to be a hortative sentence. In it the periphrastic subjunctive with *let* appears to be less common than the inflectional.

I will send her to Chinon: and she can say I sent her. Then let come what may: I can do no more. SHAW, *Saint Joan* I, (14).

*γ*) clauses of alternative hypothesis or disjunctive concession (Ch. XVII, 99).

Come luck or misfortune, good repute or bad, honour or shame, he (sc. the dog) is going to stick to you, to comfort you. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VIII, 126.

#### The Conditional in the Apodosis of Conditional Sentences.

13. *a*) In the apodosis of conditional sentences of rejected condition or, as JESPERSEN (Negation, 36) prefers to call it, rejecting condition, the inflectional conditional is regularly used of *can*, *may*, *must* and *will*, these verbs having no infinitive, and the forms *could*, *might*, *must* and *would* admitting, accordingly, of no periphrasis with an infinitive. The protasis of these sentences is often understood or represented by an infinitive clause or an adverbial adjunct.



i. Not all the King's horses, nor all the King's men. | Could have set Mr. Pecksniff up again. DICK., CHUZZ., Ch. XXXI, 251 b.

ii. It is certain that at this time he continued poor; and it is equally certain that by cruelty and dishonesty he might easily have become rich. MAC., WAR. HAST., (599 b).

iii. If it were not for that, I must really have a more expensive governess, and masters besides. G. ELIOT, DAN. DER., I, I, Ch. III, 48.

iv. I would dig in the fields, I would go out and be a servant — I would die for her. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. XXVII, 291.

b) Also *ought* and *should*, as in *He ought* (or *should*) *come*, are primarily conditionals, although now mostly used to express actual, not conditional obligation, unless followed by a perfect infinitive, as in *He ought* (or *should*) *have come* (Ch. I, 38—39; 43—44; Ch. LV, 60).

c) Thus also *had* in the phrases *I had need*, *I had rather* (*sooner*, *liefer* or *liever*), *I had as soon* (*lief* or *lieve*), *I had better* (or *best*), and their variations as to person or number, is originally a conditional, although mostly used without any association with an hypothesis (Ch. I, 27—30; Ch. LV, 32—33).

d) Similarly in the archaic *had like* + perfect infinitive *had* is primarily a conditional (Ch. II, 36, Obs. II).

(This intrigue) *had like* to have ended in my utter destruction. SWIFT, GULL., I, (128 a).

e) Also *need* is to be understood as an inflectional conditional when negated and followed by a perfect infinitive (Ch. LV, 7, b, 3).

He (sc. Oliver) *needn't* have taken the trouble to shrink from Mr. Bumble's glance. DICK., OL. TWIST, Ch. V, 59.

You *need* not have told me that. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, I, 20.

When not followed by a perfect infinitive, *need* requires *should* or *would* in the conditional (14, Obs. I).

One would *need* to be learned in the fashions of those times to know how far in the rear of them Mrs. Glegg's slate-coloured silk gown must have been. G. ELIOT, MILL, I, Ch. VII, 45.

f) 1) The inflectional conditional of *to dare* is pretty common, *durst* being the usual form.

I *durst*, my lord, to wager she is honest. SHAK., OTH., IV, 2, 12.

"Come down and undo the shop-window, that I may get in that way." — "I *durstn't* do it, Simmun," cried Miggs. DICK., BARN. RUDGE, Ch. IX, 38 a.

If henny one was to offer to bet a thousan poun that youll hend by bein a bishop yourself, I *dussen't* take the bet. SHAW, CAND., II, (160). T.

The form *dare* as a preterite conditional appears to be rare in literary English, but may be common enough in colloquial English and dialects.

If I were not chained to the floor, you *dare* as well eat your fingers as use such language. GODWIN, CAL. WIL., II, Ch. XIV, 272.

He *dare* not keep you waiting if you were at liberty. SHAW, MAN OF DEST., (203). T.

Do you think that if I wanted those despatches only for myself, I dare venture into a battle for them. *ib.*, (220).

The pluperfect conditional *had dared* + simple infinitive varies with the preterite conditional *durst* + perfect infinitive in archaic English, and with *dare* + perfect infinitive in colloquial English and dialects.

i. Two months ago I should have scouted as mad or drunk the man who had dared tell me the like. RUDY. KIPL., *Phant. Rickshaw*, 9.  
They had not dared to meddle with me. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XLI, 255.

ii. I'm glad it is done, though I durst not have done it myself. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XXV, 162.

iii. You know you daren't have given the order to charge the bridge, if you hadn't seen us on the other side. SHAW, *Man of Destiny*, (241).

2) The periphrastic conditional is, most probably, the ordinary form, in the preterite as well as in the pluperfect.

i. A fellow you wouldn't dare to ask a question of. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. XXI, 323.

I should like to see the man who would dare to insult me in Ilfracombe's presence. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, II, 62.

ii. How I wish Ilfracombe had been at home to protect me from your cowardly sentence. You would not have dared utter it, had he been standing by. *ib.*, I, 43.

Hugh was not the only one she would have dared tell her story. *ib.*, II, 21.

Doggie would no more have dared address him in terms of familiarity than he would have dared slap the Brigadier-General on the back. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XXIII, 286.

He was not the kind of a man whom a servant would ever have dared to express any sympathy with. SARAH GRAND, *The Heavenly Twins*, I, 85. T.

14. Obs. 1. Except for the above verbs, the inflectional conditional is now normally replaced by the periphrastic conditional with *should* or *would*. For the distribution of these auxiliaries, which follows, in the main, the lines of *should* and *would* as tense-auxiliaries see Ch. L, 27.

If he knew it, he would tell me all about it. If I had known it, I should have told you all about it.

II. Archaically the inflectional conditional is still met with in the higher literary style, the pluperfect being, apparently, more common than the preterite. Thus:

a) rather frequently of the verb *to be*.

i. If only the ladies could all have their own way in this world and never be thwarted, then were the Millennium near at hand. GRAPH., 1889, 278.

ii. But for the colour of their hair, it had been difficult to distinguish them. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. III, 30.

Her anger frightened him. It had been no surprise to him if she had fallen dead at his feet. MAX. PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. XX, 112.

β) more rarely of other verbs. Late Modern-English instances of the preterite conditional have not come to hand.

I. But if my father had not scanted me, ... Yourself, renowned prince, then stood as fair. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 1, 20.

II. These letters had probably never been preserved, but for the affectionate thrift of one person. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 2.

Had you found him at work, you had given him nothing. LYTTON, *Caxl.*, I, IV, Ch. V, 104.

The work had been done in half the time, .. had they given him a definite sum of money.. UNA L. SILBERRAD, *SUCCESS*, Ch. I, 9.

III. The suppression of the protasis may lead to the obliterating of all notion of a condition in the speaker's consciousness, with the result that where, according to the practice of Present English, the periphrastic pluperfect conditional would be required, we find the inflectional pluperfect or preterite, which is hardly felt as a conditional at all.

a) Thus we find *I had almost said* (or *written*) used practically to the exclusion of *I should almost have said* (or *written*).

The face is a curious mixture: the soft dreamy eyes contrast so sharply with the firm, I had almost said, hard little mouth. MISS MONTGOMERY, *THROWN TOGETHER*, I, 72. T.

Mrs. Ebley (I had almost written the Reverend Mr. Ebley) was secretly enjoying herself. E. GLYN, *THE POINT OF VIEW*, Ch. I, 8.

Also in other connexions the use of *almost*, or some equivalent adverb, seems to be the occasion of the periphrastic pluperfect conditional being avoided.

Dolf's heart turned faint with him, and he had well-nigh let go his hold. WASH. IRV., *DOLF HEYL*. (STOF., *HANDL.*, I, 129).

My brother had very nearly succeeded in his suit. THACK., *PEND.*, I, Ch. VII, 85.

β) *I had not thought* (or *dreamed*, etc.) is not, it appears, unfrequently used instead of the grammatically more correct *I should not have thought* (or *dreamed*, etc.).

i. I had not thought .. that the convent bred such good horsemen. SCOTT, *ABBOT*, Ch. XXXVI, 404.

He had not dream'd she was so beautiful. TEN., *LANC. & EL*, 351.

ii. I should never have expected to see him so low in the service. SCOTT, *OLD MORT.*, Ch. IX, 103. T.

I shouldn't have thought it of you. SWIN., *NOCT.*, III, Ch. XII, VI, 259.

;) Very common is the use of *I thought* and especially *I did not think* and *I never thought*, the preterite taking the place of the pluperfect conditional *I should have thought*, etc., the latter forms being, apparently, non-existent.

i. I thought you would have been pleased. DICK., *DOMB.*, Ch. III, 25.

ii. I did not think we had been so near Scotland. SWEET, *N. E. GR.*, § 2247.

iii. I never thought Harry Warrington would have joined against us. THACK., *VIRG.*, Ch. XCII, 984.

IV. The apodosis may express an actual fact and, accordingly, have its predicate in the indicative, although the protasis expresses a case which the speaker knows to be contrary to fact.

Surely if they had been zealous to pluck a brand from the burning, here was a noble opportunity. W. GUNNYON, *BIOGRAPH. SKETCH OF BURNS*, 4.

V. The periphrastic conditional often has a down-toning force, all notion of a rejected condition being, as a rule, practically absent from the speaker's mind. As such we find it largely used:

a) to impart modesty or diffidence to a wish, request or question; also to the expression of an opinion or the giving of a piece of advice.

i. I should like to go for a walk. Wouldn't you rather have a cup of tea? SWEET, *N. E. GR.*, § 2285.

ii. "How far is it?" — "I should say about two miles." Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IX, 187.

iii. I should (advise you to) withdraw from the concern.

Conversely in colloquial English *I should think* (or *suppose*) so often implies strong conviction. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2286; O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 19, d.

β) to soften down the positiveness of a statement.

The servants sleep so far off, Miss, they would not be likely to hear. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 185.

The King was shaken with holy fear; "The Gods", he said, "would have chosen well: Yet both are near, and both are dear, | And which the dearest I cannot tell." TEN., *Vict.*, V.

Mr. Hall called on Dickens for the purpose of proposing the scheme. This would be in 1835. MARZIALS, *Life of Dick.*, Ch. III, 40.

This *would* differs but little from modal *will* in such a sentence as *This will be the Tower of London, I suppose*. (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2249), commented on in Ch. I, 27. This *will* also tinges a statement with some diffidence, but lacks some of the reserve implied in *would*.

γ) to express modest pleasure or displeasure at the prospect of a future action or state.

I should like to go to the theatre to-night. Would you like to come too?

I think my brother would be happy to see you.

I should hate to live in a foreign country.

VI. The inflectional conditionals *could*, *might* and *would* often imply similar emotions of modesty or diffidence.

i. My heart aches to think they could possibly be either fools or rascals. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 27.

ii. Don't you think I might be of some use to you? Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. II, 32. T.

III. The stranger who would form a correct opinion of the English character, must not confine his observations to the metropolis. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, VIII, 61.

### The Subjunctive or Conditional in Subordinate Clauses.

15. When the subjunctive or conditional is used in a subordinate statement, the attitude of uncertainty or rejection on the part of the speaker expressed by it is already implied by the import of the head-sentence: i. e. by such words as *hope*, *wish*, *command*, *desire*, *fear*, *propose*, etc. found in some form or other in the latter. There is not, therefore, any strict necessity for its use, and its function is chiefly to denote this attitude emphatically (2, Obs. II). As to the modal auxiliaries used as periphrases of the subjunctive or conditional in subordinate statements it should be observed that they have the same meaning, although more or less weakened, as they have in principal sentences, where they may have no modal force at all. Thus *may* has only a slightly weaker meaning in *I hope you may be happy in the life you have chosen* than it has in *May you be happy in the life you have chosen!* and in both sentences it is distinctly modal.

But if we compare two such sentences as *she shall come back* and *I desire that she shall come back* (= *I desire that she come back*), we find  $\alpha$ ) that *shall* is distinctly weaker in the second sentence than it is in the first, and  $\beta$ ) that it is not modal in the first sentence, whereas it may be apprehended as a subjunctive substitute in the second (Ch. I, 40). The weakened meaning of *shall* in subordinate statements may also be responsible for the fact that we often find it replaced by other auxiliary verbs, frequently for no apparent reason (21).

The Subjunctive or Conditional in Subordinate  
Statements expressing what is the subject  
of a Hope or Wish.

- 16 *a*) In subordinate statements of this description Literary English often has the subjunctive, especially after such phrases as *God* (or *Heaven*) *grant* (or *send*), in which the verb is also in the subjunctive (7, *a*).

Heaven send we be all alive this time to-morrow! SHER., Riv., IV, 1, (257).  
God grant you become a braver man than he! KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 7 *b*.

*b*) There is no clear evidence that the preterite subjunctive takes the place of the present subjunctive when the time-sphere is the past, preterite forms giving the impression of being intended as conditionals; in other words they suggest idle wishes (18). Thus in:

I thought upon Antonio when he told me, | And wished in silence that it were not his. SHAK., Merch., II, 7, 32.

I expressed to Wordsworth a wish that his poems were printed in the order of their composition. Academy.

17. Obs. I. A common substitute for this inflectional subjunctive is periphrasis with *may*, in narrating past events, *might*.

Heaven send she may be too sullen to look round! SHER., Riv., IV, 2.

I wished fervently he might not discover my hiding-place. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 4.

II. The speaker's attitude of uncertainty being indubitably denoted by the import of the head-sentence, there is, naturally, no call for any verb indicating this attitude in the subordinate statement, unless particular diffidence as to the wish or hope coming into fulfilment is to be expressed. Hence *shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*), as auxiliaries of the future tense, are often found instead of modal *may* (*might*).

I hope we shall never see you here again. DICK., Household Words.

I ventured to express a hope that she would not refuse to see him again in his trouble. id., Cop., Ch. XXXII, 232 *a*.

18. *a*) As has already been stated in 10, Obs. III, subordinate statements expressing what is the subject of an idle wish are, in ordinary English, preceded by *I wish*, the higher literary language

preferring (*I*) *would*. Here it may be added that these phrases admit of the ordinary variations for person, and that *had rather* (= *would rather*) is sometimes used in a similar function.

i. I wish it were in my power to be of any essential service to him! SHER., School, I, I, (365).

Don't you wish you were my brother? DOR. GERARD, Exotic Martha, Ch. II, 25.

ii. I would it were my fault to sleep so soundly. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, I, 4

iii. Her father's an earl. — I'd rather he weren't. SUTRO, The Choice, I, (8).

Note. The use of the indicative in the phrase *I wish* instead of the preterite conditional, as in *I would*, is, no doubt, due to the fact that in uttering these words the speaker has no notion of a condition in his mind. That *wish* in this phrase is felt as an indicative is borne out by the fact that it takes the inflection of the present indicative when an idle wish is reported of a person other than the speaker, and also when *one* is used as a veiled *I*.

She says she wishes she were dead. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2266.

One wishes it were not so. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. IX, 91.

b) In narrating past events *I wish*, etc. is changed into *I wished*, etc., the tense of the subordinate statement naturally undergoing no change.

At that moment she wished that she had not sent for him. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, III, Ch. XXIII, 384.

I wished he could have seen her. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XX, 200.

c) In referring to an idle wish formed at a time prior to a point of time in the past, the pluperfect conditional is used.

I had often wished that I had been drowned when I was going away from my mother. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, III, Ch. XX, 321.

19. Obs. I. In emotional language we often find idle wishes expressed by a bare subordinate statement, the principal sentence being understood or, in a manner, represented by the interjection *O(h)!* or *Ah!* (10, Obs. I).

Oh! that I had but known! HALL CAINE, Deemster, Ch. XVIII, 126.

Ah! that your excellency but saw the great duel which depends on you alone! KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. II, 8a.

II. If the idle wish is one regarding the future or a time subsequent to a moment in the past, the verb in the subordinate statement is mostly placed in the periphrastic conditional (with *would*), but only so far as the second and third persons are concerned.

i. I wish you would forget it. DICK., Tale of Two Cities, II, Ch. XX, 234.

I wish he would come. SWEET, Spok. Eng., 43.

ii. Nancy wished more and more that Godfrey would come in. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. XVII, 139.

We would that more of the London landlords would realise their responsibilities. Westm. Gaz., No. 6447, 2c.

When the idle wish concerns the future of the speaker, the construction with the periphrastic conditional is not available. Thus although we say *I wish you (he, she or they) would succeed!* we cannot say *\*I wish*

*I should succèed!* Instead of this another construction is chosen; e. g.: *I should feel very happy if I succeeded*, or *I (do) hope I may (or shall) succeed!* It should be observed, however, that *would* may be used after *we* in reported speech, as in:

(He says) he wishes we would not keep the door open. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2202, *f*.

III. \* *Might* occurs as an occasional variant of *would*, also after *we*.

Would that neither might win! KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XVII, 71 *a*.

I wish we might be friends. DICK., *Tale of Two Cities*, II, Ch. XX, 235.

### The Subjunctive in Subordinate Statements expressing what is the subject of some Movement of the Human Will.

20. *a)* In these statements the subjunctive is frequent enough, but only in literary English.

I desire that she come back. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 170.

It is my wish that it (sc. the picture) remain where it is. ANSTEY, *Fal. Id.*, Ch. VII, 104.

*b)* No instances of the preterite subjunctive being used analogously in narrating past events have come to hand, the probability being that some periphrastic equivalent is regularly used instead. Thus in representing such a fact as is expressed by *I desire that she come back* as a happening of the past we could not say \**I desired that she came back*, periphrasis with one or another of the modal auxiliaries mentioned below being unavoidable.

21. Obs. I. Instead of the inflectional subjunctive we mostly find the periphrastic subjunctive with *shall*, *should* or *may*, the choice depending, roughly speaking, upon the intensity of volition, which is implied, *shall* denoting the strongest, *may* the weakest form.

As to *should* it may be observed that it sometimes has approximately the same meaning as it has in *He should (or ought to) come*, sometimes may be understood to serve the purpose of representing an action or state as a mere contingency (Ch. I, 26, *c*).

i. The memorial asks that Parliament shall make it illegal to vivisect dogs. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8080, 21.

The committee have decided that no one shall be admitted without a ticket. *Times*.

ii. Haven't you ambition enough to wish that your husband should be something better than a Middlemarch doctor? G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIII, 323.

God forbid that you should take any road but one where you will find and give happiness! *id.*, *Dan. Der.*, I, III, Ch. XXIII, 393.

iii. I beg this may make no kind of distance between us. GODSMITH, *Goodnat. Man*, IV.

It is particularly requested that Miss Sharp's stay in Russell Square may not exceed ten days. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 3.

In narrating past events *shall* and *may* are, of course, replaced by respectively *should* and *might*.

i. I did not choose that my wife should be passed over by them. THACK. *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 117.

H. POUTSMA, III I.

ii. He desired that the boy might be left behind under his care. FIELD., J. O. S. ANDR. I, Ch. III, 7.

II. *Shall* may have a similar force in adnominal clauses and in adverbial clauses of result (or consequence) modifying *so* as an adverb of quality (Ch. I, 40, c, 5; O. E. D. s.v. *shall*, 11, b).

i. I wish to publish a book that shall create a stir and make me famous. MAR. CORELLI, S. O. R. of SAT.

ii. I have placed the money out of the reach of Robert Gates; and placed it so that it shall be a blessing to his family at his death. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. VI, 61.

III. Instances of *should* or *may* being used where *shall* would be expected, and, conversely, of *shall* standing for an, apparently, more appropriate *should* or *may* are frequent enough.

i. I desire — I insist — I order that Mrs. Hoggarty of Castle Hoggarty's trunks should be placed this instant in my carriage. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. IX, 98.

ii. I shall give orders that my doors may no longer be open to you. FIELDING, J. O. S. ANDREWS, IV, Ch. II, 206.

III. The Russian delegates report that they have requested that the next meeting shall be on Russian soil. WESTM. GAZ., No. 7637, 1a.

IV. Also *to be* (*to*) and *must* as synonyms of *should* (Ch. I, 30; 31, Obs. III) are sometimes met with.

Convocation at Oxford has voted that Greek is, for the present, still to be asked for at Responsions. WESTM. GAZ., No. 8109, 8b.

Inexorably, without pity, Circumstance decreed that they must cross those forty yards of silence before they could speak. TEMPLE THURSTON, CITY, Ch. XIV, 105.

The fact that volition is already expressed in the head sentence with unmistakable clearness opens the way for further freedom in the choice of the verb to be used in the subordinate statement. Thus we find in it not only *to be* (*to*) and *must* as variants of *should*, but also *will*, either as a verb of weak volition or a mere auxiliary of the future tense. A very strong sense of courtesy or modesty may prompt the use of the conditional *would*.

I desire that you will do your duty. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 9. She wishes that you would set this diamond neatly. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. II, 23.

It has been decided that the King will open Parliament with full state ceremonial. DAILY NEWS, 1907, 9 Jan.

Observe the regular use of *will* in the phrase *I beg you won't mention it*.

V. In conclusion it should be observed that after most verbs expressing a movement of the human will a subordinate statement is more or less unusual. After *to choose*, *to intend*, *to wish* and especially *to want*, it may even be pronounced exceptional. Thus it would require extensive reading to find a fairly large number of sentences with *to want* followed by a subordinate statement, like the following, the only ones that have come to hand:

She did not want that Harry should quarrel with his aunt for her sake. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVIII, 187.

He seems to want that his wife should suspect the new crime he has in hand HUDSON. Note to Macb., III, 3, 52.

These verbs and also *to desire*, *to endure*, *to require* and *to suffer* are mostly construed with an accusative + infinitive. Others such as *to*



*ask, to charge, to order, to pray and to request* mostly take a similar construction with an infinitive (Ch. XVIII. 30 ff). The constructions with the auxiliaries, although mostly purely literary, however, offer the substantial advantage of enabling us to indicate nice shades of meaning which the accusative + infinitive is utterly incapable of expressing.

The Subjunctive or Conditional in Subordinate  
Statements expressing what is thought  
necessary, desirable, advisable,  
just, fair, or the reverse.

22. a) In these clauses literary English not unfrequently has the subjunctive.

According to Hindoo belief it is needful for a man's welfare that he leave a son behind him to perform his funeral rites. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 183.

It's high time that the task be undertaken of promoting international good feeling. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 10a.

b) If what the speaker thinks necessary, advisable, etc. or the reverse, is represented as contrary to fact, the conditional is used, the whole sentence partaking of an idle wish.

It is time we were off. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2267.

It is time that a more reasonable distribution of the burdens of revenue were permanently established. *Times*.

c) In narrating past events, the preterite is used, but there is mostly no evidence whether it should be regarded as a subjunctive, conditional or indicative.

It was high time that the old man died. G. ELIOT, *M. d.*, IV, Ch. XXXIV, 241.

Also *were* as a preterite subjunctive or conditional seems to be very rare in the clauses mentioned under b) and c). To all appearance *was* is regularly used instead in ordinary English.

It is certainly time that a definite term was set to our commitments in Russia. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8221, 2b.

23. Obs. The ordinary substitutes for the subjunctive or conditional in these clauses are periphrases with *shall* or *should*, the latter being the milder and by far the more frequent, and often approaching the meaning of *should* in *He should* (i. e. *ought to*) *come*.

i. It is necessary that the Nationalists shall be absolutely independent. *Graph.* He has to judge whether it is advisable that repairs in any farm-buildings shall be undertaken this year or shall be postponed until the next. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 30.

ii. It is not necessary that every one should be first-rate — either actresses or singers. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, III, Ch. XXIII, 383.

It is imperative that the Government should take some immediate step in the direction of Irish self-government. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8103, 4a.

If the time-sphere is the past, these clauses naturally have no other auxiliary than *should*.

Pen . . declined to tell Laura what the play was about. In fact it was quite as well that she should not know. THACK., *Pen d.*, I, Ch. IV, 52.

The Subjunctive in Subordinate Statements  
expressing what is the subject of a  
Proposal or Suggestion.

24. The subjunctive in these clauses is especially frequent in the language of deliberative assemblies or bodies.

I propose that the matter be put to the vote at once. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, II, Ch. XLVIII, 236.

Lord Spencer moved a resolution to the effect that the First Lord of the Treasury be asked to receive a deputation on the subject. *Times*. (Note that the present tense is used in the clause, although the principal sentence has the verb in the preterite (3, a).

25. Obs. I. Ordinary language prefers periphrasis with *shall* or *should*, the latter being a milder and distinctly more frequent form than the former, and approaching in meaning to *should* in *He should* (i.e. *ought to*) *come*.

The proposal is that London shall become one borough, like Birmingham and Manchester. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4983, 2b.

A moves that the rate of postage should be reduced, B moves that the post-office authorities be allowed time to consider the question. COBHAM BREWER, *Dict.*, s.v. *question*. (Observe the alternate use of the periphrastic and inflectional subjunctive.

In narrating past events *should* is, of course, the only possible modal auxiliary.

The carrier .. proposed that my pocket-handkerchief should be spread upon the horse's back to dry. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32a.

II. In colloquial language the Indicative may be common enough.

You propose that Ellean leaves Highercoombe almost at once and remains with you some months. PINERO, *Sec. Mrs. Tanqu.*, II, (92).

The Subjunctive in Subordinate Statements  
expressing what is the subject of a  
person's Care or Solicitude.

26. In the literary language the subjunctive is fairly common in these clauses.

Remember that thou keep holy the Sabbath-day.

See that everything be in readiness. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, 192, N.

27. Obs. I. Periphrasis with *shall* or occasionally *should* as a milder form and implying propriety, etc., as in the connexions mentioned in 21, Obs. I, is the ordinary substitute for this subjunctive.

i. I will take care that you shall learn all you want to know. SHAW, *You never can tell*, I, I, (225).

ii. The Government must use its every power to see that a minority by the aid of disorganisation and starvation should not dictate policy to the country. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8144, 1b.

In narrating past events *should* is naturally the only modal auxiliary.

He took care that the task should be promptly undertaken.

II. In ordinary written and spoken English neither the Inflectional nor the Periphrastic Subjunctive is at all common in these clauses, the Indicative being mostly used instead.

I shall be able to see that nothing of the sort occurs again. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Antag.*, Ch. IX, 79.

He would .. take very good care that he didn't have to go again on the same errand. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VII, 196.

As for the child he would see that it was cared for. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. XIII, 105.

The Subjunctive in Subordinate Statements  
expressing what is the subject of  
an Apprehension.

28. a) Clauses of this description have the subjunctive only after the literary *lest*.

I tremble lest he be discovered. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2274.

b) No instance has come to hand of *were* as a preterite subjunctive after *lest*. In the following quotation the preterite may, however, be regarded as a subjunctive:

She had no alarm lest he meant to kiss her. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, III, Ch. XXVII, 43.

29. Obs. I. In the majority of cases periphrasis with *should* is used instead, independently of the time-sphere. In narrating past events *might* varies with *should*: the use of *may* as a variant of *should* seems to be less common. So far as the evidence goes, there is no difference in meaning between the periphrasis with *should* and that with *might* (or *may*), both implying as the O. E. D. (s.v. *afraid*, 2, c) puts it "a deprecated contingency of which there is danger." See also O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 22, e.

i. \* A girl with large possessions is always suspicious lest a man should pretend to love her for the sake of her money. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. V, 45.

When ladies leave the Gallery for tea there is no need for them to fear lest they should lose their seats. *Graph.*, 1889, 279.

\*\* I feared lest I should be deceived. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

ii. \* I fear lest they may be won already. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. IV, 32.

\*\* A horrible doubt came into my mind lest the dog might be loose. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 269. T.

II. Also *would*, as a tense-auxiliary, is occasionally met with after *lest*. Of the analogous use of *shall* or *will* no instances have come to hand.

I was afraid lest she would be displeased. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 44.

III. No instances have turned up of the inflectional subjunctive after *that*, the ordinary conjunction to introduce these clauses. The periphrastic subjunctive with *may* or *might*, the latter in narrating past events, is, however, common enough.

Has he, perhaps, committed some crime in Italy and fears that I may be an Italian detective who has traced him here? RICH. BAGOT, *Darney Place*, I, Ch. II, 26.

Being apprehensive that I might spoil the sale of the book. SWIFT, *Tale of a Book*.

*Should* appears as a rather frequent variant of *might* when the apprehension concerns the future from a point of view in the past. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *shall*, 22, *e*.

Having rung the bell, she leaned against the stone parapet for support, dreading that the door should be opened. WESTM. GAZ., No. 8057, 10 *b*.

IV. The Indicative appears, however, to be the ordinary form of the verb after *that*.

He is afraid that his dishonesty will be discovered. I am afraid that it is too true; afraid that we are not in time. O. E. D., s. v. *afraid*, 2, *c*.

### The Subjunctive in Subordinate Questions.

30. *a*) Literary English affords frequent instances of the subjunctive in subordinate questions, especially, such as open with *whether* or *if*. The occasion of the subjunctive often appears to be a doubt on the part of the subject that the question must be answered in the affirmative.

i. We doubt whether there be a hundred genuine Bengalees in the whole army of the East India Company. MAC., *Clive*, (512 *a*).

He feels if the axe be sharp; I know not whether it be true or not. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2273.

ii. He was visited with a doubt whether he were not mistaking her. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VI, Ch. XVII, 50.

The blowing of the horn .. made me hesitatingly inquire .. if there were anything to pay. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 *a*.

*b*) In subordinate questions opening with an interrogative pronoun or adverb the subjunctive is far less frequent.

A wise horseman should, in such a case, take care how he pull the rein. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 90.

Ah Christ, that it were possible | For one short hour to see | The souls we loved, that they might tell us | What and where they be. TEN., *Maud*, II, IV, III.

31. Obs. I. There are no periphrastic equivalents for the inflectional subjunctive in subordinate questions.

II. In ordinary spoken English the indicative or neutral mood (I, *a*) is used with no, or hardly any exception.

You won't know whether the frosty wind is hot or cold. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOE., *Handl.*, I.)

III. May (*might*) in subordinate questions has the same force as it has in direct questions (Ch. I, 21).

Nancy said she would go and see if, by any chance, an answer to her application might not have arrived. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, III, Ch. III, 140.

### The Subjunctive or Conditional in Adverbial Clauses.

The Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses of Place.

32. *a*) In adverbial clauses of place the inflectional subjunctive is very rare.

A thousand thousand sighs to save, | Lay me, O, where | Sad true lover never find my grave, | To weep there! SHAK., Twelfth Night, II, 4, 65.

b) Nor has clear documentary evidence of the periphrastic subjunctive in these clauses turned up. Such a sentence as *Where the tree shall fall, there it shall lie*, cited by ONIONS (Adv Eng. Synt., § 48), is hardly a case in point, *where* having the value of *wherever* and, accordingly, implying a concession.

### The Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses of Time.

33. a) In adverbial clauses of time describing an action or state of the future the inflectional subjunctive is fairly common in literary English, especially after the literary *ere* and, in a less degree, after *before*, *until* (or *till*), instances after the familiar *when* being exceedingly rare.

i. The tree will wither long before it fall. BYRON, Child of Har., III, XXXII.

ii. And all his prospects brightening to the last, | His heaven commences ere the world be past. GOLDSMITH, Des. Vil., 112.

Bethink ere thou dismiss us. BYRON, Manfred, I, 1.

III. He will be watched, until he lose his present habits of stealing and lying. BESANT, The Bell of St. Paul's, I, 25. T.

b) Owing to the preterite subjunctive differing in no way from the preterite indicative, except in the case of the verb *to be*, clear instances of the former are very rare. Curiously enough JANE AUSTEN seems to have a peculiar fondness for *were* after *when*. Many instances may be found in Emma and, most probably, her other novels. We copy one:

She was very sure that he would be a great deal the happier for having Mr. Knightley always at hand when he were once got used to the idea. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LIII, 439.

The (frequent) use of the preterite subjunctive by the same novelist after *whenever* is less surprising, seeing this conjunctive often has the meaning of *if at any time*, i. e. implies an element of condition (34, Obs. II).

He as readily engaged to fetch her away again at half an hour's notice, whenever she were weary of the place. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. IV, 41.

34. Obs. I. In temporal clauses describing an action or state of the future we rather frequently meet with *shall* to represent the fulfilment of this action or state as uncertain or of an uncertain date. This periphrastic subjunctive, although confined to literary English, is also common enough after *when*.

i. When you shall have read this book .. you will be at no loss to discover why I have dedicated it to you. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ded.

Do my errand when it shall be most convenient for you in the course of the day. STEV., Dr. Jekyll, Ch. IX, 84.

ii. This camp will not be moved until Gen. Buller shall deem the moment opportune. MORN. LEAD.

It is rather remarkable that, in the case of the time-sphere being the past, the use of *should* is quite usual also in ordinary English.

He was cast into prison till he should pay the debt. BAIN, *Comp.*, 190.

He would decide how to deal with that crisis when it should arrive. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IX, 186.

II. Also the conditional *should* (= Dutch *mocht*) is not unfrequently met with in these clauses, irrespective of the time-sphere, especially after *whenever* or *when* if they imply an element of condition (33, b). This decided him to part with the boy whenever he should be found. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 140. T. (=.. if at any time ..)

In pursuance of my intention of referring to my fictions only when their progress should incidentally connect itself with the progress of my story, I do not enter on the aspirations, the delights and triumphs of my art. DICK., *Comp.*, Ch. LXI, 421a.

I undertook to partially fill up the office of parish-clerk by Mr. Crackenthorp's desire whenever your infirmities should make you unfitting. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. VI, 40.

III. In ordinary English, however, the present or preterite indicative, as the case may be, is distinctly the rule, even when there seems to be no doubt that the speaker must have been aware that it is uncertain when the action or state will come about or whether it will come about at all. As has already been stated, the periphrastic subjunctive with *should* is a rather frequent variant of the preterite indicative (Obs. I).

i. I am quite out of cash till my father tips up. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 125.

ii. I had fixed on a very snug little cottage in Camden Town, where there was a garden that certain small people might play in when they came. *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 95.

Thus also after *whenever*, as in:

ACRES. I shall have your good wishes, however, Jack? — ABS. Whenever he meets you, believe me. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (258).

I could, I felt sure, grope my way to the front-door, let myself out, and, whenever I chose, return by aid of the latch-key. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. I, 9.

IV. Also *will* (*would*) as an auxiliary of the future tense is occasionally met with, not only in extra-British, Scottish or Irish English, but also in the works of authors who may be supposed to write pure English. When you will have learned more of him who is now your rival, we may meet again, with other feelings on your side. LYTTON, *Eug. Ar.*, Ch. X, 78. And who shall gaze upon | My palace with unblinded eyes, | While this great bow will waver in the sun, | And that sweet incense rise? TEN., *Pal. of Art*, 43.

We cannot, of course, pronounce on the purity of the English in newspapers in which also *will* not seldom appears as a tense-sign.

We must ask ourselves what victory will cost the Russian people when at length it will become possible to conclude the peace so ardently desired. *Times*.

We go to press unfortunately before the Prime Minister's speech at the Albert Hall will have been delivered. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 1 b.

The tense-auxiliaries appear to be normally used after *It will not be long before* and its variations, instances of their absence seem to be unfrequent.

i. It will not be long before Tremaine will be here. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VII, 129. T.

ii. It is only a matter of days before the brokers seize even my personal effects. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, Ch. IV, 44.

V. There is not, of course, anything surprising in the use of the tense-auxiliaries in continuative adverbial clauses of time, which are, indeed, only disguised principal sentences and, accordingly, subject to the ordinary rules about the employment of the auxiliaries. You had better call again at twelve o'clock, when my father will be at home.

VI. Care should be taken to distinguish from adverbial clauses of time adnominal clauses introduced by the adverb *when*, in which also the use of *shall* and *will* is the same as it is in principal sentences. I have begun several times many things, and I have succeeded at last; ay, sir, and though I sit down now, the time will come when you will hear me. DISRAELI, *Speech* (MCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, 80).

But these clauses, though grammatically adnominal, may virtually be part of a restrictive adverbial member of the sentence and, consequently, have *should* (or *shall*) as modal auxiliaries.

It (sc. the dressing case) contained .. a choice of razors ready against the time when Mr. Foker's beard should come. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 55.

Keith unfastened one of the settees and wheeled it forward so that it stood under the light, and in great comfort for the time when they should sit to hear his story. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, II, Ch. VII, II, 152.

Similarly *should* and *shall* are used as modal auxiliaries after *until* (or *till*) *such time as*, *until* (or *till*) *the time when* (or *that*), *by the time* (*that*) and at *any time* (*that*), which are often used as modifications of the conjunctions *until* (or *till*) or *when*. It is hardly necessary to state that the simple present or preterite is the rule also in these clauses (Obs. III).

i. Meadows was wandering about the premises until such time as Robinson should return. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 16. T.

There might his mortal frame meetly rest till the day when he should rise. MISS YONGE, *Heir of Redc.*, II; Ch. XIV, 203—4. T.

ii. By the time you have washed and dressed, breakfast will be ready. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 4243.

### The Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses of Purpose.

35. a) Adverbial clauses of purpose sometimes have the predicate in the inflectional subjunctive when introduced by *that*, rarely when opening with the more colloquial *so that*, and rather frequently after the purely literary *lest*. To emphasize the notion of purpose *in order that*, *for the purpose that*, and, more or less archaically, *to the intent that* or *to the end that*, are sometimes used instead of the simple *that* (Ch. XVII, 60).

i. Not enjoyment and not sorrow, | Is our destined end or way; | But to act that each to-morrow | Find us farther than to-day. LONGF., *Psalms*, III.

ii. Doubt not but I will use my utmost skill, | So that the Pope attend to your complaint. SHELLEY, *The Cenci*, l. 2, 42.

iii. I myself must mix with action, lest I wither by despair. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 98.

b) Indubitable instances of the preterite subjunctive are rarely met with, the periphrastic substitutes being almost regularly used instead.

All they would do was to a give a loaded pistol, lest we were attacked. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. IV, 39.

36. Obs. 1. After (*in order, for the purpose, or to the end*) *that* and so *that* the inflectional subjunctive is mostly replaced by the periphrastic with *may* or, in narrating past events, *might*. Instead of *might* we sometimes find the conditional *should*, especially when the clause is negative. The use of *should* instead of *may* appears to be rare. For the rest there is not any apparent difference between the two auxiliaries in the above connexions. Compare what has been said about *might* and *should* after words or word-groups denoting apprehension in 29.

i. \* He labours that he may become rich. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, 425.

I should be glad to fix what has brought us to Bath, in order that we may lie a little consistently. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

\*\* He sat with the door wide open at all times that he might hear the footsteps as they entered. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XL, 314 a.

ii. \* I speak not this, that you should hear a good opinion of my knowledge. SHAK., *As you like it*, V, 2, 59.

\*\* She pronounced it (sc. the word 'heart') without the 'h', but that there should be no mistake, laid her hand upon the place meant. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 44.

i. \* Throw up your chin a little, so that I may catch the profile of your face better. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch. I.

\*\* They upset buckets and benches so that he might break his shins over them. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

ii. She was enjoined to buy one picture post-card and put it in the album, so that the customs-officials should not charge duty. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarlett*, I, Ch. I, 30.

An interesting instance of the alternate use of *should* and *might* after *that* is afforded by the following quotation:

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. Bible, John, III, 16—17.

II. After *lest* the ordinary auxiliary of the subjunctive is *should*, irrespective of the time-sphere; *may* and, in narrating past events, *might* being used as occasional variants.

i. They set a strong guard lest any one should escape. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

ii. \* Mend your speech a little, lest it may mar your fortune. SHAK., *Lear*, I, I, 97.

\* It was excessively comic, but he had better not follow her, lest he might cry too. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. VII, 158.

In passing it may be observed that clauses introduced by *lest* not unfrequently express an adverbial relation of cause (reason, or ground) rather than purpose. It has then approximately the value of *it is* (or *was*) *feared that*, or some variation of this phrase. In this case there may be some predilection for *might* (or *may*).



He would have been afraid to offer more (sc. than two pounds), lest he should offend the latter's delicacy. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 38.

He carried a brown-paper parcel, which he tried to cover with his trencher, lest curious eyes might be about. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 16. T.

They (sc. the Germans) are anxious to be rid of him (sc. the British Tommy) lest worse befall. *Westm. Gaz.*, 10, I, 1925, 323 b.

III. What has been observed about *lest* also applies to the more usual *for fear (that)*, which also may imply a relation of cause (reason or ground) rather than purpose.

i.\* Let us leave the house this instant for fear he should ask farther questions. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man*, IV.

\*\* Let us hide the brandy, for fear he may drink it all up. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2310.

\*\*\* We put the milk on the shelf, for fear the cat might get at it. *ib.*, § 117.

ii. She sent me after you for fear you should offend Mr. Pendennis. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 376.

He rushed headlong under his bed again for fear they should change their minds. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VI, 124—5.

IV. In SHAKESPEARE, and occasionally in Present English, *shall* is sometimes met with after (so) *that*, apparently in the same function as *may*. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 608, d.

That thou shalt see the difference of our spirits, | I promise thee thy life before thou ask it. *Merch.*, IV, I, 368. (See also *Mids.*, III, I, 126; *Much ado*, I, I, 396; *Merry Wives*, IV, 2, 53.)

And hury caterpillars hasten, | That no time shall be lost. CHRIST. GEORG. ROSSETTI, *Summer*.

Take the dish off the table, darling, so that he shall not see we have had strawberries, for they are his favourite fruit. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. II, 46.

Less common is the use of *shall* after *lest*, as in:

But reason with the fellow, | Before you punish him, where he heard this, | Lest you shall chance to whip your information | And beat the messenger who bids beware | Of what is to be dreaded. SHAK., *Cor.*, IV, 6, 52.

Also *will* and *would* as tense-auxiliaries are occasionally found after *lest* and *for fear (that)*.

It were not good she knew his love, lest she'll make sport of it. SHAK., *Much ado*, III, I, 58. (The Folios have: *lest she make*)

I told her to hush, and not stir, for fear she would wake him. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, V, 24 b.

VI. In clauses introduced by (so) *that*, or any of their variants, *may* often implies a potential capability; i. e. it often has the value of *may be able to*.

Awake your senses that you may the better judge. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 17. Let the dog loose that he may have a run. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2310.

Compare: She always leaves one (sc. riding-habit) here, in order that she may be able to ride when she comes. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 128.

Instead of *may* tinged with this meaning we also find *can*, especially after *so that*, when the clause admits of being understood as one of result or consequence.

"I hate grammar. What's the use of it?" — "To teach you to write and speak correctly, so that you can be understood. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXXIV, 179. Let me have a copy of their Statutes, so that I can examine them before I give my final decision. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 214, 138a.

VII. On the strength of a notion of purpose being implied *may* (or *might*) may be used in:

α) subordinate statements: The reason for this doubling of the consonant is that the quantity or length of the preceding vowel may be preserved. MAS., Eng. Gram., 22.

β) adverbial clauses of consequence: The principle to be kept in view should be to divide words so that the syllabic division may, as far as possible, coincide with the etymological division. *ib.*, 11, Note.

γ) adverbial clauses of place: Elaine . . | Guarded the sacred shield of Lancelot; | Which first she placed where morning's earliest ray | Might strike it. TEN., Lanc. & El., 6.

### The Subjunctive or Conditional in Adverbial Clauses of Condition.

37. a) Literary English rather frequently has the inflectional subjunctive in conditional or hypothetical clauses. In the majority of cases it appears to be used:

1) to express doubt or diffidence on the part of the speaker or writer as to the action or state being in accordance with fact. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2272.

If further evidence be required, which I do not think likely, I can add that I have been a gentleman connected with the press. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, I, 15. T.

An action or state is sometimes represented as doubtful from motives of modesty; thus in:

If the books I have written be of any worth, they will supply the rest. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LXI, 421.

2) to express doubt or diffidence on the part of the speaker or writer as to the future action or state coming into fulfilment.

If it assume my noble father's person, | I'll speak to it, though hell itself should gape | And bid me hold my peace. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 244.

3) to express that the fulfilment of the condition is necessary for the action or state in the apodosis becoming matter of fact, *if* having the value of *provided*, Dutch *mits*.

Ordinary verse may pass muster if its manner be finished, but comic verse must have some matter as well. TOM HOOD, *Versification*, 54.

4) to express the fact that a case is assumed for argument or is put in a general way.

If England be the heart of international and cosmopolitan finance and London be the heart of England, the City is the heart of London. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 105.

If a straight line be bisected etc. MANSFORD, *School Euclid*, 95.

Note α) In not a few cases the subjunctive appears to be used for no other purpose than that of imparting a dignified tinge to the language (4, c) or satisfying the requirements of the metre. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., §§ 2272 and 2275.

O Lancelot, get thee hence to thine own land, | For if thou tarry we shall meet again. TEN., *Guin.*, 89.

β) The subjunctive is regularly used in the phrase *if need be*, in which *be* is, perhaps, dimly felt as an infinitive, i. e. *if need be* is vaguely felt as a variant of *if it need be* (Ch. I, 37). See also O. E. D., s. v. *need*, 3; and compare Ch. LV, 9, c.

My heart must break too, if need be. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XXVII.

b) One or other of the above notions underlies the use of the subjunctive after other prepositions than *if*, in:

i. An he take the least alarm in that quarter, we are but lost men. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 27. T.

ii. But in this tournament can no man tilt, | Except the lady he loves best be there. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 481.

iii. Make what noise you will with your tongues, so it be not treason. id., *Queen Mary*, II, I, (601 a).

iv. I take any part you choose to give me, so as it be comic. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIV, 137.

i. It is something to look upon enjoyment, so that it be free and wild in the face of nature, though it is but the enjoyment of an idiot. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXV, 95b.

vi. They will not do it, unless he bid them. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2272.

Thus also after certain conjunctive phrases, as in:

i. You have (my promise); but on condition that there pass no words between you and Audley that can end but in strife. LYTON, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. XIV, 433.

ii. The Squire might as well keep me still in the entail after Frank — supposing Frank die childless. ib., II, XII, Ch. XII, 422.

c) In the case of the time-sphere being the past, the preterite subjunctive takes the place of the present, but its employment is more limited than the latter, *were* being apt to raise a notion of rejected condition and suggesting an apodosis with a conditional. SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2276) even goes so far as to say “the sequence of tenses in *if he were here, I did not see him* makes nonsense”. This may apply to this particular sentence, but it must certainly not be inferred from SWEET’s statement that the preterite subjunctive is particularly rare in conditional clauses of open condition. Of the numerous instances that have come to hand, space permits us to give only a few.

i. Our folly, if it were folly, was expiated by the foolish Emperor at Sedan. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch I, 4.

ii. The guard (assured) the passengers that they should have seats in a heavy coach which would pass that spot in less than half an hour, providing it were not full. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. I, 21.

iii. With rare delicacy, he (sc. Clive) refused to take this token of gratitude, unless a similar compliment were paid to his friend and commander, Lawrence. MAC, *Clive*, (510 a).

What a set they were, .. not a sportsman amongst the lot, unless it were George. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch VII, 204.

Note a) Instead of *if need were*, we sometimes find *if need be*, apparently owing to the fact that the grammatical construction of the phrase is more or less obscure (37, a, Note β).

i. Lord Kitchener went to Paris, prepared, if need were, to relieve Lord French of his command. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8103, 9*a*.

ii. What happened to her own heart did not matter, so long as he was happy and had all that he wanted with her and away from her — if need be — always away from her. *GALSW., Beyond*, IV, Ch. IX, 411.

Emily knew but one article of religion, and that bade her preserve, if need be, at the cost of life, the purity of her soul. *GISSING, A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XI, 172.

β) The use of the preterite subjunctive strikes us as inappropriate when the apodosis has the predicate in the present, as in:

"He seemed vexed. Do you think he disliked her seeing him at our house?" — "No, no; it must be something else if he were really vexed." *G. ELIOT, Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIII, 322.

38. Obs. I. In the higher literary style periphrasis with *shall* sometimes takes the place of the inflectional subjunctive in clauses of open condition, naturally only when the reference is to a future action or state. See *O. E. D.*, s.v. *shall*, 10, *a*.

The author will indeed be glad if the book shall contribute in any degree to the solution of the many problems of statecraft that must be settled satisfactorily, before there can be assurance that never again shall humanity be subjected to such an ordeal as it will have passed through during the terrible years of this war. *RALEIGH C. MINOR, A Republic of Nations*, Pref. Therefore, mind you, Sir Schoolmaster, unless you shall promise me never to hint word of what passed between us two, and that neither you or yours shall carry tales of my godson, .. look to it, if I do not [etc.] *KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 13*b*.

*Should*, of course, takes the place of *shall*, when the time-sphere is the past. It is not confined to the higher literary style, but it is not clearly distinguished from the conditional *should* in hypothetical clauses of rejected condition (40).

They plighted their faith, and they vow'd to wed, | If Gilbert should e'er be free. *The English Merch. & the Saracen Lady*, V.

II. The indicative present is, however, used practically throughout in ordinary Spoken English, also when the reference is to a future action or state. See especially *BRADLEY, The Making of English*, Ch. II, 53; and *FOWLER, the King's English*, 155. Both writers are practically in accord in predicting the extinction of the subjunctive in conditional clauses in another generation (4, *c*).

i. If he does it, he will be punished. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *if*, *α*, *β*.

ii. Provided that all is safe, you may depart. *BAIN., H. E. Gr.*, 113.

iii. Something must be fixed on. No matter what, so that something is chosen. *JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIV, 137.

iv. When I leave my dear home, .. it will be never to come back, unless he brings me back a lady. *DICK., Cop*, Ch. XXXI, 224*b*.

III. The tense-auxiliaries *will* and *would* are used if the conditional clause is, in its turn, felt to be the head-clause of another conditional clause, which, as it is implied in the context, is not expressed (Ch. L, 81, Obs. II).

I'll come down to your office after one o'clock, if it will suit you. *G. ELIOT, Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. II, 53. (sc. if I come down etc.)

And you'll go to Freeman Founders to dine with him, won't you?" — Yes, if it will please you." *SHAW., Candida*, I, (138). T.

I should like to try farming, Dad; if it won't cost too much. GALSW., To let, I, Ch. III, (826).

In dialects, especially Scotch and Irish English, *will* (*would*) is also used in other cases (Ch. L, 23).

If you will be ready about eleven, I will show you the gardens. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XXXV, 328.

IV. On the strength of the uncertain fulfilment of a condition being implied, modal *shall* may be met with in adnominal clauses "the antecedent denoting an as yet undetermined person or thing." O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 10, b. Compare also Ch. I, 25, b.

Speak harshly to no soul you may meet, and stand by the word you shall speak. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, II, II, 112.

How heavy their punishment will be who shall at any time resist! BAIN, H. E. Gr., 173.

39. a) The inflectional conditional is used, also in the ordinary language of the educated,

1) in hypothetical clauses expressing a supposition contrary to some fact known to the speaker or writer, the time-sphere of the suppositional action or state being α) the present, in which case the preterite is used, or β) the past in which case the pluperfect is used.

i. If he were present (which he is not), I would speak to him. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 431.

Suppose that I were an eminent author, whose works were read and known, wherever the English language goes. Should I enjoy what Emerson calls the saucy homage of parody? Westm. Gaz., No. 8057, 6 a.

ii. If we had missed the train, it would have been very awkward. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2283.

Note. The pluperfect is also occasionally used with regard to a rejected hypothesis of the time of speaking. See JESPERSEN, Tid og Temp., 389.

If I had now had my purse about me, I should have paid you.

2) in hypothetical clauses expressing a supposition regarding the future which is made merely for the sake of argument.

If this treaty came into force, it would mean a fresh catastrophe for the whole world. Westm. Gaz., No. 8092, 1 a.

b) In these clauses the tense is independent of the time-sphere of the utterance.

I have told her that,	{	if I knew his address, I would write to him.
I told her that,		if our horse had not fallen, we should not
I shall tell her that,		have missed the train.
	{	if he were rewarded, he would be encouraged
		to persevere.

40. Obs. I. In the second kind of hypothetical clauses of rejected condition, i. e. those which express a supposition regarding the future, made merely for the sake of argument, we often find a periphrastic conditional with either *should* or *were to*. Grammarians are not agreed about the delicate shades of meaning connoted by the periphrases

with these auxiliaries and the inflectional conditional. This will be brought home to the student if he takes the trouble of reading the comments on the different constructions by SWEET, (N. E. Gr., § 2291, 2299), LLOYD (Northern English, 57), MURRAY (O. E. D., s.v. *be*, 18), ARONSTEIN (*Shall und will zum ausdrücke der idealität im Englischen, Anglia*, XLI, I, 378—9).

After due consideration of a large number of quotations bearing on the subject, the present writer thinks that he is justified in saying that:

*should* mostly implies that the contingency is one whose fulfilment is thought improbable, and mostly undesirable, a notion which in Dutch is expressed by *mocht(en)*. This view accords, in the main, with that of BRADLEY (O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 21), who observes that *should* is used in hypothetical clauses, "when the supposition, though entertained as possible, is viewed as less welcome than some alternative"; *were to* mostly implies that the supposition is regarded as the merest fancy, sometimes with the secondary notion that its fulfilment would be viewed with some considerable surprise and would cause some annoyance or dismay. This notion is often expressed in Dutch by *zou(den)*. BRADLEY (s.v. *shall*, 20) observes that the use of *should* with this connotation is "now somewhat rare";

the inflectional conditional is devoid of either the above connotations. It should further be observed  $\alpha$ ) that hypothetical clauses with *should* are only exceptionally found connected with a consequent sentence with a (periphrastic) conditional (13), the predicate in the latter being mostly an indicative or imperative or one with *may* or some such verb;  $\beta$ ) that hypothetical clauses with *were to*, on the other hand, are mostly connected with a consequent sentence with a (periphrastic) conditional, the predicate in the latter being only exceptionally an indicative or imperative.

A few examples must suffice to substantiate the above statements.

*should*: i. I would not believe it, unless I should see it. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 434.

ii. He apparently thought it as well to say nothing in case he should get the worst of it. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXVII, 344.

If the evil should rise again, as the prophets of gloom say it will, then it will have to be put down again. Westm. Gaz., No. 8086, 9a.

iii. If he should come while I am out, ask him to wait. SWEET, Spoken Eng., 39.

Should her appearance be inquired after, let it be said that she had reddish blond hair. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, IV, Ch. XXVIII, 68.

iv. If, perchance, some dubious memorial of them (sc. the Indians) should survive, it may be in the romantic dreams of the poet to people in imagination his glades and groves. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk, XXVIII, 289.

*were to*: i. Were he to do such a thing in England, he would be hanged. BAIN., H. E. Gr., 175.

Were he to disclose the secret, the discovery would but bring greater grief upon those he loved best in the world. THACK., Henry Es m., II, Ch. I, 153. It is now proved to demonstration that even if the House of Commons were to sit all the year round, business would be just as liable to deadlocks as at present. Graph.

ii. If it were to rain, I don't know what we shall do. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 300.

My health was, after all, my only capital, and, if that were to fail me permanently, what was to become of us — of you? DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. X, 11.

II. Sometimes there is an unjustifiable discrepancy between the forms used in the different members of a conditional sentence.

If aught happen to my dear boy, I would adopt Hereward for my son. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. II, 23a. (Change *happen* into *happened*, or *would* into *will*.)

Surely if they had been zealous to pluck a brand from the burning, here was a noble opportunity. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 42. (Change *was* into *would have been*.)

If ever poet were a master of phrasing, he (sc. Tennyson) was so. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on Ten's In Mem.*, Ch. VI, 75. (Change *were* into *was*.)

Sometimes the discrepancy is only on the surface, i. e.:

a) the real apodosis of the hypothetical clause is a sentence which, on account of its vagueness, is understood, as in:

He's safe enough, sir, an he were but as sound. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 1, (267). (With the ellipsis filled up, the sentence might run: He's safe enough, sir, and I should not be uneasy about him, an he were but as sound.)

β) the natural sequence is interrupted by an intercalary clause or phrase.

An' you were to go to Clod-Hall, I am certain, the old lady wouldn't know you. SHER., *Riv.*, III. 4. (= .. the old lady would certainly not know you.)

If you should happen, by any unlikely chance, to know a man more blest in a laugh than Scrooge's nephew, all I can say is I should like to know him too. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III. (= .. I should like to know him too, that's all I can say.)

If he knew it, I do not know what he would do. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2280. (= .. he would do I do not know what.)

Had he lived twenty years longer, it is probable that the seven provinces would have been seventeen. MOTLEY, *Rise*, IV, Ch. VII, 898a.

III. In Standard English the modal auxiliary *would* is used in a hypothetical clause only when it is to be understood as the head-clause of another hypothetical clause, which, as it is implied in the context, is not expressed (38, Obs. III).

I should not take this medicine, if it would upset you (sc. if you took it).

To-morrow afternoon perhaps — about three o'clock, if that would suit her. HUGH WALPOLE, *Captives*, I, Ch. III, 46.

This *would* should not be confounded with *would* as the preterite conditional of *will* expressing volition, as in:

It would be valuable if he would somewhat expand his ideas regarding local defence by Volunteers. *Times*.

IV. Dutch students are cautioned against using *might* as a modal auxiliary in hypothetical clauses. *Might* is, indeed, common enough in these clauses, but in a totally different function from *should*.

All debts are cleared between you and I, if I might but see you at my death. SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 2, 323.

Now, Brutus, thank yourself: This tongue had not offended so to-day, | If Cassius might have ruled. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, V, 1, 47.

In the following quotation, however, *might* may have the same function as *should*:

H. POUTSMA, III 1.

She . . . said that she would die a maid; — | Yet, might the bloody feud be stay'd, | Henry of Cranstoun, and only he, | Margaret of Branksome's choice should be. SCOTT, *Lay*, II, XXIX.

V. Hypothetical clauses of rejected condition not unfrequently stand by themselves; i. e. their apodosis is not expressed as not clearly present to the speaker's mind. Thus especially such as are introduced by *suppose*.

i. Suppose Mirah knew how you are behaving. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, IV, Ch. XLVII, 54.

ii. Suppose it (sc. the pudding) should not be done enough! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 71.

iii. Suppose I were to try it. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.

✓ Also such as open with *if* and have the value of optative sentences denoting an idle wish (10, Obs. I) are common enough.

If I had only been there! ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 42, 5.

VI. *Should* is often met with in subordinate statements and adnominal clauses which imply a rejected condition. It deserves attention that in these connexions its connotation is rather that of *were to* than *should* as used in conditional clauses.

I can hardly imagine anything more unfortunate than that he should become attached to either of your sisters. MISS YONGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. VII, 117.

I was prepared to shed the blood of anybody who should aspire to her affections. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 73*b*.

*Should* has the same connotation in:

Help was promised where it should become necessary. *Manch. Guard*, VIII, 22, 434*d*.

#### The Subjunctive or Conditional in Adverbial Clauses of Concession.

41. With regard to modal possibilities adverbial clauses of concession may be divided into:

*a*) such as are introduced by (*al*)*though*, or a synonymous conjunctive, or such as open with no conjunctive, but have inverted word-order and are equivalent to clauses opening with (*al*)*though*.

*b*) such as open with a compound of (*so*)*ever*, or are like these in import, and either open with *though* and contain an adverb modified by (*n*)*ever*, or with the material part of the predicate followed by *though* or *as*.

*c*) such as express an alternative hypothesis.

42. *a*) In concessive clauses of the first description the subjunctive is frequent when the clause describes an action or state of the future. According to MASON (*Eng. Gram.*, § 435) "a concessive clause relating to the future should always have the subjunctive". I'll beat 'em, *though* it cost me a thousand guineas. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 71.

I will pluck it from my bosom, *tho'* my heart be at the root. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 66.



b) In concessive clauses relating to the present the subjunctive is only legitimate and common, if they express a general truth (Ch. L, 2, e); the subjunctive being, in a manner, a symbol of the vagueness which attaches to the case. Thus especially in proverbs, such as *Though the sore be healed, yet a scar may remain. A diamond is valuable, though it lie on a dung-hill.*

c) Some, especially older writers, affect the use of the subjunctive also in concessive clauses describing a special case of the present.

*Though yet of Hamlet, our dear brother's death | The memory be green [etc.].* SHAK., Hamlet, I, 2, 2.

How he became so rich is almost a puzzle; for though the farm be his own, it is not large. MISS MITFORD, Our Village, Ch. III, 29.

d) The preterite subjunctive, used in narrating past events, is distinctly uncommon.

Charming also (was) Mr. Coffin, though he were a little proud and stately. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. IV, 32 b.

43. Obs. I. A frequent variant of the inflectional subjunctive in concessive clauses with *though* is a periphrasis with *may (might)*. In this function *may* has the same meaning as it has in such sentences or clauses as *The train may be late, as the train may be late, so that the train may be late*, etc

Tho' men may bicker with the things they love, | They would not make them laughable in all eyes. TEN., Ger. & En., 325.

Thus also frequently in the first of two sentences in arrestive adversative relation (Ch. XI, 6).

I may not be a brilliant woman, but I am endowed with common sense. W. J. LOCKE, Stella Maris, Ch. III, 31.

II. In Older English *shall* is sometimes used in apparently the same function.

But Peter said unto him, | Although all shall be offended, yet will not I. Bible, Mark, XIV, 29.

III. In ordinary language the indicative present or preterite is the usual form in these concessive clauses, inclusively of those mentioned under a) and b).

I suppose if one lives to be a hundred, there are certain passages of one's early life whereof the recollection will always carry us back to youth again. THACK., PEND, I, Ch. VII, 85.

44. a) The inflectional conditional is used in an analogous way as in hypothetical clauses of rejected condition (39):

1) to represent a concession as contrary to the facts known to the speaker.

Even though (or if) he were present, I would not change my mind.

Even though (or if) I had known his address, I would not have written to him.

2) to represent a concession as a supposition regarding the future made merely for the sake of argument.

"Go!" she cried .. "if it were my last word, I say go!" MAX PEMB., DOCL. Xav., Ch. XX, 112 b.

b) Also in these clauses the tense is independent of the time-sphere of the utterance (39, b). Thus in the following quotation a change of *didn't* into *doesn't* or *won't* would leave *were* unaffected.

Martha didn't like to see him disappointed, if it were only in joke. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III.

45. Obs. I. Periphrastic conditionals with either *should* or *were to* are often used as substitutes for the inflectional in concessive clauses referred to under 44, a), 2). The auxiliaries may sometimes convey the same secondary notions as they do in hypothetical clauses of rejected condition, but the distinction is certainly not rigidly observed, seeing we sometimes find them used indifferently in practically identical cases. The following two quotations afford a striking illustration:

i. There was something childlike in her face; and there will be, I think, till she dies, though she should live a hundred years. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. I, 17.

ii. Never could I forget the change that came upon it (sc. his face) when he saw us, if I were to live five hundred years. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXI, 224 b.

II. As in the case of hypothetical clauses of rejected condition (40, Obs. II), there is sometimes a discrepancy between the moods in the two members of a concessive sentence, which may be unjustifiable, as in the first of the following quotations:

"A friendly eye could never see such faults". — "A flatterer's would not, though they do appear | As huge as high Olympus". SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 3, 91.

And I, were she the daughter of a King, | Yea tho' she were a beggar from the hedge, | Will clothe her for her bridals like the sun. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 229—231.

Though he were Admiral Hawke, he shall pay his score. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, 69.

III. In Standard English the modal auxiliary *would* is used only in a concessive clause, if it is felt as the head-sentence of a conditional clause expressed or understood (40, Obs. III).

Faith, she's quite the queen of the dictionary, for the devil a word dare refuse coming at her call — though one would think it was quite out of hearing. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 2, (237). (may be supplemented thus: if one were called upon to give one's opinion.)

46. Concessive clauses containing a compound of (*so*)*ever*, or such as are identical with these in import, often imply uncertainty of the speaker as to the nature or attendant circumstances of an action or state of either the present or the future. In literary English they, consequently, frequently have the subjunctive.

i. However it be, it seems to me, | 'Tis only noble to be good. TEN., *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, VII.

It would be cheap to me whatever it cost. DICK., *Crick.*, I.

II. Though a coat be ever so fine that a fool wears, 'tis but a fool's coat. *Prov.*

iii. You are in your sphere in this village, humble though it be. LYTTON.

47. Obs. I. In these clauses we often meet with *may* (*might*) in a meaning not appreciably differing from that of *may* in concessive clauses introduced by (*al*)*though* (43, Obs. I).

"He's a scoundrel!" exclaimed Tom, "whoever he may be". DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 250 b.

Incredible as it may seem, there is no provision for the teaching of phonetics. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2307.

II. *May (might)* is also common in the second member of concessive complexes that open with a subjunctive (12, Obs. II).

Come what come may, time and the hour run through the roughest day. SHAK., Mac b., I, 3, 146.

He determined that come what might, he would develop the state of his feelings without further delay. DICK., Pickw., Ch. V, 93.

Look around her as she might, she could not turn back. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, IV, Ch. XXIX, 76.

*Will (would)* occurs as a frequent variant of *may (might)*.

Say what I will to the contrary, he tells the story everywhere. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 55.

Do as he might, and ride where he would, the fairy princess whom he was to rescue and win had not yet appeared to honest Pen. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 40.

III. Older English, and occasionally Present English, sometimes has *shall (should)* in a similar function as *may (might)* in concessive clauses containing a compound of *(so)ever*.

And whatsoever else shall hap to-night, | Give it an understanding, but no tongue. SHAK., Ham l., I, 1, 248.

However severe it (sc. the winter) should be, there was always the spring-time following. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXII, 183.

Thus also in substantival clauses opening with *soever* (Ch. I, 25, c).

Whatsoever you shall command, I shall perform. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XII, 107 b.

48. a) Also in clauses of disjunctive concession or alternative hypothesis (Ch. XVII, 97 ff) the inflectional subjunctive is fairly common.

i. Whether he succeed or fail, it will not matter to me. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 587.

ii. Whether she were right or wrong, what is it to me? KINGSLEY, Alton Locke, Ch. I, 4.

b) In clauses of this kind with inverted word-order, no conjunction being used, the subjunctive is obligatory (4, b, and 12, Obs. III). See also Ch. XVII, 99.

Be it scroll or be it book, | Into it, knight, thou must not look. SCOTT, Lay, I, XXIII.

49. Obs. I. In the case of the hypothesis concerning the future, periphrasis with *shall* is sometimes used in the higher literary style.

But whether the extensive changes which I have recommended shall be thought desirable or not, I trust that we shall reject the Bill of the noble lord. MACAULAY.

II. Ordinary English has the indicative present also when the reference is to a future action or state.

Whether he succeeds or fails, I will stand by him.

The following quotation is a remarkable instance of divided practice, containing as it does an indicative, an inflectional subjunctive and a periphrastic subjunctive in succession, all of them in the same function:

The fundamental principles of an international government would be much the same whether Russia constitutes one great nation or many small independent states; whether or not there be a shift of population from the control of

one state to that of another; whether or not forms of government shall have changed from monarchy to republic. RALEIGH C. MINOR, *A Republic of Nations*, Pref.

### The Conditional in Clauses of Hypothetical Similarity.

50. The inflectional conditional is the rule, also in ordinary Standard English, in clauses of hypothetical similarity. As has been stated in Ch. XVII, 109—111, these clauses are now normally introduced by *as if* or *as though*, the conjunction *as* being also used in the same function in Older English and, archaically, in Present English.

a) The tense is the preterite or the pluperfect, according as the suppositional action belongs to the present or the past time-sphere.

i. I treat her as tenderly as if she were my daughter. FOWLER, *The King's Eng.*, 156.

ii. So far from intending you any wrong, I have always loved you as well as if you had been my own mother. FIELD., *Jos. And.*, I, Ch. VI, 13.

You look as if you had been frightened. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 65, c.

b) In these clauses the tense is independent of the time-sphere of the utterance (39, b; 44, b).

51. Obs. I. By the side of *as it were*, in which the use of *as* has become a fixed idiom, we occasionally meet with *as if it were*.

Heaven places in his soul, as if it were, a compass, a needle that always points to one end — viz. to honour in that which those around him consider honourable. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. II, 58.

II In like manner as in the phrase *as it were* the indicative *was* is never substituted for the conditional *were*, the latter would not bear replacing by the former in a clause of hypothetic similarity with inverted word-order introduced by *as*.

A man lived who could measure it (sc. love) from end to end; foretell its term; handle the young cherub, as were he a shot owl. MERED., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIV, 176.

III. If what is expressed by the clause is intended to indicate an actual fact, the present or preterite indicative is used according to the time-sphere of the utterance. See FOWLER, *the King's English*, 157; KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 200—1.

i. We will not appear like fools in this matter, and as if we have no authority over our own daughter. RICHARDSON. (Underlying notion: We have authority over our own daughter.)

ii. She looked as if she was not attending to the conversation. Mrs. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. X, 60. (Underlying notion: It was evident from the way she looked that she was not attending to the conversation.)

He wanted me to cut off my hair. The old story about its sapping up my strength. As if it wasn't my hair that keeps me alive. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XIV, 175.

## Final Observations.

52. It should be remembered that *be* as a finite verb is used not only as a subjunctive, but also as an indicative.

a) As a singular the indicative *be* is now confined to dialects especially such as are spoken in the Southern and in some Midland counties. O. E. D., s.v. *be*, page 716, *a*.

You be no longer a babe and suckling. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXIII, 262.

What! be thee parson Davis' son? HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 80.

Also *were* occurs, vulgarly, as an indicative.

Whatever servant David were thinking about when he made a Psalm ... I can't fathom. HARDY, *May. of Cast.*, Ch. XXXIII, 281.

He were quite upset. *ib.*

b) As a plural the indicative *be* seems at all times to have been more common. In Present English it survives chiefly as an archaism or a vulgarism. O. E. D., s.v. *be*, page 716 *a*.

Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. Bible, Kings, 13, VI, 16.

For such there be, but unbelief is blind. MILTON, *Comus*, 519.

Oh, naughty little Mahomet! in what Turkish paradise are you now, and where be your hours? THACK., *Four Georges*, II, 55.

There be times and seasons. Proverb. (Thus frequently.)

Note the regular use of *be* in the combination *the powers that be*, as in:

The shops in Pretoria are still kept open by order of the powers that be. Times.

53. SHAKESPEARE has a good many instances of *be* instead of *is* after *to think* and one after *to hope*; but, as he is anything but strict in the use of the subjunctive and indicative, we have no certainty that in these places we have to deal with an intentional subjunctive. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, §§ 771, 640; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 299; and A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex.*, s.v. *be*, 2.

I think it be no other but even so. Hamlet, I, I, 108.

I hope he be in love. Much ado, III, 2, 15.

The following is a typical instance of Shakespearean irregularity:

By the world, | I think my wife be honest and think she is not. Oth., III, 3, 384.

SCOTT has *be* as a possible subjunctive after *to think* in:

I think my daughter Catharine be an exception. Fair Maid, Ch. XXIX, 298.

54. The use of an inflectional or periphrastic subjunctive or conditional in a given sentence or clause may entail the use of the same mood in a clause depending on them. See ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 368.

i. If it be proved against an alien | That by direct or indirect attempts, | He seek the life of any citizen [etc]. SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, I, 343.

ii. If you were convinced that Julia were well, you would be entirely content?  
SHER., Riv., II, 1, (226).

If I thought, there were anything between Molly and Mc Lever, d'you suppose I'd have him in the house? GALSW., Joy, II, (132). T.

### The Imperative Mood.

55. The applications of the imperative are, in the main, the same in English as they are in Dutch. It is not, however, so freely used to express a hope or a wish, as it is in Dutch. Thus, although we may hear every day such a sentence as *Enjoy yourself!*, it would be unEnglish to say *Sleep well! Live happy!* (or *happily!*)

In literary English the use of the imperative in this particular function appears to be more common.

Enjoy the honey-heavy dew of slumber: | Thou hast no figures nor no fantasies, | Which busy care draws in the brains of men. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 230.  
"Good friend," said Hall, and sighed the while, | "Farewell! and happy be!" CHARLES MACKAY, The Miller of the Dee, IV.

Be prosperous in this journey, as in all, | And may you light on all things that you love, | And live to wed with her whom first you love. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 225—227.

56. The last quotation contains *may* as an auxiliary to denote the above shade of meaning of the imperative. In the following there is a construction with *shall* side by side with an imperative indicating a command:

You, Capulet, shall go along with me: | And Montague, come you this afternoon, | To know our further pleasure in this case. SHAK., Rom. & Jul., I, 1, 106—8.

57. a) The imperative, from the nature of its meaning, is used only in the present tense. When the imperative *let* is found in a description of past events, it is, for all that, a present, standing as it does, in a direct quotation depending on a sentence which has to be supplied.

I had been unusually restless, cross and exacting during the day, and my old nurse — Heaven reward her! — was serving me for love, not for money. Why should I disturb her? Let me begin to learn to help myself like others in my wretched plight. CONWAY, Called back, Ch. I, 8. (Supply some such sentence as *I was saying* (or *thinking*) *to myself*.)

b) *Have done!* now obsolete, but surviving in some dialects (e. g. that of Warwickshire), appears to be the only instance of a perfect imperative.

Have done, for more I hardly can endure. SHAK., Henry VI, B. I, 4, 41.

58. When the pronoun is added to the imperative, this is now mostly done for emphasis, i. e. to indicate the fact that what is expressed by the predicate is intended for the person(s) spoken to in particular. The pronoun is placed either after or before the verb.

Post-position, often occasioning the use of *to do*, is frequent when a contrast of persons is intended, a notion which, however, may also underlie the sentence if the pronoun precedes the imperative: see the last of the following quotations. Negative imperatives often imply annoyance at the contemplated performance or repetition of an action, a notion which may, however, also cling to affirmative imperatives in which the performance or repetition of an action is emphatically deprecated or forbidden.

i. \*Barnaby, take you that other candle, and go before! DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XII, 50*a*.

\*I think I'd better get out (sc. of the boat) and give her a bit of a tow," he said. "Take you hold of the tiller!" BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. VII, 70.

\*\*Lucy, do you watch! SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2.

Do you give me a minute's calm attention without looking at Rick! DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXIV, 208.

ii. Don't you go and tell him the secret! ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 156. Don't you hit that boy again!

Never you dare to darken my doorstep again! DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 60.

iii. You let that dog alone! SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1806.

You take my advice: give him a pint of old ale before you start! JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

Oh! you leave that to me. Don't you, any of you, worry yourselves about that. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 24.

59. Obs. I. In older English the ordinary place of the pronoun seems to have been after the verb, and this word-order is still regularly observed in the phrases *look you*, *mark you*, *mind you* and, perhaps, a few others. Here the addition of the pronoun is not, mostly, intended to mark emphasis, but rather to soften down the imperiousness of the imperative; thus also in:

Go and do thou likewise! Bible, Luke, X, 37.

Vex not thou the poet's mind | With thy shallow wit! TEN., *The Poet's Mind*.

II. A proper name is sometimes placed in an imperative sentence to do away with the indistinctness attaching to the pronoun.

Harris said: "Now the first thing to settle is what to take with us. Now you get a bit of paper and write down, J., and you get the grocery catalogue, George". JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 24.

Sometimes the pronoun is left out, the duty of indicating the person(s) to whom the command, etc. is addressed being left to the proper name. I said: "No; you get the paper and the pencil and the catalogue, and George write down, and I'll do the work." *ib.*, Ch. III, 28.

It will be observed that in this case there is only a difference of stress between an imperative and a hortative sentence (6, *a*, 2, Note). They are still more indistinguishable when *somebody*, or a word of like import, takes the place of the proper name.

Somebody give me a bit of pencil, and then I'll make out a list. *ib.*, Ch. III, 24.

60. Imperative sentences, either without or with the subject expressed, are largely used as substitutes for:

a) conditional clauses (Ch. XVII, 78, *c*).

i. Give John an inch, and he was sure to take several ells. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIV, 311*a*.

ii. Find you the heart to go, I'll find the means. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. IX, 48. Note a) The imperative *bar* may assume the function of a preposition. Bar Milner's speech, there has scarcely been a word about our policy in the whole of the debate. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5173, 5a.

Also *except* may be understood as an imperative that has assumed the function of a preposition. Primarily the word is, however, a contracted form of *excepted*. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 61, c, 4, iii. β) *Say* and *suppose* sometimes do duty as conjunctions (40, Obs. V). For illustration see below, 61; and Ch. XVII, 72.

b) concessive clauses (Ch. XVII, 95, b).

i. You couldn't get a place, come ever so early. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXV, 285.

ii. Well, she's asleep, now; and have you a hundred gallants, neither they nor you can insult her any more. HARDY, *Return*, V, Ch. III, 409.

## 61. Some idiomatic imperatives deserve special mention.

a) Catch me! (or Catch me at it!) O. E. D., s.v. *catch* 40. (= You won't catch me doing it. JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 29.)

b) Fancy finding you in the train! *Punch*.

c) 1) Look, where he has not turned his colour and has tears in's eyes. SHAK., *Hamlet*, II, 2, 542.

Look, here he comes. LONGF., *Spann. Stud.*, II, VI.

Look here, if A broke B's head, then A's girl was a pretty girl; but if B broke A's head, then A's girl was not a pretty girl, but B's girl was. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 80. T.

2) Look ye, said I, I must not rashly give my judgment. STEELE, *Tatler*, No. 34.

d) Say I should succeed at the Bar, is that fame which would satisfy my longings? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 380. (*Say* has the function of a conjunction.)

Early in the week, or say Wednesday, you might do what you know of, if you felt disposed to try it. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. LII, 494.

Suppose now that we have arrived at the pronunciation of our place-name as it was, say, a thousand years ago. HENRY BRADLEY, *Eng. Place-Names*, 10. (*Say* has the function of an adverb.)

The widow, sir, came with her money: nine hundred and four, ten, and six — Say 904 l. 10 s. 6 d. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 16. (Perhaps to be understood as short for *I say*.)

e) 1) If there be ... a quarrel in the market to-morrow, see if I do not —. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. V, 38, b. (= I certainly shall.)

2) See you, sir! ... I have changed my garb from that of a farrier to a serving-man. SCOTT, *Kenilw.*, Ch. XII, 151.

f) Mine a yellow face? Stop till you see Dobbin. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49 (= *Wait*, see below.)

g) Suppose she had danced, what then? SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1. (*Suppose* has the function of a conjunction.)

h) Take it altogether, now that we have been into most of the houses hereabouts, and can judge, there is not one we like better than this. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIII, 129.

Take such a play as 'the Woman in the Case', which is now in its 200th odd night. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 7a.

i) Talk of the Prince's bow! what was it to George's? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 120.

j) Think of Charley Mirabel, the old fool, marrying that flame of his; that Fotheringay! id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 302.

k) Wait till you see her in the sunlight! HORNING, *No Hero*, Ch. III, (= *Stop*, see above.)



# CHAPTER L.

---

## TENSE.

### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Tense as the Expression of the Time-sphere . . . . .	1— 11
Form of the Tenses in English . . . . .	12— 76
Formation of the Perfect Tenses . . . . .	13— 18
Formation of the Future Tenses . . . . .	19— 76
Historical Survey and Preliminary Observations . . . .	19— 27
<i>Shall (should) and will (would) in Non-reported Declara-</i> <i>tive Sentences and Clauses . . . . .</i>	28— 34
<i>Shall (should) and will (would) in Non-reported Questions</i>	35— 40
<i>Shall (should) and will (would) in Reported Statements</i>	41— 51
<i>Shall (should) and will (would) in Reported Questions</i>	52— 58
Shortenings . . . . .	59— 61
Peculiar Applications of <i>shall (should) and will (would)</i> in Elizabethan English . . . . .	62— 67
Further Expedients to express Futurity . . . . .	68— 76
Use of the Tenses . . . . .	77—148
The Present doing duty for the Future . . . . .	78— 88
The Present doing duty for the Perfect or the Preterite	89— 92
The Perfect compared with the Preterite . . . . .	93—118
The Perfect compared with the Present . . . . .	119— 134
The Pluperfect corresponding to the Perfect in the Second Function . . . . .	135—137
The Tenses of Completed Action compared with the Tenses of Incompleted Action . . . . .	138—148

---



## Tense as the Expression of the Time-sphere.

1. By tense we understand a particular form of a verb, or a verb-group, by means of which we show to what time-sphere an action or state is considered to belong. We distinguish three main time-spheres, viz: the present, the past and the future.
2. a) The present time-sphere may be defined to be that which includes the present moment, i. e. the moment of speaking or writing. From this definition it follows that it stands for an endless variety of durations, which, however, fall into two main groups, viz:

1) one whose centre is the time of speaking or writing; thus, for example, that of the action or state expressed by such sentences as *I have a pencil in my hand, I am tired.*

2) one which has not a particular centre; thus, for example, that of the action or state expressed by such sentences as *He gets up every morning at six o'clock. He has a robust constitution. The trains are heated in winter. This law applies only to aliens.*

b) The past time-sphere and the future time-sphere comprise, respectively, the time prior and subsequent to the present moment; thus that of the action denoted, respectively, by such sentences as *Last year we took possession of the house,* and *Next week we shall take possession of the house.*

c) Both in the past and the future time-sphere a further moment may be thought of as a dividing-point. Thus *The evening had fallen before we reached home,* and *Before the evening fell, we had reached home* make us think of a moment in the past as the dividing-point of two time-spheres in the past. Similarly *Before the evening has fallen, we shall reach home* and *Before we have reached home, the evening will fall* call forth to our minds a moment of the future as the dividing-point of two time-spheres in the future.

The time-spheres here referred to may, respectively, be called the anterior and posterior past and the anterior and posterior future.

d) There is nothing to prevent us from assuming an ulterior moment in the past, a point that is, which is anterior to that referred to before. The time-sphere preceding this dividing-point might be called the pre-anterior past. Thus in such a sentence as *He remembered that, before he had dropped the letter*

*into the box, he had thought of the way in which it might affect his future*, the action expressed by *had thought* is anterior to that denoted by *had dropped*, which in its turn is prior to that indicated by *remembered*. The difference of the time-spheres of the actions mentioned in the above sentence becomes quite clear when the whole is moved forward to the present moment as the point of time measured from: *He remembers that, before he dropped the letter in the box, he had thought of the way in which it might affect his future* (142, b).

Similarly we may assume an ulterior moment in the future and imagine a time-sphere succeeding this dividing-point, which we might call the post-posterior future. Thus in *When he comes he will be told everything before the other guests arrive* two successive dividing-points in the future are thought of besides the dividing-point separating the past from the future.

e) To the above we may add what may be called the neutral time-sphere, the action or state described not being confined to any particular time-sphere, but belonging to all; thus that of the action or state expressed by such sentences as *A cipher placed after an integer increases its value tenfold. Platinum is the heaviest metal. The sun rises in the east. The whale is a mammal.*

3. The dividing-point which separates the past from the future, i. e. the present moment in the strict sense of the word, may be called primary, the others respectively secondary and tertiary. A succession of events may be described with no other than the primary dividing-point being observed, i. e. without their order of succession being marked by different tenses; thus in *Towards evening it left off raining, and we took a walk*. Observing a secondary dividing-point the same succession of events would be described as follows: *Towards evening it had left off raining, and we look a walk* (139).
4. The ordinary form of the verb which is used in describing an action or state belonging to the present time-sphere is called the present (tense), that which is used in describing an action or state prior to the primary dividing-point is called the preterite (tense), while the verb-group which is used in describing an action or state subsequent to the primary dividing-point is called the future (tense). The word-groups which are employed in describing an action or state prior or subsequent to a secondary dividing-point either of the past or the future may be, respectively, called the ante-preterite, post-preterite, ante-future, and post-future (tenses).

The present tense is also used in describing an action or state which belongs to no particular time-sphere (2, e). This may be called the neutral present.

The present, preterite and future tenses may be called primary tenses, the others secondary tenses. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 279.

5. Obs. 1. When the predicate is attended by an adverbial adjunct or clause denoting a particular point or space of time, there is, strictly speaking, no need for a special tense-form to indicate the time-sphere to which the action or state belongs. Thus such adjuncts as *now*, *at the present moment*, etc., *yesterday*, *years ago*, *during the Thirty Years' War*, etc.; *to-morrow*, *next week*, *soon*, etc.; denote unequivocally that the action or state mentioned in the sentence belongs, respectively, to the present, past or future time-sphere.

II. Sometimes there is a discrepancy between the time-sphere indicated by the adverbial adjunct and that implied by the tense-form of the predicate; i. e. the former may be one measured from the primary dividing-point, the latter from a secondary dividing-point, either in the past or future. Thus *yesterday* is sometimes used instead of *the day before*, i. e. the day before a given day in the past; *to-morrow* instead of *the day after*, i. e. the day after a given day in the anterior future. Similarly *last night* sometimes stands for *the night before*; *some time* (*some days, a day*, etc.) *ago* for *some time* (*some days, a day*, etc.) *before*. It may, of course, be urged that the above view is based on an unwarrantable narrowing of the sense-area of the words and word-groups in question.

i. A handsome mince-pie had been made yesterday. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. IV, 28.

She remembered the words she had overheard yesterday. WILLIAMSON, *The Underground Syndicate*, Ch. XII.

ii. Lucie was to be married to-morrow. DICK., *Two Cities*, II Ch. XVII, 212. The inquest was adjourned till to-morrow. *Times*.

iii. They went down to the landing-place where they had left their goods last night. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. XXIII, 195*a*.

Mine (sc. my eyes) encountered the personage who had received me last night. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 51.

iv. How she had admired this room a week ago! WILLIAMSON, *The Underground Syndicate*, Ch. XI.

With the above sentences compare:

i. Major Pendennis knew the letter too. He had put it into the post himself in Chatteris the day before. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIII, 135.

ii. Mr. Bingley was obliged to be in town the following day. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 13.

iii. The event had only occurred the night before. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 190.

iv. She had taken a large rambling house, which had been usually considered to confer a patent of gentility upon its tenant, because once upon a time, seventy or eighty years before, the spinster daughter of an earl had resided in it. *ib.*, Ch. VII, 128.

There is no occasion to change *yesterday*, *some days ago*, etc. or *last night* into respectively *the day before*, *some days before*, etc., or *the the night before* in reported speech. Thus *I wrote the letter yesterday* becomes, for example, *I told him that I had written the letter yesterday*.

He felt so well convinced that Jonas was again the Jonas he had known a week ago that [etc.]. DICK., *Chuzzle*, Ch. XIX, 166*b*.

Thus also *to-morrow* need not be replaced by *the day after* in indirect speech.

Martha .. then told them .. how she meant to lie abed to-morrow morning for a good long rest. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III.

Nor is there anything unusual in *the morrow* being used in the sense of *the next day*.

The inferiority would have been changed on the morrow into an overwhelming superiority. MOTLEY, *Rise*, IV, Ch. I, 558*a*.

She was duly informed that Mrs. D'Urberville was glad of her decision, and that a spring-cart should be sent to meet her and her luggage .. on the day after the morrow. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. VI, 57.

6. The present is not the only tense used in representing an action or state as belonging to all times (2, *e*). Occasionally the preterite is found in the same function; thus in:

Sigh no more, ladies, sigh no more, | Men were deceivers ever, | One foot in sea and one on shore, | To one thing constant never: .. Sing no more ditties, sing no moe, | Of dumps so dull and heavy; The' fraud of men was ever so, | Since summer first was leavy. SHAK., *Much ad o*, II, 3, 64—75. (Compare: Youth is ever hot and rash. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. XIII, 303).

Ay me! for aught that I could ever read, | Could ever hear by tale or history, | The course of true love never did run smooth; .. Or, if there were a sympathy in choice, | War, death, or sickness did lay siege to it, | Making it momentary as a sound. *id.*, *Mids.*, I, I, 132—143. (It is rather remarkable that at the end of Lysander's speech the present takes the place of the preterite: And ere a man hath power to say 'Behold!' | The jaws of darkness do devour it up: | So quick bright things come to confusion; Hermia responding in a speech which opens with a line in the perfect tense: If then true lovers have been ever cross'd.)

When wanton Wealth her mightiest deeds hath done, | Meek Peace voluptuous lures was ever wont to shun. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, XXII.

This use of the neutral preterite may be compared to that of the so-called gnomic or empiric aorist in the Greek and the gnomic or empiric perfect in the Latin language. In the employment of these tenses, as applied in the above function, it is assumed that what has always proved true in the past will also hold good for the future.

Οὐδείς ἔπαινον ἡδοναῖς ἐκτέσαστο (= Nobody (ever) earned praise by (indulging in) pleasures.

Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci. HOR., *Ars Poet.*, 343. (= He carries away all the points, i. e. reaps universal applause, who unites the useful with the sweet.)

Labor omnia vicit | Improbus VERG., *G.*, I, 145. (= Untiring toil overcometh everything.)

7. *a*) The ante-preterite (tense) is called the pluperfect (tense) in English Grammars. It is formed by periphrasis, in Present English almost exclusively with *had*, in Earlier English sometimes also with *was* (or *were*) (14); e. g.: *When I had walked all that distance, I sat down on the trunk of a fallen tree to have a rest.* The pluperfect is also used when the happenings are thought of

in a time-sphere that is shifted a further stage backward, i. e. when a tertiary dividing-point in the past is observed; thus *He told me that when he had walked all that distance, he had sat down on the trunk of a fallen tree to have a rest* (148).

b) In representing an action or state as belonging to the posterior past the same expedients are employed as those which serve to place it in the future time-sphere, only modified according to the altered circumstances. The commonest of these expedients is the use of *should* or *would* as the preterite forms of the tense-auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. The verb is then said to stand in the preterite future tense.

I knew . . . I should remain hungry all night. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 *b*.

I knew how it would turn out. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2252.

*Should* and *would* not being available in principal sentences, other idioms are resorted to to supply their place. Among these *was* (or *were*) *to* is the most common (74).

We were to go in a carrier's cart. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 14 *a*.

He was to leave that night after supper. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 121 *a*.

c) The ante-future tense, the *futurum exactum* of Latin grammars, is mostly called the future-perfect (tense) by English grammarians. It requires the use of two auxiliaries, viz. *shall* (or *will*) to mark futurity, and *to have* (formerly also *to be* (14) to denote priority to a secondary dividing-point in the future.

By this time to-morrow I shall have crossed the Channel. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2253.

Mr. Asquith will have spoken for himself before this is in the hands of our readers. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8515, 2 *a*.

d) If the happenings as expressed in the above sentences are viewed from a dividing-point in the past instead of the primary dividing-point, *shall* (or *will*) is replaced by *should* (or *would*). The tense used in this case may be called the preterite future-perfect.

Four o'clock! In another hour the Whitsuntide party, for which the house stood ready, would have arrived. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. VIII, 123.

e) There is no special tense-form for the posterior future. To represent an action or state as belonging to this time-sphere, we may use the word-group *not yet*, together with the auxiliaries required for the anterior future; e. g.: *If you come at seven o'clock, we shall not yet have finished dinner.*

8. a) In the above scheme there is no place for what is called the perfect tense in English grammars. This is owing to the fact that this tense in its primary application expresses a blending of two elements, viz. it states  $\alpha$ ) that the action or state referred to belongs to the past time-sphere,  $\beta$ ) that this action or state produced a result belonging to the present time-sphere. Thus *I have written a letter* places the action of writing in the past

time-sphere, but at the same time implies the finished state of a letter in the present. Thus also *I have come here* stands for *I was on my way to this place + I am here now*. It follows that in using the perfect tense, the speaker thinks distinctly of both the present and the past. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 275; PAUL, Prinz.<sup>2</sup>, § 189, § 191; DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 53; WILMANNS, Deutsche Gram., III, I, § 97, 3; SPEYER, Lat. Spraakk.<sup>3</sup>, § 593.

In *I have been writing a letter* there is, indeed, no reference to any definite result having been obtained, but yet the sentence distinctly implies that the letter is in a more or less advanced stage towards completion. The very fact that it indicates an unfinished state of the letter and, consequently, foreshadows a continuation of the action of writing, brings the present even more distinctly to the mind than is done by *I have written a letter* (Ch. LII, 19).

b) The reference to a state of things belonging to the present time-sphere is especially prominent when the sentence contains, as it often does, some such adverbial adjunct as *now*, as in *I have now come to apologize for my rudeness, I have now read the whole of Shakespeare's plays*.

Also the fact that in a subordinate statement or question standing after a sentence with a perfect, the verb is placed in the present tense, indicative or subjunctive, or in the future tense, goes far to show that the perfect is distinctly associated with present circumstance; thus in *I have seen to it that everything is (be or shall be) in readiness. He has expressed a wish that peace will (or may) soon be restored*.

Placing the verb of the head-sentence of complexes like the above in the preterite entails the use of the preterite or the preterite future: *I saw to it that everything was (or should be) in readiness. He expressed a wish that peace would (or might) soon be restored*.

c) What distinguishes the perfect from the present is that the former represents the action or state as having, for the time being, come to a conclusion, while the latter implies that it will be continued in the future. This is distinctly brought out by the following quotation:

The staidest opinions have modified or seek correction. Eng. Rev., No. 103, 544 a.

The close affinity which the perfect bears to the present justifies its sometimes being called the present perfect.

d) The action or state referred to by the perfect may be one that has reached completion,

1) at the moment of speaking, as in:

Those sonnets of yours have perfectly addled me. SHAW., Can d., III, (161). T.



2) at a moment previous to that of speaking, as in:

Thank you for the trouble you have taken. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2242.

e) It is but natural that in the minds of some persons it is the past, in those of others, the present element that occupies the foremost place. Those who, in using the perfect, think first of all of what befell in the past will naturally be inclined to employ it also when the only reference is to past happenings. Thus the Latin perfect is often employed in narrating what happened in the past, such a form as *scripsi* corresponding not only to *I have written*, but also to *I wrote*. In some languages the old perfect has even lost the power of marking present results. Thus the French *passé défini*, the lineal descendant of the Latin perfect, has become a pure preterite. Also such forms as *wrote*, *came*, *gave*, etc., and their equivalents in other Germanic languages, which seem primarily to have been perfects, have entirely lost the present element, being now only used as preterites. Compare JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, (391); id., *Phil. of Gram.*, Ch. XX, 270; PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 180; WILMANNS, *Deutsche Gram.*, III, 1, § 97.

Some perfects have gone in the opposite direction and have become pure presents. Such are the Latin *memini*, *novi* and *odi*; and the English *can*, *dare*, *may*, *must*, *shall* the so-called preterite-present verbs, which, perhaps, had better be called perfect-present verbs. JESPERSEN, l. c. (391) and 270.

f) The old perfects having lost the power of marking present results, the modern languages have adopted periphrastic forms with *to have* or *to be* to supply the want. But also these have, to a certain extent, shared the fate of the old perfects, being in some languages frequently employed in describing an action or state belonging to the past time-sphere without any connotation of present results. Thus the French *passé indéfini* has ousted almost entirely the *passé défini* in ordinary Modern French, the latter surviving only in the language of those Frenchmen who are under the influence of local dialects. See A. MEILLET, *Linguistique historique et Linguistique générale*, Ch. I, 12. Also Standard Dutch has *Ik heb hem gisteren gezien*, *Ze zijn in 1910 getrouwd*, etc. Such constructions as *Ik zag hem gisteren*, *Wij waren verleden jaar in Zwitserland*, which are affected by some, especially uneducated persons, perhaps in imitation of the German, in which they are very common, are still considered at variance with idiom.

Conversely we have in the Present-English colloquialism *I have got*, and its variations, an instance of a perfect assuming a present meaning; e. g.: *I have got no time*, *He has got to do it*. Compare

JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, VI, (391); KRUISINGA, *Hand-book*<sup>3</sup>, § 143.

It will be shown in the following discussions that English practice as to the use of the perfect and preterite tenses differs materially from that of Dutch.

9. Another function of the perfect is that of representing an action or state as continuing from a point of time in the past to the moment of speaking or writing. The sentence then contains an adverbial adjunct or clause denoting the length of that time; e. g.: *I have known him two years (already)*. In some languages, such as Dutch, German and French, the present tense is normally used to express these circumstances; e. g.: *Ik ken hem sedert twee jaar, Ich kenne ihn seit zwei Jahren, Je le connais depuis deux ans*. As will be shown lower down (119), the present tense is, in this case, the exception in English.

In the case of momentaneous verbs it is continued repetition of the action during a given space of time, which is expressed by the English perfect; in other words the verb assumes an iterative character or aspect.

The skirts of her ancestors' garments have been kissed for centuries. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XVI, 167.

10. a) When the point of time from which happenings are viewed is shifted in the speaker's mind from the moment of speaking to a moment in either the past or future, in other words when the primary dividing-point is exchanged for either of the secondary dividing-points, the pluperfect or the future perfect, respectively, takes the place of the (present) perfect.

As soon Mr. Carnaby opened his eyes, she (sc. Mrs. Carnaby) told him of her plans, and before breakfast they had settled the whole thing. SWEET, *The Picnic*.

If the stroke serves to crumble up a further section of the German defences, its purpose will have been achieved. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7571, 2b.

b) The observant student will have remarked that the pluperfect has two applications, i. e. not only does it, on a change of dividing-point, take the place of the perfect, but also of the preterite. Thus both *I thank you that you have done all this for me*, and *I thank you that you did all this for me* become *I thanked you that you had done all this for me*.

c) The pluperfect, (present) perfect and future perfect having certain features in common, it will sometimes be convenient to comprise them under the general denomination of the perfect tenses.

11. It remains to make a few observations about the tenses used in indirect speech.

a) If we compare the preterite, perfect and pluperfect tenses of direct statements with those of the corresponding indirect statements after a preterite, as in:

I met her some time ago — He said that he had met her some time ago,  
 I have not yet met her — He said that he had not yet met her,  
 I had already met her before — He said that he had already met her before;  
 we find that there is no shifting of tense in the latter following  
 that of the former, the pluperfect being used independently of  
 the tense in the direct statement.

b) Nor is the difference between open and rejected condition  
 shown by different forms in indirect statements depending on  
 preterites, as becomes apparent from a comparison of the following  
 sentences:

I will pay you if I can — He said that he would pay me if he could.  
 I would pay you if I could — He said that he would pay me if he could.

c) When the reported statement is one that applies to all times  
 (2, e), the present tense is mostly preserved after a preterite.

He denied that Electricity and Magnetism are (not *were*) the same agent. BAIN,  
 Comp., 203.

I was thinking how terrible is war. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. I, 4.  
 "And who the deuce was Pythagoras?" — "A sage who held that the earth is  
 round." SHAW, *Saint Joan*, II, 25.

But owing to the fact that the shifting from the preterite in the  
 reporting sentence to the present in the reported statement  
 requires some effort of the mind, the predicate in the latter is  
 not seldom placed in the preterite also.

It was her firm belief that all unhappy marriages dated from the wife only.  
 Mrs. SYNNTON, *Sowing the wind*, I, Ch. X, 245.

I thought ill news came fast enough. Mrs. GASK., *Cranford*, Ch. XIII, 238.

He said that wood was a useful substance. PALMER, *Gram. of Spok.*  
*Eng.*, 676.

### Form of the Tenses in English.

12. a) The only tenses that in English are not formed by means of  
 auxiliaries are the present and the preterite. We may assume  
 the present to be a kind of base from which the preterite is  
 formed in various ways (Ch. LVIII), or, which comes to the same  
 thing, the absence of tense-inflection may be said to constitute  
 the present tense. Thus (*I*) *saw* and (*I*) *walked* may be under-  
 stood as inflected forms of, respectively, (*I*) *see* and (*I*) *walk*.

b) Verbals having no inflection for tense, the fact that the action  
 or state they express belongs to a time-sphere anterior to that  
 of the action or state expressed by the finite verb with which  
 they are syntactically connected, is expressed by means of the  
 auxiliary *to have*, formerly also *to be* (14). Compare:

i. I know that he was here a minute ago. — I know him to have been here a minute ago.

II. I thank you that you did all this for me when I was away. — I thank you for having done all this for me when I was away.

iii. As he was born on May 3th *with* Having been born on May 3th 1905,  
1905, he has now completed his                      he has now completed his twentieth  
twentieth year.                                              year.

c) A change of tense of the finite verb does not affect the tense of the verbal syntactically connected with it.

i. She wants (wanted, will want) him to apologize.

He regrets (regretted, will regret) to have been absent.

ii. In coming home, he takes (took, will take) his way through the park.

He remembers (remembered, will remember) having seen him.

iii. His father being a soldier, he wants (wanted, will want) to go into the army.

His father having been a soldier, he wants (wanted, will want) to go into the army.

d) Complex predicates, however, substitute the perfect infinitive for the imperfect, when the primary dividing-point is exchanged for the secondary dividing-point of the past. Compare:

It is strange that we should meet here *with* It was strange that we should have  
met here.

### Formation of the Perfect Tenses.

13. The present formation of the perfect tenses with *to have* goes back to a construction in which *to have* is followed by a (pro)noun + past participle, the participle being, in the earliest stages of the language, often placed in the accusative, in concord with the preceding (pro)noun, but, in later English, left uninflected. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1185, § 2165; BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 68; JESPERSEN, *Growth & Struct.*<sup>2</sup>, § 206.

*hē hæfþ hine gefundenne.* (= literally: he has (or possesses) him found.)<sup>1</sup>

*hīe hæfdon hira cyning āworpenne.* (= literally: they had their king (in a state of being deposed).)<sup>2</sup>

*þā hē hīe ofslægene hæfde* (= literally: when he had them (in a state of) killed).<sup>2</sup>

There is, indeed, a considerable difference between two such sentences as *He has a man killed* and *He has killed a man*, as will at once be seen when the object and participle are transposed in the following quotation:

How stand I then, | That have a father kill'd, a mother stain'd? SHAK.,  
*Hamlet*, IV, 5, 17.

But it is not difficult to understand how the one construction led to the other, when it is realized that the two constructions sometimes have practically the same meaning or are, at least, difficult to distinguish. Thus transposition of object and participle would not materially alter the meaning of the following quotations:

<sup>1</sup>) SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1185;    <sup>2</sup>) *ib.*, § 2165.

Almost the first remarkable thing I observed in Miss Murdstone was, her being constantly haunted by a suspicion that the servants had a man secreted somewhere on the premises. DICK., *Cop*, Ch. IV, 24*a*.

He did not even ride part of the way homewards by the side of his friend's carriage. He had some other party arranged for that afternoon. THACK., *Virg.* Ch. XXXV, 361.

Considerations of metre or convenience may cause the normal word-order to be deviated from.

i. And you must put me in your heart for friend, | Sith you have heard, and with a knowing ear, | That he which hath your noble father slain | Pursued my life. SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 7, 4.

ii. When they (sc. the children) are blooded on these simple tales, M. Fournier has prepared for his pupils a slightly more advanced primer, in "practical morals, exercises for the intelligence and vocabulary." *Manch. Guard.* 13 10, 1924, 327*a*.

Let it also be borne in mind that the two notions represented, respectively, by two such sentences as *He has a man killed* and *He has killed a man*, cannot be differentiated by word-order when the object is placed in front-position, as is, for example, the case when it is an interrogative or relative pronoun. Thus the following sentences bear two interpretations: *Whom had he killed? The man whom he had killed was not his long-sought enemy. What party had he arranged? The party which he had arranged was a failure.*

14. a) It stands to reason that the construction was at first only applicable to transitive verbs. Of intransitive verbs, especially those of a mutative meaning (Ch. XLV, 16, *b*), the perfect tenses were formed in Old English by the help of *to be*, the participle being in concord with the subject, e. g.: *hīc wāron āfarene* (= they had departed), *hē is hider cumen* (= he has come hither)<sup>1)</sup>.

*b*) Non-mutative intransitives early adopted *to have* to form the perfect tenses, and when the construction with *to have* was no longer associated with its original meaning and had become firmly established in its modern application, it was gradually extended to mutative intransitives as well. For a discussion of the various causes which may have operated to bring about this state of things, see especially FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 631. See also DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 38; and KERN, *De met het Part. Pret. omschreven werkwoordsvorm in 't Nederlands*, 37, 44.

15. Present-English combinations of the verb *to be* with the past participle of an intransitive subjective verb mostly express the result of the action rather than the action itself. In them *to be* then appears as a copula, the participle preserving the character

<sup>1)</sup> SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2166.

of an adjective denoting a state (O. E. D., s.v. *to be*, IV, 14). The difference between combinations of such participles with *to have* and *to be* is aptly illustrated by:

Ye have come late — but ye are come! The distance, | Count Isolan, excuses your delay. COLERIDGE, *Pic.*, I. 1.

The fact that a state is meant by the past participle, when combined with a form of *to be*, often becomes apparent from its readily suggesting an adjective or an equivalent phrase denoting a state; thus in:

They had been arrived only a few minutes. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXIII, 178. T.

An hour later, when most of the visitors were departed, he went to Beatrice's corner of the room. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XX, 275.

While I am gone, I wish you to read over what I have marked in these books. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 109.

You knew I was returned to London, Major Winton? GALSW., *Beyond*, I, Ch. VI, 57.

16. a) In Early Modern English the use of *to be* to form the perfect tenses was still common enough. The practice has, indeed, become more and more unusual since, but even in the latest English it cannot be said to have become entirely extinct.

My life is run his compass. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, V, 3, 25.

He is so much altered lately that his nearest relations would not know him. SHER., *School*, III, 3, (400).

For this orphan I am come to you. TEN., *Dora*, 89.

Uncle Jolyon is terribly changed this last year. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VII, 208.

Why should I remind you of what is passed? TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Ch. V, 40.

James and me is come to a nunnerstandin. SHAW, *Cand.*, I, (129). T.

Of particular interest are the rather frequent instances of *to become* and *to grow* forming their perfect tenses with *to be*.

i. I couldn't think what was become of him. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, 331. T.

I am become a name. TEN., *Ulysses*, II.

Clyn Yeobright is become a real perusing man, with the strangest notions about things. HARDY, *Return*, II, Ch. I, 129.

ii. Her eyes must be grown very dim. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, *Concl.*, 69.

Its voice was grown faint. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. VI, 97.

b) In not a few cases it is difficult to decide whether *to be* has to be understood as the auxiliary or the copula.

It was Miss Murdstone who was arrived. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 25a.

The man thus .. saluted was already passed into the autumn of his years. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. I, 38a.

Young man, I rejoice that I was not yet set off again on my travels, and that you are come in time for me to see the image of my friend as he was in his youth. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VIII, Ch. LX, 269.

Dickens is not merely alive: he is risen from the dead. CHESTERTON, (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3844, 914b).

c) Sometimes we find *to have gone*, although *to be gone* would seem to be required by the sense.

He had come to work, and to live by work, and the morning had nearly gone. HARDY, *J u d e*, II, Ch. II, 109.

The camera has gone, and I don't suppose that the reward I have offered will bring it back. BRADBY, *D i c k.*, Ch. XII, 126.

The time for compromises and half-measures has gone. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8297, 2 a.

d) Different from the above are those predicates in which the perfect denotes the state which has continued from a certain moment in the past, marked by a certain event, to the moment of speaking; e. g.:

The sun has set a long time. MISS MITFORD, *O u r V i l l a g e*, Ch. IV, 55.

Such a sentence may be understood as the contraction of two others, viz.: *The sun set a long time ago* and *The sun has been set (= under) a long time*. For further discussion see 122, a).

17. Except for certain sentences and clauses of emphatic affirmation or denial (Ch. XXXII, 37), the auxiliary *to have* is utterly unstressed, its most common forms *have*, *had* and *had* being in the spoken language normally reduced to the final consonant. The literary forms *hast*, *hath* and *hadst* are, naturally, less subject to this weakening. The weakened forms are, indeed, hardly more than enclitics, which may, in a manner, be regarded as inflectional endings attached to (pro)noun-subject instead of the verb, and fulfilling a similar function as the tense endings of weak verbs. In colloquial, and especially vulgar English, they are not unfrequently dropped altogether, their function being relegated to the following participle.

Though I say it, I'm better than the best collector he ever done business with. SHAW, *W i d o w e r s' H o u s e s*, II, 33.

I just been reading one of your books. TEMPLE THURSTON, *C i t y*, III, Ch. I, 205.

I got to go to a funeral. HERB. JENKINS, *B i n d l e*, Ch. V, 77.

18. a) A very common and useful expedient to indicate distinct discontinuance of an action or state of the past is afforded by the combination *used to* + infinitive.

"You used to know Johnson the dairyman, William?" — "Ay, sure, that I did." HARDY, *U n d e r t h e G r e e n w o o d t r e e*, I, Ch. III, 24.

"Do you know her very well?" — "Oh yes — used to." GALSW., *B e y o n d*, IV, Ch. III, 378.

b) A peculiar way of indicating completed action, practised in Anglo-Irish, is that in which the verb *to be* is followed by *after* + gerund. See WYLD, *The Growth of Eng.*, 64; id., *A Hist. of Col. Eng.*, Ch. I, 13.

She be just afther comin'. TEMPLE THURSTON, *T r a f f i c*, Ch. I, 8.

Herself's afther going to bed this half-hour. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 76.

### Formation of the Future Tenses.

#### Historical Survey and Preliminary Observations.

19. The future tense is formed by means of the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*, which in narrating past events are changed into *should* and *would*.
20. The modern way of indicating futurity by means of *shall* and *will* was practically unknown in the earliest stages of the language
  - a) In Old English the present tense was mostly used in describing an action or state belonging to the future time-sphere, in like manner as this was done in Middle Dutch and other Old Germanic languages. See STOETT, *Middelned. Spraakk.*<sup>2</sup>, § 242, *e*; PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 190; WILMANN, *Deutsche Gram.*, III, 1, § 91; O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 8; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2198. The following extract from the Gospel according to Saint Matthew (Ch. XII, 18—21), edited by KEMBLE, as it is to be found in SWEET, *Anglo-Saxon Reader*<sup>3</sup>, 51, may serve to show the Old English practice, as compared with that of the Authorized Version of the year 1611.

Hēr is min cnapa, þone ic gecēas; mīn gecorena, on þām wel gelicode minre sǣwe: ic āsette minne gāst ofer hyne, and dōm hē bodað þeodum. Ne flit hē, ne hē ne hrýmð; ne nān mann ne gehýrð hys stemme on strætum. Tōcwýsed hrēod hē ne forbrýtt, and smēocende flex hē ne ādwæscð, ær þām þe hē āwurpe dōm tō sige. And on his naman þeoda gehyhtað.

Behold my servant, whom I have chosen; my beloved, in whom my soul is well pleased: I will put my spirit upon him, and he shall shew (the Revised Edition of 1894 has declare) judgment to the Gentiles. He shall not strive, nor cry; neither shall any man hear his voice in the streets. A bruised reed shall he not break, and smoking flax shall he not quench, till he send forth judgment unto victory. And in his name shall the Gentiles trust.

b) Occasionally we find instances of *shall*, and also, although much more rarely, of *will*, employed to express pure futurity.

Hīe wēndon þæt hīe scolden mǣre onfōn. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2198 (= They expected that they should receive more.)

Ic wāt þæt þis folc mīclum blissian wile mīnes dēapes. *ib.* (= I know that this nation will rejoice greatly at my death.)

See also BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 167; MORRIS, *Hist. Outl.*, § 40, *c*, (14); BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, 66; O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 8; STOF., *Taalst.*, II, 225.

c) The Old English *sceal*, the preterite of *sculan* from which the Modern *shall* has descended (8, *e*), was used in two functions, viz.: 1) it formed the predicate by itself, 2) it entered into combination with an infinitive without *to*, in like manner as *shall* in Modern English.

1) When used to form the predicate by itself, it had the same meaning as the Modern English *to owe*.



Hu mycel scealt þu minum hlaforde? Ags. Gosp., Luke, XVI, 5 <sup>1)</sup> (= How much owest thou unto my lord?)

CHAUCER has *shall* in the same function and meaning in:

Freend, as I am trewe knight, | And by that feyth I shall to god and yow, | I hadde it never half so hote as now. Troil & Crcs, III, 1649 (See also ib., 791).

2) In combination with an infinitive it mostly expressed the same meaning as in Modern English is ordinarily indicated by *ought* or *should*. In the last-mentioned verb the original meaning of *shall* has, accordingly, been preserved (Ch. I, 44, Obs. V).

þā ludeas him andswaredon and cwædon, Wē habbað æ, and be ure æ hē sceal sweltan, for þām þe hē cwæð þæt hē wære Godes Sunu. Saint John XIX, 7.<sup>2)</sup> (Auth. Vers.: The Jews answered him, We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God.)  
He us lærde, hu we us gebid dan sceoldon. Blickl. Hom., XIX, 36. (= He taught us how we ought to pray.)

Also CHAUCER sometimes has *shall* in the same function and meaning.

An housbond shal nat been inquisitif of goddes privetee, nor of his wyf. Cant. Tales. A, 3163.

d) In Middle English *shall* and *will* came to be used as tense-signs for a long while without the modern difference in their application, *shall* being the more frequent auxiliary. Thus in WYCLIFFE's translation of the Vulgate (± 1380) *shall* is regularly used where the latter has the future, *will* being employed to render the meaning of *volo*. See MOLLOY, The Irish Difficulty, Ch. VII; STOF., Taalst., II, 225.

MOLLOY, modernizing WYCLIFFE's spelling, quotes:

i. When the eventide is come, ye say, It shall be clear. (*serenum erit*), for heaven is ruddy. Matth., XVI, 2. (Author. Vers.: When it is evening ye say, It will be fair weather: for the sky is red.)

ii. I will not leave them fasting (*dimittere eos jejunos nolo*), lest they fall in the way. Matth., XV, 32. (Author. Vers.: I will not send them away fasting, lest they faint in the way.)

WYCLIFFE often has *I shall* where the Vulgate has the future and the Author. Vers. *I will*.

Thou art Peter, and on this stone I shall build (*ædificabo*) my church. Matth., XVI, 18. (Author. Vers.: Thou art Peter and upon this rock I will build my church.)

After three days I shall rise again (*resurgam*). Matth., XXVII, 63. (Author. Vers.: After three days I will rise again.)

WYCLIFFE has occasional instances of *would* corresponding to the Latin imperfect subjunctive. MOLLOY quotes:

All the city went out to meet Jesus, and when he had seen him, they prayed that he would pass from their coasts (*ut transiret a finibus eorum*).

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, I, 1.

<sup>2)</sup> edited by JAMES WILSON BRIGHT in the Belles-Lettres Series.

Matth., VIII, 34. (Author. Vers.: .. they besought him that he would depart out of their coasts.)

But he also has *should* in exactly analogous connexions; thus in:

And lo, a man to whom the name was jairus, and he was a prince of a synagogue, and he fell down at the feet of Jesus, and prayed him that he should enter into his house (ut intraret in domum suam). Luke, VIII, 41 (Author. Vers.: .. and besought him that he would come into his house.)

As distinct from WYCLIFFE, CHAUCER seems to have used *shall* and *will*, in the main, in the same way as in Standard English of the present day. To give an example:

- i. And now thou woldest falsly been aboute | To love my lady, whom I love and, serve, | And ever shall, til that myn harte sterve. *Cant. Tales, A, 1144.*
- ii. But I was hurt right now thurgh-out myn yē | In-to myn herte, that wol my bane be. *ib., 1097.*

In the following quotation CHAUCER's use of *shall* is, however, at variance with present practice:

And now, sith I have declared yow what thing is Penitence, now shul ye understonde that ther been three accions of Penitence. *The Persones Tale, § 3.*

e) In the days of SHAKESPEARE the use of *shall* and *will* was already in a fair way of settling down into an established system. SHAKESPEARE's English, however, still affords many instances of what appear to be inconsistencies. Nor does it require extensive reading to observe that SHAKESPEARE more frequently uses *shall* (*should*) in the second and third person to mark a plain future than is the case in Standard English of the present day, and also that he sometimes employs this verb in functions which would now be denoted by other verbs. Also his applications of *will* (*would*) are, in some respects, at variance with present usage, but the differences are less striking. See FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 611, § 618. Illustration will be given below (62).

f) In post-Elizabethan English instances of *shall* being used in the second and third persons to denote mere futurity were becoming more and more rare, and by the middle of the seventeenth century the distribution of *shall* and *will* had become essentially the same as it is at the present day.

g) As appears from the foregoing survey, the general current observable in *shall* and *will* as tense-signs is that, in process of time, *will* has taken upon itself a great deal of the duty formerly exclusively or chiefly assigned to *shall*. The spread of *will* at the expense of *shall* may, indeed, be said to be going on still. In some dialects, such as Scotch and Anglo-Irish, it has practically ousted the latter as a pure auxiliary of tense. Thus EARLE (*Phil.*<sup>5</sup>, § 304) writes, "The entrance of *will* into this function (sc. of marking futurity) is the latest event of mark in the history

of the verb; *will* has carved all the area it occupies out of the domain of *shall*; it is still pushing and gaining ground" Compare also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2199; MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. III.

21. The other functions of *shall* and *will* roughly fall into two groups, viz.:

a) that of representing a person or thing as acted upon by the will of some person or some power thought of as a person;  
 b) that of expressing the speaker's attitude of uncertainty or rejection towards the fulfilment of the action or state denoted by the main verb of the predicate. In this function they may be called modal verbs or auxiliaries.

22. It must not be thought that the three values of *shall* and *will* can be rigidly distinguished. On the contrary their functions are frequently highly mixed.

a) It stands to reason that representing an action or state as the aim of a person's will implies that the possible fulfilment of that action or state can only be expected in the future. The important thing to be borne in mind is whether the notion of volition is the prevailing one, or is distinctly subservient to that of futurity. Thus there can be no doubt that such sentences as *Thou shalt honour thy father and mother*, *You shall smart for this*, *Shall I show the gentleman into the parlour?* *I will not marry Dora*, *I will punish you if you neglect your duties*, etc., describe a movement of the human will, the futurity of the actions expressed by the main verbs of the predicates being hardly matter of the speaker's thoughts. But as volition often appears in a weakened form, the notion of futurity may, consequently, come distinctly to the fore. Thus in *To-morrow I will tell you more details* it is rather the future telling of more details than the present intention or promise to do so which is the main subject of the communication. Similarly in *It shall be done to-morrow without fail*, which is only another form for *I will do it to-morrow without fail*. If, on the other hand, the intention or the promise had been foremost in the speaker's mind, he would most probably have expressed himself in some such terms as *It is my intention (or I promise) to tell you more details to-morrow*. *I will see to it that it shall be done without fail*.

The following example, quoted by MOLLOY, distinctly brings out the difference between *I shall* expressing a pure future, and *I will* denoting weak volition:

I shall be in town on Sunday next, and will call and have some conversation on the subject of Westall's designs. BYRON.

The various forms of volition, and the ways in which they are expressed, have been discussed in considerable detail in Ch. I, 40 ff.

*b)* Also the modal and tense values of *shall* and *will* are often inextricably mixed. On the face of it, it is only natural that this should be so, it being a distinct feature of the future that it is often thought of as uncertain. Thus in the celebrated passage from MACAULAY's *Essay on Ranke's History of the Popes* *And she (sc. the Roman Catholic Church) may still exist in undiminished vigour when some traveller from New Zealand shall, in the midst of a vast solitude, take his stand on a broken arch of London Bridge to sketch the ruins of St. Paul's*, the function of *shall* to mark the attitude of uncertainty on the part of the writer with regard to a certain event is as indubitable as that of the preceding *may*.

For a discussion of the close relation between futurity and modality see also PAUL, Prinz.<sup>3</sup>, § 192.

*c)* Nor is it always possible to draw a strict line of demarcation between *shall* and *will* as coaction- or volition-expressing verbs and modal verbs. Thus we may discern distinct volition in *shall* in such a sentence as *The Committee have decided that no one shall be admitted without a ticket*. But the attitude of uncertainty on the part of the speaker with regard to the admission is also manifest, which is proved by the fact that in it the inflectional subjunctive is admissible as an alternative form.

Let it also be observed that the notion of futurity is also clearly implied in the above sentence, so that it affords an instance of *shall* conveying a blending of the three different functions of which it is capable.

23. The above exposition makes it clear that the idiomatic use of *shall* and *will* must be singularly difficult to all speakers and writers 'who are not to the manner born'. It has already been pointed out (20, *g*) that most non-English Britishers utterly fail in their attempts to conform to the rules laid down by English grammarians, and have, at all events, long since given up distinguishing between *shall* and *will*, so far as futurity is concerned, *will* being used by them throughout in this function. But it may also be doubted that the 'true-born Englishman', even when he constantly moves in educated circles, strictly observes the rules even in his considered utterances. On the face of it, it seems incredible that he should be privileged, so to speak, with a sixth organ enabling him to tread unerringly in the maze of this bewildering problem.
24. It should further be observed that English grammarians do not agree in all points as to the rules to be observed. To give an instance: MASON (*Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 483) states, "when subjects differing in number or person, or both, are connected by *and*, the verb must always be in the plural; and in the first person,

if one of the subjects is of that person; in the second person, if one of the subjects is of that person, and none of the first, as *I and he are of the same age. You and I shall be late*". (Curiously enough we find MASON, in § 386 of the same Grammar, writing, "*You and I will travel together*"). SWEET, (N. E. Gr., § 2202, *b*) gives the following rule. "Such combinations as *you and I, we two, we three, we all* take *will* instead of *shall*. *We shall get there first, but I expect you and I will get there first. We two will be able to manage it quite well. I shall dream about those dogs to-night, I am sure I shall. So shall I. So we all will*". Then he goes on to say, "If we put the *all* of the last example after the verb, the *shall* must be restored: *So shall we all*". SWEET does not account for the varied practice in the two last sentences, which, it will be admitted, is rather bewildering. It is not elucidated by what follows, "The explanation of this anomaly is that *you* and the other words added to *we* divert the attention from the first person and make the idea of the second person prominent enough to suggest the more frequent *will*".

How far the discordant views of the two eminent grammarians are in harmony with commonly observed practice will be shown in 32.

25. The variety in the function of *shall* and *will*, and the way in which these functions are often mixed, cause great difficulty as to the method of treatment. Most grammarians do not clearly and consistently distinguish between the three main functions of the verb, with the result that the matter is left in a hopeless tangle, highly perplexing to the student. In this Grammar the words are discussed under four separate headings, according to the function which comes most prominently to the fore. This arrangement, although admittedly involving the making of some arbitrary distinctions, offers the advantage of enabling the student to form an outlined survey of the subject. In the following pages, therefore, only those applications of *shall* and *will* are dealt with which exhibit futurity unmixed with other notions, or in which the tinge of futurity by other notions is so faint as to be practically negligible.

For detailed discussion of *shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*) as volition-expressing verbs see Ch. I, 40—49. *Shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*) as substitutes for modal inflection have been amply discussed in the preceding chapter, while their use as modal verbs that does not run parallel to modal inflection has received due attention in Ch. I, 25—27.

26. The present use of *shall* and *will* as auxiliaries of the future tense is said to be a compromise between historical and psycho-

logical principles. Enough has already been said of the historical principle which may have influenced the usage prevailing at the present day. Nor need the psychological principle occupy us long. It is the innate courtesy of the Englishman, it is said, which causes him to use *shall* in making the future known about himself, and *will* in announcing the future of others. This courtesy-principle has found an able advocate in ALEXANDER BAIN, the well-known author of *A Higher English Grammar*, and other works on the English language. In the above-mentioned work (page 168 f) he delivers himself as follows, "When a person says *I shall come*, he uses a phrase which originally means that he is to be under external influence or compulsion, and he so far speaks humbly of himself, a thing quite becoming. But the case is altered when, addressing a second person, we say *you shall come*; this is equal to saying, '*the power of external events will leave you no choice but to come*'. To use this form of language to another person has seemed want of due courtesy and consideration for the feelings of others; and accordingly we have departed from it, and adopted *will*, which is the same as to say, '*your (or their) free will and pleasure will induce you (or them) to come*'. This has been considered polite and deferential and has become the form of futurity when persons other than *I* or *we* are concerned. Hence the correct usage is *I shall be at the gardens, and so will you and James*".

The theory is further elaborated in the writer's comments on the other combinations: *I will, thou shalt, shall I, shalt thou, he will, he shall*, etc., but, although it must be admitted that there is some sense in the reasoning, it seems to break down entirely when combinations with subjects denoting things are in question. See also MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 87.

Indeed, it seems futile to lay down any psychological principle which would satisfactorily account for the varied and variable practice observed in speech and written composition. This being so, there is no alternative but to ascribe the present usage of the auxiliaries of the future tense, in the main, to the dictates of an inscrutable convention, and to confine ourselves to a mere statement of facts.

27. As has already been hinted at (20, f; 24; 26), the choice between *shall* and *will* as tense-auxiliaries depends, in the main, on the person and, in a less degree, on the number of the subject with which the verbs are connected. It also depends, to a considerable extent, on the nature of the sentence in which they are used; i. e. usage is not the same in non-reported speech as it is in reported speech; and again declarative sentences exhibit another practice than questions.

*Should* and *would*, either as tense-auxiliaries to form the preterite future (7, *b*), or as modal auxiliaries to form the conditional mood in the apodosis of conditional sentences (Ch. XLIX, 14, Obs. II), follow, in the main, the lines of *shall* and *will*. In the following discussions, therefore, it is understood that, unless the reverse is stated, the observations regarding *shall* and *will* apply also to *should* and *would* as used in the above functions.

We may, accordingly, draw up the following scheme of discussion: *Shall (should)* and *will (would)* in:

- a*) non-reported speech, 1) in declarative sentences or clauses, 2) in questions;
- b*) in reported speech, 1) in reported statements, 2) in reported questions.

#### *Shall (should)* and *will (would)* in Non-reported Declarative Sentences and Clauses.

28. In these sentences and clauses *shall (should)* is used with great regularity when the subject is the personal pronoun of the first person singular. The rule is applied with particular stringency when a word or phrase is introduced implying doubt or uncertainty, or the reverse, on the part of the speaker. See also Ch. LII, 17.

i. I shall never have such a ride again. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIII, 240 *a*.

I am uncertain when I shall be able to make the journey from Spezia, where I shall be staying. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, Ch. VII, Ch. L, 109.

Perhaps I shall go abroad this summer. I shall probably enter my horse for the race. MOLLOY, *Irish Dif.*, I, § 1, 18.

ii. I should very imperfectly execute the task which I have undertaken if I were merely to treat of battles and sieges. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 3.

29. Obs. 1. As compared with volition-expressing *will*, *shall* is often to be understood as a word of particular significance, indicating as it often does, absolute certainty on the part of the speaker as to a future state of things coming about or not coming about. Thus *I will never leave you*, which expresses the outcome of a determination or intention formed at the moment of speaking, is mild in comparison with *I shall never leave you*, which implies a state of mind in which the speaker pronounces his possible disloyalty as absolutely out of the question. See MOLLOY, *l. c.*, I, § 1, 19.

"I should like to see that letter". — "You cannot see it". — "I must and shall, Ma'am. I am your guardian". CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XIV, 286.

"If you should miss one dose, or quit his (sc. the patient's) side for only one short hour, I will not answer for his life. If you should fall asleep..." — "I shall not sleep!" said the girl firmly, as if under inspiration. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. XI, 95.

Thus even in the following sentence, in which the head-sentence expresses a promise:

H. POUTSMA, *l. l.*

I pledge you my word I shall never tap a cask of that bliss again. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VIII, Ch. LXVII, 365.

Similarly the determined *I shall not* (colloquially *I shan't*, often heard from an exasperated schoolboy, in response to an offensive command or commission) represents non-compliance or disobedience as an absolute certainty.

"Come, Darcy, . . I must have you dance. I hate to see you standing about by yourself in this stupid manner. You had much better dance". — "I certainly shall not. You know how I detest it". JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. III, 15.

I was going to tell him, but I shan't now. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8179, 7a.

Again a writer or lecturer, starting to carry into effect a long-conceived plan, may use *shall* in announcing his intentions, thereby intimating that no deviation from it can be contemplated. A classical instance of this practice is afforded by the opening lines of MACAULAY'S *History of England*.

I purpose to write the history of England from the accession of King James the Second to a time which is within the memory of men still living. I shall recount the errors which, in a few months, alienated a loyal gentry and priesthood from the House of Stuart. I shall trace the course of that revolution which terminated the long struggle between our sovereigns and their parliaments, etc.

II. According to the authors of *The King's English* (page 140) usage is variable in sentences expressing assent to, or dissidence from what has been stated about the speaker by his interlocutor. Thus *You would think so yourself if you were in my position* may be followed by either *No, I should not* or *No, I would not*.

III. The use of *will* in the first person (singular) to express a mere future, and also the corresponding use of the conditional *would*, is set down by BRADLEY (*O. E. D.*, s.v. *shall*, 8, *b*) as a "mark of Scottish, Irish, provincial or extra-British idiom". But in face of the frequent instances of the practice one meets with in the works of not a few writers, many of whom may be supposed to write pure English, it is open to doubt that the assertion is quite justified. For abundant illustration see MOLLOY, l.c., Series G.

i. My name is Pendennis, and I will be obliged to you not to curse it too loudly. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. I, 14.

"I wish he had never seen you". — "Very well; then I will be the miserablest woman in the world". HARDY, *Return*, I, Ch. V, 47.

I will now endeavour to jot down as faithfully as I can a few reminiscences of the father to whom . . I owe all that I am, all that I have, and all that I ever will be. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 217, 18a.

ii. If he asked me what I had been after . . I wouldn't know what to answer that wouldn't make me look silly if no worse. CONRAD, *Chance*, I, Ch. I, 9. I was afraid they would intern me, and so I wouldn't be able to come home. WELLS, *Britling*, III, Ch. I, § 12, 404.

For a certainty I would not get off easily. W. J. LOCKE, *The Joyous Advent. of Arist. Pujol*, Ch. I, 14.

IV. Very frequent, also in English which appears to be absolutely innocent of dialect influences, is the use of *would* instead of *should* before verbs denoting a wishing or liking, such as *to choose*, *to desire*,



*to want, to wish; to (dis)like, to hate, to prefer.* O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 19, c; MOLLOY, l.c. Ch. X, 89 and Appendix, Ser. G. and R.; FOWLER, *the King's English*, 141 f.

I would by no means wish a daughter of mine to be a progeny (read: prodigy) of learning. SHER, *Riv.*, I, 2.

I would wish not to be hasty in censuring any one; but I always speak what I think. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. IV, 18.

I would have liked a night at the Turk's Head, even though bad news had arrived from the Colonies, and doctor Johnson was growling against the rebels, THACK., *The Four Georges*.

I would have liked to have asked the driver what this all meant. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 11.

30. Also when the subject is *we*, the ordinary auxiliary is *shall* (*should*), irrespective of the meaning of the pronoun, which may include or exclude the person(s) spoken to. See, however 31, Obs. VI.

i. \* We shall not be separated long. DICK., *Two Cities*, III, Ch. XI, 371.

"Then, perhaps, we may meet. I, too, am going to town". — "Oh, we shall be sure to meet". LYTTON, *Caxtons*, IV, Ch. V, 103.

\*\* We should only spoil it (sc. the quarrel) by trying to explain it. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3.

ii. We shall always be happy of your company. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 35.

Besides, we shall do well together, after all, I believe — she and I. PINERO, *The Notorious Mrs. Ebbsmith*, II.

31. Obs. I. Naturally enough *shall* (*should*) is also the normal auxiliary of the future tense after *we*,  
 a) when meant to indicate only the speaker himself; i. e. when it is a plural of majesty or modesty (Ch. XXXV, 4).  
 β) when used indefinitely as one of the approximate equivalents of the Dutch *men*, German *man*, or French *on*, or in another equally comprehensive meaning.

We know what we are, but we know not what we shall be. PROV.

It may be that we shall have a Labour Government. WESTM. GAZ., No. 8569, 2a.

II. SWEET (*Prim. of Spok. Eng.*, 40; N. E. Gr., § 2202, b) observes that such combinations as *we two, we three, we all* take *will* as the auxiliary of the future tense: *We three will get there first. We two will be able to manage it quite well.* It is, however, doubtful that this rule is observed with anything like regularity by the majority of English speakers and writers. The tendency seems to be rather the other way, i. e. to use *shall* (*should*) after these combinations. A goodly number of instances have come to hand which are at variance with SWEET's rule. We have room for only a few.

i. The chief thing is that we shall both grow old. WALT. BESANT, *The Ivory Gate*, Ch. I, 50.

He will want to take off all his clothes, and we all shall, if it goes on being so hot. E. F. BENSON, *The Angel of Pain*, Ch. I.

ii. We should all of us, I am sure, have liked to see the Major's grin, when the worthy old gentleman made his time-honoured joke. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 176.

If that paper were given to the Press, we should all of us be ruined men. OPPENHEIM, *The Governors*, Ch. IX.

III. What has been observed about *I shall* as compared with *I will* in 29, Obs. I, may be assumed to apply also to *we shall* as compared with *we will*.

IV. As in the case of *I* (29, Obs. III), it is open to doubt that in the language of educated Englishmen *we will* (*would*) to mark a mere future is distinctly unusual. For ample illustration see MOLLOY, l. c., Appendix, Ser. G.

i. Pitt and his little boy will die, and we will be Sir Rawdon and my lady. THACK., *Van. Fair*.

We won't get the pier without him. BIRMINGHAM, *The Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. I, 9.

Whenever we have produced an antiseptic which can be taken internally without risk of injury to cell-tissue, we will have conquered infectious disease. LORD LISTER.

ii. Had any of us ventured upon a whispered congratulation, we would have had our head punched, I feel confident. JEROME, *Paul Kever*.

V. Again, as in the case of *I*, the use of *would* instead of *should* may be less exceptionable before verbs expressing a wishing or liking.

VI. In this connexion mention may be made of the all but regular use of *will* (*would*) after *we* when the speaker wishes to express an intention whose fulfilment, from motives of courtesy, he represents to be dependent on the pleasure of his interlocutor(s). In this case the notion of volition is so slight as to be almost negligible. The Dutch, accordingly, has *zullen*, not *willen*.

To-morrow is our wedding-day, | And we will then repair | Unto the Bell of Edmonton, | All in a chaise and pair. COWPER, *John Gilpin*.

We will resume our studies, Mr. Feeder, in half an hour. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 107.

If you are ready, we will start at once. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 457.

VII. Sometimes we find *we will* alternating with *we shall* in one and the same sentence, or sequence of sentences, although the functions to be expressed appear to be absolutely identical, so that one can hardly suppress the thought that the difference between the two verbs has faded to such a degree as to justify the writer in using them alternately for the sake of variety.

"I'll answer for that boy's truth with my life!" said Mr. Brownlow, knocking the table. — "And I for his falsehood with my head!" rejoined Mr. Grimwig, knocking the table also. — "We shall see," said Mr. Brownlow, checking his rising anger. — "We will," replied Mr. Grimwig with a provoking smile; we will." DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XIV, 138.

If we can avert war with Germany for twenty years, we shall not have to fight the Germans, but will be fighting alongside of them and the French on the frontiers of Poland. GRAPH., No. 2309, 351 a.

32. When the subject is made up of *I* or *we* and a pronoun of either the second or third person, or a noun, the ordinary practice is to use *will* (*would*) as the auxiliary of the future sense, *shall* (*should*) appearing as a rather frequent variant. *Will* (*would*) is naturally the regular auxiliary when there is the least tinge of volition (intention) on the part of the speaker, the fulfilment

being represented as depending on the pleasure of the other person(s) concerned in the action or state (31, Obs. VI).

i. \* You and I will get on excellently well. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. V, 39.

I have some schemes of my own, which you and I will talk about on our own hearth one day. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XX, 407.

\*\* At last, however, he began to think — as you or I would have thought at first .. — .. that the source and secret of this ghostly light might be in the adjoining room. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 56.

We wouldn't be happy, uncle, you and I. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. I, 13.

ii. \* You and I never shall be as old — as he was in long clothes. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. III, 156.

He is a topic on which you and I shall quarrel if we discuss it often. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 171.

\*\* Emily would always have been a remarkable girl, no doubt; but, without her education you and I should not have been talking about her like this, even if we had known her. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XIV, 212.

iii. She must do it .. or she and I will quarrel. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLIII, 422.

Cooper and I will be sorry to lose you. RICH. BAGOT, *Darneley Place*, I, Ch. II, 25.

iv. I hope Chettam and I shall always be good friends. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. VI, 37.

Comerio and I shall be happy. EDNA LYALL, *Kn. Er.*, Ch. XXVII, 251.

33. In the second and third persons, either singular or plural, the ordinary auxiliary is now *will* (*would*). Thus, naturally, also when the subject is a compound one and contains no pronoun of the first person. Illustration is hardly necessary.

You (he, *or* they) will be here, I suppose. I shall be at the gardens, and so will you and James. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 160.

34. Obs. I. In the solemn language used in addressing the Supreme Being the ordinary auxiliary is still *shall*, in conformity with the older practice. Thou shalt endure and thy years shall not change. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 169.

Similarly in prophetic or oracular announcements of the future, and in solemn assertions of the certainty of a future event, *shall* is the auxiliary still in common use. Thus frequently in the language of the Bible and the Liturgy. Compare O. E. D. s.v. *shall*, 8, *a*; and especially MOLLOY, l.c., Ch. II, and Ch. IX.

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my word shall not pass away. Bible, *Matth.*, XXIV, 35.

The time shall come when Egypt shall be avenged! LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. VIII, 54 *b*.

Under the cross of gold | That shines over city and river, | There he shall rest for ever. TEN., *Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wel.*, 51.

It seems futile to attempt bringing this application of *shall* (*should*) into line with the use of *shall* in the second and third persons to express volition on the part of the speaker. The theory put up by some grammarians that *shall* is the proper word here because the Supreme Being is here introduced as the speaker expressing his will, has been conclusively refuted by MOLLOY (l.c. Ch. IX). The usage is simply a survival of the ancient practice of WYCLIFFE, in part followed by

subsequent translators of the Bible, TYNDALE, and the authors of the Authorized Version of 1611, and, no doubt, owes its long life to the reverential associations with the sacred origin of the Scriptures. For discussion of the so-called prophetic *shall* see also ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 317.

Even apart from the solemn language of prophecy we sometimes find writers of comparatively recent times deliberately seize on *shall* (*should*) to give to their style an archaic colouring.

And if, indeed, I cast the brand away, | Surely a precious thing, one worthy note, | Should thus be lost for ever from the earth. TEN., *Morte d'Arthur*, 85. (Thus also in 87.)

II. A curious application of *will*, as a tense-auxiliary, in the second person, which may, in a manner, be regarded as the counterpart of the use of *shall* in the first person discussed in 29, Obs. I, is that in which it takes the place of the commanding *shall*, and represents the fulfilment of the speaker's wish as an absolute certainty, not in any way depending on the pleasure of the party concerned, his obedience being taken as a matter of course. We find it used from what are practically opposite motives; i. e. either from a courteous reluctance to make anybody feel that he has to obey, or from a domineering temper which brooks no opposition (Ch. I, 40, *a*, I, Note). See MOLLOY, l. c., Ch. I, § 2, 23; also PAUL (*Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 192), who points out that the context, aided by intonation, may impart an imperative meaning to a future. ABBOT, (*Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 330) makes a similar observation.

i. Mr. Titmarsh, you *will* come down on Thursday to Mrs. Brough's party, where you will see some relations of yours. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 51. You'll stay to lunch, Marchbanks, of course. SHAW, *Candida*, I, (134). T.

ii. You will dine here to-morrow, and every day Miss Swartz comes, you will be here to pay your respects to her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 218.

I expect obedience, I have done all a father can for a son. You will wed, sir, as *I* wish; you will espouse my politics. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I. (The author has *I* printed in italic type.)

III. *Shall* appears to be mostly retained when in a direct quotation the third person is substituted for the first.

In the preface Mr. Sadler excuses himself on the plea of haste. Two thirds of his book, he tells us, were written in a few months. If any terms have escaped him which can be construed into personal disrespect, he shall deeply regret that he had not more time to revise them. MACAULAY.<sup>1</sup>)

IV. *Should* is regularly used in the archaic *as who should* say preceding a quotation.

And Miss Mills smiled thoughtfully, as who should say, "ye May-flies, enjoy your brief existence in the bright morning". DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXIII, 240 *a*.

V. *It should seem* (or *appear*) varies with *it would seem* (or *appear*), the latter being now the more usual. MACAULAY regularly has *it should seem* (or *appear*) (Ch. II, 34, Obs. II). Compare also O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 19, *d*; DEAN ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*<sup>8</sup>, § 327; MOLLOY, l. c., Ch. X.

i. It (sc. Wycherley's the Gentleman Dancing-Master) was then performed in Salisbury Court, but, as it should seem, with no better event. *Mac., Com. Dram.*, (574 b).

ii. It would seem — to look at the man as he sat there — that he had grown old before his time. *Mrs. Wood, East Lynne*, I, Ch. I, 1.

Observe also the use of *should* in a similar function with another subject than *it*, as in:

Those slums were places of torture for innocent men and women; or worse, stews for rearing and breeding men and women in such degradation that that torture should seem to them mere ordinary and natural life. *MORRIS, News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 72.

VI. The use of *should* in the phrase *one should think* is now somewhat archaic, and the word is, perhaps, sometimes interpreted in the sense of *ought*. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *shall*, 19, d.

It might, one should think, have crossed the mind of a man of fifty, who had seen a great deal of the world, that people sometimes do what they think wrong. *Mac., Hist. of the Rev.*, (338 a).

VII. A curious instance of divided usage is the alternate use of *will* and *shall* in the two phrases *a reward will be given* and *he shall be rewarded* with their variations, although both admit of the same interpretations, viz. that of conveying either a statement of a plain future, or a promise. Compare *MOLLOY*, l.c., XI, 96; *DEAN ALFORD*, l.c., § 332, 111.

### *Shall (should) and will (would) in Non-reported Questions.*

35. In questions *shall (should)* is the normal tense-auxiliary when the subject is either *I* or *we*.

i. Shall I not take mine ease in mine inn? *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 257. What should I have been but for his generosity? *H. J. BYRON*, *Our Boys*, I, (15).

The above quotations express an appeal to the opinion of the person(s) spoken to. They should be distinguished from such as convey an appeal to the will of the person(s) addressed. In the latter *shall* is not an auxiliary of tense, but a volition-expressing verb.

Sir, there is a gentleman below desires to see you; shall I show him into the parlour? *SHER., Riv.*, I, 2. (= Do you want me to show him into the parlour?)

36. Obs. I. *What shall I do?* with strong-stressed *shall* expresses helplessness or perplexity. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2202, a.

God help me! Oh! God help me! What *shall* I do? *READE*, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 49. (The author has *shall* printed in italics.)

What *shall* I do? Nobody to turn to, no help from any hand! *SWINNERTON*, *Nocturne*, II, Ch. V, III, 113. (The author has *shall* printed in italics.)

II. *Should* varies with *would* in direct questions addressed by the speaker to himself, which are reported in narrative style, so that the predicate is placed in the preterite tense, and the pronoun of the first person is replaced by that of the third person (40).

Where should he find Peggy? *W. J. LOCKE*, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XXI, 266.

Should she pretend to feel faint and slip into the hotel? GALSW., *Beyond*, IV, Ch. II, 359.

Would he get up and strangle her? *Should* she dash to the door — escape? *ib.*, III, Ch. VIII, 294.

ii. Which would she give up? Which follow — her lover or her child? *ib.*, III, Ch. XIII, 340.

What could she (*sc.* the wife who had left him) be like now? .. Was she still beautiful? Would he know her if he saw her? *id.*, *In Chancery*, Ch. IV, (479).

Would he ever be able to live down here, not seeing her? *id.*, *To let*, II, Ch. X, (1000).

III. *Would* appears to be the ordinary auxiliary in such reported direct questions as are addressed to the speaker by another person, so that the pronoun of the second person is replaced by that of the first person (40).

I was waited upon with the utmost obsequiousness in spite of my shabby clothes .. When *would* I be pleased to lunch? At what hour would I dine? Should my apartment be retained? — or was it not satisfactory? *Would* I prefer a 'suite' similar to that occupied by his excellency? MARIE CORELLI, *The Sorrows of Satan*, I, Ch. V, 55. (The second *would* is a volition-expressing verb.)

Thus also in similar questions addressed by the speaker to the *you* included in *we*.

"Madame will see that the dinners are quite simple," said M. Cavalcadour. "Oh quite!" said Rosa dreadfully puzzled. "Which would Madame like?" — "Which would we like, mamma?" Rosa asked. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V.

IV. For the rest the use of *will (would)* as mere auxiliaries in questions in connection with *I* is held to be dialectal.

i. Will I find her at the office still, I wonder? DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. II.

ii. "Do you stand there and say you're in love, David Wylie?" — "Me; what would I do with the thing?" J. M. BARRIE, *What every woman knows*, I, 7.

Also *will we?* is dialectal, but *would we?* perhaps, stands without this stigma, on the strength of the analogy with *would you?* (38, Obs. III).

i. Most of us want to know, "Where will we be after the war?" *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7162, 3*b*.

ii. Would we have liked to live with him? THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, I, 6.

There is not, of course, anything dialectal in the use of *will (would) I (we)?*, when the question is merely an echo of a preceding statement. "I suspect you; you will betray me." — "Will I? No; never." MOLLOY, *l.c.*, 51.

37. Also in the second person *shall* is the normal tense-auxiliary in questions. The analogous *should* is far less regular (38, Obs. III). The use of this *shall* tallies with that of *shall* in the expected answer: "*Shall you be going to church?*" — "*I shall*" or "*I shall not*".

i. Where shall you be found? LYTTON, *Caxtons*, IV, Ch. V, 103.

Shall you be there? SWEET, *Spoken Eng.*, 39.

ii. Master Davy, how should you like to go along with me and spend a fortnight at my brother's at Yarmouth? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 13*b*.

38. Obs. I. The conditional *should* is not "a pure auxiliary" of the conditional mood, as SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2293) makes it out to be, but a verb expressing some form of necessity in questions direct or indirect, introduced by *why* "implying the speaker's inability to conceive any reason or justification for something actual or contemplated, or any ground for believing something to be fact". O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 23, *a*. Compare also Ch. I, 43, *b*, 2.

i. You're not in love with me. Why should you be? MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, II, Ch. X, 211.

ii. I cannot see why money should have been referred to. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVI, 345.

Old Glubb does not know why the sea should make me think of my mamma. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 103.

This *should* is, of course, independent of person; i.e. it may have *I* or *we* as its subject as well as *you* or *he* (*they*).

"Are you astonished?" .. — "Why should I be astonished?" — "You approve?" .. — "Why should I not approve?" DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. XI, 161.

II. In enclitic questions, which "are questions in form only, not in meaning" (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2202, *c*), the auxiliary is *will* (*would*), the same, that is, which is used in the preceding statement; thus *You will be there, won't you? You would think so, wouldn't you?* SWEET, *Spok. Eng.*, 39.

Sometimes we find another auxiliary in the enclitic question than in the preceding statement. Thus not unfrequently in the works of G. ELIOT.

You will like to play, shan't you? G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VII, 385.

You wouldn't like to keep her, should you? *id.*, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. XIII, 103.

III. Also in other questions *will you?* and especially *would you?* are far from unfrequent. For illustration see also MOLLOY, *l.c.*, Ch. VI, § 2, 55; and FIJN VAN DRAAT, *De Drie Talen*, XIV.

i. Will you be at home at tea-time to-morrow? PINERO, *Iris*, I, (39).

Will you like to look forward to it? SWINNERTON, *Noct.*, II, Ch. IX, V, 194.

Will you want winter things? WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 7, 313.

Will you want money? GALSW., *To Let*, II, Ch. XI, (103).

ii. Would you ever have thought it now? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 27.

Would you like me to be married, father? G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI, 130.

Would you be afraid to go? HICHENS, *The Garden of Allah*, I, Ch. V, 82.

39. In the third person, whether singular or plural, questions have *will* (*would*). Thus *Will there be a large assembly? Would she have given her assent to the proposal if it had been submitted to her?*

40. Obs. I. In narratives of past events subordinate questions are sometimes, so far as word-order is concerned, changed into direct questions, the preterite tense being, however, preserved. Thus often when the head-sentence is understood. The change does not, of course, affect the choice of the auxiliary (36, Obs. II and III; also Ch. XIV, 8).

Mr. Bacon .. said he heard that Mr. Pendennis had a manuscript novel .. What would be his price for it? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 46.

Would no coach be coming up soon? he inquired. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jacob*, Ch. I, (461).

*Shall (should) and will (would) in Reported Statements.*

41. In reported statements the auxiliaries of tense and those of the periphrastic conditional in the apodosis of conditional sentences are applied partly on the same principle as in direct speech, partly on the principle that the same auxiliary should be employed as would be used if the indirect statement were replaced by the direct statement. The latter principle seems to be in favour with grammarians and appears to have guided most writers of earlier generations (O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 8). As will be seen in the following discussions, the two principles sometimes operate in harmony, sometimes clash.

Variable practice may also be observed in what may be termed doubly reported statements, i.e. reported statements which are contained in other reported statements, as in *He says (that) he hopes (that) I will be there* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2202, e). The head-sentence of such a complex of reported statements is often understood; thus in *He was afraid that we should not be able to come* (ib.), before which such a sentence as *He said* may be assumed to be understood.

In doubly reported statements there are a variety of possibilities. If the subjects of the members of which they are composed are respectively called *a*, *b* and *c*, the possibilities may be stated thus:  $a = b = c$ ;  $a = b$ , both differing from *c*;  $a = c$ , both differing from *b*;  $b = c$ , both differing from *a*. It may be assumed that a grammatically-schooled writer, if he at all pauses to consider which auxiliary he ought to use, will settle the problem by answering the question which auxiliary would be used if the last reported statement were converted into a direct statement. The reason why the grammarians' rule of employing in reported statements the same auxiliary as would have been used in the corresponding direct statement is often disregarded, is the difficulty of its observation especially in rapid speech and composition, and also frequently the peculiar nature of the head-sentence, which, in many cases, has the value of a mere adverbial adjunct. Thus the head-sentences in such sayings as *You will be here*, *I suppose*, *I have no doubt*, *I dare say*, *I hope*, etc. are, practically, expressive of mere degrees of probability.

As to *should* and *would* it may again be remarked that they follow, in the main, the rules observed in the use of *shall* and *will*, irrespective of their function, i.e. whether they are used as indicative or conditional preterites.

42. a) When the subject of the head-sentence, as well as that of the reported statement, are both *I* or *we*, the auxiliary in the latter is naturally the same as that used in direct speech; e.g.:



*I (we) think, "I (we) shall soon be quite well again" becomes I (we) think that I (we) shall soon be quite well again.*

i. Jessie, I'm afraid we shall not do much good if we always spend our mornings like this GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. VII, 110.

ii. I hoped we should not meet again, Mr. Dagworthy. *ib.*, Ch. X, 151.

b) Thus also in doubly reported speech.

He asked me if I thought I should mind increasing my income by the Pearl Fishery in Columbia. EMMA MARSHALL, *Mrs. Mainwaring's Journal*, I, 83.

43. Obs. I. The use of *will (would)* is regarded as 'incorrect', but is the rule in Irish and Scottish English, and in some dialects spoken in England. For copious illustration see MOLLOY *l.c.* Appendix, Ser. I. I could not foresee that I would be asked to defeat the ends of justice. J. K. LEYS, *A Dark Secret* (*Daily News*).

II. As in the case of direct speech (29, Obs. IV) *would* is not unfrequent before verbs of wishing or (dis)liking in the works of writers of pure English.

I thought that, if I were to choose, I would like this best. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 524.

44. Also when the subject of the head-sentence is a noun or a pronoun of either the second or third person, or any combination of these, *shall (should)* is mostly used, regardless of all consideration of direct or indirect speech.

i. \* I say, sir, you — you don't think I shall die? MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. II, 24.

\*\* Aunt Edmonstone said I should find you here. MISS YONGE, *Red cl.*, I, Ch. VII, 113. T.

ii. \* The skipper says we shall have to stay at Genoa for a week. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LIV, 198.

\*\* When Miss Pole heard of this, she nodded her head in great satisfaction. She had been sure we should hear of something happening in Cranford that night. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 186.

45. Obs. In the following quotations the use of *will (would)* is, most probably, due to dialect influences.

She has told me that I will never succeed in painting. MARIE CORELLI, *Ziska*, 167.

The station-master had to touch his cap and hope I would be comfortable. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. VIII, 145.

Every one who saw me thought I would die. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1892, 15 July.

46. From what SWEET observes in *N. E. Gr.*, § 2202, *e* — his exposition is, however, far from clear — it may be inferred that, in his opinion, *will (would)* is the normal auxiliary in doubly reported statements (41). His examples are *He says he hopes I will be there* and *He said he was afraid we would not (be able to) come*. About these two sentences he goes on to observe, "In both of these instances *shall (should)* is admissible, and would probably be substituted by many on second thoughts, but the construction with *will* is the genuinely colloquial one".

Notwithstanding the deference due to the words of so eminent a judge of English idiom, it may be doubted whether they represent ordinary practice. In the material bearing on the subject that has come to hand to the present writer *shall (should)* is at least as frequent as *will (would)*.

i. \* He hoped that with intelligent assistance I should meet with little to discourage me. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXIV, 234.

She hoped I should not feel myself too tired to join the party. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*

\*\* Miss Murdstone was good enough to say that she hoped I would repent. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 31.

The station-master had to touch his cap and hope I would be comfortable. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. VIII, 145.

ii. She never thought that we should be parted this way. READE, *Never too late*.

She hoped .. that we should not find the child a burden. EMMA MARSHALL, *Mrs. Mainwairing's Journ.*, I, 98. T.

She hoped we should meet later on. EL. GLYN, *Reflect. of Ambrosine*, III, Ch. III.

47. Combinations of *I* or *we* with a noun or another pronoun, most probably, take *will (would)* in the language of most speakers and writers.

Do you think .. that it will seem long to me, while I wait for her in the better land where I trust both you and I will be mercifully sheltered. DICK., *Two Cities*, III, Ch. XV, 414.

I have always expected that he and I would be brought together again in the course of business. *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. LI, 398 *b*.

48. When the subject of the reported statement is a noun or a pronoun of either the second or third person, both principles (41) require *will (would)*, in case the subject of the head-sentence is not identical with that of the reported statement. Thus *I (my father) said that you (John) would soon be a rich man*.

*Should* is used contrary to this rule in:

Are you the girl that George said should marry him? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 50.

*Should* may be understood as the preterite of the prophetic *shall* (34, Obs. I) in:

Hush, 'tis vain, I feel my end approaching. | This is what my mother said should be. MATTH. ARN., *Trist. & Iseult*, II, 78.

In the following quotation the use of *shall* may be due to the preceding *right*, which implies the imposition of a duty on the persons indicated by the subject of the reported statement:

I have some that love me yet, and whom I love, without expecting or having a right that they shall perfectly understand me. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 306.

49. Usage is divided in reported statements whose subject is *you* when the subject of the head-sentence is also *you*. According to MOLLOY (*l. c.*, Ch. IV, § 2, 44) we should say *You know you will be punished, if you break the law. You were afraid you*

would be drowned. You felt that you would be unequal to the task. So far as the available evidence goes, this does not, however, appear to be the ordinary practice of most writers. Possibly the interrogative form of the head-sentence in most of the following quotations accounts for the use of *shall* (*should*).

i. \* You have cause then, to think that you shall be — rich? LYTTON, *My Novel*, VIII, Ch. III, 20.

"Well, sir," said Mrs. Pipchin, "how do you think you shall like me?" DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. VIII, 70.

Do you think you shall like Morton? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch XXXI, 446.  
Do you think you shall like Sir Guy? MISS YONGE, *Redcl.*, Ch. II, 16 T.

\*\* But tell me candidly, Julia, had he never saved your life, do you think you should have been attached to him as you are? SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2.

ii. \* A compulsory Eight Hours' Day for all men in all trades! .. You know you won't get it! Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, III, Ch. IX, 400.

\*\* You thought you would do without me, did you? Well — you shall see — you shall see. WALT. BESANT, *The Ivory Gate*, Ch. VII, 136.

50. Also when the subject of the reported statement is a noun or a pronoun of the third person, or a word-group containing no pronoun of either the first or second person, *shall* (*should*) varies with *will* (*would*) in the case of the subject of the head-sentence indicating the same person (or thing). Taking into due account the pronouncements of English grammarians (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2288; MOLLOY, *l.c.*, Ch. IV, § 2, 45; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 202) and lexicographers (BRADLEY in the *O. E. D. s.v. shall*, 8, *d*; FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*), and of a mass of available material regarding the subject, it seems safe to say,
- α) that in Standard English *shall* is far more frequent than *will*,
  - β) that *should* is distinctly preferred to *would* by most writers of recognized standing, the latter appearing chiefly in connexion with *to be glad*, *to (dis)like* and words or word-groups of a similar import (29, Obs. IV).

i. Sir Hugo says he shall come to stay at Diplo. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VIII, Ch. LXV, 346.

ii. As for Pen he thought he should die. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIII, 137.  
Clive well knew that he should not be suffered to retain undisturbed possession of his conquest. MAC., *Clive*, (506 *a*).

iii. Lady Homartyn .. is incapable of believing that she won't always be able to have week-end parties at Claverings. WELLS, *Britling*, I, Ch. II, § 5, 46.

iv. Mr. Spenlow told me this day week was Dora's birthday, and that he would be glad if I could come down and join a little picnic on the occasion. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIII, 230 *a*.

Mrs. Jamieson most kindly and condescendingly said she would be happy to come. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VII, 126.

Perhaps he felt that he would have liked to have something on his arm besides a shawl. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.

He even felt sure he would never tire. GAUSW., *Beyond*, IV, Ch. VIII, 401.

51. Obs. I. In doubly-reported statements practice, most probably, follows the same lines.

i. The man in blue .. said he hoped he should be better acquainted with him. DICKENS, *Pickwick*, Ch. XXXVII, 343.

She said that she hoped she should hear from him in his new principality. KINGSLEY, *Westward Ho!*, Ch. II, 8*a*.

ii. Mamma told me to say that she will be ready in a moment. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Gadsbys*, 10.

Mr. George says Captain Pendyce told him he wouldn't be down till the ninety-third. GALSWORTHY, *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 4.

II. Thus also when the head-sentence is understood.

i. Tickell declared that he should not go on with the Iliad. That enterprise he should leave to powers, which he admitted to be superior to his own. MACAULAY, *Adelphi*, (767*b*).

Thank heaven, he should never see Jacob any more. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, Ch. I. (493).

ii. In an hour he would be meeting the eyes of one he loved much more. GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, IV, Ch. VIII, 402.

He considered whether it wouldn't be wiser to go to his own room and lock himself in .. But then he would miss Miss Corner. WELLS, *Britling*, I, Ch. III, § 3, 78.

III. In conclusion we append a few quotations exhibiting varied practice, not, apparently, warranted by the circumstances described.

The man says he would know that gentleman anywhere. He was old and had gray hair. He says that he should know him whenever he saw him. WALTER BESANT, *The Ivory Gate*, Ch. IX, 174.

I set my face against the sea-trip. Not, as I explained, upon my own account. I was never queer. But I was afraid for George. George said he should be all right, and would rather like it, but he would advise Harris and me not to think of it, as he felt sure we should both be ill. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. I, 11. (The use of the first *would* may be due to the following *like* (29, Obs. IV); that of the last *should* is in harmony with what has been observed in 44).

*Shall (should) and will (would) in Reported Questions.*

52. In reported questions the grammarians' principle mentioned in 41) seems to determine the choice of auxiliary in the majority of cases.

53. Naturally *shall (should)* is the normal auxiliary in Standard English when the subject of the head-sentence and that of the reported question are both of the first person.

I'm sure I don't know what I shall ever do, if I have to see much of you. DICKENS, *Chuzzlewit*, Ch. XX, 171*b*.

I wonder whether we should have quarrelled. G. ELIOT, *Dan Deron*, III, VIII, Ch. LIII, 184.

54. Also when only the reported question has a pronoun of the first person for its subject, the normal auxiliary in it is *shall (should)*, both principles (41) requiring this auxiliary.

The doctor says it is a question whether I shall live a month. CONNOR DOYLE, *Sherlock Holmes, The Boscombe Valley Mystery*.

He wondered whether we should ever be able to recover our property.

In the following quotation *would* is, probably, meant as a volition-expressing verb:

If a friend were to ask us whether we would advise him to risk his all in a lottery of which the chances were ten to one against him, we should do our best to dissuade him from running such a risk. MAC., *A d.*, (767 *a*).

55. *You* appears to take *will* (*would*) as the ordinary auxiliary of the future tense or conditional mood, irrespective of the subject of the head-sentence. MOLLOY (*l. c.* Ch. VI, § 4, 61), commenting on such a sentence as *You were deliberating with yourself whether you would go to Paris this summer*, observes that "*should* sounds pedantic and good usage seems to be against it". In the material that has come to hand *shall* (*should*) appears but once or twice.

Can you tell me, Sophia, my dear, whether you should know him again? GOLDSMITH, *Vic*, Ch. XXX, (457).

And now tell me what you shall do. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LIII, 176.

*Will* (*would*) is far more frequent.

I don't know now — what you will feel towards me. *ib.*, III, VII, Ch. LI, 123.

I do not know what you would have done — but for that. STANLEY WEYMAN, *The Long Night*, Ch. XIX.

*Will* (*would*) would naturally be preferred in connexion with *to* (*dis*)*like*, *to wish* and verbs of a similar import (29, *Obs.* IV; 38, *Obs.* III).

I only wondered how long you would like this. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LIV, 198.

Now ma'am, and no offence I hope, I ask what dance you would like next. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXVI, 282.

56. In the third person, both singular and plural, *shall* (*should*) is preferred by most writers, when the subjects of the two members of the sentence wholly or partly indicate the same person(s). *Will* and especially *would*, however, is by means rare.

i. \* The London Police .. are holding a mass meeting in Hyde-Park on Sunday to decide whether they shall undertake another strike. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8092, 1 *b*.

\*\* The young man stood for a moment and, hearing no footsteps or movement, wondered what he should do. STANLEY WEYMAN, *The Long Night*, Ch. II.

ii. \* She doesn't say when she will arrive. E. MARIA ALBANESI, *The Cap of Youth*, Ch. XIX.

\*\* Cromwell had to determine whether he would put to hazard the attachment of his party. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 125.

57. *Obs.* I. Similarly when the psychological subject of the head-sentence coincides with the subject of the reported question, *shall* (*should*) appears to be the ordinary auxiliary.

i. It was a toss-up with Tom Pinch whether he should laugh or cry. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XII, 102 *b*. (approximately = Tom Pinch was wavering between etc.)

ii. It was never very clear to him what he would do if he found a motor-car full of armed enemies engaged in undermining a culvert. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. II, § 7, 248. (= He was never clear what etc.)

II. Care should be taken to distinguish *shall* and *should* as auxiliaries from *shall* and *should* as volition-expressing verbs, as in:

He asked where he should send the pin. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 24.  
(= He asked where I wanted him to send the pin.)

58. a) When the subjects of the head-sentence and the reported question are not identical, *will* (*would*) is naturally the ordinary auxiliary if the direct question would also have a subject in the third person.

i. What do you think they will do first? STANL. WEYM., *The Long Night*, Ch. XIX.

ii. Mr. Spavin could not say when his friend would return. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53.

I wonder what she would think of us. GALSW., *Saint's Prog.*, II, III, 2§, 130.

b) When, however, the subject of the reported question corresponds to *you* in the direct question, *shall* (*should*) is preferably retained if *will* (*would*) would make the sentence ambiguous. Thus *shall you do it?* would mostly become in reported speech (*I asked him*) *whether he should do it*, because *whether he would do it* is liable to be taken for the report of *Will you do it?* which is a request. If, however, there is little risk of misunderstanding, the *shall* (*should*) of direct speech is more commonly turned into *will* (*would*). Thus *Shall you be there?* would commonly yield *I asked him whether he would be there*, there being little likelihood of the sentence suggesting an original request. See especially FOWLER, *The King's English*, 144.

Observing that she did not drink the wine, he asked her if she would like any other kind better. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LIV, 193.

The use of *should* instead of *would* is uncalled for in:

One of the jailer's servants . . . came to inform us that a person of distinction . . . sent his respects to the gentleman that was with us, and begged to know when he should think proper to be waited upon. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XXX, (455).

### Shortenings.

59. a) A plain future is sometimes hard to distinguish from weak volition expressed by *will*, in the spoken language usually shortened to [əl] or [l], which is mostly printed or written 'll, more rarely 'ull. Weak volition mostly implies a weak intention or promise (Ch. I, 47, *d* and *e*; 48 Obs. VI). It may be observed that in the case of a weak intention, the Dutch, as a rule, simply uses the present tense. When, on the other hand, a promise is implied, Dutch practice mostly has *zullen* not *willen*. Thus *I'll* (or *I will*) *write you word as soon as I know more about the matter* would correspond to *Ik schrijf u (wel) or Ik zal u schrijven, zoodra ik meer van de zaak weet*, according as an intention or a promise is meant.

Similarly *would* as the preterite indicative or conditional of volition-expressing *will* may, in its weakened form, differ but slightly from *would* as an auxiliary of the preterite future or preterite conditional. Being mostly weak-stressed it is, in the spoken language, usually shortened to [d], printed and written 'd, occasionally 'ud.

It is hardly necessary to add that also *will* and *would* as pure auxiliaries often undergo the above-mentioned shortenings.

I suppose, you must be Methodist to know what a Methodist 'ull do. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, VI, Ch. XLIX, 417.

Your father has left me as your guardian .. and I'll see what can be done. PERCY WHITE, *To-day*, Ch. II, 18.

b) Weak *shall*, either as a pure tense-sign or a weak volition-expressing verb, often loses its vowel in the spoken language. Thus *I shall* becomes [aɪʃl] with syllabic [l], or [aɪʃəl].

60. a) The use of such forms as *I'll* and *we'll* when a plain future is intended seems objectionable, but is by no means unfrequent.

"Rush the boats," sung out a coarse voice, "or we'll be drowned." RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VIII, 75.

Don't — don't look at me! Go away a little, and I'll — I'll be all right. GALSW., *Beyond*, III, Ch. VI, 282.

b) Similarly the use of *I'd* or *I'ud*, when the full form required by the sense would be *I should*, is not to be recommended.

I'd think shame to stick to nursie as that shadow sticks to me. STEVENSON, *My Shadow*.

61. *Shall not* and *will not* are, in the spoken language often modified into respectively [ʃa:nt] and [wount], spelled *shan't* and *won't*. These changes are independent of the functions in which the verbs are used.

#### Peculiar Applications of *shall* (*should*) and *will* (*would*) in Elizabethan English.

62. One of the first features of Elizabethan English as to the use of *shall* and *will*, which cannot fail to strike the attention of the observant student, is the frequent use of *shall* in the second, and especially the third person, to mark a plain future. As has already been observed in 20, *e*, this use of *shall* is to be regarded as a survival of the ancient practice, which, with some exceptions, employed *shall* in all persons to denote futurity.

She gives it out that you shall marry her. SHAK., *Oth.*, IV, 1, 115.

Our feast shall be much honoured in your marriage. *id.*, *Merch.*, III, 2, 214.

63. Also *should* as an auxiliary of the conditional is often met with in connexions where Present English would have *would*.

I find thee apt; | And duller shouldst thou be than the fat weed | That roots itself in ease on Lethe wharf, | Wouldst thou not stir in this. SHAK., Ham l., I, 5, 32.

The following quotation illustrating a use of *would* in a parallel case is appended to exhibit the unsettled nature of Shakespeare's practice: "A friendly eye could never see such faults." — "A flatterer would not, though they do appear | As huge as high Olympus." id., Jul. Cæs., IV, 3, 91.

64. Sometimes *shall* may have been intended as an auxiliary of a plain future, although to the present generation it would appear to be tinged with other notions, and, accordingly, be replaced by other verbs specially employed to express these notions; i. e. by:

a) modal *to be*, found in certain adverbial clauses in which the relation of condition is blended with a relation of purpose (Ch. I, 17).

Generally all warlike people are a little idle, and love danger better than travail (= work); neither must they be too much broken of it, if they shall be preserved in vigour. BACON, Es., XXX, 87. (Observe that the Dutch has *zullen* in this function.)

b) *to be* as a verb denoting weak compulsion, representing an action or state as influenced by an arrangement or a leading of Providence, etc. (Ch. I, 28).

i. It is so; the count Claudio shall marry the daughter of Leonato. SHAK., Much ado, I, I, 262.

ii. I whipt me behind the arras; and there heard it agreed upon that the prince should woo Hero for himself. id., I, 3, 63.

c) *to be certain* (or *sure*).

If you much note him, | You shall offend him. SHAK., Mac b., III, 34, 36.

Our son shall win. id., Ham l., V, 2, 298.

d) *will* as a verb expressing willingness to perform a command or request.

"Collect them all together at my tent: I'll before thee" — "I shall do't, my lord." id., Henry V, IV, I, 305.

Thus also when a person speaks of himself in the third person.

"Effect it with some care that he may prove | More fond on her than she upon her love: | And look thou meet me ere the first cock crow." — "Fear not, my lord, your servant shall do so" id., Mid s., II, I, 268.

e) *will* in an iterative function (Ch. I, 55, a).

To see, now, how a jest shall come about! id., Rom. & Jul., I, 3, 45.

Surely a man shall see the noblest works and foundations have proceeded from childless men. BACON, Es., VII, 18.

Sometimes the iterative function is vaguely blended with the notion that a certain condition has to be fulfilled for an action or state to come about. *Shall* then approximates to modal *shall*, as in *You shall learn music and forthwith all the world will be transformed for you* (Ch. I, 25, a).

A dog of that house shall move me to stand. SHAK., Rom. & Jul., I, I, 11. (Underlying notion: Whenever I see a dog of that house, I shall feel called upon to stand.)



Sometimes there is a secondary notion that a desirable or undesirable result will come about, if a certain condition is not complied with.

That young men travel under some tutor or grave servant, I allow well; . . . for else young men shall go hooded and look abroad little. BACON, E.S., XVIII, 51.

In accordance with Present-English practice SHAKESPEARE has *will* when the iterative function is blended with a notion of volition.

What great ones do the less will prattle of. Twelfth Night, I, 2, 33.

Foul deeds will rise, | Though all the earth o'erwhelm them to men's eyes. Hamlet, I, 2, 256.

*f) may* as a modal verb, especially in clauses introduced by *as*, or by *what* as a condensed relative.

Be merry, and employ your chiefest thoughts | To courtship and such fair ostents of love | As shall conveniently become you there. SHAK., Merch., II, 8, 45.

What Antony shall speak, I will protest | He speaks by leave and by permission. id., Julius Cæsar, III, 1, 238.

65. Conversely Elizabethan English also affords frequent instances of *will* (*would*) being used in the first person, apparently as a pure auxiliary of the future tense or conditional mood.

i. Perhaps I will return immediately. SHAK., Merch., II, 5, 52.

ii. I would be loath to foil him. id., As you like it, I, 1, 136.

66. Inconsistencies, too, are frequent.

I will sooner have a beard grow in the palm of my hand than he shall get one on his cheek. SHAK., Henry IV, B; I, 2, 23. (Observe that in this passage the auxiliaries are used diametrically opposite to present practice.)

And Moses said unto the Lord, Then the Egyptians shall hear it . . . And they will tell it to the inhabitants of this land. Bible, Numbers, XIV, 13—14.

The so-called 'prophetic' *shall* has in several passages been replaced by *will* in the Authorized Version, but also here consistency is not seldom far to seek.

And I heard a great voice out of heaven, saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and He will dwell with them; and they shall be His people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. Revel., XXI, 3.

The Revisers of 1881 have changed many *shall*s into *wills*, but seem, on the whole, to have set to work rather inconsistently. See MOLLOY, I. c., Ch. VIII, 77 ff.

67. In conclusion it may be observed that *shall* as now understood in the second and third persons can hardly be considered as a strict rendering of the future tense in the Hebrew, Greek or Latin texts from which the Authorized Version has been translated. This may sometimes be regarded as an improvement, since secondary notions implied in the latter are now explicitly expressed. Thus *shall* appears to be quite appropriate in *In the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die* (Gen., II, 17), because the words are intended as a threat; or in *He that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved* (Matth., XXIV, 13), because a promise is meant.

But the use of *shall* may also be open to grave objection, because the translation may be made to express a meaning which is foreign to the original text. Thus the words *I send unto you prophets, and wise men, and scribes; and some of them ye shall kill and crucify, and some of them shall ye scourge in your synagogues* (Matth., XXIII, 34), judged by the modern idiom, must be understood as a command, while they are evidently meant only as a simple future. A similar objection may be raised against *Before the cock crow, thou shalt deny me thrice* (Matth., XXVI, 34), and a great many other passages in which the so-called 'prophetic' *shall* is used.

#### FURTHER EXPEDIENTS TO EXPRESS FUTURITY.

68. Contingent fulfilment of an action or state in the future or in the posterior past, mostly with the secondary notion of great proximity, may also be expressed by a variety of phrases, which offer the advantage of being free from the notions of compulsion or volition which are apt to be associated with *shall* or *will*, but mostly have the disadvantage of marking rather the impending nature of the action or state than merely its futurity. Indeed the implication often is that, owing to circumstances expressed or unexpressed, the action or state does not come into fulfilment, so that it is open to doubt whether the phrase in question may be regarded as an expedient to mark futurity.
69. First in importance comes the phrase *to be going*, which primarily expresses a getting ready, a meaning which easily passes into that of purposing, and hence into that of contingent happening in the future. The notion of getting ready or purposing is clearly discernible in:

What are you going to do now? I am going to call on some ladies: will you come too? SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2255.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2255) and BRADLEY (O. E. D., s.v. *go*, 47, *b*) are agreed as to the phrase being used especially with regard to a near or immediate future. This may be true enough, but it can hardly be doubted that the notion of nearness or immediateness sometimes appears to be hardly present to the speaker's mind. Thus in:

I don't believe he remembers more than once in a year that he's going to be rich one day. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVIII.

Even in the country how are you to know who you're going to run up against? WELLS, *Bealby*, Ch. II, § 3, 39.

He was very disappointed at losing Vienna. He quite thought he was going to have it, and that he would do wonders there. HICHENS, *The Fruitful Vine*, Ch. I, 15.

Note a) *To be going* is occasionally found construed with a participle instead of an infinitive, even when little more than mere futurity appears to be in the speaker's mind.

I am going travelling upon a round of visits. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVI, 374.

I am going prospecting. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. XXVI, 174.

I'm not going fighting for England. I'm going fighting for Cissie — and justice and Belgium, — and all that. WELLS, *Britling*, III, Ch. I, § 13, 406.

β) Rather difficult to distinguish from the above are constructions of *to go* + infinitive or participle, which are rather frequently used to represent an action or state as in course of preparation, but naturally place the contingent fulfilment of that action or state in the near future.

i. Why, friends, you go to do you know not what. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 240.

I go to watch thy slumbers, and woe with him that shall intrude on them! SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 51.

In the next picture there's little frogs and devils sitting on the edge of the pot as 'e goes to drink. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, A, II. T.

ii. Altogether the man who goes sailing in the clouds is not likely to have too good a time. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6017, 2a.

Think how bad it is for the poor soldiers if we, women, go crying. GALSW., *Tatterdemalion*, I, 1, 24.

The fact, however, that these combinations are also found in the future (*I shall go to watch thy slumbers, I shall go sailing*), or in connexion with verbs which imply that the action or state referred to falls in the future time-sphere (*I must go to watch thy slumbers, I must go sailing*) is sufficient proof that they express more than mere futurity. γ) *To be coming* appears to be occasionally used in the same function as *to be going*.

Master thought that another fit of the gout was coming to make him a visit. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1, (213).

70. In the second place it is numerous combinations consisting of *to be* + a preposition or group-preposition which are frequently found to express a near or immediate future, together with a variety of secondary notions. The preposition or group-preposition in these combinations expresses a state and has, accordingly, the value of an adjective (Ch. LX, 46, b). The most important of these combinations are such as contain:

a) the preposition *about* or *near* (*nigh*).

1) *To be about* is distinguished from *to be going in* that it is less colloquial than the latter and is more distinctly used to express a near or immediate future. Nor is it, apparently, ever used in connexion with the indefinite *it* as the subject. Thus *It is going to rain* could hardly be replaced by *It is about to rain*. We mostly find it construed with an infinitive, occasionally with a gerund. EARLE (*Phil.*, § 580, f) observes, "*About* + gerund is not generally approved, yet it is met with in authors of repute". For illustration see also Ch. XIX, 22.

i. He was about to speak; but with her head turned from him she resumed [etc.]. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II.

ii I was just about falling into a doze, when he suddenly started up. POE, A. Gordon Pym, Ch. I, 11.

He was about retracing his steps, when he was suddenly transfixed to the spot by a sudden appearance. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXIII, 206.

Her son had not written to herself, to ask a fond mother's blessing for that step which he was about taking. THACK., Es m., III, Ch. II, 320.

2) *to be near* regularly governs a gerund, but *to be near to* is occasionally followed by an infinitive instead of the more common gerund. For illustration see also Ch. XIX, 22 and Ch. LX, 27—32.

i. The sun was near setting. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, Ch. XVII, 282.

ii \* He was unusually angry and near to losing his self-control. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. III, 187.

\*\* I at first was near to laugh. EMERSON, Eng. Traits, 80 a.

b) the prepositional phrases *in act to*, *(up)on the brink of*, *(up)on* (occasionally *at*) *the eve of*, *(up)on* (occasionally *at*) *the point of*, *(up)on the verge of* (Ch. LX, 13).

i. He lifted the cup, and was in act to pledge them, when he suddenly dropped it on the table. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 6 b.

His finger was upon the trigger, and he was in act to fire. But suddenly his companion uttered a cry of warning, and riding quickly to his side, placed a hand upon his arm. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 35.

ii. He has been on the brink of marrying her. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, Ch. XV, 241.

iii. \* He was on the eve of departing for the Continent. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, IX, Ch. I, 271.

\*\* The wench appeared, as it were, at the eve of bringing forth a bastard. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 55 b.

iv. \* Shelley died when he was on the point of completing his thirtieth year. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. I, 2.

\*\* I was just at the point of proposing to her. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

v. The trade negotiations with M. Krassin are on the verge of breaking down. Westm. Gaz., No. 8547, 3 a.

Note a) *To be in act to* + infinitive should be carefully distinguished from *to be in the act of* + gerund, which is used to represent an action as actually going forward (Ch. LVII, 27, c; Ch. LX, 13).

The Chevalier had his glass charged and was in the act of giving a toast. BUCH., That Winter Night, Ch. XVI, 131.

β) By the side of *to be on* (or *at*) *the point of* — gerund we also meet with *(to be) at point to* + infinitive, now used only archaically (Ch. XIX, 39; Ch. LX, 13). Compare also FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 622, Anm.

The foemen seemed at point to gain the rampart. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Wand., 27 a.

71. In the third place mention may be made of some miscellaneous phrases which also, in a manner, represent an action or state as impending and accordingly, bear some affinity to those mentioned above.

i. He is ready to fall madly in love with me. SHAW, Candida, II, (162).

The miserable foreigner ... looked ready to drop with fatigue. WILK. COLL., Wom. in White, I, 139.

ii. I was very nearly offering a large reward. OSC. WILDE, *The Importance of being Earnest*, I, 11.

iii. It (sc. my time) never did run out, however, but was brought to a premature end, as I proceed to relate. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XVII, 160.

iv. I stand to win a lot of money to nothing. GALSW., *The Country House*, I, Ch. II, 21.

v. She had been within half a minute of sending for Mr. Perry. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 451.

Yorick was this parson's name .. it had been so spelt for near — I was within an ace of saying nine hundred years. STERNE, *Tristr. Shand.*, I, Ch. XI, 7 a.

72. Also the Expanded Form of the verb is often employed to represent an action as prospective, or as lying in the immediate or near future. For detailed discussion see Ch. LII, 29 ff. See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2232; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 54, 4. But to return to what I was relating. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. X, 55 b. (= about to relate).  
He was beginning to tell that he came that moment from Mr. Allworthy's. *ib.*, IV, Ch. X, 55 a.

73. In conclusion it should be pointed out that there are a great many verbs which, from their meaning, necessarily place the action or state of the verb with which they are connected in the future time-sphere. Such are the numerous verbs which express some form of ability, compulsion, hoping, intending, permission, or volition. Some of these are mostly regarded as forming a kind of unit with the following verb, as in *He can (may, must, has to, is to, should, ought to, will) leave the country*. Some are considered to form the predicate by themselves, the following verb being more or less distinctly felt to stand in the objective relation to them. Thus in *He hopes (intends, wishes, etc.) to leave the country*. Compare Ch. XLV, 26.

74. a) The weakest of the above verbs, i. e. that in which the primary function is most distinctly subservient to that of marking futurity, is *to be*. Indeed this verb sometimes is a mere variant of *shall* or *will* used as tense-auxiliaries (7, b).

"We are not in a way to know what Mr. Bingley likes .. since we are not to visit". — "But you forget, mamma, .. that we shall meet him at the assemblies, and Mrs. Long has promised to introduce him". JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. II, 10.

The building is to be seven storeys in height, but a portion of it will rise to ten storeys. GOOD WORDS.

b) Sometimes the construction with *to be* varies with the Expanded Form, both placing the action concerned in the future time-sphere (Ch. LII, 32).

He was sailing for India next week. His wife was to remain in England for some months and then join him out there. MAX BEERBOHM, *Seven Men*, IV, 156

c) *To be* is especially resorted to as an expedient to indicate futurity when *shall* or *will* is not available (7, b).

We do not yet feel very much frightened as to the political effects, or even as to the direct social effects, wrought and to be wrought by the International Council of Women. *Times*.

d) A few quotations are added in which the coactive meaning of *to be* is particularly weak.

You must attest every sacrament, divine and human, never to disclose what I am now to tell you. *GODWIN, Cal. Wil., II, Ch. VI, 185.*

As the young gentleman who has just gone to bed is to be the hero of the following pages, we had best begin our account of him with his family history. *THACK., Newc., I, Ch. II, 14.*

The newly established Stockholm Firm, Severniya Ogni, is to publish a Russian translation of Mr. J. M. Keynes' "Economic Consequences of the Peace". *Times, Lit. Sup., No. 990, 12 b.*

75. a) It is of some interest to observe that also *should* is frequently enough met with to express futurity mixed with a weak coactive notion, i. e. as a strict synonym of *to be*. In this function we find it not only in the first, but also in the second and especially the third person. It will be observed that, in the case of the sentence suggesting a dispensation of Providence, *should* may be understood as the preterite of the prophetic *shall*.

i. But when the days drew nigh that I should wed, | My father sent ambassadors with furs | And jewels, gifts, to fetch her. *TEN., Princ., I, 40.*

ii. "What! is she off?" — "Who off?" — "The lady you should meet to-night". *BRIDGES, Humours of the Court, I, 679.*

iii. Hush, 'tis vain I feel my end approaching. | This is what my mother said should be. *MATTH. ARN., Trist. & Is., II, 78.*

Many a man strained his ears to listen to voices which should never again be heard. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse m., Ch. XVII, 158.*

She dressed for dinner and the concert that should follow. *FLOR. BARCLAY, The Rosary, Ch. V, 51.*

Thus also in reported statements, as in:

One thought alone reconciled her to the promised visit — she should meet Glaucus. *LYTTON, Pomp., IV, Ch. II, 94 b.* (The head-sentence on which the subordinate statement depends is understood.)

So groan'd Sir Lancelot in remorseful pain, | Not knowing he should die a holy man *TEN., Lanc. & El., 1418.*

In the following quotation *should* and *was to* are used in strictly identical functions:

Who would have thought that the Linnæa gathered all those years ago should prove the first link in the chain that was to bind us for ever. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse m., Ch. XL, 351.*

b) Sometimes *would* is used where, from the purport of the sentence, either *should*, or rather *was (were) to*, would, apparently, have been more appropriate.

Between him and this high-hearted woman had come that which would never be removed. *GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. XI, 168.*

She felt as though sleep would never come again. *ib., Ch. XI, 173.*

76. Like the adverbial verbs (Ch. XLV, 26) mentioned in the two preceding sections, the phrases *to be certain* (or *sure*) and *to be*

*likely* imply that the action or state expressed by the infinitive with which they are connected, belongs to the future time-sphere.

We are certain to meet him in the course of our rambles. O. E. D.

If we both stay, we both are sure to die. SHAK., Henry VI, A, IV, 5, 20.

We are likely to have some rain.

There is no occasion to place these phrases in the future tense, the likelihood they express being understood to be already existent at the time of speaking. Occasionally, however, we find them furnished with the auxiliaries of the future tense.

We shall be sure to meet there. LYTTON, Caxt., III, Ch. V, 103.

I shall be sure to find the house. EDNA LYALL, We Two, I, 31. T.

The use of the auxiliaries may be due to the influence of the constructions with the adverbs *certainly*, *surely*, or *likely*, which approximately convey the same meaning.

We shall very likely be up with another covey in five minutes. DICK, Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

Possibly also the practice is due to the adjective with the preceding *be* being felt to form a kind of unit with the following infinitive. The prefixing of *shall* or *will* may then be compared to the suffixing of the ending for the genitive to a compound noun or word-group (Ch. XXIV, 3). The form might, accordingly, be called a group-future.

## Use of the Tenses.

### The Present doing duty for the Future.

77. The present tense is, in the main, used in English in the same cases as in Dutch. In both languages its principal function is to represent the action or state referred to as belonging to the present time-sphere, this term to be understood in its widest sense so as to include also the neutral time-sphere (2, *e*).
78. As in Dutch, the present tense is frequently used in describing what belongs to the future time-sphere. This is a continuation of the Old-English practice, which, as has been observed in 20, made a sparing use of the auxiliaries of the future tense. In the case of the time-sphere of the utterance being the past, the preterite, of course, may take the place of the preterite future.
79. The English subjunctive having no future, the present is regularly used in this mood when the reference is to an action or state about whose fulfilment the speaker wishes to express his uncertainty.
80. When the indicative takes the place of the subjunctive, which, as has been shown in the preceding chapter, is the rule in many connexions, the present tense is mostly preserved; thus:

*a)* regularly in subordinate statements;

- i. Pray that no telegram . . arrives during the next five-and-twenty minutes. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. IX, 132.
- ii. You propose that Ellean leaves Highercoombe almost at once and remains with you some months? PINERO, *The Second Mrs. Tanqueray*, II, (92).
- iii. See that your father is kept perfectly quiet. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 42. T.

*b)* mostly in adverbial clauses;

- i. You must live on your pay till your father relents. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 257.
- ii. If it is fine, I will come early. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2231.

81. Obs. I. It has already been repeatedly shown in the preceding chapter that in Literary English *shall* is often used as a substitute for the subjunctive. In the same chapter it has been pointed out in 22, *b)* that the mood-functions of *shall* are mixed with tense-functions. It may here be observed that in all the connexions discussed the latter may be considered to be subservient to the former, because:

*a)* it is used irrespective of person, and it may be confidently said that in the second and third persons it would now be replaced by *will*, if it were strongly felt as a tense-sign;

*b)* in some varieties it varies with *should*, in others with *may*, both of which verbs fulfil functions which have nothing to do with tense.

II. It may here be repeated what has already been observed in Ch. XLIX, 34, Obs. IV, that it will hardly do to brand all use of *will* as a tense-auxiliary in adverbial clauses of time as dialectal. The student may also be reminded of the fact that *will (would)* are used in a conditional clause as auxiliaries, if it is felt to be the head-clause of another conditional clause which, although not actually expressed, may be readily supplied from the context (Ch. XLIX, 38, Obs. III; 40, Obs. III).

III. In the head-sentence of adverbial clauses of time or condition the verb is normally placed in the future tense, when what is described in them is yet to come into fulfilment. Thus in *He will enter upon his duties as soon as his health is thoroughly restored. They will stay at home if this rain continues.* Sometimes we find this verb in the present tense.

i. Then it is understood? When Wilfrid brings his wife to you, you receive her with all kindness? I have your promise? GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XXV, 341.

ii. But you know if your son, when of age, refuses to marry his cousin, her whole fortune is then at her own disposal. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, V, (231). Unless I see Amelia's ten thousand down, you don't marry her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

Benjamin, drive like mad! Jump in! If Mr. Merriman misses the train, you lose your place. WILK. COL., *Woman in White*, II, III, 196.

The following is a curious instance of divided practice:

Laugh and the world laughs with you: frown and you'll wrinkle your face. Proverb.

82. Apart from those cases in which a present indicative is substituted for a present subjunctive, the use of the present in describing what is yet to come about is less common in English than it is



in Dutch. As will appear from the following illustrations, it is mostly a personal subject with which such a present is connected, and the probability is that in the majority of cases we have not to deal with mere futurity, but futurity blended some other notion, mostly some form of volition or coercion, i. e. the force of an intention or a binding arrangement existing at the moment of speaking. To put it briefly: the present tense often does duty for the future, if the future action is considered as part of a programme or plan already fixed.

83. The use of the present for the future, mostly with the above connotation, is especially common with verbs which denote a coming or a leaving; practically only when futurity appears from some adverbial adjunct or clause denoting or implying a future point of time.

*to arrive*: Ask when the company arrives at Naples. EDNA LYALL, *Kn. Er.*, Ch. IV, 37.

*to come*: Frank comes to-morrow — I had a letter this morning — We see him to-morrow by dinner-time to a certainty. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXIII, 176. 176. (The use of *see* instead of *shall see* makes rather an incongruous impression.)

*to get back*: What time do you get back from the City to-morrow afternoon? ANSTEY, *In brief Authority*, Ch. II, 23.

*to go*: "Edward," said Miss Murdstone, "let there be an end of this. I go to-morrow." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 25 *b*.

*to leave*: The train leaves in five-and-twenty minutes. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XV, 223.

*to meet*: To-night we meet again. LYTTON, *Pompeii*, III, Ch. X, 86 *b*.

*to move*: I do not move from this room, until from Henric's own lips I hear that he is your husband. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. VIII, 101.

*to part*: Mrs. Todgers, this day week we part. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IX, 69 *a*.

*to sail*: We sail to-morrow. STEVENSON *Treas. Isl.*

*to start*: He starts for the Continent to-night. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2231.

These verbs may, of course, be placed in the future tense, like any other verb. In that case there is no clear association with the secondary notions mentioned above (82).

The Parson writes word that the lad will come to-day. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, IV, Ch. XXIII, 284.

See to what you wish to take with you; we shall leave to-night. *ib.*, II, XIII, Ch. XII, 65.

84. The use of the present tense for the future is by no means confined to the verbs of coming or going. But, although it would be hard to define the nature of the verbs which admit of this practice, there is no doubt that it is inadmissible with most verbs. Thus it would be difficult to find documentary evidence for such sentences as *\*I write a letter to-morrow*, *\*I light a cigar when the ladies have left*, *\*I wait till he comes*, *\*The servant cleans the room in a day or two*.

The following verbs have been found with a present instead of the future. In most of the quotations illustrating them the connotation mentioned in 82 is discernible.

- to be*: Are you disengaged this evening? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 21.  
*to begin*: We begin work next morning. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 126.  
*to die*: With the rise of the sun you die. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, X, Ch. IV, 349.  
*to dine*: To-morrow your Papa and I dine out. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.  
*to give*: Diomed gives a grand feast next week. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. VII, 30 a.  
*to let off*: I don't let you off, mind, under a week. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 37.  
*to marry*: You are not married before noon. DICK., *Crick.*, III, 87.  
*to preach*: Next Sunday I preach my farewell sermon. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. IV, 26.  
*to publish*: The House of Cassell publish next week Prince von Bülow's great work, *Imperial Germany*. *Athen.*, No. 4500, 148.  
*to receive*: She receives this evening. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. VII, 175.  
*to remain*: Do you remain long here? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 21.  
*to see*: Do you see the Bishop this morning? MRS. WARD, *Rich. Meynell*, I, Ch. V, 96.  
*to stay*: How long do you stay? CONWAY, *Called back*, 124. T.

A few quotations can be added in which the verb has a non-personal subject.

- to begin*: Classes don't begin until Monday morning. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, II, 21.  
*to play*: The grand match is played to-day. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VII, 58.  
*to take place*: When does the ceremony take place? *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 279.

The following is a curious instance of divided practice:

The winter session commences on Thursday, October 11, 1917. The preliminary examination will commence on September 14. *Athen.*, No. 4620, 370 a.

85. But also when it is difficult to find any notion of a pre-conceived plan in the sentence, the present is not unfrequently found to do duty for the future.

a) This applies especially to predicates with *to be*, stating the age a person will attain at a certain time.

This day fortnight, when I'm of age, I'll prove my confidence. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 76.

I am nineteen in another month. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, I, 10.

She is eighteen in January. BUCH., *Wint. Night*, Ch. VIII, 71.

I am 55 next week. *Punch*, No. 3705, 22 b.

Of a similar nature are the predicates in:

The quarter is not due till Christmas. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVI, 234.

I am orderly to-morrow. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XI, 98.

It is hardly necessary to add that the future tense is quite as frequent, if not more frequent, with predicates of the above type.

He will not be eighteen till next February. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 12.

b) Also in the following examples there is no clear indication of any arrangement made beforehand:

It is ten to one but you are thrown together again in the course of a few years. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXIX, 229.

I bet you half-a-crown that before nightfall I have seen him. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2243.

You don't seem to care whether you're married or not. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch VII, 110.

86. In almost all the above examples the futurity of the action or state described appears distinctly from some adverbial adjunct or clause. Occasionally such an indication is, however, entirely absent, so that futurity is to be inferred from the context alone. Thus in:

Do you remain here? DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 19

Who lays the stone? id., Chuz., Ch. XXXV, 279 b.

I promised them that never a week should pass in future I did not visit them. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

How old he's getting! How I shall miss him! I hope nothing happens to him. HUGH WALPOLE, The Captives, II, Ch. I, 89.

87. It remains to say something about certain cases in which we have to deal with what may be called an apparent future, so that the use of the future tense would be out of place.

a) Such a sentence as *To-morrow is bank-holiday* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2231) does not describe a happening of the future, but rather states the fact that to-morrow falls on a certain date on which a bank-holiday is observed. Of a similar nature is:

To-morrow is the 25th. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. IV, 31 a.

b) In *Does the moon shine to-night?* the speaker wishes to be informed as to whether the time mentioned is one at which the moon shines. Hence he uses the present time. For a similar reason the present is used in:

Do we go through those ancient gates? WELLS, Brilling, I, Ch. I, § 4, 13.  
(= Are those gates through which we have to go?)

When's dinner, James? SHAW, Candida, II, (153). T. (= What is the time set apart for dinner?)

c) Again in such a sentence as *All rests upon that interview* (LYTTON, My Novel, II, VIII, Ch. XIII, 71), although the reference is to a future event, the speaker is concerned with the results of the coming event as they present themselves to his mind at the moment of speaking, not with the results as they will shape themselves after that event.

88. In conclusion attention is drawn to what may be regarded as the counterpart of the historic or dramatic present (91), i. e. the use of the present instead of the future in representing a prospective action or succession of actions as being performed before the person(s) spoken to.

Good, speak the word: my followers ring him round: | He sits unarm'd; I hold a finger up; | They understand. TEN., Ger. and En., 337.

**The Present doing duty for the Perfect or the Preterite.**

89. As in Dutch, momentaneous verbs denoting the receiving, giving or soliciting of information are sometimes placed in the present instead of the perfect, although the reference is to an action of the past. Compare PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 191.

i. \* I hear you made a speech yesterday. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2227.

\*\* I learn from your letter, received this morning, that you intend returning to town on Saturday. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt.*, I, Ch. XXI, 325.

\*\*\* I am told she has six hundred thousand pounds in the Threes. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXVI, 386.

ii. Thorhill tells me that that part of his property .. produces £ 2000 a year. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. XIV, 129.

iii. He asks me to call and see her. *ib.*, II, X, Ch. III, 164.

90. There is also substitution of the present for the perfect in phrases preceding statements which give the views, sentiments, experiences, etc. of writers of an earlier day than the present.

Gibbon tells us in his history that [etc.]. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2228.

Shakespeare says something about worms, or it may be giants or beetles, turning if you tread on them too severely. KIPLING, *Plain Tales*, XX, 152.

91. In lively narrative the present is sometimes used in describing happenings of the past. This is the so-called historical present or *præsens historicum* of grammarians. The name is rather a misnomer, the purpose of this application of the present being to remove the relating of past events from the domain of history, and describe them as happening under the very eyes of the listener(s) with a view of imparting to the narrative the vividness of a drama enacted before them. The term dramatic present, which has been proposed by JESPERSEN (*Tid og Tempus*, V, 385; *id.*, *Philos. of Gram.*, Ch. XIX, 258), on a suggestion of BRUGMANN, seems, therefore, to be a more apposite appellation. In English, so far as appears from the printed documents of the language, the historical or dramatic present is not particularly frequent, but it by no means follows that it is more or less foreign to the genius of the language, and that foreign influences should be at work when it appears in print. It is, indeed, highly probable that it is not peculiar to any particular language or group of languages, but is common to all human speech. The dearth of instances in the documents of certain periods of English literature does not prove that this device of lively description was little practised by the English of those days, but rather that the writers, wishing to preserve a literary character for their compositions, did not wish to use a form of speech which was in especial favour with the common people. See, however, EINENKEL, *Syntax*, § 7; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2228; KRUISINGA, *Handbook*<sup>1</sup>, § 97, 139; DEUTSCHBEIN,

System, § 53, 2. All these grammarians are agreed in pronouncing it unfrequent in English, DEUTSCHBEIN ascribing its unfrequency to the fact that it is incompatible with the use of adverbs of past time, such as *yesterday*.

At last we shuffle along the crowded platform, board the packed train. The worst is over; panting and radiant, with haunting radiance of sightless eyes, she sinks into the seat; the rain swishes against the carriage windows; she heeds it not as silently, with folded hands, she nears El-Dorado. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8557, 10 *b*.

92. Obs. I. The historical present is, naturally, oftenest used when distinct indications have been given that the happenings to be recounted belong to the past time-sphere. In the printed language we, accordingly, find it mostly after a preceding preterite.

Thrice he walk'd | By their oppress'd and fear-surprised eyes, | Within this truncheon's length; whilst they, distill'd | Almost to jelly with the act of fear, | Stand dumb, and speak not to him. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 206.

As I was sitting at breakfast this morning, there comes a knock at my door. DICK., *Chuzzle*, Ch. XXXIX, 307 *a*.

In not a few cases we find the historical preterites rather suddenly resumed after a succession of historical presents, sometimes for no apparent reason.

I woke — where was I? — Do I see | A human face look on me? ' And doth a roof above me close? | Do these limbs on a couch repose? | Is this a chamber where I lie? | And is it mortal, yon bright eye, | That watches me with gentle glance? | I closed my own again once more, | As doubtful that the former trance | Could not as yet be o'er. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, XI.

II. Special mention may be made of the practice, frequent in colloquial and vulgar language, of using *says I* and *says he (she, my brother, etc.)* instead of *said I* and *said he (she, my brother etc.)* in appended and parenthetical sentences accompanying quotations.

"It was folly and ingratitude, Mr. Brough," says I; "I see it all now; and I'll write to my aunt this very post." THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 62.

"You had better do no such thing," says Brough bitterly; "the stocks are at ninety, and Mrs. Hoggarty can get three per cent for her money." *ib*.

Thus passim in this work of fiction, and many others by THACKERAY. In dialects *says he* is often used as a needless piece of padding.

My old Master, as war a knowin' man, used to say, says he, "If e'er I sow my wheat wi'out brinin', I'm a Dutchman," says he. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 23.

III. Different from the above are descriptions of past events in the present tense which are introduced by a statement giving notice that what follows happened in the past.

Let me remember how it used to be and bring one morning back again. I come into the second-best parlour after my breakfast, with my books, and an exercise-book and a slate. My mother is ready for me at her writing-desk [etc.]. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 27 *a*.

Similar to this is the practice of placing the outline of a story or the plan of a literary composition in the present tense.

The story of the poem is briefly this. — Sir Aylmer Aylmer is one of the English landed gentry, proud of his birth and station; his wife, once a well-known beauty, is a mere shadow of himself. They have one lovely daughter

Edith, sole heiress to their wealth and fame [etc.]. WEBB, *Introd. to Ten's Aylmer's Field* (Macm. Eng. Clas)

In the *Tatler* there had been no machinery or next to none; the authorship is supposed to be in the hands of the snuffy astrologer, mountebank and quack-doctor, Isaac Bickerstaff, assisted sometimes by his half-sister Jenny Distaff; no one else has anything to do with it. T. ARNOLD, *Introd. to Addison*, 16 (Clar. Press).

IV. Shifting from the past to the present tense is often practised in picturing a string of incidents and circumstances which is to serve as a background for the representation of subsequent events.

It is the evening of the 21st of June 1788. The day has been bright and the sun will be more than an hour above the horizon, but his rays, broken by the leafy fretwork of the elms that border the park, no longer prevent the ladies from carrying out their cushions and embroidery . . . (Here follows a long description of the appearance and doings of the two ladies, the present tense being used throughout. Then the narrative begins, and the preterite is used in describing the successive events). G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II. Ch. II.

A similar process may be observed in the language of stage-directions, which are also meant as a kind of background to the drama proper. He goes out hurriedly. And Barthwick, placing a chair, motions to the visitor to sit; then, with pursed lips, he stands and eyes her fixedly [etc.]. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, I, 3, (3t). T.

V. Sometimes a pluperfect is followed by the present instead of the preterite of a word(-group) of declaring, such as *to say*, *to tell*, *to explain* etc., the relation of what forms the theme of the communication being continued in the preterite or pluperfect.

His lordship had no sooner disappeared behind the trees of the forest, but Lady Randolph begins to explain to her confidante the circumstances of her early life. The fact was she had made a private marriage [etc.]. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIX, 614.

### The Perfect compared with the Preterite.

93. Also as to the use of the preterite, English practice is, in the main, like that followed in Dutch and German. Its most important function is to state distinctly that the action or state referred to belongs to the past time-sphere. It is, accordingly, the natural tense of narrative and history. Thus in:

While the present century was in its teens, and on one sunshiny morning in June, there drove up to the great iron gate of Miss Pinkerton's academy for young ladies, on Chiswick Mall, a large family coach [etc.]. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. I, I.

94. a) English practice, however, differs materially from that of Dutch, and most of the other West-European languages, in its use of the preterite as compared with that of the perfect tense.

It has been observed in 8) that one of the functions of the perfect is to describe an action or state of the past whose results or consequences extend to the present; e. g.: *I have written a letter*; result: *I have a letter in a finished state*. *He has received*

*a good education*; result: He is a well-educated man. *I have never been in London*; result: I am strange in London (DICK., Bleak House, Ch. IV, 22). But we could not say *Chaucer has been in Italy* any more than *Chaucer is not strange in Italy*. It is in accordance with the above principle that the perfect is used in:

Neither among Christians, nor among Muslims has the Turk done other than destroy whenever he has conquered. Never has he shown himself able to develop in peace what he has won in war. Westm. Gaz., No. 8273, 1 b.

b) Now to the English mind the placing of an adjunct or clause denoting a point of time in the past severs, or at least weakens (100), the connexion of the past action or state with the present circumstances, with the result that the preterite takes the place of the perfect. To a Dutchman this is not necessarily the case, any more than to a Frenchman or German, and therefore in their language the use of such an adjunct or clause does not, as a rule, affect the application of the perfect. Thus *I wrote a letter yesterday* corresponds to the Dutch *Ik heb gisteren een brief geschreven*. Ample illustration of the normal use of the preterite being afforded by practically every page of prose or poetry, we may confine ourselves to a few quotations:

He asked me to be his wife two years ago. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (51).

He broke his vows long since. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 9a.

95. Obs. I. The time denoted by the adverbial adjunct or clause which causes the use of the preterite, is felt to be separated from the moment of speaking by a longer or shorter space of time. This is not the case with adjuncts or clauses denoting a length of time subsequent to an event in the past, i.e. to the adverb *since*, or to word-groups containing the preposition or conjunction *since* when denoting a length of time measured from the time of a certain event (122 ff). Thus we find the perfect in such sentences as *I have not seen him since* (or *after*) *his departure*. *I have not seen him since* (or *after*) *he left the country*. Nor is there any notion of a dividing space of time in the speaker's mind when he uses such an adverb as *always*, *ever*, *never*, *often*, *rarely*, etc. (105), which imply indefinite repetition or continuance of an action or state; or such an adverbial adjunct as *before*, *in times past*, *in former times*, *formerly* (104), which denote a length of time that may extend to the moment of speaking. These adverbial adjuncts, and others of like import, may, accordingly, be met with in sentences with the predicate in the perfect tense. Detailed discussion and illustration of the tense-possibilities in connexion with the above adjuncts will be given below.

II. It follows also that when no intervening space is assumed between two states of things one belonging to the present, the other to the past time-sphere, the perfect is mostly used in describing the latter. She (sc. nature) leaves these objects to a slow decay, | That what we are, and have been, may be known. WORDSW., *Hart-leap Well*, 174.

I certainly have had my share of beauty, but I do not pretend to be anything  
H. POOTSMA, III 1.

extraordinary now. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 8 (Substitution of the preterite for the perfect would raise expectations of an adjunct or clause of the past, such as *when I was a young woman*.)

The phrase *Time* (or *The day*) *was* implies an intervening space of time between the past and the present moment; hence the preterite tense. SHAKESPEARE, however, has the perfect.

i. Time was, when a poet sat upon a stool in a public place, and mused in the sight of men. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. XIV, 176.

Time was, when this plan of two legislatures for Ireland . . might have been accepted. That was in the days when there was a great body of moderate opinion in Ireland. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8267, 2 a.

The day was, when the Portuguese led the world in audacious exploration. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 16, 317 d.

ii. The time has been, | That, when the brains were out, the man would die. SHAK., *Mac b.*, III, 4, 78.

96. It should, furthermore, be observed that sentences with the perfect may stand, and often do stand, isolated, i. e. not followed by other sentences, nor necessarily raising expectations of any other sentence(s) to follow. This applies equally to those in which the preterite takes the place of the perfect, owing to the occurrence of an adjunct or clause denoting a point of time in the past. Conversely sentences with the narrative or historical preterite (93) normally do not stand by themselves, but are followed by others describing the ensuing happenings or, at any rate, raise expectations of such to follow. Thus *I have read David Copperfield* and *I read David Copperfield when I was a boy* are in themselves complete statements, not necessarily calling for further communications. Such may, indeed, follow in some such terms as *I (have) found many beauties in the novel, I (have) admired the humorous passages more than the sentimental ones*, etc.; but the mind would not be unsatisfied, if the speaker were to stop at the first mention of the book.

But the case is different when we read the opening sentence of a narrative or history, e. g.: *There once lived in a sequestered part of the county of Devonshire one Mr. Godfrey Nickleby* (DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. I, 1 a). This we distinctly apprehend as the fore-runner of the relation of a succession of events and incidents. From the above it follows that we should distinguish two varieties of preterites, which may, respectively, be called the isolated and the narrative or historical preterite.

97. Now that the principles underlying the use of the perfect and preterite tenses have received due attention, it remains to discuss some cases in which doubts may arise as to the way in which these principles are applied.
98. When the predicate is not attended by an adjunct or clause answering the question *when?*, there may yet be in the speaker's mind a more or less distinct thought of a point of time in the



past with which the action or state described is associated. Thus when we say *He lived here for some time*, we have in our minds some such adjunct or clause as *in his boyhood*, *some time ago*, or *before he settled at Paris*, etc. If in the above sentence the perfect is substituted for the preterite, the implication is *He lives here still*.

Some adjunct denoting a point of time in the past is associated with the preterites in:

i. "I have been very ill." — "I thought you looked pale." ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 127. (i.e. Even before the moment you told me, I thought to myself that you looked pale.)

We said that the history of England is the history of progress. MAC., Hist. of the Rev., (323 b). (i.e. when we were on the subject.)

II. "I am afraid we have kept you waiting." — "Oh no, not at all: we were looking at these photographs." SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1238. (i.e. while we were waiting for you.)

I am not frightened, . . . only I was thinking how terrible is war! BUCH., Wint. Night, Ch. I, 4.

iii. And these three days — I saw you were changed — but I said [etc.]. SUTRO, The Choice, II, (61). (i.e. whenever I looked in your face in the last three days)

99. When the predication referred to falls within a certain undefined space of time not distinctly thought of as severed from the moment of speaking, the perfect appears to be the normal tense.

I have been infinitely more affected in many English cathedrals when the organ has been playing, and in many English country churches when the congregation have been singing. DICK., Pict. from Italy, Rome.

CARO (in Anglia, XXI, 56 ff), commenting on this sentence, observes that DICKENS would have used the preterite if, at the time of writing, the playing of the organ and the singing of the congregation had been abolished, say by Act of Parliament, while, in that case, instead of *I have been infinitely more affected*, he would have used some such turn of expression as *I often used to be affected*.

It is on similar considerations that the perfect may be explained in:

I have seen him in by-lanes a dozen miles distant from the town when I have been riding back from the hunt. LYTTON, Ken. Chil., II, 83. T.

Sir Arthur Helps, speaking of Dickens, just after Dickens' death, said, "His powers of observation were almost unrivalled . . . Indeed, I have said to myself when I have been with him, he sees and observes nine facts for any two that I see and observe." MARZIALS, Life of Dick., Ch. II, 32.

The right honourable gentleman, once or twice, when I have inquired into these things, has sheltered himself behind the plea that this is a self-governing colony. Daily News, 1902, 17 Jan.

Sometimes, in referring to different actions falling within the same undefined space of time, there is a difference of tense which it is difficult to account for.

There have been times in my life when I *required* soothing, and then I *have felt* that a whiff of tobacco stills and softens one like a kiss of a little child. LYTTON, Ken. Chil., II, 120. T.

100. Although English is reputed to be very strict in the use of the preterite when the predicate is accompanied by an adjunct or clause denoting an epoch of the past, yet observant reading will soon bring to light a goodly number of instances in which the rule is disregarded. Nor can it be urged that the English in which such instances are met with is of questionable purity. A careful observation of the cases in which the perfect is used contrary to the rule will reveal the fact that in almost all of them the adjunct denoting the epoch of the past has back-position or is, at least, placed after the predicate. It is, indeed, not improbable that deviation from the ordinary practice is in the majority of cases due to this fact: the speaker starting to make a statement without any clear thought of a past epoch, the latter occurring to him almost by way of an afterthought as he approaches the conclusion. This conjecture we sometimes find actually confirmed by the text itself; thus in:

There is something of a doleful air about that room to me, for Peggotty has told me — I don't know when, but apparently ages ago, about my father's funeral, and the company having their black cloaks put on. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 7 *b*.

Of the numerous examples with an anomalous perfect that have come to hand only a few can be printed here.

I am told he has had another execution in the house yesterday. SHER., *School*, I, 1, 365).

The Englishman .. has murdered young Halbert Glendinning yesterday-morning. SCOTT, *Mon*, Ch. XXX, 330.

I have made the same remark when I was younger. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 419 T.

Indeed I have seen Blanche, six or seven years ago, when she was a girl of eighteen. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 191.

I need not to swear that oath, for I have sworn it long ago. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVI, 202 *a*.

All these instances have been given in *Notes and Queries* many years ago. SKEAT, *Notes & Quer.*, 1889, 1 March.

I have been to Richmond last Sunday. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, Ch. IV, (478).

We have had well over 800,000 casualties in France last year. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 111, 186.

These mountains have been to a considerable extent explored by the present writer in 1892. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 18, 372 *c*.

101. It is especially when there is a distinct reference to a state of things resulting from an activity in the past that the perfect is used notwithstanding the occurrence of an adverb denoting an epoch of the past. Thus in such a sentence as *Evidently it has thawed during the night* (O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, *a*) the attention is directed to the moisture on the grass, shrubs, etc., as the result of the phenomenon of thawing (122). In the following quotations the use of the perfect may be similarly accounted for:

It is for a poor gentleman who has been taken ill at my house four days ago. STERNE, *Tristram Shandy*, 118.

The flagon last night has addled my poor head sadly. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V.

Have you rested well to-night? NEVILLE, *Plato Rediv.*, 15. (O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, d.)

Similarly when the adjunct is suggested by some other element of the sentence.

"Good morning! I hope you have slept well." — "No, I've had a very bad night." LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 108.

The use of the preterite in sentences of this type seems abnormal; thus in:

What sort of a night did you have? E. F. BENSON, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. I, 20.

Sometimes the state of things resulting from the past event is more or less distinctly indicated by a subsequent or preceding part of the sentence.

i. Those who in childhood have had solitary communings with the sea know the sea's prophecy. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. I, 1.

ii. If a man gives ten, twenty, thirty or fifty thousand pounds to some great object, it is almost certain that he is a man who has worked very hard in his young days, and has denied himself many a happy holiday and many a lawful pleasure. CHESTERTON, (*Daily News*, 1907, 1 Aug.)

102. English is wavering between the perfect and the preterite when the epoch mentioned is one which contains the moment of speaking, as is the case with that indicated by *to-day*, *to-night*, or one of the many possible combinations with *this*, such as *this morning* (*afternoon, evening, week, month, year*, etc.).

i. I have never lived so wicked a life as I have done this twelvemonth. WYCH., *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, 1, (139).

I have had a twinge of the gout this morning. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 375. T.

ii. How did you like the speech to-night? MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, Ch. IX, 406.

This summer I had typhus fever, and could not work. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. I, 10.

In the language of reporters, writing in the evening about the day's happenings, the preterite is, naturally, the ordinary tense.

His Majesty the King this morning received the Rev. William Booth. *Daily News*, 1904, 23 June.

103. Phrases containing the preposition *within*, such as *within the last few weeks*, etc., necessarily include the moment of speaking and, accordingly, cause the predicate to be placed in the perfect.

Liberals .. can refer back with confidence to what has been achieved in South Africa within our own time. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8263, 2a.

104. Also such adjuncts as *before*, *formerly*, *in former times*, *in the past*, *in past times*, *previously*, etc., when covering the entire past,

have the predicate with which they are connected, in the perfect tense.

i. You are an older hand at this than I thought you, Tupman, you have been out before. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX. '66.

ii. I've seen many a gentleman drunk formerly. THACK., *Pend.*

iii. It was one of those epidemic frenzies which have fallen upon great cities in former ages of the world. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 205. T.

iv. If it (sc. spelling reform) were prescribed with never so much care, it would soon be deviated from in the future, just as it has been in the past. SKEAT, *Notes & Quer.*, 1904, 17 Dec.

v. I have in times past more than once taken my political life in my hands. *Daily Tel.*, 1903, 8 Sept.

vi. An anabaptist is one who baptizes over again, whether frequently as a point of ritual, or once as a due performance of what has been ineffectually performed previously. O. E. D., s.v. *anabaptist*.

Note α) Even *when* may indicate a length of time extending to the moment of speaking and, accordingly, be connected with a perfect. "I didn't ever think, you would care to come, my little Humphrey." — "Oh! but I often should though, only I knew you would rather have him." — "Oh, hush! hush! when have you wanted to come?" FLOR. MONTG., *Misunderstood*, 257. T.

β) When the predicate connected with any of the above adjuncts is placed in the preterite, this is owing to its being also attended by other temporal modifiers, e. g.: *ever* or *never* (105). Observe the divided practice shown by the following groups of sentences:

i. So you were never in London before? DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXI, 203.

The story is marred by some unliterary sentences as: I never heard it before. *Lit. World*, 1901, 18 Oct.

ii. I have never before met any one quite like her. BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*, I, Ch. IV, 23.

The plea of "agricultural depression," usually frequently urged, was not put forward in a single instance, perhaps because in the past it has never been favourably received. *Daily News*, 1897, 13 Nov.

105. Also *always*, *ever* and *never* may denote a length of time beginning at some indefinite moment in the past and extending to the moment of speaking. The normal tense to be used in connexion with these adverbs, when employed in this application, would, accordingly, be the perfect. There is, however, a distinct tendency to use the preterite instead, which it is difficult to account for. Here follow some groups of quotations to show that either tense is met with in connexion with the above adverbs.

i. \* The subject of this work has always appeared to us singularly interesting. MAC., *Poëps*, (542 a).

I love him, I think I have always loved him. NAT. GOULD, *The Lady Trainer*, Ch. XXVII, 113.

\*\* I was always of a communicative disposition. SHER., *School*, III, 3. (401).

The Esmonds were always of a jealous disposition. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. V, 46.

ii. \* Have you ever known what it is to be troubled in mind? MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 215. T.

I don't think we have ever met. BUCH., Father Anthony, Ch. II.

\*\* "Peggotty," says I suddenly, "were you ever married?" DICK., Cop. Ch. II, 8*b*.

I think it is one of the most delightful things that ever was written. EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambrosine, II, Ch. XIII, 253.

iii. \* I've never been able to have you a minute to myself. MISS BURNEY, Evelina LXIX, 337. T.

I have never spoken better in my life. SHAW, Candida, III, (173). T.

\*\* I never spoke to her in my life. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XI, 115. He was never rich in this world's goods. Academy.

Note *α*) From the available evidence the present writer feels tempted to surmise that in the case of *always* the perfect is in favour with verbal, the preterite with nominal predicates.

*β*) *Ever*, when (archaically) used in the sense of *always*, is, apparently, rarely found in connexion with the perfect.

i. I was ever of opinion, that the honest man who married and brought up a large family, did more service than he who continued single, and only talked of population. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. I.

The Lynwoods were ever thriftless. MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Progress, I, Ch. I, 2.

ii. Yet I have ever hoped you would amend. SHELLEY, The Cenci, I, 1, 55.

*γ*) The following quotation shows that the tense may be affected by *ever* (204, Note *β*).

I think on the whole that no man ever impressed me quite so much as I have been impressed over and over again by Mr. Gladstone. MCCARTHY, (Daily News, 1898, 21 May).

*δ*) A curious instance of divided practice is afforded by:

I have believed in all sorts of things. In England, of course, people have believed in nothing except that things will always be as they have always been — a useful belief considering that things have never been as they always were. HUGH WALPOLE, The Captives, II, Ch. II, 103.

106 *a*) The point of time denoted by *just* is understood to be so near the moment of speaking that it does not separate the action or state appreciably from the present. Hence it requires the predicate to be placed in the perfect; thus in:

I have just seen him pass. Conc. Oxf. Dict.

Mrs. Long has just been here. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. I, 1.

*b*) Conversely the space intervening between the time indicated by *just now*, *but now* and *even now*, and the moment of speaking is felt to be long enough to justify the use of the preterite. Usage is, however, more or less variable. Under *just now* the O. E. D. gives two quotations with the preterite, one with the perfect.

i. When I have slain thee with my proper hand, | I'll follow those that even now fled hence. SHAK., Cymb., IV, 2, 98.

I was with her just now when I met you. HICHENS, The Fruitful Vine, Ch. II, 22.

ii. I have seen him but now on his way to the Hôtel de Ville, a prisoner. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. XXII, 250.

Esther, my dear, this is Mr. Holt, whose acquaintance I have even now been making with more than ordinary interest. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. V, 99.

- 107 When the reference is to achievements mentioned in history we find either the perfect or the preterite, the choice depending upon whether the achievement is regarded to extend in its results to the moment of speaking or not (8, 94). Thus we say *Aristotle has treated this subject in his Ethics* (BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 67, footnote), because the results of this treatment continue to be matter of speculation to this day. But we could not say *\*Aristotle has written the Ethics* (ib.), because the writing of the Ethics is considered merely as an historical fact with no association with the present. Similarly the perfect is correctly used in *The British Empire in India has succeeded to the Mogul* (NESFIELD, *Errors in English Composition*, 78), because the results of this succession are still extant in the present occupation of India by the English. If the preterite were substituted for the perfect, the implication would be that the British occupation has since been superseded by another. Again it is right to say *Newton has explained the movements of the moon* (JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, VI, 392), because his explanation is still considered as an acquisition to our knowledge of the movements of the moon. But the preterite could not be replaced by the perfect in *Newton believed in an Omnipotent God* (ib.), because this is a mere statement of an historical fact, which cannot be held to have left any lasting effect.

From the above exposition it would follow that the choice of the tense does not depend, as we sometimes find it stated, upon whether the originator of the achievement is still living or not.

108. There is great variability in the tense of predicates in sentences with the adverbs *lately*, *latterly*, *of late*, *late* and *recently*, which may denote either a point of time or a length of time extending to the moment of speaking.
109. a) When *lately* denotes a point of time, the ordinary tense is the preterite, but also the perfect is quite frequently used, apparently for the secondary purpose of indicating a result.
- i. There is a gay captain here, who put a jest on me lately, at the expense of my country. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (254).  
I lately met with the following phrase. Notes & Quer.
- ii. He has lately arrived from Italy. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *lately*. (underlying notion: He is now here.)  
I have only quite lately known who were my parents. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VIII, Ch. LXIX, 395. (The context imparts a momentaneous aspect to the durative *to know*.)

Has Sir Michael Audley lately married? Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audley*, II, Ch. III, 49.

b) When *lately* denotes a length of time, the normal tense is the perfect, the present appearing as an occasional variant (121).

i. Have you been abroad lately? PINERO, *Iris*, I, (29).

Nothing has been heard lately of De Wet. *Times*.

He has not been sending me any books lately. *Punch*.

ii. I don't like your mamma lately. HARDY, *A Pair of Blue Eyes*, II, 27.

110. Obs. I. The uncertainty attaching to the meaning of *lately* may give rise to ambiguity when the perfect is used. Thus in the following quotations there is no certainty whether the reference is to an isolated or a repeated (continued) action:

There is an affair in which you have lately employed me, wherein, I confess, I am at a loss to guess your motives. SHER, *School*, I, I, (364).

I have lately visited some of the most distant parts of the kingdom. COWPER, *Country Congregations*.

II. Primarily durative predicates may become momentaneous when modified by *lately* in the first meaning and placed in the perfect tense.

You have been lately in Rome, I think. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, 273. T.

I have lately .. been led to study everything belonging to their history. *id.*, *Dan. Der.*, III, VIII, Ch. LV, 272.

Conversely primarily momentaneous predicates may assume a durative or iterative aspect when modified by *lately* in the second meaning and placed in the perfect tense.

You've adopted such a tone regarding me lately that I'm — if I'll bear it any more. THACK, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 125.

Sometimes there appears to be blending of momentaneousness and durativeness (or iterativeness); thus in:

All the daily papers have taken lately to publishing a column about birds. *Punch*, 1902, 3 Sept. (*To take* is a distinctly momentaneous verb, and *lately* in connexion with it can only be apprehended in the first meaning; yet the whole sentence has a durative purport, its evident meaning being that all the daily papers have been publishing a column about birds for some time past, which naturally imparts the second meaning to *lately*.)

Attention has been directed lately to that common foundation of social welfare, the public security. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8251, 6b.

III. The present tense, instead of the perfect, is common in connexion with *lately* in the first meaning in the case of *to be dead*, which, however, has the value of *to have died* (Ch. LI, 9, Obs. II).

One of your tenants whose mother is lately dead. GOLDSMITH, *Vic*, Ch. XVI.

IV. The above observations also apply in a large measure to predicates modified by the variants of *lately* or by word-groups containing *late*, *later*, *latter*, *tast*, *past* or *recent*, discussed below.

111. *Of late* sometimes denotes a point of time, but far more frequently a length of time. In the first meaning it appears to have the predicate in the preterite regularly. When it has the second meaning, the predicate is, as a rule, placed in the perfect tense, but, unlike *lately*, it is rather frequently found with a present

i. She did commend my yellow stockings of late. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, ff, 5, 180.

Prince, when of late ye pray'd me for my leave | To move to your own land, and there defend | Your marches, I was prick'd with some reproof. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 887.

ii. \* 'Tis told me, he hath very oft of late | Given private time to you. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 3, 91.

Lady Teazle's conduct of late has made me very unhappy. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (142).

The hooligan has of late been far too much in evidence. *Times*.

\*\* Vexed I am | Of late with passions of some difference. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 39.

Of late a great improvement in this respect is observable in our most popular writers. COLERIDGE, *Bicg. Lit.*, Ch. XVI, 157.

It is of late somewhat the fashion to disparage Macaulay. MCCARTHY, *Hist. of our own Times*, II, 275. T.

112. *Late*, as a literary and unfrequent variant of *lately*, appears to be used only in the first sense of the latter. It has the predicate in the preterite almostly regularly.

i. He shall do this, or else I do recant | The pardon that I late pronounced here. SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, 1, 392.

Get hence! get hence! there's dwarfish Hildebrand: | He had a fever late, and in the fit | He cursed thee and thine. KEATS, *The Eve of St. Agnes*, XII.

ii. Not in those climes where I have late been straying. | .. Hath aught like thee in truth or fancy seem'd. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, *To Ianthe*, I.

113. *Latterly*, an occasional variant of *lately*, is a late formation. The O. E. D.'s earliest instance is dated 1734. It is doubtful whether it is at all used to denote a point of time, no clear instances having come to hand. See also Ch. XXX, 11.

She has latterly suffered the worst tortures that American newspaper notoriety can bring upon a sensitive person. *Morning Leader*.

114. *Recently*, like *lately*, may have the predicate in the perfect as well as in the preterite when it denotes a point of time. The perfect is used all but regularly in sentences where it indicates a length of time, the present occurring but very rarely. In the first meaning, more often than not, it is preceded by intensives, such as *quite*, *just*, *but*, *very*, etc.

i. \* His death occurred just recently. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8309, 28 b.

Quite recently I called his lordship's attention to the damaging article. *Notes & Quer.*

\*\* She has only come here quite recently. HARDY, *Lod.*, I, Ch. IV, 34.

Mr. A, who has recently been married for the second time, is assisting his wife to show a book of photographic portraits to a girl on a visit. *Punch*.

ii. \* Those who seek for information on that point must turn to other books which have recently appeared. *Athen.*, No. 4466, 586 b.

Mme Albani, who has recently shown herself in only indifferent voice, suddenly seemed to have become her own self again. *Daily Mail*.

\*\* She is only quite recently a widow. *Punch*, 1900, 17 Oct.

115. Adverbial word-groups containing *late*, *later*, *latter*, *last*, *past* or *recent*, indicate a length of time including the moment of



speaking and, naturally, cause the predicate they modify to be placed in the perfect tense (119). See also Ch. XXX, 11.

i. We have been little more than friends of late years. PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, III, (190).

ii. We have restored Egypt to a position of prosperity such as she has never known in these later centuries. *Times*.

iii. Of latter years the opinion has gained ground that the fishes are not quite so much affected, in their appetites, by the exact quarter of the wind. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6452, 12 *a*.

iv. I do not know what has come over George in these last days. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 93.

v. Inter-urban trolleys have made greater progress in the past few years in America than the railways. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 231, 240 *a*.

vi. Of recent years the bad feeling upon both sides has increased. *Times*.

Note. Instead of the perfect, the present, especially in the Expanded Form, appears rather frequently, apparently because these phrases are viewed much in the same light as such adjuncts as *this morning*, *this week*, etc. (162).

They were rough, but they had rude virtues, which are not the less virtues because in these latter days they are growing scarce. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 46.

What is happening is that, in the last few years, foreigners are sending more goods, are increasing their exports to our Colonies more rapidly, than we are. JOS. CHAMBERLAIN, *Speech*.

116. Sometimes the preterite, present, and perfect may be used in referring to the same action, but with various elements in it thrown to the fore: the preterite giving prominence to that part of it which belongs to the past time-sphere, the present to its present result, and the perfect to these two elements combined. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 275 and § 2235; also KRUISINGA, *Handbook*<sup>3</sup>, § 142, where a very interesting example illustrating the force of respectively the perfect and present is given. The varied practice here referred to may especially be observed with the verbs:

*to bring*: i. I brought the bust up with me; as you asked me to do. Here it is. CON. DOYLE, *Return of Sherl. Holm.* (*Strand Mag.*, No XXVII.)

Oh, Patty! Did you bring us some wedding-cake? JEAN WEBST., *Just Patty*, Ch. IV, 77.

ii. I am here much earlier than I intended, Tom; but I will tell you what brings me, and I think I can answer for your being glad to hear it. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 307 *a*.

What brings you up to town? OSC. WILDE, *The Importance of being Earnest*, I, 4.

iii. What has happened? What has brought you here? DICK., *Two Cities*, III, Ch. II, 292.

I have brought you a book. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, Ch. XXIII.

*to call*: i. "I'm sorry, Mr. C. is not in" — "Oh, I only called to see how he was." ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 127.

I called to ask you to come and take a walk, cousin. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XI, 90*b*.

ii. I have called to see you, in pursuance of a promise given to your brother. *ib.*, Ch. IX, 70 *b*.

I have called .. to tell you of something important that happened this morning. WALT; BES., *Ivory Gate*, Ch. XIII, 241.

*to come*: i Is that all you came to say, Sir Samuel? *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 241.

I came purposely to-day, in the hope that you might by chance be here. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XXII, Ch. XXII, 315.

ii. I come here to restore a parent his child. DICK., *Nick*, Ch. XLV, 295 *b*. I come here, not to rake up hold differences. SHAW, *Cand.*, I, (123). T.

iii. I have come to bring you home, dear brother. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 34.

That's the reason why I've come. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. II, 88.

Note. As a fourth variety of expression we also find *to be come*, which is hardly distinguished from *to have come*. See, however, 15. I am come with Mr. Athel's leave. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XXIV, 330.

117. It is of some interest to observe the change of tense sometimes occurring in one and the same sentence or sequence of sentences. It is a beautiful place. Your papa has often told me about it. He loved it very much; and you will love it too. Miss BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. IV. (The perfect is distinctly suggestive of present results: I am acquainted with the beauty of the place. The preterite distinctly suggests a point of time in the past separated by a length of time from the moment of speaking: in his lifetime.)

Phyllis tells me that they (*sc.* she and her friends) found their seats without difficulty, and that she has seldom enjoyed a procession more. *Punch*, 1902, 12 Nov. (The perfect is justified by the verb being modified by *seldom*, which suggests a length of time extending to the moment of speaking.)

118. Sometimes the tense appears to be influenced by the exigencies of metre or rhythm.

And, when there came a pause | Of silence, such as baffled his best skill: | Then sometimes in that silence, while he hung | Listening, a gentle shock of mild surprise | Has carried far into his heart the voice | Of mountain-torrents. WORDSWORTH, *There was a boy*, 20. (The perfect would be unwarranted in ordinary prose.)

For what am I? what profits me my name | Of greatest knight? I fought for it, and have it. TEN., *Lanc & El.*, 1403. (The sense seems to require the perfect *have fought*: contraction of *I have* into *I've* would, however, have saved the metre.)

East and west and south and north | The messengers ride fast, | And tower and town and cottage | Have heard the trumpet's blast. MAC., *Lays, Hor.*, II. (The historical present of the first verb might also have been used of the second.)

### The Perfect compared with the Present.

119. It has already been stated that for the second function of the English perfect (9) Dutch, German and French normally have the present. The Dutch is, however, in accord with English practice so far as it also prefers the perfect when there is no suggestion of the action or state indicated by the predicate being

continued after the present moment. See the second group of the following examples:

i. I have been up this hour. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 88.

As to dinner being ready, it's been ready this half hour. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IV, 29.

Can we be attached to people whom we have known only a little while? MAX PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. IX, 46 a.

Wilfred, how long I have loved you! I was quite a young girl when I loved you. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XX, 286. (Observe that the second *love* means *to fall in love*.)

ii. I am afraid you have been long desiring my absence. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVI, 271.

I have not seen him these three years. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 372. T  
Not for a long time has a year of peace produced so few houses. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8267, 2 b.

120. Obs. I. The word(-group) denoting the length of time during which the action or state has continued, is sometimes, for emphasis, placed in a phrase opening with *It is*.

It is now four years that I have meditated this work. BYRON, *Pref. to Mar. Fal*, 351 (Lond. Ed.).

II. Occasionally we find the preterite taking the place of the perfect, owing, perhaps, to the speaker thinking of a space of time intervening between the termination of the action or state and the moment of speaking (95, Obs. I).

He was in France, I think, for these late years, so that I saw him not at Holyrood. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXIV, 383.

"Our governors are up in town, I'll swear." — "Mine never missed the show for forty years." H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, III. (The use of the preterite may be due to *never* (105).

It appears to be due to considerations of metre that the preterite is used in:

I saw him not these many years, and yet | I know 'tis he. SHAK., *Cymb.*, IV, 2, 66.

121. Although the perfect is by far the most common tense in which predicates as here described are placed, it must not be supposed that the present is particularly rare. A goodly number have come to hand. Only a few can here be printed.

How does your honour for this many a day? SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 1, 91.

Nicholas Vedder! why he is dead and gone these eighty years. WASH. IRV., *Sketch. Bk.*, V.

Our government is crushed under Frederick's heel these five years. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. VI, 92.

Don't I know Vienna .. all these years? AGN. EG. CASTLE, *Panther's Cub*, I, Ch. VII, 77.

122. a) Sometimes the predicate, although primarily expressing an event happening at a moment of the past, indicated by an adverbial adjunct or clause, is really intended to describe a subsequent state continuing from that moment to the moment of speaking. In this case the perfect appears to be the ordinary tense in English also. Thus in *The birds have deserted them*

(sc. *the nests*) *a long while* (DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 4a) the predicate first of all states the happening of an event a long while ago, viz. the desertion of the birds, but at the same time is chiefly meant to describe the state of desolation following upon this desertion, which has lasted from that deplorable event to the moment of speaking. In other words the context imparts a durative aspect to a predicate formed by an originally momentaneous verb (Ch. LI, 22).

It should, furthermore, be observed that in the case here referred to: 1) the adjunct of time by which the predicate is attended expresses: a) the starting-point of the state, as is, for example, done by such an adjunct as *long ago* (or *since*), or some other combination with *ago* (or *since*).

β) the duration of the state, as is, for example, done by such a word-group as *these five years*, or a similar combination with a demonstrative pronoun.

γ) both the starting-point of the state and its duration, as is, for example, done by such words or word-groups as *long*, *a long while*, *many years*, etc., which, indeed, primarily indicate a length of time, but, as they admit of being supplemented by *ago* (or *since*), are meant to denote its starting-point also.

2) the nature of the predicate is often hard to distinguish from that of the predicate described in 100—101, especially when it is modified by an adjunct containing *ago* (or *since*). Indeed such a sentence as *The ship has sailed a week ago* (EL. GLYN, *Ref. of Ambros.*, III, Ch. I, 275) may be understood to stand not only for the Dutch *Het schip is een week geleden uitgezeild*, but also for *Het schip is al een week onder zeil*.

i. \* My mind has been made up about that a long while ago. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. V, 93.

Every short vowel which ended a word of more than one syllable in Old English has long ago dropped off. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 23.

\*\* It hath been long since observed that you may know a man by his companions. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 24a.

The Lamarckian hypothesis has long since been justly condemned. HUXLEY, *Darwiniana*, Ch. I, 12.

ii. \* She has departed these two days. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, VI, Ch. 249.

I have given up skating these many years. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 114.

\*\* All the hours you have left me lonely I have been thinking like this. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, Ch. XIII.

iii. Haven't our papas settled it ever so long? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

It appears to me passing strange that, though I have left her so many weeks, she has never relented enough to track me out. LYTTON, *Paul Cliff*, Ch. VI, 57. T.

The day had already broken a long time. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, II, Ch. VII, 49.

b) Conversely a durative predicate is sometimes blended with a momentaneous predicate. Thus such a sentence as *The war has long since been over* may be understood to be contracted from

*The war has long been over* and *The war came to a conclusion long since* (or *ago*). Constructions of this kind are, however, distinctly uncommon, being, apparently, confined to predicates with *to be* modified by an adjunct containing *since* (or *ago*).

Beauties that have been long since in their graves. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 260.

Their famous captain hath long since been dead. BESANT, *The World went very well then*, Ch. I, 9.

The standards they apply to-day have been hopelessly impracticable fifteen years ago. *Pall Mall Mag.*, 1901, Jan.

Have the others been home long. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, I, Ch. I, 4 b. (Observe that *to be home* often stands for *to have come* (or *gone*) home.)

123. Nominal predicates with the copula *to be* of the above mixed nature, especially when modified by an adjunct containing or suggesting *ago* (or *since*), are not unfrequently placed in the present tense.

i Our lots are shaped for us, and mine is ordained long ago. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 175.

The doors into the lane and churchyard are locked long ago. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. VI, 41.

"I think I'll go and take a walk in the park" — "Nonsense, it's shut long ago." SHAW, *Candida*, III, (171). T.

ii He is dead but thirty years. THACK., *Four Georges*, IV, 98.

Doubtless the invalid mother is long at rest. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, IX, Ch. VI, 267.

I'm not very long retired. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. II, 9.

II. In the language of history or narrative the preterite is analogously used instead of the pluperfect of predicates of the above description.

The Colonel . . was long since quite too old and feeble for command. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 251.

124. Of some special interest is the use of the perfect, occasionally varying with either the present or the preterite, in predicates which are modified by certain adverbial adjuncts or clauses denoting a length of time measured forward from a starting-point, or backward from a finishing-point, i. e.:

a) such as contain the preposition *from*, or the adverb preposition or conjunction *since*;

b) such as contain the preposition *to* or *till*.

125. When the predicate is modified by a word-group containing the preposition *from*, its normal tense is, naturally, the perfect, the present appearing as an occasional variant.

i. From the first you have said we are in the wrong. BUCH., *Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 4.

From earliest infancy I have been a martyr to it (sc. a general disinclination to work). JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. I, 6.

ii. Take me out of these streets, where the whole town knows me from a child. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 168 b.

126. Obs. I. The thought of a starting-point in *from the first* is sometimes dimmed to the point that the phrase is hardly distinguishable from

*at the first* (Ch. XXX, 38), *at* (or *in*) *the outset*. Consequently it may have the predicate in the preterite; thus in:

I am not worthy to marry you, I told you so from the first. FLOR. MAR., A Bankrupt Heart, II, 15. T.

From the first two facts were obvious to me. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., II, 180. T.

II. In the language of history or narrative predicates modified by an adjunct of time with *from* are normally placed in the pluperfect, the preterite appearing but occasionally.

i. From a child Surajah Dowlah had hated the English. MAC., Clive, (513*a*).

She had been .. of pale mealy complexion from her youth up. G. ELIOT, Fel. Holt, I, Ch. I, 37.

ii. How he fared is fresh in our memories. His task was from the first hopeless. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. III, 57.

127. In connexion with the *adverb since*, as an adjunct denoting a length of time with a starting-point in the past, the perfect is the normal tense, but the present is also met with, at least in Early Modern English. The notion of uninterrupted continuance is often emphasized by *ever*. See also Ch. LI, 22, *d*.

i. Then it was that the great English people was formed, that the national character began to exhibit those peculiarities which it has ever since retained. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 16.

It was .. called first "mobile vulgus," but fell naturally into the contraction of one syllable, and ever since is become proper English. TRENCH, Study of Words, V, 320.

ii. The first creature of God .. was the light of the sense: the last was the light of reason: and his sabbath work ever since, is the illumination of his Spirit. BACON, Es., I, Truth, 2.

I cannot abide the smell of hot meat since. SHAK., Merry Wives, I, I, 297.

That instant was I turn'd into a hart; | And my desires, like fell and cruel hounds, | E'er since pursue me. id., Twelfth Night, I, I, 23.

128. Obs. I. The *adverb since* is also used in the sense of *at* (or *during*) *some* (or *any*) *time subsequently, afterwards*, as in *The tree has since been cut down* (Conc. Oxf. Dict.). The *adverb* denoting a point or length of time falling within an undefined length of time not distinctly thought of as severed from the present moment (99), mostly has the predicate in the perfect tense of the first kind (8).

She saw him one morning at his own house, and has since dined in company with him four times. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. VI, 25.

He has never been heard of since. SCOTT, Kenilw., Ch. II, 22.

I finished the poem about the angel quarter of an hour ago. I've read you several things since. SHAW, Candida, III, (171). T.

One soldier has since died. Westm. Gaz., No. 5077, 2*b*.

The predicate is occasionally placed in the preterite, rarely in the present.

i. "Where is he?" -- "I did not see him since." SHAK., Ant. & Cleop., I, 3, I.

They never thought of it since. MARRYAT, New Forest, 353. T.

ii. I am since informed that swearing is perfectly unfashionable. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. IX, (285).

There is, however, nothing unusual in the use of *to be dead* instead of *to have died*.

Sir Wigram Allen, I regret to see, is since dead. FROUDE, O.C., Ch. XI, 177.

II. *Since* frequently occurs as a variant of *ago*. Predicates modified by adjuncts with *since* in this meaning are, naturally, placed in the preterite in the majority of cases. But instances of the predicate standing in the perfect in the first application (8) are by no means uncommon (94, *b*; 100).

i. He broke his vows long since. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 9c.

li. He has been executed an hour since. SCOTT, Talisman, 278.

129. Also when the adverbial adjunct modifying the predicate is one containing the preposition *since*, the ordinary tense is the perfect. But the present occurs rather frequently. As in the case of the adverb *since*, the phrase is often preceded by *ever* to emphasize the notion of uninterrupted continuance. Predicates primarily momentaneous naturally assume an iterative aspect. The change of aspect seems to be confined to the perfect tense, the present being, apparently, used only of durative predicates.

i. The Lord hath blessed thee since my coming. Bible, Gen., XXX, 30.

I saw to-day — when she tortured you — that you love her. Since then I have been your friend. SHAW, Candida, III, (178). T.

I have eaten nothing since yesterday. Conc. Oxf. Dict.

ii. I'm as great as they, I trow, | Since the day I found thee out. WORDSWORTH, To the small Celandine, 13.

This is Hexham House, and where Lord Hexham lived in the days of the first Georges. It is reduced in size since his time. Dis., Loth. I, Ch. VI, 28. T.

130. Obs. I. As distinct from the Dutch *sedert* or *sinds*, the English *since* is rarely found before a word(-group) denoting a length of time, i.e. in the sense of *during*. Predicates modified by *since* in this meaning stand in the present tense in the instances that have come to hand.

He sleeps since thirty years. THACK., Four Georges, IV, 88. T.

My good father is dead since many years. Id., Newcomes, I, Ch. III, 31. (Possibly the use of *since* in this example is an intentional Gallicism, the writer being a woman of French extraction, the Comtesse de Florac.)

"He is a Frenchman." — "But a Protestant — and since many years in our service." MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. V, 226.

II. The perfect is one of the first kind (8; 128, Obs. I) when *since* has the value of *at some time subsequent to, after* (an epoch mentioned in the sentence).

It is the first bit of writing that Kipling has signed since his illness, which can be described as verse. Rev. of Rev., 1902, Feb., 147 a.

Since seeing you I have heard [etc.]. Conc. Oxf. Dict.

Since last Thursday the Irish Treaty Bill has received the Royal assent and taken its place on the Statute-book. Manch. Guard., VI, 14, 278 b.

III. In the language of history or narrative the pluperfect normally takes the place of the perfect in predicates modified by adjuncts with the preposition *since*, but the preterite is also met with.

i. England, which, since the battle of Hastings, had been ruled generally by H. POUTSMA, III 1.

wise statesman, always by brave soldiers, fell under the dominion of a trifler and a coward. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 15.

ii. Since Amelia's introduction to the regiment, George began to be rather ashamed of some of the company to which he had been forced to present her. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVIII, 296. (Compare the preterite with the subsequent pluperfect.)

131. In the case of the length of time with a definite starting-point being designated by an adverbial clause introduced by the conjunction *since*, the perfect, which is the normal tense, is rather frequently replaced by the present. In the clause itself the most natural tense would seem to be the preterite, the predicate being formed by a momentaneous verb; for example, in such a sentence as *She has lived in this house since her husband died*. But sentences of this type with the perfect of a durative (or iterative) predicate in the head-sentence and a momentaneous verb in the temporal clause are not, apparently, more frequent than others in which either the tense or the aspect, or both, of the predicate in either the head-sentence or the clause, or both, are different from those in the above sentence. This being so, it follows that a great many cases might be distinguished, and the observant student interested in the subject would, consequently, have to arm himself with no common discernment and patience, if he would go through the whole range of possibilities.

In the arrangement of the following material it is only the distinctions of tense that are paid regard to, the discussion of the modifications of aspect which many predicates are subject to in these connexions being reserved for Ch. LI (9, Obs. I; 22). In the temporal clause the tense is mostly either the preterite or the perfect, the present being, rare.

*Since* may have two different values, viz.: *α) from the moment that*; thus before the preterite of a momentaneous predicate; *β) during (or all) the time that*; thus before the perfect or present of a durative or iterative predicate. In its second value *since* differs but slightly from *while*, from which it is distinguished only in insisting on the presence of a distinct starting-point. Thus in the following sentence *while* could be replaced by *since* without much change of meaning being involved:

I hope nothing disagreeable has happened while I have been away. G. ELIOT, Mid.

- 1) in the head-sentence a perfect, in the temporal clause a preterite, *α)* of a momentaneous predicate:

Since Cassius first did whet me against Cæsar, I have not slept. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, I, 61.

Though I have worn it (sc. the ring) constantly since I quitted Greece, it has not made me altogether fortunate at sea. G. ELIOT, Rom., Ch. IV, 37.



Nobody has cared for you since your old nurse died. SHAW, *Candida*, III, (190). T.

$\beta$ ) of a durative verb:

I have learned to be dangerous upon points of honour since I served the Spaniard. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. I, 17. (a blending of: since I began to serve the Spaniard, and: during the time I have served the Spaniard.)

You have noticed this in Frank since he was here. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. X, 58.

2) a perfect in both the head-sentence and the temporal clause, in the latter  $\alpha$ ) a durative or iterative predicate:

I cannot say that he has once broken my rest since we have been married. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 4, (257)

There have not been any (sc. rooks) since we have lived here. DICK, *Cop.*, Ch. I, 4a

$\beta$ ) a momentaneous predicate:

The disagreement subsisting between yourself and my late honoured father always gave me much uneasiness, and since I have had the misfortune to lose him, I have frequently wished to heal the breach. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XII, 65.

3) a perfect in the head-sentence, a present in the temporal clause:

Since I'm married, ... I give you my honour I've not touched a bit of stamped paper. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXX, 318.

I suppose a woman is never in love with any one she has always known ever since she can remember. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, 32.

4) in the head-sentence a present, in the temporal clause  $\alpha$ ) a preterite:

It is dull in our town since my playmates left. BROWNING, *Pied Piper*.  
The ouse ain't worth livin' in since you left it. SHAW, *Cand.*, I, (130). T.

$\beta$ ) a perfect:

Georgy's house is not a very lively one since uncle Jos's annuity has been withdrawn. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XV, 152.

Are you afraid of walking by yourself since you have been frightened by the conjuror? G. ELIOT, *Rom.*, I, Ch. X, 91.

5) a present in both the head-sentence and the temporal clause. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

How often do I wish since I am absent from you that I was under the protection of Mrs. Mirvan. Miss BURNEY, *Evelina*, 339.<sup>1)</sup>

132. Obs. I. The tense is usually the present in the introductory phrase *It is* + word-(group) stating a length of time. In the following clauses with *since* the tense is mostly the preterite, sometimes the perfect.

i. It is ten hours since I had anything to eat. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 109.

It is four years since you were here. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XV, 220.

II. It 's a long while since I have been at home. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense & Sens*, 142. T.

It is a long time since so many varied costumes have been seen. Times.  
Instances of *It has been* being used instead of *It is* are distinctly uncommon.

It has been a long time since the custom began. SWIFT, *Dir. to Serv.*, I.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, E. S., XXXII, 111.

You understand women well, though it may have been long since you were conversant amongst them. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. XVIII, 232.

II. The perfect is one of the first kind (8; 128, Obs. I), when the temporal clause answers the question *when?* In it the tense is either the preterite or the perfect.

i. I have had an adventure since I saw you. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VIII, Ch. XX, 495.

We have advanced some way in this direction since M. Zola wrote this. *Lit. World*, 1902, 3 Oct.

ii. He has broken his neck since we have been married. SHER., *School*, III, 2, (294).

She's lost ten pounds in weight since she's been here. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Ch III, 23.

It is hardly necessary to add that also in the head-sentence the perfect varies with the preterite:

i. Since I wrote these papers, I found two very striking instances BURKE, *The Sublime & Beautiful*, V, V.

ii. She has absolutely fallen in love with a tall Irish baronet she met one night since she has been here. SHER., *Riv.* I, I. (The temporal clause may be understood to modify *has fallen in love* as well as *has met*)

III. The perfect is also one of the first kind in sentences answering the question *how much time?* the temporal clause having the predicate in either the preterite or perfect.

i. Sweetly, most sweetly, have two days more elapsed since I wrote. MISS BURNEY, *Evelina*, LXIX, 336. T.

ii. Considerable time has elapsed since we have seen our respectable friend. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VII, 73.

133. When the predicate is modified by an adjunct denoting a length of time measured backward from a finishing-point (124), its normal tense is the perfect, but the present is frequent enough, especially when the permanence of the action or state, i. e. an expected continuance in the future, is distinctly present to the speaker's mind.

i. The British names of rivers and of cities have in many cases been preserved to modern times. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. III, 83.

Have you always lived in town until now? MAR CRAWF, *A Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Ch. III.

ii. A very powerful household god he is to this day. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. I, 8.

The place from the day of that illustrious visit took the name of Queen's Crawley, which it holds up to the present moment. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 66.

134. Obs. I. Momentaneous predicates assume a durative aspect when modified by an adverbial adjunct of this description.

How we came here I have never discovered to this day. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 75) (= has remained unrevealed to me.)

II. The adverb (*n*)ever may cause the perfect to be replaced by the preterite (105).

The accident of my birth was never discovered to this day. *Spectator*, XII.

**The Pluperfect corresponding to the Perfect in the Second Function.**

135. a) In like manner as the English perfect in the second function mostly corresponds to the present in Dutch (and most other West-European languages), the English pluperfect generally answers to the Dutch preterite, when the predicate is modified by an adverbial adjunct or clause denoting the duration of the action or state.

I had not been long at the university, before I distinguished myself by a most profound silence. ADDISON, *Spectator*, I.

When Thomas Newcome had been some time in London, he quitted the house of Hobson. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

b) It should be observed that, when the length of time during which the action or state has continued, is indicated by a temporal clause with *since*, the tense of the predicate in the latter is not affected by the change of the time-sphere. Thus *She has lived here since her husband died* becomes *I was told that she had lived here since her husband died*.

My condition had lost much of its terror since I found that the Arab ranged the country merely to get riches. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XXXIX, 325.

She had never been a girl, she said; she had been a woman since she was eight years old. THACK., *Van. Fair.*, I, Ch. II, 12.

His eyes had followed Esther restlessly since she entered the room. MAX. PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. X, 49.

136. In the same way as the present is not seldom used instead of perfect (121 ff), the preterite rather frequently takes the place of the pluperfect.

He spoke to me as if he knew me all his time before. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, III, (197).

Scrooge and he were partners for I don't know how many years. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

How long was he in your room before you came to me? SHAW, *Arms & the Man*, 40.

137. The change of aspect which a primarily momentaneous verb undergoes, when, modified by an adjunct denoting a length of time, it is placed in the perfect tense (122), may also be observed when such a predicate thus modified stands in the pluperfect.

I had scarce taken orders a year, before I began to think seriously of matrimony. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. I. (= .. been in orders a year.)

From that time Cousin Philip had been very much forgotten. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. IX, 75.

The truth is, she had quitted the premises for many hours. THACK., *Van. Fair.*, II, Ch. XX, 211.

**The Tenses of Completed Action compared with the Tenses of Uncompleted Action.**

138. The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect have a feature in common which distinguishes them from the present, preterite

and (simple) future; i. e. they represent an action or state as having come to a conclusion at a certain point of time present, past or future. Compare *He has lived at Oxford*, *He had lived at Oxford*, and *He will have lived at Oxford*, with respectively *He lives at Oxford*, *He lived at Oxford* and *He will live at Oxford*.

The simple tenses are, however, frequently used instead of the perfect tenses, owing to the notion of conclusion not being distinctly apprehended, and it is chiefly this imperfection, as exhibited in the language, that will form the main subject of the following discussions. The imperfection here referred to attaches to these tenses only so far as they are applied in the first function (8). Perfects and pluperfects used in the second function (9) which, for the reason mentioned in 121, are sometimes replaced by presents and preterites, more or less contrary to English idiom, will, therefore, be excluded from the following illustrations.

139. In complexes relating events of the past in chronological order, the preterite is regularly used in all its members. Thus in *My friend arrived last night; we dined sumptuously at the Clarendon Hotel, went to the theatre afterwards and had a quiet little supper in a City restaurant* (3, Note). If the recounting of the events in their chronological succession is interfered with, occasion arises for the use of the pluperfect. This is mostly due to the fact that the mention of some event is the result of an afterthought, or is regarded necessary to explain some fact mentioned in the preceding members. Thus in the above sequence the event mentioned in the second place might be mentioned in the fourth place, which would cause it to run as follows: *My friend arrived last night: we went to the theatre and had a quiet little supper at a City restaurant. We had dined rather sumptuously at the Clarendon Hotel.*

The following extract will be deemed sufficient to illustrate this practice:

The desert ran down almost to the banks, where, among gray, red and black hillocks, a camel corps was encamped. No man dared, even for a day, loose touch of the slow-moving boats; there had been no fighting for weeks past; and throughout all that time the Nile had never spared them. Rapid had followed rapid, rock rock, and island group island group, till the rank and file had long since lost all count of direction and nearly of time. They were moving somewhere, they did not know why, to do something they did not know what. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. II, 18.

The use of the preterite where, in strict grammar, the pluperfect would be required is mostly felt as an incongruity; thus in: *Away I went, as happy as a lark, with a couple of brand new suits from Von Stiltz's in my trunk (I had them made, looking forward to a certain event).* THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 89.

Miss S's own fortune was 70 l. a year, mine was 150 l., and when we had 300 l., we always *rowed* we would marry. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 66.

How long *was* he in your room before you came to me? SHAW, *Arms and the Man*, II, 67. T.

A lengthy succession of clumsy pluperfects is, however, objectionable from the point of view of euphony. This may account for the use of the preterites, the first excepted, in:

The Princess (sc. the Princess Alexandrina Victoria) was .. at this time (sc. at her accession) little more than eighteen years of age. The Duke of Kent died a few months after the birth of his daughter, and the child was brought up under the care of his widow. She was well brought up: both as regards her intellect and her character — her training was excellent .. Prudence and economy were inculcated on her, as though she had been born to be poor. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 2

The prior event may be implied in an adverbial adjunct. Thus in the following example *before breakfast* may be understood to stand for *before they sat down to breakfast*:

As soon as Mr. Carnaby opened his eyes, she (sc. Mrs. Carnaby) told him of her plans, and before breakfast they had settled the whole thing. SWEET, *The Picnic*.

140. When in a complex with a temporal clause the reference is to two actions or states, one of which has come to a conclusion before the other comes about, the predicate in the former is normally placed in one of the perfect tenses. This predicate may stand either in the temporal clause or in the head-sentence.

i. When he has finished his letters, he usually takes them to the post himself.

When he had finished his letters, he took them to the post.

When he has finished his letters, he will take them to the post.

ii. Before he goes to bed, he has usually finished all his correspondence.

Before he went to bed, he had finished all his correspondence.

Before he goes to bed, he will have finished all his correspondence.

We confine ourselves to a few quotations illustrating the use of the pluperfect as opposed to the preterite.

i. I looked to Heaven, and tried to pray; | But or ever a prayer had gusht, | A wicked whisper came, and made | My heart as dry as dust. COL., *Anc. Mar.*, IV, vi.

The church clock pealed out two, before I had done. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VIII, 250.

When I had seen everything in Edinburgh, I went on to Glasgow. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 276.

ii. Before I left Miss Matty at Cranford, everything had been comfortably arranged for her. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 281

Master Carnaby had jumped out, .. and had climbed half-way up a tree, before his mother discovered at a single glance that he was tearing his trousers. SWEET, *The Picnic*.

141. When, however, the predicate in the temporal clause is purely momentaneous, or suggestive of no activity culminating in a result, there is a distinct tendency to place it in one of the simple tenses. Thus it would appear to be mere pedantry to

insist on the perfect instead of the present in the temporal clause in:

When morning comes, the fog usually clears away. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 136.

Similarly the preterite *came* would ordinarily be used instead of the pluperfect in:

When morning came, the fog cleared away.

Also in the future tenses the notion of completion is often left unexpressed. Ordinary English rejecting, besides, the auxiliaries of the future tenses in these clauses (79—81), we mostly find them in two respects deficient in marking the time-sphere of the action or state. Thus we ordinarily say *As soon as he comes* (instead of *shall come* or *shall have come*), *tell him the news*. Similarly *As soon as he came* (instead of *should come* or *should have come*), *he was to be told the news*.

The reason why the notion of completion is left unexpressed is that no necessity is felt to consider the two time-spheres in mutual relation, the mind being satisfied with both being measured from one dividing-point. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2236; KERN, *Part. Præt.*, § 49, foot-note.

Only a few examples are necessary to illustrate the above practice.

i. The lions .. brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den. Bible, *Dan.*, VI, 24.

One morning, within a week after I arrived, I went to call Miss Matty. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 289.

As soon as Mr. Carnaby opened his eyes, she told him of her plan. SWEET, *The Picnic*.

ii. I drink the air before me, and return | Or ere your pulse twice beat. SHAK., *Temp.*, V, I, 102.

When you grow a little older, .. you will know better than to believe all the gossip you hear. Mrs. WARD, *Rich. Meyn*, II, Ch. VII, 151.

Time for him to take another look at Candida, before she grows out of his knowledge. SHAW, *Candida*, I, (118). T.

142. In the case of the concluded action or state being expressed by the head-sentence, substitution of the simple for the perfect tenses is less common.

a) Thus we mostly find the perfect tenses retained when the head-sentence contains a negative or negative-implying adverbial adjunct, such as *no sooner*, *barely*, *hardly*, *scarcely*. Indeed, predicates modified by any of these adverbs mostly denote an activity culminating in a result.

He had not read half-a-dozen lines, when the expression of his face began to change. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 300 *b*

He had barely completed his surgical operation, when Tom's gardener-coachman appeared. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 45.

Randal had scarcely left the house, before Mrs. Riccabocca .. rejoined her husband. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. XII, 121.

b) Instances of the alternative practice are, however by no means rare, the simple tenses being especially used when the predicate is of the nature described in 141.

i. Your brother and my sister no sooner met but they looked, no sooner looked but they loved, no sooner loved but they sighed, no sooner sighed but they asked one another the reason, no sooner knew the reason but they sought the remedy. SHAK., *As you like it*, V, 2, 35—40.

No sooner did his business prosper, than he went down into the north, like a man, to a pretty girl whom he had left there, and whom he had promised to marry. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

ii. No sooner a captain comes to town, but all the young fellows flock about him. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, IV, 2, (293).

No sooner does one bring out a book of travels, poems . . . but the rival is in the field with something similar. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

iii. The sun no sooner shall the mountains touch, | But we will ship him hence. SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 1, 30.

143. It stands to reason that nominal predicates which 'per se' express the result of the action to which the subject is subjected stand in the simple tenses. Thus *As soon as the door had been opened, the crowd rushed into the hall* corresponds to *As soon as the door was open, the crowd rushed into the hall*.

The words were no sooner out of his mouth, than Lambourne again made at him. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. XXXIII, 374.

The meal was scarcely over, before a chaise and pair came to the door. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, IV, Ch. XXV, 290.

Thus also when the predicate is made up of *to be* and a participle that is understood as an adjective.

When Martha's wages and the rent are paid, I have not a farthing owing. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 250

After the vote was taken, the assembly broke up. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

The following quotation affords only an apparent exception: *to be guilty* having the value of *to make oneself guilty*.

The two great statesmen to whom mankind had owed many years of tranquillity disappeared about this time from the scene, but not till they had been guilty of the weakness of sacrificing their sense of justice and their love of peace to the vain hope of preserving their power. MAC., *Fred.*, (668 b).

144. Also the predicates of subordinate clauses, other than temporal clauses, are normally placed in one of the perfect tenses when the action or state they express is to be represented as having come to a conclusion before the commencement of that indicated by the predicate of head-sentence. As is shown by the following material, anomalies are, however, not unfrequent. In each group of the following quotations a few exhibiting the normal practice are placed first.

a) subordinate statements:

i. Arthur said he had forced the curate back to dine. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 66.

Perhaps Addison thought that jokes enough had been made about physis in the *Tatler*. S. ARNOLD, *Introd. to Addison*, XVII.

ii. She thought .. that Count Anteoni's garden was long since left behind. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, Ch. XVII, 51

He reminded the House that in 1893 seventy-six or seventy-seven days were allotted to the Bill of that year. *Times*.<sup>1)</sup>

b) adnominal clauses:

i. His wife had nothing but a pale face, that had grown older and paler with long waiting. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

I just stayed long enough to establish Miss Matty in her new mode of life and to pack up the library, which the rector had purchased. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 284.

ii. The discourse was altogether on the robbery which was committed the night before. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. XIV, 34.

Rasselas gave her a hundred ounces of gold, which she presented to the Arab for the fifty that were promised. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XXXIX, 231.

While England was thrilling with the triumph over the Armada, its Queen was .. making her profit out of the spoiled provisions she had ordered for the fleet that saved her. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, VIII, III, 376.

c) adverbial clauses not expressing a relation of time:

i. The marker was put at the place where reading had ceased. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XV, 221.

ii. The nation was not ungrateful. It heaped honours on Wellington; it would have heaped more on him if it knew how. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, 125.

Eyes followed her now as they followed her two hours ago. MAX PEMB., *Doct. Xav.*, Ch. X, 52 a.

145. When the time-sphere of such a sentence as *It is ten hours since (or that) I had (or have had) anything to eat* (132, Obs. 1) is shifted back to the past, the tense in the subordinate clause ought, in strict grammar, to be the pluperfect. Thus the above sentence would, in that case, run *It was ten hours since (or that) I had had anything to eat*. This practice has been observed in: It was not three months ago since, wild with joyful expectation, she had there run backwards and forwards some ten times a-day. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXIX, 229.

The principle, however, appears to be rather frequently disregarded, the preterite being used instead of the pluperfect; thus in:

Let's see, it was fifteen days ago, that we first met. MAX PEMB., *Doct. Xav.*, Ch. IX, 46 a.

It was forty years since I read the *Winter's Tale*. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 202, 359 a.

146. a) In a narrative of a series events or circumstances, the pluperfect should be consistently used throughout, when the reference is to actions or circumstances that had already come to a conclusion at a time prior to a secondary dividing-point (3). This has been done in

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS, *Handb.*,<sup>2</sup> § 99.



Amelia and the Major's wife had rushed down to him, when the latter had recognized him from the balcony. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XXXII, 349. Whilst she had been ill, they had been busily at work on matters social and educational and political. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, 239. T. He had called to-day to speak to him of a specially pressing case, and as he had walked up the avenue, he had, for two reasons, dreaded his visit more than usual. Miss BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. VI, 107.

b) The 'correct' practice, however, is far from regularly observed. Almost every page of narrative prose or poetry affords instances of the writer quietly disregarding the principle, either from mere carelessness, or from a reluctance to be hampered by the ponderous pluperfect any longer than is necessary for the right understanding of the facts presented.

He had been deeply concerned in those dark and atrocious parts of the Whig plot which had been carefully concealed from the most respectable Whigs. Nor is it possible to plead, in extenuation of his guilt, that he was misled by inordinate zeal for the public good. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 98.

He had seen this very Ricketts arrayed in crimson and gold, with an immense bearskin cap on his head, staggering under the colours of the regiment. Tom had recognized him, and gave him a patronizing nod. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 82.

As soon as he could speak for sobbing, he told them that he had gone for a little walk, and saw a jolly donkey . . . and he just got on his back, as they used to do at Margate. SWEET, *The Picnic*.

c) Sometimes the inconsistency appears to be due to the requirements of the metre; thus in:

For here two brothers, one a king, had met | And fought together; but their names were lost; | And each had slain his brother at a blow; | And down they fell and made the glen abhorr'd. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 39-42.

d) In all the above quotations the 'irregular' preterites follow after 'correct' pluperfects. It is but rarely that we find an 'irregular' preterite preceding a 'correct' pluperfect, as in:

Milly did not take all her love from the earth when she died. She had left some of it in Patty's heart. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, *Concl.*, 69.

147. Sometimes the pluperfect seems to have been used in preference to the preterite as representing the facts described in more lively colours than the latter. Thus SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2247) observes that in *I did not think we had been so near Scotland* "the pluperfect is more graphic than the preterite (would have been), as heightening the surprise by the reminder that it was too late to take advantage of the knowledge." It may have been from similar, perhaps vaguely conscious, considerations that the pluperfect is used instead of the, apparently, more apposite preterite in:

I'm afraid you're much worse. But I could not have come yesterday, my mother was so ill — for many reasons. Mrs. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XXV, 157.

"You have such pretty feet, mother!" Instantly, with a woman's instinct she had hidden them. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. III, 21 b.

He did not mend matters much by saying he should have thought it *had been* about half-past nine. Miss MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood*.

148. As has been observed in 7, *a*) the pluperfect is used, for want of a pre-pluperfect, in describing an action or state further than two stages removed from the primary dividing-point.

The Court found that the vessel was unseaworthy, that she was over-insured, for a very large sum, and there was a conspiracy to cast the steamer away, and that her running on the rocks was a wilful act of the master. We had hoped we had heard the last of a practice that was at one time common enough. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8515, 4*a*. (Shifted one stage forward, the last sentence would run: We hoped we had heard the last of a practice ...)

In the following example even the preterite seems to have been used by way of pre-pluperfect.

It was many years he had been to the mountains. He had taken June there two seasons running, after his wife died, and had realized bitterly that his walking days were over. *GALSW., Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. XII, 251. (Shifted one stage forward the last sentence would normally run: He took June there two seasons running, after his wife had died ...)

## CHAPTER LI.

---

### ASPECT.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Introductory Observations . . . . .	1— 2
Variability of the Aspect . . . . .	3—40
The Context imparting an Ingressive or Momentaneous Aspect to Indefinitely Durative Verbs . . . . .	4—18
The Context imparting a Terminative Aspect to Indefinitely Durative Verbs . . . . .	19—20
The Context imparting a Durative Aspect to Momentaneous Verbs . . . . .	21—23
The Context imparting a Continuative Aspect to Verbs of Indefinite Durativeness . . . . .	24—26
The Context imparting an Iterative Aspect to Momentaneous or Durative Verbs . . . . .	27—31
Aspect of the Participles and of Nouns of Action . . . .	32—40



### Introductory Observations.

#### 1 Predications may be distinguished into such as are:

a) momentaneous, i. e. covering only one moment. This may be compared to instantaneous exposure in photography, and graphically represented by a dot.

He will arrive at six o'clock and leave at nine; He dipped his pen into the ink. He dealt him a blow. He stabbed his assailant.

The news of his cousin Anne's engagement *burst* on Mr. Elliot most unexpectedly. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXIV, 259.

Before Randolph *left* her that summer, a letter *arrived* from Sam to *inform* her that he had been unexpectedly fortunate in *obtaining* the shop. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, I, 28.

b) durative, i. e. extending over a continuous succession of moments. In this case they may be:

1) indefinitely durative, i. e. with no particular stage of the predication definitely thought of. This may be compared to time exposure in photography, and graphically represented by a straight line indefinitely produced at each end; thus:  $\leftarrow - \rightarrow$

He lives at Oxford. He bore his grief with fortitude.

The duration of the predication may, of course, be defined by a point of time at either end or at both ends, indicated by an adverbial adjunct or clause of time, but this delimitation is purely fortuitous and independent of the meaning of the predication.

He has lived in this town since his birth. He will live in this town till his death. He lived in this town from 1910—1920.

2) ingressively durative, i. e. with the initial stage of the predication more distinctly thought of than the rest. This may be graphically represented by a line with a distinct beginning, but no distinct end; thus:  $| \rightarrow$

And then the moon *arose*, and in a moment John Oxenham's ship was close *aboard*. KINGSLEY, *Westward Ho!*, Ch. III, 21 a.

A distinctly ingressive character may be observed in many predications which are expressed by verbs formed from adjectives or nouns by means of the suffix *en*, such as *to blacken*, *to fatten*, *to quicken*, *to sicken*, *to whiten*, etc.; *to lengthen*, *to heighten*, *to strengthen*, etc.

The seed which is sown shall one day sprout and quicken. SCOTT, *Peveril*, Ch. XIII.

The sea whitens with the rising gale. POPE, *Odyss.*, IX, 160.

Also verbs formed from adjectives without any modification often denote predications of an ingressive character.

They had gone out the moment it had cleared. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXIII, 237.

Her hair greyed and whitened. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, V, Ch. III, 145.

Similarly other verbs semasiologically connected with adjectives; thus *to blanch* (= to become white or pale), *to bleach* (= to become white), *to fill* (= to become full).

Her eyes filled with tears. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.

Also when used transitively, i. e. used in a causative meaning, these verbs mostly denote a predication of an ingressive nature.

I never whitened a hair of her dear head. DICK, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 299.

The stories to the effect that the King Sovereign has enriched himself enormously by these enterprises are probably without foundation. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 194, 166 a.

Note *a*) Although primarily indicating the initial stage of a process these verbs are often accompanied by an adjunct or sentence implying that the process has developed into a certain result (20).

Presently the hiss deepened to a sigh. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXV, 177.

Some sickened and sunk down by the way. PRESCOTT, *Peru*, II, 327.

*β*) The ingressiveness of a given predication is often emphasized by *to begin* or a verb of like import.

Soon after his restoration the Earl began to sicken. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, II, 354.

*γ*) It will have been observed that most of the verbs which have been represented here as instances of ingressive verbs, readily admit of being expanded into a combination of *to become*, or some other copula of an analogous meaning, + a nominal denoting a state. These copulas may, accordingly, be considered as typical of ingressiveness; and capability of this expansion may often be taken as a test of a given verb having an ingressive meaning or having assumed it. It should, however, be added that there is sometimes a marked difference between a simplex and its corresponding expansion; thus *to lengthen* = *to become longer*, not *to become long*; *to widen* = *to become wider*, not *to become wide*.

3) terminatively durative, i. e. with the final stage of the predication more distinctly thought of than the rest, the sentence often containing a word(-group) denoting the end of the activity attained or to be attained. This may be graphically represented by a line with a distinct end, but no distinct beginning; thus: ←—| Compare *to climb on a hill*, *to walk down-stairs* (or *up-stairs*) and *to hatch eggs*, which are terminatively durative, with *to climb up a hill*, *to walk down* (or *up*) *the stairs* and *to sit on eggs*, which are indefinitely durative.

Compare also *to bring a thing*, which is terminatively durative, with *to fetch a thing*, which is ingressively durative, both distinguished from *to bear* (or *to carry*) *a thing* which is indefinitely durative;

*to engage a person*, which is momentaneous, with *to employ a person*, which is indefinitely durative;

*to obtain a thing*, which is momentaneous, with *to acquire a thing*, which is terminatively durative.

4) continuatively durative, i. e. thought of as continuing beyond a certain point of time. This may be graphically represented by a line which is produced beyond a certain point; thus:  $\leftarrow - - - \rightarrow$  This aspect attaches to many predications which are expressed by certain compound verbs whose first element is *out*, such as *to out-grow*, *to outlive*, *to outstay*

He had outlived nearly all his early friends and foes. McCARTHY, *Hist. of Our Own Times*, IV, Ch. LVII, 253.

The guest had again and again to remind himself that he must not outstay his welcome. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XVI.

Also the verbs *to maintain*, *to subsist*, and *to survive* are continuatively durative. With *to subsist* compare *to exist*, which is indefinitely durative.

The fugitive had survived his brother by several months. GRAPH., 1889, 337.

c) iterative, i. e. consisting of an indefinitely prolonged succession of like acts and, from the nature of these acts, distinguished into:

1) momentarily iterative, which may be graphically represented by a succession of dots; thus: ...

He sometimes paused .. and *panted* like a chased deer. TYND., *Glac.* I, XVI, 112.

2) duratively iterative, which may be graphically represented by a succession of short lines; thus: — — —

He struggled against superior numbers. CONC. OXF. DICT.

Many verbs denoting iterative predications were formed in the older stages of the language by means of the suffixes *le* and *er*; thus *to babble*, *to cackle*, *to crackle*, *to crumple*, etc.; *to batter*, *to chatter*, *to clamber*, *to glitter*, etc. See the O. E. D., s.v. *le*, suffix 3; *er*, suffix, 5.

And ere three shrill notes the pipe had uttered, | You heard as if an army *muttered*; | And the muttering grew to a *grumbling*; | And the grumbling grew to a mighty *rumbling*; | And out of the houses the rats came *tumbling*. BROWN., *Pied Piper*, VII.

Distinctly iterative are certain new formations consisting of repeated onomatopoetic stems, as in:

They became exhausted in imitation of them (sc. fine gentlemen); and they yah-yahed in their speech like them. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. II, 55a.

On such evenings Margaret was apt to stop talking rather abruptly, and listen to the drip-drip of rain upon the leads of the little-bow-window. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. II, 13.

Outside the wind blew gustily and set a loquacious tassel tap-tapping against a pane. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. V, 36.

Any one who dwells upon them is pooh-poohed as a crank or alarmist. *Times*.

(They) are to be blamed for this incessant shoot, shoot, shooting of the big game. *Manch. Guard.*, 26 12. 1924, 552c.

2. Obs. I. The particular nature of a predication here referred to is mostly called its aspect. The term corresponds to what in German grammars is called *aktionsart*. Although the terms apply, strictly, only to the predications, they are also, for the sake of brevity, used in speaking of the verbs or group-verbs expressing them.

II. The momentaneous aspect is more frequently called the perfective aspect. But, owing to its natural associations with a certain tense-form, the perfect, which expresses completed action, this term has been rejected as giving rise to confusion between aspect and tense. Further names often given to this aspect, especially in German books or treatises dealing with the subject, are *punktueller*, *auristischer*, *resultativer aktionsart*.

In German grammars and grammatical treatises the durative aspect is also designated by *imperfektiver*, *kursiver*, *kontinuativer*, *linearer aktionsart*.

Instead of *ingressiver* also the terms *inceptiver* and *inchoativer* are often met with. *Initiver* is another, less common, term for the same aspect.

For *terminativer* we also find *resultativer*, *effectiver* and, occasionally, *finitiver*. The *iterativer* aspect is often called the *frequentativer* aspect.

III. The *ingressively durative* aspect bears some resemblance to the momentaneous aspect, but differs from the latter in that it more or less distinctly suggests a change. Thus there is some hint of a change in such a sentence as *Just then he was aware of a band of boys who had come round the corner* (ASCOT R. Hope, *Old Pot*), but it is difficult to see any allusion to a previous state in *Venus and Adonis was immediately popular* (FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shakespeare*, Ch. I, 4). In the following discussions, therefore, the difference between momentaneous and *ingressively durative* is not insisted on.

IV. The English language has a powerful and effective expedient to express a durative aspect explicitly and indubitably in the Expanded (often called the *Progressive*) Form of the verb, consisting of its present participle and the copula *to be*. This idiom, which implies a variety of other interesting shades of meaning, will receive adequate treatment in the following chapter. For the same purpose the Dutch often uses a construction with an infinitive, as is shown in *Hij is aan het schrijven*, *Hij is aan het drukken van zijn boek*, etc.

V. In the following discussions the terms *durative*, *ingressive*, *terminative*, *continuative* are often used, for the sake of brevity, instead of the clumsy *indefinitely durative*, *ingressively durative*, etc.

### Variability of the Aspect.

3. a) One of the first things which cannot fail to strike us as we go through a few pages of English prose or poetry with a view



of ascertaining the aspect of the verbs, is that some are hard to classify, having no distinct features to justify inclusion in a particular group. Such are, among many others, *to say* and *to tell* and numerous other verbs denoting the uttering of human thought or feeling, e. g.: *to answer*, *to explain*, *to reproach*, etc.; *to punish*, *to rebuke*, *to revenge*, *to retaliate*, *to blame* and other verbs of a similar import; *to look*, *to regard*, *to consider*, in general, verbs indicating a physical or mental vision; and a host of other verbs among which we mention only *to lend*, *to borrow*, *to laugh*, *to smile*.

Such verbs often have a more or less distinct aspect imparted to them by the context. Thus *to look* may be said to have a durative aspect in an adverbial clause of time introduced by *as*, while it appears to be momentaneous or iterative in such a clause opening with *when*. Compare:

I acknowledge that Philip himself, as he looks back at his past career, is very much moved. THACK., *Adv. of Phil.*, 512.

When I looked in his face, with its pale, delicate features, I thought I could see traces of the same mental struggle that I had gone through. SWEET, *The Old Chapel*.

When(ever) I look at him, I am reminded of a certain incident which befell years ago.

b) Another observation which we are bound to make is that the normal aspect of a verb is often modified or even utterly changed by the context. It is with these changes that we shall be concerned in the following discussions.

#### The Context imparting an Ingressive (or Momentaneous) Aspect to Indefinitely Durative Verbs.

4. Many verbs and group-verbs of an indefinitely durative aspect more or less frequently have an ingressive (or momentaneous) aspect imparted to them by the context, which sometimes strikes us as at variance with the notions they normally call forth in our minds.
5. This change is frequent (regular would, perhaps, be a more appropriate term), when such a verb is placed in the imperative mood. The apparent incompatibility of durativeness with the nature of the imperative would satisfactorily account for the indisputable fact that in this function the English verb is practically never placed in the Expanded Form (Ch. LII, 21).

Come in! and *know* me better, man. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III.

*Stand* off from me, or I'll split your head against the wall. id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XVI, 155.

Even in such a sentence as *Honour thy father and thy mother!* although, no doubt, intended to urge continued obedience to a certain moral rule, the imperative, as such, implies no more than that this obedience should be initiated, the occasion of the injunction being that the paying of this tribute of respect has been in abeyance.

6. The same change is scarcely less marked in the language of narrative or history, when a number of happenings are recounted in chronological succession. Here also verbs of indefinite durativeness are often made to express the action in its initial stage. This applies not only to such as are primarily more or less neutral as to aspect (3, *a*), but to those whose indefinite durativeness is beyond question. It deserves attention that these verbs, owing to their special application, are almost regularly placed in the Unexpanded Form, the actions which do not mark a progressing of the happenings, but describe a state of things prevailing at the time of these happenings, being, as a rule, expressed by verbs in the Expanded Form (Ch. LII, 12).

Thus in the following quotation all the verbs marking a progressing of the happenings have an ingressive aspect.

The sound of the word "spring" in that gloomy boarding-house dining-room cheered her. She smiled at the thought. It seemed nice to think that she was waiting for the spring. She felt the younger for it. Then she turned her smile to him and passed the salt across the table before she helped herself. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Ch. III, 22.

A similar change may be observed in the language of stage-directions.

He goes out hurriedly. And Barthwick, placing a chair, motions to the visitor to sit; then with pursed lips, he stands and eyes her fixedly. She sits, and steals a look at him; then turns away, and, drawing up her veil, stealthily wipes her eyes. And Jack comes back. GALSW., *The Silver Box*, I, 3, (31).

7. Certain verbs and group-verbs of indefinite durativeness, which are more or less frequently employed ingressively deserve separate mention, especially because their Dutch equivalents hardly admit of an analogous modification of aspect, another verb or, at least, some particular grammatical device being mostly needed to meet the change.
8. First in importance as to this modification are the frequent instances of the group-verbs with the copula *to be*. These instances are, naturally, most frequently met with in the language of narrative or history, but occur also in other forms of language. A good illustration is afforded by:

But when the fourth part of the day was gone, | Then Enid was aware of three tall knights. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 56. (Here *was aware* may be apprehended to stand for *became aware and, consequently, was now aware*. The Dutch translation would require *werd gewaar*, and *was gewaar* would unquestionably be felt as incongruous.)

Very instructive is the following quotation, in which *to be* + nominal and *to get* + nominal are used in identical functions:

But deep down in his heart there was a little spot of doubt, which he resolutely turned his mental back upon, but which he could not thereby get rid of, any more than a man may be quit of a boil on the neck by declining to recognize it as such. OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler* (SWAEN Sel, II, 140).

It should be observed that it is chiefly nominals (or nominal equivalents) which denote a state which are here referred to. There is rarely any change of aspect in combinations consisting of the copula *to be* and a nominal (or nominal equivalent) denoting a quality.

Here follow some few quotations illustrating modification of aspect of the above description in combinations with:

a) *adjectives*: The men lay down before the door and in a few minutes were asleep. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 24.

I must not forget that we went on board the yacht, where they all three descended into the cabin, and were busy with some papers. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 12 b.

Anne inquired after Captain Benwick. Mary's face was clouded directly. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIV, 131.

Soon after Mrs. Brontë was very ill. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. I, 17.

b) *nouns*: The Emperor surrendered his sword and was a captive in the hands of his enemies. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXIV, 372.

I am orderly to-morrow. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XI, 98.

c) *numerals* (or equivalent expressions): I was of age the other day. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. V, 42.

I am 55 next week. *Punch*, No. 3705, 22 b.

d) *adverbs* (or adverbial phrases): When the horses were baited, he was off. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XII, 121.

Has any chaise been by at all? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IX, 75.

The moment Scrooge's hand was on the lock, a strange voice called him by his name. *id.*, *Christm. Car.*, III.

He was both out of pocket and out of spirits by that catastrophe. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 370.

9. Obs. I. The twofold notion which attaches to these combinations, viz. the initiation of a state and its subsequent continuation may be responsible for the variability of the tense in adverbial clauses of time introduced by the conjunction *since*. Sometimes (mostly) we find the preterite, sometimes the perfect, occasionally varying with the present. When the perfect is used, *since* is often convertible into *all the time that*. Compare 11, and also Ch. L, 131.

i. Since my dear soul was mistress of her choice, | And could of men distinguish, her election | Hath seal'd thee for herself. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 71.

I have noticed this in Frank since he was here. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. X, 58.

ii. \* It's a long while since I have been at home. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense & Sens.*, 142. T.

My brain has been at fault, Tressilian, almost ever since thou hast been away. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. XII, 144.

\*\* Since I'm married .. I give you my honour, I've not touched a bit of stamped paper. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXX, 318.

II. *To be dead* often has the value of *to become dead* or *to have died*. Compare the O. E. D., s.v. *dead*, 1, d; STOF., Taalstudie IX; FIJN VAN DRAAT, The Loss of the prefix *ge* (E. S., XXXI, 111). This application of the phrase is, apparently, due to *dead* being apprehended as a past participle, i. e. as equivalent to *died*, and arose when mutative verbs (Ch. XLV, 16, b) were conjugated with *to be*. It will be observed that substitution of *to be dead* for *to have died* at the same time involves a change of tense, the perfect or pluperfect being replaced by respectively the present or preterite (Ch. L, 128, Obs. I).

We have been thinking of marrying her to one of your tenants whose mother is lately dead. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. XVI.

While I was there, they came to tell the boy-sophist that his favourite freedman was just dead of a fever. LYTTON, Pompl., I. Ch. II. 10 b.

Our poor little cat has been ill two days, and is just dead. MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 203.

Sir Wigram Allen, I regret to see, is since dead. FROUDE, Oc., XI, 177.

With these quotations compare the following, in which *to be dead* is used in the normal aspect and tense. Observe that it is attended by an adverbial adjunct denoting a length of time.

He was the only son of Katharine Ralston, widow of Admiral Ralston of the United States Navy, who had been dead several years. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I. Ch. I, 7. T.

In *Dr. Kenn's wife lies dead* (G. ELIOT, Mill, VII, Ch. I, 454) *lies* may have been preferred to secure an indefinitely durative aspect.

In *Her face changed and she was dead*. (EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VIII, 33 a) there is change of aspect, but the tense is the normal.

III. Irregularity of aspect and tense may occasionally be observed also in other nominal predicates; thus in:

He is aware from Mr. Langham . . . that the value of the land is decreasing. MARJ. BOWEN, Rake's Prog., I. Ch. I, 4. (= He has become aware . . .)

Poor man, he is crazed by this discovery. MRS. GASK., A Dark Night's Work, Ch. VII, (478). (= . . . He has got crazed . . .)

Margaret met Jem Wilson several days after his brothers were seriously ill. id., Mary Bart., Ch. VII, 69. (= . . . had fallen seriously ill.)

A sense of evil and condemnation remained even after the voice was silent. SWEET, Old Chapel (= . . . had become silent.)

Eyebrows which remained black long after the hair was white. THACK., Es m., Pref. X. (= . . . had turned white.)

IV. While these applications of *to be* + nominal strike us as incongruous when, as in the above quotations, they are attended by an adverbial adjunct denoting a point of time in the past, or when such an adjunct is suggested by the context, they make no such impression when there is no such adjunct.

Do you know that my wife is dead? FRANK HARRIS, Contemp. Portr., IV, 115. (= . . . dat mijn vrouw dood is).

Nor does the change of aspect strike us as out of the common when, in reported speech, *to be* + nominal stands for *to have become* + nominal, e. g. in such a sentence as *He told me that this friend was long since dead*. (= . . . dat zijn vriend al lang dood was); any more than in *He was long since dead* (EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse m., Ch. X, 89) before which the reporting sentence is understood.

10. Among the verbs of indefinite durativeness, to which the context often imparts an ingressive or momentaneous aspect, the following deserve especial mention:

*to be*: The end is not yet. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XIII, 302.

When is the wedding to be? O. E. D., s.v. *be*, 2.

*to employ*: It would be a work of christian charity to employ poor Sarti. G. ELIOT, Scenes, II, Ch. III, 97. (= *to engage*; compare: She engaged a maestro to give her lessons in singing. *ib.*)

*to exist*. The republic existed, in fact, from the moment of the abjuration in 1581. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 898 a.

*to have*, in various shades of meanings, as is shown by: Come we will slay him and will have his horse. TEN., Ger. & En., 62

I had a letter this morning. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, III, Ch. II, 60.

She, too, might have had an accident. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, Ch. VII, 104.

Foul weather didn't know where to have him. DICK, Christm. Car., I.

Note especially *to have pity* (or *compassion*) (*up*) *on* as a frequent variant of *to take pity* (or *compassion*) (*up*) *on*. According to the O. E. D. *to take compassion* (*up*) *on* is now obsolete.

When I found he was really going to his friends at Thornberry Park for the whole day to-morrow, I had compassion on him. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XXII, 220.

*to hold*: The old gentleman rose to his feet and held out his hand. TEMPLE THURSTON, Mirage, Ch. V, 43.

*to know*, in various shades of meaning, as is shown by:

I have only quite lately known who were my parents. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., III, VIII, Ch. LXIX, 395.

When did you and she first know each other? PINERO, Iris, I, (21).

It was a picture of Romsdal horn; he knew it in an instant. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XI, 93.

Then some facetious gentleman . . . would request to know "were he vos a shovin' to." DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 31.

For I'll be back, my girl, before you know it. TEN., En. Ard., 193.

She knew at once that they were soldiers. BUCH., Wint. Night, Ch. III, 31.

*to learn*: My hostess learned my name. LYTTON, My Novel, II, X, Ch. II, 152.

*to lie*: A council of war was held. Should they fire or lie low? DON. HANKEY, The Beloved Captain, XVIII, 46.

*to love*: She lifted up her eyes . . . And loved him, with that love which was her doom. TEN., Lanc. & El., 259.

*to possess*: Near eighty years after our forefathers possessed them, our plantations were in the hands of factors. THACK., Esml., Pref. IX.

*to sit*: There from his charger down he slid, and sat. TEN., Lanc. & El., 508

*to sleep*: She closed the Book and slept. TEN., En. Ard., 495.

*to slumber*: Many centuries have been numbered | Since in death the baron slumbered. LONGF., The Norman Baron, XV.

*to stand*: When the old folks at a country gathering descried his well-known crest at a distance, . . . they always stood by for a squall. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 354.

*to think*: I cannot think of the date. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. IV, 33 b

*to weep*: Scrooge sat down upon a form, and wept to see his poor forgotten self as he used to be. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 38.

11. In adverbial clauses of time introduced by *since*, verbs which are primarily of an indefinitely durative aspect, are sometimes placed in the preterite, sometimes in the perfect, the variability of tense being due to the same cause as in the case of the combinations with *to be* (9, Obs. I). See also Ch. L, 131.

i. I have learned to be dangerous upon points of honour, since I served the Spaniard. SCOTT, Ken., Ch. I, 17.

ii. There have not been any (rooks) since we have lived here. DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 4 a.

12. Many verbs of the above description are assisted in expressing an ingressive (or momentaneous) aspect by adverbs (or adverbial word-groups) implying a moving in a certain direction, e. g.:

*away*: Mr. Toots would then turn round as if to go away. DICK., Domb., Ch. XXII, 206.

*back*: The old gentleman lay back again upon his pillows. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. XIII, 333.

*down*: His sword was in its sheath; | His fingers held the pen, | When Kempenfelt went down | With twice four hundred men. COWPER, On The Loss of the Royal George, VI.

*off*: Before I dozed off, I was going to tell you what Mr. and Mrs. Tulliver were talking about. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. I, 3.

*up*: He looked up to the altered face. Miss YONGE, Heir of Redc., II, Ch. XVIII, 317. (*To look up (to)* in the meaning of *to have a feeling of respect or veneration (for)* is indefinitely durative: She looked up to him as to a being of a superior order. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXX, 325.)

13. Special mention should be made of the verbs *to lie*, *to sit* and *to stand*, which are commonly coupled with the adverbs *down* or *up* when occasion arises to express ingressiveness.

*to lie*: He lay down and begged her to put out the lights. G. ELIOT, Mid., V, Ch. XLVIII, 353.

*to sit*: i. After several turns he sat down again. DICK., Christm. Car., I.

ii. Awakening in the middle of a prodigiously tough snore, and sitting up in bed, to get his thoughts together, Scrooge had no occasion to be told that the bell was again upon the stroke of One ib., III.

*to stand*: i. At this point the Court invited Mr. Lackington to stand down. Punch, No. 2952, 51 a.

ii. Mrs. Lauderdale rose from her chair and stood up. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 130.

14. Obs. I. It must, however, be understood that *down* and *up* do not always imply a moving in a certain direction, but may also indicate the position attained as the result of the moving. This may account for *to sit down*, *to sit up* and *to stand up* being also used as indefinite duratives.

*to sit*: i. She could very well work at something sitting down. HARDY, Life's Little Ir., Ch. I, 15.

ii. Having leave as a high treat, to sit up until my mother came home. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 8 b.

*to stand*: Shall we stand up for a minute under that porch? EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. II, 23.

Miss Slater had commanded Eva to stand up for the remainder of the lesson. BARRY PAIN.

II. In Literary English we sometimes find the verb *to sit* furnished with the reflexive pronoun (or the personal pronoun doing duty as such), perhaps, for the purpose of making it ingressive.

- i. She sat herself on a couch in a window. DICK., *Little Dor*, Ch. II, 13 a.
- ii. There we sat us. SARAH GRAND, *Our manifold Nature*, 107.

Also *to sit down* is sometimes found connected with this pronoun, possibly to remove all uncertainty of the action being intended as ingressive (Ch. XXXIV, 21; 23, a).

- i. She sat herself down before a cheerful fire. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII, 211.
- ii. The Rector sat him down to his task. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 151.

Similarly occasionally *to lie down*, as in:

He had lost his way . . and lain him down to die. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. X, 127.

III. Further variants of the ingressive *to sit (down)* are *to become seated* and *to seat oneself*. The former is, apparently, uncommon.

- i. Mrs. Varden called up quite a courtly air, and became seated. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXVII, 106 a.
- ii. He alone waited until a lady had become seated before he seated himself. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Ch. I, 8.

15. Some verbs of a distinctly ingressive or momentaneous aspect, or liable to assume such an aspect, are often placed before verbs of indefinite durativeness, apparently mainly for the purpose of imparting an ingressive aspect to the latter. They may then, in a manner, be regarded as auxiliaries of aspect (Ch. XLV, 12). In this function we find:

a) *to begin* and *to commence* (I, Note  $\beta$ ), both distinctly momentaneous, the former construed either with an infinitive or a gerund, the latter mostly with a gerund (Ch. XIX, 20).

- i. \* The garrison began to feel the pressure of hunger. MAC., *Clive*, (506 b.)
- \*\* Unable to contain herself, she began scolding one of her daughters. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. II, 10.
- ii. \* He commenced crying aloud. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLI, 410.
- \*\* Soon after he commenced to reside at Mossiel. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, XI.

b) certain copulas of the third kind (Ch. I, 10), i.e. such as denote the getting into a certain state, especially:

*to get*, which, besides ingressiveness, also more or less distinctly, implies the overcoming of some difficulty. In this function the verb is mostly construed with *to* + infinitive, sometimes, especially in American English, with *to* + gerund. STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 904, 1044. A third construction is that with a present participle (Ch. LII, 50).

- i. How did they get to know each other, I wonder? HARDY, *Life's Little Ir.*, IV, Ch. II, 98

One gets to feel that it is wrong to think. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 14, 339.

- ii. We got to chatting about our rowing experiences. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XV, 196.

He gets to feeling very low, walking about all day after work. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, I, 1, (20). T.

iii. We got talking. Eng. Rev., 1912, Aug. 89.

Don't you get making a noise, you naughty boy! COMT. MACK., Carnival, Ch. II, 17.

*to grow*, like *to get*, mostly construed with *to* + infinitive, occasionally with *to* + gerund (Ch. I, 10).

i. She grew to believe that the powerful smell of the spilt brandy absolutely intoxicated her. Mrs. GASK., A Dark Night's Work, Ch. VI, (460).

She had grown to have an extreme fancy for my wife as well as my little boy. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXV, 902.

ii. They (sc. the tourists) even grew to making up anecdotes about him. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. VI, 256.

*to fall*, which is mostly construed with *to* (rarely *in*) + gerund, less frequently with *to* + infinitive. In Older English, and in dialects, the preposition *to* before the gerund is often exchanged for a proclitic *a*. The dropping of this suffix has led to the use of the bare verbal in *ing*, which, from a purely descriptive standpoint, may now be considered as a present participle (Ch. XIX, 44; Ch. LII, 50; Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VII).

i. \* He fell again to speculating on the probable romance that lay behind that loneliness and look of desolation. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, Ch. VII, 281.

\*\* And Enid fell in longing for a dress | All branch'd and flower'd with gold  
TEN., Mar. of Ger., 630.

ii. The distinction was immediately approved by all, and so they fell again to examine. SWIFT, Tale of a Tub, (62 b).

ii. At this we all fell a-crying. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 11 a.

iv. After a while they fell crying. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. V, 36 b.

c) *to come* and *to go*, which, besides ingressiveness, also vaguely imply a moving towards a certain place. They are normally construed with *to* + infinitive, but this construction is, especially in colloquial language, often replaced by one with the conjunction *and*, the combination forming a kind of hendyadys. The Dutch often uses the corresponding *komen* and *gaan* for the same purpose.

The use of a bare infinitive after *to come* is now obsolete, that after *to go* archaic or dialectic (Ch. LV, 34).

Both *to come* and *to go* are also found construed with a present participle. In vulgar and colloquial English the participle-construction is often replaced by that with proclitic *a* + gerund.

In the following quotations *to come* and *to go* do not always appear in the same shade of meaning, nor is their ingressive power in all of them beyond question.

*to come*: i. Mr. Carpe had resolved on coming to reside at Shepperton. G. ELIOT, Scenes, I, Ch. IX, 67.

ii. Bob, closing the door behind him, came and stood before her. id., Mill, VII, Ch. I, 453.

iii. We'll come dress you straight. SHAK., Merry Wives, IV, 2, 84.

iv. All sorts of beautiful ideas came floating into her heart. RID HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VII, 67.

*to go*: i. Your cousin's daughter .. has gone to live with her uncle. TEMPLE THURSTON, Mirage, Ch. V, 45.

ii. She went and stood behind him .. while they read the letter together. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XL, 296.

iii. I'll go amuse my aunt with the old pretence of a violent passion for my cousin. GOLDSMITH, She stoops, IV, (207).



iv. I suppose I've got to go soldiering for a bit. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. II, § 6, 244.

v. You are best by yourself, when you go a-wooing, my son. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors*, Ch. IV, 39.

Note a) Also when devoid of any notion of moving, *to come* may have an ingressive function.

She is not really so handsome if you come to examine her features. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. V, 60.

β) A distinctly ingressive power attaches to *to go off*, as in:

The Madman nervously seized on his pestle-and-mortar, .. and went off pounding: click, click, click. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

γ) Sometimes the use of *to go* appears to be superfluous, ingressiveness being already otherwise indicated.

If she went and stood up against the mantel-piece, her robe draped itself classically round her. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 61.

Go and seat yourselves yonder. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. III, 163.

δ) In the following quotation the durativeness appears to be preserved notwithstanding the preceding *to go*:

He preferred to go and sit upon the stairs, in the dark and a strong draught, until he was again sent for. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 6a.

16. A large number of verbal phrases of various descriptions are, further available to serve as substitutes for verbs which do not adequately or unequivocally express the intended ingressive or momentaneous aspect. Only a few can be printed here. Comment seems needless.

i. He always took possession of the same table. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. I, 11.  
On the very next day he entered into possession of them (sc the apartments).  
DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 309.

II. I go to take my stand, | To see him (sc. Cæsar) pass on to the Capitol.  
SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 4, 25.

Then she resumed her stand at the window. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. II, 25.

Mr. and Mrs. Fezziwig took their stations one on either side of the door.  
DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II.

iii. The old gentleman rose to his feet and held out his hand. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Ch. V, 43.

He alone, amongst all the gentlemen there, stood to his feet when a remark was addressed to him. *ib.*, Ch. I, 8.

iv. Where railroad trains regularly come to a stand. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *station*.

v. The pot has come to a boil. J. M. BARRIE, *The Admirable Crichton*, II, 85.

17. Sometimes the Expanded Form of the verb appears to have an ingressive function (Ch. LII, 31).

Whereupon, being not a little discomfited, we were advising with ourselves what we should do. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (270). (= began to advise.)

Fantastic failures of journeys occupied me until the day dawned and the birds were singing. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XIX, 191. (= began to sing.)

18. In Old English, as in some other Germanic dialects, the prefix *ge* was extensively used to impart a momentaneous aspect to a

durative verb. But its application in this function was far from regular, the simplex being sometimes used in the same altered meaning. Moreover, we meet with not a few instances of the prefix being added to a durative verb without altering its aspect, and also of its being attached to a verb already momentaneous in aspect. It is, accordingly, evident that already in Old English the prefix not always had an ingressive force. Conversely we find it with great regularity as a formative of the past participle, of that form of the verb, that is, which pre-eminently expresses completed action. But even in this latter function it was discarded already in the earliest decades of the Middle English period. For detailed discussion of the original meaning and the history of this remarkable prefix see especially H. A. J. VAN SWAAY, *Het Prefix ga-gi-ge en de "Aktionsart"*; STOETT, *Mid. Ned. Spraakk.*<sup>2</sup>, § 285 ff; FIJN VAN DRAAT, *The Loss of the Prefix ge* (E. S. XXXI, III); DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 36; WILMANNS, *Deutsche Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 1, § 107.

The Context imparting a Terminative Aspect  
to Indefinitely Durative Verbs.

19. It is not often that the context imparts a terminative aspect to a verb of indefinite durativeness, i. e. causes the final stage of the action to come into special prominence. The following quotations afford instances of this modification:

Ye gods, it doth amaze me, | A man of such a feeble temper should | So get the start of the majestic world, | And bear the palm alone. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 131. (to bear = to carry off.)

The repast being ended, the Indians, having drunk their liquor, and smoked their pipes, now wrapped themselves up in their blankets. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 133). (= .. having drunk the last of their liquor and smoked the last of their pipes).

20. a) In the majority of cases the notion of terminativeness is brought out with the assistance of adverbs, chiefly *out*, *through* and *up*, which, indeed, modify the meaning of the verb in various other ways as well.

*out*: If an opponent menaces me, of whom and without cost of blood and violence I can get rid, I would rather wait him out, and starve him out, than fight him out. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 270.

I made a mistake in searching you out. HARDY, *Life's Little Ir.*, II, 52.

Note especially the varied shades of meaning conveyed by *to stand out*.

i. They will resolutely stand out against the overtures of this theatrical octopus. *Daily Mail*.

ii. The Church stood out for a few shillings more. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 229, 4 b.

iii. Mr. Tryan could hardly stand out through the winter. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. XXVII, 327.

*through*: He not for his own self caring but her, | Her and and her children, let her plead in vain; | So grieving held his will, and bore it through. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 167.

The prime reason for the failure was that we had undertaken a task that could not be carried through with the forces available in view of our other commitments. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8239, 3*a*.

I read the will right through. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, 37. T.

*up*: We'd a deal of work to finish up last night. DICK., *Christm Car.*, III. He profited instantaneously by his daughter's absence to drink up the rest of the wine. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 116.

Come now, eat 'em up while they are hot. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, I, Ch. II, 46.

Her tears had dried up. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XV, 102.

Hastily she dried or repressed her tears, as her guardian came up. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch VIII, 106.

I .. read up ague, and learned that I was sickening for it. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. I, 2.

Husband and wife should burn up in the bonfire of first-love all hobbies and little ways that would probably prevent home from being sweet. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 14.

*b*) The above adverbs may, in a manner, be regarded as denoting a kind of result of the action expressed by the verb with which they are connected. As practically any verb may be similarly attended by a word(-group) indicating a kind of result, it follows that there are no end of predicates that may be rendered terminative by the context. Thus we may observe such a change in:

i. I cried myself to sleep. DICK., *Cop*, Ch. IV, 22*b*.

He beat me then as if he would have beaten me to death. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 29*b*.

They (sc. the beetles and the butterflies) had been starved to death in the meantime. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. I, 6.

ii. He rose to be inspector of police. *Daily Chron.*

iii. He lived to be a very old man. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*.

Do you want to live to be old? KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref. Mem., XXXVII.

iv. He is likely to live to eighty. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 110.

Note. With *to beat to death*, *to be frozen to death*, *to be starved to death*, *to bore oneself to death*, etc., which are terminatively durative, compare *to cut dead*, *to strike dead*, etc., which are momentaneous.

### The Context imparting a Durative Aspect to Momentaneous Verb.

21. Change in a direction opposite to the above, i. e. of a momentaneous verb assuming a durative aspect through the context, is also common enough. Some instances deserve special attention:

*a*) The momentaneous *to stop* is often, especially in colloquial language, used in practically the same meaning as the indefinitely durative *to stay*.

i. So late as it was, the unwelcome visitor could not stop long. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. VI, (458).

ii. Dobbin begged Chopper to report progress to him at the hotel where he was stopping. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 245.

Note. In the language of the uneducated *to stop* is even used as a copula of the second kind, i. e. as equivalent to *to remain* (Ch. I, 8).

I never knew a body stop insensible so long. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 26.

b) The verb *to find*, from expressing the result of the action of seeking, is not unfrequently used to denote the action of seeking itself, with the final stage most prominently thought of, the momentaneous aspect being, accordingly, changed into a terminatively durative aspect. Observe that the Dutch has *zoeken* to express this meaning.

Randal then set himself to work to find a safe home for Riccabocca. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. XIII, 67.

Away went Tom to find boy in question. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

Note a) The verb necessarily assumes this aspect when it stands in the imperative.

"Louis," said Mr. Fairlie, ... "I made some entries in my tablettes this morning. "Find my tablettes." WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, I, Ch. VII, 43.

Wherefore rise, O Gawain, and ride forth and find the knight. TEN, *Lanc. & E.L.*, 535. (Compare: And cease not from your quest until ye find. *ib.*, 546.)

β) It is worth observing that *to find out* in the three shades of meaning registered in the O. E. D. has a terminatively durative aspect. One quotation must suffice:

If my brother doth not discharge you this moment, I will never sleep in this house again. I will find him out and have you discharged this moment. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, VII, Ch. VIII, 117b.

c) *To remember*, originally *to recall to the memory*, which is distinctly momentaneous, is often used in the sense of *to have in the memory*, which is a decided indefinite durative; in other words it often indicates a state of the memory which is the consequence of the act of recalling to the memory.

I remember, I remember, | The house where I was born. THOM. HOOD.

The word is duratively iterative (1, c) in:

O, Luke Tom told me to be sure and remember the rabbits every day. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 24.

With the above compare the distinctly momentaneous application of *to remember* in:

And somehow, suddenly, at sight of him, the blank was filled in. I remembered, in a flash, everything. MAX BEERBOHM, *Seven Men*, IV, 161.

d) *To forget*, originally *to lose remembrance of*, is sometimes used in the meaning of *to have no remembrance of*, the original momentaneous aspect of the verb having, accordingly, passed into an indefinitely durative aspect. Thus especially in the frequent *I forget (the name, the exact details, etc.)*.

"There are some creatures," said Paul, warming with his subject, "I don't know how many yards long, and I forget their names, but Florence knows, that pretend to be in distress [etc.]. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 103. (The durative aspect of *to forget* appears indisputably from its being contrasted with the following *to know*.)

In its changed aspect the verb is less frequent in its variations of person or tense, but instances cannot be said to be uncommon.

i. Mon ami — you forget; I have introduced you to this gentleman. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hall, Ch. XVII, 168.

You sold it to me! Ah, now I remember. But it was more than three shillings I gave. You forget — two glasses of brandy-and-water. LYTTON, My Novel, I, VI, Ch. XIX, 418.

ii. "And to think that, while you talk like an Arcadian, you are dressed like a princess." — "Ah, I forgot — the Austrian Ambassador's. I shall not go to-night." *ib.*, II, IX, Ch. III, 90.

*To forget* in its changed aspect is practically equivalent to *to have forgotten*, which expresses a state consequent on the act of forgetting, or losing remembrance of. This form of the verb, indeed, appears as a variant of the simple verb in the above application, especially when used in another person than the first, or another tense than the present.

i. It is the observation of some ancient sage whose name I have forgotten, that passions operate differently on the human mind. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VII, 13.

ii. I have more than once had the pleasure of meeting Mr. Brithwood, but he has doubtless forgotten it. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hall, Ch. XVII, 168.

e) *To starve*, which was originally used as a synonym of the momentaneous *to die*, is now used as an indefinite durative in the meaning of *to suffer extreme hunger* or, less frequently, *cold*.

i. And now thou woldest falsly been aboute | To love my lady, whom I love and serve, | And ever shall, til that myn herte sterve. CHAUC., Cant. T., A, 1144.

Better it is to die, better to starve, | Than crave the hire which first we do deserve. SHAK., Cor., II, 3, 120.

ii. He would rather starve on a penny than work for a pound. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V, 35.

Note α) With the durative *to starve* compare *to famish* and *to die* in the same aspect, as used in:

God was witness to all their calamities; He was seeing them robbed day by day; He was seeing them famish hour by hour; He was seeing them die. HALL CAINE, The Scapegoat, Ch. IX.

β) Both *to starve* and *to die* are also used duratively in the sense of *to have a longing desire (for)*.

i. He loved the country and had starved for it during all those terrible hours. T. P.'s Weekly, XIX, 482, 130 b.

ii. I die for food. SHAK., As you like it, II, 6, 2.

γ) The transitive *to starve*, also, is regularly durative.

You numbskulls! and so, while, like your betters, you are quarrelling for places, the guests must be starved. GOLDSMITH, She stoops, II, (179).

f) Further instances of this change of aspect are afforded by the following verbs, the modification being often evidenced by an adjunct denoting a length of time by which they are attended:

*to bless*: The Lord hath blessed thee since my coming. Bible, Gen., XXX, 30.

*to bring down*: For five minutes it (sc. the trial of the ex-Kaiser) brought down the House. Westm. Gaz., No. 8127, 1a.

*to deceive*: The one soft and tender side of the statesman's nature .. was his remorseful love for the school friend whom he still deceived. LYTTON, My Novel, II, XI, Ch. XVIII, 350.

*to hit it off*: They think that it is impossible for them to hit off or pull with the partners of their lives. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. XXIII, 222) (So far as the evidence goes, now always used duratively.)

*to wake*: The King doth wake to-night and takes his rouse. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 4, 8.

But I wake when it blows, and tremble to think of Uncle Dan and Ham. DICK., *Cop.*, III, 18 b.

Note. The durative *wake* is now archaic or rare, except in the gerund or present participle (34).

i. Her feverish thoughts passed and repassed the boundary between sleeping and waking. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XXIII, 151.

ii. Oft in my waking dreams do I | Live o'er again that happy hour, | When midway on the mount I lay, | Beside the ruined tower. COLERIDGE, *Love*, II.

22. a) Rather frequently the verb in its modified application exhibits a blending of two ideas, viz. α) that of a momentaneous action, β) that of a state of things resulting from that action, the latter being generally the one which is most prominently present to the speaker's mind. This is the case, in the following quotations, with:

*to clutch*: He stroked and clutched his beard, while he looked examiningly at the young face before him. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VIII, Ch. LX, 268. (principal notion: kept his beard in his clutch.)

*to hide*: A near and dear kinsman of mine has taken refuge in your country, and hides himself even from me. LYTON, *My Novel*, II, Ch. III, 85. (principal notion: keeps himself in hiding.)

*to imprison*: All circumstances combined to imprison me in London. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. 1, 2. (principal notion: to keep me imprisoned.)

*to usurp*: I am the king, and come to claim my own | From an impostor who usurps my throne. LONGF., *King Rob. of Sic.*, 78. (principal notion: keeps unlawful possession of my throne.)

b) Sometimes the fact that the state of things consequent on the momentaneous action is the prevailing one in the speaker's mind is evidenced by an adverbial adjunct denoting a length of time. This applies to the following quotations with the verbs:

*to cast*: While up the hall she slowly pass'd | Her dark eye on the King she cast. SCOTT, *Bridal*, I, XIX. (principal notion: kept her eye fixed on the King.)

*to leave*: All the hours you have left me lonely, I have been thinking like this. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XIII. (principal notion: I have been lonely through your leaving me.)

*to lift*: While this was in progress, (others) lifted their eyes and swept the vast expanse of country commanded by their position. HARDY, *Return*, I, Ch. III, 16. (principal notion: had their eyes lifted.)

*to lose*: I have of late — but wherefore I know not — lost all my mirth, forgone all custom of exercises. SHAK., *Hamlet*, II, 2, 310. (principal notion: have been without all mirth.)

He had nearly lost the use of his legs for a few years past. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, XXVI, 261. (principal notion: he was almost without the use of his legs through having lost it a few years ago.)

*to turn*: Mr. Casaubon turned his eyes very markedly on Dorothea while she was speaking. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. II, 9. (principal notion: kept his eyes turned.)

c) Peculiarly striking is the use of a primarily momentaneous verb in the perfect tense in connexion with an adverbial adjunct of time containing a demonstrative pronoun, which clearly brings out the fact that the reference is to a state of things continuing from a moment in the past to the moment of speaking (Ch. L, 122).

*to depart*: She has departed these two days. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, VI, Ch. V, 249.

*to forswear*: I have forsworn and abjured the whole business these many years. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXII, 517.

*to give up*: I've given up skating these many years. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 114.

d) Also when attended by an adverbial adjunct containing the preposition or adverb *since*, or an adverbial clause opening with the conjunction *since*, both denoting a length of time measured from a certain moment in the past, these verbs deserve especial attention when placed in the perfect in its second function (Ch. L, 9), or in the present tense as an occasional variant (Ch. L, 127, 131). Instances have come to hand with:

*to become*: Since when have you become so highly fastidious? BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*.

*to confine*: My aunt has discovered our intercourse by a note she intercepted, and has confined me ever since. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (216).

*to discontinue*: Since the 11th inst. the Post Office authorities have discontinued the special arrangements. *Times*.

*to forsake*: Ladislav has almost forsaken the house since he came. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, II, 147. T.

Note. Also the temporal clause may contain a verb with a changed aspect, the tense used in it being the perfect instead of the preterite. Are you afraid of walking by yourself since you have been frightened by the conjuror? G. ELIOT, *Rom.*, I, Ch. X, 91.

e) The prevailing notion may be that of a state, even although there is an adverbial adjunct denoting a point of time which refers to the momentaneous action. As in the case mentioned under c) this is evidenced by the use of the perfect tense in the second function (Ch. L, 9). Thus we find this tense in the following quotations with:

*to condemn*: The Lamarckian hypothesis has long since been justly condemned. HUXL., *Darwiniana*, Ch. I, 12.

*to find out*: I have found him out a long time since. SHER., *School*, I, 1 (304).

*to give up*: We have long ago given up the idea of exploiting them (sc. our colonies) for our own exclusive benefit. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 11 b.

*to go*: "I have heard that your father left behind him a great quantity of massy plate." — "O Lud! that's gone long ago." SHER., *School*, III, 3, (401).

*to leave*: Fanny has long ago left me. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXIV, 275.

*to observe*: It hath been long since observed that you may know a man by his companions. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 24 a.

*f)* Sometimes the adverb *ago* (*or since*), which stamps such an adjunct as *a long time ago* (*or since*) as one denoting a point of time, is suppressed. This suppression shows that almost any trace of a momentaneous action is obliterated from the speaker's mind. Thus in the following quotations with:

*to arrive*: He has only arrived back from the war about a week. EL. GLYN, *Ref. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. XI, 226.

*to come in*: "Weren't you here when he was speaking?" — "No — I've not long come in." MRS. WARD, *The Cryston Fam.*, I, Ch. I, 10.

*to desert*: The birds have deserted them (*sc.* the nests) a long while. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 4 a.

*to forget*: His name .. has long been forgotten. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (705 a).

*to gather*: The roses of these cheeks have been gathered many years. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 4. (257).

*to give over*: I have long given that work over. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, II, (183).

*to leave*: He's only left Oxford a few months. OSC. WILDE, *Lady Wind.*, I, (23).

*to set*: The sun has set a long time. MISS MITFORD, *Our Vil.*, Ch. VI, 55.

*to set up*: It (*sc.* the Insurance Company) has been set up only four years. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 80.

*to settle*: Haven't our papas settled it ever so long? *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

*to take*: Many of the words have long taken their place in the popular vocabulary. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. III, 101.

*g)* It may here be observed in passing that the perfect tense, which has been represented as evidence of the changed aspect of the verb in question, not unfrequently varies with the present. Thus not only in connexion with an adverbial word-group containing *ago* (*or since*), but also one without either of these adverbs, as in the following quotations with:

i. *to ordain*: Our lots are shaped for us, and mine is ordained long ago. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 175

*to shut*: "I think I'll go out and take a walk in the park." — "Nonsense, it's shut long ago." SHAW, *Candida*, III, (171). T.

ii. *to forgive*: The unhappiness of those days is long forgiven. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. III, 19.

23. When placed in the Expanded Form, a momentaneous verb, if not used iteratively (29, c), necessarily indicates more than a momentaneous action, implying as it does a number of additional secondary actions. It assumes, accordingly, more or less a durative aspect (3).

Maggie, who is receiving her, has been quite creditably toned down. J. M. BARRIE, *What Every Woman knows*, III, 78.

The dawn was already breaking, and the air beginning to warm. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, XVIII, 40.



The Context imparting a Continuative Aspect  
to Verbs of Indefinite Durativeness.

24. Rather frequent is the use of an indefinite durative in a continuative aspect, such a verb as *to continue* being clearly implied. This may be observed in the following quotations with:

*to float*: Through all the storms of life Jack had floated somehow. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 58.

*to grow*: He that tells the tale | Saw once a great piece of a promontory, | That had a sapling growing on it, slide | From the shore-cliff's windy walls to the beach | And there lie still, and yet the sapling grew. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 165.

*to laugh*: All that breathe | Will share thy destiny. The gay will laugh | When thou art gone, the solemn brood of care | Plod on. BRYANT, *Thanatopsis*, 61.

*to lie*: That day the snow did not lie. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. II, 1, 28.

*to live*: My mother .. said .. that .. she would be but a childish mother if she lived. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 3*b*. (Instances are very frequent. Observe also the changed aspect in the noun of action *life*, as in: Whether ye wish me victory or defeat, | Long for my life, or hunger for my death, | Yourself shall see my vigour is not lost. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 81).

*to stand*: Her palfrey whinnying lifted heel, | And scour'd into the coppices and was lost, | While the great charger stood, griev'd like a man. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 535. (Compare with this the following quotation, in which *to stand* is used to mark the beginning of a stationary position and, accordingly, has assumed an ingressive aspect: This craven pair | Of comrades making slower at the Prince, | When they saw their bulwark fallen, stood. *ib.*, 168.)

*to wake*: O'er-tortured by that ghastly ride, | I felt the blackness come and go, | And strove to wake; but could not make | My senses climb up from below. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, XIII.

25. The continuative aspect may be more explicitly expressed by:  
a) the adverb *on*, which may be placed after practically any durative verb.

The love lived on. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. VIII, 107

When the Elsmere were gone, Hester still sat on alone in the drawing-room. Mrs. WARD, *Rich. Meyn.*, II, Ch. XVII, 359.

b) some copula of the second kind (Ch. I, 8), especially *to continue*, *to go on*, *to keep (on)*, or *to remain*, which is placed before the present participle of the verb in question. Also this expedient is of practically unlimited applicability. The verbal in *ing* after *to continue* may also be regarded as a gerund, this verb also admitting of being construed with an infinitive (Ch. I, 8).

*to continue*: i. She continued to lean upon his arm. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*.

ii. Others chose to continue standing. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. II, 14.

*to go on*: The fashion, like all fashions, went on spreading. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 64.

*to keep (on)*: My lord still kept on looking fiercely at me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 31.

And still the corpse kept pointing back, and back, and looking at him with yearning eyes of agony. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. III, 21*a*.

*to remain*: Mrs. Goddard remained standing an unreasonably long time. MAR. CRAWF., *A Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Ch. IX, 71.

26. Combinations of a copula of the second kind with some nominal, or nominal equivalent sometimes do the same duty.

So long as the Prince remained alive, he was the father of the whole country. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 897 *b*. (= *lived* or *continued to live*.)

He takes John up to Lady Jemima, who has remained seated. SUTRO, *The Choice*, II, (40).

#### The Context imparting an Iterative aspect to Momentaneous or Durative Verbs.

27. Apart from the way in which the verbs mentioned in 1, *c*) more or less distinctly indicate indefinitely prolonged iteration, independently of their application in the sentence, we often find iterativeness of another description imparted to the verb by the context. This latter form of iterativeness may attach to practically all verbs, including those belonging to the class referred to above, in which, accordingly, the two forms of iterativeness may occur combined. Thus in:

He had his night-bell altered and placed in the room in which the good old lady had grumbled for many a long year. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 17.

28. *a*) All verbs, whether momentaneous or durative, assume an iterative aspect when they are made to represent an action as a customary, habitual or uniformly repeated practice (Ch. LII, 7).

He goes to Germany once a year. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2213.

The sun rises in the east. *ib.*, § 2223.

He and I go on alternate days. O. E. D., s.v. *alternate*.

Wonders never cease. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. IV, 265.

*b*) Thus also when a constantly repeated action may be regarded as one characterizing a person (or thing), the verb being placed in the Expanded Form and modified by *always*, *for ever*, or an adverbial adjunct of like import (Ch. LII, 34).

She was always expecting letters and always drumming on the table till the postwoman had called or gone past. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 235.

He is every day soliciting me for something in behalf of one my tenants. ADDISON, *Sir Rich. de Cov.*, 84.

29. Momentaneous verbs are necessarily made to assume an iterative aspect:

*a*) when they are placed in the perfect (or pluperfect) tense in the second function (22, *c*; Ch. L, 9).

Blood hath been shed ere now, i'th' olden time, | Ere humane statute purged the gentle weal; | Ay, and since too, murders have been perform'd | Too terrible for the ear. SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 4, 77.

The title has been accorded to the head of the family since time immemorial. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Christm. Eve*.

The skirts of her ancestors' garments have been kissed for centuries. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XVI, 167.

b) when they are connected with a copula of the second kind.  
 Gwendolen . . continued to receive polite attentions from the family at Quetcham.  
 G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. V, 71.  
 The King went on for some time sinning and repenting. MAC, *Hist.*, II,  
 Ch. VI, 305.

c) when they are placed in the Expanded Form, and do not imply a number of secondary actions (23).

Stage-coaches were upsetting in all directions, horses were bolting, boats were overturning and boilers were bursting. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 3.  
 I have been receiving beautiful long letters this winter from Master Jervie.  
 JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 192.

Note. Also durative verbs, and verbs which have not a pronounced aspect (3, a), similarly may have an iterative aspect imparted to them by the context.

i. From the first you have said we were in the wrong. BUCH., *Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 4.

I am not worthy to marry you, I told you so from the first. FLOR. MAR., *Bankr. Heart.*, II, 15. T.

ii. I have been reading with much pleasure the Greek romances. SHELLEY, *Es.*, 323.

We are tramping over the hills and reading and writing and having a restful time. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 225.

30. Iterativeness of an action, whether momentaneous or durative, can be explicitly indicated by means of *can*, *to use*, *will*, or phrases of a similar import, such as *to have a way* (or *knack*) *of*, which, apart from certain meanings of their own, may have for their main function the expression of constant recurrency (Ch. I, 50—56).

He gave his wife a look, such as his countenance could wear when angered. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 272.

They used to nod to one another when they met, and now and then they would exchange a word or two. SWEET, *Two Englishmen*.

What great ones do the less will prattle of. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, I, 2, 33.

Life is short and Lives have a way of being too long. A then., No. 4433, 404 a.

All these bills arrived in a week, as they have a knack of doing. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 126.

Note. Sometimes a similar notion is implied, none of these verbs or phrases being used to express it.

These things happen -- and you can't insure against them. SUTRO, *The Choice*, II, (39). (= will happen.)

That young man shouldn't let his sweethearts come here. It isn't done. You should tell him. *ib.*, (51). (= Dutch *Dat doet men niet*.)

31. It seems improper to extend the term iterative aspect to those forms of repetition which do not imply indefinitely prolonged iteration. On this assumption there is no iterativeness in the strict or narrow sense of the word in sentences like the following:  
 She wrote me, pretty well every second day, a full budget of news about herself and her mother. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*. (i.e. during her stay at the Riviera.)

He climbed up-stairs, weightily, laboriously stopping every few steps to breathe. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, 27 Aug.

I shall be dining alone all next week. *ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 314.

### Aspect of the Participles and of Nouns of Action.

32. It remains to say something of the aspect of the participles and of nouns of action (or gerunds) which occupy a position intermediate between verbs and adjectives and nouns respectively.
33. The present participle has the same aspect as the finite forms of the verb when it is a constituent of an undeveloped clause and is, accordingly, distinctly verbal in function (*Ch. LVII*, 11). The following examples will speak for themselves:
- i. Here are my letters announcing my attention to start *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 2243  
The shock of such an event happening so suddenly is easily intelligible to any one. *DICK., Cop.*, *Ch. XXXVIII*, 277 *a*.
  - ii. So ended the last fight deserving the name of battle that has been fought on English ground. *MAC., Hist.*, II, *Ch. V*, 180.  
I cannot imagine anybody disliking Jack. *FLOR. MAR., Bankr. Heart*.
34. In like manner as the finite forms of the verb, the present participle, when in a greater or less degree verbal, may have its primary aspect modified by the context. After the preceding detailed discussion a few examples, given without comment, will be deemed sufficient.
- i. "Janet," he said presently in his faint voice . . . In a moment she was close to him, bending over him. *G. ELIOT, Scenes*, III, *Ch. XXVII*, 328.
  - ii. Waking or asleep, | Thon of death must deem | Things more true and deep | Than we mortals dream. *SHELLEY, To a Skylark*, 81.
  - iii. A traveller, by the faithful hound, | Half-buried in the snow was found, | Still grasping in his hand of ice | That banner with the strange device, | Excelsior. *LONGF., Excelsior*, VIII. (principal notion: holding in the grasp of his hand.)
35. *a)* When modifying the object of a verb of perceiving, the present participle throws the durative aspect of a durative verb into relief, as opposed to the infinitive, which in this position disregards the aspect of the verb. Compare *KRUIS., Handb.*<sup>4</sup>, 542 ff.
- i. I see the young Englishman riding towards the house. *LYTTON, My Novel*, II, IX, *Ch. XI*, 116,  
Gwendolen felt the bitter tears of mortification rising and rolling down her cheeks. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der.*, I, *Ch. II*, 24.
  - ii. I generally observe such men to retain a certain freshness. *DICK., Cop.*, *Ch. II*, 7 *a*.  
I do not like to hear strangers speak about my mother. *Mrs. Craik, John Hal.*, *Ch. I*, 10.
- b)* An analogous difference may be observed between the present participle and the infinitive when modifying the subject of a sentence in which a passive verb of perceiving forms the predicate.

i. He was seen forcing his way among the trees and pushing aside the branches. BUCH., Wint. Night, Ch. XI, 192.

A funeral procession was seen approaching. HARDY, Life's Little Ir., I, 29.

ii. Presently he is heard to drive away. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VII, 55.

c) When the object of a verb of perceiving is in the objective relation to the following verbal, the latter is placed in the passive present-participle form when durativeness is insisted on, the bare past participle being preferred when durativeness is no matter of the speaker's thoughts. Instead of the passive present participle the active present participle representing an older *an* (or *on*) + gerund is sometimes met with, especially in the older writers. Both present-participle constructions are comparatively unusual.

i \* Majory watched the breakfast being removed with a sort of dumb anger. MRS. ALEX., Life Int., Ch. VII, 117.

I can't understand how any man can be content to keep out of this, and watch Belgium being destroyed. WELLS, Britling, II, Ch. I, § 15, 217.

\*\* "Simon, is supper ready?" — "Ay, my liege, I saw the covers laying." TEN., Queen Mary, III, 6, (625 a).

Annie seem'd to hear | Her own death-scaffold raising. id., En. Ard., 175.

ii. I perceived him led through the outward hall as a prisoner. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XVII, 111.

What was his discomfiture when he heard the chain and bolts withdrawn. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVI, 146.

36. Present participles, even such as have been formed from verbs which in their finite forms are distinctly momentaneous, are durative or, at least, iterative when they are used in a function in which the adjectival function comes to the fore. Thus especially when they are used attributively, as in the following examples:

Within her breaking heart | She bore the grief SOUTHEY, Rod., XXIV, 139.

Perhaps the harvests in England | By the untimely rains or untimelier heat have been blighted, | And from our bursting barns they would feed their cattle and children. LONGF., Evang., I, II, 99.

37. a) Also the past participle of momentaneous verbs is durative when it is used in a prominently adjectival function. Thus in such a sentence as *The bottle was broken* the participle *broken* has a durative aspect if it denotes a state, the verb *to be* having the function of a copula. If in the above sentence *was broken* is a passive preterite, the participle is almost purely verbal, and its aspect, consequently, differs in no way from that of the finite forms of the verb.

Durative verbs admit of an analogous twofold interpretation in this combination only so far as they admit of conveying a terminative meaning, i. e. state the result of the action. Thus, for example, in *The road was mended*, *The book was bound in calf*.

b) The ambiguity which attaches to the participle in this combination is not, however, so serious a drawback as might appear from the above exposition, because in the majority of cases the

context affords conclusive evidence as to the way in which it is to be understood. Thus there is no mistaking the meaning of *are sold* in *These articles are sold, you cannot have them* and *These articles are sold at an enormous profit* (Ch. XLVII, 6).

c) It may be added that the past participle of verbs which express activities that do not lead to any particular result (6, c) is not endued with a different aspect from that of their finite forms. Consequently there is no ambiguity in such sentences as *The picture was greatly admired, His explanation was not believed. He was remarked there. No noises were heard*, etc.

38. When placed attributively before a noun, past participles are, naturally, prominently adjectival, and, accordingly, durative of aspect: this also when they express the result of an activity.

i. \* Two led horses, which in the field always closely followed his person, were struck dead by cannon shots. MAC, *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XX, 220.

Heaven had placed her there for the safety and protection of the persecuted stranger. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVIII, 301.

People who cannot bear the thought of a hunted otter are fairly complacent about the salmon hooked and "played" *Manch. Guard.*, 11/4, 1924, 283 a.

\*\* Dearly beloved brethren, the Scripture moveth us [etc.].

Prodigious birth of love it is to me, | That I must love a loathed enemy. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 5, 144.

ii. \* Lady Spratt had taken a discharged servant of Mrs. Leslie's, without applying for the character. LYTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. V, 40.

A plucked man is a dismal being in a University. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 220.

\*\* Eduard stepped forward with his drawn sword in his hand. SCOTT, *Mon.*, XXVI, 283.

There was Jem Rodney, a known poacher, and otherwise disreputable. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. V, 37.

39. Nouns of action (and gerunds of a pronounced substantival nature) have the same aspect as the verbs from which they have been formed, or to which they are nearly akin in meaning. Thus it is easy to see that in their primary application *arrival, departure, perception, receipt, removal*, etc., are momentaneous; *contemplation, education, influence, knowledge, remorse*, etc. are indefinitely durative; *maintenance, survival*, etc. are continuatively durative; *crackle, giggle, chatter, glitter, rotation*, etc. are iteratively durative. The following examples must suffice:

i. When the day of departure came, .. Miss Sedley was greatly puzzled how to act. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 6.

ii. Those feelings and promises .. had been followed by so many years of division and estrangement. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXII, 249.

I was in the middle state between sleeping and waking. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38 b.

iii. "Contact with the other World" .. although it has rather the air of being a complete summary of speculation and experiment concerning the problem of man's *survival* after death, is not the book I have so long been waiting for. *Westm. Gaz.*, 14/2, 1920, 22 b.

iv. The chatter of French politics .. had quite put most of the old legends out of mind. EMERSON. *Eng. Traits*, Rel.

40. As in the case of verbs, the aspect of nouns of action is not fixed, but is, to a large extent, determined by the context. This becomes apparent from a comparison of the following groups of quotations, the first of each showing the noun in its primary aspect.
- acquaintance*: i. It might, perhaps, be the occasion of continuing their acquaintance. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XII, 110.  
 ii. As we are to see a great deal of Amelia, there is no harm in saying, at the outset of our acquaintance, that she is a dear little creature. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. I, Ch. I, 5.
- death*: i. There had been a suspension of all intercourse . . . ever since the death of that said late viscount. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVI, 151.  
 ii. For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life, through Jesus Christ, our Lord. Bible, *Romans*, VI, 23.
- knowledge*: i. Thus expanding my knowledge of the glaciers. TYNDALL, *Glac.*, I, X, 67.  
 ii. The third day succeeding their knowledge of the particulars was so fine . . . as to draw many to Kensington Gardens. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense & Sens.*, 240. T.
- marriage*: i. Their mutual understanding could not end in anything but marriage. HARDY, *Life's Little Ir.*, II, Ch. III, 44.  
 ii. His marriage had not been very happy. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVI, 149.
- visit*: i. Where smiling spring its earliest visit paid. GOLDSMITH, *Des.*, 3.  
 ii. Her usefulness to little Charles would always give some sweetness to the memory of her two months' visit there. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XI, 95.
-





# CHAPTER LII.

## THE EXPANDED FORM OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

The Fundamental Function of the Expanded Form. . . . .	1—4
The Progressive Function of the Expanded Form . . . . .	5—22
The Relieving Function of the Expanded Form. . . . .	23—28
The Prospective Function of the Expanded Form . . . . .	29—33
The Characterizing Function of the Expanded Form . . . . .	34—35
The Qualitative Function of the Expanded Form . . . . .	36—37
Verbs whose Meaning or Syntactical Function is incompatible with the Expanded Form . . . . .	38—43
Final Observations . . . . .	44—51



### The Fundamental Function of the Expanded Form.

1. As has been observed in Ch. LI, 2, Obs. IV, the English language has an effective expedient to express durativeness or iterativeness in a combination consisting of the copula *to be* + present participle. This combination has been called by a variety of names: Progressive Form, Continuous Form, Definite Form, Periphrastical Form, among which the first has met with most favour. They are, however, all of them more or less objectionable for one reason or another. In these pages, therefore, the term Expanded Form has been adopted. This term proposed by JESPERSEN in *Tid og Tempus* (406) and *Philosophy of Grammar* (Ch. XX, 277), appears to be recommendable because, while sufficiently descriptive of the combination, it is neutral as to its various functions.

2. a) In the case of momentaneous verbs the Expanded Form naturally does not express continuity of action, but prolonged repetition of separate acts.

Where have you been meeting her? MRS. WARD, *MARCE*, I, 90.

New guests were continually arriving. COMPT. MACK., *SYLV. SCARL.*, Ch. II, 86.

- b) Prolonged repetition of separate acts may, of course, also be expressed by the Expanded Form of durative verbs.

I shall be dining alone all next week. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 134.

When I was a lad, I'd to begin to bring money in at the age when boys nowadays are playing with lead soldiers and have a nurse to look after 'em. W. RILEY, *Netherleigh*, Ch. II, 26.

3. a) Verbs which in their fundamental meaning are distinctly momentaneous may also be found in the Expanded Form when their meaning is modified so as to comprise the circumstances by which the action they express is attended. Compare 30.

They are parting; they are shaking hands. He is turning away. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXII, 229.

The man that had denounced the poor woman suddenly jumped in (sc. into the train), as they were starting again. COMPT. MACK., *SYLV. SCARL.*, I, Ch. I, 32.

- b) Thus quite frequently *to begin* and *to commence*, whether or no followed by an infinitive or gerund.

Happily the matter is beginning to attract attention. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. IV, 94 c.

The windows were beginning to whiten in the winter dawn. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. X.

The performance was recommencing, and she was forced to seem to restore her attention to the orchestra. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XX, 193.

He prepared himself to watch the play which was just commencing. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VII, 60.

c) Note especially the frequent use of the Expanded Form of *to say*. This idiom happens to coincide with the common employment of the Expanded Form of verbs of saying in Old English in translating the Latin *loquitur*, *locutus est* (46), but whether it should be considered as a survival of the ancient practice is open to doubt. See JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus* IX, (409). For illustration see also 11, Obs. I.

But as I was saying, you sent me to comfort Mrs. Molly. FARQUHAR, *Recr. Of.*, I, 2, (260).

I was saying such garments are rare sights in the country. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. X, 55 *b*.

You were saying, before dinner, that burlesque Greek is not a knowledge very much in power at present. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. VII, 52.

"I shouldn't have thought it of you," she was saying. SWIN., *Noct.*, III, Ch. XII, VI, 259.

"No, I won't come with you," Valentine was saying. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, I, Ch. I, 43.

Note. Also such verbs as *to observe*, *to remark*, *to tell*, *to ask*, *to demand*, etc., denoting a modified saying, seem to be often placed in the Expanded Form in connexions similar to the above.

"Who brought him here?" Godfrey Hurndale was demanding. *ib.*, I, Ch. II, 87.

"I was telling Miss Dale that the signal for your subject is my enfranchisement," he said to her. MER., *Egoist*, I, 142. T.

4. Besides marking durativeness or iterativeness the Expanded Form of the verb, as has been hinted at in 1; and in Ch. LI, 2, Obs. IV, may have a variety of secondary functions, which are not always easy to determine or discriminate. The difficulty of telling the precise nature of the secondary function underlying a given application of the Expanded Form is due partly to the fact that it does not, as a rule, appear by itself, but is more or less distinctly blended with another, partly to the frequent impossibility of ascertaining the motives which may have induced the speaker or writer to use this form in preference to the Unexpanded Form. Under these circumstances the interpretation put upon the quotations contained in the following discussions cannot fail to strike the observant student sometimes as arbitrary or even contrary to the sense he finds in them.

#### The Progressive Function of the Expanded Form.

5. The most marked and most frequent of the secondary functions of the Expanded Form is to represent an action distinctly as *actually progressing*, that is as *actually going forward*, or *indefinitely repeated*, at or during a certain time, as distinguished

from the Unexpanded Form, which represents an action as *a*) customarily, not, necessarily, actually going forward, or *β*) one which is thought of as an event without any notion of duration being distinctly present to the speaker's mind (Ch. LI, 6). This function of the Expanded Form may, therefore, be aptly styled the Progressive Function, while the term Progressive may, metaphorically, be applied to the form of the verb. The difference of the two forms is strikingly illustrated by the following sentences borrowed from JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, LX, (415):

Rousseau knows he's talking nonsense. A man who talks nonsense so well must know that he's talking nonsense. JOHNSON.

A great awe seemed to have fallen upon her, and she was behaving as she behaved at church.

6. Obs. I. Sometimes the Expanded Form is meant to indicate not the actual going forward of an action at one particular point of time, but at a succession of points of time; thus in:

M. Herriot's condition is much better. The fever has abated and the patient is sleeping well. *Manch. Guard.*, 19 12, 1924, 521 *a*.

By the end of six months he was receiving a wage of fourteen shillings as salesman. *Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve*, I, 250.

I'm sleeping on the floor in the drawing-room. *TEMPLE THURSTON, City*, II, Ch. II, 210.

We're having fancy dancing in gymnasium class. *JEAN WEBSTER, Daddy-Long-Legs*, 211.

II. Similarly the regular coinciding of one action with another may be the occasion of the Expanded Form being used in one, more rarely in both, of the members of the complex sentence. Both actions are then thought of as actually going forward at each point of time.

i. \* When you play you are hearing things I am deaf to, seeing visions, perhaps, that I am blind to. *E. F. BENSON, Arundel*, Ch. V, 120.

\*\* Sometimes when I am playing I begin to dream. *ib.*, Ch. I, 18.

He was a good husband according to his lights, and his temper only failed him when he was being nursed. *KIPL., Plain Tales*, XII, 96. T.

ii. When children are doing nothing, they are doing mischief. *FIELD, Tom Jones*, XV, Ch. II, 98 *b*.

He would be looking about him while things were being wound up. *JOHN OXENHAM, The Simple Beguiler* (SWAEN, Sel., II, 140).

III. The Expanded Form frequently suggests a distinct contrast with a time at which the action referred to was not going forward (10, *a*). This is clearly shown by the following sentences:

He (sc. Byron) is now quite reformed and is leading a most sober and decent life. *SHELLEY, Letters*, 358. <sup>1)</sup> (Compare: Lord Byron is reformed as far as gallantry goes, and lives with a beautiful and sentimental Italian lady. *id.*, *Essays*, 357. <sup>1)</sup> In this latter sentence the reader's attention is not directed to one mode of life as opposed to another, but to the associate of the poet, while there is no notion on the writer's part of hinting at the poet's not living with her previously.)

<sup>1)</sup> WESTERN, Om de med hjælpeverbet *be* og nutids particip omskrevne verbalformer i engelsk.

All our social, political, moral problems are being approached in a new spirit. WELLS, *An Englishman*, 161. T.<sup>1)</sup>

IV. The notion of an action actually going forward is particularly prominent when there is an adverbial adjunct denoting the rate of rapidity of the process, or one denoting its duration.

i. Slavery and the evils by which slavery is everywhere accompanied were fast disappearing. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 21.

Slowly at first, then faster and faster, that fatal demand had been swelling in Savonarola's ear. G. ELIOT, *Rom.*, III, Ch. LXII, 438.

ii. I have been saving up money these many months. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXV, 268.

7. One of the functions of the Unexpanded Form being to represent an action as customarily, not, necessarily, actually, going forward, we find this form in descriptions of general practices, habits and customs, general phenomena and principles, general truths or maxims (Ch. LI, 28). Only a few examples are needed for illustration.

i. \* Men take to all sorts of professions. Why there is your friend Bloundell — Bloundell is a professional blackleg and travels the Continent, where he picks up young gentlemen of fashion and fleeces them. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 331.

\*\* I knew he smoked, but he emphatically declined to do so in my presence. W. RILEY, *Netherleigh*, Ch IV, 44.

He wore large cravats and square-tailed coats. He did not smoke. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 6.

\*\*\* I have drawn since I was eight years old. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, II, 139.

ii. The moon shines at night. The sun rises in the east. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*

iii. Men dress their children's minds as they do their bodies, in the prevailing fashion. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 10 a.

When a child falls or runs its head against the table, it suffers pain, the remembrance of which tends to make it more careful. *ib.*, Ch. III, 74.

iv. For to the noble mind | Rich gifts wax poor when givers prove unkind. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, I, 100.

'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view, | And robes the mountain in its azure hue. CAMPB., *Pleas. of Hope*, I, 7.

v. The perpendicular drawn to a chord from the centre bisects the chord. EUCLID, *Prop.*, III, III.

8. Obs. I. On the same principle the Unexpanded Form is used of verbs of judging or declaring preceding statements which convey the opinions, experiences, reports, etc. of travellers, experimenters, etc.

My account states that your sister's friend .. came to Bath with Miss Elliot and Sir Walter as long ago as September. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch XXI, 211.

Voyagers find that coloured beads and trinkets are much more prized by wild tribes than are calicoes or broadcloths. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 9 a.

German teachers say that they had rather manage a dozen German boys than one English one. *ib.*, Ch. III, 91 b.

Shakespeare says something about worms, or it may be giants or beetles, turning if you tread on them too severely. KIPL., *Plain Tales*, XX, 152.

<sup>1)</sup> ARONSTEIN, *Die Periphrastische Form im Englischen* (Anglia XLII, I).

II. The fact that the action belongs to no particular time often becomes apparent from the predicate being attended by an adverbial adjunct denoting definite or indefinite repetition, such as *three (four, etc.) times, every (other) day, on alternate days; often, rarely, never, always, sometimes, generally, once or twice*, etc. Ample illustration is hardly necessary.

At nine o'clock every night, Greenwich time, the gun fires. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXV, 246.

The thought of his dead wife rose ever and anon before the exile. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. II, 158.

He gets up at six regularly every morning. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2223.

I live at Oxford in winter. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 134 *b*.

When, notwithstanding the occurrence of some adjunct of this kind, the Expanded Form is used, this is owing to:

*a*) there being in the speaker's mind some thought of an adjunct denoting a certain point or length of time.

He hoped she might make some amends for the many very plain faces he was continually passing in the streets. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XV, 143. (Supply *now*.)

Charles Hayler .. has been calling much oftener than was welcome. *ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 166. (Supply *lately*.)

We are constantly receiving letters of appreciation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7063, 24 *b*. (Supply *now*.)

Certain plays of his (sc. Gerhart Hauptmann), such as the famous 'Weavers', or "Sunken Bell" are always being performed, but present efforts are being directed — so far as the stage is concerned — to the production of less well-known plays. *ib.*, 1811, 1922, 8 *a*. (Underlying notion: and are also being performed nowadays.)

*β*) the participle approaching to an adjective or adjective equivalent (37).

Miss Bussey was generally visiting the poor, or, as was the case at this moment, asleep in her arm-chair. HOPE, *Comedies of Courtship*, I, Ch. I, 2. (The adjectival nature of the participle becomes evident from its being used in precisely the same grammatical function as *asleep*, which is an indubitable adjective.)

The earth is a ball that is always turning round. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2225. (= in a rotary motion.)

There is a chimney which is generally smoking. STEV., *Jekyll*, Ch. I, 19. (= in a state of emitting smoke.)

9. Now that an attempt has been made to describe the general nature of the Progressive Function of the Expanded Form, it remains to advert to some of its features which are peculiar to the different tenses and other forms of the verb.

10. *a*) For obvious reasons the time at which an action is represented as going forward needs no mention so far as the present is concerned. When the time *is* mentioned, this is mostly done to insist on the contrast with a previous and (or) subsequent state of things (6, Obs. III).

i. You are travelling for amusement and instruction. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 39. The country is changing — is changing every day. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 9.

ii. Now might I do it pat, now he is praying. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 3, 80.

They were rough, but they had rude virtues, which are not the less virtues, H. POUTSMA, III 1.

because in these latter days they are growing scarce. FROUDE, *O c.*, Ch. III, 46.  
The subject of intonation . . is receiving more and more attention at the present time. DAN. JONES, *Outl. of Eng. Phon.*, Pref., 4.

b) It is equally obvious that the Expanded Form in the Preterite normally requires a word(-group) or clause to state at what particular time of the past the action referred to is represented as having gone forward. If no such word(-group) or clause is actually used, it is suggested by the context.

i. He was grumbling all the time we were there. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2221.  
Everything was looking at its brightest at this moment. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. VI, 61.

ii. It was all the Doctor could do to stand his ground, and East and I who were looking in under his arms, held our noses tight. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

I really only came . . to make your acquaintance and see how things were going. MAUD DIVER, *Capt. Desmond*, Ch. II, 21.

11. Obs. I. Sometimes the time of the action in the case of the Expanded Preterite is implied to be the immediate past, such an adjunct as *a moment ago* or *just now* being readily suggested. Thus especially with the verb *to say* (3, c). Compare 19, c.

This is full proof undoubtedly: proof of everything you were saying. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXI, 210.

"What are they talking about?" inquired the old lady of one of her granddaughters . . "About the land, grandma." — "What about the land? Nothing the matter, is there?" — "No, no, Mr. Miller was saying our land was better than Mullin's Meadows." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 45.

II. In describing an actual state of things the Expanded Form is far from being regularly used, the variable practice depending, at least to a certain extent, on the significance with which the speaker or writer views the action referred to, especially in regard to other matters mentioned in the sentence. Thus it not difficult to see the subservience of the verb to the other elements of the sentence in:

I scribble this diary with a vile pen, and ink like blacking, on the corner of my breakfast-table. A. C. BENSON, *The Upton Letters*, 57.

It will be readily understood that such verbs as *to live*, *to lie*, *to sit*, *to stand* which are often but little more than copulas (Ch. I, 5—6), are mostly kept in the Unexpanded Form.

East and another boy . . lived exactly opposite. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 238.

Dombey sat in the corner of the darkened room in the great arm-chair by the bedside, and Son lay tucked up warm in a little basket bedstead [etc]. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. I, 1.

Scrooge and the Ghost stood side by side in the open air. *id.*, *Christm. Car.*, II.

The want of semantic significance may also be held responsible for the use of the Unexpanded Form in:

The jackdaw occupied one wall. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 240.

The good woman bade me remain in the apartments we occupied. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 164.

III. Also when a speaker or writer mentions an action without associ-



ating with it any notion of continuity or repetition, he will feel no occasion to use the Expanded Form.

She now felt a great inclination to go to the other door; she wanted to see if it *rained*. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIX, 179.

"My mother," said Harley l'Estrange, looking up, "I *present* to you my future wife." LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. VIII, 169.

The moon *halts* opposite to the window at which I *sit* — I *write*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2230.

Likewise the Unexpanded Form is mostly used in statements giving the summary of a book or narrative, the heading of a chapter, the argument of a canto of a poem, the legend to a picture or cartoon.

Morning approached, Eve relates to Adam her troublesome dream. etc. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, V.

Joseph writes another letter. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. X.

The story is about a young man who goes to London and makes his fortune. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2228.

12. Actions thought of as events, not as processes going forward at a particular time are described in the Unexpanded Form (Ch. LI, 6). Accordingly we find this form in narratives of the successive happenings in history or fiction, an Expanded Form always marking a halting in the recounting of the successive events. Illustration being afforded by practically every page of narrative prose, one example will be deemed sufficient.

When I looked around upon all the familiar objects and scenes within our ground, where your common amusements were going on with your common cheerfulness and activity, I felt there was nothing painful in witnessing that. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VI, 290.

13. Obs. I. Similarly we find the Unexpanded Present in descriptions of events which, although befalling in the past, are represented as happening in the present. Thus especially in the language of:

a) the so-called Historical Present (Ch. L, 91).

Mark me, Sir Lucius, I fall as deep as need be in love with a young lady — her friends take my part — I follow her to Bath — send word of my arrival and receive answer that the lady is to be otherwise disposed of. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (252).

β) stage-directions (Ch. LI, 6).

It amuses him to be treated in this fashion; he chuckles secretly as he proceeds to clean and replace his instruments. She shakes her dress into order; looks inquisitively about her; and goes to the window. SHAW, *You never can tell*, I.

II. In a sustained narrative verbs which interrupt the recounting of the successive happenings are sometimes placed in the Unexpanded Form, apparently for the sake of impressiveness or terseness.

Then Monmouth threw himself on the ground, and crawled to the King's feet. He *wept*. He tried to embrace his uncle's knees with his pinioned arms. He begged for life, only life, life at any price. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 189.

Conversely we sometimes find actions marking progression of events described in the Expanded Form, even notwithstanding their distinctly ingressive or momentaneous aspect. This practice seems to be due to a desire to impart vividness to the description (23).

Lady Dalrymple's carriage .. now drew up; the servant came in to announce it. It was beginning to rain again, and altogether there was a delay, and a bustle, and a talking, which must make all the crowd in the shop understand that Lady Dalrymple was calling to convey Miss Elliot. At last Miss Elliot and her friend .. *were walking off*; and Captain Wentworth, watching them, turned again to Anne, and by manner rather than words, *was offering* his services to her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIX, 181.

A moment later brother A *was opening* the iron gate .. The dog *was following* him into the street. The cab *was moving off*, when there was a growl and a lurch — the dog had broken away and *was running* after it. Feeling anxious about the dog he drew up the cab for a moment. The faithful creature *was running* under the driver's seat. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, I, 344.<sup>1)</sup>

14. In the case of two actions, one thought of as an event, the other as an action going forward, either may be mentioned in a temporal clause. The Expanded Form may, accordingly, be found either in the head-sentence or in the temporal clause. The latter action is, however, not unfrequently placed in the Unexpanded Form when mentioned in the temporal clause, especially after the conjunction *as*. Probably this form is preferred when no particular significance is ascribed to the action (23).

i. Mrs. Strong was playing the piano when we went in. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XV, 119 *b*.

Locke was travelling on the Continent for his health when he learned that he had been deprived of his home and his bread without a trial or even a notice. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 115.

ii. As soon as they were fairly ascending Belmont, he began. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVIII, 174.

As Egerton .. was changing his dress, Harley walked into the room. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. VIII, 175.

iii. As Mr. Bumble spoke, he raised his cane to the bill above him. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IV, 48.

I fear that while we speak, the Count may get upon his track. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, VIII, Ch. VII, 50.

Note. Sometimes the clause introduced by *when* indicates an action which puts a stop to that expressed by the Expanded Form in the head-sentence.

Henry was still abusing the defaulter when Monckley cut him short. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, Ch. II, 81.

15. When the two actions of a complex sentence are represented as going forward simultaneously, the choice between the two forms depends largely on the greater or less desire of imparting vividness to the representations of the facts described (23). Accordingly both verbs may be found in either the Expanded or Unexpanded Form, or also different forms may be chosen. The use of the Expanded Form in both members of the sentence also has the effect of placing the actions they express into contrast. This explains why both members have the Expanded

<sup>1)</sup> VALERIE MARINOFF, *Die Periphr. Form des Englischen Verbums*, 77.

Form more frequently when the connexion is effected by *while*, which often suggests a contrast (Ch. XVII, 121), than when this is done by *as* (25, c).

i. While Sir Walter and Elizabeth were assiduously pushing their good fortune in Laura Place, Anne was renewing an acquaintance of a very different description. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVII, 154.

They were carrying him home as we were coming to church. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. XXII, 297.

ii. Bennett rose as he spoke. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, II, Ch. X, 244.

As he walked home, his heart danced within him. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2220. He read while I wrote. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 416.

iii. While the direction was being executed, the lady consulted moved slowly up the room. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 51.

She stood in an impatient silence while she was thus being talked over. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2220.

iv. He was arranging his fruit in plates while we talked. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. XXII, 209.

The clock was striking twelve as I walked down the village. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

16. Obs. I. Simultaneity may be implied in groups of sentences or clauses otherwise connected than by conjunctions of time.

The children were having their music-lessons, and the baby was crying next-door. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2219.

All the while I was writing, there was some noise or other going on. *ib.*

II. One of the actions or succession of actions thought of as going forward during the progress of another action or succession of actions may be implied in such an adjunct as *meanwhile*, *during all that time*, etc.

Meanwhile a change was proceeding infinitely more momentous than the acquisition of any province, than the rise or fall of any dynasty. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 21.

III. The Unexpanded Form appears to be regular in the phrase *as I (we) write*, with which a reporter times the happenings he is describing. The phrase, indeed, is felt as a group-adverb.

As I write, the news comes that the Cenci is to be put into the evening bill. *Westm. Gaz.*, 18/11, 1922, 15 *b.*

A few of the election results are still to be declared, as we write, but what has happened is plain. *ib.*, 1 *a.*

Compare: At the time of writing we have only faint indications of the effect produced on the neutral world by the last German outrage. *ib.*, No. 7377, 2 *b.*

Thus also, inversely, when the verb *to write* is placed in the head-sentence, and the events reported are mentioned in a temporal clause with *as*.

We write as the new British offensive east of Ypres is developing. *ib.*, No. 7571, 2 *b.*

17. In the future and preterite future the Expanded Form frequently has the additional power of representing the action as the effect of forces which lie beyond the control of the speaker, i. e. as one that may be expected in the natural course of events or naturally follows from the peculiar qualities of the subject.

Accordingly it helps to represent the action as purely future, and divest the sentence of the secondary notions which are mostly implied in the auxiliaries of tense. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2281. This power may with greater or less force be traced in:

i. This peace will be turning all our rich naval officers ashore. They will be all wanting a home. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. III, 16.

Come away, for the dinner'll be getting cold. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 37.  
I shall be going there in a week or two to see my mother. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XIX, 107.

ii. I was to tell you he would most likely be dining at the House. JEROME, *The Master of Mrs. Chilvers*, I, (12).

Whenever he remembered it (sc. this sense of solitude), he held his head high, but more than once he found his eyes, lowering to the pavement. Still it was 'bourgeois' to be despondent. In another twenty-four hours he would be taking coffee again in the dingy restaurant. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Ch. III, 20.

Compare with the above the following sentences with the Unexpanded Future:

Perhaps I shall go abroad this summer. I shall probably enter my horse for the race. MOLLOY, *Irish Dif.*, I, § 18.

I doubt if you and the idol will get much further than Monaco. ANSTEY, *Fal. Id.*, Ch. XVI, 214.

In the following sentences one would have expected the Expanded Form:

Bless me! how very odd! I shall forget my own name soon, I suppose. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. III, 22.

Hegh, hegh, Miss, You'll make yourself giddy, an' tumble i' the dirt. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 21.

In the solemn language used in addressing the Supreme Being, and in prophetic or oracular announcements of the future, the Expanded Form is evidently felt to be out of place.

Thou shalt endure and they years shall not change. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 169. Note.

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my word shall not pass away. Bible, *Matth.*, XXIV, 35.

18. a) The use of the two forms in the preterite conditional when stating a supposition contrary to some fact known to the speaker (Ch. XLIX, 39) differs in no way from that in the present or preterite indicative.

She could hear shouts from the windows overlooking the river, as if the people there were calling to her. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. V, 483.

They said . . . that it looked as if she were encouraging the attentions of George. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 7.

b) When the conditional expresses a supposition regarding the future made merely for the sake of argument (Ch. XLIX, 39), the Expanded Form has the same force as in the future.

"Congestion of the lungs," said the girl with pride. "They just stopped it, or you'd be laying me out now." Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, II, 29.

A tax of three or four shillings on corn, and I should be farming my estate at a profit. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 6.

19. a) In the perfect and pluperfect tenses the Expanded Form often implies a secondary notion that the action referred to has not reached its conclusion and will, therefore, be continued or have to be continued, as distinguished from the Unexpanded Form which states completed action often with the implication that a certain result has been attained (Ch. L, 8).

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2211) compares *What have you been doing all day?* with *What have you done to-day?* The latter sentence, he rightly observes, really means *What have you completed to day?* Thus also *The boy has been learning his lesson* states nothing further than the fact the boy's occupation has been that of learning his lesson while *The boy has learned his lesson* is almost as good as saying that he knows his lesson. The Expanded Form, accordingly, sometimes implies a notion of failure, the Unexpanded one of success. The difference is aptly illustrated by the alternate use of the two forms in: They (sc. the parents) have been year by year undermining the constitution of their children, and have so inflicted disease and premature death, not only on them, but on their descendants. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 24 b.

The following quotations clearly shadow forth an (intended) continuation of the action referred to:

i. What I have been thinking about this month back. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 69b  
I have been saving up money these many months. THACK., *Pend.*, I. Ch XXV, 268.

ii. He had been wondering whether all boards were born with that white stuff on their heads. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 41.

I looked at the nest I had been carrying. SWEET, *Old Chapel*. (sc. *and was carrying still*. The Unexpanded Form would imply that the nest had been dropped or thrown away.)

b) Sometimes it is the distinct thought of the consequences or results of the action which causes the Expanded Form to be used. We have been walking on mines for the last six months, and they're sprung at last. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LIV, 415.

You've been making all these foolish marks on yourself, which you can never get out. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*; II, Ch. III, 236.

You've been meddling with my drawers. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. I, 16.

I believe you have been travelling a good deal. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2211.

c) The Expanded Perfect appears to be in special favour when the predicate is attended by the adverb *just*, or when this adjunct is more or less distinctly in the speaker's mind. *He has (just) been smoking*, accordingly, corresponds to the French *Il vient de fumer*. It deserves attention that when such an adjunct as *just now* or *a moment ago* is suggested by the context, the Expanded Preterite is preferred especially of the verb *to say* (II, Obs. I). Compare what has been said in Ch. L, 106 about the different tenses used in connexion with *just* and *just now*.

His bruised face and torn clothes showed that he had been fighting. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2245.

She is depressed, because she has been finding Elizabeth out in some waste or other. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, Ch. I, 14. T.

I have an important piece of business in the country — a labourer has been

getting into trouble for shooting a keeper; they have asked me to defend him id., *Marc.*, II, Ch. X, 243.

20. a) The secondary notions conveyed by the Expanded Form of the imperfect and perfect infinitive differ in no way from those of the present (or preterite) and perfect (or pluperfect) respectively.

i. \* I think it rather unnecessary in you to be advising me. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. V, 34.

Compare: It is of no use to advertise the fact that you are interested in Jack's doings. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Land*, II, Ch. VI, 109.

\*\* Mr. Pickwick was believed to be meditating a letter to the Times.

Compare: With the other hand he signed to Tom to make no noise. id., *Chuz.*, Ch. L, 390 a.

ii. \* I found two Nester ends in the tray this morning, so you must have been smokin' last night, sir. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, I, 3, (33).

Compare: And when am I supposed to have performed this trifling feat? ANSTEY, *Fal. Id.*, Ch. VII, 105.

\*\* Straight ahead he was .. gazing so intently that his eyes must have been seeing very much or else very little of that limitless world of light and coloured shade. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, I, 2.

Compare: Four hungry jackdaws which he was currently believed to have hatched upon his person. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 238.

b) Also when the Expanded Imperfect Infinitive denotes an action which belongs to a time-sphere subsequent to the moment of speaking or writing, or a moment in the past, it has, apparently, the same force as the Expanded Present or Preterite.

i. A few months more and *he*, perhaps, may be walking here. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. III, 24.

ii. At last a curriole, glittering with silver, rattled round the corner and stopped opposite him. She must be coming now. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XXIX, 154 a.

c) It is worth observing that *may* (or *might*), and *must* in the third person, when connected with an Expanded Infinitive are rarely used in another function than that of modal verbs. Some more examples are added to bring out this remarkable fact.

i. \* I may be doing wrong; but I'm doing it in a proper and customary manner. SHAW, *Overruled* (*Eng. Rev.*, No. 54, 189).

Mr. Punch gives a few suggestions to artists who may be casting about for subjects for next year. *Punch*, No. 3754, 417.

\*\* She was delighted to fancy she understood what they might be talking of. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVIII, 172.

ii. When they laughed, and he couldn't, he took it into his head immediately that they must be laughing at him. DICK., *Crick.*, II, 59.

It entered a little into her pleasure that Herr Klesmer must be observing her at a moment when music was out of the question. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, I, Ch. X, 156.

In the following quotations, however, *may* and *must* are not modal:

i. I really think poor Mrs. Clay may be staying here in perfect safety. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. V, 34.

ii. O, she must always be doing something extraordinary. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, I, Ch. I, 11.

In the first and second persons *must* usually seems to express a form of compulsion when connected with an Expanded Infinitive.

I must be going on now. MAUD DIVER, Capt. Desm., Ch. III, 26.

Thus also in reported speech in the third person.

But he must not be addressing his reflections to Anne alone. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XV, 146.

21. Owing to the ingressive or momentaneous aspect, which invariably attaches to the imperative (Ch. LI, 5), the Expanded Form is practically never used in this application of the verb. In the following example, the only one that has turned up, the Expanded Imperative is, evidently, due to the Expanded Present preceding. I hope you're thinking about me. Please, be thinking about me. JEAN WEBSTER, Daddy-Long-Legs, 235.

Note α) There is not, of course, anything unusual in a connexion of the verb *to be* with a present participle that has assumed the function of an adjective, as in *Be obliging to all the people you may meet*. β) Nor is there anything out of the common in the use of the Expanded Infinitive after the negative imperative of *to do*, as in *Don't be making a noise*.

γ) According to A. G. VAN HAMEL (On Anglo-Irish, E. S., XLV, 275) the Expanded Imperative is more frequent in Anglo-Irish.

Be taking your rest! SYNGE, The Shadow of the Glen.

22. Hardly less unusual is the use of the Expanded Form in the present participle and the gerund. The following are the only instances that have come to hand:

i. I have a kinsman who | Is bound for Italy; he embark'd at Milford; | To whom being going, almost spent with hunger, | I am fall'n in this offence. SHAK., Cymb., III, 6, 63

Her eye could not reach him; and the concert being just opening, she must consent for a time to be happy in the humbler way. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XX, 191.

ii. She was perfectly unsuspecting of being inflicting any peculiar wound. ib., Ch. VIII, 61.

To be waiting so long in action and waiting only for evil, had been dreadful. ib., Ch. XXIII, 252.

The Expanded Present Participle should not be confounded with the passive present participle, as in:

These are typical examples of dress items constantly being sent to all parts of the world. Manch. Guard.

### The Relieving Function of the Expanded Form.

23. It will be readily understood that the Expanded Form, by analysing the predicate into a purely connective and a significant part, and especially by representing an action as actually going forward at a certain time, throws its peculiar nature into bolder relief, imparts to it more significance and colours it with more vividness than the Unexpanded Form.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2209), referring to the force of the Expanded Form in Old English "to make the narrative more vivid and picturesque,"

calls this function *descriptive*, which does not seem to be a very appropriate term. Better are the German *veranschaulichend*, used by VALERIE MARINOFF, and *vergegenständlichend*, used by ARONSTEIN, the most suitable English rendering of which seems to be *relieving*, which term, however, has the disadvantage of being little used in this meaning, although the O. E. D. (s.v. *relieve*, 11) gives several instances of the word being used in this sense.

24. In the preceding sections this force of the Expanded Form has already repeatedly been referred to. The subject is, however, of sufficient interest to deserve treatment in some detail.

a) A good illustration is afforded by the following quotation, in which the first *are building* has the ordinary progressive function, while the second is distinctly relieving besides, i. e. places the action of building in contrast to other actions, for example, that of pulling down:

Within a stone's throw of my house they are building another house. I am glad they are building it, and I am glad it is within a stone's throw. CHESTERTON, *A shilling for my Thoughts*, XI, 52.

There is a similar difference between the first and the second Expanded Form in:

The manner in which we are governing Ireland is less important than the fact that we are governing Ireland. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8080, 2*b*.

From the context it appears that great significance is attached to the actions expressed by the italicized verbs contained in the following quotations. Hence the use of the Expanded Form strikes us as distinctly appropriate:

"You see this toothpick?" said Scrooge . . . — "I do," replied the Ghost. — "You are not *looking* at it," said Scrooge. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I. I knew he was *shamming*. *id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XI, 108.

After he had made all things ready, he was visited with a doubt whether he were not *mistaking* her. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VI, Ch. XLVII, 50.

b) Two such sentences as *I was coughing all night long* and *I coughed all night long* differ as to relative importance ascribed to the notions indicated by the verb and the adverbial adjunct. There is an analogous difference between *I'm living here* (HARDY, *Jude*, I, VI, 44) and *I live here*.

Similarly the two actions mentioned in *It is a representation of a lady. She is lying on a couch. At the side of the couch sits a woman as in grief*. (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, 2229) differ as to the importance ascribed to them as compared with that of the notions mentioned by the following words. Thus also those in *The wind is rising: look how the smoke blows sideways!* (*ib.*, § 2226).

Rather interesting and instructive is the alternate use of the two forms of one and the same verb in one sentence or sequence of sentences, which we may now give without comment:

I was crying all the time, but except that I was conscious of being cold and dejected, I am sure I never thought why I cried. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22*b*.



"We will not trifle — life is too serious." — "It is. Perhaps, I saw that before you did." — She was seeing it then. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXXII, 263.  
Elizabeth was sitting in the window of Edward's smoking-room where two mornings ago he and Edith had sat talking and reading before she came over to the house next door . . . She sat there long in silence, alert for any noise that should come from the house. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. XIV, 379—380.

c) Considering what a delicate business the handling of the two forms is, we need not wonder that not unfrequently another form has been chosen than the one we should have expected. Thus it is difficult to account for the alternate use of the two forms in:  
We both serve the same Master and are striving after the same gifts. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. III, 27.

The day was closing and the weather thickened. RUDY. KIPLING, *Sea-Warfare*, 151.

Wild roses and elder-flowers waved in the breezy hedge-rows, and spread their fragrance far and wide; the lark was hovering in the air; the cuckoo flitted from place to place and uttered its deepest and mellowest notes. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

One week the Prime Minister flourishes an olive-branch, the next he is brandishing a sword. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8597, 4 b.

In the following quotation it is, no doubt, the metre that is responsible for the varied practice:

For while the mother show'd it and the two | Were turning and admiring it,  
the work | To both appear'd so costly, rose a cry | That Edyrn's men were  
on them. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 636—639.

25. It stands to reason that the Expanded Form often has the force of vivid representation in:

a) language which is coloured with some emotion.

Some one has been tampering with this book. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 134, c.

I am missing you dreadfully, Jervie dear. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 249.

You are speaking straight with a vengeance, Honor. MAUD DIVER, *Capt. Desm.*, Ch. VIII, 81.

Thus especially in (rhetorical) questions, exclamations, exaggerated descriptions, enumerations leading to a climax.

i. What business has he to be giving parties? THACK., *Little Dinner*, Ch. II.

What are you blubbering for? I haven't touched you. BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. XV, 167.

What have you been doing to that picture? ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 134, c.

ii. To what fine purpose I have been plotting! SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3.

I say, young Copperfield, you're going it! DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 43 a.

iii. My head is splitting. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. X, 124.

We've been freezing at the Danchester's this past week. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam*, III, Ch. IV, 129.

She's counting the days to get away to the Hills. MAUD DIVER, *Capt. Desm.*, Ch. VIII, 77.

I hate individualism: it's ruining England. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 9.

iv. I have been hoping, longing, praying, to make you happy. HARDY, *Tess*, V, Ch. XXXV, 297.

To have fancied all my life .. that every one loved and admired me, and to find that they were despising me, hating me all along. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, II, 280. T.

Note. It should not be thought that emotional language invariably occasions the use of the Expanded Form: the following quotations, which it would not be difficult to multiply, would do away with this assumption:

Lord bless me! how those little fingers of yours fly about! JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. VI, 47.

All this time he lay upon his bed, the very core and centre of a blaze of ruddy light, which *streamed* upon it. when the clock proclaimed the hour. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III.

He wears himself out with work. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. XIV, 361.

b) in representing an action as fraught with important consequences.

You don't know in the least what you are doing with these things. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

He had been kicking up horrid stinks for some time. *ib.*, II, Ch. III, 235.

Thus also in stating the consequence itself.

Every month's delay will be doing mischief. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, V, (221).

If this continues, his mother will be giving over and fetching the girl THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 137.

In leaving New Zealand we should be leaving the telegraph. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. XVIII, 296.

c) when two or more actions are contrasted (15).

While the possible troubles of Maggie's future were occupying her father's mind, she herself was tasting only the bitterness of the present. G. ELIOT, *Mill.*, I, Ch. IX, 74.

"Your victim is fainting", said the chaplain sternly. — "Only shamming, sir", said Fry. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. XV, 167.

It is a strange anomaly that while men from overseas are flirting with typists, they are marrying domestics. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 99, 162.

The comparison or contrasting may also concern two or more complexes of notions with one and the same action forming a component part of each member of the complex.

When Yeobright was not sitting with Eustacia, he was sitting slavishly over his books. HARDY, *Return*, III, Ch. V, 249

"I'm not thinking of the farm now, George," said William, "I'm thinking of when we were boys." READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 43.

d) when a verb is attended by an adverbial adjunct to add to or detract from the importance of the action it expresses, such as *actually*, *almost*, *but*, *decidedly*, *downright*, *merely*, *only*, *really*, *simply*, etc.

Lush spoke, carelessly, but he was really seizing an opportunity and fixing an observant look on Grandcourt. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XII, 186.

I was only mixing up this powder. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

You see he was only shamming. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. XV, 167.

In publishing them (sc. the letters) I am but obeying a last message of love. A. C. BENSON, *The Upton Letters*, Pref., 16.

He was not even trying to speak. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. VIII, 102.

He was really defending one of the great philosophies of the earth, not merely excusing it. CHESTERTON, (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3867, 768*a*).

26. Emphasizing the quality of an action does not entail the use of the Expanded Form when all notion of continuity or repetition is absent from the speaker's thoughts.

"Did you come on your cycle?" — "No I walked."

She wanted to see if it rained. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch XIX, 179.

Those who take an interest in this tale will be glad to learn that the brothers Cheeryble live. DICK., *Nick.*, Pref.

I dropped on my knees beside him and leant my ear to hear if he breathed. HOPE, *Pris. of Zenda*.

"I try to follow his example, not to imitate him." — "Yes you do: you imitate him." SHAW, *Cand.*, I (128, 21) T.

27. The construction with the Expanded Form in a distinctly relieving function sometimes bears a strong resemblance to that in which a demonstrative or its weakened representative, the personal pronoun *it*, is the subject of a nominal predicate with a gerund. Thus for '*Twas throwing words away* (WORDSW., *We are seven*, XVII) the poet might have said, without much change of meaning, *I was throwing words away*.

A similar substitution would be possible in most of the quotations illustrating this gerund construction given in Ch. XIX, 14. Thus in:

This is driving me into a corner. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*

But that will be giving you so much trouble. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch XXXIII, 288.

Conversely substitution in the opposite direction would be possible in:

When Elizabeth put Ballard and Babington to death, she was not persecuting. MAC, *Hallam*, (55*a*)

You know she is fond of having young people to talk to, and she has a great deal to talk about old times. You will be really doing her a kindness. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XL, 302.

28. It is of some interest to compare the emphasizing of the nature of an action which, as has been shown in the preceding sections, is often done by the Expanded Form, with the emphasizing of the intensity of an action as may be effected by *to do*. Compare the following pairs of examples:

i. I drove back to Lock Willow in the dark — but oh, how the stars were shining! JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 249. (Stressing of *were* would emphasize the intensity of the action, and this is, not impossibly, meant.)

ii. How the diamond did twinkle and glitter by the light of our candle! THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 47.

i. He said he had not supposed I should be down so soon, but was hoping that I had not missed the show, wherever I was. WILLIAMSON, *Set in Silver*, II, Ch. IV, 39.

ii. Mr. Titmarsh I do hope you'll not be angry. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 37.

But the difference is not always easy to perceive, i. e. one mode of emphasizing not unfrequently implies the other, so that the two constructions are sometimes used in one and the same sentence or sequence of sentences, apparently for the same purpose, viz. that of emphasizing the intensity of the action, as in the first of the following quotations, or of its nature, as in the second.

It sometimes happens that a person departs this life, who is really deserving of all the praises the stone-cutter carves over his bones; who *is* a good Christian, a good parent, child, wife or husband; who actually *does* leave a disconsolate family to mourn his loss. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I, 4. (The italics are Thackeray's).

"People are whispering," said Rachel. "They do even say that you will not be among the First Men of the Big Seat." CARADOC EVANS, My People, Ch. I, 13.

There is, of course, no occasion to compare the Expanded Form with constructions with *to do* in generalizing statements, nor with those in which *to do* serves to denote emphatic assertion or negation, as in:

Dress does make a difference. SHER., Riv., III, 3, (215).

Anne could have said much and did long to say a little in defence of her friend's not very dissimilar claims to theirs. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XVII, 161.

### The Prospective Function of the Expanded Form.

29. In the case of momentaneous verbs the Expanded Form sometimes denotes some activity which will or may result in the action expressed by these verbs, in other words it represents the consummation of that action as prospective.

He looks as if he is dying. HARDY, Tess, VII, Ch. LVI, 497.

I was winning him to all that is good when I fell sick. READE, Never too late, I, Ch. XXV, 348.

Now the vicomte .. was coming to his own. TEMPLE THURSTON, Mirage, Ch. VI, 50.

30. A slightly different shade of the progressive function of the Expanded Form is that in which the action is represented as lying in the immediate future, i. e. as about to take place or to begin. It will be observed that this function of the Expanded Form is not always clearly distinguished from that in which it denotes a momentaneous action together with its attendant circumstances (3, a).

Cyril took the document eagerly, and was breaking out with some commonplace about pious benevolence, when the Jew stopped him. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XXX, 161a. (= about to break out.)

He feels convinced every minute that the whole concern is going over. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, V. 73. (= about to go over.)

As we were going to press, we received the following message from Mr. Run-ciman. *The Nation*, XXI, II, 27 *b*. (= about to go to press.)

31. Another shade of the prospective function, which is sometimes observed, especially in durative verbs, is that of representing an action in its initial stage.

Whereupon, being not a little discomfited, we were advising with ourselves what we should do. *BACON*, *New Atlantis*, (270.) (= began to advise.)

Now through the hush there broke the trumpet's clang | Just as the setting sun made eventide. | Then from light feet a spurt of dust there sprang. | And swiftly were they running side by side. *MORRIS*, *Atalanta's Race*, XIV. (= began to run)

The young bird is scarcely out of the shell when it is making ferocious demands for food. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3865, 702. (= begins to make.)

32. A further development of the prospective function of the Expanded Form is its application to represent an action as contemplated or prepared for. The preparations for the action are then thought of as in progress. This notion is not seldom vague, insomuch that the Expanded Form is not clearly distinguished from the Unexpanded with a future meaning (Ch. L, 83—86) or, even, from the construction with the ordinary auxiliaries for the future tense. Compare, however, *BAIN*, *H. E. Gr.*, 187. It is especially verbs which express a coming or leaving which are found in this function, other verbs admitting of it to only a limited extent. Some adverbial adjunct denoting futurity is often required to obviate the sentence being understood as the expression of a state of things of the present time-sphere, or, in narrating past events, of the past instead of the posterior past time-sphere (Ch. L, 2, *c*).

*i. to arrive*: Nobody had happened to say what time he was arriving. *E. F. BENSON*, *Dodo Wonders*, Ch. II, 34.

*to come*: The carrier looked at me as if to inquire if she were coming back. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. V, 31 *b*.

*to go*: He had left word with little Jack that he was going a long walk. *Mrs. CRAIK*, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 143.

*to leave*: I am leaving Rose Cottage to-day. *ib.*, Ch. XV, 149.

*to run down*: I want to see you and talk something over, so I'm running down on Sunday afternoon. *GALSW.*, *Country House*, I, Ch. VII, 53.

*ii. to dine*: We are dining with the Boltons to-night *ETH. M. DELL*, *The Way of an Eagle*, 82.

*to give*: 'Siegfried' is being given this day week. *E. F. BENSON*, *Arundel*, Ch. VII, 192.

*to go in for*: Meyrick was going in for a classical scholarship, and his success .. was the more probable from the steadying influence of Deronda's friendship. *G. ELIOT*, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XVI, 271.

*to have*: I'm having a little birthday party, you know, this afternoon. *E. T. BENSON*, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. I, 18.

*to issue*: Messrs. Harper are issuing Mark Twain's new book 'Is Shakespeare Dead?' within the next few days. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5007, 4 *b*.

*to lunch*: "Are you dining at the Club?" — "No — I've got to meet some people at the Carlton." *TEMPLE THURSTON*, *City*, I, Ch. XI, 80.

*to publish*: Lady Bankroft has written a novel 'The Shadow of Neeme,' which Mr. John Murray is publishing shortly. *Bookman*, No. 244, 178*b*.

*to sleep*: I'm not sleeping at home to-night. *PINERO*, *Mid-Channel*, I, (67).

*to stay*: Are you staying here till next week? *PALMER*, *Gram. of Spok. Eng.*, § 303, 6,

33. Obs. I. But the bulk of verbs do not admit of the Expanded Form being used to express this form of futurity, not even when clear notions of preparations being made for the accomplishment of the action they express are present to the speaker's mind. Thus we could not say *\*I am writing to you to-morrow*, *\*I am smoking a cigar when you have left*.

II. It has already been observed that the Expanded Form, when implying futurity, does not appreciably differ from the Unexpanded Form used in this function (Ch. L, 83—86), nor from the ordinary future tense with *shall* or *will* (32). This is shown by a comparison of the above quotations with the following:

i. *\* Ask when the company arrives at Naples.* *EDNA LYALL*, *Kn. Er.*, Ch. IV, 37.

*Duncan comes here to-night.* *SHAK.*, *Macb.*, I, 5, 32.

*\*\* The Parson writes word that the boy will come to-day.* *LYTTON*, *My Novel*, I, IV, Ch. XXXIII, 284.

ii. *\* Does he really go abroad next week?* *ib.*, I, VII, Ch. XVI, 480.

*"When does he arrive?" — "Next Tuesday. He leaves the same day, I'm thankful to say.* *BIRMINGHAM*, *Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. V, 108.

*\*\* The British Diplomatic Agent and the members of his staff will leave to-morrow in two special trains.* *Times*.

In the following quotations different constructions are used successively without there being, apparently, any occasion for the change of construction:

*Julie is going abroad this summer . . Sallie, as usual, goes to the Adirondacks.* *JEAN WEBSTER*, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 193.

*He's not dining to-night, as he gets in very late. But he'll dine to-morrow.* *MAUD DIVER*, *Desmond's Daughter*, II, Ch. II, 53.

III. From the above observations it follows that it will hardly do to represent the capacity of the Expanded Form to express a (near) future as peculiar to this form as distinguished from the Unexpanded Form, the latter being, indeed, more frequently used in this function (Ch. L, 83—86). This view is also defeated by the fact that the Expanded Future sometimes appears as a variant of the Expanded Present in a future function.

*Shall you soon be returning to England?* *MER.*, *Diana of the Crossways*, 36.

*To-morrow I shall be leaving this house — for good.* *Mrs. WARD*, *The Mating of Lydia*, IV, Ch. XX, 407.

*When'll he be leaving?* *MAUD DIVER*, *Capt. Desm.*, Ch. III, 28.

### The Characterizing Function of the Expanded Form.

34. Actions not thought of as actually going forward can be expressed by the Expanded Form when they are associated with a notion

of indefinite or endless iteration as expressed by such adverbial adjuncts as *always*, *constantly*, *perpetually*, *for ever*, etc., and in this association are intended as characterizing the person, animal or thing of which they are predicated. In this function, which may be called the characterizing function, it has approximately the same force as such phrases as *to be given* (or *addicted*, *liable*, etc.) *to* + infinitive, or *to have a habit* (*trick*, *knack* or *way*, etc.) *of* + gerund. Thus for the constructions used in the following quotations that with the characterizing Expanded Form might be substituted without any material change of meaning being involved:

Widows are mightily given to dream. WYCH., *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, 1, (140). (= are always dreaming.)

Brown Major had a trick of bringing up unpleasant subjects. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 94.

All these bills arrived in a week, as they have a knack of doing. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 126.

35. a) The difference between sentences with the Expanded Form in the characterizing function and those in which the Unexpanded Form is attended by an adverbial adjunct denoting indefinite or endless repetition becomes clear from a comparison of such a pair of sentences as *He is always smoking* and *He always smokes a cigar after dinner*. Whereas the first, which is practically equivalent to *He is a tremendous smoker*, is distinctly descriptive of a characterizing habit, the latter denotes a customary, not a characterizing action. In the first the action of smoking is almost thought of as continuous, in the second it is distinctly thought of as intermittent. It will also be observed that the second sentence, as distinct from the first, would not give complete sense if it were stripped of its adjunct of time.

b) Further differences between the two constructions are the following:

- 1) The first is usually tinged with an emotional connotation, which is mostly wanting in the second.
- 2) The lack of actuality is less pronounced in the first than in the second, the occasion of the first being frequently the actual observing of the action at the time of speaking or the time referred to in the sentence.
- 3) The first, on the strength of indicating something permanent, imparts to the participle more or less the nature of an adjective, which, naturally, is entirely absent in the finite forms of the verb in the second. Thus *They are always quarrelling* is almost equivalent to *They are very quarrelsome*. It may be added that the vaguely adjectival nature which often attaches to the participle in the characterizing Expanded Form distinguishes the latter from the three functions of the Expanded Form already described,

in which the participle distinctly preserves its predominantly verbal nature, and imparts to it some resemblance to the qualitative function of the Expanded Form, described below, in which the participle is in most cases almost devoid of all verbal features. Illustration being easily procurable, we may confine ourselves to some few examples. See also Ch. LI, 28, *b*.

She was constantly complaining of the cold. DICK., *Cop*, Ch. III, 20 *a*.

Next to him was Mrs. Hussell Barter, with .. that look of women who are always doing their duty, their rather painful duty. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 11.

She is a good woman; she is always going to church; she is always doing things for poor people. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2211.

Note *a*) In some cases the indefinitely repeated action can hardly be regarded to constitute a characterizing trait of the person concerned.

Mr. Wolfe was for ever coming over from Westerham to pay court to the lady of his love. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 290.

Should I tell him or should I not tell him? I am always asking myself that. HARDY, *Return*, V, Ch. I, 389.

*β*) Sometimes it is not what is indicated by the grammatical subject of the sentence, but the psychological subject of the thought, whose peculiarities are referred to.

Everybody is always supposing that I am not a good walker. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. X, 84. (describes the speaker.)

Extraordinary place that City. An astonishing number of men always are getting disappointed there. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXII, 286. (describes the City.)

She's one of those women that men are always hanging about. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 8. (describes a class of women.)

### The Qualitative Function of the Expanded Form.

36. In the fifth place the Expanded Form is used to describe rather a quality or state than an action. For detailed discussion of the varied prominence of verbal and adjectival features in participles we must refer to Ch. LVII, 7—18. Here we have to deal with those cases in which the present participle, although rather adjectival than verbal, yet preserves some unmistakable verbal features. This may appear from the fact that it governs the same objects, whether non-prepositional or prepositional, as the finite verb, and may be modified by the same kinds of adverbial adjuncts.

i. \* He, of all the men ever my foolish eyes looked upon, was the best deserving a fair lady. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, 2, 131.

Blind girl! what dost thou here this late hour? Fie! — Is this seeming thy sex or years? Home, girl! LYTON, *Pomp.*, IV, Ch. VII, 109 *a*.

Not all painters are mere studio-owls ... Many are fit, not flabby, and ready for sport and play, loving the sun and the sea and the wind on the beach. GRAPH., No. 2271, 946 *a* (= fond of the sun.)

\*\* The joy of the prisoners was corresponding to their approaching deliverance. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XVII, 187.



Thyrza was not strictly her underling, though she was helping in the house-work. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, Prol., 4. (almost = helpful.)  
The Allies are .. utterly lacking in sound revolutionary principles. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7649, 1*b* (almost = deficient.)

ii. The physician is up at all hours, and travelling in all weather. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. III, 20. (= on a journey.)

While Enoch was abroad on wrathful seas, | Or often journeying landward. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 92.

The inhabitants (sc. of the street) were all doing well. STEV., *Jek.*, Ch. I, 13. (= prosperous.)

Note *a*) It may here be observed that pure adjectives, with the only exception of *worth*, do not govern a non-prepositional object in Late Modern English, so that the constructions of *deserving*, *seeming* and *loving* illustrated above speak for these words being vaguely felt as verbs.

*β*) The twofold constructions of *(un)deserving (un)becoming, befitting, beseeming*; i. e. one with and one without a preposition (Ch. LIV, 6), may also be set down to these words being felt partly as adjectives partly as verbs.

*γ*) In some of the above quotations the form in *ing* is used in precisely the same function as a preceding predicative adjective or quasi-adjective: compare *loving* with *ready*, *up* with *travelling*, *journeying* with *abroad*.

37. Also when standing without any modifier, the form in *ing*, although mainly adjectival, may be tinged with some verbal force. Thus in:

A Teuton invasion of England is impending. VACHELL, *Loot*, Ch. I, 2.

The King's speech was disappointing. *Athen.*, No. 4627, 129*b*.

As long as we were trying, his smile encouraged us. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, IV, 10.

One (sc. man) was unconscious and groaning. *ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 46.

When, however, the *ing*-form is modified by such intensives as *as*, *so*, *too* it differs but slightly, or not at all, from a pure adjective.

The Pendyces are related to everybody! It's so boring. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. I, 8

I often think that Doctors are so misunderstanding. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. III, 43.

### Verbs whose Meaning or Syntactical Function is incompatible with the Force of the Expanded Form.

38. Apart from a few defective verbs, which have not a present participle, there are a great many verbs which, owing to their meaning or syntactical function, are never, rarely or unfrequently found in the Expanded Form. This form of the verb being associated with some kind of (intended) activity, it follows that it is more or less incompatible with verbs which imply a passive attitude of the subject.
39. *a*) It stands to reason that copulas or quasi-copulas of the first kind (i. e. *to be* and verbs which in their faded meanings do

similar work as *to be*) and of the second kind (i. e. such verbs as *to remain* and its synonyms) are not found in the Expanded Form, so long as they are not tinged with a notion of activity. Thus such sentences as *\*My bed is being close to the wall*, *\*This law is holding good for all living beings*, *\*This gun was proving of the greatest service to us*, *\*He was resting assured of her affection*, *\*He is remaining my friend*, etc. are either impossible or very rare.

b) But some touch of activity renders these verbs capable of the Expanded Form. Thus even *to be*, although instances hardly date further back than the last decades of the last century (JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, IX, (411). In some cases it is not difficult to find an approximate equivalent of *to be* + nominal which contains a verb denoting some activity.

You fancy you are being very clever. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XVII, 335. (= saying very clever things.)

That is why she is being so clumsy in her manipulation of pins and things. FLOR. BARCLAY, *Rosary*, Ch. IV, 24. (= behaving in such a clumsy way.)

Somebody .. is being recklessly extravagant in the matter of advertisements. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5376, 3b. (= is spending with reckless extravagance.)

Note. Also when *to be* is not a copula, it is occasionally found in the Expanded Form.

There was jolly nearly being a revolution afterwards. BIRMINGHAM, *Advent* of Dr. Whitty, Ch. II, 46. (= a revolution developing itself.)

c) Of the verbs which in their faded meaning approximate to copulas of the first kind, the Expanded Form is naturally more frequent. Nor are instances confined to the latest literature.

*to fight* (shy): You are just fighting shy of Aunt Jane. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond Paste*, II, Ch. IX, 215

*to feel*: Ben was feeling very uncomfortable and almost wishing he had not come to hear Dinah. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. II, 22.

*to go*: I am still going strong. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7571, 15a.

*to look*: "I have got a head-ache" — "I thought you were not looking well." SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2234. (Compare: "I have been very ill." — "I thought you looked pale." ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 127.)

40. a) It is hardly necessary to observe that there is no occasion for the use of the Expanded Form of verbs whose chief or only function is to express an adverbial relation (Ch. XLV, 26). Of this nature are many verbs when used in connexion with an infinitive, such as:

1) *to appear, to prove, to seem, to turn out*, as in *He appeared (proved, seemed, turned out) to be innocent*.

2) *to fail*, as in *I fail to understand what you mean*.

3) *to (dis)like, to hate, to love, to prefer*, as in *I (dis)liked (hated, loved, preferred) to spend my time in idleness*.

4) *to chance, to happen*, as in *You chance (happen) to mention the very subject on which I wanted to consult you*.

5) *to need*, as in *You need not take all this trouble*.

b) Nor is there ever any call for the Expanded Form of certain infinitives after *cannot*, as in *He cannot choose but break (fail to break, help breaking)*.

41. a) Another group of verbs which, owing to their meaning, are rarely placed in the Expanded Form is formed by such as in their primary application denote the receiving of an impression by the senses, independently of the will of the person(s) concerned; thus especially such verbs as *to see, to hear, to feel, to smell, to taste* and their synonyms. The following sentences would, accordingly, be hardly possible *\*I was seeing a man falling into the water, \*I was hearing a flying-machine, \*I was feeling a pain in my arm, \*I was smelling an offensive odour, \*I am tasting a bitter flavour*.

With *to see* and *to hear* compare respectively *to look* and *to listen*, which express physical activities depending on a movement of the human will and are, consequently, often placed in the Expanded Form.

b) When the Expanded Form of these verbs is used, this seems to be due either to the speaker or writer feeling that some physical or mental activity is involved or, more frequently, to some modification of meaning coming into play. Of the numerous examples that have come to hand only a few can be printed here:

*to feel*: He was feeling the joy of life. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. II, 15.

*to find*: He is finding his work more difficult than he thought. PALMER, *Gram. of Spok. Eng.*, § 301.

*to hear*: i. I am every moment hearing something which overpowers me. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXIII, 245.

ii. This convinced me that he was not hearing the information for the first time. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, A, 25. T. (= being told.)

iii. I am hearing lectures at the University. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2218. (= attending.)

*to see*: i. She was conscious that Mr. Grandcourt was seeing her to the utmost advantage. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, I, Ch. X, 156.

ii. Mrs. Soames was in, but the maid did not know if she was seeing people. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. XIII, 263. (= receiving.)

iii. She has been seeing me any time these last two years in town. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 40. (= meeting.)

iv. He is seeing the sights. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2218. (= visiting.)

42. a) As a fourth group of verbs whose meaning is more or less incompatible with the force of the Expanded Form, mention may be made of such as express a psychological or mental disposition on the part of the person(s) concerned, i. e. verbs like:

1) *to abhor, to affect, to care (for), to (dis)like, to esteem, to fear, to hate, to loathe, to love, to prefer, to regard, to revere, to sympathize (with) (etc.)*; *to desire, to long (for), to miss, to need, to require, to want, to wish (for), etc.*;

2) *to apprehend, to believe, to consider, to deem, to esteem, to fancy, to imagine, to judge, to know, to presume, to suppose, to think, to understand, etc.*

Thus the following sentences would appear to be exceptionable English: *\*He is abhorring (affecting, disliking, etc.) dancing; \*He is esteeming (fearing, revering, sympathizing with, etc.) his master; \*He is desiring (longing for, needing, requiring, wanting, wishing for, etc.) more rest; \*He is believing (considering, deeming, esteeming, fancying, etc.) himself to be near death.*

b) Many of these verbs, however, are not unfrequently found in the Expanded Form, mostly, as it seems, on the strength of their implying not only a mere disposition, but also some activity consequent on that disposition. In other words they sometimes represent the person(s) concerned as showing visible or audible signs of the disposition in question, or as cherishing or nursing it. Sometimes also the participle may be apprehended as rather adjectival than verbal. Thus *to be hoping, to be longing, to be requiring (or wanting)* etc. may sometimes be approximately equivalent to respectively *to be hopeful, to be desirous, to be in want of, etc.*

A few of the numerous examples that have come to hand may find a place here:

*to believe*: He was believing that he should triumph. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, III, Ch. XXVII, 39. (= cherishing the belief.)

*to dare*: It was one of those black-skirted monks who was daring to speak to her. *id.*, *Rom.*, II, Ch. XI, 309. (= showing visible signs of daring.)

*to desire*: On re-entering the hotel, Deronda was told that Gwendolen had risen, and was desiring to see him. *id.*, *Dan. Der.*

*to despise*: He will be despising me heartily. WILLIAMSON, *Set in Silver*, II, Ch. XII, 156.

*to envy*: It was the first day of spring he was walking through the Park, and I was envying him. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Gard. of Res.*, I, 1.

*to fear*: We see no evidence that people are fearing to travel by sea. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6017, 2b.

*to hate*: I was hating you all the time. HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. IV, 351.

*to hope*: He was fervently hoping never to witness it again. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, I, 272. (Very frequent is the combination *to be hoping against hope*, as in: The High Commissioner was hoping against hope that peace might be preserved. *Times*.)

*to like*: There was nothing disagreeable in Mr. Rushworth's appearance, and Sir Thomas was liking him already. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIX, 184.

*to long*: I am longing to return to you. *Punch*, 1888, 292.

*to love*: Your cousin Richard has been loving you as plainly as he could for I don't know how long. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XIII, 109.

*to rejoice*: Even Mr. Carlyle's heart was rejoicing in the prospect. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, III, 35. T.

*to require*: Are you requiring a school? *Daily News*.

*to suppose*: I am supposing now that the lady visitor has a member's order for the day. *Graph.*, 1889, 278.

*to trust*: I know I am trusting to your goodness in a most extraordinary way. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XVIII, 288.

*to understand*: Monckley .. seemed to be understanding it (sc. the explanation) very well. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, Ch. II, 75.

*to want*: The Harviles had been wanting them to come to dinner every day. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIV, 130.

*to wish*: They were wishing to hold back time with both hands. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XXI, 104.

*to wonder*: She was wondering to herself how it was she had not heard of his arrival. *Times*.

43. a) In conclusion mention should be made of *to have*, which in its most common meaning of *to own* or *to possess* hardly admits of the Expanded Form. This naturally applies also to its two synonyms just mentioned. Likewise some other verbs which may express the same notion in a modified form, such as *to forget* (= to have no remembrance of), and *to remember* (to have in the memory), also *to cost* (to have the price of) are incompatible with the force of the Expanded Form. Thus it would not do to substitute it for the Unexpanded Form in *He had (owned or possessed) a gold watch, The watch cost £ 10. I forget your name, I remember my promise*. For *to forget* and *to remember* in the above meanings see also Ch. LI, 21.

b) But as in the case of the verbs discussed in the preceding sections, the above verbs are not unfrequently found in the Expanded Form when their meaning is modified so as to imply some activity; thus:

*to belong*: Are you belonging to the College? Mrs. Wood, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. II, 26. T.

*to cost*: i. The house was costing Soames a pretty penny beyond what he had reckoned on spending. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. IV, 163. (= causing expense.)

ii. The mistake is costing us dearly. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 72, 474. (= causing losses.)

*to forget*: We are forgetting the haymakers. LYTON, *My Novel*, I, I, Ch. III, 18. (= neglecting.)

*to have*: i. I am having fifteen dress-shirts. *Punch.*, No. 3811, 86 b. (= keeping in reserve.)

ii. Mr. and Mrs. Raddle and the cab-driver were having an altercation concerning the fare. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 424. (= holding.)

iii. I'm only having a regular good cry. *id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XII, 114. (= indulging in.)

iv. The reduction of the food supplies is having material and moral results of the most serious kind. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7389, 2 b. (= producing.)

v. Methuen's new novels are having a great success at all libraries. *ib.*, No. 6023, 1 a. (= enjoying.)

vi. Grandcourt was having Klesmer presented to him by some one unknown to her. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XI, 167. (= causing.)

Note. Even when expressing a form of compulsion or necessity, *to have* is occasionally found in the Expanded Form.

"Hallo Ethel, so you have started one of those things?" — "Yes, we're all having to come to them." *Punch.*, No. 3900, 232.

Money is having to be spent on excessive food prices. *The New Age*, No. 1219, 288 *b*.

### Final Observations.

14. The Expanded Form is used not only of the active, but also of the passive voice of the verb. Thus *His temper only failed him when they were nursing him* may be turned into *His temper only failed him when he was being nursed*.

As the passive Expanded Form will have to be discussed in full detail in Ch. LVII, dealing with the Participles, we may, in this place, confine ourselves to the following statements:

a) It is of comparatively recent date, the construction with a verbal in *ing* in the active voice or, more properly, neutral as to voice, being originally used instead; thus in *The horses are putting to* (GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, IV), which in Present English would run *The horses are being put to*.

b) It is confined to the present and preterite tenses, the alternative construction with the verbal in *ing* just mentioned, or some other turn of expression (47), taking its place so far as the other forms of the verb are concerned; e. g.:

i. The birds were in blissful ignorance of the preparations which had been making to astonish them. *Dick., Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 162.

ii. When he (sc. M. Herriot) came into power, he announced his intention of working for a settlement, and the question has since been continually under study. *Manch. Guard*, 31/10, 1924, 361 *b*.

45. It will create small wonder that in the handling of such an elusive idiom as the Expanded Form no uniformity of usage is observed by different writers and speakers. The observant student will, most probably, be struck by the fact that some writers employ it more frequently than others; he will, no doubt, find that it is more in favour with some writers, e. g. JANE AUSTEN, G. ELIOT and Mrs. WARD, than with others, e. g. MACAULAY, DICKENS and THACKERAY.

Nor will it escape his notice that in certain dialects, especially Scotch, there is a distinct predilection for the idiom (BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 187). Here follow some quotations in which the Expanded Form appears to be uncalled for:

"I suppose, sir . . . that it is the intention of your employers to seek to criminate me upon the testimony of my own friends." . . . — "Not *knowin'*, can't say." *Dick., Pickw.*, Ch. XXXI, 275.

It's time, I'm thinkin', as he did coom an' luke into things a bit. *Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia*, Prol. 3.

Conversely the Expanded Form would seem to be more appropriate than the Unexpanded, used in:

But which way go you now? *LYTTON, Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 10 *b*.

Hardly heeding which way I *went* in the fright of detection, the incident had

given me, (I) plunged into the afternoon throng of Oxford. WELLS, *The Invisible Man*, 168.

Inconsistencies, sometimes within the compass of a single sentence or sequence of sentences, are not wanting:

The old man had listened to those jokes any time these thirty years — Dobbin himself had been fifteen years hearing them. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 87.

Nobody .. knows when he is coming or when he is going — nor, for that matter, where he comes from or where he goes to. RICH. BAGOT, *Darneley Place*, I, Ch. II, 19.

Sometimes the choice of the form seems to be determined by considerations of metre; thus in:

He pointed to the field, | Where, huddled here and there on mound and knoll,  
| Were men and women staring and aghast, | While some yet *fled*. TEN.,  
*Ger. & En.*, 804.

This is certainly the case in:

The cock is crowing, | The stream is flowing. | The small birds twitter, | The lake doth glitter, | The green fields sleep in the sun; | The oldest and youngest  
| Are at work with the strongest, | The cattle are grazing, | Their heads never raising; | They are forty feeding like one. WORDSWORTH, *A Morning in March*.

46. a) The Expanded Form has been traced back to quite early times. In Old English many instances have been found, especially in translations from the Latin, where they correspond to participle-constructions in that tongue, or to such as contained a deponent verb or a passive form in general. Thus *eram docens* was translated by *wæs lærende*, *consecutus est* by *wæs fylgende*, *meditabitur* by *he byð smeagende*. Likewise in the much-quoted passage from ÆLFRIC, *Hom. I*, 504: *þā sōna on anginne þæs gefeohtes wæs se munt Garganus bifigende mid ormætre cwacunge* (in which *sōna* stands for the Modern-English *immediately*), the words *wæs .. bifigende mid ormætre cwacunge* represent the Latin original *immenso tremore concutitur*. In the literature of the Early Middle-English period instances of the Expanded Form in applications like those in Modern English appear to be rare. The present participle, indeed, is not unfrequently found in combination with the verb *to be*, but in almost all the cases produced it has the value of an adjective, or its verbal function is considerably obscured. Not until CHAUCER and CAXTON do we meet with indubitable instances of the Expanded Form in functions like those of the present day in any considerable numbers.

Nor is the Expanded Form a very common construction in SHAKESPEARE and his contemporaries (FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 622). In MILTON, especially in the prose-works it occurs more frequently; in BUNYAN it is already quite usual; but it is not

until the beginning of the eighteenth century that it becomes the established idiom as we know it in Present English.

Since the days of ADDISON it has made some further acquisitions. The passive construction as in *The book is being bound*, although traced back to such an early date as the second half of the sixteenth century, did not gain general currency until the first quarter of the nineteenth century. The combination with *having* first makes its appearance in the first half of the nineteenth century and, as has already been stated, that with *being* at the turn of the last century.

b) The principal source of the Expanded Form, as we know it in Present English, is not the Old-English construction with the present participle, but the combination *on* (often weakened to *an*) or *in* – gerund, in which the preposition first became weakened into *a* and afterwards gradually disappeared. The spread of the idiom was probably accelerated by the change of the participial ending *inde* into that of the gerundial *ing(e)* (Ch. LVI, 58—65). This view seems to be incontrovertible in consideration of the fact that the construction did not become usual until the aphesis of *a* had become very common, and affords an exceedingly plausible explanation of its assuming its modern well-defined functions as compared with its weak and vague force in Old English. It also accounts satisfactorily for the frequent occurrence of *of* before the object in archaic English, as in *My heart is inditing of a good matter* (Auth. Vers., Psalms, XLV, 1), and the use of the active present participle in a passive meaning, as in *The house is building* (Ch. LVII, Obs. IV—VIII).

47. There are a goodly number of phrases that may serve as substitutes for the Expanded Form, either in the active or the passive voice. As the words or word-groups contained in these phrases are also used in other connexions than that with *to be*, they will be discussed in Ch. LVII, dealing with the present participle in detail. In this place they may, therefore, be given without comment.

*active:* a) Here the monotonous round of life was already astir. MAUD DIVER, Capt. Desm., Ch. I, 10.

b) He was at study in the cell, or at prayer in the Church. WALDO H. DUNN, Eng. Biogr., Ch. I, 17.

c) 1) Those who are in the fight need not professions and promises, but concrete and definite acts before they can dream of laying down their arms. Westm. Gaz., No. 7577, 2a.

2) I am all in a tremble. DICK, Cop., Ch. I, 4a.

3) I was rather in expectation of hearing something of the kind. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LIII, 438.

d) I was all of a tremble. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., I, Ch. VI, 42.

e) During the eighteenth century the influence of the Church of Rome was constantly on the decline. MAC., Popes, (562 b).



- f) 1) He had heard the sound of the approaching vehicle when he was in the act of undressing. *Athen.*, No. 4481, 245 c.  
 2) She was in the act to turn away, as a tear dropped on his forehead. *KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. III, 21 a.  
 g) The Cape Colony is in process of revising its law affecting the use of the motor vehicle. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3866, 760 a.  
 h) The German was busy in washing his hands. *LYTTON*, *Night & Morn.*, 129. T.  
 i) Mrs. Boxer was employed in trimming a cap. *ib.*, 291.  
 j) Two (sc. young gentlemen) . . were engaged in solving mathematical problems. *DICK.*, *Dombs.*, Ch. XIII, 103.  
*passive*: a) The comedy had been in rehearsal for a week. *FRANK.* *MOORE*, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. VIII, 66.  
 b) I learned to hold my hands this way, when I was upon drill for the militia, *GOLDSMITH*, *She stoops*, II, (178).  
 c) The Military Service Act was under discussion. *The Nation*, XX, No. 14, 490 b.  
 d) The last item of the local programme is in course of performance. *FLOR.* *BARCLAY*, *The Rosary*, Ch. VI, 52.  
 e) Mr. Asquith . . announced that a Coalition Government was in process of formation. *The New Age*, No. 1185, 73 b.

48. The Expanded Form is not without analogues in the cognate languages. Thus the Dutch has *Hij is lijdende, beterende; Het water is rijzende, vallende; Hij is nog zoekende; De koorts is afnemende, minderende, toenemende; Wat is er gaande?* and a few more similar expressions, which are more or less generally current. But for the rest the construction is not a common one, although there sometimes seems to be some occasion for it, as in *Zal ik je nog een lucifer geven om je sigaar beter aan te steken? — O neen, dank je, ik ben al rookende.*

The common use of *afdoende, voldoende, toereikend*, and many other participles, as in *De maatregelen waren niet afdoende, voldoende, toereikend*, is not, of course, a case in point, the participles having preserved practically none of their verbal function.

For discussion of representatives of the idiom in German, French and (popular) Latin the student interested in the subject is referred to the present writer's treatise *The Characters of the English Verb and the Expanded Form* published separately.

49. a) Instead of *to be* we also find *to lie, to sit* and *to stand* connected with the present participle, the combination being a modification of the Expanded Form in its progressive function (Ch. I, 6; Ch. X, 7; Ch. XX, 15; Obs. V). In the following quotations these verbs, it is true, indicate a position of the human or animal body, but this is hardly a distinct notion in the speaker's mind. Indeed their stresslessness is scarcely less marked than that of *to be* in the same connexion.

- i. So he lay dreaming, while the sun drew gradually away from the rolling uplands in Tintagil. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 6.
- ii. He sat looking at the horse's ears, as if he saw something new there. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32 *b*.
- iii. The horse .. stood snorting and pawing at the garden-gate. *ib.*, Ch. II, 11 *b*.

*b*) When in this combination these verbs are placed in the Expanded Form, they reassume, of course, some of their full meaning, as in:

Madam Esmond left this room, where she was sitting reading Drelincourt. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XIII, 131.

But in many cases the participle of these verbs in this connexion is weak enough.

You tricked me while my father was lying dying. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. IV, 47.

We have been sitting talking in Guy's room. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXXIII, 351.

I was standing looking at the horse and wondering whether I shouldn't do better to go right back home. A. BENNETT, *The Great Adventure*, I, I, (19).

Note. It should be observed that the participle after these Expanded Forms is not used in the grammatical function of nominal part of the predicate, but that of predicative adnominal adjunct.

50. Present participles in the function of nominal part of the predicate are also found after some copulas of the second and third kinds, forming with them a construction which may be regarded as a modification of the Expanded Form. For other constructions after *to get* and *to fall* see Ch. LI, 15, *b*; for illustration of *to remain* + present participle see also Ch. LI, 25, *b*.

i. They remained looking at each other. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, III, Ch. XVI, 342.

The whole-hoggers keep repeating that they will never accept the exclusion of food-taxes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6135, 2 *a*.

ii. The boy got fingering the pistol. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 63.  
She fell happily thinking of Tressady's skirmishes with her. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 13 *a*.

51. In conclusion we draw attention to the combination of *to seem* with a present participle, which also may be apprehended as a modified Expanded Form. The idiomatic propriety of the construction is sometimes called in question, but there can be no doubt that it is frequent enough, at least so far as participles denoting a physical or mental activity are concerned.

My poor girl seemed almost sinking into her mother's arms at the hideous proposal. GOLDSMITH, *Vic*, Ch. XXXI, (476).

The Baron seemed collecting all his dignity to make a suitable reply. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXVII, 165.

He seemed endeavouring to collect his thoughts. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 25.  
Her whole being seemed hanging on his words. GALSW., *Country House*, I, Ch. VII, 60.

# CHAPTER LIII.

## VARIABLE APPLICABILITY OF THE PREDICATE.

### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Introduction . . . . .	1— 4
Variable Applicability of Predicates that admit of being furnished with either a Personal or a Non-personal Subject	5—17
Variable Applicability of Predicates arising from hesitancy as to which of the Participants in the Predication is to regarded as the Primary, which as the Secondary . . .	18—22
Variable Applicability of Predicates consisting in an inter- change of two Secondary Participants in the Predication	23
Variable Applicability of Predicates consisting in their ad- mitting of being furnished with Heterogeneous Subjects or Objects . . . . .	24—25



## Introduction.

1. As has been observed in Ch. XLV, '2, many predicates are capable of variable application consisting in the utter dissimilarity of the subjects, objects or other adjuncts with which they are connected. In some cases it can be shown that the application of a given predicate has undergone a change or is changing. Thus when we find that SHAKESPEARE'S *It likes us well* (Hamlet, II, 2, 80) has become *We like it well* in Present English, we clearly observe a change in predicate with *to like* which has come about in historical times. In this instance, and many like it, the earlier form survives archaically by the side of the later, so that the verb *to like* now appears to be capable of two applications, the earlier one often affected in the higher literary style, the later one used in ordinary language.

In other cases one application of a given predicate manifestly appears as an extension of the other, although it would hardly do to assume that the former has come into use at a later date than the latter. Thus *to plant trees in an orchard* seems to be a more obvious expression than *to plant an orchard with trees*, yet the convenience of the second application of the verb *to plant* may have occasioned its springing up simultaneously with the first. In the majority of cases, however, it would be hazardous to speak of a change or an extension of a predicate, there being no unmistakable data from which to infer either one or the other. Thus it would be difficult, if not impossible, to ascertain the priority of either one or the other of the two applications of the verb *to succeed* in *The undertaking succeeded* and *He succeeded in his undertaking*; or to prove that one is an extension of the other. Compare O. E. D., s.v. *succeed*, 12 and 13.

The tracing of the changes that the applications of predicates may have undergone in the course of the ages from which literary records have come down to us, and the description of their history belong to the department of historical grammar or lexicography on an historical basis, and cannot be attempted in this grammar, which professes to be only concerned with the practice of Late Modern English.

2. The different applications of which a predicate may be capable are naturally independent of the distinctions denoted by inflections

or their substitutes, and also of the accessory circumstances expressed by verb or adverbs (Ch. XLV, 13, *d*; 14, Obs, IV; 26). Thus the application of the verb *to plant* is the same in *I (you, we, they) plant (have planted, may plant, like to plant, etc.) fruit-trees in the garden*; and also in *I (you, we, they plant (have planted, may plant, like to plant, etc.) the garden with fruit-trees*. Nor is the application of a predicate changed when non-personal participants in the predication are more or less distinctly represented as persons (Ch. XLV, 16), as in *Time and tide wait for no man*. It should, therefore, be distinctly understood that the application of a predicate shows variability in the sense in which the word is to be apprehended in this Chapter only when the participants in the predication may distinctly differ in nature; i. e. as heterogeneous sources or recipients of activity; thus in:

We're not hurting you, are we? WELLS, KIPPS, III, § 3, 61.  
I'm sure it must hurt. *ib.*, 62.

Note. Sometimes it is open to question whether we have to deal with a change of predication or a kind of personification. Thus there might be two opinions as to the import of such a sentence as:

Four paper marks will buy in Germany about as much as a shilling buys in England. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8685, *ib.*

3. *a)* It is hardly necessary to observe that the semantic changes of verbs or nominals which are due to 'metaphora', or some other play of the imagination, fall beyond the present subject. The discussion, for example, of the metaphorical meanings of the verb *to run*, as in *the water-tap runs, the sore runs*, etc., is foreign to the subject dealt with in this chapter.

Nor is there any occasion in the present chapter to treat of the various meanings of many verbs and nominals in connexion with the way they are construed. Accordingly this is not the place to discuss, for example, the difference between *to escape* and *to escape from*, *to meet* and *to meet with*, *to wait for* and *to wait upon*. This exclusion does not apply to those cases in which various constructions stand for practically identical predications, e. g.: *to rob a person of a thing* and *to rob a thing from a person*, which combinations differ only in representing the participants in the action of robbery as concerned in it in a different way and bringing them into different degrees of prominence.

4. In connexion with the different participants in a predication we may distinguish:

*a)* variable applicability of the predicate following from an interchange of the primary and secondary participants in a predication, which may be due to:

1) a desire to avoid non-personal constructions, as seen in *I like this*, which has been substituted for *This likes me*.

2) hesitancy as to which of the participants in a predication is to be regarded as the primary, which as the secondary, as appears, for example, from the occurrence of both *The father has a son* and *The son has a father*; *I succeeded in this undertaking* and *This undertaking succeeded (with me)*.

b) variable applicability of the predicate consisting in an interchange of two secondary participants in the predication, the (pro)noun indicating the primary participant remaining undisturbed, as shown, for example, by two such sentences as *He planted trees in the orchard* and *He planted the orchard with trees*.

c) variable applicability of the predicate following from the changing of one participant in the predication, which may be that denoted by:

1) the subject, the (pro)noun indicating the secondary participant (if there is any) remaining undisturbed. Thus, for example, in *You hurt me* and *This hurts me*.

2) the non-prepositional object or the (pro)noun in a prepositional adjunct, the (pro)noun indicating the primary participant remaining undisturbed. Thus we find *I do not understand you* by the side of *I do not understand that*, and *She laughed at him* by the side of *She laughed at his folly*, and *He paid his bills* by the side of *He paid his creditors*.

For instances of the variable applicability of the predicate in German, Latin and Greek, so far as the cases mentioned under b) and c, 2) are concerned compare PAUL, Princ.<sup>3</sup>, § 105.

N o t e. Besides the above the language has a number of highly interesting cases of variability of the predicate:

a) some transitives admitting of conversion into intransitives,

i. through being used in a passive meaning without a change of voice (Ch. XLVI, 32—34); e. g.:

The meeting adjourned with acclamations. DICK., Nick., Ch. II, 9b.

ii. through throwing off the reflexive pronoun and, by so doing, assuming a passive meaning (Ch. XLVIII, b); e. g.:

One desperate grief cures with another's languish. SHAK., Rom. & Jul., I, 2, 49.

β) some intransitives admitting of conversion into transitives through being used in a causative meaning (Ch. XLVI, 37—42); e. g.:

Scrooge hung his head before this Spirit. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 49.

γ) Some transitives admitting of being used as causatives (Ch. XLVI, 43); e. g.:

He led his clerks a dire life in the City. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VII, 73.

These variabilities in the application of the verbs concerned are here dismissed with a single word, having been discussed in ample detail in preceding chapters.

**Variable Applicability of Predicates that admit of being furnished  
with either a Personal or a Non-personal Subject.**

5. An interesting source of predicate variability is the disinclination, prevailing especially in the later stages of the language, to use an impersonal construction wherever a personal construction seems to be more rational. A similar disinclination is felt with regard to the use of the anticipating *it* when replacing a subordinate statement or an infinitive-clause (7—13). In this case the pronoun, although indicating a definable notion and, therefore, indubitably personal, is often felt to represent a vague idea, and, consequently, as more or less impersonal.

It is sometimes even difficult to make out whether *it* is impersonal or personal. Thus in *It takes no wiseacre to see that cordiality between France and England is the best guarantee of European peace.* (Manch. Guard., VIII, 17, 322 *b*), *it* may certainly be apprehended to stand for the infinitive clause *to see that* etc., but it is at the same time felt as impersonal, *takes* having more or less the meaning of *wants* and the infinitive-phrase the function of an adverbial clause of purpose. As has already been said in Ch. XLV, 5, the O. E. D. uses the term quasi-impersonal in describing the pronoun *it* of vague or doubtful reference. When no distinction between impersonal and quasi-impersonal is needed, non-personal may be used as a convenient term to comprise both. This subject has already been treated in considerable detail, but from a different angle, in Ch. II; but, several interesting details having escaped notice, it deserves ample discussion also in this chapter.

6. The following instances of variability of the predicate consequent on the substitution of a personal for an impersonal construction deserve especial mention:

a) The Old-English (West-Saxon  $\pm$  1000: *ne hingrað þone þe tō mē cymð, and ne þyrst þone nāfre ðe on mē gelyfd* (JOHN, VI, 35) runs in the Authorized Version (1611): *he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.* The same version has practically been retained in the Revised Version (1881), although the construction *he hungereth, he thirsteth* has become obsolete, being changed into *He is hungry, He is thirsty.*

Note. It will have been observed that in the Old-English construction the predicate is not furnished with the impersonal *it* by way of formal subject. Traces of this practice are not uncommon in Late Modern English; e. g.:

Now that Rebecca is with us will be the very time. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 28.

For then was latter April. TEN., Com. of Arth., 450.

Now was Eustace's turn to be roused. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. IV, 29*b*.

In the above sentences the adverbs (*now, then*) are, however, more or



less felt as the subject, so that they may be said to afford instances of a changed application of the predicate.

Such a change is unquestionable in sentences of the above type in which the name of an epoch stands in the place of the adverb; e. g.:

Is to-day my birthday? DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XVII, 69*a*.

To-morrow is Thursday. SWEET, Old Chapel.

To-day's the twenty-third of May. GALSW., To let, I, Ch. XI, (897).

Compare: What day of the month is it to-day? SWEET, Elem. Buch, 91.

It's my birthday on Sunday. id., Old Chapel.

The change is attended by a modification of the function of *to be*, which is not a copula, but a verb with a meaning of its own, in:

Summer was in England. RUDY KIPLING, Light, Ch. III, 33.

In the following quotation *being Sunday* may be apprehended as an adnominal clause, which would make *Sunday* nominal part of the predicate:

He dined at the hall that day, being Sunday, and would not partake of pudding, except under extreme pressure. THACK., Henry Es m., III, Ch. VII, 382.

This view, however, appears in a doubtful light when the sentence is compared with:

The morning of her arrival, being Sunday, she went to church. FIELD., Jos. Andr., IV, Ch. I, 204.

Being Sunday, we had service on deck after we left the bay. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 39

Being market-day at the nearest town, they were overlooked by plenty of farmers and pork-butchers. SWEET, Picnic.

b) The impersonal *it needs*, *it wants* and *it requires* are sometimes replaced by *there needs*, *there wants* and *there requires*. The (pro)noun after the former expressions is in the objective relation to the verb, after the latter it is in the subjective relation to it, although *there*, owing to its position before the verb, is more or less felt as the subject. *There wants* appears as a variant of *it wants* only in expressions denoting a deficiency. Both *there wants* and *there requires* seem to be uncommon.

i. \* It needed but a look at Susan to see that she was in no condition to walk to Grassmere-Farm. READE, Never too late, I, Ch. IV, 52.

It needs no witness to his deficiencies. The Nation, XX, 9, 309*a*.

I remember reading of some one that said it needed a surgical operation to get a joke into a Scotsman's head. J. M. BARRIE, What Every Woman knows, II, 70.

It needs no saying that the gently but keenly satiric criticism of post-war England, in which the book abounds, is only a setting for a very moving tale. Manch. Guard., 31/10, 1924, 377*b*.

\*\* There needs no ghost, my lord, come from the grave | To tell us this. SHAK., Ham l., I, 5, 125.

There needs no art to discover their merits. SHER., School, I, 2.

To me there needs no stone to tell | 'Tis Nothing that I loved so well. BYRON, Elegy on Thyrsa, II.

ii. \* It wanted but very few days before that blissful one, when Foker should call Blanche his own. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 403.

It wanted but a feather to turn the scale. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XX, 178.

It wanted this to complete the defeat. id., Hard Times, III, Ch. II, 105*a*.

It wanted now barely three months to his departure. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 488.

It wanted some time to the burial. HARDY, *Jude*, IV, Ch. II, 262.

\*\* There still wanted half-an-hour to dinner. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 353.

iii. \* Surely it does not require a palace to be happy with Mary. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-bk.*

It required all the personal influence of the king to check .. his irritated followers. M. PATTISON, *Ess.*, I, 18.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* If there requires further evidence of the rude undeveloped character of our education, we have it in the fact that the comparative worths of different kinds of knowledge have been as yet scarcely discussed. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 11*b*.

Note a) In *it needs a thing* the verb *to need* is equivalent to *to require*, in *there needs a thing* it has rather the value of *to be required*. The passive *a thing is needed* is used as a variant of either. It should, however, be observed that the two applications of *to need* are not always clearly distinguished (Ch. LV, 15). Also the active *to require* sometimes has a passive meaning. See the last of the above quotations. Some such reform is needed. GRAPH. (= It needs some such reform, and There needs some such reform.)

β) When *it needs* or *it requires* is followed by an infinitive, active or passive, + subordinate statement or question, the function of *it* is uncertain; it may be understood as an anticipating subject, i. e. as a personal pronoun, or as an indefinite pronoun. In the light of the foregoing quotations the latter view appears to be the more plausible.

i. It needs not to be said that much which is true of our country at that time is true also of others. MARY BATESON, *Mediæval England*, Pref.

It needs not to tell what she said and promised on behalf of Nelly. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 318.

ii. It really does not require to be argued that the more the population of the Dominions is recruited from the homeland, the greater is the commercial intercourse. GRAPH., No. 2691, 772*c*.

It requires to be considered very carefully how far a break with Russia would injure the permanent interests of this country. MANCH. GUARD., VIII, 17, 361*c*.

γ) *There wants*, when denoting non-existence, varies with *there is wanting*. Both phrases appear to be chiefly used in negative connexions.

i. There wanted not those who, steeled by want and bitterness of spirit, were willing to adopt the hateful and dangerous character (sc. of witches) for the sake of the influence which its terrors enabled them to exercise in the vicinity. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXX, 286.

There wanted but this to complete Edith's distress and confusion. *id.*, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XII, 141.

ii. There are not wanting signs that the wealth thus inherited and squandered is coming to an end. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5335, 5*b*.

δ) The use of *there is wanted* in the same sense as the above phrases seems to be exceedingly rare. The following is the only instance that has come to hand.

There were not wanted some who suspected my uncles of being concerned in my father's fate. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. II, 11.

1) O. E. D.

c) The impersonal *it fares (well, ill, etc.) with a person or thing* is giving way to *a person or thing fares (well, ill, etc.)* Except for the saying (*He*) *might go farther and fare worse*, also the latter construction is confined to the higher literary style.

i. Ah, my son! it is so seldom that I see thee: how fares it with thee? — well? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. II, 83.

III fares it now with the youngsters. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VII, 141. Her thoughts wandered, as ever, to her lover. Where was he and how had it fared with him? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXX, 298.

ii. How fares my Kate? SHAK., *Taming*, IV, 336.

III fares the land to hastening ills a prey, | Where wealth accumulates and men decay. GOLDSMITH, *Des. Vil.*, 51.

A man might go farther and fare worse. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 33.

Note. In the following quotation *things* has the value of the impersonal *it* (Ch. XL, 194, b). There is not, therefore, anything surprising in the fact that the construction used in it is like that used in the examples of the first group.

Things were faring badly indeed with the conquering army of the Alma. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 149.

d) The impersonal *How is it with you?* has practically disappeared from the language, *How are you?* having taken its place.

How is it with you? SHER., *Critic*, I, 2.

e) The non-personal application of *to matter*, as in *it matters nothing, if it matters anything, what matters it?* (or *what does it matter?*), in which *nothing, anything* and *what* are in an adverbial relation to the verb, is frequently replaced by the personal application. In it *nothing* or *anything* appear as subjects. Also *what* may be in the subjective relation to the verb; thus when a prepositional adjunct with *about* follows, and also when the phrase stands by itself. But *what* preserves its adverbial function when a (pro)noun or a subordinate clause has taken over the duty of subject.

i. \* It mattered nothing to them whether the other Corporators were eight or a thousand. *Law Rep*, 26, *Chanc. Div.*, 128.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* What matters it what she says to you? STEELE, *Spect.*, No. 252.<sup>1)</sup>

What does it matter about any other name? BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 316.

ii. \* Nothing mattered so long as he told her everything. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. 249.

We'll stick together, Joy, always; nothing'll matter then. GALSWORTHY, *Joy*, III, (172).

If nothing mattered, why should he feel like that? *id.*, *White Monk.*, III, Ch. XI, 269.

\*\* After the war they had deemed it blasphemous to admit that anything mattered except eating or drinking. *id.*, *White Monkey*, III, Ch. XI 268.

\*\*\* What matters about fame and poverty? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

What matters about a few paltry guineas? *ib.*, f, Ch. XXVII, 291.

There had been always before our eyes the prospect of a time when the estates should be free — in a year or two, perhaps, more or less; what mattered. BESANT, *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. VI, 53

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

The Forsytes and the Goldings were good English country stock — that was what mattered. GALSW., *The White Monkey*, II, Ch. I, 110. (Observe that in this quotation *what* is not the interrogative, but the condensed relative pronoun.)

\*\*\*\* What matters a little name or a little fortune? THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. XI, 250.

What matters whether or no I make my way in life? *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 94.

What did Cecilia Cricklander's insults matter? What did anything matter? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIII, 293.

Note a) Such sentences as *nothing matters* and *what matters*, with *nothing* and *what* as the subject, are constructed on the same plan as the following:

We do things for all kinds of reasons, and it's the reasons, not the things that matter. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, Ch. III, V, 30.

The only quality that mattered was the quality of being well-bred. *ib.*, Ch. IV, I, 33

β) Observe that also in other connexions the thing concerned may be indicated either by the subject or by a (pro)noun in an adverbial adjunct with *about*.

i. His pretext mattered little. DIXON, *Two Queens*, I, IV, 1, 175.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. It doesn't particularly matter about his Christian name. *Manch. Guard.*, XIX, 14, 279 a.

γ) The constructions illustrated by the following quotations are now obsolete or survive only in dialects.

i. What matters me who wears the crown of France? SOUTHEY, *Wat Tyler*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. If it had been out of doors, I had not mattered it so much. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 24 b.

I do not mean so much for the hardship; I do not so much matter that. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, II, Ch. II, 157.

f) *To signify*, which is a strict synonym of *to matter*, admits of some of the latter's variable constructions.

i. It did not signify about your holding Radical opinions at Smyrna. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. II, 55.

ii. The breakfast does not signify being delayed a little. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Ruth*, Ch. XIII, 98.

g) The impersonal *It strikes cold in this room* varies with *This room strikes cold*, in like manner as the Dutch *Het voelt koud aan in deze kamer* varies with *Deze kamer voelt koud aan*.

i. It struck cold that morning in the church. GALSWORTHY, *Tatterdemalion*, I, Ch. I, 14.

ii. The room struck cold. *Mrs. WARD*, *The Mating of Lydia*, *Prolog.*, Ch. I, 21.

Summer night-wear "strikes chilly." *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 14, 1 b.

h) In expressions stating the time of day there is a threefold variety of construction, as is shown by:

i. It struck nine o'clock. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. VI, 127.

ii. Nine o'clock struck. O. E. D., s. v. *strike*, 41, b.

By the time he reached its secluded groves, .. eight o'clock had struck. *Dick.*, *Pickwick*, Ch. XX, 179.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

iii. The clock struck nine. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, Ch. XIII, 319.

i) Of the curious change of subject, illustrated by the following quotation, no further instances have been found.

I was a full year, before I could quite leave that. BUNYAN, *Grace Abounding*, § 35.

7. Some predicates, especially such as express a physical state or a psychical disposition, owe their variable application, dating from early times, to a tendency prevailing especially in the language of the illiterate, to make the (pro)noun denoting the person concerned in this state or disposition the subject, rather than the word(-group) or infinitive clause indicating the cause of it. The change of subject was in some cases furthered by the fact that the pro(noun) indicating the person in question was mostly placed before the predicate, the anticipating *it* being dispensed with, as in:

And if yow lyketh alle, by oon assent, | Now for to stonden at my jugement.  
CHAUC., *Cant. T.*, A, 779.

For further illustration see Ch. II, 17; and compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 193.

It may be assumed that this change first concerned those cases in which the nominative and the objective differed little, or not at all, in form, and was afterwards extended to the personal pronouns that have preserved different forms for the two cases.

Sometimes the earlier construction is still vigorously alive, more often it survives only archaically, or has practically disappeared from the present language. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. II, 26; and compare JESPERSEN, *Prog.*, § 173 ff; EINENKEL, *Streifz.*, 114; VAN DER GAAF, *The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English*; id., *The Origin of would rather and some of its analogues*, E. S., XLV, III; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 45, ;; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, §§ 72, 7 and 75.

8. The following predicates are instances of the variable applicability here referred to:

*to ail*. The earlier construction is "now restricted to interrogative, relative, and indefinite sentences, as *What ails you? If anything ailed me.*" O. E. D. i. I see nothing that ails it (sc. your head). STERNE, *Trist. Shandy*, I, Ch. XII, 9b.

"A jolly place," said he, "in times of old! | But something ails it now: the spot is cursed." WORDSWORTH, *Hart-leap Well*, 124.

Something is seriously ailing with the Anglican Church. *Daily Chronicle*.

ii. For what she ails, they cannot guess. WORDSWORTH, *The Idiot Boy*, 26.

Note. In the following quotation the two constructions are used alternately. The speaker is, however, an illiterate woman.

And now what ailest thou, precious Mr. Gabriel Kettledrummle? .. I say what ails thee now? SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XVII, 185.

β) The verb is now chiefly used to denote a general state of illness, no cause being mentioned; thus in:

My cousin ails. SHAW, *The Admirable Bashville*, II, (301).

The children are always ailing. *Westm. Gaz.*, 2/5, 1925, 8 b.

*to behave*. When connected with an infinitive (clause) denoting the thing incumbent, it is now mostly constructed with *it* as the anticipating subject.

i. It behoved him to keep on good terms with his pupils. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk*, XXXII, 346.

It ill behoves European nations, who have broken the letter of their financial obligations on the plea of the stress of warfare, to use such intemperate language when the Turks do but follow suit. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 25, 487 c.

ii. Could they not go farther afield, if they behoved to make such a din? *SCOTT*, *Mon.*, Ch. IV, 71.

He behoved to stop whether he wad or no. *id.*, *Old Mort.*, Ch. IV, 39

*to delight*. The verb admits of a variety of constructions, as is shown by the following scheme: a) 1) *Your success delights me*, 2) *It delights me to hear of your success*; b) 1) *I delight in (or at) your success*, 2) *I delight in (or at) hearing of your success*, 3) *I delight to hear of your success*, 4) *I delight myself in (or at) hearing of your success (or to hear of your success)*. The constructions a) 1 and a) 2 are now unusual. As to those mentioned under b) it should be observed that the choice largely depends on the nature of the adjunct or the meaning of the sentence generally. That with the reflexive pronoun is distinctly rare. These niceties of idiom cannot, however, be discussed in this place. For illustration see also Ch. XIX, 26. More common than perhaps all the above constructions is that with the adjectival participle *delighted*, which may be construed with an infinitive or with a variety of prepositions: *at, in, over, with*.

a) 1) Man delights not me: no, nor woman neither. *SHAK.*, *Hamlet*, II, 2, 323.

a) 2) Woman is to him no sentimental abstraction, no impossible deity: it delights him to show us that she is flesh and blood, and none the worse for it. *W. J. DAWSON*, *Makers of Eng. Fiction*, Ch. XV, 196.

b) 1) There are no Books which I more delight in than Travels. *STEELE & AD.*, *Tatler*, No. 254.

You delight in the abasement of your fellow-creatures. *MAC.*, *Fred.*, (691 a).

b) 2) He delighted in going to Pemberley. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LXI, 378.

Lady Ann will be delighted at hearing of your arrival. *THACK.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. VI, 72.

b) 3) He delights to draw forth concealed merit. *SHER.*, *Critic*, I, 12.

b) 4) He can delight himself in trying to give her pleasure. *HABBERTON*, *Helen's Babies*, 55.

*to grieve*. Both constructions are in common use. When a (pro)noun indicates the cause of the grief, a preposition, mostly *at*, is required in the personal construction.

i. So down he came: for loss of time, | Although it grieved him sore, | Yet loss of pence, full well he knew, | Would trouble him much more. *COWPER*, *John Gilpin*, XIV.

That will grieve your mother a bit, though she mayn't say so. *G. ELIOT*, *Mid.*, Ch. LXXXVI, 614.

ii. I grieve to tell you that I hear this morning your mamma is very ill. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 61 b.

I grieved at the thought of the mortification I should inflict upon him. *DE QUINCEY*, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 13.

Note. *To grieve* is used impersonally in: It grieves me | Much more for

what I cannot do for you | Than what befalls myself. SHAK., Twelfth Night, III, 4, 369.

*to like*. The older construction occurs now only archaically. The modern construction appears to have been common enough from an early date. The O. E. D.'s earliest, though doubtful, instance bears date 1200. See also in the same work *please*, sense 6, where the date of the arising of the modern construction is given as c. 1430. It is already frequent in SHAKESPEARE.

i. It likes us well. SHAK., Hamlet, II, 2, 80.

Let each as likes him best his hours employ. THOMSON, Castle of Indolence, I, XXVIII.

I can .. bring him back .. by fair means or by force, as best likes your reverence. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 368.

It would like her ill to see her son give all and take none himself. READE, Cloister, Ch. II, 11.

ii. For several virtues | Have I liked several women. SHAK., Temp., III, 1, 43.

Note. In the colloquial half-jocular expression: *I like it* (sc. the food), *but it does not like me*, the second use of *to like* seems to be a mere perversion of the ordinary sense. O. E. D., s.v. *like*, 6, g.

*to list*. The verb is used only in the higher literary style. The modern construction has been traced to quite early times. The O. E. D. registers an instance dated 1200. SHAKESPEARE appears to have used it to the exclusion of the older construction, no instances of the latter being given by A. SCHMIDT.

i. Ye sons of Indolence! do what you will | And wander where you list. THOMSON, Castle of Indolence, I, XXVIII. (*You* has, perhaps, to be understood as a nominative.)

Four men-at-arms .. led his ambling palfrey, when at need | Him listed ease his battle-steed. SCOTT, Marm., I, VIII.

ii. If we list to speak. SHAK., Hamlet, I, 5, 177.

The wind bloweth where it listeth. Bible, John, III, 8.

The visitor had liberty either to say what he listed, receiving for answer an occasional grunt; or to look round for a space, and take himself away. CARLYLE, Sart. Res., Ch. III, 15.

O maiden, if indeed ye list to sing, | Sing, and unbind my heart that I may weep. TEN., Guin., 163.

It would be better to leave her free to go as she listed. HUGH CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. VIII, 92.

Note. There is a halting between the two constructions in:

Well, thou mayest call it what thou lists. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXIV, 266.

*to marvel*. The construction with anticipating *it*, as in the quotation below, appears to be exceedingly rare.

i. It marvelled Christina that it should have lasted with Dicky as it did. TEMPLE THURSTON, Antag., Ch. XI, 89.

ii. I marvel your ladyship could bear so long with her insolence. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. II, 25.

*to need*. The construction with the (pro)noun indicating the person who stands in need in the objective does not, apparently, extend beyond the end of the 16th century. See Ch. II, 26.

Little, I hope, needeth me at large to discourse the first original of the Æglogues. SPENSER, Gen. Arg. to Sheph. Cal.

*ought*. The older construction appears to have become extinct before the end of the 15th century. The O. E. D.'s latest instance is a quotation from MALLORY (1470—85). In CHAUCER († 1400) it is still frequent enough. See Ch. II, 26.

Seint Ambrose seith, that 'Penitence is the pleyninge of man for the gilt that he

hath doon, and na-more to do any thing for which him oghte to pleyne. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, *Persones Tale*, § 2.

*please*. The modern construction *he pleases* etc. is equivalent to *he is pleased*, which is preferred when an (infinitive-)clause follows and, besides, is often coloured by some secondary notion. According to the O. E. D., (s.v. *please*, 6, Note) SHAKESPEARE, uses the three forms indifferently. For comment on the phrase *if you please*, and its shortened form, *please*, see Ch. II, 15.

i. Will it please your worship to come in? SHAK., *Merry Wives*, I, 1, 275.  
I will do my duty in that state of life in which it has pleased Heaven to place me. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 363.

My plan is to do what pleases me. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. VII, 98.

ii. I may do so when I please. SHAK., *Much ado*, II, 1, 95.

Is not a back-stairs favourite one that can do what he pleases with those that do what they please? GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, II.

A clever man with a clever wife may take any place they please. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 79.

iii. Wilt thou be pleased to hearken once again to the suit I made to thee? SHAK., *Temp.*, III, 2, 44.

If you don't like my negotiation, will you be pleased to answer these (sc. duns) yourself? CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 1, (204).

The sovereign was pleased to advance Colonel Sir Michael O'Dowd to the rank of Major General. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

In consequence of the marriage you have been pleased to contract, he ceases to consider you henceforth as a member of his family. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXV, 256.

*to reek*. "From its earliest appearance in English, *to reek* is almost exclusively employed in negative or interrogative clauses. In the former the simple negative may be replaced by *nought*, *nothing*, *little*, *not much*, etc.; in the latter the pron. *what* is most usual. There are comparatively few examples of the word during the 17th and 18th centuries, but in the 19th it again becomes common in rhetorical and poetical language." O. E. D. The O. E. D. gives earlier examples of the personal than the non-personal construction.

i. What rekketh me, thogh folk seye vileinye | Of shrewed Lameth and his bigamy. CHAUC., *Cant Tales*, D. 53.

What recks it them? MILTON, *Lyc.* 121.

Of night and loneliness it recks me not *id.*, *Comus*. 404.

ii. Little recked Mr. Podsnap of the traps and toils besetting his Young Person. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, II, V.<sup>1)</sup>

If this last, I shall have done better for my charge than I recked of. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. 154.

*to repent*. The non-personal construction is now used only archaically. It may here be observed that in the personal construction *to repent* and *to repent of* appear to be used indifferently. In the higher literary style the verb is sometimes used reflexively, especially with the personal pronoun doing duty for the reflexive. In this construction it is mostly followed by a prepositional object with *of*. For illustration see also Ch. XXIV, §§ 21 and 23; and compare ELLINGER, *Verm. Beit.*, 69.

i. \* Alas, me sore repenteth . . . that even Sir Launcelot should be against me. MAL., *Morte Darthur*, XX, 7.

\*\* It repenteth me that I have set up Saul to be king. Bible, *Sam.*, A, XV, 11.

It doth repent me; words are quick and vain. SHELLEY, *Prometh. Unbound* I, 303.

1) O. E. D.



ii. \* The Lord repented that he had made Saul king over Israel. Bible, Sam., A, XV, 35.

He repented his marriage. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XII, 94.

\*\* He thought that she might have repented of her bargain. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankr. Heart*, II, 256 (T.)

iii. \* Hallin repented himself. Mrs. WARD., *Marc.*, III, 227.

\*\* Strong, perhaps, repented him of the falsehood which he had told to the free-handed colonel. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 258

A foolish girl had repented her of her folly. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 16.

9. A similar change of subject underlies the genesis of the phrases *I had rather*, (or *sooner*, *liefer*, *liever*), *I had as soon* (or *as lief*, *as lieve*), *I had better* (or *best*), *I had as good*, *I had as well*, and their variations. The older non-personal constructions have practically disappeared from the language, having become obsolete before the time of SHAKESPEARE. Full details about the rise of these phrases, together with ample illustration, have already been given in Ch. II, 27—30, so that a bare mention of them seems to be sufficient in this place. In Chapter LV the use of *to* before the infinitive standing after these phrases will receive adequate attention.

Note. As an alternative to *he had better be* + present participle, in which *to be* + participle represents the Expanded Infinitive of the verb concerned, we may mention *he would be better* + present participle, in which the participle stands for a suppositional *in* + gerund (Ch. LVI, 50).

Mrs. Kirk would be much better mending her husband's clothes. THACK. *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 82. (= .. had much better be mending ..)

10. Another variability of the predicate is due to the frequent possibility of transposing various elements of certain complex sentences, the transposition changing the grammatical function of these elements and causing the complex sentence to be condensed into a simple one. This variability may be most frequently observed with nominal predicates. Thus *To answer this question is difficult* or *It is difficult to answer this question* varies with *This question is difficult to answer*.

In comparing the condensed with the expanded constructions, it appears that, while in all three *to answer this question* is the logical subject and *is difficult* the predicate, *it* is the grammatical and *to answer this question* the logical subject in the second; *this question* is the grammatical subject in the third, *to answer* having become an adverbial adjunct with a passive meaning.

How far the infinitive in the condensed construction may, owing to this change of grammatical function, assume a passive form will be discussed in Ch. LV, 80 ff.

Although there can be no doubt that the choice between the three constructions depends largely on the general structure of the sentence, prolonged reading brings out the fact that the first

construction is but rarely met with, the third being by far the most frequent, except for the cases described in 11—13.

i. To give anything like a correct amount of the loss .. would be impossible. *Daily Tel.*, 1864, 20 Sept.<sup>1)</sup>

To do this (sc. to take a perfectly impartial measure of his, i.e. Wordsworth's, value as a poet) is especially hard for those who are old enough to remember [etc.]. JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL, *Wordsworth*.

To find one's way in London is not easy. JESPERSEN, *Philos.*, Ch. I, 25.

ii. 'Tis hard to say, if greater want of skill | Appear in writing or in judging

iii. POPE, *Es. on Crit.*, I.

It was a grand sight to behold him in his dressing-gown composing a *menu*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 232.

It is extremely easy to condemn other people. GALSW., *White Monk.*, III, Ch. XII, 281.

It became very difficult to drag her mind away. HUTCHINSON, *This Freedom*, IV, Ch. I, 260.

It is by no means an easy matter to devise a system of ownership of land which will secure all these ends. *Westm. Gaz.*, 14/3, 1925, 574 b.

It is never easy to evoke an age with a single figure. *ib.*, 575 a.

iii. His luggage .. was not difficult to carry. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IV, 50.

This is very satisfactory to know. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 125.

This is very important to observe. SWEET, *Words, Logic and Gram.*, 3.

The causes of this imperfect sympathy are easy to understand. WALT. RALEIGH, *Sam. Johns.*, 30.

Note a) When the nominal is an absolute possessive pronoun, as in *It is mine* (i.e. *my duty*) *to perform this task*, variation appears to be very rare. The following is an instance:

Marian Richmond is mine to support. MEREDITH, *Harry Richm.*, Ch. I, 7.

β) No variation of construction is, of course, possible when the nominal expresses not a quality of the action denoted by the infinitive, but of the thing indicated by the subject (Ch. LV, 81, Obs. V).

The outside of the man you were marrying was fair enough to see. WILK. COL., *The Wom. in White*, I, Gh. XI, 73.

His courage was beautiful to behold. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, V, Ch. IX, 150 c.

11. a) Front-position of the logical object of the infinitive is not incompatible with the expanded construction with anticipating *it*. On the contrary, this construction is the rule when this object is represented by a lengthy word-group, which may be:

1) a subordinate statement: That so abnormal an education can have been entirely without drawbacks, it is no part of my purpose to affirm. MARZIALS, *Dick.*, Ch. II, 38.

That the British subject named by us in our review of April 18th was a thorn in the side of Marquis Ito, it is hardly necessary to prove. *Athen.*, 23/3, 1908.<sup>2)</sup>

2) a substantive clause: Whatever accommodation he can have .. it is our duty to afford him. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XVI, 194.

1) O. E. D.

2) KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 1009.

What passed at his gathering, it is not lawful for me to tell. *Times*, No. 1823, 973 *a*.

3) a subordinate question: How long she could have repressed her feelings it is difficult to say. *Scott*, *Old Mort.*, Ch. VIII, 81.

Where the doctor had studied, how he had acquired his medical knowledge, and where he had received his diploma, it is hard at present to say. *WASH. IRV.*, *Dolf Heyl*. (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 107).

But what pleasure she can have found in having Miss Burney about her, it is not easy to comprehend. *MAC.*, *Mad. d'Arblay* (722 *b*).

How the Vicar reconciled his answer with the strict notions he supposed himself to hold on these subjects, it is beyond a layman's power to tell. *HARDY*, *Tess*, II, Ch. XIV, 122,

4) a (pro)noun modified by an adnominal clause, full or undeveloped: The amount of the plunder he collected in this way it is impossible to estimate. *MAC.*, *Lord Bacon*, (375 *b*).

A more heinous offence against the State, short of actual treason, it is hard to imagine. *Times*, 9/3, 1917.<sup>1)</sup>

5) a (pro)noun modified by a comparative, or by *as* + adjective, followed by an incomplete clause opening with *than* or *as*: A form more rigid than Miss Starke's it was hard to conceive. *LYTTON*, *My Novel*, I, VI, Ch. XXV, 433.

Anything more funereally dismal than the tone of its leading articles it would be impossible to conceive, *Punch*, No. 3670, 332 *c*.

*b*) Instances of the alternative construction, i. e. that without anticipating *it* after the word-group opening the sentence, have come to hand only so far as subordinate questions are concerned. They are fairly frequent.

How the Duke of Burgundy must resent this horrible cruelty on the person of his near relative and ally, is for your Majesty to judge. *SCOTT*, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 361.

How far I have followed these instructions, or whether they have availed me, is not for me to decide. *BYRON*, *Pref. to Mar. Fal.*

At what time of night it (sc. the storm of snow) first began is more than I can say. *BLACKMORE*, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XLI, 257.

Why the Head should sway about and shout like that was impossible to conjecture. *E. F. BENSON*, *Dav. Blaize*, Ch. II, 30.

What effect the sight of the victorious Austrian army might have had upon the hesitating politicians at Bucharest is not easy to say. *The New Statesman*, No. 89, 260 *b*.

## 12. The construction with anticipating *it* is also the rule, that without anticipating *it* being, however, fairly common:

*a*) in adnominal clauses introduced by *which* or *that*:  
i. My poor mother has prejudices which it is impossible for my logic to overcome. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 14.

There are some things which it is quite beyond the power of any judge or jury to decide. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 223.

I shall only mention a few points which it is very easy for each one to find out for himself with a little careful observation. *WYLD*, *Growth of Eng.*, Ch. II, i9,

<sup>1)</sup> *KRUIS.*, *Handb.*, § 1009.

To this may be added the little that it seems necessary to promise on the position of these dramas in Shakespeare's time. A. C. BRADLEY, *Shakespearean Tragedy*, *Introd.*, 8.

Long may these great and fine old men survive, to give to the nation the wise and weighty counsel which it is theirs to give. *Westm. Gaz.*, 28/2, 1925, 519 *c*.

ii. It is a subject which will be requisite to consider carefully. HUXLEY, *Man's Place in Nat. and other Es.*, V, 182.

The former terms (*sc.* voiced and voiceless) have a clear and precise meaning which is quite easy to grasp. WYLD, *Growth of Eng.*, Ch. II, 18.

There is hardly a page in this book that is not a delight to read. *Westm. Gaz.*

There are certain attitudes of mind which are almost impossible to render in English. *ib.*

His (*sc.* General Botha's) sudden death leaves in Imperial and in South African political life a great gap, which will be difficult to fill. *id.*, No. 8067, 1 *a*. He was the first poet who led the English people into that world of nature which has enchanted us in the work of modern poetry, but which was entirely impossible for Pope to understand. STOPP. BROOKE, *Prim. of Eng. Lit.*, 162.

*b*) in substantive clauses introduced by *what*: Nobody will dispute that what it was impossible to do at Genoa in ten weeks cannot be done at the Hague in five days. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 24, 487 *b*.

What it is necessary for the Commons to face is that they must either adopt these drastic measures or appeal to the country. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 203, 452 *b*.

ii. If, then, M. Poincaré demands coercive measures, we can only answer that we will do everything in our power to make Germany pay what is in her capacity to pay. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/12, 1922, 6 *b*.

*c*) after the interrogative *what*: i. What's it possible to say? DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 28.

What else was it possible to infer from what you said? *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 *a*. By all means .. let us have the inquiry; but what fresh steps is it necessary to take? *Times*, No. 2444, 468 *c*.

ii. People are perpetually squabbling about what will be best to do, or easiest to do, or advisablest to do, or profitablest to do. RUSKIN, *The Crown of Wild Olive*, *Work*, 36.

She would .. see .. what would be best to do. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch XXV, 215.

13. The same variable practice, conditioned by the use or absence of anticipating or recapitulating *it*, may also be observed in the case of verbal predicates, as opposed to nominal predicates to be found in all the examples in the two preceding sections. We must confine ourselves to the following illustration:

i. Hostilities have broken out between Hungary and Roumania, exactly on what scale or with what object, it has not yet been made clear. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8062, 3 *a*.

But how another eleven millions sterling is to be raised by taxation, it will puzzle the acutest of French financiers to discover. *ib.*, No. 4937, 2 *b*.

ii. What it concerns us to know about this early passion is given in a letter from a brother of Miss Grove. SYMONDS, *Shelley*, Ch. II, 18.

iii. There yet existed certain latent prejudices of theirs, as middle-class people, which would require some tact to overcome. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXVI, 214.

14. Such a sentence as *To write this letter took him a long time* or *It took him a long time to write this letter* admits of two variations, i. e. the object of both the finite verb and the infinitive can be made the subject of *to take*.

Whereas the constructions referred to in these variations are quite common, that represented by the first of the two above examples is distinctly unusual, that with anticipating *it* being most probably common enough, although next to no examples had come to hand at the moment of writing.

i. \* To pen one took the writer an entire morning. L. B. WALFORD, *Stay-at-homes*, Ch. I.

\*\* It will take me a year at the very least to finish my self-imposed task.

It had taken him an hour to see this joke. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 564 a.

II. As he was a short, fat man, he took some time to mount into the saddle. *WASH. IRV.*, Dolf Heyl. (*STOF.*, Handl. I, 110).

I never saw anybody take so long to dress, and with such little result. *Osc. WILDE*, *The Importance of being Earnest*, II, 98

iii. The young stranger comprehending in one glance the result of the observation which has taken us some time to express. *SCOTT*, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 42.

The letter took him long to write. *HALL CAINE*, *The Christian*, I, 95.

Such works would take at least ten years to complete. *Times*.

The play took three nights to act. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 15, 299 b.

Note. The constructions admit of various further modifications:

a) The person-object is sometimes replaced by an adverbial adjunct with *for*.

It took no long time for Harold Transome to discover this state of things. *G. ELIOT*, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. VIII, 159.

β) Instead of the infinitive-clause we sometimes find an adverbial clause introduced by *before*.

It did not take the New Year long before it was able to provide London with a first-class sensation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5507, 4 b.

γ) A gerund sometimes takes the place of the infinitive.

The buying of this brooch took a long time. *GALSWORTHY*, *Tatterdemalion*, I, 1, 17.

δ) The suppression of some preposition (*in*) may change the gerund into what is functionally a present participle (Ch. LVI, 50). Compare the first of the following quotations with the others here given.

i. During the agitated minutes that this conviction took in forming, he worked hard. *GALSWORTHY*, *The Country House*, III, Ch. VII, 266.

ii. All in a moment some confounding remembrance of the Havisham days would fall upon me, like a destructive missile, and scatter my wits again. Scattered wits take a long a time picking up. *DICK.*, *Great Expect.*, Ch. XVII, 160.

Arthur took a long time thawing too. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch II, 218.

ε) Instead of *in* + gerund we also find *in* + noun of action.

(He) took about a fortnight in cross-examination. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 287 c.

15. a) It is also the possibility of transposing certain elements of a complex sentence which lies at the bottom of the variability

of the predicate in sentences containing the verbs *to happen* (or *to chance*), or *to appear* (and *to seem*). Thus *It happened* (or *chanced*) *that they met that very day* may be turned into *They happened* (or *chanced*) *to meet that very day*. Similarly *It appeared* (*seemed*) *that they knew each other* may be converted into *They appeared* (*seemed*) *to know each other*. As has already been observed in Ch. XLV, 26, these verbs assume the status of adjuncts to the following verb in the condensed construction.

b) 1) In many cases there is no appreciable difference between the condensed and the expanded constructions with these verbs. Only the latter, naturally, express the adverbial motion indicated by them more explicitly than the former. See the quotations below under f).

2) Only the expanded construction is, -however, available when the time-sphere of the action or state concerned is subsequent to that of the accessory circumstance denoted by the adverbial verb (Ch. XLV, 26).

It so happens that the book will not be printed for another year.

The deportees may sue, if they like, for writs of Habeas Corpus in Dublin or London. If they try it in Dublin, it seems they will not get them. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 302 *d*.

Note. In passing it may be observed that, in the case of such a difference of time-sphere, *to look like* + gerund offers itself as a welcome alternative for the construction with *to seem*.

The hubbub about the Russo-German Treaty looks like dying down. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 16, 318 *a*.

The Streseman Government . . looks like maintaining some sort of precarious existence. *ib*, IX, 14, 265 *a*.

When the difference of the time-spheres is one of the opposite nature, both the expanded and the condensed constructions are available.

i. It does seem sometimes that Dorothy and William lived the poems together. *Manch. Guard.*, 305, 1924, 434 *b*.

ii. I seem to have been reading all my life. *BEATR. HAR.*, *Ships*, I, Ch. V, 18.

No book ever appears to have moved him. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 556 *c*.

3) So far as *to seem* is concerned, the choice between the two constructions sometimes appears to depend upon whether our attention is directed to the person or thing concerned or to circumstances lying outside that person or thing. Thus *It seemed that she had little cause for anxiety* (*MAC.*, *Fred.*, (665 *b*)) distinctly draws our attention to circumstances outside the person concerned as the potential cause for anxiety; while *She seemed to have little cause for anxiety* would make us think of circumstances in that person's fortunes as a possible cause for anxiety. This view receives some support from the fact that in such sentences as the following in which the speaker distinctly refers

to her own experiences, the expanded construction would be out of place, unless indeed *to* + pronoun were added to the verb *to seem* (c).

Mrs. Norris was often observing to the others that she could not get her poor sister and her family out of her head, and that, much as they had all done for her, she seemed to be wanting to do more. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. I, 4.

She curled herself up and tried to read. Dreary poems .. She seemed to have read them a dozen times before. GALSW., *The White Monkey*, II, Ch. X, 191.

4) It should also be observed that the general structure of the sentence may be one that renders only one of the constructions practicable. Thus no substitution of the alternative construction seems to be possible for that used in:

i. It seemed natural, somehow, that he should be self-willed and should have his own way. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 254.

ii. I don't think he seemed to be particularly pleased with me. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 285.

5) For the rest some prolonged reading will bring out the fact that, owing to the predilection for personal constructions (5), the condensed construction is far more frequent than the expanded.

c) *To seem* is frequently, and *to appear* occasionally, furnished with a prepositional adjunct with *to*, to impart to the statement a personal character.

i. It seems to me, sir, .. that you always arrive to put me in good humour. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIII, 132.

She got some relief at length, when, at the end of half-an-hour — a long half-hour it had seemed to her — a waiter brought her a little note in pencil from Pen. ib., I, Ch. XXVII, 285.

It seemed to the boy that she cast longing eyes at his cake. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

ii. (His) books did not appear to him to be masterpieces of human intellect. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

d) The phrases *(as) it appears* or *(as) it seems* are sometimes placed in the body of a statement, which emphasizes their status of adverbial adjuncts. In fact they could in this position be replaced by respectively *apparently* or *seemingly* (Ch. XLV, 26; Ch. LIX, 104).

Note. Mention may in this connexion be made of the antiquated expression *meseems*, for which Present English has *it seems to me*.

i. King Edward VII, it appears, was not a great reader. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 556c.

The Free State Government, it seems, keeps pretty open doors to its Bastille. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 302 a.

The poems .. were written, it seems, by an American poetess. *Westm. Gaz.*, 21/3, 1925, 628 a.

ii. This gentleman knew intimately, as it appeared, all the leading men of letters of his day. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

e) As to *to seem* it may further be observed,

1) that the notion of diffidence implied by the verb is often  
H. POUTSMA, III 1.

rendered more emphatic by connecting it with an adverbial clause opening with *as if* or *as though* (in Older English also *as* (Ch. XVI, 109—111), which may be found after both the expanded and the condensed construction.

i. \*But it seemed as if I was destined to offend all the men that day. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 31.

It seemed to me as if a spirit had opened to me a new world. LYTTON, Caxt., IV, Ch. II, 87.

\*\* Should I take riches from you, it would seem : As I did want a soul to bear that poverty. DRYDEN, Marriage à la Mode, III, 1, (284).

ii. He seemed as if he were going to say something to Mrs. Pendennis. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIII, 134.

They seemed as if they had never missed Sylvia. Mrs. GASK., Sylv. Lov., Ch. VI, 75.

Dick and Torpenhow had roared with laughter, in which the man seemed as if he would join. RUDY. KIPL., The Light that failed, Ch. VIII, 105.

Here's ten o'clock, and you seem as if you'd never stop eating. GISSING, A Life's Morning, Ch. VII, 106. (Compare: I feel as if I should be obliged to get up and run away. *ib.*, Ch. VII, 110.)

Note. Another construction of practically the same import, which is, however, but rarely met with, is that shown by:

Emma gave a start, which did not seem like being prepared. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LIV, 443.

2) that the condensed construction admits of no expansion when the verb assumes the meaning of *to think*, which, be it remembered, cannot, in this application, be construed with an infinitive (Ch. XVIII, 8—9).

I seem to know these fields again. SWEET, Elementarbuch, A Country Walk. 29. (= I think that I know these fields again.)

f) For the rest, the subject having already been viewed from a slightly different angle, and commented on in considerable detail in Ch. II, 31—34, it seems unnecessary to give much illustration in this place.

i. \* In the course of that very day, it chanced that the Major had stationed himself in the great window of Bays's Club in St. James's Street. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXVI, 385.

\*\* He chanced to remark the agitation under which she laboured. *id.*, Van Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 80.

ii. \* It happens that the fire is hot. DICK, Bleak House, Ch. II, 9

\*\* The cards of invitation happened to come from some very exalted personages. *id.*, Pend., II, Ch. V, 45.

iii. \* It appeared that Mr. Pen's bills in all amounted to 700 l. THACK. Pend., I, Ch. XX, 209.

\*\* He appears to be honest. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 393.

iv. \* It seems that he had not been in any way remarkable for religious zeal. Mrs. GASK., Ch. Brontë, Ch. II, 18.

It seems, too, that the large area of water as compared with that of the land maintains a more uniform temperature. Times, 30 4, 1925, 489 c.

\*\* He seemed to be very fond of my mother. DICK, Cop., Ch. IV, 23 b.

I never seem to get into touch with pretty young actresses. Westminster Gaz., 7 3, 1925, 552 a.



g) It is worth observing that in the condensed construction the notion of completed action is expressed by *to happen* (or *to chance*), whereas this is mostly done by the following infinitive in sentences containing the verbs *to appear* or *to seem*.

i. Lady Dalrymple and Miss Catarat, escorted by Mr. Elliot and Colonel Wallis, who had happened to arrive nearly at the same time, advanced into the room. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. X, 189.

Nobody had happened to say what time he was arriving. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. II, 34.

ii. \* As to his (Shakespeare's) religion, he was bred and remained a conforming Protestant, but orthodox religion, whether as ritual or as dogma, seemed to have meant nothing to him. *Manch. Guard*.

The criticism .. appeared to have been made without a full appreciation of the difficulties existing. *ib.*, 30/5, 1924, 439 c.

\*\* Time would have seemed to creep to the watchers by the bed, if it had only been measured by the doubtful distant hope which kept count of the moments within the chamber. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VII, 222.

h) Conversely the negative *not* goes with both *to happen* and *to seem* or *to appear*, even when the negative clearly belongs to the following infinitive.

i. You didn't happen to see Irene, I suppose. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. XII, (657).

Things are shouted from the housetops when we don't happen to be paying attention. *Manch. Guard*, 30/5, 1924, 434 a.

ii. My unfortunate friend, the waiter, did not appear to be disturbed by this. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 a.

He did not appear to watch Pen's behaviour. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. XV, 145.

16. Another variability of the predicate, due to the same possibility of condensing a complex sentence into a simple one, is revealed by a comparison of such sentences as *It is certain (likely or unlikely) that he will give in* with *He is certain (sure, likely or unlikely) to give in*. The condensed construction is only available when the reference is to an action or state still future at the time of speaking or at some point of time in the past.

It should be observed that there is an appreciable difference between two such sentences as *It is certain that he will give in* and *He is certain (or sure) to give in*, the former indicating absolute certainty, the latter a qualified certainty, on the part of the speaker, as to the coming about of a certain event. The latter, indeed, may be said to represent this event as no more than an exceedingly high degree of probability. The O. E. D. (s. v. *sure*, 12) is, therefore, scarcely right in stating that *He is sure to return* is now equivalent to *It is certain that he will return*. The difference is analogous to that between the Dutch *Hij keert vast terug* (or *zal vast terugkeeren*) and *Het is zeker dat hij terugkeert* (or *zal terugkeeren*). Compare also the O. E. D., s. v. *certain*, 6; and s. v. *likely*, 2, c. It is only natural that the condensed construction does not occur

in questions. For further comment about the above expressions we may refer to Ch. II, 35—36; and Ch. L, 76. Here we may confine ourselves to a few illustrative examples. The expanded construction with *sure* is, apparently, non-existent.

i. \* It is certain that at this time he continued poor. *Mac., War. Hist., (599 b).*

\*\* Their cause is certain to triumph in the end. *Times.*

ii. If they have any Wit or Sense, they are sure to show it. *ADDISON, Guard., No. 101.*

The internees probably reflect that .. they are pretty sure to be released as soon as quiet times shall come to Ireland. *Manch. Guard., VIII, 16, 302 d.*

iii. \* Is it likely that he will spend almost the whole of his yearly vacation in writing a story just to amuse people? *HUGHES, Tom Brown, Pref., 13.*

\*\* He was not likely to feel much concern about leaving his brother in suspense. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. VIII, 51.*

Note. Observe that *certain + to + infinitive* is sometimes replaced by *certain + of + noun of action*.

It is clear, too, from De Wet's story that an attempt to rescue the guns ... was by no means so certain of failure as Sir Colville maintains. *Times.*

Reports from the field show that the expedition is certain of success, provided sufficient funds be forthcoming. *ib., 7/5, 1925, 526 a.*

17. a) Lastly a variability of the predicate, due to the same process, may be observed in certain sentences containing a nominal predicate with a word(-group) denoting a length of time. Thus *It was some time before (or ere) the patient came to* may be condensed into *The patient was some time in coming to*.

The two constructions convey practically the same meaning, the choice being a matter of style or convenience. Compare the two following groups of quotations:

i It was not long before people ceased to take long walks for the sake of asking his aid. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. II, 14.*

It was not long before she gained upon Paul's heels, and caught and passed him. *DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 111*

ii. You would not have been so long in coming if you had had a pleasant idea of Highbury. *JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XXX, 244.*

He was not long in imagining the truth. *G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. XIII, 428.*

He was long in rallying his strength. *Mrs. GASK., Mr. Harrison's Confessions, Ch. XIV, 431.*

b) From the circumstances described it follows that in both constructions the main verb has a momentaneous aspect or assumes an ingressive aspect.

c) The gerund often loses the preposition, the loss converting the verbal in *ing* into what is functionally a present participle (Ch. LVI, 50). It is interesting to observe that the omission of the preposition entails a modification of the meaning; i.e. it represents the action or state as taking a length of time instead of pointing to a lapse of time preceding its fulfilment. In other words it imparts to the verb in question a durative aspect, or re-establishes its durativeness. Thus *He was a long time in*

*answering this letter* = *A long time elapsed before he answered this letter*; while *He was a long time answering this letter* = *He was a long time over (or about) answering this letter*. Here follow a few quotations in which an originally momentaneous verb has assumed a durative aspect.

He (sc. Charles II) apologized to those who had stood round him all night for the trouble which he had caused. He had been, he said, a most unconscionable time dying. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 12. (In the following quotation the construction with *in* + gerund seems to be at variance with ordinary practice: The Shah seems to be an unconscionably long time in dying. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 205, 4 b.)

Richard's a long time saying it. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 16.

We were a long time delivering a bedstead at a public-house and calling at other houses. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. III, 14 b. (The last verb assumes a (momentaneously) iterative character.)

He was a long time reaching Stanhope Gate. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. VII, 99.

Compare with these the following sentences, in which the original durative aspect of the verb has been preserved:

Twenty years have I been getting those things together. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 121 a.

How long shall you be going there with this letter? *id.*, *Hereward*, Ch. I, 12 a.

As a variant of the construction with *in* + gerund we find *at* + noun of action, as in:

Harriet, tempted by everything, and swayed by half a word, was always very long at a purchase. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXVII, 219.

d) An intermediate stage between the gerund- and the participle-construction is formed by that with proclitic *a*, which, as is well-known, is still in great favour with illiterate people (Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VI–IX).

That wished-for day seemed long a-coming. MRS. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. VI, 77. (Compare: How long the dawn seems coming, when we cannot sleep! JEROME, *Idle Thoughts, On being idle*, 78.)

e) The condensed construction often undergoes some further modification through suppression of the main verb with its adjuncts, in which case the way in which the sentence may be supplemented is uncertain, i. e. it may be done either by *in* + gerund or by a present participle, with or without adjuncts.

What an awful time you've been! O. E. D., s. v. *awful*, 4.

Well, there's evidently one woman in the world who can get out of a draper's in under an hour. You haven't been a minute. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. VI, I, 125.

f) In conclusion it should be observed that in the expanded construction with *before* (or *ere*) the impersonal *it* is not seldom replaced by the personal subject of the clause, which is then repeated in the latter, or represented by a personal pronoun, as the case may be.

- i. I took a world of pains with it (sc. the umbrella), and was a great while before I could make anything likely to hold. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*.
- ii. Mordaunt was not long before he reached the village. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. VIII, 95.
- Maggie, too, was not long before she re-entered. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 410.
- The Austrians and Russians will be a long time before they can bring their troops down. THACKERAY, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 242.

**Variable Applicability of Predicates arising from hesitancy as to which of the participants in the predication is to be regarded as the primary, which as the secondary.**

18. In numerous cases the variability of the predicate is not to be ascribed to the predilection for the personal construction, at the expense of the non-personal, which underlies the changes described in the preceding sections, but rather to the fact that the two parties concerned in the predication may with equal justice be thought of as its primary or secondary participant, or have, at any rate, been considered to have an equal claim to these functions.
19. We may distinguish:
  - a) a possible interchange of subject and non-prepositional adjunct, as in *The son has a father, The father has a son*.
  - b) a possible interchange of subject and the (pro)noun in a prepositional adjunct, as in *He succeeded in the undertaking, The undertaking succeeded (with him)*. The variations, naturally, have different prepositions in the prepositional adjuncts. In one of them the prepositional adjunct is mostly understood.
20. An interchange of subject and non-prepositional object may be observed in predicates formed by:
 

*to become*; e.g.: *This dress becomes her, She becomes this dress*. The second construction is distinctly unusual, unless the thing-participant is a dignity, office, station, etc.

  - i. What business have you, miss, with preference and aversion? They don't become a young woman. SHERIDAN, *Riv.*, I, 2, (220).
  - ii. \* Indeed, David — do you think I become it so? SHERIDAN, *Riv.*, III, 4, (251). He managed to spend as much on his wife's lace, as would have bought many a set of inferior jewellery. Lettice well became it all. MRS. GASKELL, *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. II, (411).

\*\* Beatrice was in many respects brilliant; there was no station that she would not become. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XX, 279.

*to catch*; e.g.: *Something catches my eye (or ear, etc.), My eye (ear, etc.) catches something*.

  - i. I should have walked on to the church, if the conversation of two men and a woman on the outskirts of the crowd had not caught my ear. WILKIE COLLINS, *The Woman in White*, III, 532.

Something caught Black's eye. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. IX.

Chamberlain's monocle catches the Speaker's eye. *Punch*, *Almanac* of 1819.

What caught my eye was a couple of violin-cases in the corner. *Manch. Guard.*, 3 10, 1924, 293 c.

ii. His ear caught some sounds from below. *SCOTT*, *Mon.*, Ch. XXV, 275.

As his eye caught the clock, he quickened his pace. *DICK.*, *Hard Times*, Ch. XII, 35 b.

His eye caught the wine-glass. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XVIII, 195.

Note. When one of the participants is a person, the other a thing, not either of the organs of sight or hearing, only the (pro)noun denoting the former can be made the subject.

Among the list of singers at a concert to be given that day she caught the name of Miss Beatrice Redwing. *GISSING*, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XXVI, 344.

*to fail*; e.g.: *Words fail me, I fail words* (now rare, *fail* in this connexion being replaced by *want*. See *O. E. D.*, s.v. *fail*, 7).

i. The language .. fails him in his endeavour to find words to express the greatness of the gift. *KEBLE*, *Serm.*, VIII, Postscript, 373. <sup>1)</sup>

We cannot undertake this task .. if public opinion fails us. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5484, 1 e.

ii. I fail words to express my utter contempt. *JEFFERIES*, *Stor. Heart*, VII, 115. <sup>1)</sup>

*to meet*; e.g.: *We meet such things, Such things meet us.*

i. Affection and candour is common enough — one meets it everywhere. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. IV, 18.

ii. Such types meet us here and there among average conditions. *G. ELIOT*, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVII, 278.

Both were awed by the face which met them. *GISSING*, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XVI, 233.

Note. When the primary participant is a person, *to meet with* mostly takes the place of *to meet*.

He has met with such treatment from his architect in the matter of this house, .. that .. as a matter of principle .. he has felt himself compelled to bring this action. *GALSW.*, *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch V, 329.

## 21. An interchange of subject and the (pro)noun in a prepositional adjunct may be observed, among other predicates, in:

*to fail*; e.g.: *He failed in his undertaking, The undertaking failed (with him).*

i. Some occupations .. can be taken up by men who fail in other work. *JEVONS*, *Prim. Pol. Econ.*, 60. <sup>1)</sup>

Lincoln .. afterwards set up as a small shopkeeper. He failed in this undertaking, but was appointed village postmaster. *Children's Encyclopaedia*. <sup>1)</sup>

ii. His action .. would fail and he would have to pay the costs. *Sir N. LINDLEY* in *Law Rep.*, 25 Ch., Div. 355. <sup>1)</sup>

*to gnash*; e.g.: *He gnashed (with) his teeth, His teeth gnashed:*

i. \* Two boars .. | Gnash their sharp tusks, and .. | Dispute the reign of some luxurious mire. *GAY*, *Poems*, I, 178. <sup>1)</sup>

\*\* He gnasheth with his teeth. *Bible*, *Mark IX*, 18.

She gnashed with her teeth. *GODWIN*, *Cal. Wil.*, III, Ch. IV, 319.

ii. Her teeth gnashed with rage. *FIELD.*, *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. IV, 20 a.

*to profit*; e.g.: *I profit by (also from, and occasionally of) this. This profits me.*

<sup>1)</sup> *O. E. D.*

i. He profited instantaneously by his daughter's absence to drink up the rest of the wine. THACK., *Pend.* I, Ch. XI, 116.

The only interests likely to profit from the recent crisis are those which can be summed up in the name Stlnnes. *Manch. Guard*, VI, 6, 103 b.

Now, captain let us profit of the few moments before his majesty arrives. *Political Comedy of Europe*, 71.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. (His) squeamish principles .. had profited nothing those on whose behalf they had been erected. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. III, VIII, 175.

*to run*; e.g.: *The water runs from the tap, The tap runs (with the water).*

i. The wine which ran from the cask coloured the whole cellar a dark red.

ii. The vessel is running with oil. His nose runs. His eyes run. He runs at the nose. He runs with sweat. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

The roadway runs with rain. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8557, 10 b.

*to run short*; e.g.: *Our tea ran short (with us), We ran short of tea.*

i. Turnips sometimes run short. *Jrl. R. Agric. Soc.*, XI, I, 143.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. The enemy are likely to run short of ammunition. *Daily Chron.*

*to sprinkle*; e.g.: *The sun sprinkles light on the bushes, The light sprinkles the bushes.*

i. The evening sun sprinkled lovely patches of golden light upon the bushes in front of the Castle.

ii. He took his journey through St. John's Wood, in the golden light that sprinkled the rounded green bushes of the acacias before the little houses. *GALSW., Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. VII, 93.

*to swarm*; e.g.: *Spies swarmed in the country, The country swarmed with spies.*

i. Roman Catholics already swarmed in every department of the public service. *MAC., Hist.* VII, 239.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. The country swarms with game — with wolves, and bears, deer and boars. *WEYMAN, Red Robe*, Ch. II.

*to succeed*; e.g.: *He succeeded in his undertaking, The undertaking succeeded (with him).*

i. If he had studiously endeavoured to be unjust he could not have succeeded more completely. *Manch. Exam.*, 1884, 16 May, 47.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. There was no reason why an attempt which had succeeded once might not succeed again. *FROUDE, Hist. Eng.* I, V, 464.<sup>2)</sup>

*to tingle*; e.g.: *The blood tingles in my face, My face tingles (with the blood).*

i. All the blood in my face began to tingle. *THACK., Sam. Titm.* Ch. III, 37.

ii. Miss Burney, do not your cheeks tingle? *Mme D'ARBLAY, Diary.*<sup>2)</sup>

## 22. A similar variability may affect some nominal predicates.

*to be in charge of*; e.g.: *The child is (left) in charge of the nurse, The nurse is (left) in charge of the child.* (The latter is the more recent use. *O. E. D.*)

i. The Dutch Archives .. are in the charge of gentlemen whose courtesy .. cannot be too highly praised. *MAC., Hist.* I, 440. Note.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. No one seemed to know what it is to be 'in charge', or who was 'in charge'. *FLOR. NIGHTINGALE, Nursing*, IV, 23.<sup>2)</sup>

*to be congested*; e.g.: *The streets are congested (with the traffic), The traffic is congested (in the street).*

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, XI.

<sup>2)</sup> *O. E. D.*

- i. The roads were almost as congested as the line. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3678, 535 a.
- ii. Whenever the traffic is congested. *Times*.  
*to be due*; e. g.: *The return of the man is due, The man is due to return.*
- i. The second big game which is due to be played at Lord's on the 15th inst. *Times*.
- ii. The station clock marked only seven minutes from the time when we were due to start. *CON. DOYLE, Mem. Sherl. Holm.*, II, E, 233.  
 He has for some time been due to return to his country to take up a post on the Indian Council. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8080, 3 a.  
*to be indifferent*; e. g.: *This is indifferent to me, I am indifferent to this.* See the comment on *indifferent*, 10, in the O. E. D.
- i. I am arm'd, | And dangers are to me indifferent. *SHAK., Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3, 115.  
 The sentiments of others are indifferent to him. *J. MARTINEAU, Types Eth.*, Th. II, 71. 1)
- ii. What had befallen the kind-hearted Shirley that she should be so indifferent to the dreary position of a fellow-creature thus isolated under her roof? *CH. BRONTË, Shirley*, II, Ch. IX, 165.  
 I feel indifferent whether I am comprehended or not. *ib.*, II, Ch. X, 187.  
 He was indifferent to all outward things. *Mrs. GASK., Ruth*, Ch. XIV, 107.

### Variable Applicability of Predicates consisting in an interchange of two Secondary Participants in the Predication.

23. Many predicates with the same subject admit of being connected with interchangeable non-prepositional objects or prepositional adjuncts, the prepositions undergoing change in the different constructions.

*to beat*; e. g.: *to beat one's breast (with one's hands), to beat one's hands upon one's breast.*

i. The Wedding-Guest he beat his breast, | Yet he cannot choose but hear. *COL., Anc. Mar.*, I, xi.

ii. The people . were beating their hands upon their breasts and stamping their feet upon the pavement to warm them. *DICK., Christm. Car.*, I, 4.

*to charge*; e. g.: *to charge a person with an offence (or error, etc.), to charge an offence (or error, etc.) on a person.* The first construction is the usual one.

i. Two labourers . were charged with creating a disturbance. *HT MARTINEAU, Three Ages*, III, 96. 1)

ii. The blame should rather be charged on Philip's ministers than on Philip. *PRESCOTT, Philip*, II, I, 13. 1)

Note. In a slightly different meaning *to charge* is also construed with a) *for* + name of person; e. g.:

He did not want the penetration to see that his companion had really committed the offence for which he was charged. *LYTTON, Paul Clif.*, Ch. VI, 61.  
 (Compare: I suppose, as you say, the man must be charged. *GALSWORTHY, The Silver Box*, II, 2.)

β) *against* + name of error; e. g.:

He charged against the Government several things. *Daily Chron.*

1) O. E. D.

An unsuccessful foreign policy has never been charged against Mr. Balfour, Lord Lansdowne, and their colleagues. *Times*.

*to clear*; e.g.: *to clear a room of something, to clear something out of a room.*

i. The inside of the stockade had been cleared of timber. STEVENSON, *Treas.* 1st., IV, Ch. XIX, 103.

ii. He had at once cleared his goods and chattels out of Pompadour Hall. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*<sup>2</sup>, Ch. IV, 36.

*to entrust (intrust)*; e.g.: *to entrust a person with a thing, to entrust a thing to a person.*

i. They were intrusted by law with the right of naming and removing their Governor General. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (635*a*).

To what extent their (sc. the universities') influences dominate the men who in turn are entrusted with the administration of the country, may be judged by the following estimate. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XVI, 298.

ii. I should not like to entrust my safety to such a boat as that. O. E. D.

Note. By the side of *to entrust a thing to a person* we also find, archaically, *to entrust a thing with a person* (O. E. D., s.v. *entrust*, 2.)

I think the execution of the laws .. may be a thousand times better intrusted with them (sc. the soldiers) than with peddling lawyers and thick-skulled country-gentlemen. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XI, 122.

*to fix*; e.g.: *to fix one's eyes on a person or thing, to fix a person or thing (with one's eyes),*

i. Fixing upon him her anxious and beseeching eyes, (she) gradually drew near and nearer to his seat. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXV, 270.

He fixed his eye on the curtain GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. II, 34.

ii. My latest dream | Is something of a lovely star | Which fix'd my dull eyes from afar. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, XVIII.

He came to a dead stop .. and selecting a straw to chew, fixed us with his eye. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. V, 56.

And Swithin, fixing him with a dreadful stare, answered [etc.]. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. IX, 128.

*to hang*; e.g.: *to hang pictures on the wall, to hang the wall with pictures.* Compare the comment on *hang*, 9, *d* in the O. E. D.

i. He hung his mother's picture on the wall facing his usual seat.

ii. And down a streetway hung with folds of pure | White samite .. (Lancelot) | Moved to the lists. TEN., *Last Tourn.*, 141.

The drawing-room .. was hung with engravings. MRS. WARD, *Cousin Philip*, Ch. I, 6.

The walls are hung with photographs of ships. SUTRO, *The Choice*, I.

*to heap*; e.g.: *to heap things on the floor, to heap the floor with things.*

i. A large fagot and a plentiful supply of coals being heaped upon the fire, the appearance of things was not long in mending. DICK., *Nick*, Ch. VI, 28*b*.

ii. The good squire heaped his plate with a profusion of boiled beef. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XIII, 149.

My desk is heaped highest with letters that must be answered by the next post. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 75.

Note. Also in the adjectival participle *heaped* or *heaped up* the two applications are represented.

i. Heaped up piles of fruit and vegetables. BESANT & RICE, *Chapl. Fleet*, I XII.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.



ii. Miss Jenkins almost scolded him; if he did not leave a clean plate, however heaped it might have been. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 237.

Sitting there on a stool behind his heaped-up counter, .. the old gentleman was no longer a simple painter of landscape. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. VI, 252.

*to inspire*; e.g.: *to inspire a person with a feeling, to inspire a feeling in a person.*

i. She was not inspired with an ardent idealism. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XX, 289.

ii. He inspired confidence and affection in all. *Times*.

Land inspires in its possessor an emotion which no other form of property can stir. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 546 b.

*to pile*; e.g.: *to pile (up) things (on the floor), to pile the floor with things.*

i. The first half-hour was spent in piling up the fire. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XI, 57.

ii. How they pile the poor little craft with luxuries that only cloy. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. III, 29.

*to plant*; e.g.: *to plant trees (in a garden), to plant a garden with trees.*

i. Each of us planted two trees, a fir and an oak. Q. VICTORIA, *Life Highl.*, 19.1)

ii. He enclosed a piece of the common and planted it with firs. O. E. D., s.v. *plant*, 6, a.

*to reave*; e.g.: *to reave a person of a thing, to reave a thing from a person.*

i. Reft of a crown he yet may share the feast. GRAY, *The Bard*, 79.

ii. You left me, or were reft from me. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 495.

*to restore*; e.g.: *to restore a thing to a person (or to restore a person a thing), to restore a person to a thing.*

i. The failure of Gloucester restored to him the aid of Burgundy. GREEN. He took an immediate resolution to go himself and endeavour to restore his Pamela her brother. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, IV, Ch. V, 200.

ii. These persons were eager to be restored to their posts. MAC., *Clive*, (515 a).

*to rob*; e.g.: *to rob a thing from a man, to rob a man of something*, the latter the usual application.

i. He, too, robbed the throne from the king, his father. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. II, 168.

ii. The troubles of life had almost robbed the elder lady of her beauty. TROL., *Chron. Bars.*, LXIII.1)

*to serve*; e.g.: *to serve a man (with a meal), to serve a meal (to a man)*, both chiefly used in the passive voice.

i. She thought a chili was something cool, as its name imported, and was served with some. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. III, 24.

The dogs .. liked to be served with delicacies. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. VII, 184.

The people in the main room were served. SHACKLETON, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, Ch. IV, 27.

ii. His meals were served at the same minute every day. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 22.

Arthur bade him to serve that refreshment. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 167.

Its sparkle (sc. of the salt) is in keeping with the good humour of the well-served table. *Manch Guard.*, VIII, 17.

1) O. E. D.

Note *a*) *To serve* is also construed with two non-prepositional objects (Ch. III, 33).

(This) was as necessary to the Curate as the frugal dinner which Madame Fribsby served him. THACK., *Pend. I*, Ch. XVI, 159.

*β*) Thus also *to serve out a person with a thing*, and *to serve out a thing to a person*, also chiefly used passively.

i. They were going to have a hot bath, and be served out with clean shirts and socks. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, XVIII, 38.

ii. Water-bottles were filled, extra ammunition was served out in silence. *ib.*, 41.  
*to show*; e.g.: *to show a seat to a person* (or *to show a person a seat*), *to show a person to a seat*.

i. The butler showed me a seat at the further end of the room.

ii. I found a man, an Englishman in trouble with the obliging lady who was showing you to your seat. WELLS, *Speech, Manch. Guard.*, 4/1, 1924, 5 d.  
Compare also: Allow me to show you over the house. MRS. GASK., *The Squire's Story*, (223)

*to strew*; e.g.: *to strew flowers on a grave*, *to strew a grave with flowers*.

i. Not a flower, not a flower sweet, | On my black coffin let there be strown. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, II, 4, 61.

ii. I thought thy bride-bed to have deck'd, sweet maid, | And not have strew'd thy grave. *id.*, *Hamlet*, V, 1, 267.

*to strike*; e.g.: *to strike a thing with one's hand*, *to strike one's hand against a thing*.

i. He struck the poor beggar with his walking-stick.

ii. The Baron, striking his hand against the table as if impatient of the long unbroken silence, cried out aloud [etc.] SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXV, 272.

The horse struck his hoofs against the top-bar, fell forward, and threw his rider head foremost on the road beyond. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 39.

*to strip*; e.g.: *to strip the clothes from a man*, *to strip a man of his clothes*.

i. He stript from the three dead wolves of woman born | The three gay suits of armour which they wore. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 94.

ii. He had already stripped himself of his wrappings. TROL., *Belton Est.*, XVI.<sup>1)</sup>

*to trust*; e.g.: *to trust a person with a thing*, *to trust a thing to a person*.

i. I dare not trust him with the truth. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1, (235).

Trust me with the papers. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, II, Ch. XI, 249.

The riding-master said she had so good a seat and hand she might be trusted with any mount. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. III, 47.

ii. He's an honest fellow, and will be faithful to any roguery that is trusted to him. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. O.L.*, I, 1, (256).

There was not another man in England to whom she could have so confidently trusted the happiness of her beloved child. MISS BRADDON, *Captain Thomas* (STOF., *Eng. Leesb. voor Aanvangsklassen* II, 71).

Note. In the first application the prepositional adjunct is sometimes represented by an infinitive clause, in the second *in* (or some other preposition) may take the place of *to*.

i. I was to be trusted to look after my own affairs. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XXI, 296.

ii. My ventures are not in one bottom trusted. SHAK., *Merch.*, V, 1, 42.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

**Variable Applicability of Predicates consisting in their admitting of being furnished with heterogeneous subjects or objects, the nature of the other participants, if there are any, being undisturbed.**

**24. Variable application of the predicate of the first description may be found in:**

*to feel*; e. g.: *The bed feels hard, My head feels sore.*

i. The bed feels hard. MAS., Eng. Gram<sup>34</sup>, 183.

ii. You can't think how oddly my head feels. MISS BURNEY, *Evelina*, X, 19.

His throat felt bursting. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. V, II, 188.

*to hurt*; e. g.: *You hurt me, The sting hurts me.*

i. We're not hurting you, are we? WELLS, *Kipps*, III, § 3, 61.

ii. I'm sure it must hurt. *ib.*

Note. The construction instanced by such a sentence as *Are you hurting?* (*ib.*) (= Do you feel pain, Dutch: *Voel je pijn?*) appears to be very unusual.

*to be engaged*; e. g.: *My time is engaged, I am engaged.*

Mr. Elton's time is so engaged .. He really is engaged from morning to night. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LII, 429.

*to rent*; e. g. *The tenant rents land, The landlord rents land.*

i. I'll e'en marry Nell, and rent a bit of Ground of my own. ADDISON. *Drummer*, I, 1.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The ugly word "landlordism" has been coined to describe the condition under which land is owned by a man who does not actually use it himself, but rents it to the user. *Westm. Gaz.*, 28/2, 1925, 517 c.

**25. Variable application of the predication of the second kind is a variety of that described in 23, the difference consisting in the fact that, while in the latter two secondary participants are clearly thought of, two such participants are but dimly, or not at all, present to the speaker's mind in the case of the predicates here referred to. The following verbs have been found capable of this twofold application.**

*to assist*; e. g.: *to assist a person, or a process.*

i. I assisted him upstairs. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *help*.

ii. The sprites survey | The growing combat, or assist the fray. POPE, *Rape*, V, 56.

Rest assists digestion. O. E. D., s.v. *assist*, II, 6.

*to baffle*; e. g.: *to baffle a man, or an undertaking.*

i. Baffled by a problem which he has done his best to solve. FROUDE, *Short Stud.*, IV, 1, X, III. 1)

ii. Long before he reached manhood he knew how to keep secrets, how to baffle curiosity by dry and guarded answers. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VII, 2.

Some much baffled vitality in her began to revive. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. I, 8.

*to cut off*; e. g.: *to cut off a person's life, or a person.*

i. They have cut off my life in the dungeon, and cast a stone upon me. Waters flowed over mine head; then I said, I am cut off. *Bible*, Lam. of Jer., III, 53—54.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

ii. A man who forges on his neighbour pays the penalty of his crime at the gallows. And it is not such a one that I pity (for he will be deservedly cut off). THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 27.

*to expropriate*; e.g.: *to expropriate a person, or an estate.*

i. To expropriate the owners from their estates must be a very bitter pill. *Macm. Mag.*, XLIV, 132.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Rumania is expropriating the "immovable property" of persons in the territories handed over to Rumania by the treaty of Trianon. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 281 *d.*

The property of each would be expropriated for the use of all. *ib.*, VIII, 16, 303 *d.*

Note. The noun of action *expropriation* has an analogous twofold application.

i. A complete expropriation of the higher classes in Ireland. *MILL, Pol. Econ.*, II, X, § 1.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The wholesale expropriation of private property is to take place without the Allies affording any compensation to the individuals expropriated. *KEYNES, Econ. Conseq. of the Peace*, Ch. IV, 63.

*to forfeit*; e.g.: *to forfeit goods, or a person*, the latter application chiefly Scotch (O. E. D.).

i. My life and effects were all forfeited to the English government. *DEFOE, Col. Jack*, 242.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. His son .. was fain to content himself with the situation of a non-commissioned officer in the Life-Guards, although lineally descended from the royal family, the father of the forfeited Earl of Bothwell having been a natural son of James VI. *SCOTT, Old Mort.*, Ch. IV, 41.

Francis Stewart, son of the forfeited Earl, obtained from the favour of Charles I a decret-arbitral, appointing the two noblemen, grantees of his father's estate, to restore the same. *ib.*, Note B.

*to lay*; e.g.: *to lay the cloth, or the table.*

i. The little maid-servant .. laid the cloth. *BLACK, Shandon Bells*, XVIII.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The butler came to lay the table for dinner. *GALSW., Man. of Prop.*, I, Ch. VII, 100.

The round table was laid for twelve. *ib.*, I, Ch. III, 43.

*to levy*; e.g.: *to levy contributions, or persons.*

i. A subscription was annually levied on the whole school for the purchase of a handsome present. *CH. BRONTË, Villetta*, Ch. XIV, 157.

ii. The members have levied themselves and everybody else, and are going to collect enough to finance the campaign. *Manch. Guard.*, 41, 1924, 5 *a.*

*to pay*; e.g.: *to pay a bill, or a person.*

*refuse*, e.g.: *to refuse a thing, or a person.*

i. He offered me a cigar which I did not like to refuse.

ii. It was Mr. Fitz-boodle .. who offered me the cigar, and I did not like to refuse him. *THACK., Fitz-boodle's Conf.*, I, 207.

*to rummage*; e.g.: *to rummage (up) a trunk, or the luggage (in a trunk).*

i. I rummaged the house from top to bottom ..; but in vain. *G. R. SIMS, Ring o' Bells*, 136.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. She rummaged up every article of spare or worn-out clothing. *Mrs. GASK., Ruth*, Ch. XV, 112.

*to sell up*; e.g.: *to sell up goods, or a person.*

i. The house and furniture of Russell Square were seized and sold up. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 185.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

ii. He .. would .. drink his glass with a tenant and sell him up the next day. *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 89.

If you have put us in danger of being sold up .. you have done a shameful action. *DICK.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 292.

*to sell out*; e. g.: *to sell out an edition*, or *a person* the latter mostly used passively.

i. The first edition was sold out. Editor's Note to Shelley's *Alastor*.

I wrote .. sending her a power of attorney to him (sc. the agent), to sell out the stock. *MARRYAT*, *Pet. Simple*; III, XXIII, 300.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. I am sold out of geese. *CON. DOYLE*, *Sheri. Holm*, *Blue Car-buncle*.

The clerk admitted such a combination existed, but he was sold "out of it". *ARN. BENNETT*, *The Card*, Ch. IV, VI, 99.

*to shoot*; e. g.: *to shoot birds*, or *a covert*.

i. On one day Mr. James, the Colonel, and Horn, the keeper, went and shot pheasants. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. X, 105.

ii. We were going to shoot the spinneys, weren't we, Michael. *GALSW.*, *The White Monkey*, I, Ch. VI, 46.

Christmas at the ancestral manor of the Monts had been passed in covert-shooting. *ib.*, II, Ch. III, 132.

*to speed up*; e. g.: *to speed up a process*, or *a person*, in both applications chiefly passive.

i. Ship-construction is to be speeded up by all possible means. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7393, 1a.

ii. The elementary authorities are to be speeded up in all that concerns the physical well-being of the children. *ib.*, No. 6288, 2a.

*to spread*; e. g.: *to spread breakfast*, etc., or *the table*.

i. She hurriedly went back to the drawing-room where tea was still spread. *Mrs. WARD*, *Cousin Philip*, Ch. I, 13.

They led us to a table in the pleasantest corner of the hall, where our breakfast was spread for us. *MORRIS*, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. III, 15.

ii. Valerie spread her grand-uncle's little table, and placed his food before him. *Mrs. ALEX.*, *Valerie's Fate*, IV.<sup>1)</sup>

Note Thus also *to spread butter on bread*, or *to spread bread (with butter)*.

i. She was spreading margarine on auntie's bread for breakfast, and, beyond all control, she spread it thick, wastefully thick. *GALSW.*, *Tatterdemalion*, I, IV, 99.

ii. And then Tom .. ran off to the loaf to cut some bread and butter for them; and before he had spread a single slice, remembered something else. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XLVIII, 370b.

*to strike*; e. g.: *to strike a match*, or *a light*.

i. He struck a match. *CON. DOYLE*, *Sheri. Holm.*, II, 92.

II. She had struck a light. *ib.*, II, 63.

*to suspect*; e. g.: *to suspect an offence*, or *a person*.

i. He seems to want that his wife should suspect the new crime he has in hand. *HUDSON*, Note to *Macb.*, III, 3, 52.

ii. Then you, belike, suspect these noblemen | As guilty of Duke Humphrey's timeless death. *id.*, *Henry VI*, B, III, 2, 186.

*to teach*; e. g.: *to teach a branch of science*, or *a person*.

i. What subjects does he teach in the school? *O. E. D.*, s. v. *teach*, 5.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

ii. I am not a good manager, but Henry has taught me. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. III, 43.

A teacher can drill them (sc. classes of such a size), but cannot hope to teach them. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 19, 362 *d.*

*to try on*; e.g.: *to try on an article of dress*, or *a person*.

i. Miss Barton was trying on her dress. MAR. EDGEW., *Pop. T.*, *The Will*, II. 1)

ii. To cut a shameful story short, in a week Denry was being tried on. ARN. BENNETT, *The Card*, I, Ch. IV, 9.

---

1) O. E. D.

---

## CHAPTER LIV.

---

### ANALYSIS OF THE PREDICATE INTO A CONNECTIVE AND A SIGNIFICANT PART.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

The Connective Part a Copula, the Significant Part an Adjective or Adjectival Participle . . . . .	1— 7
The Connective Part a Copula, the Significant Part a Phrase consisting of a Noun of Action preceded and followed by a Preposition . . . . .	8
The Connective Part a Verb with a vague meaning, the Significant Part a Noun of Action . . . . .	9—14

---





### The Connective Part a Copula, the Significant Part an Adjective or Adjectival Participle.

1. In Chapter XLV, 15 it has been observed that English, as compared with the classical languages, is of a markedly analytical character. Several verbal constructions in which this feature of the language cannot fail to strike the attention of the observant student, have already found ample treatment in the preceding pages of this grammar and require no further discussion in this chapter. See the chapters on Voice, Mood and Tense, and that on the Expanded Form; see also the detailed treatment of *to do* as a verb of incomplete predication in Ch. I of this grammar. In the Expanded Form of the verb, and in the construction with *to do*, the predicate is clearly divided into a mainly connective and a significant element. This analytical tendency also manifests itself in other ways, as the following pages will show.
2. By coupling an adjective with *to be* (or some other copula) a kind of group-verb may be formed that is semantically equivalent, or nearly equivalent, to a simple verb. Thus *to be like* = to resemble (Ch. LX, 17), *to be tremulous* = to tremble (Ch. XLV, 15, b), *to be sufficient* = to suffice. Thus also *I am sorry to say*, *I am glad (or happy) to see you*, *I am afraid that I presume too much on your patience* differ little from, respectively, *I regret to say*, *I rejoice to see you*, *I fear that I presume too much on your patience*.

It is worth observing that these group-verbs and their approximate equivalents mostly express non-physical activities.

The following examples deserve some special attention. In some of the quotations illustrating them the adjective, as a constituent of an undeveloped adnominal clause (Ch. XXI), stands without a copula.

*to be descended* = to descend. According to the O. E. D. (s.v. *descend*, 8) the use of *to descend* in this meaning is now rare, *to be descended* now being mostly used instead. The O. E. D. is, however, beside the mark in considering *to be descended* a passive voice, the verb *to be* being a pure copula.

i. I fancy we have had enough of Jerusalem, ... considering we are not descended from the Jews. HARDY, *Jude*, II, Ch. V, 129.

ii. Although Theodatus descended from a race of heroes. GIBBON, *Decl. & Fall*, IV, XLI, 36.<sup>1)</sup>

---

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

*to be extant* or *existent* = to exist; e. g.: i. \* He drew portraits of her (sc. of Helen) — they are extant still. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 37.

\*\* And thou, dread statue! yet existent in | The austerest form of naked majesty. BYRON, *Childe Harold*, IV, LXXXVII.

ii. The man called father might still exist though there were no child. MILL, *Logic*, I, III, § 6.1)

*to be radiant* = to beam; e. g.: i. The fruiterers' (sc. shops) were radiant in their glory. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 60.

Her face was radiant with happiness. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. XVII, 147

ii. The little man's face beamed. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, I, Ch. XIX, 174.

*to become extinct* = to die out; e. g.: i. Can any of your readers tell me when his descendants in the male line became extinct? *Notes and Queries*.

ii. Barbarous nations when they are introduced by Europeans to vice die out. JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, III, 163.1)

*to get* (or *to be*) *tired* = to tire; e. g.: i. \* If my young gentleman gets tired of his plaything, what will you give him for it? LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. IV, 21.

\*\* I never was tired of listening to the honest young fellow's jokes and cheery laughter. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 173.

In a word, Laura began to be tired of her admired Blanche. *ib.*, Ch. XXIV, 254.

ii. They tire of each other in a month. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. VII, 134. One day she tired of it all. J. M. BARRIE, *Peter Pan*, Ch. I, 7.

3. It is not surprising that *to be* (or some other copula) + adjective sometimes answers to a simple verb in another language or in other languages; thus:

*to be* (or *to become*) *silent* = Dutch *zwijgen*, German *schweigen*, Latin *silēre* or *tacēre*; *to grow* (or *to become*) *overcast* = Dutch *betrekken*; e. g.: *The sky grew (or became) overcast* = Dutch *De lucht betrok*; *to be* (or *to become*) *liquid* = Latin *liquēre*; *to be* (or *to become*) *hot* (or *warm*) = Latin *calēre*; *to be* (or *to become*) *arid* = Latin *arēre*; *to be* (or *to become*) *an exile* = Latin *exsulāre*; *to be* (or *to become*) *hungry* = Latin *esurīre*; *to be wont* (accustomed or used) = Latin *solēre*.

Note. *To wont* as a variant of *to be wont* seems to be obsolete now. MILTON. has both *to wont* and *to be wont*. See also Ch LVIII, 18.

That glorious form, that light unsufferable, | And that far-beaming blaze of majesty, | Wherewith He wont at heaven's high council-table | To sit the midst of Trial Unity. On the Morn. of Christ's Nat., II.

There I am wont to sit, when any chance | Relieves me from my task of servile toil. *Sams. Agon*, 4.

*To use* in the sense of *to be used* is also unusual in Present English. See also Ch. I, 71, f.

Being held a foe, he may not have access | To breathe such vows as lovers use to swear. SHAK., *Rom. and Jul*, II, Prol. 10.

4. A marked feature of English is the frequent use of a group-verb consisting of *to be* (or some other copula) + adjective + preposition as the substitute or equivalent of a transitive or otherwise objective verb. Such an adjective is often an adaptation of a

1) O. E. D.

Latin or French participle, or a derivative with one of the Romance suffixes *able, al, ible, ic(al), ive, ory* or *ous*. Still more frequently it is a native formation with the suffixes *full* or *less*. In some cases a simple verb is available expressing approximately the same meaning; more frequently any such verb seems to be wanting. It deserves notice that these group-verbs, like those mentioned in the two preceding sections, mostly express non-physical activities.

In the following illustration some examples are included in which the adjective stands without a copula, i. e. as a constituent of an undeveloped clause (Ch. XXI).

5. The most frequent preposition in these combinations is *of*, which is almost regularly used when the adjective suggests a transitive verb. Adjectives which correspond to intransitive verbs mostly preserve the construction of the latter, but sometimes take, through analogy-influences, another preposition, not unfrequently *of*. For convenience of reference the adjectives are here arranged alphabetically, those with the privative prefixes *in* or *un* being put in the same place as their respective base. It is hardly necessary to say that the following illustration could be added to practically indefinitely. Compare also DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 21, *b*; KRÜGER, *Syntax*<sup>2</sup>, § 2346, where numerous examples are given.

*anticipative*: Sir William Brandon appeared very little anticipative of danger. LYTTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XXIV, 284.

*apprehensive*: Here I walked about for a long time, feeling very strange, and mortally apprehensive of some one coming in and kidnapping me. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 45.

Note. *Apprehensive*, as in the following quotation, takes *for* through the influence of *to fear for*:

Just now you were only apprehensive for your mistress' spirits. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1. (Compare: Do not fear for me; I have education and energy — I shall do well for myself. LYTTON, *My Nov.*, VI, Ch. III, 364.)

*attendant*, construed with *on*, although *to attend* in the corresponding meaning is transitive: The forbearing silence of her slaves had prevented her learning minutely the circumstances attendant on the fate of her lover. LYTTON, *Pomp*, IV, Ch. VIII, 111a.

There was a circumstance attendant on his birth which had, probably, exercised great and early influence on his ambition. *id.*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 39.

Compare: Among the many fatalities attending the bloom of young desire, that of blindly taking to the confectionery line has not, perhaps, been sufficiently considered. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I.

*boastful*: They were even boastful of its eminence in those particulars. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. I, 67.

*careful, -less*, construed with *of*, through the influence of *to take care of*: i. Luckily I have brought my notes with me and, if you will promise to be very careful of them, .. I will lend them to you. JEROME, *Lease of the 'Cross Keys'*, 212.

ii. Beaufort, a man naturally careless of forms, paid her a marked and punctilious respect. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 24.

*cognizant*, suggestive of *to know*: I am not cognizant of Lord Mount Severn's private affairs. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 146.

*confirmatory*: James, most averse at the first blush to accepting any news confirmatory of his own poignant suspicions, took her up at once. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. V, 172.

*consequent (up)on*, suggestive of *to follow (up)on*: The vexation consequent upon his recent adventure had vanished from his mind. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 149.

*Compare*: A lull at the theatre of war, and a not unwelcome one, has followed on the exciting events of the past few days. *Daily Chronicle*.

*corrective*: More than one nonjuring bishop have deigned .. to furnish me with information corrective of the facts which I learned from others. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. I, 21.

*covetous*: I am covetous of nothing. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 511.

(*in*)*credulous*, suggestive of *to believe*: William, incredulous of his brother's report, proceeded to N. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 438.

*dependent*: This document points out that what appears a small concession will cost ten millions a year, and hints that its continuance is dependent upon the acceptance of further reduction in wages by the railway servants. *Westm. Gaz.*, 24 II, 1922, 2*b*.

Note. The negative *independent* is now construed with *of*. This seems to be only instance of an adjective and its negative being construed with different prepositions.

*desirous*: Nor did he appear at all desirous of entering into any farther conversation with Mauleverer. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XXV, 305.

*disruptive*, suggestive of *to break*: The latter events are doubly disruptive of tranquillity. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 281*b*.

*expressive*: Philip now uttered a few words expressive of his duty to his father and his affection for his people. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 57*b*.

*damnatory*, although suggestive of the transitive *to damn*, construed with *to*, through the influence of such adjectives as *injurious*, *hurtful*, etc.: By the skill of Mr. Dyebright, it (sc. the witness of Mac Grawler) was rendered sufficiently clear a story to leave an impression on the jury damnatory to the interests of the prisoner. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XXXV, 424.

*emulous*: It might have been thought that they (sc. the birds) were emulous of the power of praise possessed by the human creatures within (sc. the chapel). MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XIV, 106.

*fearful*, -*less*: i. You have committed no crime, why then be so fearful of discovery? LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 229.

ii. The hardy chief upon the rugged rock .., | Fearless of wrong, reposed his weary strength. COWPER, *Task*, I, 15.

*forgetful*: The Foreign Office will not be forgetful of the magnitude of the interests it has to protect. *Times*, 1897. 840*d*.

*heedful*, -*less*: i. Thou, heedful of advice, proceed; | My praise the precept is, be thine the deed. POPE, *Od.*, I, 397.

ii. We have been heedless of that great legacy, your brother bequeathed to us. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 104.

*hesitant*, construed with *of*, although *to hesitate* is an intransitive, construed with a variety of prepositions (Ch. XIX, 24): The majority of women are either surveying garments which they are hesitant of wearing, or garments which are successive failures in cheapness. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 24, 503*c*.

*hopeful*, -*less*, construed with *of*, although *to hope* requires *for*: i. We are still hopeful of great results from Genoa. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 18, 365*a*.

ii. I am as destitute and hopeless of it as the most solitary Pelican. HAMMOND, On Ps. CII, 6.<sup>1)</sup>

*ignorant*, suggestive of *to know*: The Beauforts were ignorant of his brother's fate. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 486.

*mindful*: Mindful of your declaration never to accept bounty from a Beaufort, ... I judged it in vain to seek and remonstrate with you. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 471.

*mistrustful*: We were a little mistrustful of these secret confabulations and private meetings. Manch. Guard., VI, 18, 365 *a*.

*oblivious*, suggestive of *to forget*: She was entirely oblivious .. of any possible cause of embarrassment between her and her visitor. (?) Miss Providence, Ch. XVIII.

*observant*: No man could have been more observant of religious rites. MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. I, 61 *b*.

*preparatory*, construed with *to*, although *to prepare* requires *for*: It would have been but civil in Mauleverer to offer his assistance in those little attentions preparatory to female departure from balls. LYTTON, Paul Clif., Ch. XVIII, 225.

*productive*: Their visits to Mrs. Philips were now productive of the most interesting intelligence. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. VII, 32.

Is the scheme likely to be productive of good or evil? Graphic., 1892. 758 *b*.

*recognisant*: These judges, and all the men in power, are very friendly to you, and very recognisant of your services; are they not? DICK., Two Cities, III, Ch. XI, 375.

*redolent*, suggestive of *to smell (of)*: He selected the cover of an old letter begrimed with dirt and redolent of tobacco. DICK., Chuz.<sup>2)</sup>

*regardful*, *-less*: i. A life regardful of duty is crowned with an object, directed by a purpose. FARRAR, Marlb. Serm., I, 7.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Mark's poor friends, regardless of themselves, attended him. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXIII, 266 *a*.

*sensible*, suggestive of *to feel*, *to sense*: I was sensible of the urgency of the case. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 30 *b*.

*subversive*: It (sc. this meeting) deems the whole Muffin system alike prejudicial to the health and morals of the people, and subversive of the best interests of a great commercial and mercantile community. DICK., Nich. Nick., Ch. II, 8 *a*.

His teachings were regarded as subversive of the existing political and religious system. Manch. Guard., VIII, 14, 261 *c*.

*signatory*, although corresponding to the transitive *to sign*, also construed with *to*, through the influence of such a word as *accessory to*: i. The terms of the Treaty of Versailles .. gives to any Power signatory of the Treaty which holds itself aggrieved, the right to single-handed military intervention. Manch. Guard., VI, 21, 426 *a*.

ii. After a special meeting of the Powers signatory to the Note of remonstrance to Germany, summoned at the request of the head of the French delegation, a second Note was sent to the German delegation making more precise the objections to the separate treaty. ib., VI, 17, 340 *b*.

*violative*: The presence of our military forces in Haiti, after the disturbances of July 27—28, 1915, had quieted down, was violative of well-recognized American principles. Manch. Guard., VI, 21, 435 *b*.

1) O. E. D.

2) WENDT, E. S., IV, 110.

6. Also some adjectival participles (Ch. LVII, 18), whether present or past, are not unfrequently coupled with a copula, the combination to do duty for a finite verb. The preposition natural to such as are suggestive of transitive verbs is *of*, but other prepositions are frequent enough, mainly through the influence of adjectives of a kindred meaning.

a) present participles:

(*un*)*becoming*, construed either with or without *to*: i. He was most strict in religious observances, .. much more .. than was becoming to his rank and age. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. II, 76 *a*.

Sartorius assumes a jocose, rallying air, unbecoming to him under any circumstances. SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, II, 36.

ii. You've raised an artificial soul and spirit in him, ma'am, unbecoming a person of his condition. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VII, 73.

If Mrs. Nickleby took the apartments without the means of paying for them, it was very unbecoming a lady. *id.*, *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. III, 11 *b*.

*befitting*, like the preceding, construed either with or without *to*: i. He had his own code of what was befitting to a gentleman. GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, III, Ch. V, 271.

ii. Instead of returning to such taverns as might seem best befitting their fashion and garb, they struck at once from the gay parts of the town. LYTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XVI, 186.

*binding*, suggestive of [*incumbent (on)*]: What is binding on one man's conscience is not binding on another's. ARNOLD, *Es. on Crit.*, I, 30.

But even if the articles of peace were binding upon the Boers [etc.]. *Rev. of Rev.*

*charming*, although corresponding to the transitive *to charm*, takes *to* through the influence of such adjectives as *agreeable*, *pleasant*: When at length they ran him to earth, he was charming to them, perfect in courtesy, and as kind as possible. FRANK HARRIS, *Contemp. Portr.*, XVII, 300.

(*un*)*deserving*, construed either with or without *of*: i. It sometimes happens that a person departs this life, who is really deserving of all the praises the stone-cutter carves over his bones. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 4.

These reports are deserving of attentive study. *Times*, 1897, 600 *a*.

Elsewhere we have a brief personal appreciation of the late Sir William Mather, a man deserving of all recognition for the foremost part he played in furthering technical education in this country. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8497, 4 *b*.

ii. What canst thou expect, but that .. we deliver thee up to England as undeserving our further protection. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVI, 285.

It (sc. this meeting) considers the Muffin Boys, as at present constituted, wholly undeserving the confidence of the public. DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. II, 8 *a*.

*disturbing*, although suggestive of the transitive *to disturb*, takes *to* through the influence of such adjectives as *injurious*: The proposal is disturbing to preconceived ideas. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6329, 1 *c*.

*lacking*, though suggestive of the transitive *to lack*, takes *in*: The Allies are utterly lacking in sound revolutionary principles. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6329, 1 *c*.

*unthinking* (very rare): People are so extremely unthinking about such a number of interesting things. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XII, 109.

b) past participles:

*Indebted*: He had no idea, from twenty pounds to two thousand, as to the sum in which he was indebted for legal assistance. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XIX. 246.

Her heavy losses at cards rendered the payment of such a sum as that in which he stood indebted quite impossible. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 401.

*possessed*: That cannot be, since I am still possessed | Of those effects for which I did the murder. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 3, 53.

Philip Beaufort was possessed of most of the qualities that dazzle the eyes. LYTTON, *Night and Morn*, 24.

He had become possessed of the greatest estate in England. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VIII, 98.

*seized*, now only in archaic use (O. E. D., s.v. *seize*, 2): This Fortinbras .. | Did forfeit, with his life, all those his lands | Which he stood seized of, to the conqueror. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 1, 89.

7. Before a subordinate statement the typical preposition mostly falls out (Ch. III, 39; Ch. LX, 93 ff); before an infinitive clause it is merged into *to* (Ch. XIX, 23).

i. He was sometimes apprehensive that he might be at that very moment an interesting case of spontaneous combustion. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, III, 56.

ii. He was not desirous to be seen under the wing of Baron Levy. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. V, 97.

She watched his countenance as if she were particularly wishful to be assured that he took kindly to his reception. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. XVI, 150.

### The Connective Part a Copula, the Significant Part a Phrase consisting of a Noun of Action preceded and followed by a Preposition.

8. Another kind of group-verb closely akin to those described in the preceding sections is formed by a copula and a phrase made up of a preposition + noun of action + preposition, which does duty for a present participle. The group-verb is often strictly synonymous with a transitive verb. Thus *to be* (or *stand*) *in need of* has practically the same meaning as *to need*.

The above phrases are found connected not only with a copula or a verb doing duty as a copula, but also with some other verbs of full significance. Some combinations with such verbs are, therefore, also illustrated in the following material:

*to be* (or *stand*) *in need of*: The parish authorities inquired .. whether there was a female .. who was in a situation to impart to Oliver Twist the consolation and nourishment of which he stood in need. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 22.

*to be in quest of*: They even attributed to their incantations the misadventure which befell the renowned Hendrik Hudson, when he sailed so gallantly up this river in quest of a north-west passage. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.* I, 135.)

*to be in receipt of*: Only 20 per cent of the unemployed (sc. in Russia) are in receipt of relief. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 547 c.

*to be in search of*: Mrs. Todd's letter contained the first item of information of which we were in search. WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, III, Ch. V, 391.

He is capable of scouring the whole land .. in search of him. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 34.

*to be in want of*: Little good could be got from a solicitor, the very rails round whose door were so sadly in want of repainting. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XXXIII, 379.

**The Connective Part a Verb with a vague meaning. the Significant Part a Noun of Action.**

9. a) There is also a marked tendency in Modern English to express a verbal idea by means of a combination consisting of a verb with a vague meaning and a noun of action. The latter is then the real significant part of the predicate, while the former mainly serves the purpose of a connective.

The vagueness of such a connective sometimes appears from the fact that one and the same noun of action may be connected with two or even three or four verbs without much difference in meaning being involved. Thus we say almost indifferently *to give* or *to make an answer* or *reply*; *to pay* or *to give attention*; *to pay*, *to give* or *to make a call* (the last the most usual combination); *to give*, *to raise*, *to set up* or *to utter a cry*; *to drop* or *to make a curtsey*; *to make* or *to give a promise*; *to make* or *to pay a visit* (the latter the most usual combination).

It is also shown by different connectives having been in favour in different periods of the language. Thus in the eighteenth century *to make a visit* was more common than *to pay a visit*, which is now the usual expression. Similarly *to pay one's compliments* has displaced *to make one's compliments*, which is regularly used in BOSWELL's *Life of Johnson*. See SATTler in E. S., VII.

It is but natural that the vagueness of the verb entering in these group-verbs is not equally pronounced in all of them. Nor is it possible to tell to what degree a verb should have weakened in semantic significance to justify its being called a mere connective. Here follow some quotations showing the possibility of connecting a given noun with various verbs of a vague meaning.

*answer*: i. \* The packed houses gave no answer. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. III, 34.

\*\* The Chevalier gave her no answer. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 230.

ii. \* Catherine made no answer. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 96. T.

\*\* You'd make me the same answer at th'end. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. VI, 66. He made her no reply. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XI, 115.

iii. "It's a pudding" I made answer. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 34*b*. (After a quotation, as in the above example, *to give answer* would be impossible.)

*call*: i. She had made a morning call on Martha Biggs. TROL., *Orley Farm*, XIV.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. I will give her a call as I pass. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, Ch. IV, 15.

1) O. E. D.



I will give my friend a call. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 11.

iii. He had paid his duty call to aunts Ann, Juley, and Hester. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

Mabel at once immersed herself in paying calls and joining the activities of the new and intensely active community. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. V, II, 121.

*cry*: i. At this the spirit raised a frightful cry. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

ii. The ghost set up another cry. *ib.*

iii. She gave a small cry. *Pall Mall Mag.*

iv. Blanche .. uttered a cry of horror. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. XI.

*curtsey*: Old Mrs. Blenkinsop dropped a curtsey. Little Polly, her aide-de-camp, made a curtsey. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 224.

*promise*: i. Make me a promise of settling six thousand pounds upon my girl. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI.

ii. I readily gave a promise of making the settlement he required. *ib.*

*visit*: i. I quitted Oxlord, and paid a visit to a maiden lady dwelling in the Orange Grove. *Court Mag.*, VI, 186/1.<sup>1)</sup>

Each had asked himself: 'Come, now, should I have paid that visit in that hat?' GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. I, 8.

ii. He made more than one visit to Oxbridge. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XX, 204. Don't you think I ought to make Miss Havisham a visit? DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XV, 132.

He won't make visits. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 226

b) The grammatical function of the nouns in these connections is mostly that of an effective object (Ch. XLV, 20), but owing to the connective verb having only a vague meaning, the whole combination may, from a semantic point of view, be regarded as an intransitive group-verb. Thus *He gave a loud cry* differs but slightly from *He cried loudly*, the main difference between them consisting in the fact that the use of the verb-stem in the former imparts a distinctly momentaneous aspect to the predication. Compare the O. E. D., s.v. *ing*, I, a.

c) Some group-verbs thus constituted do not convey complete sense, but require an object, either prepositional or non-prepositional.

i. He that hath pity upon the poor lendeth to the Lord. Bible, Prov XIX, 17. I have a regard for Miss Richland. GOLDS., *Good. nat. Man*, II.

We get from him only theories which take no regard of facts. *Times*, No. 1982, 1018 e.

ii. Your sentiments do you honour. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 117.

She gave her father a hug. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch III, (585).

d) In many cases the noun (of action) is preceded by an adnominal modifier, which shows that, after all, the union of the component parts of the group-verb is not complete. The adnominal modifier does the same duty as the corresponding adverbial modifier of the corresponding simplex, i. e. modifies the predicate as a whole. Thus in *He gave a loud cry* the adjective *loud* serves the same function as the adverb *loudly* in *He cried loudly*. It

1) O. E. D.

deserves special mention that the group-verb offers some welcome syntactical facilities, inasmuch as it sometimes obviates the difficulty of finding a suitable adverb to convey the meaning intended and affords an opportunity to avoid the clumsy adverb in *ly*, for which, besides, it is sometimes difficult to find a convenient place in the sentence (Ch. LIX, 96 ff).

Thus it would be hard to find a suitable adverb to do the work of the adjective in:

We made sad work of the music. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 21:

He cautiously and adroitly made a covered push towards the object of the meeting. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II IX, Ch. III, 84.

She drew a long breath. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, IV, Ch. IX, X, 243.

Thus also the use of the adverb construction would distinctly mar the smoothness of such sentences as:

Under cover of his character of singing-master he made frequent visits at the farmhouse. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 356.

The Major had a sincere liking and regard for his sister-in-law. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 23.

The whale-like front (sc. of Mr. Fortune) gave a sudden leap and quiver, precisely as if he had been struck by a cricket-ball. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. II, IV, 81.

e) A great many instances of group-verbs requiring a prepositional object have been given in Ch. XLVII, 26, where it has been shown that, owing to the semantic subservience of the verb to the noun, it is, in some cases, possible to make the (pro)noun in the prepositional object the subject of the passive conversion.

Also in many of the examples illustrating the variable practice as to the use of the indefinite article before nouns of a non-material meaning in Ch. XXXI, 40, the verbs with which these nouns are connected are weak enough, so that they may be considered to form with the latter a kind of group-verb.

Mention may here be made of *to bear (a) resemblance (or affinity) to*; *to bid (a) farewell to*, *to bid (a) welcome to*; *to catch (a) hold of*, *to catch (a) sight of*; *to do an injustice to*, *to do justice to*, *to do (a) wrong to*; *to have an aversion for (or to)*, *to have a care of*, *to have compassion on (or for)*, *to have a contempt for*, *to have (a) delight in*, *to have a doubt of*, *to have an esteem for*, *to have a fall*, *to have a fancy for (or to)*, *to have a horror of*, *to have (an) interest in*, *to have a love for (or to)*; *to give (a) loose to*, *to give a start*, *to give (a) welcome to*; *to keep (a) hold of*; *to lay claim to*, *to lay (a) hold of*; *to make acquaintance with*, *to make an appearance*, *to make a doubt of*, *to make a halt*, *to make (a) mock of (or at)*, *to make a pause*, *to make a resistance*, *to make a stand*, *to make a trial of*, *to make welcome*; *to run a risk of*; *to stand a chance of*; *to take an account of*, *to take compassion (up)on*, *to take (a) delight in*, *to take (a) leave of*, *to take a pleasure in*, *to take (a) revenge on*, *to take (a) vengeance (up)on*.

For discussion of various points of syntax in regard to these combinations see also DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 21, 2; § 36, 4.

O. E. D., s. v. *ing*<sup>1</sup>; Berichten & Mededeelingen, No. 30 & 32; also SPEYER, Lat. Spraakk.<sup>2</sup>, § 586.

10. The most frequent and most remarkable verbs used in the combinations here described are *to do*, *to give*, *to have* and *to make*. They, therefore, deserve some special discussion.

11. a) *To do* is the verb with the vaguest meaning, and it is not, therefore, surprising that it may be coupled with an endless array of nouns specifying the nature of the action. See especially the O. E. D., s. v. *do*, 4—12. Here we are concerned with those combinations in which *to do* is connected with a noun of action.

*battle*: He was in full vigour of intellect and health, and able to do battle for the Liberal party. *Times*

*charity*: The one could have sympathies and do kindnesses; and the other must needs be always selfish. He could not cultivate a friendship or do a charity. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 311.*

*disservice*: Mr. Chamberlain .. had done real disservice to the cause of peace. *Westm. Gaz., 21/3, 1925, 613 b.*

*execution*: Sophia's features were not so striking at first; but often did more certain execution. *GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. I, (239).*

The battle commenced with a cannonade, in which the artillery of the Nabob did scarcely any execution. *MAC., Clive, (518 b).*

*mischievous*: That sprightly grace and insinuating manner of yours will do some mischief among the girls here. *SHER., Riv., II, I, (231).*

b) Special mention may here be made of the frequent combination of *to do* with gerunds.

I am willing to do copying. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XIII, 106.*

I have not done much walking since I saw you. *Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. V, 78.*

'Ave you ever done any weasel-hunting in county Cork? *Westm. Gaz., No. 8515, 18 b.*

c) Combinations of *to do* with a verb-stem, as in the following quotation are as yet confined to colloquial language.

I was sitting doing a smoke. *CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., 58. 1)*

d) A noun with a material meaning is sometimes used to indicate an activity.

i. I know a fellow who would do some verses. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 335.*

ii. She does Ophelia, Lady Teazle, Mrs. Haller — that sort of thing. *THACK., Pend., Ch. XIV, 142.*

Do you do Coué? Such a comfortable little man, Soames; I went to hear him. *GALSW., The White Monkey, III, Ch. XIII, 29.*

I met a party of American tourists who were doing Italy.

Note. The vagueness of *to do* is also responsible for its frequent use in connexion with infinitives, especially in certain negative sentences and sentences with inverted word-order. For detailed discussion see Ch. I, 64 ff.

It is also the vagueness of *to do* which makes it fitted to be used as a substitute for other verbs, as has been shown in Ch. XXXII, 29 ff.

1) O. E. D.

12. a) *To give* is especially frequent in connexion with word-stems denoting an emotional sound or movement of some part of the human body. In these combinations it is clearly synonymous with *to make*, *to produce*, the noun following being, accordingly, a kind of effective object. In the majority of cases the object is preceded by the indefinite article.

*bark*: Gyp .. caught sight of them, and gave a sharp bark. G. ELIOT, *Ad Bede*, IV, Ch. XXVII, 256.

*cry*: She gave a small cry. *Pall Mall Mag.*

*exclamation*: Eustace gave an exclamation. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 37.

*flutter*: Old Jolyon's heart gave a flutter. GALSW., *Ind. Sum.*, V, (430).

*gasp*: She gave a little gasp. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, Ch. II, 21.

*Primula* gave a little gasp of delight. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 563 c.

*gulp*: She gave a little gulp. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. II, (580).

*kick*: With this view he gave a kick at the outside (sc. of the door). DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VII, 73.

*laugh*: She gave her sudden laugh. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. II, I, 159.

*roar*: We do not even know why a lion, who looks perfectly happy, will suddenly give a roar, and set all his companions off. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/10, 1924, 283 c.

*scream*: The poor woman gave a scream. THACK, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 405.

*sigh*: Elizabeth gave a great sigh. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. I, 15

Dodo gave a great sigh. *ib.*, *Dodo Wonders*, Ch. VI, 96.

*sob*: She gave a sob. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*<sup>2</sup>, Ch. II, 11.

*start*: Emma gave a start. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 443.

b) Other nouns entering into a group-verb with *to give* are unfrequent.

This might have given pause to some of the boldest professional mountaineers. *Westm. Gaz.*

13. a) *To have* can be connected with practically any suitable verb-stem to form with it an intransitive group-verb. Such combinations are especially common in colloquial language. As in the case of *to give*, the object after *to have* is mostly preceded by the indefinite article.

*fall*: We had several falls. MARRYAT, *Peter Simple*, Ch. XXIII, 251.

Rex has had a fall. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. VII, 109.

*say*: I could tell you exactly what you mean. But have your say first; you have not nearly done yet. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. I, 17.

*sleep*: Good-night, darling. Have a good sleep and think it over. GALSW., *To let*, I, Ch. X, (889).

*talk*: We must have a talk about reading one day, shall we? HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. II, II, 161.

*warm*: Sit ye down before the fire, my dear and have a warm, Lord bless ye. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III.

Note especially the idiom in: She cried until she had had her cry out. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 3b. (= Dutch *uitgehuild had*.)

The Cathedral had both a damp feel and a damp touch this afternoon. DICK., *Myst. of Edw. Drood*, Ch. II, (18). (= Dutch *voelde vochtig aan*.)

b) *To have* is also frequently connected with a noun of action to form with it a group-verb governing a prepositional object. The prepositions with which these nouns are construed are highly variable, as will be shown in a contemplated work of the present writer dealing with the constructions of verbs, adjectives and nouns.

*dislike*: Mr. Bright had a great dislike for anything pretentious and an equal dislike for any change. *Westm. Gaz.*, 21/3, 1925, 618 b

*liking*: The Major had a sincere liking and regard for his sister-in-law. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 23.

*look*: I had a look at her just now. *HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. V, II, 121.

*regard*: The widow had a secret regard for Mr. Smirke. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 161.

c) Equally common are such combinations as *to have dinner, supper*, etc., respectively equivalent to the intransitive *to dine, to sup*, etc.

14. a) Also *to make* is sometimes connected with a verb-stem to form with it an intransitive group-verb. Instances are not particularly frequent. The effective object may stand without or with an adnominal modifier. Occasionally it is a plural. Compare *O. E. D.*, s. v. *make*, 59 a.

*blush*: At this speech Miss Amelia only made a smile and a blush. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

*moan*: Lovers, make moan. *SHAK., Mids.*, V, I, 320.

*move*: Barthwick makes a move to follow him. *GALSW., Silv. Box*, II, I, (60).

*repair*: On sleeping mounds, or in the vale beneath, | Are domes where whilome kings did make repair. *BYRON, Child of Har.*, I, XXII.

*smile*: See under *blush*.

b) More frequent are combinations of *to make* with nouns of actions that are not to be regarded as verb-stems. It is worth observing that many of them correspond to such as *have doen* in Dutch; thus *to make an attempt, an offer, a promise, a request* answer to the Dutch *een poging, een aanbod, een belofte, een verzoek doen*. For illustration see the second group of the following quotations:

i. *examination*: The doctor made a hurried examination. *BUCH., Wint. Night*, Ch. XI, 93.

*loss*: We have made a severe loss by it. *GALSW., White Monk.*, III, Ch. XII, 279

*reply*: Sabre made no reply. *HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. II, III, 79.

*slaughter*: We made a .. terrible slaughter. *DEFOE, Col. Jack*, 229.<sup>1)</sup>

*speech*: He made him a handsome speech of thanks. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 300.

ii. *choice*: Make your choice. *BEATR. HAR., Ships*, Ch. VIII, 54.

<sup>1)</sup> *O. E. D.*

*confession*: It was only after a good deal of painful questioning that .. she made her confession. Westm. Gaz., No. 3579, 11 b.

*discovery*: I look about me and make a discovery. Dick., Cop., Ch. XIX.

*entry*: He remembered how his heart used to beat as that air was played, and before the divine Emily made her entry. THACK., Pend. I, Ch. XXX, 323.

*exit*: After a further exchange of banter .. we make our exit into the rather dilapidated street. Westm. Gaz., 2/5, 1925, 6 c.

*invention*: Not to mention all the people alive who made inventions that won't act. Dick., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. XVII, 321.

*suggestion*: Poor Mr. Wood, the Minister of Agriculture, is now in despair, asking each group separately to make suggestions. Westm. Gaz., 7/3, 1925, 544 a.

c) Some of these combinations govern a prepositional object; thus such as contain:

*attack*: He made an attack on the warders. Police News.

*farewell*: He realised .. that he was making his farewell to the town. HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy, Ch. XII, I, 296.

*grab*: making a grab at her eye-glass. DOR. GER., Etern. Wom., Ch. XXV.

*love*: You know, as well as I do, what it's to lead to, when a gentleman like you kisses and makes love to a young woman like Hetty. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, IV, Ch. XXVII, 258.

*mention*: The editor made very handsome mention of her talent and beauty. THACK., Pend., Ch. XIV, 144.

*question*: As soon as he had recovered his self-possession, Sir William made question of his niece. LYTTON, Paul Cliff., Ch. XXIV, 289.

d) A good many may be followed by appositional *of* + gerund; e. g. those containing:

*boast*: Brough made especially a boast of drinking beer. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 75.

*doubt*: I make no doubt of prevailing with him. FIELD., Jos. Andr., IV, Ch. III, 208.

*feint*: Young as he was, he had sense enough to make a feint of feeling great regret at going away. Dick., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 27.

*merit*: He made a merit of having given the place to his cousin. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 85.

*practice*: Any country which makes a practice of balancing deficits by borrowing must come to grief sooner or later. Graph.

*scruple*: I make no scruple of saying, "I wish we could find a fourth hand." SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIV, 89.

*show*: I made a show of arranging my papers on my desk. JEROME, Novel Notes.

## CHAPTER LV.

---

### THE INFINITIVE.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Grammatical Nature of the Infinitive . . . . .	1
The Use of <i>to</i> before the Infinitive. . . . .	2—55
Introductory Observations . . . . .	2— 3
Practice after Verbs and Group-Verbs forming a kind of Unit with the following Infinitive . . . . .	4—34
Practice after Verbs governing an Accusative + Infinitive or allied construction . . . . .	35—43
Practice after the Conjunctions <i>but</i> , <i>as</i> and <i>than</i> . . . . .	44—48
Practice in Elliptical Sentences . . . . .	49—52
Repetition and Non-repetition of <i>to</i> . . . . .	53—55
Tense and Voice of the Infinitive . . . . .	56—89
Introductory Observations . . . . .	56—58
Tense-shifting in Infinitive Constructions . . . . .	59—67
The Passive Infinitive in Detail . . . . .	68—89





## Grammatical Nature of the Infinitive.

1. Like the gerund, the infinitive is a substantival form of the verb, that is to say it has partly the character of a verb, partly that of a noun.

a) It shows its verbal character by its capacity of:

1) taking the ordinary verb-modifiers, objects and adverbial adjuncts, e. g.: *He promised to write the letter, He pretended to listen to me, He intended to rise early.* Further discussion or illustration is not necessary.

2) exhibiting, at least in part, the distinctions of tense and voice, e. g.: *It will be no crime to have been Cato's friend* (ADDISON, Cato, IV, 1), *I am worthy to be scorned* (THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVII, 291). For detailed discussion see below, 54 ff.

b) It shows its substantival character by its capacity of filling the same functions in a sentence as an ordinary noun. As such it largely varies with the gerund, one or the other being preferred or required in some cases, or either being applied without much distinction. In Ch. XVIII the varied applications of the infinitive as an element of the sentence have been discussed in considerable detail. The areas of incidence of the two substantival verbals have been submitted to close investigation in Ch. XIX. There is no necessity to revert to these subjects in this place. It may, however, be observed in this connexion that the infinitive differs materially from the gerund in that, unlike the latter, it does not admit of being modified by adnominal modifiers. It is also worth mentioning that this limitation does not attach to the infinitive in either Dutch or German.

c) As will be shown in Ch. LVI, 46 ff, the gerund is in some of its applications hardly distinguished from the noun of action. From what has been observed above, under b, it follows, therefore, that the infinitive also bears a strong resemblance to the noun of action, substitution of the one for the other being in many cases only prevented by requirements of idiom. Indeed it would not be difficult to collect a goodly number of sentences in which either of the alternative forms would be admissible without much detriment to idiomatic propriety. A few examples must suffice here.

He is desirous of being admired. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 397) (= of admiration *or* to be admired).

To doubt his originality, in the creation of poetic phrases, would be to show the extreme of poetical incapacity. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com on Ten.'s In Mem.*, Ch. VII, 75 (= doubting his originality *or* doubt of his originality.)  
 Life alone at twenty-six is — lonely. HOPE, *Intrusions of Peggy* 44. (= living alone *or* to live alone.)

Similarly nouns denoting a state or quality are essentially equivalent to word-groups consisting of *to be* + corresponding adjective. Thus substitution of the latter for the former would be possible in:  
 Boldness in business is the first, second and third thing. *Prov.*  
 Content is more than a Kingdom. *id.*

Note. Although it has been shown to be highly probable that the infinitive is descended from a verbal noun of which two case-forms have been preserved in Old English (3, Obs. I), the substantival character of the English infinitive is now at all prominent only when it stands without any modifier, as in *To err is human, to forgive divine*. In all other cases its verbal character prevails over its substantival to the extent that little or no trace of the latter is discernible.

## The Use of *to* before the Infinitive.

### Introductory Observations.

2. The infinitive is now mostly preceded by the preposition *to*. An infinitive with *to* is called by SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 321) *supine*, by MASON (*Eng. Gram.*, § 196) *gerundial infinitive*. Some German grammarians call it the *gerund*. For reasons which hardly require comment, none of these terms can be pronounced to be particularly apposite, and since there is no need for any special name for the infinitive with *to*, not any of the above terms will be used in the following discussions.

3. Obs. I. In Old English *to* was only used before a dative form of the infinitive ending in *enne* or *anne* (*onne*). It denoted chiefly a relation of purpose, as it still does in such sentences as *I came to tell you*, *This house is to let*. This meaning of *to* is distinctly discernible in:

Sóðlice út éode se sáwera his sáed tō sáwenne. *Matth.*, XIII, 3.<sup>1)</sup> (*Author. Vers.*: Behold a sower went forth to sow.)

The dative form was mostly rigidly distinguished from the common-case form, which ended in *an*.

Nim þæt þín ys, and gá: ic wylle þysum ýtemestum syllan eall swá mycel swá þé. *Matth.*, XX, 14.<sup>1)</sup> (*Author. Vers.*: Take that thine is, and go thy way: I will give unto this last even as unto thee.)

The uninflected infinitive without *to* seems to have been used occasionally where the dative infinitive with *to* would be expected.

Heofona rice ys gelic þám hiredes ealdre, þe on ærnermen gen út éode áhýrian wyrhtan on his wineard. *Matth.*, XX, 1.<sup>1)</sup> (*Author. Vers.*: The kingdom

<sup>1)</sup> SWEET, *A. S. Reader*<sup>3</sup>, 51 f.

of heaven is like unto a man that is an householder, which went out early in the morning to hire labourers into his vineyard.)

In the Middle-English period the suffixes gradually wore off, with the result that the dative infinitive and the common-case infinitive became identical. Thus *to writenne* (or *writanne*) > *to writene* > *to writen* > *to write*; and *writan* > *writen* > *write*.

There appear to be no instances in any period of the English language of the infinitive being placed in the genitive, corresponding to the practice represented in Dutch by such formations as *prijzenswaardig*, *levensmoe*, or the German *liebenswürdig*.

II. "In process of time (the) obvious sense of the preposition became weakened and generalized, so that *to* became at last the ordinary link expressing any prepositional relation in which an infinitive stands to a preceding verb, adjective or substantive. Sometimes the relation was so vague as scarcely to differ from that between a transitive verb and its object. This was especially so when the verb was construed both transitively and intransitively. There were several verbs in Old English in this position, such as *onginnan* (to begin), *ondrædan* (to dread) *beþeodan* (to bid), *bewerian* (to forbid, prevent), *þencean* (to think), etc.; these are found construed either with the simple (accusative) infinitive, or with *to* and the dative infinitive... From these beginnings, the use of the infinitive, with *to* in place of the simple infinitive, helped by the phonetic decay and loss of the inflexions, and the need of some mark to distinguish it from other parts of the verb and from the cognate substantive, increased rapidly during the late Old-English and early Middle-English period, with the result that in Modern English the infinitive with *to* is the ordinary form, the simple infinitive surviving only in particular connexions where it is very intimately connected with the preceding verb. To a certain extent, therefore, i. e. when the infinitive is the subject or direct object, *to* has lost all its meaning, and become a mere 'sign' or prefix of the infinitive. But after an intransitive verb, or the passive voice, *to* is still the preposition. In appearance there is no difference between the infinitive in *he proceeds to speak* and *he chooses to speak*; but in the latter *to speak* is the equivalent of *speaking* or *speech*, and in the former of *to speaking* or *to speech*. In form, *to speak* is the descendant of Old-English *to specanne*; in sense, it is partly the representative of this and largely of Old-English *specan*". MURRAY, in O. E. D., s. v. *to*, B, history.

According to ONIONS (Adv. Eng. Synt., § 157, 4, Obs.) *to* is not found with the Nom.-Acc. form (i. e. the common-case form) of the infinitive before the twelfth century.

III. When it had become usual to put *to* before the infinitive irrespective of its grammatical function, the want may have been felt for another expedient to express the notion of purpose. This may have given rise to the use of *for to* before the infinitive. The earliest instance, in the O. E. D., of this practice is dated 1175. SKEAT tells us in A Student's Pastime, No. 354, that "it occurs even in late Anglo-Saxon, as indeed in the A. S. Chronicle, anno 1127, but was probably suggested by the use of *por* (*pour*) with the infinitive in Anglo-French, so that the

usage is due to the Norman Conquest". It appears to have been quite common in Middle English, in which it seems to have served the same purpose as the Dutch *om te* and the German *um zu*. But like *om te* in Present Dutch, it soon came to be used before an infinitive also when no notion of purpose was implied.

The use of *for to* before the infinitive, either with or without a notion of purpose, was still vigorously alive in Early Modern English, but has been constantly losing ground since. In Present English it survives only in dialects and in the language of the uneducated. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. IV; and compare STOF., Stud., A, VII, 48 ff; CURME, Hist. of the Eng. Ger., E. S., XLV, 376; STOETT, Middelned. Spraakk., § 283. Some few examples may be given here.

i. And specially, from every shires ende | Of Engelond, to Caunterbury they wende, | The holy blisful martir for to seke. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, A, 15—17.

For he had healed many; insomuch that they pressed upon him for to touch him, as many as had plagues. Bible, Mark, III, 10.

Miss Arabella wondered why he always said he was going for to do a thing. G. ELIOT, Scenes, I Ch. II, 14.

ii. And if you lyketh alle; by oon assent, | Now for to stonden at my jugement. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, A, 779.

We'll teach you for to drink ere you depart. SHAK., Hamlet, I, 2, 175.

I didn't think for to get married so soon. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 262.

In the following quotation the use of *for to* + infinitive after *for* + pronoun strikes us as particularly clumsy.

There's no need for you for to put in your oar. FANNY BURNEY, Evelina, XIV, 45.

IV. In Middle English the use of *to* before the infinitive was still more or less variable and in some respects different from modern practice. The discussion of these fluctuations falls beyond the scope of this grammar and will not, therefore, be attempted. The student interested in the subject may be referred to EINENKEL, Streifzüge, 229 ff; id., Hist. Synt., § 4; KELLNER, E. S., XX, 1 ff; id., XLVI, I, 133.

Some survivals of the antiquated practice in which *to* is dispensed with, contrary to Modern-English practice, will be mentioned in due course.

V. In some few cases, especially those in which the use of *to* before the infinitive has remained unsettled in Modern English, its employment or omission is, to some extent, conditioned by considerations of metre or rhythm. See FIJN VAN DRAAT, Rhythm in Eng. Prose, Angl. Forsch., § 44 ff. For illustration see 13, Note; 20; 33, c, Note; 35, Obs. I; 39, c; 41, a; 42, a; 45, a; 51, c.

In verse we meet with repeated instances of *to* being dispensed with for the sake of the metre, where this would be inadmissible in ordinary prose. Practically all the instances of irregular practice cited by FRANZ (Shak. Gram.<sup>1</sup>, § 650) will bear this interpretation.

How long within this wood intend you stay? SHAK., Midsummer Night's Dream, II, 1, 138.

He left his bed, he trod the floor, | And gan in haste the drawers explore, | The lowest first, and without stop | The rest in order to the top. COWPER, The Retired Cat, 88.

Instances of the opposite practice appear to be less frequent. See also 5, Obs. II.

By heaven I had rather coin my heart, | And drop my blood for drachmas,  
than to wring | From the hard hands of peasants their vile trash | By any  
indirection. SHAK., JUL. CÆS., IV, 3, 73.

**Practice after Verbs and Group-verbs forming a kind of unit  
with the following Infinitive.**

4. In Modern English the infinitive stands without *to* after certain verbs which form a kind of complex predicate (Ch. I, 15) with it, i. e.:

a) after any auxiliary of tense or mood except *were*, as in *If it were to rain, I don't know what I should do.*

He will soon withdraw from the concern. May you be happy in the life you have chosen.

b) after any of the defective verbs *can, may, must, shall* and *will*.

He can (may, must, shall, will) come to me this evening.

c) after *to do*.

I do not understand you.

5. Obs. I. *Will* as a regular verb requires *to* before the following infinitive (Ch. I, 48, Obs. II; Ch. LVIII, 15).

I willed to stay on yet awhile in my native continent. THACK., VIRG., Ch. XC, 969.

II. *Ought* now almost regularly stands with an infinitive with *to*. MURRAY (in O. E. D., s.v. *ought* III, 5, b) quotes several instances with the bare infinitive from writers belonging to the Middle-English period. In the following quotations the absence of *to* is, apparently, required by the metre:

You ought not walk, | Upon a labouring day, without the sign | Of your profession. SHAK., JUL. CÆS., I, 1, 3.

How ought I address thee, how ought I revere thee? BROWNING, AGAMEMNON, 796.

III. Also when the infinitive is, for emphasis, placed in front-position, which is only possible when it is connected with any of the above verbs, it now regularly stands without *to*.

Beg he must. LYTTON, My Novel, VII, Ch. XV, 467.

Think of her I could not help. MRS. GASK., Mr. Harrison's Confessions, Ch. XII (423). (an unusual construction.)

In Middle English it was frequently preceded by *to* (EINENKEL, Synt., § 4, 2), and occasional instances may be met with in Early Modern English.

To belie him, I will not, and more of his soldiership I know not. SHAK., ALL'S WELL, IV, 3, 299.

6. As to the use of *to* before the infinitive after *to need* in the sense of *to be required* (*to be under a necessity* or *obligation*) usage is variable.

Before starting on an exposition of the prevailing practice, it seems desirable to advert to the use of *to do* in connexion with this verb, and to some anomalies in its conjugation.

The unsettled nature of some syntactical features in this verb is, no doubt, due to its occupying an intermediate position between a full verb and one which, like *must*, etc., is felt to form a kind of unit with the following infinitive.

7. *To need* dispenses with the use of *to do*,

a) apparently regularly in questions with inverted word-order. See also 9, *a*; and 12, *a*.

i. Need I say more? WILK. COL., *The Traveller's Story*.

Need he ever know? GALSW., *Saint's Progr.*, II, V, 1 §, 138.

ii. Why need we always play for such high stakes? FLOR. MAR., *Bankr. Heart*, II, 45. T.

Why need she herself be so scrupulous? GALSW., *Beyond*, III, Ch. XII, 333.

b) in negative sentences with *not*, 1) mostly in the present tense, the suffix *s* (or *eth*) of the third person singular being usually suppressed. See also 9, *b*; and 12, *a*.

You needn't mind sending up to me if the child cries. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 21.

That need not be! Mrs. Wood, *The Channings*, Ch. III, 14.

Constructions with *to do* are, however by no means rare. See also ELLINGER, *Vermischte Beiträge*, 66, where many instances are given. Rich baronets do not need to be careful about grammar. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VIII, 78.

You do not need to be rich to invest in State securities. Eng. Rev., No. 109, Adv.

You don't need to tell me. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXVIII, 252.

The quasi-impersonal *it needs not* (Ch. XLV, 5; Ch. LIII, 6, *b*) varies with *it does not need*, but the latter appears to be less common, at least before a passive infinitive.

i. It needs not to tell what she said and promised on behalf of Nelly. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 318.

It needs not to be said that much which is true of our country at that time is also true of others. MARY BATESON, *Medieval England*, Pref.

ii. It does not need to take everything Lord Charles Beresford says without a grain of salt. Eng. Rev., 1912, Sept., 284.

2) almost regularly in the preterite indicative in subordinate clauses, the tense-suffix being suppressed. See also 11, *a*; and 12, *b*.

He told me that I need not make myself at all uneasy about his daughter's unhappiness. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 276 *a*.

Mr. Freely meant her to have a house so pretty and comfortable that she need not envy even a wool-factor's wife. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, (394).

So she made up the fire and got her French book, which she need not begin reading till she felt disposed. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. XII, 197.

*Did not need*, or the literary *needed not*, appears to be far less common.

i. There were . . . moments when her thoughts . . . seemed to yield her such fullness and happiness that she did not need to lift a finger to increase the joy. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 294.

ii. She saw that she needed not to fear. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XVI, 96.

Except for subordinate clauses the construction with *to do* is the usual one in the preterite indicative, *needed not* appearing only as a literary variant.

i. They did not need to speak much to each other. G. ELIOT, *Fel Holt*, I, Ch. VI, 130.

He did not need to be a hatter to see that it was a very good Panama. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

ii. John needed not to reply. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXXVI, 393.

3) apparently regularly in the preterite conditional followed by a perfect infinitive, the tense-suffix being ordinarily suppressed, and the whole word-group expressing the fact that an action or state for which there was no necessity has yet come into fulfilment. See also 11, *b*; 12, *c*; and 58, *b*.

i. He need not have done it after all. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XI, 71.

You need not have told me that. FLOR. MAR., *Bankr. Heart*, I, 20. T.

ii. He needed not to have undertaken an arduous march of 260 miles. SOUTHEY, *Penins war*, II, 630.

He needed not to have alarmed himself even enough to make him take this step, if he had been capable of understanding Ellinor's heart as fully as he did her appearance and conversation. Mrs. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. IV, (437).

8. The anomalies in the conjugation of *to need* are twofold, viz:

*a*) the dropping of the ending *s* (or *eth*) in the third person singular of the indicative,

*b*) the suppression of the tense-suffix *ed* in the preterite indicative and conditional.

9. The first anomaly "is apparently partly the result of similarity of meaning to that of the preterite-present verbs (Ch. LVIII, 11); .. partly due to the verb *need* .. being formed directly from the noun *need* through the ambiguity of such sentences as Early Modern English *What need all this waste?*" SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1487.

*a*) The omission of the personal ending appears to be almost regular in questions. See also 7, *a*, and 15, *c*.

What need she be acquainted? SHAK., *Com. of Er.*, III, 2, 15.

What preacher need moralise on this story? THACK., *Four Georges*, III, 86. T.

*b*) The dropping of the personal ending is distinctly the rule,

1) in sentences or clauses containing a negative word, i. e. *not*, *never* or *no*; or a word implying a negative, i. e. *but* (or *only*), or *hardly* (or *scarcely*). See also, 7, *b*; and 15, *c*.

i. \* Tell the housemaid she need not light the dining-room fire to-day. ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*, § 46.

How Miss Sharp lay awake thinking, will he come or not to-morrow? need not be told here. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 37.

\*\* Valour need never pray to Fortune. LYTON, *Rienzi*.

\*\*\* He who is down need fear no fall. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, I, Ch. I, 10. T.

Nobody need waste time on discussing the amount of sense in such stuff. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 14, 261 *b*.

ii. \* Aunt Olive has kindly written to tell you exactly why I am here, so that my letter need only be a supplement to hers. *SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins*, I, 109 T.

\*\* It is a matter of comparatively common knowledge that metals are subject to diseases. Lead, it need scarcely be said, is not immune. *II Lond. News*, No. 3857, 330.

2) in subordinate clauses when the head-sentence contains a negative or negative-implying word, and also when the complex, although containing no negative, has a negative import.

i. There is nothing in this decision which need cause us the slightest uneasiness. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5031, 1 *b*.

ii. That is all that need be said. *EL. GLYN, The Reason why*, Ch. VII, 70. (*all* has the value of *the only thing*.)

iii. This completes what need be said about principal sentences. *FOWLER, The King's Eng.*, 140. (Underlying notion: No more need be said.)

A pleasant room it was as any party need desire to muster in on a cold November evening. *G. ELIOT, Scenes*, II, Ch. IV, 101. (Underlying notion: No party need desire a pleasanter room.)

Poor young man, he seems to come oftener than he need. *BAR. VON HUTTEN*, *Pam.*, Ch. II, 15. (Underlying notion: He need not come so often.)

Exceptions seem to be mostly due to the preposition *to* being placed before the infinitive (for the sake of the metre or rhythm), the preposition destroying, in a manner, the closeness with which *to need* is connected with the infinitive and, to a certain extent, re-establishing its independence and, consequently, its regular conjugation. See also 13.

He that is well hanged in this world needs to fear no colours. *SHAK., Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 6.

I am not wont to be baffled in my enterprises, nor needs a Norman noble scrupulously to vindicate his conduct to the Saxon maiden whom he distinguishes by the offer of his hand. *SCOTT, Ivanhoe*.

The parents want the child's help and care, the child is bound to give it; that is all it needs to know. *Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm.*, I, 196. T.

In the following quotation *needs* is used, although the following infinitive is not preceded by *to*, the metre requiring its absence.

I see a man here needs not live by shifts. *SHAK., Com. of Er.*, III, 2, 187.

The personal ending appears to be regularly preserved in the quasi-impersonal *it needs not*, *it needs only*. See also 7, *b*, and especially Ch. LIII, 6, *b*.

It needs only to turn over a page or two of Ray's collection of English proverbs to become convinced that many of our homely adages are coarse enough. *PROF., Handl.*, III, § 108.

Similarly in *there needs*, which appears to be mostly divided from the infinitive by the subject.

There needs no ghost, my lord, come from the grave | To tell us this. *SHAK., Hamlet*, I, 5, 125.

There needs be no beggar in countries where there are many acres of unimproved improvable land. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 90, 470.

c) When under no negating influence, *to need* normally retains the personal suffix.



To be a poet a man needs to be advantageously placed in the world. TOM HOOD, *Eng. vers.*, VI.

The Tree of Life needs to be well shaken before the new fruit will drop. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. VI, 98.

A statesman needs to view problems from an entirely different and much wider platform than was necessary half a century ago. V. SEYMOUR BRYANT, *The Public School System*, Ch. VI, 72.

Excepted are certain phrases, viz: *a)* *he (she or it) need be*, when approximately equivalent to *he (she or it) may in all fairness be expected to be (considering)*, Dutch *dat mag hij (zij, het) dan ook wel*; *β)* *as need be*, in which the anticipating *it* is dispensed with (Ch. II, 18, *b*), the suppression of the personal suffix being, perhaps, due to the analogy of *if need be*, in which *need* is a noun and the subject of the subjunctive *be* (Ch. XLIX, 37, *a*). See also 11, *c*.

i. "It's only about young Twist, my dear," said Mr. Sowerberry, "a very good-looking boy, that, my dear." — "He need be, for he eats enough," observed the lady. DICK, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 57

ii. I fall as deep as need be in love with a young lady. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4. Compare: What happened to her own heart did not matter so long as he was happy, and had all that he wanted with her and away from her — if need be — always away from her. GALSW., *Beyond*, IV, Ch. IX, 411.

10. The dropping of the tense-suffix may be due to the *d* of *need* being felt as the ending of the preterite (STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 1038), but, more probably, to the haplology which has given existence to numerous shortenings, such as *England* (from Old English *Englaland*, i. e. the land of the Angles), *eighteen* (from Old English *e(a)htatýne* or *-tene*), *humbly* (instead of *humblely*) *wed* (instead of *wedded*), etc. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 342; JESPERSEN, *E. S.*, XXIII, 461. It should also be observed that the substitution of *need* for *needed* often makes for an improved rhythmical flow of the sentence.

11. The dropping of the tense-suffix is chiefly met with in negative contexts.

*a)* It is distinctly the rule in the preterite indicative in subordinate clauses, especially subordinate statements. See also 7, *b*, 2.

It was hinted that perhaps they need not always make so much smoke. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. I, 49.

Lloyd George assured Dr. Wirth .. that he need not be anxious for the future. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 22, 451 *a*.

The principal sentence is understood in:

He need say no more this evening, and risk giving himself away. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, Ch. IV, (478),

Exceptions are not unfrequent.

She saw that she needed not to fear me. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XVI, 96.

They promised with the eyes what they needed not to promise with the tongue. A. HOPE, *The Chron. of Count Antonio*, Ch. III, 82. T.

The quasi-impersonal *It needed not (but, only)*, apparently, preserves the suffix regularly. Compare 7, *b*.

She soon found that it needed but to know both ladies to comprehend fully the enigma. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 283.

In principal sentences suppression is usual only when another verb shows the time-sphere, but *needed not* is in ordinary language replaced by *did not need*. See also 7, b, 2.

Thirty years ago you needed but to be a Milor Anglais travelling in a private carriage, and credit was at your hand whenever you chose to seek it. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. I, 9.

ii. \* John needed not to reply. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXXVI, 393.

\*\* One did not need to be told that. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 26 b.

iii. Mr. Weston need not spend a single evening in the year alone if he did not like it. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. I, 12.

There was play, certainly — all the world played ... But nobody need play who did not like; and surely nobody need have scruples regarding the practice. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIV, 724.

b) The dropping of the tense-suffix is practically regular in the preterite conditional followed by a perfect infinitive.

You needn't have been so sharp. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IV, 29.

You need not have told me that. FLOR. MARRYAT, *Bankr. Heart*, I, 20. T.

The following quotations exhibit exceptional practice:

He needed not to have undertaken an arduous march of 260 miles. SOUTHEY, *Penins. War*, II, 630.

She hardly needed to have asked this question. MRS. GASK, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 209.

Thus also the following quotation, in which the non-perfect infinitive seems to have been erroneously used for the perfect infinitive:

We feel in reading Mr. Robertson's smarting indictment that, if this be indeed the whole of the case, then the attack scarcely needed to be made. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 25, 496 c.

c) In non-negative contexts the full form *needed* is the rule.

The ladies Devenish were not disposed to make her life any easier than it needed to be. FLOR. MARRYAT, *Bankr. Heart*, 230. T.

M. Charles Rivet .. in an arresting study, entitled the Las. of the Romanofs, sets forth many things that needed to be said. *Punch*, No. 4005, 240 a.

But the suffix is regularly suppressed in the phrases a) *I (you, etc.) need be* in the sense of *I (you, etc.) had need be*, and β) *as need be* (Ch. II, 18, b). See also 9, c.

i. Is yours a strong constitution? inquired Tozer. Paul said that he thought not. Tozer said that he thought not also, judging from Paul's looks, and that it was a pity, for it need be. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 105.

ii. They would be as happy among themselves as need be. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VI, 64.

On they went as briskly as need be. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 165.

12. a) *To* is dispensed with after the form *need as a* present indicative,

1) regularly in questions. See also 7, a; and 9, a.

Then live, Macduff: what need I fear of thee? SHAK., *Macb.*, IV, 1, 82.

2) mostly in negative contexts, including such as imply a negative, although containing no negative word. See also 7, b; and 9, b.

i. \* What an amazing place London was to me when I saw it in the distance ... I need not stop here to relate. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36 a.

\*\* Heaven knows we need never be ashamed of our tears. *id.*, *Great Exp.*, Ch. XIX, 192.

\*\*\* While I live, you need have no fear for Doggie. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XIV, 171.

ii. \* Only the closing of the opening need be heard for the ear to distinguish the sound. RIPPMMANN, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, § 21.

\*\* I need hardly say that I shall be grateful for any criticisms and suggestions. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, Pref., 16.

\*\*\* We need express little surprise. *Westm. Gaz.*, 14/10, 1922, 1*a*.

iii. On the whole I don't think people need keep awake at nights worrying about us. *ib.*, No. 8373, 6*b*.

iv. \* Very little appears to have happened that need be kept secret. *ib.*, No. 8467, 3*a*.

\*\* It is only for that that we need postpone the marriage. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. VI, 88.

\*\*\* Of course that is not all, but it is all I need speak of. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 56.

\*\*\*\* They made the prettiest, quaintest groups, you need think of. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5185, 45*a*.

In Early Modern English *to* is not unfrequently retained in negative contexts, not only in verse, but also in prose.

i. It adds more sorrow to my want of joy: | For what I have I need not to repeat. SHAK., *Rich.* II, III, 4, 17 (verse).

You need not to fear the bawd. *id.*, *Meas. for Meas.*, II, 1, 247 (prose). As for triumphs, masks, feasts, weddings, funerals, capital executions, and such shows, men need not to be put in mind of them. BACON, *Es.*, XVIII, *Of Travel*.

ii. The boy never need to understand any thing. SHAK., *Merry Wives*, II, 2, 132 (prose).

Even in Late Modern English instances are not wanting.

You need not for a moment to insinuate that the virtues have taken refuge in cottages and wholly abandoned slated houses. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. V, 78. T.

You need not to suppose that . . . your class are martyrs. *ib.*, I, Ch. V, 78.

I need not to swear that oath, for I have sworn it long ago. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XXVI, 202*a*.

ii. He that would form a lively idea of the regions of the damned need only to witness, for six hours, a scene to which I was confined. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, Ch. XI, 253.

*b)* After *need* as a preterite indicative *to* appears to be regularly suppressed in negative contexts. See also 7, *b*; and 11, *a*.

i. Miss Bussey observed in an indignant tone that John need not throttle the dog. A. HOPE, *Com. of Courtship*, I, Ch. I, 5.

ii. The victory was so complete that fear need play no part in the settlement. KEYNES, *Econ. Consequences*, Ch. III, 34.

*c)* Similarly after *need* as a preterite conditional followed by a perfect infinitive *to* is regularly dispensed with in negative contexts. See also 7, *b*, 3; 11, *b*; and 58, *b*.

i. He had spoken late, but he need not have spoken at all. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XXII, 260. T.

ii. If at that moment he had clasped her and kissed her, instead of sitting there, glaring into space, the rest of this story need never have been written. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XX, 184.

d) When the context is not negative, *to* is rarely absent.

i. People need to rise early, to see the sun in all his splendour. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 38.

It is you who need to slink and cower, not we. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. XI, 329.

ii. I know my duty, I need know it, I am sure. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIX, 74 *a*.

You need have good cards, sir. *id.*, *Two Cities*, III, Ch. XIII, 336.

The absence of *to* is regular in the phrases *I (you, etc.) need be* in the sense of *I (you, etc.) had need be*, and *as need be*. For illustration see 9, *c*; and 11, *c*. In SHAKESPEARE *to* is sometimes retained.

I was as virtuously given as a gentleman need to be. *Henry IV*, A, III, 3, 17.

**13.** After the finite forms *needs* (or *needeth*), *needest* and *needed* the infinitive almost regularly stands with *to*. See also 9, *b*, 2.

i. The officer needs to be exceptionally spry to get through his multifarious duties in a satisfactory manner. *Graph.*, 1892, 759.

ii. He never needed to ask what they were about. LYTON, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XXII, 262.

The following quotations exhibit exceptional practice, mostly due to the requirements of metre or rhythm:

i. Nor need'st thou much importune me to that | whereon this month I have been hammering. SHAK., *Two Gent.*, I, 3, 17.

Thou need'st say no more. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXIV, 224. T.

Thou need'st no longer fear me. *ib.*, 232.

ii. This incident .. needed be no surprise to him. HUME, *Hist. Eng.*, III.

**14.** After the verbals the infinitive is almost regularly preceded by *to*. See also 7, *b*, 2.

i. His drink, too, will need to be carefully provided. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. IX, 227.

ii. But most of us hate such methods, as we hate bad smells, without needing to philosophise about them. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 18, 342 *e*.

iii. The favourite seat of Byron in the churchyard of Harrow Hill has needed to be guarded by an iron cage from the poet's admirers, who were carrying it away piecemeal. EDW. E. MORRIS, *Introd. to Byron's Childe Har.*, 12.

**15.** a) *To need* is used not only in the meaning of *to be required*, but also in that of *to require* (Ch. LIII, 5 *b*). The latter meaning is indubitable in the verb when it has a (pro)noun for its object, as in *I need your assistance*; and also when it is construed with an accusative + infinitive; thus in:

I don't need you to tell me what you think. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, I, Ch. II, II, 74

b) Also when followed by an infinitive, especially a passive infinitive, *to need* may have the second meaning, but in this combination there is mostly some uncertainty as to the interpretation to be put upon the verb. It is particularly the verbals which, when followed by an infinitive, frequently lean to the second interpretation.

i. The study of English can make its own way, and needs not to be supported by any rudeness. SKEAT, *A Student's Pastime*, No. 128.

I know all I need to know about her. HICHENS, *The Fruitful Vine*, Ch. II, 24.

ii. \* One did not need to be told that. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 26 *b*.

The night air is chill, and you must need to eat and rest. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. II, 17.

Things she would formerly have understood at a half-word, she now affected to need to have explained to her. GISSING, *A Life's Morn*, Ch. XV, 219.

Or a chariot! to carry us up into the sky, where the lamps are stars and don't need to be filled with paraffin oil every day. SHAW, *Cand.*, II, (155). T.

\*\* I am sitting here with some vanity in me, needing to be scolded. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, II, Ch. LI, 353.

\*\*\* I have never needed to use the catheter again. *II. Lond. News*.

e) There would, however, be no reason for insisting on the second meaning of *to need*, if it were not for the fact that it seems to account for a grammatical peculiarity which, otherwise, would be rather baffling. Thus contrary to the practice ordinarily observed with *to need* in the first meaning, we find it in the second meaning taking the personal ending of the third person in the present indicative. See 9, *a* and *b*.

i. Who needs to be told that if a woman has a will, she will assuredly find a way? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 164.

ii. Vice to be hated needs but to be seen. POPE, *Es. on Man*, II, 218.

It was an ugly story of low passion, delusion and waking from delusion, which needs not to be dragged from the privacy of Godfrey's bitter memory. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn*, I, Ch. III, 25.

I consider the ode beyond the scope of those for whom it (sc. this book) is intended, and it needs not to be discussed on that account. TOM HOOD, *Vers.*, 43.

The immense part that sensation has played in the evolution of the drama hardly needs to be elaborated. HOR. HUTCHINSON, (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8879, 10 *a*).

d) After *to need* in the second meaning the passive infinitive varies with the gerund, which is regularly kept in the active voice (Ch. LVI, 26, *b*).

The statement contains at least two assumptions which need looking into. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8373, 7 *a*.

- 16 Also before proceeding to discuss the variable practice regarding the use of *to* before the infinitive after *to dare*, it seems advisable to draw the student's attention to the use of *to do* in connection with this verb, and to some anomalies in its conjugation.

Like *to need*, *to dare* is felt partly as a full verb, partly as a verb forming a kind of unit with the following infinitive. Hence the vacillation in some of its syntactical features.

17. a) In questions *to do* is mostly dispensed with, questions of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3) being, apparently, regularly constructed without *to do*. Note the frequent *How dare you?* See also 21, *a*.

i. \* Do you dare say this? JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 446.

Did he dare set himself up to be finer clay than that common soldier? W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. IX, 100.

\*• Dare you suspect me whom the thought would kill? BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CXLII.

Dare you promise to come to me in ten years and tell me with complete frankness what you think of — a certain step? GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XIV, 201.

He was sitting there, prodding at the gravel, a nervous twittering in his heart, and that eternal question: Dare I speak? asking itself within him. GALSW., *Beyond*, III, Ch. V, 273

Dared he? After all, dared he go so far as that? *id.*; *In Chanc.*, Ch. IV, (478).

ii. How dare you think your lady would go on so? BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CXLVI.

How dared you read it? GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, II, Ch. III, 63.

How dared he bring such an unchristian message as a challenge to a boy of his school? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XV, 154.

How dare you say such a thing? SHAW, *Cand.*, II, (145). T.

b) In negative sentences or clauses with *not* the written language, apparently, prefers the simple, the spoken language the periphrastic construction. See DEAN ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*<sup>8</sup>, § 53. Compare also 28.

I. Though I was hungry, I dared not eat my slice. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. I, 14.

I daren't go to him alone. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XV, 87.

II. I did not dare do so. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 35. T.

I didn't dare leave him for an instant DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 125. T.

In the rather unusual imperative the simple construction is, apparently, confined to literary language.

I. Dare not to return hither a fourth time. SCOTT, *Antiquary*, 401.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. "Shall I ask him to come to you, madam?" — "No don't dare to do it, if you love me," G ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, II, Ch. I, 345.

Don't you dare call my wife a monster! SHAW, *OVERRULED* (*Eng. Rev.*, No. 54, 191).

Don't you dare say a word against him. JEROME, *Miss Hobbs*, I, (25).

18. The anomalies in the conjugation of *to dare* consist in the frequent suppression of the personal suffix in the third person singular of the present indicative, and of the tense-suffix in the preterite.

19. a) The absence of the personal ending is due to the verb being one of the preterite-present verbs (Ch. L, 8, *e*; Ch. LVIII, 11). The original form *dare*, like its preterite *durst*, remained undisturbed until the modern period. But early in the sixteenth century the new forms *dares* and *dared* appeared in the South. The form (*he*) *dares* was already quite common in the seventeenth century, and is now more frequent than (*he*) *dare*, at least before an infinitive with *to* (25). According to A. SCHMIDT (*Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *dare*) SHAKESPEARE uses *dare* and *dares* indiscriminately. Here follow a few quotations with *dare*.

1) SWAEN, E. S., XX, 290.

Curses not loud but deep, mouth-honour, breath, | Which the poor heart would fain deny, but dare not. SHAK., Macb., V, 3, 28. .

The poor Amy is now greater than she dare name. SCOTT, Ken., Ch. IV, 45. It is a thing so terrible that one dare not think of it. Graph., No. 2691, 770 a.

She dare not say his name. J. M. BARRIE, Adm. Crichton, III, 109.

In the following quotation the two forms occur successively:

Here boldly spread thy hands, no venom'd weed | Dares blister them, no slimy snail dare creep. BEAUM. & FLETCH., Faithf. Sheph., III, 1.

The original form *dare*, instead of the modern *dares*, seems to have been regularly preserved in questions.

Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against the sweetest of young women? THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 188.

For detailed discussion of (*he*) *dare* as distinct from (*he*) *dares* see SKEAT, A Student's Pastime.

b) MURPAY (in O. E. D., s. v. *dare*, Note) observes that "the northern dialects generally retain *he dare*, *he durst*, and writers of northern extraction favour their retention in literary English when followed by the simple infinitive without *to*". SHAKESPEARE has only *durst*, and also BUNYAN seems to have used no other form. Throughout the eighteenth century *durst* appears to have been more generally used than *dared*, but as we approach more modern times, the latter form is more and more preferred, *durst* gradually becoming unusual in Standard English. According to MURRAY (in O. E. D., s. v. *dare*, B, I, 1, c) *none dared to speak* is more emphatic than *none durst speak*.

Longer I durst not stay. MILTON, Comus, 577.

None ever durst attack him. FIELD., Jos. And., I, Ch. XII, 29.

I durst not, alas! tell the truth. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Ch. III, 36.

Sunday was the day he always gave to Beatrice. But he durst not think of that now. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. XXIII, 319.

In Early Modern English *durst* is also used as a preterite conditional. This practice survives only in the language of the illiterate, where *durst*, however, is mostly felt as a present indicative, in like manner as *ought* or *should*. Compare FRANZ, E. S., XII; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 766. For illustration see also Ch. XLIX, 13, f.

I have no desire, and besides, if I had, I durst not. STERNE, Tristram Shandy, III, XX.

"Come down and undo the shop-window that I may get in that way." — "I durstn't do it, Simmun," cried Miggs. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. IX, 38a. Not to put too fine a point upon it, I couldn't have done it, I durstn't have done it. id., Bleak House, Ch. XLVII, 396.

Sometimes it is uncertain whether *durst* is to be apprehended as a preterite indicative or preterite conditional.

Many a vile plan dwelt with him, which he knew he durst not put into practice. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. XIII, 184.

c) Besides *dared* and *durst* we also find *dare* as a preterite indicative, chiefly in connexion with *not*. The substitution of *dare* for *dared* in connexion with *not* is, apparently, due to H. POUTSMA, III 1.

phonetic decay, the *d* of the three successive point-consonants in *dared not* naturally falling out in unaffected speech. Compare the analogous substitution of *usen't* for *used not*, and *musn't* for *must not*, as in:

i. "I am not one of her admirers." — "I usen't to be, but I am now." OSC. WILDE, *Lady Wind Fan*, III, (102).

ii. You musn't delay me. SHAW, *Man of Dest.*, (235). T.

The preterite indicative *dare*, although condemned by MURRAY (in O. E. D., s.v. *dare*, A, 1, c) as careless, is frequent enough in writers of unquestionably pure English. Compare JESPERSEN, E. S., XXIII; id., *Negation*, 124; SARRAZIN, E. S., XXII, 334; SWAEN, E. S., XX; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 766; HOPPE, *Sup. Lex.*<sup>2</sup>, s.v. *dare*. See also 24.

A sense of awe, weakness, all but fear, came over him. He dare not stoop to take up the wood at his feet. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 2*a*.

I dare not ask my mother for books, for I dare not confess to her that religious ones were just what I did not want. id., *Alt. Locke*, Ch. II, 29.

He sat with his head bent forward . . . a tattered, haggard, hopeless wretch, so broken down that one dare not reproach him. CONWAY, *Called Back*, 242.

The use of *dare* as a preterite without *not* is less common.

For none of all his men | Dare tell him Dora waited with the child. TEN., *Dora*, 75.

Could he, dare he, confess to him the whole truth? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 2*b*.

Instances of *dare* as a preterite conditional appear to be very rare (Ch. XLIX, 13, f).

If I were not chained to the floor, you dare as well eat your fingers as use such language. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, II, Ch. XIV, 272.

He dare not keep you waiting if you were at liberty. SHAW, *Man of Destiny*, (203). T.

Do you think that, if I wanted those despatches only for myself, I dare venture into battle for them? ib., 220.

*d)* Since the sixteenth century *to dare* has also been used as an ordinary transitive verb in various shades of meaning. As such it has always been conjugated regularly: *dares*, *dared*.

20. The use of *to* before the infinitive after *to dare* has been the subject of a good many painstaking investigations. Especial mention may be made of those instituted by SATTler (E. S., XXVI), SWAEN (E. S., XX and XXIII), ELLINGER (E. S., XXI, and *Vermischte Beiträge*, 75 ff), FIJN VAN DRAAT (*Rhythm in Eng. Prose*, *Angl. Forsch.*, 29). The last-mentioned scholar has made a strong case for the use of *to* depending in large measure on the requirements of metre and rhythm. It is partly on the results obtained by the above scholars that the following exposition is based.

21. *Dare* as a present indicative is followed by an infinitive without *to* :  
*a)* mostly in questions with inverted word-order. Instances of the alternative practice appear to be uncommon. See also 17, *a*.



i. O Rebecca, Rebecca, for shame! . . . How can you — how dare you have such wicked revengeful thoughts? THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 10.

But after what I have said, dare you accuse me again of being ignorant of housemaids? PUNCH, No. 3721, 349 a.

ii. How dare you to insinuate that you don't know any character better than your words imply? DICK., COP., Ch. IV, 25 a.

b) mostly in negative contexts.

They (sc. the officials) dare not stir outside the Castle walls, except in armoured cars. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5379, 2 b.

c) occasionally in contexts which are neither interrogative nor negative. *To* seems to impart an emotional colouring to the utterance.

i. If you dare utter a word against me, you will find that, as I am the last to care for a threat, so I am the first to resent an injury. LYTON, Night & Morn., 153. T.

ii. "Mr. Copperfield," returned my mother, "is dead, and if you dare to speak unkindly of him [etc.]" DICK., COP., Ch. I, 4 a.

You dare to tell me that I have no imagination! GALSW., SILV. BOX, II, (58). T.

22. a) In the phrase *I dare say* in the sense of *I have no doubt, I am prepared to admit*, or *I do not wonder*, the bare infinitive is, however, practically fixed (Ch. I, 63).

Don't let us despair, I dare say things will all, somehow or other, turn out for the best. WASH. IRV., DOLF HEYL. (STOF, HANDL, I, 149).

I dare say I gave myself airs as editor of that confounded "Museum." TROL., THACK., Ch. I, 9.

"I should be quite amused to know what you did talk about." — "I dare say you would." BEATR. HAR., SHIPS, I, Ch. III, 13.

b) As the phrase is sometimes represented as an isolated expression, i. e. one which admits of no variation, it seems desirable to state here that variations are not particularly uncommon; not only so far as *we* may take the place of *I* in editorial statements, but also, in reported speech, as regards the ordinary possibilities of person or tense.

i. Arabella repaired to her place of destination, wherever it might have been; we dare say Mr. Winkle knew, but we confess we don't. DICK., PICKW., Ch. XXX, 272.

ii. He (sc. the poor relation) dare say you must find a great convenience in having a carriage of your own. CH. LAMB, Last Es. of El., Poor Relations, (294).

iii. "I have always defended you, and said, I didn't think you so ugly by any means." — "Thank you." — "And I dared say you'd make a very good sort of a husband." SHER., School, I, (48).

To this Mrs. Nickleby only replied that she durst say she was very stupid. DICK., NICK., Ch. LV, 336 a.

c) *I dare to say* (and its variations) with *to* before the infinitive, is equivalent to *I venture to say*, but is unusual. *I dare not say*, with the bare infinitive, on the other hand, seems to occur pretty frequently in the sense of *I do not venture to say*.

i. \* So I dare to say, will be the task that our own and the French mounted arm will still find imposed on them when these pages appear in print. Eng. Rev., No. 101, 377.

\*\* Molly dared to say Mrs. Barter would let his honour see the house. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 11.

ii. I daren't say I know, but here are some impressions. Westm. Gaz., No. 6564, 12*b*.

We dare not say it is untrue. *ib*, No. 7011, 1*a*.

d) In conclusion we call attention to such variants of *I dare say* as *I dare answer*, *I dare swear*, *I dare think*, which also appear to dispense with *to* before the following infinitive.

i. "Then you're no friend to the ladies, I find, my pretty young gentleman?" — "That's as I find 'um." — "Not to her of your mother's choosing I dare answer." GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, II, (194).

ii. I dare swear the truth of the matter is, Maria heard you were here. SHER., *School*, I, I, (366).

I dare swear he will do both (*sc.* look after the place and marry). MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progr.*, I, Ch. I, 6.

iii. The Moor, howbeit that I endure him not, | Is of a constant, loving, noble nature, | And I dare think he'll prove to Desdemona | A most dear husband. SHAK., *Oth.*, II, I, 299.

23. *Dare* as an imperative seems to require *to* before the following infinitive, but this application of the verb is an uncommon one.

"Death and hell! | Dare to speak thus when you come out again." — "Dare to provoke me thus, insulting man!" DRYDEN, *Span. Friar*, II, I, (139).

You bring me, to-morrow morning early, that file and them wittles .. You do it, and you never dare to say a word or dare to make a sign concerning your having seen such a person as me. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. I, 8.

24. *Dare* as a preterite indicative is rarely, if ever, followed by an infinitive with *to*. See also 19, *c*.

I dare not ask my mother for books. KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Ch. II, 29.

25. Both *dares* and *darest* mostly stand with the bare infinitive. In fact hardly any instances of the alternative practice have come to hand up to the moment of writing.

i. \* Let me hear now who dares call him profligate. SHER., *School*, IV, 2, (406).

One often fancies in reading him (*sc.* Swift) that he dares not be eloquent when he might. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, I, 16. T.

\*\* Yonder is the enchanted manor, and the dragon, and the lady, all at thy service, if thou dardest venture on them. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. II, 26.

But there be deeds thou dardest not do. BYRON, *Bride of Ab.*, I, V.

ii. What art thou that dardest to echo my words? SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, I)

26. *Dared* as a preterite seems to govern a bare infinitive regularly when negatived by *not*. In other negative connexions there appears to be some predilection for the prepositional infinitive. For the rest the infinitive rarely stands without *to*, the preposition being in regular use when the two verbs are divided by another element of the sentence.

1) SWAEN, E. S., XX.

i. He daredn't refuse Miss Crawley anything. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIV, 138.

His fiercest torment was the thought that he dared not fulfil the menace. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. XIII, 184.

ii. \* No one dared attempt to stop him. LAMB., Tales, XII, 201. T.

I never dared say so before. LYTTON, My Novel, II, X, Ch. XXV, 242.

If only I dared tell her now. BEATR. HAR., Ships, 81.

The disillusion was so complete that some of those who had trusted most hardly dared speak of it. KEYNES, Econ. Cons., Ch. III, 35.

\*\* Here no spectre dared to show his face. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 349.

Nobody dared to annoy one whom he honoured with his countenance. DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 46 a.

Neither side dared to strike the first blow. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. II, 257.

Hood scarcely dared to utter the words which came into his mind. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. V, 83.

iii. \* My mother immediately began to cry, and I wondered how Peggotty dared to say such a thing. DICK., Cop., Ch. VIII, 56 b.

The noble wanderer (sc. Lord Byron) put boldly out to sea with his fortunes, and dared to hope for consolation on distant shores. LYTTON, Life of Lord Byron, 23 a.

She dared to feel that, because she dared to believe in the endless mercy of God. HICHENS, The Garden of Allah, II, 136. T.

\* Who dared, I want to know to make us suffer so? THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXV, 797.

27. *Durst* almost regularly stands with a bare infinitive. See the quotations in 19, b. The only instances of the alternative practice that have come to hand are the following, in which the use of *to* is, apparently, due to some other element of the sentence intervening between the two verbs:

I durst, my lord, to wager she is honest. SHAK., Oth., IV, 2, 12.

Nor durst they for a while to knock any more. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog. <sup>1)</sup>

28. After the infinitive *dare* the use of *to* is the rule, but constructions without *to* are by no means unfrequent. They are especially common after *do* (or *did*) *not dare*, but occur also after other complex predicates with *dare*. Some element of the sentence being placed between the two verbs entails the use of *to*. When *dare* is not part of a complex predicate, i. e. when it is itself preceded by *to*, usage is variable. See also 17, b.

i. \* I did not dare to interrupt him. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 148, d.

\*\* She almost did not dare be affected by the hymn the children sang. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 114.

Here lies the coward who did not dare forgive. LYTTON, Rienzi, V, Ch. I, 194.

I did not dare show my face at Court for a month. OSC. WILDE, D. or. Gray, Ch. II, 48. T.

You don't dare sit there and tell me coolly you're a married man! SHAW, Overruled (Eng. Rev., No. 54, 183).

ii. \* That I should dare to remain thus alone in darkness, showed that my nerves were regaining a healthy tone. CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XXIII, 321.

<sup>1)</sup> SWAEN, E. S., XX.

He would admire her hands and feet, and delight in looking at their beauty, and long, yet not dare, to kiss them. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. XV, 256.

\*\* I shall not dare show my head. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 15.

Who will dare question the tradition of Shakespeare's deeply religious cast of thought towards the end of his life? *Lit World*, 1891, 3*e*.

iii. I shall not dare openly to say so. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, V, Ch. III, 269.

iv. \* The mother .. seemed only thus to dare gaze in the face of her exceeding joy. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIX, 422.

\*\* This stimulated Joe to dare to stay out half an hour longer on Saturdays than at other times. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. X, 94.

29. After *daring*, whether as a gerund or a present participle, the infinitive does not, apparently, tolerate the absence of *to*.

i. Without daring to seem to understand them. SCOTT, *Fort. of Nigel*, 286.

ii. I got down after the lady who was like a haystack, not daring to stir, until her basket was removed. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36*b*.

30. The past participle *dared*, although usually governing an infinitive with *to*, is occasionally found with a bare infinitive.

i. Look what Orestes has dared to send me. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. IV, 18*a*.

Mrs. Hood has not dared to hint at the truth. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XV, 224.

ii. Hugh was not the only one she would have dared tell her story. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, II, 21.

Who had dared upset his darling? GALSW., *Beyond*, I, Ch. II, 20.

31. In passing attention is drawn to the fact that *to dare* seems to admit of being construed with a gerund or a noun of action. The following are the only instances that have come to hand, these constructions being, apparently, very rare.

i. Burke had decided to keep himself in hand until the time should come when he should dare risking a declaration in form. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam*, IV, Ch. I, 158.

ii. Deronda dared no movement. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LI, 121.

32. *To* is mostly absent before the infinitive standing after *had better*, *had as soon*, *had need*, and similar locutions, in which *had* is a preterite conditional, although often understood as a present or preterite indicative (Ch. XLIX, 13, *c*). For discussion of other aspects of these phrases see Ch. II, 27; and Ch. LIII, 9. *had better*. Instances of the infinitive standing with *to* appear to be very rare.

i. You had better tell me. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

ii. If any man is of that humour, he had better to cut himself up .. before he meets me again. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. I, 4*a*.

He had better not to speak to me, unless he is in love with gaol and gallows. *ib.*, Ch. VII, 52*b*.

Note. With *I had better* compare the practically equivalent *I should do better*, which regularly takes *to* before the following infinitive.

I was standing looking at this house and wondering whether I shouldn't do better to go right back home there and then. A. BENNETT, *The Great Adventure*, I, I, (19).

*were better*. Rare in Late Modern English. The construction with the bare infinitive seems at all times to have been the normal one.

i. Poor lady she were better love a dream. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, II, 2, 27.

Were we not better .. send him on to the court? SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XVI, 114.

ii. I were better to be married of him than of another. SHAK., *As you like it*, III, 3, 85.

You were better to go down and see after poor Lucy. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVII, 208*a*.

Note. On the analogy, perhaps, of *I (you, etc.) were better*, the infinitive sometimes stands without *to* after (*it were*) *better*. Instances are especially met with in verse, the omission of *to* being required by the metre.

i. \* Were it not better sleep and wake no more? SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XVII, 195.

\*\* Better dwell in the midst of alarms | Than reign in this horrible place. COWPER, *Alex. Selk.*, I.

ii Better to wear out than to rust out. PROV.

Better to be anxious for others than only for thyself. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XI, 56*b*.

*had best*. Not in SHAKESPEARE. Rather uncommon.

I had best lose no time in getting to my post. SHER., *Duenna*, I, 1, (310).

He did not know what they had best do. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XV, 123.

As the young gentleman who has just gone to bed is to be the hero of the following pages, we had best begin our account of him with his family history. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. II, 14.

We had best go back now. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, III, 74.

It is clear that it won't do to overdose you with information about this place, and that you had best suck it in little by little. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 77.

*were best*. Now distinctly rare. SHAKESPEARE seems to use the two constructions indifferently.

i. You were best stick her. SHAK., *Two Gent.*, I, 1, 108.

ii. Your ladyship were best to have some guard about you. *id.*, *Twelfth Night*, III, 4, 13.

We're the Squire's tenants here, and we're best to keep the right side of him. RICH. BAGOT, *Darneley Place*, I. Ch. II, 25. T.

Note. In SHAKESPEARE we also find instances of (*it were*) *best* + bare infinitive, the omission of *to* being required by the metre.

Best first go see your lodging. *Twelfth Night*, III, 3, 20.

Observe also the absence of *to* in:

It is best | Put finger in the eye, an she knew why. *Taming of the Shrew*, I, 1, 78.

*had liefer* (or *liever*). Apparently not in SHAKESPEARE, though much earlier instances are given by the O. E. D., s. v. *lief*, A, 1, *d*. Instances with a prepositional infinitive have not been found. The phrase is now distinctly archaic and literary, *had rather* or *had sooner* ordinarily taking its place.

I had liefer twenty years | Skip to the broken music of my brains | Than any broken music thou canst make. TEN., *Last Tourn.*, 257.

Far liever by his dear land had I die | Than that my lord should suffer loss or shame. *id.*, *Ger. & En.*, 927.

*had rather*. The construction with the bare infinitive is now practically the only one in use. In Early Modern English the infinitive with *to* seems to have been less unusual. The O. E. D. cites two instances. SHAKESPEARE's practice does not materially differ from the present, there being only one instance with a prepositional infinitive in his works.

i. I'd rather have been shot myself. *Mrs. Wood*, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 44.

II. I had rather to adopt a child than get it. *SHAK.*, *Oth.*, I, 3, 191.

*had sooner*. Of comparatively recent date: not in SHAKESPEARE. In colloquial English more frequent than its equivalent, *had rather*. No instances with the prepositional infinitive have come to hand.

I'd sooner cut my tongue out. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, I, 2.

I'd sooner kill a man than a dog any day. *DICK.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXI, 82*a*.

*had as good*. Not in SHAKESPEARE, but frequent enough in writers of the eighteenth century. Now somewhat unusual. Only instances with the bare infinitive have come to hand.

You had as good come along with me to the jubilee now. *FARQUHAR*, *Const. Couple*, V, 3, (132).

I perceive .. that none of you have a mind to be married, and I think we had as good go back again. *GOLDSMITH*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXII, (489).

He had as good mind his own business. *DICK.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. LVII, 477.

*had as lief* (or *lieve*). Now archaic and literary, *had as soon* being its ordinary substitute. Apparently the phrase is regularly construed with the bare infinitive.

I had as lief take her dowry with this condition. *SHAK.*, *Taming*, I, I, 135.

I'd as lieve let it alone. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, V, 3.

I'd as lieve stand. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XIII, 118*a*

*had as soon*. Of comparatively recent date: not in SHAKESPEARE. Apparently construed only with the bare infinitive

I'd as soon undertake to keep Portocarero honest. *VANBRUGH*, *False Friend*, II, I.

*had as well*. Not in SHAKESPEARE and altogether rather unusual. Apparently regularly construed with the bare infinitive.

You had as well come to the window. *SCOTT*, *Mon.*, Ch. XIV, 16.

*had need*. Formed on the analogy of *had better* (*rather*, etc.). *Need* is now adverbial in grammatical function, but originally it was a noun, being used as such with the indicative of *to have* from the earliest periods, and followed by an infinitive with *to*. The construction without *to* however, appears already in Middle English, the O. E. D.'s earliest instance being drawn from the *Paston Letters* (1461). In Present English both the bare and the prepositional infinitive are met with, the latter less frequently than the former. See especially STOFFEL, *Taalstudie* VIII, 230.

i. Thou hadst need send for more money. *SHAK.*, *Twelfth Night*, II, 3, 199.

I had need be patient with him. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audley*, II, Ch. XIII, 268. T.

ii. Our wardens had need to keep good order. SCOTT, *Lay*, III, xx.

The man who reviews his own life . had need to have been a good man indeed, if he would be spared the sharp consciousness of many talents neglected. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XLII, 301 *b*. (This may be the usual practice with the perfect infinitive.)

Note *a*) *Had need* in a similar meaning is also met with after weak *there*.

Nan suggested there was something besides ancestry to be reckoned with. "There had need be", Miss Janet retorted. UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Ch. II, 33.

*β*) It will be observed that the substantival function, which originally attached to *need* in this *phrase*, is still distinctly discernible when an infinitive with *to* follows. This substantival function is unquestionable, when *need* is connected with the indicative of the verb *to have*.

"What need have I to say more!" — "You haven't need to say so much." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 278 *a*.

The bells of a city church have need to be loud. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, I, Ch. XVI, 123.

Being a noun, *need* may be preceded by an adnominal modifier; thus frequently by *no*.

i. Tom had no need to direct that appalling look towards his friend. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVI, 287 *a*.

ii. Mary's making him a black silk case to hold his bands, but I told her she'd more need wash 'em for him. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. III, 205. (Note the curious absence of *to* before the infinitive.)

*γ*) *Had need* is also found construed with a noun. Of this construction no Late Modern English instances have been found.

But Beauty, like the fair Hesperian tree | Laden with blooming gold, had need the guard | Of dragon watch with unenchanted eye, | To save her blossoms, and defend her fruit | From the rash hand of bold Incontinence. MILTON, *Comus*, 394.

Here ne had need | All circumspection. *id.*, *Par. Lost*, II, 413.

In the following quotation the noun-construction is found together with the ordinary construction with the bare infinitive:

I had need have it well roasted and good sauce to it, if I pay so dear. MARLOWE, *Doct. Faust.*, I, 4, 12.

33. The verbs *to come*, *to go* and *to help* are sometimes construed with a bare infinitive. In Modern English this construction appears to be practically confined to the infinitive of these verbs, only the imperative of *to go* being occasionally found with the non-prepositional infinitive also. It is even doubtful if the verb after the imperative of *to go* is not in some instances meant to be an imperative as well. No other interpretation is, of course, acceptable, if the two verbs are separated by a pause.

The above verbs are now mostly followed by the prepositional infinitive, sometimes varying with the gerund. Frequently also, especially in colloquial English, the two successive verbs are,

by way of hendiadys, connected co-ordinately by *and*. For detailed discussion and illustration of the various possible constructions the student is referred to preceding chapters of this grammar:

as regards *to come* see Ch. I, 11; 70, Obs. II; Ch. X, 5, *c*; Ch. XVIII, 12; 24, Obs. II; Ch. XX, 15, Obs. IV;

as regards *to go* see Ch. X, 5, *b*; Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. II; Ch. XIX, 45; 63, Obs. I and III;

as regards *to help* see Ch. XIX, 18, *c*; 34.

Compare also my paper on Hendiadys in *Neophilologus*, II, III and IV.

34. *a)* After *to come* the bare infinitive has become obsolete. The O. E. D. (s. v. *come*, 3, *e*) mentions no later instance than one dated 1647. EINENKEL (*Hist. Synt.*, § 4, *η*) gives an instance from VANBRUGH. A much later instance is the following:

Lay thy sheaf adown and come | Share my harvest and my home. THOMAS HOOD (1798—1845), *Ruth*, V.

*b)* *To go* is found with the bare infinitive in the latest English, but except for dialects, only archaically (O. E. D., s. v. *go*, 32, *a*). See also Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VIII.

i. He went straight from here purposing to go see his uncle. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Bart.*, Ch. XXIII, 249.

I'll go see him. BAR. ORCZY, I will repay.

ii. Go work to-day in my vine-yard. Bible, *Matth.*, XXI, 28.

Go, tell him I am here. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1, (225).

Go see who it is. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. XLVI, 358 *a*.

Note the rather frequent imprecatory *go hang*, as in:

The reconstruction of the Ministry may go hang. *Il. Lond. News*.

They lose their heads in an emergency and conclude too quickly that the time has come for letting iaw go hang. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 302 *c*.

*c)* The use of the bare infinitive after *to help* is pronounced to be now dialectal or vulgar by the O. E. D., s. v. *help*, 5 *a*; but it is by no means unfrequent in style which is innocent of vulgarity.

Hannah contemptuously forbore to make her come in and help clear away. Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, I, 37.

And you help do all the rooms. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, I, 39. T.

We want you to help decide this question. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 472, 663 *a*.

The (sc. the Young Turks) can go to the Army and invite it to help save the sacred city. *Sat. Rev.*

It would seem to be the patriotic duty of all to help make perfect the scheme. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 1 *c*.

Thus even after other forms than the infinitive the construction without *to* is occasionally met with.

They helped place the scenery. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXXII, 287.

She had helped concoct her grandson's journey to Middelburg. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. X, 105.



Also in the construction in which *to help* is divided from the infinitive by a (pro)noun, *to* is frequently enough absent in style which can hardly be taxed with vulgarity. According to ONIONS (A d v. E n g. S y n t., § 165) the dropping of *to* is especially current in American English, and "has, no doubt, been furthered by the regular construction with *hear, feel, etc.*" Also considerations of rhythm or metre may not unfrequently have operated towards the suppression of *to*.

i. Help me lift the little sofa near the fire. DICK., D o m b., Ch. VI, 55.

You must help us make our nests. BRADBY, D i c k, Ch. IX, 98.

He can stay and help Dick tidy up. WILLIAMSON, L o r d L o v e l a n d, Ch. XXVIII, 247.

ii. P. Gordon was helping Black Dick put things to rights. *ib.*, Ch. XXVIII, 246.

Mrs. Britling helped him pack a bag. WELLS, B r i t l i n g, II, Ch. III, § 9, 286.

### Practice after Verbs governing an Accusative + Infinitive or an allied Construction.

35. After verbs which express a perceiving or discovering the infinitive almost regularly stands without *to*; excepted is only the verb *to be*, which in this connexion regularly takes *to*. For illustration, which, for the rest, is easily procurable, see Ch. XVIII, 31. Here we may confine ourselves to giving some instances of the comparatively rare construction of *to see* + (pro)noun + *to be*. Observe that in this connexion *to see* is used in the meaning of *to find*, denoting a mental as opposed to a physical perception.

I see it to be so. BUNYAN, P i l g., P r o g., I, 10.

Never tell him what she saw him to be. G. ELIOT, F e l. H o l t, I, Ch. IX, 172.

She was truly a high-minded person of that order who always do what they see to be right. MER., R i c h. F e v., Ch. XLII, 422.

36. Obs. I. *To* is sometimes found before the infinitive of other verbs than *to be*, where, in many cases, it apparently appears for the sake of the metre or rhythm. Compare ABBOT, S h a k. G r a m.<sup>3</sup>, § 349; FRANZ, S h a k. G r a m.<sup>2</sup>, § 650 f; MÄTZN., E n g. G r a m.<sup>2</sup>, III, 14.

The multitude wondered, when they heard the dumb to speak, the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk and the blind to see. Bible, M a t t h., XV, 31.

But I perceive thy mortal sight to fail. MILTON, P a r. L o s t, XII, 8.

These eyes | Which have not seen the sun to rise | For years. BYRON, P r i s. o f C h i l., II.

I've never heard any one to touch you. Westm. G a z., No. 8455, 5 b. (Observe that *to hear* = *to be told* and *to touch* = *to equal*.)

II. After *to find* and *to know* in its modified meaning of *to observe* (Ch. XVIII, 34, Obs. V) *to* is not seldom met with, apparently irrespective of considerations of metre or rhythm. So far as appears from the available evidence, the bare infinitive is the rule after *to find*, the case being reversed after *to know*. The prepositional infinitive appears to be fixed when it is passive.

*to find*: i. I did not find those rash actions answer. SHER., C r i t i c, I, 2.

I find the King's English express my meaning better. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. XVII, 285.

You'll find the lock go the better for a little oil. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 310 *b*.

ii. The next annoyance that we had was a very bad smell, which we found to proceed from the drains. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

I found this plan to tell through life. Mrs. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 8.

*to know*: i. I have known him walk with Tiny Tim on his shoulder very fast indeed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV.

I have known her take it (sc. green tea) in ignorance many a time without such effects. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 240.

I've known the plainest of women become quite good-looking. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XXII, 274.

ii. \* I had never known him to pass the garden-gate before. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 68 *b*.

I never knew the Duke to fail. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 343.

\*\* I have know her to be thrown into fainting fits by the King's taxes. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XI, 79 *b*.

I have known an imposition of Two Thousand Lines of the Poet Virgil to be set in punishment. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, III, 205.

III. Mention may here also be made of the collocation *to hear say* (*tell*, or some other verb of a similar import) followed by an objective statement, or by *of* (in vulgar language *on*) + (pro)noun, in which the infinitive regularly stands without *to*, the accusative (*people*, *persons* or *somebody*) being suppressed because of its indefiniteness. It used to be common enough, but is now felt to be dialectal or more or less vulgar (O. E. D., s. v. *hear*, 3, *c*). Compare also Ch. III, 24, Obs. II; and Ch. XVIII, 9, Obs. I.

i. I heard say your lordship was sick. SHAK., *Henry IV*, B, I, 2, 118.

I heard tell she has a power of money, LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. XVIII, 337.

ii. \* In this house, . . are we to hear talk of nooses? DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. XXV, 165 *b*.

I've heard tell of dumb dawgs. HERB. JENKINS, *Bindle*, Ch. V, 72.

\*\* I've heerd tell on him. Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audley*, Ch. XIV, 286.

37. The bare infinitive is also the rule after *to have*. For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 31, *b*.

It is my wish to have my son make some figure in the world. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*

Also the verb *to be* in this connexion mostly seems to stand without *to*. The construction is, however, an unusual one.

I would have you be on your your guard. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVI, 145.

I would not have it be so. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. VII, 276.

I can't bear to have people be sorry. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam.*, Ch. X, 56.

38. Obs. I. The prepositional infinitive seems to be more common than the bare infinitive after *would have*. SHAKESPEARE appears to use the two constructions indifferently. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 651. Of especial frequency is the combination *I would have you (to) know*.

I. They would not have you to stir forth to-day. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 2, 38.

I suppose you'd have me to learn to cut capers. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVI, 57. T.

I'd have you to know that I don't care a penny, madam, for your paltry money. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXV, 368.

What would you have me to do? READE, *Cloister*, Ch. III, 22.

An idiot is a human being, sir, and has an immortal soul, I'd have you to know. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 103

ii. I would not have my father | See me in talk with her. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 3, 9.

I'd have you know I was never afraid of losing my mistress in earnest. WYCHERLEY, *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, (137).

I would not have you provoke me to the degree of falling foul. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. I, 17.

Would you have your father stop here, useless and despised. BUCHANAN, *Wint. Night*, Ch. II, 22.

What would you have me do? SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2316.

II. The infinitive in the following quotations is best understood as a kind of adverbial adjunct of purpose, so that *to* could not possibly be dispensed with.

You ought to .. have your black nurse to tuck you up in bed. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVI, 802.

You will not have him to dine with you? G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. VII, 195.

Why do you have disreputable people to stay with you? Mrs. WARD, *Rich. Meyn.*, II, Ch. VII, 150.

39. After the verbs which express a judging, knowing, remembering or declaring, and such as express a revealing or showing, the infinitive, mostly *to be*, regularly takes *to*. For illustration see Ch. XVIII, 31, *c*) and *d*).

40. The verbs of causing, viz. *to cause*, *to do*, *to make* and *to occasion* show different practice. For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 31, *e*.

*a) To cause* and *to occasion* are all but regularly followed by an infinitive with *to*.

He caused the troops to march onwards. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 397, Note.

She asked Matilda what occasioned Manfred to take Theodore for a spectre. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. IV, 193.

Instances of the alternative practice are not, however, entirely wanting.

Setting spurs to his horse, he caused him make a demivolte across the path. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 17.

She caused men make a silver image fair | Of me unhappy. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acris.*, 78*a*. (Evidently due to the requirements of metre; substitution of *made* for *caused* being objectionable for reasons of euphony.)

*b) Also to do*, when archaically construed with an accusative + infinitive requires *to*.

We .. do thee to wit that [etc.] SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXI, 323.

For metrical reasons *to* is suppressed in:

And as she fled, her mantle she did fall. SHAK., *Mids.*, V, 1, 14.

c) After *to make*, on the other hand, the bare infinitive is the ordinary construction.

She made the oldest established families in the country . . . know their distance. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXII, 773.

The prepositional infinitive, however, is not uncommon. Apart from metrical or rhythmical considerations it is not unfrequently preferred,  $\alpha$ ) when the accusative is a lengthy sequence of words,  $\beta$ ) when the accusative is represented by a relative pronoun, or otherwise leaves its ordinary place and stands after the infinitive,  $\gamma$ ) when the infinitive is preceded and modified by *so*. Sometimes there is no apparent reason for the use of *to*. For detailed discussion and illustration see especially FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in Eng. Prose*, § 46 ff (*Ang. Forsch.*, No. 79). In face of the comparative frequency of *to* in this connexion, also in contemporary literature, the statement that this practice is now archaic (O. E. D., s.v. *make*, 53) can hardly be maintained.

i. \* Down ran the wine into the road, | Most piteous to be seen, | Which made his horse's flanks to smoke | As they had basted been. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, XXXII.

\*\* The wild justice of this idea made the blood to bubble in his ears. HALL CAINE, *Manxman*, VI, Ch. IX, 180.

We cannot make the deaf to hear. We cannot make the dumb to speak. *Graph.*, 1889, 346.

Interesting from a rhythmical point of view is the alternate use of the two constructions in:

Money makes the old wife trot, and makes the mare to go. *Prov.*

Amelia's love makes the burning sand grow green beneath him, and the stunted shrubs to blossom. CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*, I, 30. T.

ii. When I see youth going to capsize on virtue, it makes my blood, as a Christian man, to curdle. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XXXVIII, 260.

More than any other of his arguments, Mr. Hyndman's preference for the conditions in the States will make any one who knows India to smile. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8052.

iii. He got a premium of four or five hundred pounds with each young gent, whom he made to slave for ten hours a-day. THACK., *Sam. Tim.*, Ch. II, 11. An occasional trespasser in well-ordered domains makes to glow the more brightly the sense of proprietorship. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. III, 55.

iv. Some power or other has made them so to do. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIV, 685.

v. Your innocent smiles made me to bear up against my misfortunes. LAMB, *Tales*, *Temp.*, 14. T.

What made you to swear to fatal vows? THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, I, 30. T.

But the circumstance which more than any other has made Ireland to differ from Scotland, remains to be noticed. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 66.

Note. The bare infinitive is fixed in the expression *make believe*, in which the accusative is understood.

He denied it utterly, made believe at first to think they were accusing him in joke. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*

41. After verbs expressing a desiring or a (dis)liking the prepositional infinitive is now obligatory. For illustration see Ch. XVIII, 31, *f*) and *g*). In Early Modern English we sometimes find *to* suppressed evidently from considerations of metre. Compare MÄTZN, Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 15.

I would wish you reconcile the lords. MARLOWE, Edw., II, I, 4.

Sir, I desire you do me right and justice; | And to bestow your pity on me. SHAK., Henry VIII, II, 7, 13. (Observe the varied practice.)

42. This seems to be the most suitable place to discuss the use of *to* after verbs of allowing, commanding or requesting, which are often construed with a person-object + infinitive, a construction which bears a close resemblance to the accusative – infinitive. The bulk of these verbs normally stand with the prepositional infinitive. For illustration see Ch. XVIII, 31, *h*; 38, Obs. I.

*a*) After *to bid* practice is variable. In verse the choice between the two constructions naturally depends on the metre. In prose the bare infinitive is distinctly the rule, especially after the monosyllabic forms of the verb, the absence of *to* mostly making for an improved rhythmical movement of the sentence. The prepositional infinitive, however, appears to be the normal construction when the (pro)noun forming the person-object is not immediately followed by the infinitive. For instances of the prepositional infinitive see also ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 8.

*a*) *bid*: i. I would stay .. if you bid me stay — or if you bid me go. WALT. BES., All Sorts, Ch. XIV, 115.

ii. Bid Rodolph of Saxony approach! LYTTON, Rienzi, V, Ch. I, 192.

iii. She would bid the girls hold up their heads. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. I.

iv. The faithful Tinker, having wakened her bedfellow, and bid her prepare for departure, unbarred and unbolted the great hall-door. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VII, 72.

*bids*: He gives me a stroke on the head with his cane; bids me carry that to my master. SHER., Riv., II, 1.

*bade*: The good woman bade me remain in the apartments we occupied. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 164

*bidding*: It was Traddles; whom Mr. Mell instantly discomfited by bidding him hold his tongue. DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 48 *b*.

*β*) *bid*: He bid his horses to be prepared LAMB, Tales, Lear, 155. T.

*bids*: We are now poor, my fondlings, and wisdom bids us to conform to our humble situation. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. III, (246).

*bade*: He bade the conductor to put him down at the gate of the Upper Temple. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 303.

*γ*) i. And hereby (i) take farewell, bidding all gents who peruse this, to be cautious of their money, if they have it. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 184. Have I not bidden you never to look upon the face of woman? KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. I, 3a.

ii. I cannot bid the bright star again sparkle in the sphere it has shot from. SCOTT, Ken., Ch. IV, 44.

*b*) After *to let* the prepositional infinitive is very rare. A. SCHMIDT (s. v. *let*) registers none in SHAKESPEARE. The O. E. D. gives

four instances, the latest of which is dated 1678. For discussion see also KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXIII, 327.

i. Would you let any woman you love be contaminated by their company? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 264.

The Government has let it be understood that it is prepared to negotiate with the French before their withdrawal from the Ruhr. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 301 *d.*

ii. These visions will not let them sleep, will not let their tongues to cease from bitterness. *GALSW., Country House*, III, Ch. VII, 270 (Note the varied practice.)

c) When other verbs of this description are construed with a bare infinitive, this is, evidently, done from considerations of metre in the majority of cases. This applies to all the instances given by MÄTZN. (*Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 10) and also to the following: Your betters have endured me say my mind. SHAK., *Taming*, IV, 3, 75. Tell him, so please him, come unto this place. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 140. But first I beg you | Thank me for Frederick's visit. BRIDGES, *Humours of the Court*, II, 1, 1116.

A few prose instances have come to hand.

A host of servants stood around and begged Heaven bless her ladyship. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 202.

And now, my lord Savelli, for my question, which I pray you listen to. LYTON, *Rienzi*, V, Ch. I, 191.

Elementary humanity forbade him leave his lame old godmother one moment unattended. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *The Lost Iphigenia*, Ch. I, 24.

43. a) The infinitive is normally preceded by *to* after the passive voice of any verb; accordingly also after all the verbs which may be construed with an accusative + infinitive. For illustration see Ch. XVIII, 42. The regular use of *to* may have been furthered by the metrical and rhythmical advantage it offers.

There's a letter for you, sir .. if your name be Horatio, as I am let to know it is. SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 6, 11.

We shall be let to go home quietly. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

b) *To*, however, seems to be regularly absent in the collocations (*to be*) *made believe*, *let go*, *let drop*, *let pass*, *heard drop* and perhaps, a few others, in which the two verbs form a kind of unit. Compare WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 47; KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXIII, 327.

i. Part of the fraud and deception of the slop-trade consists in the mode in which the public are made believe that the men working for such establishments earn more money than they do. KINGSLEY, *Cheap Clothes & Nasty*. (73).

ii. \* The lucky insects are let go their way. HOR. HUTCHINSON, (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6228, 4 c).

\*\* This (sc. felled oak) could be let fall in a moment. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVII, 219.

iii. The smallest pin could be heard drop. *Lit. World*, 1889, 9 Nov., 381.

c) For the rest exceptions from the rule are very rare.

After tea I am made sing some fal la la of a ditty. EATON STANNARD BARRETT, *The Heroine*, Let. I.

Practice after the Conjunctions *but* (*except, save*), *as* and *than*.

44. The bare infinitive is regularly used after *but* and its synonyms *except*, and *save*:

a) after the phrases *I cannot but*, *I cannot choose but* and *I cannot help but*, and their variations for tense, number and person. The two last phrases are now more or less archaic or, at least, unusual in ordinary Standard English. For illustration of *I cannot but* + infinitive see also Ch. I, 35, Obs. IV.

i. I cannot but admire his courage. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 194.

ii. He cannot choose but break. SHAK., Merch., III, 1, 120.

She could not choose but adore him with all her heart. DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 46 a.

She could not choose but derive from the spectacle confirmation to her hopes. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. VII, 133.

He could not choose but speak the truth. Mrs. GASK., A Dark Night's Work, Ch. VI, (462).

He could not choose but love her. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXV, 186.

Thus also: You shall not choose but drink before you go. SHAK., Taming, V, 1, 12.

The Government could hardly choose but resign. Times, 16/4, 1925, 428 c.

iii. We could not help but love each other. HALL CAINE, Christ., IV, Ch. XV, 282.

He could not help but see him. HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy, Ch. XI, 2, 272.

A cynic .. couldn't help but mention that last Saturday 10.000 people paid £ 30.000 to see a polo game at Hurlingham. Graph., No. 2691, 770 a.

The cause of peace could not help but be advanced to-day. Westm. Gaz., No. 9370, 1 a.

Note. According to JESPERSEN (Negation, 80) the construction *I cannot help but* + infinitive is an Americanism, Englishmen using *I cannot help* + gerund instead. In view of the frequency of the construction in the works of English writers that can hardly be held to have been influenced by American idioms, his opinion seems to be without proper foundation. Compare also KRUISINGA's comments on the above treatise in English Studies, III, 11, 58.

b) when preceded by a construction with the bare infinitive *do* as part of a complex predicate.

i. What does Fanny do, but fall into a deep melancholy? THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXIV, 894.

What could a weak old man do but yield? TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. LII, 456.

ii. I can't do anything hardly, except write. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. IV, 28.

There are women .. who can't do a blessed thing except write letters. W. J. LOCKE, Stella Maris, Ch. I, 9.

c) when preceded by certain negative collocations with *to do*, such as *he does nothing*, *he never does anything*, *there is nothing to be done*.

i. \* He does nothing but laugh. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 117.

He had done nothing but talk to his tutor. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 86.

\*\* Unless I had taken the life of Frabb's boy on that occasion, I really do not even now see what I could have done save endure. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. XXX, 203.

ii. You never did anything in your life except make yourself agreeable. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 11. T.

iii. There is apparently nothing to be done for the present except bring opinion to bear upon the more obstinate of the masters. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6353, 1c.

Thus also in: He does everything but attend to his own business. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 535.

45. a) For the rest the prepositional infinitive is used after *but* practically to the exclusion of the infinitive without *to*. Note that one and the same idea underlies the idioms illustrated by the first four quotations:

i. We had no alternative but to state, boldly and distinctly, that he had been required to eat cold meat. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVII, 344.

ii. There was nothing for it but to pay. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XX, 210.

iii. I have no choice but to accept the fact. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 225.

iv. What was left to them but to drink and get merry, or to drink and get angry? G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. III, 25.

v. What did she want in life but to see the lad prosper? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 81.

vi. We had no duties provided for us save to eat and sleep. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. II, 31. T.

vii. There remains no more but to thank you for your courteous attention. O. E. D., s.v. *but*.

viii. What could poor Jane expect but to be married for her money? AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 134.

b) Infinitives which have a distinctly final function naturally require *to*.

He hath never spoken a word, save to ask for his food and his reckoning. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. I, 18.

When the notion of purpose is vague, the necessity of placing *to* before the infinitive is not felt. Thus variable practice may be observed in the construction instanced in the following quotations:

i. They have nothing to do but enjoy themselves. O. E. D., s.v. *enjoy*, 2, b.

ii. I am sure we in England had nothing to do but to fight the battle out. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 891.

46. a) The infinitive standing after *as* is normally preceded by *to*. For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 28, a), c) and d).

I asked the carrier to be so good as to reach me my pocket handkerchief again. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32 a.

b) DICKENS has a trick of occasionally dropping *to* after *as* as a correlative of *so*. For the rest this practice seems to be exceedingly rare in Late Modern English.

i. If you'll be so good as give me your keys my dear, I'll attend to all this sort of thing in future. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 b.

If he was to make so bold as say a word to me, I should slap his face. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 54 b.



ii. You chose to be so obliging as give it (sc. the money) me. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. III, 24.

47. a) After *than* the infinitive normally stands without *to* when it corresponds to another infinitive without *to* in the same grammatical function.

A man might do worse than make happy two of the best creatures in the world. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 289.

I think you can't do better than go. READE, *Never too late*, I Ch. VI, 63. T.

He would die sooner than yield. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2322.

Thus also when *than* depends on *other* or *otherwise*.

i. I would not do other than ask Miss Roberts to my house. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 399.

ii. We could not do otherwise than obey his orders. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. VIII, 55.

Instances of the alternative practice, sometimes due to the requirements of metre or rhythm, seem to occur chiefly in the older writers.

Brutus had rather be a villager | Than to repute himself a son of Rome |  
Under these hard conditions as this time | Is like to lay upon us. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 172.

I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God, than to dwell in the tents of wickedness. Bible, Psalm LXXXIV, 10.

Nothing could touch me nearer than to see that generous worthy gentleman afflicted. FARQUHAR, *Recr. Of.*, II, 2, (269).

I cannot do better than to try to give you an idea of our modern industrial system. BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, 33.

She might do worse than to accept for a while the harsh shelter of the work-house. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XVIII, 115.

b) When the corresponding infinitive is preceded by *to*, usage is variable, the tendency being, perhaps, to use rather the prepositional than the bare infinitive.

i. I would advise you to employ an honest and respectable house in London, rather than to have recourse to the Oxbridge tradesmen. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 186.

It is better to exceed a little with a friend, than to observe the strictest regimen, and eat alone. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. III, 263.

Better to be a lonely woman all your life than to marry a man whom you have never loved. BESANT, *Bell*, II, Ch. XIX, 107. T.

ii. He chose rather to encounter the utmost fury of the storm abroad, than stay under the same roof with these ungrateful daughters. LAMB, *Tales Lear*, 158.

I thought it better to take the anthem myself than give it to a junior, who would be sure to make a mull of it. Mrs. WOOD, *Channings*, Ch. I, 4.

Even when the infinitive expresses some notion of purpose or allied adverbial relation, usage is divided.

i. Since you are in the humour to talk rather than to sleep. BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, 33.

I have nothing more to do than to declare our proceedings terminated. Times.

ii. The coachman had strict orders to turn into the dirtiest 'e-street rather than risk meeting a funeral. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, II.

He is determined to resign sooner than yield. *Athen.*, No. 4463, 528 *b*.

Sooner than yield he resolved to die. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, 2322.

Competition is bound to increase rather than diminish. *Westm. Gaz.*, No 6311, 2 *b*.

48. *a*) When there is not a corresponding infinitive in the same grammatical function, the infinitive after *than* normally stands without *to*.

Age and good living had disabled him from doing more than ride to see the hounds thrown off and make one at the hunting dinner. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, X, 98.

Rather than disturb him she went for a light-box and his cigar-case to his bed-room. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 185.

General Boulanger took to flight rather than face the personal risk of trial. *Graph.*

*b*) The prepositional infinitive, however, seems to be all but regularly employed after:

1) *further than* in the sense of *except for*, *beyond*.

The English Duke took little part in that vast siege of Lille, further than to cover the besieging lines. *THACK.*, *Es m.*, II, Ch. XIV, 275.

You have nothing to do with the master of Thornfield further than to receive the salary he gives you for teaching his protégée. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 196.

2) *to know better than*. For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 7, Note; 28, *e*; Ch. XXX, 7 *b*; and compare Ch. XLVI, 29.

i. They might know better than to leave their clocks so very lank and unprotected, surely. *DICK.*, *Crick.*, I, 4.

You ought to know better than to encourage a child to make herself ridiculous. *SHAW*, *The Philanderer*, II, (111).

ii. "There's one of your tradesmen." — "It isn't. They know better than come to my front door." *A. BENNETT*, *The Great Adventure*, III, I, (103).

Thus, probably, also after the uncommon *to learn better than*.

If I let you shriek your abominable little throat hoarse, you'll learn better than to torment your uncle. *HABBERTON*, *Helen's Babies*, 39.

*c*) Also when the preceding comparative modifies a noun, *than* seems to require the prepositional infinitive.

I hope you have more honour than to quit the service, and she more prudence than to follow the camp. *FARQUHAR*, *Rec. Of.*, II, I, (267).

### Practice in Elliptical Sentences.

49. *To* is often absent before the infinitive in elliptical sentences which have the value of emotional questions.

*a*) The omission seems to be regular when the subject is understood.

"How?" cried I, "relinquish the cause of truth?" *GOLDSMITH*, *Vic.*

Not let Miss Sharp dine at table! *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 108.

Why, then, wait? *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 14.

Why not go there myself? *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 232.

Why not give your friend the same pleasure? *Times*.

b) Also when the subject is expressed, the bare infinitive appears to be more common than the prepositional, the choice, perhaps, depending on whether the infinitive has or has not *to* in the full sentence which is vaguely present to the speaker's mind.

i. I think the worse of him? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XVII, 144.

My nephew marry a tragedy queen! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 15.

ii. You to be low-spirited. You! DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XVII, 145.

I to marry before my brother, and leave him with none to take care of him!

BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXX, 178.

Note. In non-emotional elliptical questions *to* is not dispensed with, any more than in full questions. Thus it could not possibly be omitted in such a sentence as *What to do at Ventnor?* which may be understood to be short for *What are visitors to do at Ventnor?* or *What are visitors recommended to do at Ventnor?*, etc.

50. The prepositional infinitive is regularly used in elliptical sentences which have the value of a complex sentence consisting of a subordinate statement and a head-sentence, the latter being understood or represented by a simple word-group of an emotional description. The subject is mostly understood, but may also be expressed.

Oh God! to hear the insect on the leaf pronouncing on the too much life among his hungry brothers in the dust! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 62.

To think of your turning book-hunter! LYTON, *Caxtons*, XVII, Ch. I, 450.

Oh, for shame, Hans! — to speak in that way of Mr. Deronda! G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VI, Ch. XLVII, 52.

ii. That dear father, who was once so kind, so warm-hearted, so ready to help either man or beast in distress, to murder! MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXII, 230.

Of especial interests are infinitives of the above description which express what is the subject of an idle wish (Ch. XLIX, 18, Obs. II).

Oh! to have been there! ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 42.

51. In elliptical sentences that are co-ordinately related with a preceding sentence with a finite verb, the infinitive may stand with or without *to*.

i. Most sencelesse man he, that himselfe doth hate | To love another. Lo then for thine ayd | Here take thy lovers token on thy pate. So they to fight. SPENCER, *Faery Queene*, I, VI, XLVII. (The *Clar. Press* editor changes *to* into *two*.)

Five days we do allot thee for provision | To shield thee from diseases of the world; | And on the sixth to turn thy hated back | Upon our kingdom. SHAK., *Lea*r, I, I, 178.

ii. Men talk of your being under some special protection; nay, stare not like a pig that is stuck, mon, thou canst not dance in a net and they not see thee. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. IV, 41.

For discussion of the above idiom; viewed, however, from a different angle, see also KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*, § 400; STOF., *Stud.*, A, VII, 44 ff; DUBISLAW, *Beitr. zur hist. Synt. des Eng.*, I; EINENKEL, *Hist. Synt.*, § 4.

The infinitive is distinctly final in meaning and, accordingly, preceded by *to* in such elliptical constructions as:

Ten years the caul was put up in a raffle down in our part of the country, to fifty members at half-a-crown a head, the winner to spend five shillings. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 2*a*.

In 1888 the interest on the greater portion of the National Debt was reduced from 3 to  $2\frac{3}{4}$  per cent, a further reduction to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent to take place in 1903. GOOCH, *Hist. of our own Time*, 13.1)

52. *a*) Infinitives stand without *to* when used as a kind of echo of a preceding infinitive, whether bare or prepositional.

i. "Nephew!" returned the uncle sternly, "keep Christmas in your own way, and let me keep it in mine" — "Keep it!" repeated Scrooge's nephew. "But you don't keep it." DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

ii. "But the enemy has thought fit to withdraw, I think." — "Withdraw! oons, sir, what d'ye mean by withdraw?" FARQUHAR, *Recr. Of.*, IV, 2, (311).

*b*) A bare infinitive as a similar expression of excited feelings, not a mere echo, however, of an infinitive, but rather a reflex of the preceding statement may be seen in:

He was a terrible old fellow, was Lobbs, when his pride was injured or his blood was up. Swear. Such trains of oaths would come rolling and peeling over the way, .. that [etc.]. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151.

### Repetition and Non-repetition of *to*.

53. *To* is often dispensed with before the second of two successive infinitives whose grammatical functions are identical.

*a*) This absence is especially frequent when the two infinitives are connected by *and* and form a kind of unit, or are merely meant to denote different elements of one and the same action or state.

i. Here's a lady possessing a moderate independence who wants to board and lodge with a quiet, cheerful family. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVI, 288*a*.

Tom told me to be sure and remember the rabbits every day. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 24.

ii. There cometh one mightier than I alter me, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and unloose. Bible, Mark, I, 7.

He concluded that his wisest course would be to turn and face his pursuers. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (469).

On Sundays it was his duty to accompany her and carry her bible. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 109).

In many cases the second infinitive is, from a logical point of view, vaguely related to the first as object, as in the case of *to try*, or an adverbial adjunct of purpose, as in the case of *to call*, *to come*, *to go*, *to send*, *to stay* and *to write*. For detailed discussion of what appears as an illogical use of *and* see my treatise on Hendiadys in *Neophilologus*, II, III & IV.

---

1) KRUISINGA, *Eng. Stud.*, I, II, 7.

- i. Her business here on earth is to try and get a rich husband. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. VII, 81.
- ii. Tell the boy to call and see me in a day or two. MORLEY ROBERTS, *Time and Thomas Waring*, Ch. VII, 70.
- iii. If he likes to come to me and beg my pardon for his rudeness, that's another matter. KEBLE HOWARD, *One of the Family*, I, Ch. III, 52.
- iv. My father and mother want you to go and see them for a whole day. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.
- v. I should like to send and get my sketches. RUDY KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. III, 40.
- vi. I asked you to stay and aid us by your counsel. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, x, Ch. XXV, 243.
- vii. It was settled that I was to write to my father and ask him to come over. MRS. GASK, *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 256.

b) Suppression of *to* is also the rule when, although distinctly two actions are thought of, the second, infinitive is the head-word of another infinitive.

The main object of practical grammar is to give — or rather, help to give — a mastery of foreign languages, either living or dead. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 9. Passengers are particularly cautioned not to open the door, nor attempt to alight from the carriages till the train is at rest at the platform. Notice in *London Trains*.

c) Sometimes the non-repetition of *to* is, clearly, due to a desire of terseness or rhythm, or to both.

"My friends!" said Mr. Pecksniff in reply, "my duty is to build, not speak; to act, not talk; to deal with marble, stone and brick, not language." DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 281 b.

It's dreadful to see death, and not weep. SARAH GRAND, *Our man*, Nat., 109. T.

Christina hardly knew whether to laugh or cry. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Antag.*, Ch. VIII, 69.

The requirements of metre are, evidently, reponsible for the suppression in:

They love to see the flaming forge | And hear the bellows roar. LONGF., *Vil. Blacks.*

d) In a great many cases no satisfactory reason can be given for the suppression of *to* beyond the economy of language, which often becomes manifest in the rejection of what SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 58) calls form-words, words that is which do not convey any idea by themselves. It is only natural that anything like consistency, or uniformity of practice, in the repetition of *to* or its suppression is far to seek even with one and the same writer. Thus it would be difficult to account for the varied practice observed in the following quotations taken from a few consecutive pages of one and the same composition, in which, however, the cases of non-repetition outnumber those of repetition:

i. She was not prepared to betray the one, and entrap the other. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, x, Ch. XX, 242.

He had only time to rise and withdraw to the window. ib.

All we can do to-day is to remove my sister, and let the execution proceed. *ib.*, 244.

ii. He wrote a brief line to Levy, charging him quietly to dismiss the execution and to come to Frank's rooms with the necessary deeds. *ib.*, 247.

I have lived to feel the truth of your words, and to bless the lesson. *ib.*, II, xi, Ch. II, 256.

I have so much to ask you, and to talk about. *ib.*, 258.

54. When the second infinitive stands in adversative relation to the first, there is, naturally, a tendency to repeat *to*.

I came not to upbraid, but to serve and to free you. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. IV, 45.

He told Dolf never to despair, but to throw physic to the dogs. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.* I, 138).

55. *a*) In a succession of three or more infinitives in identical grammatical functions *to* is mostly repeated before each of them. The following quotation may be regarded to represent normal practice:

The Tories must come into office free to raise taxation, to defend our own markets, and to meet the great Dominions in their demand for reciprocal trade. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 32, 624.

*b*) It is only natural that for rhetorical reasons this practice is not seldom deviated from.

To thrust on his boots — change his dressing-robe for a frock-coat — snatch at his hat, gloves and cane — break from Spendquick — descend the stairs — a flight at a leap — gain the street — throw himself into a cabriolet; all this was done before his astounded visitor could even recover his breath enough to ask "What's the matter?" LYTON, *My Novel*, II, x, Ch. XXIV, 240.

## Tense and Voice of the Infinitive.

### Introductory Observations.

56. Like the gerund and the present participle, the infinitive is capable of expressing distinctions of tense and voice.

57. The infinitive shows the distinction of tense only when its time-sphere differs from that of the finite verb with which it is connected.

*a*) In the case of its time-sphere being anterior to that of the latter, this is now done by the auxiliary *to have*, mutative verbs (Ch. XLV, 16, *b*) using *to be* for this purpose in earlier stages of the language (Ch. L, 14): Imperfect Infinitive: *to give*; Perfect Infinitive: *to have given*.

In our island the Latin appears never to have superseded the old Gaelic speech. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

It was the misfortune of my friend, however, to have embarked his property in large speculations, WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, IV, 26.

The tense of the infinitive is not affected by the change of the time-sphere in the finite verb with which it is connected. Compare the Gerund in Ch. LVI, 9, Obs. II; the Participle in Ch. LVII, 3, Note *β*). See also Ch. L, 12, *c*.

He toils (toiled *or* will toil) to earn a living.

b) The ordinary auxiliaries of the future tense, *shall* and *will*, having no infinitive, relative futurity is mostly left unexpressed.

I was afraid to sleep, even if I had been inclined. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. II, 20.

Note. It stands to reason that the numerous expedients to express modified futurity, such as *to be going*, *to be about*, *to be near*, *to be in act*, etc., discussed in Ch. L, 68—71, would sometimes be available to supply the want; thus in *The weather seems to be going to change*. *He seemed about to leave the room*.

*About* + infinitive, whether active or passive, occurs rather frequently as a constituent of an undeveloped clause.

No one could have had the slightest foreboding of anything about to happen. MCCARTHY, *Hist. of our own Times*, 2, 92.<sup>1)</sup>

A remnant of one (sc. a fleet) about to be put up to auction. RUSKIN, *Time and Tide*, 194.<sup>1)</sup>

The attributive use of *about* + passive infinitive seems to be very rare.

The about-to-be-released prisoner tried to explain that Irish Unionists were loyal to England. *The New Statesman*, No. 95, 403 *b*.

58. The distinction of voice is expressed by means of the auxiliary *to be*: Imperfect Passive Infinitive: *to be given*; Perfect Passive Infinitive: *to have been given*.

i. She was one of those women .. born to be loved and to love. GALSW. *Man of Prop.*, Ch. IV, 62.

ii. Now Joe, examining this iron with a smith's eye, declared it to have been filed asunder some time ago. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. XVI, 145.

### Tense-shifting in Infinitive Constructions.

59. a) It is a well-known fact that an Englishman is inclined to say *I intended to have come*, but [etc.] rather than *I had intended* (= *should have intended*) *to come*, but [etc.], i. e. to express the notion of completed action in this combination not in the finite verb, where it logically belongs, but in the following infinitive. This remarkable tense-shifting, as it may be called, is to be observed in a good many similar combinations of very frequent occurrence. It has, naturally, excited the interest of many scholars, and has been the subject of not a few grammatical disquisitions. See especially STOF., *Taalstudie IX*; HORN, *Herrig Archiv*, CXIV, 370.

b) There is another kind of tense-shifting, which has as yet, been observed only in constructions with *to hope*, consisting in futurity being indicated by this verb instead of the following infinitive which denotes the action belonging to the future time-sphere.

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 15, 89.

I shall hope to see more of you in future. ANSTEY, In brief Authority, 9.

I shall hope very soon to welcome you at my house. SUTRO, The Choice, 20.

60. a) Tense-shifting as described under a) in the preceding section is unavoidable when the infinitive is connected with any of certain defective verbs which have no past participle and, consequently, no pluperfect conditional, such as *can*, *may*, *must*, *ought* (or *should*).

i. If I had not been so foolish as to enter into that agreement with Messrs. Meeson, I could have got the money by selling my new book easily enough. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. IV, 38. (With which compare the sequel of this sentence: and I should have been able to take Jeannie abroad)

ii. They might have been great people in the country, they preferred being little people in town; they might have chosen friends among persons of respectability and rank, they preferred being chosen as acquaintance by persons as 'ton', LYTTON.

iii. It would have been a severe pang to lose you; but it must have been. You would have thrown yourself out of all good society. I must have given you up. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. VII, 51. T.

iv. I ought to have married: yes I should have married long ago. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. IX, 137.

Note. a) When the present indicative *must* is followed by a perfect infinitive, there is, of course, no tense-shifting.

The spirit must have heard him thinking. DICK., Christm. Car.

β) In passing it may here be observed that *could* when followed by a perfect infinitive is always a preterite conditional. Such a sentence as *Hij zei dat hij niet had kunnen komen* cannot, therefore, be translated by \**He said that he could not have come*, the correct translation being *He said that he had not been able to come*.

b) The same tense-shifting is regularly observed in connexion with *will*, whose past participle is used only by way of exception, and *need*, which as has been observed in 7, resembles, in its grammatical function, the verbs mentioned in a). See also 7, b, 3; 10; 11, b and 12, c.

i. He beat me then as if he would have beaten me to death. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 29b.

ii. Poor Betty! .. she need not have given way to tears on the door-step. GALSW., Beyond, I, Ch. I, 1.

c) Also the construction with the archaic or dialectal *durst* regularly exhibits tense-shifting. For the rest ordinary English has the logical construction *had dared* or *should* (or *would*) *have dared* + imperfect infinitive, colloquial English, apparently, favouring *daren't* + perfect infinitive.

i. I'm glad it is done, though I durst not have done it myself. MRS. GASK., North & South, Ch. XXV, 162.

ii. \* They had not dared to meddle with me. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XLI, 255.

\*\* Hugh was not the only one she would have dared tell her story. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, II, 21. T.



iii. You know you daren't have given the order to charge the bridge if you hadn't seen us on the other side. SHAW, *The Man of Destiny*, (241). T.

61. Obs. I. It will have been observed that the verb used in connexion with the perfect infinitive in the above combinations stands in the conditional. But, as has already been stated in Ch. XLIX 14, Obs. III, the notion of conditionality is apt to get obliterated in the speaker's consciousness when, as is often the case, the protasis of the conditional sentence is understood. As there is no formal difference between the preterite conditional and the preterite indicative, except only in the case of *to be*, this leads to the conditional being indistinguishable from the indicative. The verbs *ought* and *should* have even practically ceased to be used as conditionals unless followed by a perfect infinitive, and this applies more or less to *must* as well (Ch. I, 35, 39, 44).

II. Another point to which attention may be drawn in this connexion is that the construction described above, like all pluperfect conditionals, implies non-fulfilment of what is denoted by the main verb of the predicate. When the predicate is negated, the case is, of course, reversed, fulfilment being, in this case, implied.

III. Tense-shifting does not take place with most words or phrases which serve as substitutes for the above verbs in some of their shades of meaning, such as *to be able*, *to be allowed*, *to be obliged*, *to have*.

An important exception is formed by the verb *to be* which, as has been shown in Ch. I, 29—31, is often used to express some weakened form of coercion or obligation, notions which it has in common with *must* and *ought*. The notion of conditionality not making itself felt, the indicative is used instead of the conditional.

The monument was to have been surmounted by an equestrian statue. *Times*.

Also when the meaning of *to be* is faded to the extent that the verb is a mere copula, the same tense-shifting may occasionally be observed.

Babie performed her mistress's command with the grace which was naturally to have been expected. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. III, 46.

62. a) In the second place tense-shifting is unavoidable in combinations in which the infinitive is connected with the phrases mentioned in 32: *I had better (best, liefer or lieber, rather or sooner), I had as lief or lieve (as soon, as good, as well), I had need, I were better (best)*.

Arthur had better have taken a return-ticket. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 380.  
I had as lief have heard the night-raven. SHAK., *Much Ado*, II, 3, 84.

b) The same construction is regularly observed in connexion with the more or less archaic phrase *had like*, shaped, on the analogy of *had rather* etc., from *was like* (Ch. II, 36, Obs. II). In passing it may be observed that *had like* + imperfect infinitive seems to be non-existent.

It had like to have cost the nursery-maid her place. THACK., *Fitzboodle*, Pref., 209.

I had like to have burst out crying. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. IX, 47.

Note. *Was like* + perfect infinitive seems to be very rare. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

The vivacity of this good lady, as it helped Edward out of this scrape, was like to have drawn him into one or two others. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXI, 152 *a*.

63. The tense-shifting, which is unavoidable with the verbs that have no past participle, is often extended to a good many verbs that are in no way deficient in their conjugation and, accordingly, give no urgent occasion for the anomaly. In the case of some of them, i. e. such as *express*, or at least *suggest*, some movement of the human will, the adaptability to the peculiar construction may be due to their bearing some analogy to *will*. This, for example, applies distinctly to *to intend*, *to mean*, *to want*, *to wish* and, less clearly, to *to (dis)like*. But it cannot be denied that the number includes some others which can hardly be said to express any such notion.

It will be observed that the absence of the notion of conditionality in the speaker's mind mostly causes the construction of the periphrastic conditional with *should* or *would* to be rejected, the verb *to like* being a notable exception. Indeed a strong case might be made out for the preterite, as opposed to the pluperfect, being an indicative.

On the whole the construction with the shifted tense appears to be more in favour with most writers than the alternative. The negative *not*, however, causes the latter to be preferred.

*to expect*: Mr. Speaker, I expected from the former language and positive promises of . . . the Chancellor of the Exchequer, to have seen the Bank paying in gold and silver. WILLIAM COBBETT.<sup>1)</sup>

*to hope*: i. I hoped to have left them in perfect safety, and then to have quitted Paris. DICK., *Two Cities*, III, Ch. IX, 347.

ii. I had not hoped to see you again so soon. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (242).  
I had hoped to gather some traditionary anecdotes of the bard from these ancient chroniclers. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXVI, 261.

*to intend*: i. I intended to have written a line to you. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 299.

ii. I had intended to go to London at once. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, VII, Ch. III, 254.

*to like*: i. I should like to have given him something. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 41.

ii. I should have liked to make her a little present. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I Ch. XIII, 125.

*to mean*: i. I meant to have given you five shillings this morning for a Christmas box, Sam. I'll give it you this afternoon, Sam. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 269.

ii. I had meant to be gay and careless, but the powerlessness of the strong man touched my heart to the quick. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 541.  
I had not meant to tell you. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. II, 19.

I had not meant to speak of it — but your lordship knows that all I receive from my living is given back to Church purposes. MRS. WARD, *Rich. Meyn.*, I, Ch. V, 107.

<sup>1)</sup> STOF., *Taalst.*, IX.

*to think*: i. I thought thy bride-bed to have deck'd, sweet maid, | And not to have strew'd thy grave. SHAK., Ham I., V, 1, 267.

I never thought to have seen this day. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIV, 138.

ii. I had not thought to see thy face. Bible, Gen., XLVIII, 11.

*to want*: i. I wanted to have seen you ever so much, but I did not like to trouble you. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 89.

ii. Annie had wanted to take biscuits, but I was dead against it. BARRY PAIN., A Change of Rôle, Ch. I.

64. Obs. I. Besides the above we find various other predicates expressing some form of capability, compulsion or, especially, volition liable to tense-shifting to the following infinitive. Any notion of conditionality is mostly absent, insomuch that, so far as appears from the form of the preceding finite verb, the indicative is used. In the following examples the underlying notion is one resembling that expressed by: *could* + perfect infinitive: We were masters to have taken the steamer instead of the diligence at Civita Vecchia. HOWELLS, Italian Journeys, 182.<sup>1)</sup>

*ought to* + perfect infinitive: He was not slack in testifying his displeasure to the falconer's lad; whose duty it was to have attended upon it (sc. his favourite bird). SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. IV, 41.

*would* + perfect infinitive: My purpose was not to have seen you here. SHAK., Merch., III, 2, 230.

The squire was inclined to have compounded matters. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 55 b.

I was ready to have gone with her, but this will do just as well. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XLIII, 352.

Were you going to have walked? TEMPLE THURSTON, City, Ch. XV, 121.

II. Tense-shifting may also be observed in constructions with a subordinate statement, especially one standing after *to think*.

*to expect*: I expected .. that he would have stated what the intentions of the Government are. Westm. Gaz.

*to hope*: I hoped thou shouldst have been my Hamlet's wife. SHAK., Ham I., V, 1, 266.

*to think*: I thought you would have been pleased. DICK., Domb., Ch. III, 23.

I never thought Harry Warrington would have joined against us. THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII, 984.

I did not think we had been so near Scotland. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2247.

Compare: I should have thought anybody liked to have fresh air. GALSW., Man of Prop., I, Ch. III, 54.

In a construction like the following tense-shifting would, of course, be unavoidable:

The earl would rather she had shown a little jealousy on the subject. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, I, 197. T.

III. There seems to be no call for the perfect infinitive in the following quotations, no reversing import being implied:

In the meantime she worked on for certain examinations which it would benefit her to have passed. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. V, 67.

<sup>1)</sup> STOF., Taalst., IX.

The midnight train from town .. enables its travellers to have stayed to the very end of most theatrical performances. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. III, 56.

65. Through what mostly appears as careless haste, many writers are sometimes betrayed into the unwarranted practice of placing a perfect infinitive after the pluperfect conditional of a finite verb, i. e. of expressing the notion of completion twice over. See, however, 66 Obs. III. This redundancy of tense is chiefly met with after the verbs mentioned in 63; i. e. after:

*to expect*: After such a victory | I had expected to have found in thee | A cheerful spirit. COLERIDGE, *The Death of Wallenstein*, V, I, (659).

*to hope*: I had hoped to have prevailed upon you to allow Sam to accompany me. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLIV, 408.

I had hoped to have procured you some oysters from Britain. LYTTON, *Pompey*, I, Ch. III, 16*b*.

*to intend*: The countess of Marney held a great assembly at the family mansion in St. James' square, which Lord Marney had intended to have let to a new club. DISR., *Syb.*, IV, Ch. XI, 264.

*to like*: I should have liked to have taken a stroll in the hayfields. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 2.

Tom .. would have liked to have stopped at the Belle Savage. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 65.

*to mean*: He had meant to have taken advantage of the unwonted softness of Egerton. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. V, 95.

*to think*: I had thought, my lord, to have learn'd his health of you. SHAK., *Rich. II*, II, 3, 24.

Thus also the perfect infinitive is used in place of the imperfect infinitive in:

Give me the ocular proof; | Or, by the worth of man's eternal soul, | Thou hadst been better have been born a dog | Than answer my waked wrath. SHAK., *Oth.*, III, 3, 362.

What man is there so much unreasonable, | If you had pleased to have defended it | With any terms of zeal, wanted the modesty | To urge the thing held as a ceremony? *id.*, *Merch.*, V, I, 204

Born too soon, Swithin had missed his vocation. Coming upon London twenty years later, he could not have failed to have become a stockbroker. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. III, 146.

Had she wanted keeping in countenance, she would have had to have fallen back upon her hostess, who was resplendent in black and steel. WELLS, *Kipps*, II, Ch. VIII, § 3, 255.

66. Obs. I. A similar redundancy of tense may also be observed in constructions with:

a) a subordinate statement: I should have thought her duty and inclination would now have pointed to the same object. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3. I'm glad to see you so well, Miss Cardinal .. I had been afraid that it might have exhausted you. HUGH W. LPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. III, 46.

β) an adverbial infinitive: And you, Mr. Justice, might have been so civil as to have invited me to dinner. FARQUHAR, *Recr. Of.*, 5, 7, (346).

γ) an accusative with infinitive: As to measuring her waist in sport ... I couldn't have done it: I should have expected my arm to have grown round it for a punishment, and never come straight again. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II.

II. The use of the perfect tense, on the other hand, is mostly quite justified in an infinitive which in no way forms a kind of unit with the pluperfect conditional in the head-sentence of a complex.

To have taken the field openly against his rival would have been madness. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 355.

I would have given any money to have been allowed to wrap myself up overnight and sleep in my hat and boots. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 14a

The vicar would have been the last to have spoken of his suspicion. MAR. CRAWF., *Lonely Parish*, Ch. IX.

III. In some cases the pluperfect conditional in the head-sentence may have been used instead of the preterite conditional to impart to the sentence some emotional colouring. Compare Ch. L, 147, and also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2247.

I had hoped you had done for ever with that deluder of youth. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. V, 269.

67. In conclusion attention is drawn to the rather common practice in Early Modern English of dropping the *have* of the perfect infinitive after *I would have had*, and its variations for person. This leaves a past participle, which strikes the modern reader, who is not aware of the tense-redundancy underlying the practice, as an erroneous substitute for an infinitive. The suppression is, no doubt, due to a reluctance to burden the sentence with an excessive number of forms of the verb *to have*. See especially STOFFEL (in *Taalstudie*, IX), from whom the following quotations have been borrowed.

My men would have had me given them leave to fall upon them at once. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*.

D'Avenant would fain have had me gone and drink a bottle of wine at his house hard by. SWIFT.

He would have had us taken a road which was full of those people we were so much afraid of. JOHNSON, *Voy. to Abyss.*, 41.

The same construction has also been observed after such expressions as *I had like*, *I had liever*, etc.

This aversion, heightened by a vast ambition had like to broke out in the reign of Antoninus Pius. JER. COLLIER.

### The Passive Infinitive in detail.

68. When the relation of an infinitive to the (pro)noun it refers to is understood to correspond to that of predicate to object, in other words, when the infinitive has a distinctly passive meaning, it is now normally placed in the passive voice, irrespective of its grammatical function in the sentence.

I am worthy to be scorned. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 291.

The Allies do not mean to be trifled with any longer. *Times*.

They will not submit to be treated as inferior races. *Westm. Gaz.*

69. In the oldest English, when the infinitive still partook considerably of the nature of a noun of action (I, Note), it was, naturally,

neutral as to voice. Its dative preceded by final *to* often had a passive meaning; thus in:

þā þing þe tō dōnne sind. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2325.

We have seen (3, Obs. I) that in course of time both the dative and the common-case form of the infinitive lost their suffixes. At this process went on, the infinitive lost some of its substantival nature, and assumed more and more the character of a verb. The change was the occasion of the passive voice of the infinitive coming to be employed in most of the cases in which this form was used of the finite verb. Thus the above example became *the things which are to be done*. Compare, however, 71.

From various causes, which it is not always easy to ascertain, the older form has maintained itself in not a few cases which admit or, at least, suggest interpretations which would render the use of the passive voice necessary. For instances of active infinitives in SHAKESPEARE, which in Present English would be replaced by passive infinitives, see also A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s. v. to, 3.

70. The infinitive with a passive meaning is now almost regularly placed in the passive voice when it is used in the function of nominal part of the predicate after the copulas *to be* and *to remain*.

i. An engagement was not to be thought of. THACK., Pen d., Ch. XIII, 135.

He is not to be found anywhere. SWEET, Spoken Eng., 43.

It is to be feared that the press is largely to be blamed. Manch. Guard., VIII, 15, 281 d.

ii. Glideless combinations remain to be considered. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 165.

All our main problems remain to be solved. Westm. Gaz., No. 8267, 1 b.

Note. It will be observed that *to remain* in this connexion to a large extent maintains its full meaning. In fact it has almost the same meaning as *to wait* in *The actual work of reconstruction .. still waits to be carried out*. Westm. Gaz., 7/2, 1922, 427 a.

γ) Also *to fall* and *to stand* when faded in meaning, so as to approximate to copulas, may be followed by a passive infinitive. According to the O. E. D. (s. v. *fall*, 32, b) this use of *to fall* is especially common in northern dialects.

i. The deputation .. said appropriately what falls to be said on such an occasion. Westm. Gaz., No. 5573, 2 b.

ii. The Government has been wavering between the politically attractive idea of hitting the profiteers and the strong objection of its supporters, not a few of whom stand to be hit on that ground. ib., No. 8408, 1 a.

71. Obs. I. It may be observed that *to be* in the above connexion, although essentially a copula, implies some weak secondary notions, varying as to the general purport of the sentence (Ch. XLV, 4); i. e.:

a) some form of necessity, approximating to that more explicitly and emphatically expressed by *should* (or *ought*) or *must*.

Why he was to be pitied Jeremy did not know. HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy, Ch. XII, 1, 297.

β) some form of capability, approximating to that more explicitly expressed by *can* or *may*.

I think Jeremy is to be trusted. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 3. (Compare: After some hesitation it was decided that Jeremy might be trusted. *ib.*)

Nothing was to be seen through the hole. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter comes*, I, Ch. III, V, 31.

II. Sometimes there is an adjective, often one in *able* or *ible*, which has approximately the same meaning as the passive infinitive. This goes far to show that the main function of *to be* as used in the above connexion is that of a copula.

It is a trite but true observation, that examples work more forcibly on the mind than precepts; and if this be just in what is odious and blameable, it is more strongly so in what is amiable and praiseworthy. FIELD., *Jos. And r.*, I, Ch. I, 1.

Much capital is not realisable or divisible at all. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8086, 2 b.

III. The above *to be* should be distinguished from another *to be*, which expresses a stronger form of necessity and is especially used to represent a person, animal or thing as being acted upon by the will of a person other than either the speaker or the person spoken to, or as under the force of an arrangement or a dispensation of Providence (Ch. I, 29—31); thus *You are to give this to John*, *We were to go in a carrier's cart*, *The day broke which was to decide the fate of India*; or passive: *This is to be given to John*, *The day broke on which the fate of India was to be decided*.

It cannot be denied, however, that this *to be* in one of its various shades of meaning, i. e. when it appears as a weak *to have*, sometimes hardly differs from the *to be* which has been described as a kind of copula. Thus in *Human life is everywhere a state in which much is to be endured and little to be enjoyed* there is nothing to prevent us from understanding *much is to be endured* as slightly weaker than *much has to be endured*.

A good instance of *to be* + infinitive and *to have* + infinitive being sometimes indistinguishable is afforded by:

All was preparation. Fresh sand had to be strewn in the arena. New tapestry, hangings were to deck the galleries, the houses and balconies were to be brave with drapery, the fountain in the market-place was to play Rhine-wine. YONGE, *The Dove in the Eagle's Nest*, II, 1.

It may be added that the active voice never takes the place of the passive after *to be* when it is understood as a weak *to have*.

Then sure you know what is to be done. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (252).

72. The older practice of leaving the active voice, i. e. neutral form, of the infinitive, in the function of nominal part of the predicate undisturbed, notwithstanding its indubitably passive meaning, has in some cases maintained itself to the present day.

a) Thus in Present English we still meet with instances of this active voice, if the infinitive is one of the following verbs:

*to blame*. Probably the active voice is still more common than the passive.

i. My dear, I am not to blame. FIELD., *Jos. And r.*, I, Ch. XII, 31.

I do not know if I am to blame. GALSW., *Saint's Progr.*, III, II, 2 §, 227.

ii. Yet learning is not to be blamed. *Imit. Christi*, I, Ch. III, 23.

H. POUTSMA, III 1.

Defoe is scarcely to be blamed for using his new-found art upon gross themes. W. J. DAWSON, *The Makers of Eng. Fict.*, Ch. I, 10.

*to compare*. The active voice may still be rather common, although the O. E. D. brands it as obsolete.

i. An imitation of the best Authors is not to compare with a good original. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 160.

I do not know any English women who are to compare to such Americans in brilliancy and fascination. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. X, 88.

ii. All the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her. Bible, *Prov.*, III, 15.

Note. It should be observed that *to compare* is one of the numerous transitive verbs that may be used intransitively through assuming a passive meaning (Ch. XLVI, 33).

i. As a strengthening stimulating beverage no ordinary meal extract can compare with bovril. 11. *Lond. News*.

ii. Mr. Swinnerton has written four or five other novels before this one, but none of them compare with it in quality. WELLS, *Pref. to Swinnerton's Nocturne*.

iii. Pen's healthy red face compared oddly with the waxy debauched little features of Foker's chum. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53.

*to do*. Except for such a combination as *What is to do?* for which see *b)*, the active voice is now obsolete.

i. I do not know | Why yet I live to say, "This thing's to do" SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 4, 44.

ii. "And à propos, Moses, have you been able to get me that little bill discounted?" — "It was not to be done, indeed, Mr. Trip." SHER., *School*, III, 2, (395).

*to let*: The passive voice is now, perhaps, rather more common than the active. It is, of course, unavoidable in the combination *to be let or sold*.

i. I went into a cottage that I saw was to let. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVI, 259 *a*.

I see the house is to let. GALSW., *Saint's Prog* III, XIII, 1 §, 340.

ii. This desirable mansion is to be let. HARDY.

*to seek*, in the sense of *to be in request*.

The carpenter was already at work while a play was still to seek. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIV, 136.

A work of this kind is still to seek. WEBST., *Dict.*

Houses are still to seek. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8267, 1 *b*.

*b)* Rather common is the active voice of the predicative infinitive, especially *to do*, when it has such a subject as *much*, *a great deal*, *little*, *something*, *what*, etc.; e. g.: *Much is yet (or remains) to do*. *What is to pay?* The practice is, perhaps, due to the analogy with constructions in which the verb *to be* as an intransitive verb is accompanied by weak *there*. In these, as we shall see below (76), the active voice is quite commonly retained. Compare also the O. E. D., s. v. *do*, 33, *a*.

i. She looked at him rather frightened, and wondering, and asked him what was to do. Mrs. GASK, *Cranf.*, Ch. VI, 109.

A great deal certainly is yet to do in the Non-Aryan fields of language. Lit. World, 1894, 229 *a*.

ii. Much hath been done — but more remains to do. BYRON, *Cors.*, II, iv. An hour when your servants are in bed is to be preferred for what will then remain to do. STEV., *Dr. Jeckyll*, Ch. IX, 83.



The active infinitive even bears no replacing by the passive in the archaic phrase *What's here to do?* in the sense of *What is up here?* *What's here to do?* CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 1, (239).

*What's here to do?* DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. III, 14 *b*.

"Why pet," said Trotty, "what's to do? I didn't expect you to-day, Meg." *id.*, *Chimes*, I.

Compare: The wretched ignorance with which Jupe clung to this consolation .. filled Mr. Gradgrind with pity. Yet what was to be done? DICK., *Hard Times*, I, Ch. IX, 24 *a*.

One maid among three of us. What's to be done. J. M. BARRIE, *The Adm. Cricht.*, I, 33.

The practice appears to be rare with other verbs.

Much remains to sing. LAMB, *Elia*, *South-Sea House*.

c) Sometimes the active voice seems to owe its preservation to the fact that the passive voice would convey another meaning; thus sometimes after *still* or *yet*, as in:

i. His wife .. had maintained all through that this Miss Mountstephen was absolutely innocent and that the guilty person was still to find. L. C. DAVIDSON, *The Great Dynover Pearl Case*<sup>1)</sup> (= *was still the subject of the quest*. The passive *was still to be found* would mean *could still be found*, which is here impossible.)

The fortunes of the Allies, certain as the issue is, are yet to make. *Daily News and Leader*.<sup>2)</sup>

For tho' it seems my spurs are yet to win, | I have not fall'n so low as some would wish. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 128.

ii. Persecution and revenge, like courtship and toadyism, will not prosper without a considerable expenditure of time and ingenuity, and these are not *to spare* with a man whose law-business and liver are both beginning to show unpleasant symptoms. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, 247 (= *in plenty*; compare: *to have time, money, etc. to spare*. *To be spared* would mean *to be left over or unused*, or also *must not be spared*.)

d) In some cases the retention of the active voice may be owing to a tendency of the mind to supply such a phrase as *for me* (*you, us, somebody*, etc.) before the infinitive, the (pro)noun in these phrases representing the logical subject of the infinitive.

The cards of address alone remained to nail on. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXV, 336. (= *for me to nail on*.)

For the rest the use of the active instead of the passive infinitive has an archaic effect; thus in:

This book is to read and not to tear. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3)</sup>, § 405). (In ordinary Present English = *is intended to be read and not intended to be torn*.) "What are these books for?" — "They are to read." EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. I, 8.

73. a) Closely akin to the infinitives discussed in the preceding sections are those which are to be regarded as constituents of adnominal undeveloped clauses (Ch. XVIII, 16 ff). Also in these the active voice has mostly been changed into the passive when

<sup>1)</sup> De Drie Talen, XXXI, No. 10; <sup>2)</sup> *ib.*, No. 12.

they are related to the (pro)nouns they modify as predicate to object.

The great calamity which had fallen on Argyle had this advantage, that it enabled him to show, by proofs not to be mistaken, what manner of man he was. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. III, 22.

The dangers to be braved were such as could neither be knocked down nor throttled. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. III, 22.

The interior of the room is not like anything to be seen in the east of Europe. SHAW, *Arms and the Man*, I, (25). T.

b) An attributive adnominal infinitive, standing before its head-word, when passive in meaning, is regularly placed in the passive voice. The infinitive often enters into combination with another word (Ch. VIII, 102).

It was, perhaps, the not-to-be-satisfied satisfaction of a morbid mind .. which first induced him to turn his thoughts upon marriage. LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 20 a.

I do not think I have ever read .. a more decided specimen of the to-be-damned doggreel. *ib.*, 15 b.

It was a much-to-be-longed-for place. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. X, 86.

The about-to-be-released prisoner tried to explain that Irish Unionists were loyal to England. *The New Statesman*, No. 95, 403 b.

Her writing reminds me of those least-to-be-forgotten evenings of my life when [etc.]. *Punch*, No. 3836, 40 a.

74. The use of the active voice in the function referred to under a) in 73 is, however, far more common than in that of nominal part of the predicate. This is, probably, due to the fact that the distinctly final meaning of the infinitive considerably overshadows, and weakens its adnominal relation to the (pro)noun it refers to. This renders the use of the passive voice uncalled-for, the more so because a (pro)noun in the subjective relation to it is mostly readily suggested by the context (Ch. XVIII, 17, Obs. II). Compare also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 173.

75. This is distinctly the case when the infinitive modifies the thing-object, whether prepositional or non-prepositional, of the sentence. The logical subject of the infinitive is then felt to be denoted by:

a) the subject or the person-object of the sentence.

i. \* Mr. Martin, I imagine, has his fortune entirely to make. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. IV, 29. T.

The gardener was picking fruit to send to market. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VIII, 82.

"An' you don't seem to have done any great things for yourself by going away?" Jude assented to this also. "Except found more mouths to fill." HARDY, *Jude*, VI, Ch. I, 410.

Take this book to read on your way. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 164.

\*\* He longed for worlds to conquer. *ib.*, § 173.

He made no reply. He could think of none to make. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. IV, I, 105.

ii. \* I gave him bread to eat and water to drink. MEICKLEJOHN, *The Eng. Lang.*, 39.

Let me have something to drink. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 362, 3, Note.

\*\* The rest we may leave to the tribes to accomplish. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XVIII.

She had dictated the letter to his father to write. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, I, Ch. XVI, 128.

b) a (pro)noun in a prepositional phrase with *for*, which is understood because it is not necessary for the right understanding of the sentence (76, Obs. III).

It remains to be seen whether the squire has a heart to appeal to. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm*, II, 80. T. (sc. for us to appeal to.)

Shops were open, especially places which sold things to eat and to drink. WALT. BESANT, *By Celia's Arbour*, I, 17. T.

The following sentence can only be rightly understood when such a phrase is distinctly supplied:

They like a man to follow. HOPE, *Phroso*, Ch. VI, 132 (= They like a man for them to follow.)

Remarkable are the following examples of varied practice cited by JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.88.

The wayfarer sees with each returning sun some new obstacle to surmount, some new light to be attained. DICK, *Nick*, 656.

Bohemians who have no position to lose and no career to be closed. SHAW, *Doct. Dil.*, 110. (Observe that the two infinitives are, from a logical point of view, differently related to the subject)

76. Obs. I. When the context does not in any way suggest a (pro)noun which might figure as the subject of the infinitive, the passive voice is unavoidable.

i. You philosophers must not forget that we poor worldlings have bones to be broken. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 9a.

All schemes of social progress .. require money to be expended. *Westm. Gaz.* The provision made by the Government was so ample and complete that it left little or nothing to be desired. *Morn. Leader*. (Compare with this the following quotation, in which the person-object indicates the logical subject of the infinitive: It was sung in a provincial, amateur fashion, such as would have left a critical ear much to desire. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. III, 355.)

ii. He stood listening for the summons to be repeated. STEVENSON.

II. The active voice sometimes appears to be obligatory because the passive would convert the sentence into an accusative + infinitive.

Both our boys still like one of our cakes to take to school or college with them. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIII, 241.

A human beast of prey; an African cannibal .. wanted a boatman to eat. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3698, 356c.

It is she who wants somebody to protect, to help, to work for — somebody to give her children to protect, to help, to work for. SHAW, *Cand.*, III (178). (In the second half of the sentence a phrase with *for* can be readily supplied before the three last infinitives.)

III. The passive infinitive, on the other hand, cannot be replaced by the active, when it is a constituent of an accusative + infinitive (Obs. II; and 89).

He commanded the bridge to be lowered. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 397.

IV. An adjunct made up of *with* + (pro)noun is sometimes semantically equivalent to an adnominal clause. Thus *Here I saw a man with black whiskers* has the same meaning as *Here I saw a man who had black whiskers*. An infinitive standing after such an adjunct is naturally placed in the active voice if the corresponding adnominal clause would have the infinitive in the active voice; thus in:

He had been married to a lady with no heart to give him. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. I, 6. (= who had no heart to give him.)

77. Also when the infinitive modifies the subject of a sentence containing weak *there*, the mind readily suggests a logical subject in the shape of a (pro)noun contained in a prepositional phrase with *for*. The active voice is, accordingly, quite common, in fact apparently more common than the passive.

The numerous quotations bearing on the subject which have been collected by the present writer have not brought to light a clear principle by which writers are guided in choosing between the two forms. Indeed the choice often appears to be a matter of personal predilection or even of mere chance. This being so, we may confine ourselves to producing a few groups of examples which seem to show this.

*to compare*: i. There was no woman to compare to her. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, 69.

ii. Erasmus asserted that there was no town in all Christendom to be compared to it (sc. Ghent) for size, power, or the culture of its inhabitants. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 32 a.

*to do*: i. There's a lot to do. HARDY, *Jude*, VI, XI, 511.

There was nobody except herself to please, and nothing to do except exactly that which she chose to do. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. XII, 196.

ii. There was little work to be done. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. III, 19.

There was nothing else to be done. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 186. After such an accident there was nothing else to be done. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IV, 86.

*to lose*: i. There's not a moment to lose. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. II, 6 a.

Obviously there was no time to lose. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XVII, 207. T.

ii. There was no time to be lost. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 180.

There's no time to be lost. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. II, 57.

There is no time to be lost. OSC. WILDE, *Imp. of being Earn.*, I, 35.

There is not an instant to be lost. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 248. T.

*to make*: i. There are nine runs to make and two wickets to go down. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 173.

ii. But at dinner there were plans to be made. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Gh. VII, (712).

*to see*: i. I think that I have seen now all that there is to see. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 215. T.

Are there interesting things to see? HICHENS, *Gard. of Allah*, I, II, vii, 147.

There were new and admirable things to see there. FROUDE, *Occ.*, Ch. XX, 335.

You see there was nothing to see! SHAW, *Wid. Houses*, I, (14).

ii. Do you think it sensible to take a long and expensive journey to see what there is to be seen, and then go away without seeing it? *ib.*, I, (10).

The two constructions may even be found in one and the same sentence. But always, with a shock, I was brought back to earth, where there were no heroic deeds to do, no lions to face, no judges to defy, but only some dull duty to be performed. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 43.

There was so much to see at Florence No — pardon me! — there is nothing to be seen at Florence. Mrs. WARD, *Eleanor*, 20.<sup>1)</sup>

78. Obs. I. After *to fall* as a quasi-copula, and *to remain* the passive voice seems to be the normal form.

i. Having placed so much to its (sc. the motor-omnibus's) credit, however, there falls to be considered a totally different aspect of the case. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3896, 1068 *a*.

ii. Meanwhile there still remained forty chestnuts to be eaten. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sylvia Scarlett*, Ch. II, 82.

Similarly after *to be left* as an equivalent of *to remain*, as in:

I don't see that there is anything left to be said. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. IV, 55.

II. The active voice sometimes appears to be obligatory, because the passive would or might convey another meaning than the one intended; thus in:

i. There was no general to send. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 173. (= There was no general that could be sent. Compare: There was no general to be sent = It was determined that no general should be sent.)

ii. There's nothing on earth to do there. KEBLE HOWARD, *One of the Family*, I, Ch. IV, 79. (= There is no business, sport, etc. going on there. Compare: There is nothing on earth to be done there = There is nothing on earth that can (*or should*) be done there.)

iii. There was much to learn. WELLS, *Kipps*, III, Ch. I, § 3, 135. (= approximately: There was much (left) that had (yet) to be learned; Dutch: *Er moest nog veel geleerd worden*. Compare: There was much to be learned, which suggests: There was much that could (*or might*) be learned; Dutch: *Er kon nog veel geleerd worden*.)

If only she were there! .. what thousands of things there would be to say! TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, I, Ch. XVI, 128 (= approximately: there could (*or might*) be said, i. e. were fit subjects for discussion. Compare: There is no more to be said about it. DICK., *Hard Times*, Ch. XIV, 42 *a*. = approximately: All that can be said about it has been said.)

III. In some cases idiom would hardly tolerate the active voice to be replaced by the passive, although the change of voice would involve no evident change of meaning.

i. There was plenty to eat. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XXI, 249.

ii. She had known, before she died, practically all that there was to know. Mrs. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. III, 47. (Compare the following quotation, in which the verb *to know* is not accompanied by weak *there*: She seemed to know all that was to be known. GALSW., *Beyond*, I, Ch. III, 36.)

iii. There is not any plot to speak of in Lesage's "Gil Blas." MARZIALS, *Life of Dick.*, Ch. VII, 87.

iv. There was the devil to pay with the girl's relations. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. XXI, 323.

Conversely the active voice could not, apparently, be used instead of the passive voice in:

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.88.

There was no sound to be heard. DICK., Nick., Ch. V, 27 *b*.

IV. Naturally the active voice is obligatory if the infinitive is preceded by *for* + (pro)noun.

He wishes every man to be registered and to be paid £ 4 a week, whether there is work for him to do or not. Westm. Gaz., No. 8509, 4 *a*.

79. *a*) There appears also to be a distinct tendency to keep the infinitive with a passive meaning in the active voice, when the noun it modifies is preceded by an adjective denoting or suggesting a necessity, a suitability or a fitness, or when the context suggests such an adjective. The active voice appears to be especially usual when the noun modified is the nominal part of the predicate, but is also frequent enough when it is used in other functions. It deserves attention that it is especially the verb *to do* which is often found in the active voice.

i. \* According to him the Old Chapel was not a place to visit by night. SWEET, Old Chapel.

It's the only thing to do now. OSC. WILDE, Imp. of being Earn., III, 144.

You admit it was not a nice thing to do. JEROME, Miss Hobbs, IV, 64.

To a Greek poetry was primarily a thing to hear and not to read. Manch. Guard., VIII, 21, 403 *c*.

To claim damages was not the thing to do. GALSW., In Chanc., III, Ch. IX, (723).

That .. would have been the reasonable, the gentlemanly thing to do. Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. IV, 87.

Those are all excellent things to do. E. F. BENSON, Dodo Wonders, Ch. III, 44.

\*\* The only thing to do was to carry him into the nearest shelter. Mr. WARD, Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. IV, 87.

The proper thing to do is to turn down the light until it is merely a flicker. Tit-bits, 1895, 16/11, 113 *b*.

The sensible and obvious thing to do is to pay off the claims of the bondholders as fast as we can. Manch. Guard., VIII, 16, 302 *b*.

The case would be met by adopting the Scottish law and making desertion a ground for divorce without the addition of adultery; and this, I think is the proper thing to do. Westm. Gaz., 2/5, 1925, 8 *a*.

The thing to do is to make the best of it. JEROME, Miss Hobbs, III, 48.

Obviously the thing to do is to cut out all fats from the dietary. Westm. Gaz., 21/3, 1925, 620 *b*.

Now the first thing to settle is what to take with us. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. III, 24.

\*\*\* The other things included books to read and books to give away. WELLS, Kipps, I, § 1, 13.

\*\*\*\* Needn't keep this shop, if I didn't like it. But it's something to do. ib., III, Ch. III, § 7, 329.

\*\*\*\*\* Shipping is laid up for want of goods to carry. Westm. Gaz., No. 8615, 4 *a*.

ii. \* Her father was in truth not a man to be treated with. CHESTERTON, Browning.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.872.

She was a person to be trusted and relied upon. (?) *The Cap of Youth*, Ch. XVIII.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The only thing to be done was, therefore, to keep a sharp eye ahead and around him. *HARDY, Jude*, I, IV, 35.

\*\*\* He could only think of one thing to be done. *HARDY, Under the Greenwood Tree*, I, Ch. IX, 80.

b) When in sentences similarly constructed there is nothing to suggest a notion of necessity, suitability or fitness, usage seems to be in favour of the passive voice.

To slam the door within the hearing of Mrs. Stelling, .. was an offence only to be wiped out by twenty lines of Virgil. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, II, Ch. IV, 156.

The agitation .. suddenly showed itself a thing only to be laughed at. *MCCARTHY, Short Hist.*, Ch. VIII, 91.

He was not a man to be lightly played upon. *Mrs. WARD, Marc.*, I, 121.

c) Some adnominal infinitives regularly preserve the active voice; thus those in:

I have a long wooden house with room enough and to spare. *Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVIII, 371.

Mrs. Jennings very likely belonged to a family which had had no funerals to speak of. *G. ELIOT, Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 72.

d) The passive voice is, of course, unavoidable when the inverted subject (Ch. XLVII, 3) follows.

Scrooge was not a man to be frightened by echoes. *DICK., Christm. Car.*, I.

e) Conversely the adnominal infinitive is naturally placed in the active voice when preceded by *for* + (pro)noun.

This is a matter for the trade-unions to consider forthwith. *Times, Educ. Sup.*, No. 356. 427 b.

f) Such a construction as is illustrated by the following quotation seems to be unusual:

What idle man can withstand the temptation of a woman to fascinate, and another man to eclipse. *G. ELIOT, Scenes* II, Ch. V, 110. (= of fascinating a woman and eclipsing another man.)

80. In the fourth place we mostly find the infinitive with passive meaning in the active voice when it stands by way of adverbial adjunct with a predicative adjective, or adjective equivalent; thus in *This question is difficult to answer*. The reason why the infinitive is normally placed in the active voice may be that such a sentence is felt to be a condensed form of a complex sentence *To answer this question is difficult* or, which is the more usual form, *It is difficult to answer this question* (Ch. LIII, 10).

The adverbial function of the infinitive appears from a comparison of the above construction with that used in such sentences as:

Quitch-gras ., has long creeping roots, which make it extremely difficult of extirpation. *G. C. MACAULAY, Note to Ten's Ger. & En.*, 902.

<sup>1)</sup> De Drie Talen, XXXI, 12.

The snow-figure .. had been begun as a man, but had been transformed into a lady, since skirts were more solid and easier of execution than legs. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo Wonders*, Ch. XII, 197.

The following examples readily admit of the above expansion:

His luggage .. was not difficult to carry. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IV, 50.

The Gods are hard to reconcile. TEN., *Lot. Eat.*, 126.

The causes of this imperfect sympathy are easy to understand. WALT. RALEIGH, *Sam. Johnson*, 30.

This is important to observe. SWEET, *Words Logic & Gram.*, 3.

Her disappointment was pathetic to witness. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. X, 302.

This is impossible to do. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8203, 3*a*.

81. Obs. I. The predicative adjective *worth*, may be attended by a non-prepositional object.

The church was one of those fine old English structures worth travelling to see. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. III, 64.

I have heard it said, a bridge is a good thing — worth helping to make, though half the men who worked it were rogues. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 272.

The salmon is a valuable fish worth some expenditure of public money to preserve. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8086, 10*b*.

- II. The infinitive may be an intransitive verb followed by a preposition forming a kind of unit with it.

Her neighbour was not difficult to talk to. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. II, 29.

This world will be intolerable to live in. WELLS, *Brtting*, I, Ch. V, § 13, 174.

- III. The same active infinitive with passive meaning is met with after a predicative adjective,

- a*) which is connected with such a quasi-copula as *to sound*.

The man trampled calmly over the child's body and left her screaming on the ground. It sounds nothing to hear, but it is hellish to see. STEV., *Jekyll*, Ch. I, 15.

- β*) which stands in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct.

His loyalty did his mother's heart good to witness. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36.

Poor Rebecca felt it hard to bear. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. III.

What a popular statesman thinks it wise and feasible to do, he induces his Ministry to accept. FRED. HARRISON, *On Society*, Ch. III, 75.

- IV, Again the infinitive is of the same grammatical nature in such a complex as *The letter took him (a) long (time) to write*, a sentence which admits of a twofold variation: *It took him (a) long (time) to write the letter*, and *He took (a) long (time) to write the letter* (Ch. LIII, 14).

- V. While in all the above examples the predicative adjective denotes rather a quality of the action indicated by the infinitive than one of the person or thing expressed by the subject, we find it distinctly qualifying the latter in:

My horse .. is quiet to ride, THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 346.

It was sad to listen to. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXV, 338.

She was fair to look upon. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 67.

The remedies are not far to seek. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8503, 1*b*.



It will be observed that these sentences admit of no expansion as described above (Ch. LIII, 10). This also applies to the following, which are constructed on a similar plan:

What sort of man is he to see? STEV., *Jekyll*, Ch. I, 18.

He was not much to look at. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

Major Buchanan, of the Air Ministry, admitted that the two-seaters, seen at Lympe, were not cheap to build. MANCH. GUARD.

82. Although the active voice is the normal form of the infinitive in these constructions, it must not be thought that the passive voice is particularly unusual. It can, indeed, be shown that all through the Modern-English period, the logical instinct has occasionally prompted it.

i. 'Sblood, do you think I am easier to be played on than a pipe. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 3, 389.

She is harder to be understood than a piece of Egyptian antiquity. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 3, (287).

The hand-writing is very difficult to be read. BOSW., *Life of Johnson*, 24 b.

The fate of Fergus seemed hard to be averted. SCOTT, *Waverley*, Ch. LXVII, 166 a.

It now became necessary for the party to consider what was best to be done. JANE AUSTEN, *Persuasion*, Ch. XII, 116.

Dolf, who was at the mercy of chance, was not hard to be persuaded. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl*, I, 138).

It came at last to their hastily dividing the business that was necessary to be done. DICK., *Two Cities*, I, Ch. VI, 64.

This was not easy to be done. TROL., *Warden*, Ch. VIII, 97.

Is that a calamity hard to be borne? TEN., *Maud.*, I, XIII, I.

The story was needful to be told. G. ELIOT, *Dan Der*, I, III, Ch. XX, 312.

ii. It was plain to be seen that everybody loved him. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXII, 203.

By the year 1912 the leading lines of the Pan-German advance were plain to be seen. *Nineteenth Cent. & After*, No. 496, 1104.

Now a secret, even of so harmless a nature as this, is a fatal bond between any man and woman. It necessitates glances of understanding, which are swift to be read, to other things. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Antag.*, Ch. XIV, 112.

83. The fact that the predicative adjective denotes a quality of the action denoted by the infinitive has given rise to the adverb-form being sometimes used instead of the adjective-form. So far frequent instances have only turned up with *easily*, the infinitive being regularly placed in the passive voice.

i. The insolence and resentment of which he is accused were not easily to be avoided by a great mind. JOHNSON, *Life of Savage* (WALT. RAL., *Sam. Johns.*, 19).

He is not so easily to be shaken from the lasting attachment founded on esteem. LAMB, *El.*, *Bach. Complaint*.

Situated as the insurgents were, the loss of a man of parts and energy was not easily to be repaired. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 146.

Jack Rapley is not easily to be knocked off his feet. MISS MITFORD, *Our Vil.*, Ch. II, 23.

ii. He (sc. Lord Beresford) was a product of an old school, a type which, as the old order changes, is more and more hardly to be found. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8179, 4 a.

With the above sentences compare *His description is easily abridged*

(Dick., Pickw., Ch. II, 10). = *His description is easily to be abridged*, or *His description is easy to abridge*. The same construction is used in: This may be easily tested experimentally by pressing the little finger against the palate. SWEET, Sounds, § 76.

84. An active infinitive with passive meaning similar in adverbial function to that described in the preceding sections may also stand with a noun.

It required an immoderate expense to execute. FIELD., Tom Jones, VIII.  
The book has cost about £ 30.000 to produce. Daily News and Leader.<sup>1)</sup>

85. The active infinitive with passive meaning also stands rather frequently after *too* + predicative adjective, its adverbial function being that of consequence (Ch. XVII, 129).

i. The emolument is too tempting to resist. DICK., (MARZIALS, Life of Dick., Ch. III, 42).

The tea is too hot to drink. O. E. D., s.v. *to*, B. 7 b.

This contraction is too vague to define precisely. DAN. JONES, Eng. Phon., § 398. Footnote.

ii. The burden is too heavy to be borne. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XI, 183.

The temptation .. was too great to be resisted. (?), The Cap of Youth, Ch. XXI.<sup>2)</sup>

Thus also after *too* + adjective + predicative noun, as in:

It is a too obvious thing to do. Manch. Guard., VIII, 16, 303 b.

Naturally the active voice is regularly used of the infinitive whose subject is indicated by a (pro)noun preceded by *for* as in:

The weight is too heavy for you to lift. O. E. D., s.v. *to*, B, 7 b.

86. a) In the fifth place the illogical active infinitive is found after an adjective, or adjective equivalent, governing a prepositional object with final *for*. The active voice seems to be common only when misunderstanding is precluded by the context.

This apple is not fit to eat. The water is not good to drink. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 372.

The houses are very well to visit, but not to live in. HARDY, Jude, IV, Ch. I, 254.

These frocks can also be had ready to wear. Manch. Guard., 6, 6, 1924, I.

We passed through glittering, joyous streets, piled high each side with all the good things of earth — toys and baubles, jewels and gold, things good to eat and good to drink, things good to wear and good to see. JEROME, Paul Kever, I, Ch. I, 18 b.

You are miserable .., as you yourself admit, not fit to speak to. Times 7/5, 1925, 521 d

b) The passive infinitive is also met with in this connexion, but appears to be less usual.

Could I mention any thing more fit to be done. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LIV, 446.

You will not be fit to be seen when you get there. id, Pride & Prej., Ch. VII, 35.

<sup>1)</sup> De Drie Talen, XXXI, No. 12.

<sup>2)</sup> ib., No. XXXII, No. 2.

My eyes were so dimmed with joy and pride that they could not bear the street, and were not fit to be seen there. DICK., PICKW., Pref.  
 It is fit to be placed on the cylinder of the printing press. GOOD WORDS.  
 You're not fit to be helped. GALSW., SILV. BOX, I, 33. T.  
 Asking to see books which are not ready to be seen. (?), THE CAP OF YOUTH, IV.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. The passive infinitive after these adjectives, especially *fit*, may be due to the fact that they denote a notion resembling that of *to deserve*, which requires a passive infinitive.

Compare: The man who can break the laws of hospitality, and tempt the wife of his friend, deserves to be branded as the pest of society. SHER., SCHOOL, IV, 3.

In the following quotation the active infinitive would even be impossible:

I find myself looking over my sketches as I used to look over my lessons when I was a little girl, and when I was sadly afraid that I should turn out not fit to be heard. WILK. COL., WOM. IN WHITE, I, Ch. VIII, 51.

c) In Early Modern English no adjective was needed to express the meaning which is now mostly conveyed by *fit* + active infinitive.

This disturbed sky is not to walk in. SHAK., JUL. CÆS., I, 3, 40.

87. After the quasi-impersonal *it needs not* (7, b; 9, b) we find either the active or the passive infinitive, the choice depending, apparently, upon whether *it* may be understood to represent the infinitive with its enlargements or a subordinate clause.

i. It needs not to tell what she said and promised on behalf of Nelly. BESANT, ALL SORTS, Ch. XLVIII, 118.

ii. It needs not to be said that much which is true of our country at that time is true also of others. MARY BATESON, MÆDIAVAL ENGLAND, Pref.

88. Such a sentence as *It was intended to issue a cheaper edition of the work*, in which a passive sentence with anticipating *it* is followed by an active infinitive-clause containing a non-prepositional object, may be converted into *A cheaper edition of the work was intended to be issued*. This construction, in which a passive infinitive is made to depend on a passive predicative verb, and which may, therefore, be called a double passive, may be due to a general tendency, prevailing in English from quite early times, to replace a non-personal construction by a personal one (Ch. II, 25 ff; Ch. LII, 5 ff). Awkward as the construction is, it answers a useful purpose, since in not a few cases it would be difficult to find a more suitable one conveying the same meaning and falling in with the structure of the discourse. Thus for *The Court was ordered to be cleared* (Times) we could hardly say *It was ordered to clear the court*. Exchanging the active for the passive voice in the head-sentence would, indeed, make for better idiom, but this

<sup>1)</sup> De Drie Talen, XXXII, No. 2.

would defeat the ends of the passive voice, whose main purpose is to eliminate the necessity of mentioning the person or thing the action proceeds from (Ch. XLVII, 9). Thus *The judge ordered the court to be cleared* is certainly better English than *The Court was ordered to be cleared*, but it may be taken exception to as bringing in an undesirable personal element. Also in some of the following examples interference with the double passive would appear to give rise to difficulties.

Double passives are of three descriptions, viz.:

a) one which is based on an accusative + passive infinitive, or allied construction, e. g.: *The judge ordered the Court to be cleared*;

b) one which goes back to a construction in which an active verb is followed by an active objective verb in an objective relation to the former, e. g.: *They attempted to conceal the truth*, which, rendered passive, becomes *The truth was attempted to be concealed*;

c) one which is a conversion of an active transitive followed by a (pro)noun + final *to* + objective verb, e. g.: *They left us to clear up the wreckage*, which, rendered passive, becomes *The wreckage was left to be cleared up by us*.

Double passives of the first description are found in:

i. The marriage was appointed to be solemnized in eight weeks' time. *Dick., Hard Times*, I, Ch. XVI, 48 *a*.

It would appear from this unexpected circumstance to-day . . . as if something had crept into Thomas's and Louisa's mind . . . which had never been intended to be developed. *ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 9 *a*.

No building is allowed to be erected without special permission. *Times*.

No opposition newspaper is allowed to be published. *Westm Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 547 *b*.

Mr. Winston Churchill's appointment to the Colonial Office . . . is generally assumed to have been arranged. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8597, 3 *a*.

ii. An alley which ran parallel with the very high wall on that side the garden was forbidden to be entered by the pupils. *CH. BRONTË, Vil.*, Ch. XII, 131.

Double passives of the second description are found in:

A satisfaction which was but feebly attempted to be concealed under a cold invitation to her to defer her departure. *JANE AUSTEN, Sense & Sens.*, Ch. V, 29.

Newcastle takes its name from the castle which was begun to be rebuilt by Rufus. *Lit. World*, 1899, Feb. 3, 94 *b*.<sup>1)</sup>

A distinction is attempted to be drawn between the indigent and those in comfortable circumstances *Rev. of Rev.*, 1899, Jan. 16, 40 *a*.<sup>1)</sup>

Double passives of the third description have been found only in connexion with *to leave* (Ch. XIX, 43).

Chartism was left to be represented by an open air meeting and a petition to Parliament. *MCCARTHY, Short Hist.*, Ch. VIII, 89.

<sup>1)</sup> *STOF., E. S.*, XXXI, 110.

His perfect honesty and loyalty to the Church of England are left to be called in question only by fanatics. *Lit. World*, 1894, Nov. 9, 354 a.

Note. In not a few double passives the first passive expresses some form of necessity.

This was obliged to be repeated before it could be believed. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. VIII, 58. T.

One of 'em (sc. the chairs) .. got so crazy that he was obliged to be burnt. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 123.

Things had been rather better of late, and no more belongings had been forced to be parted with. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. X, 83.

89. Also the desire to discard an indefinite or vague object from the discourse has, in the latest English, given rise to a peculiar passive infinitive construction, of which there is no parallel in either Dutch or German. Thus such a sentence as *This lens will enable a man to take pictures in rainy weather* may be changed into *This lens will enable pictures to be taken in rainy weather*, the object of the infinitive phrase having become the subject of the predicative verb in the head-sentence.

This passive construction is, no doubt, an extension of a variety of the accusative + passive infinitive, such as *He ordered the house to be pulled down*, which corresponds to the active *He ordered his men to pull down the house*. Comparing two such sentences as *He ordered his men to pull down the house* and *He enabled his men to pull down the house*, we find that they differ materially as to the grammatical relations existing between some of its constituent elements. While in the former *his men* represents the person- (or indirect) object, and *to pull down the house* the thing- (or direct) object of *ordered*, the corresponding elements stand in the latter for the non-prepositional object and the prepositional object of *enabled* respectively.

Owing to its novelty such a passive construction as *This lens will enable pictures to be taken in rainy weather* strikes us as illogical, but it is hardly more so than *He ordered the house to be pulled down* and similar accusatives + passive infinitive, to which long usage has made us accustomed. For discussion see also STOF, E. S., XXXI, III.

To enable this to be done in the simplest and quickest manner is the reason for placing these words at the end of each passage, instead of in an alphabetical glossary at the end of the book. CRAIGIE, *Easy Readings in Anglo-Saxon*, Preface.

As her knowledge of it (sc. English) was limited, a certain amount of imagination was necessary to enable her to be understood. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XV, 85.

Railways will enable the fruit to be sent to the market with the necessary expedition. *Times*.

The big table enables maps and documents to be laid out with ease. *Strand Mag.*, No. 53. 16 a,

Note. *To be enabled* being practically equivalent to *to be able*, the latter phrase is sometimes substituted for the former, giving rise to such a monstrous construction as:

The hypothesis that Shakespeare was joint author with Fletcher (sc. of the *Two Noble Kinsmen*) .. is on internal evidence not able to be sustained. *Lit. World*, 1897, April 23, 291 c.

I fear that owing to the New Budget arrangements, the legacy for a new church at Aldershot will not be able to be paid. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3671, 312 b.

Nearly the whole of the first floor of the so-called Casa di Crescentius has been able to be saved. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 18, 11 a.

The use of *capable of* + passive gerund in place of *able to* + passive infinitive, although also yielding questionable idiom, cannot, from a grammatical point of view, be taken reasonable exception to: *capable* being often predicated of non-personal subjects. The following is an instance:

The amount of wealth which is capable of being transferred from any country to any other country is a strictly limited quantity. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8603, 2 a.

## CHAPTER LVI.

### THE GERUND.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

The Grammatical Nature of the Gerund . . . . .	1— 4
The Verbal and Substantival Features of the Gerund . . . .	5—24
The Verbal Features of the Gerund . . . . .	6— 9
The Substantival Features of the Gerund . . . . .	10—16
The Gerund exhibiting at once Verbal and Substantival Features . . . . .	17—24
Further Syntactical Observations about the Gerund . . . .	25—37
The Distinction of Voice disregarded . . . . .	25—29
The Distinction of Tense disregarded . . . . .	30—31
The Gerund followed by an Adnominal Adjunct with <i>of</i> .	32—33
The Gerund preceded by the Common Case of a (Pro)noun or the Objective of a Personal Pronoun . . . . .	34—37
Compound Gerunds . . . . .	38—42
The Gerund compared with other Verbals and the Noun of Action . . . . .	43—52
The Gerund compared with the Infinitive . . . . .	43—45
The Gerund compared with the Noun of Action . . . . .	46—48
The Gerund compared with the Present Participle . . . .	49—51
The Gerund compared with the Past Participle . . . . .	52
The distinction between Gerund and Verbal Noun not justifiable . . . . .	53—57
Historical Survey of the Rise of the Gerund . . . . .	58—65





## Grammatical Nature of the Gerund.

1. a) The gerund is a substantival form of the verb which is intermediate between the infinitive and the noun of action; i. e. it is of a less distinctly verbal nature than the infinitive, and of a more distinctly verbal nature than the noun of action.  
b) All verbs have a gerund, only those which have no non-finite excepted.
2. Gerund-forms which correspond to complex predicates (Ch. I, 15) that contain an auxiliary of either voice or tense, or of both together, may be called complex gerunds, e. g.: *being punished, having punished, having been punished*.
3. a) Complex gerunds should be distinguished from compound gerunds, i. e. such as are made up of a noun, adverb or preposition + verb, e. g. *horse-breeding, bringing-up* (or *up-bringing*), *listening-to* (38—42).  
b) The same name may with more or less justice be given to the gerunds of word-groups forming a kind of unit and consisting of:
  - 1) a copula + nominal (or nominal equivalent) e. g.: *being poor, remaining poor, becoming poor*.
    - i. I was always fond of being alone. LAMB., *The Witch Aunt* (Sel. Eng. Stories, I, 53).  
My not being able to read them (sc. the stories) very well probably made them appear more strange and out of the way to me. *ib.*, 56
    - ii. I should prefer being a lady's maid to remaining at home. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, Ch. XVI, 266.
    - iii. To think of your turning book-hunter! LYTTON, *Caxt.*, XVII, Ch. I, 450.These combinations can, of course, hardly be called compound gerunds when they contain, as they often do, an adverbial modifier, as in:  
I told him of the church's being so well worth seeing. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIV, 133.
  - 2) a verb + nominal (or nominal equivalent) in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct, e. g.: *making known, keeping bright*.  
Greek scholars who first taught Greek in Italy found that what was demanded at their hands was not so much the teaching of the language as the making known its thought. *Edinb. Rev.*, Oct., 1905.  
She also took pride in keeping bright the silver skillet. (?) *The Mischief-maker*, Ch. I.
  - 3) adverb + noun in the function of non-prepositional object, e. g.: *paying heed, taking notice, catching cold, paying respect, doing honour*, etc.

Journalists of the most violently opposed political creeds vied with each other in doing honour to their English guests. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 207, 239*b*.

No line is any longer drawn between combatant and non-combatant in many of the modern methods of waging war. *Manch. Guard.*, V, No. 16, 302*a*.

*Note.* Compound gerunds may be made complex, i.e. made to show the distinction of either voice or tense, or both.

This, Sir Lucius, I call being ill-used. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, III, 4 (252).

Tennyson disliked being lionised or run after. Horace enjoyed being pointed out as he walked along the street. *Daily News*, No. 19782, 5*g*.

4. Gerunds may also be formed direct from:

*a)* nouns, e.g.: *ballooning, black-berrying, fowling, gardening, nutting, shopping, soldiering*, etc.

He saw the dangers of day-dreaming. *Times, Lit. Sup.*, No. 993, 49*d*.

Upper Silesia .. is, perhaps, the wealthiest mining district in the whole of Europe. *Ib.*, No. 992, 35*a*.

*Note.* These *ing*-forms are also frequent enough as present participles, but the other verbal forms corresponding to them, if used at all, are to be set down as back-formations.

*b)* adverbs, e.g.: *homing* (= *home-coming*), *innings, outing*.

She professed her entire indifference as to the route of her outing. *E. F. BENSON*, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. I, 25.

*Note.* Nonce-words in *ing* which have the same grammatical function as gerunds are formed freely from words or phrases of various descriptions, e.g.: *oh-ing, hear-hearing, pooh-poohing, how-d'ye-doing*. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *ing*, I.

## The Verbal and Substantival Features of the Gerund.

5. The gerund is of a variable nature: i.e. sometimes it exhibits either exclusively verbal or exclusively substantival features, sometimes at once verbal and substantival features. Again in many positions the gerund is practically equivalent to, and even interchangeable with the infinitive on the one hand, or the noun of action on the other.

*a)* The grammatical features of verbs are: 1) that they may be accompanied by objects and adverbial adjuncts; 2) that either by inflection or periphrasis they may show the distinctions of tense, voice, mood, person and number. Those mentioned under 2) are the most typical.

*b)* The grammatical features of nouns are: 1) that they may be used in a variety of functions in the sentence, i.e. as subject, nominal part of the predicate, non-prepositional object, adverbial adjunct (as in *He came home, He came yesterday*); 2) that they may be preceded by a preposition and form with it a prepositional object, an adverbial adjunct or an adnominal adjunct; 3) that in the above functions they may be modified by adjectives, articles, adnominal pronouns, and numerals, nouns in the genitive or in the common case; 4) that they may be used as adnominal modifiers either in the genitive or in the common case.

### The Verbal Features of the Gerund.

6. The verbal features of the gerund are the same as those of the infinitive and the present participle.

7. Like these verbals, it may be attended by an object, non-prepositional or prepositional, or by an adverbial adjunct, or by both an object and an adverbial adjunct. For illustration see also Ch. VIII, 77.

i. Hating one's neighbour is forbidden by the Gospel. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 368.

Making Germany pay in coal is having a disastrous effect on our mining industry. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 3603, 2*a*.

ii. There is nothing as bad as parting with one's friends. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 322.

Talking of great occasions and the Muses reminds me of our good friend Rienzi's invitation to the Lateran. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. II, 83.

iii. Nature's chief masterpiece is writing well. POPE, *Ess. on Crit.*, III, 724.

Lying late in the morning is a great shortener of life. LEIGH HUNT, *A few Thoughts on Sleep*.

Staring about aimlessly will do no good. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 180.

iv. Pushing the work so vigorously will soon produce results.

This is driving me into a corner. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIV.

8. Like these verbals, it may exhibit the distinctions of:

a) voice, e. g.: active gerund *showing*, passive gerund *being shown*. Only the passive gerund requires some illustration. Compare 25—29.

She begged the favour of being shown to her room. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24*a*.

If we escaped being noticed and punished, it was only because Mr. Webb was away at a wedding most of the time. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

One of the real dangers in Belgium was being shot by one's own sentries. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 72, 495.

b) tense, but only to show that its time-sphere is anterior to that of the predicative verb with which it is connected, e. g.: imperfect gerund *showing*, perfect gerund *having shown*. Only the perfect gerund requires some illustration. Compare 30—31.

I acknowledge having been at such a meeting. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXI, 94*b*.

I am glad of having met you. BAIN, *Comp.*, 170

He mentioned having read it in the paper. Mrs. ALEX, *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XVI, 283.

c) voice and tense together, e. g.: perfect passive gerund *having been shown*.

I relieved you from the bondage of having been born a Jew. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. LI, 124.

The fact that .. Mrs. Andrew had seen only yesterday a stranger woman talking to the house-agent .. constituted a strong case for the house having been let. E. F. BENSON, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. II, 39.

9. Obs. I. Like the infinitive (Ch. LV, 57, *b*) and the present participle (Ch. LVII, 3), the gerund is incapable of indicating that its time-sphere is posterior to that of the predicative verb with which it is connected,

the imperfect gerund being used in this case in like manner as in sentences in which the two time-spheres are co-incident.

It looks like being a very interesting autumn season Manch. Guard., V, No. 14, 273*b*.

He is afraid of my breaking down. DOR. GER., Etern. Wom., Ch. XX.

Note. Phrases expressing a near future blended with some other notion are, of course, frequent enough, and may, in a manner, be regarded as substitutes for the auxiliaries of the future tense. Such are *to be about* (or *going*) *to*, *to be on the point of*, etc. (Ch. L, 68—71). The news of his being about to return home instead of having been slain by the enemy. O. E. D., s. v. *ing*, 2.

II. The tense of the gerund is not affected by a change of time-sphere of the predicative verb with which it is connected (Ch. L, 12, c; Ch. LV, 57, a; Ch. LVII, 3).

In coming home, { he always meets with some accident.  
                                  { he always met with some accident.  
                                  { he will meet with some accident.

III. As will be shown below (25—31), the distinctions of both voice and tense are often disregarded.

### The Substantival Features of the Gerund.

10. The substantival features which may be observed in the gerund are, in the main, the same as those of ordinary nouns. In some cases these features are shared by the infinitive, in some they are not.

11. Like the infinitive, the gerund may be used in the function of subject, nominal part of the predicate and non-prepositional object. For a comparison of the two areas of incidence see Ch. XIX.

i. Talking mends no holes. Prov.

ii. This is anticipating. Stead's Annual of 1906, 24*b*.

iii. The curate dropped calling. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VIII, 35*a*. They could hear singing inside the placarded hoarding, HARDY, Jude, V, Ch. VIII, 395.

12. Unlike the infinitive, the gerund may be preceded by any preposition to form with it a prepositional object, an adverbial adjunct or an adnominal adjunct, the former tolerating no other preposition than *to* before it in Standard English (Ch. LV, 3, Obs. III).

i. You must hear us talk, and not think of talking; you must see us drink, and not think of drinking; you must see us eat, and not think of eating. GOLDSMITH, She stoops, II, (178).

She was deaf | To blessing or to cursing save from one. TEN., Ger. & En., 578.

ii. She had laid her little bag of documents upon the table on coming in. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. V, 35.

iii. If I had the money for studying, I should go in for medicine. DOR. GER., Etern. Wom., Ch. XI

Note. The gerund of an intransitive verb may be preceded by weak *there*.  
He did not doubt *there being* very pleasant walks in every direction. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXIV, 183.

He spoke of *there being* a danger. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 180.

13. Unlike the infinitive, the gerund may be preceded by all the ordinary noun-modifiers, i. e. by:

a) an adjective or adjective equivalent, as in:

He was greeted with vociferous cheering. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 281 *a*.  
Note the idioms in: i. It was easy talking till you came to that. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. III, 146.

It is fine talking. *Id.*, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 47.

ii. That was bitter hearing to both parents. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, III, Ch. VII, 290.

iii. All seems smooth sailing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 4 *b*.

iv. Easy writing makes hard reading. *Times*, *Lit. Sup.*, No. 999, 149 *b*.

Note. It may be observed that modification by an adjective placed before the gerund and modification by an adverb placed after it, often have practically the same effect. Thus *I do not like early rising* and *I do not like rising early* only differ in so far as the latter emphasizes the earliness of the rising more strongly than the former. For the rest the difference is chiefly one of style.

It must not, however, be supposed that the adverb always stands after the gerund (Ch. VIII, 77). Thus it is placed before the gerund in:

I was so afraid of Mr. Jarndyce's suddenly disappearing. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39. (Placing the adverb after the gerund would give it undue stress.)

It was impossible even before dinner, to avoid often walking about in the pattern of the carpet. *Hard Times*, III, Ch. II, 102 *b*.

He could do nothing but tenderly express his regret at parting and speak vaguely and almost mysteriously of their soon meeting, *DISR.*, *Syb.*, III, Ch. X, 207.

b) the definite or the indefinite article. For illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 37.

i. I shall never forget the waking next morning; the being cheerful and fresh for the first moment, and then the being weighed down by the stale and dismal oppression of remembrance, DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 30 *a*.

ii. It seemed doubtful whether we should escape a wetting. *Times*, No. 1809, 701 *a*.

Note the idioms in: i. I might have had this prize for the asking. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 253.

The great rivers swarmed with fish for the taking. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. III, 27.

The story .. has lost nothing in the telling. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. X, 154.

ii. That's a bad hearing. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22 *a*.

Sullivan could hardly obtain a hearing. MAC., *Clive*, (529 *a*).

I do not remember that he had so bad a beating. *Times*.

c) adnominal pronouns and numerals, including phrases which have the value of numerals.

i. Even amid this wilful bottling of all talk .. a mirthful hour has been provided by Lord Charles Beresford. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 4 *b*.

ii. What moving about of lanterns in the courtyard and stables though the moon was shining! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36.

iii. She could read any English book without much spelling. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. I.

There is hardly any desiring to refresh such a memory as that. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. V, 35. T.

He used to play croquet all August, when there was no hunting and no shooting. E. F. BENSON, Mr. Teddy, Ch. II, 47.

The world has seen nothing like this grim settling down to the suffering of death, wounds and privations beyond all imagining. Westm. Gaz., No. 7577, 4 b.

No one fancies that he can .. criticise Chinese poetry without some little training for his task. Ib., No. 8597, 6 a.

I retired to the front (sc. of the premises) to do some thinking. Punch, No. 3810, 56 a.

iv. For a term or two he stayed on in Oxford, .. doing a certain amount of teaching and lecturing. BROWN, The French Revol. in Eng. Hist, Introd.

v. Oliver, having had by this time as much of the outer coat of dirt which encrusted his face and hands removed as could be scrubbed off in one washing, was led into the room of his benevolent protectress. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 26.

vi. It (sc. the bill) is then circulated, and a day is fixed for the second reading. Royal Readers (STOF., Leesb., I, 48)

d) a genitive or possessive pronoun,

1) standing by way of subject to the predication it expresses (Ch. XXIV, 9).

Paul was quite alarmed at Mr. Feeder's yawning. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 104.

I heard of his running away. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 494.

Note the idioms in: i. I promised to eat all of his killing. SHAK., Much Ado, I, I, 45.

My daughters undertook to adorn the walls with pictures of their own designing. GOLD., Vic., Ch. IV, (255).

Will you take a husband of your friends' choosing? SHER., Riv., I, 2.

ii. Her songs are her own making. LYTTON, Pom p., I, Ch. III, 19 a.

It was all Cornelia's doing. BESANT, Bell, II, 155. T.

Note. Also *its* as the genitive of the indefinite, or the anticipating personal, pronoun is frequent enough before a gerund.

i. The clerk .. went down a slide on Cornhill .. in honour of its being Christmas-Eve. DICK., Christm. Car., I, 18.

The notion of its being Sunday was the strongest in young ladies like Miss Phipps. G. ELIOT, Scenes, III, Ch. V, 218.

I won't hear of its raining on your birthday! OSC. WILDE, Lady Wind's Fan, I, I, (19).

ii. Mademoiselle doubts .. its being so easy to forgive. DICK., Little Dor., Ch. II, 12 b.

After some talk about its being hard upon Nan to have to take leave so suddenly of her governess, Clara's wish was granted. DOR. GER., Etern. Wom., Ch. XIII.

2) standing by way of non-prepositional object to the predication it expresses (Ch. XXIV, 20; Ch. XXXIII. 7). See also below 27.

i. It (sc. the tormenting humour) was still held to be necessary to my poor mother's training. DICK., Cop., Ch. VIII, 58 b.

He began to give a half-humorous account of the troubles and storms of Hester's bringing-up. MRS. WARD, *Rich. Meyn.*, II, Ch. X, 201.

On the day of Hester's burying Long Whindale lay glittering white under a fitful and frosty sunshine. *ib.*, IV, Ch. XXIV, 499.

He was glad to receive early lights on the subject of his daughter's upbringing. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, I, Ch. V, 67.

ii. I never meant this miscreant should escape, | But wish'd you to suppress such gusts of passion, | That we more surely might devise together | His taking-off. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 2, (355 a).

His pore mother .. made a mistake at his christening. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. X, 91.

They now put the finishing touch to their training and equipment. *Il. Lond. News*. No. 3940, 569 a.

3) indicating the duration of the action or state it expresses.

After eight years' suffering she was quickly and entirely cured. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5261, 7c.

Yokohama is fifteen days' steaming from San Francisco. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 212, 113 b.

4) denoting the time of happening of the action or state it expresses.

She has as many tricks as a hare in a thicket, or a colt the first day's breaking. GOLD, *She stoops*, II, (295).

b) the common case of nouns or such pronouns as have no genitive, or the objective of personal pronouns, the relation of these modifiers to the gerund corresponding to that of subject to predicate (34—37).

i. I don't approve of young men getting engaged until they have some prospect of being able to marry. ANSTEY, *Voces Populi*, *Christm. Romp.*, 206.

She listened to the door slamming. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, II, Ch. II, 214.

ii. You seem to understand me by each at once her choppy fingers laying upon her skinny lips. SHAK., *Macb.*, I, 3, 34.

You will oblige me by all leaving the room. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 414.

iii. Excuse me putting in a word. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. I, 7.

Pardon me saying it. TEN., *Princ.*, I, 154.

Note. The subject-indicating element may be a lengthy word-group. On a sudden, many a voice along the street, | And heel against the pavement echoing, burst | Their drowse. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 271. (= the echoing of the heel against the pavement)

All peoples are not equally prepared. It is not a question of ascendancy; it is a question of those who are able doing the task they alone are prepared to perform. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 25, 515 c.

14. Unlike the infinitive, the gerund may be followed and modified by a word-group with the preposition *of* representing either a subjective or an objective genitive. The relative frequency of the *of*-construction, as compared with the subjective or the objective genitive has already been discussed in Ch. XXIV, 19 and 21. Naturally the gerund, when followed by a word-group with *of*, is mostly preceded by another modifier (32).

i. He was suddenly startled from his slumbers by the bustling-in of the housekeeper. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 113).

He would not stand the bullying of the doctor any more. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 31.

II. The milking of cows was a sight Mrs. Poyser loved. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, VI, Ch. XLIV, 412.

Modern conditions do not lead to the quick weeding out of the feeble and the diseased. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8603, 4a.

Note a) Of some special interest are constructions in which the gerund is also modified by a subjective genitive or by another prepositional word-group.

i. Leigh Hunt was undoubtedly both pained and puzzled by Byron's misunderstanding of his attitude: J. H. LOBBAN, *Sel. in Prose and Verse from Leigh Hunt*, *Introd.*

ii. This will hinder the growth of better relations with Germany and the granting to her of concessions in economic life. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8579, 3a.

β) A gerund with an objective *of*-combination is equivalent to, and often interchangeable with a gerund with a non-prepositional object. Thus *The purchasing of needless things as ruined many a one* = *Purchasing needless things has ruined many a one*. For further discussion see 32.

15. Unlike the infinitive the gerund may be freely used as an adnominal adjunct placed attributively before its head-word. See, however, Ch. LV, 73, b.

Godolphin was not a reading man. MAC., *Ad.*, (754 b).

Mrs. Bretton was not generally a caressing woman. CH. BRONTË, *Vil.*, Ch. I, 5

Note. In this function the gerund forms many established designations, graphically distinguished from occasional combinations by the use of the hyphen. Such are *carving-knife*, *dancing-master*, *dwelling-house*, *fowling-piece*, *laughing-stock*, *meeting-house*, *reaping-hook*, *stumbling-block*, *spinning-wheel*, *turning-lathe*, *turning-point*, *walking-stick*, etc. etc.

In the same position and function we also find the present participle, likewise often forming with its head-word a kind of compound; thus in:

The general is a serving officer. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8121, 3a.

The Bill has passed through a Standing Committee. *ib*

Comforts for fighting men. *ib.* (i.e. men fighting in the field. But *fighting* is a gerund in: There's no justice for a fighting man (SHAW, *Cash. Byron's Prof.*, Ch. XIII, 239), i.e. a man who makes his living by prize-fighting)

Many combinations leave room for a twofold interpretation (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. VII). For instances of indubitable present participles used attributively see also Ch. LVII, 19.

16. Unlike the infinitive, the gerund may be inflected for number and for case. Inflection for number is quite common; not so that for case, which seems to be confined to collocations with *sake*.

i. At length the tumult died away in low gaspings and moanings. MAC., *Clive*, (514 a).

Good beginnings make good endings. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 68.

There have been indiscriminate burnings, pillagings, and shoolings; with what discernible results? *Times*, No. 2301, 99 a.



ii. Calm Temperance, whose blessings those partake | Who hunger, and who thirst for scribbling's sake. POPE, *Dunciad*, I, 50.  
 He (sc. the moor-hen) does not kill for eating's sake. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 12 *b*  
 It is nobler to talk for talking's sake than to talk with a purpose. *ib.*, No. 5607, 4 *b*.  
 They never speak for speaking's sake. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/10, 1924, 294 *c*.

### The Gerund exhibiting at once Verbal and Substantival Features.

17. The gerund is often attended by both verb- and noun-modifiers. Not a few instances are to be found in the preceding sections. Among the numerous possible combinations it is especially the following which deserve attention:

18. Very frequently we meet with gerunds that are modified by a genitive or possessive pronoun and followed, or preceded, by one or more verb-modifiers, i. e. objects or adverbial adjuncts;  
*a)* all the verb-modifiers following the gerund:

Perhaps my being here prevents her coming to you. *SHER., School*, V, 3, (430).

Mrs. Sedley had forgiven his breaking the punch-bowl. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

Sometimes I fancied that Peggotty objected to my mother's wearing all her pretty dresses. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 *b*.

*b)* one of the verb-modifiers preceding the gerund:

From his first speaking to me, his voice connected itself with an association in my mind which I could not define. *DICK., Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39.

Their greatness seems to consist in their never having done anything to distinguish themselves. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 54.

19. *a)* Also the definite or indefinite article is often found together with verb-modifiers of the gerund, especially prepositional objects or adverbial adjuncts (13, *a)* and *b)*.

i. The excitement of the events of the day, the quitting my home, the meeting with captain Quin, were enough to set my brains in a whirl. *THACK., Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 48.

ii In ancient times, no work of genius was thought to require so great parts and capacity as the speaking in public. *HUME, Es.* XIII, Of Eloquence, 99. All this noisy contention amidst a skimming to and fro, and lighting on fresh branches. *DICK., Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XVII, 63 *a*.

iii The meeting with such formidable obstacles at such an unseasonable time upset all his plans.

*b)* Constructions in which the gerund is preceded by the definite article and followed by a non-prepositional object were, apparently, quite common in Early Modern English, but are now unusual, especially in the case of the object being a noun. In literary English, even of quite recent times, instances are not, however, quite so unfrequent as is often believed. For discussion and illustration see also *ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 181—2;

KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXI, 327; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., VII, No. 16; CURME, E. S., XLV, 361.

Nothing in his life | Became him like the leaving it. SHAK., Mac b, I. 4, 8. (The construction is revived in: Nothing perhaps in life became him like to the leaving it MCCARTHY, Hist. of Our Own Times, I, Ch. I, 3.)

My attention was fixed on another subject, the completing a tract which I intended shortly to publish. GOLD., Vic., Ch. II.

I have another reason for refraining to shoot besides the fearing discomfiture and disgrace. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XIII, 134. T.

I regard it as a most happy thought, the placing Miss Smith out of doors. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. VI, 46.

It was necessary to the realizing his project that he should pass for a god. GODWIN, Cal. Wil., II, Ch. I, 153.

He had certain inward misgivings that the placing him within the full glare of the judge's eye was only a formal prelude to his being immediately ordered away for instant execution. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV.

The contemplating a father's death .. it seems a kind of parricide. LYTTON, My Novel, II, VIII, Ch. IV, 30.

I am not sure if the inhabiting this house was not also believed to convey some unusual power of intellect. MRS. GASK, Cranf., Ch. VII, 129.

This being the turning over a new leaf, he duly looked about for a temperance hotel. HARDY, Jude, III, Ch. I, 160.

Next in importance was the restoring peace and order to, and banishing misery and pauperism from the sister isle. Lit. World.

Note a) In many cases idiomatic propriety can easily be re-established by replacing the non-prepositional object by an adnominal adjunct with *of*, or by simply suppressing the article.

i. Master Blifil objected to the sending away the servant. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. VIII, 53 *b*. (rewritten: .. the sending away of the servant, *or, which seems even more usual*: the servant being sent away.)

ii. I think it probable that she would be displeased on the first hearing it. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXI, 303. (re-written: .. on first hearing it.)

*β*) Sometimes the syntactical connexions make either of the alternative constructions, or both, impracticable; thus especially:

i. when the object of the gerund is a reflexive pronoun, as in:

It is the thinking ourselves vicious then that principally contributes to make us vicious. GODWIN, Cal. Wil., II, Ch. VI, 188.

ii. when the gerund and its object form a kind of compound gerund (3, *b*, 3), as in:

This made the taking offence impossible. *ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

iii. when the gerund is also modified by an adverbial adjunct standing after the object, as in:

Then the shouting and the struggling, and the onslaught, that was made on the defenceless porter. The scaling him with chairs for ladders [etc.]. DICK., Christm. Car., II.

The following them about, and jesting with them, affords a cheap and innocent amusement for the boy population. *id.*, Pickw., Ch. II, 10

The very missing her at the coach had something fatal in it. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVI, 171.

In the following example the writer is bound to say *the seeing the donkey*, without *of*, on account of the preceding *seeing the donkey*:

The pluperfect is justified (sc. in this example) by the fact that the going for

a walk preceded seeing the donkey, and it is used here because the seeing the donkey is the really important event. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2247.

c) Also the construction indefinite article + gerund + non-prepositional object in the following quotation is due to the gerund being also modified by an adverbial adjunct placed after the object:

That is a turning English into French, rather than a refining English by French. DRYDEN, *Defence of the Epilogue*.

20. a) What has been said about the above construction with the definite article under 19, b) also applies, in the main, to that in which the gerund is preceded by a demonstrative pronoun and is followed by a non-prepositional object.

This crossing the Alps is a trial. DISR., *Lothair*, I, Ch. VI, 31.

It is a bad thing — this beating the police. *id.*, Syb., V, Ch. I, 292. (Observe, however, that the alternative construction with *of* would give rise to ambiguity.)

b) But in the three following examples given by CURME (E. S., XLV, III, 361) the syntactical connexions remove all harshness from the construction:

I approve of this holding the speakers to the question.

This pinning one's faith to a political party is very harmful to the country.

I don't like this scaring the very life out of a fellow.

21. The combination *no* + gerund + non-prepositional object is a peculiarly English idiom. For the rest the combination indefinite numeral + gerund + non-prepositional object appears to be unusual.

i. There is no making you serious a moment. SHER., *School*, IV, 2, (407).

There is no trusting appearances. *ib.*, V, 2, (425)

There was no mistaking the real nature of the trial through which he had passed. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XIV, 142.

ii. Emma thought she could not so pack it as to ensure its safety without much incommoding him. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. VII, 47. (more usual English: incommoding him very much.)

22. The gerund may be preceded by an adnominal modifier, and at the same exhibit the distinction of either voice or tense, or of both together. According to CURME (E. S., XLV, III, 362) constructions of this description in which the adnominal element is represented by either an article or a demonstrative pronoun, are clumsy and are, therefore, mostly avoided. Conversely those in which the complex gerund is preceded by a genitive or possessive pronoun, or by *no*, appear to be quite common, at least in literary English.

i. \* Bingley urged Mr. Jones's being sent for immediately. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. VIII, 44.

You must excuse my not being convinced by assurances only. *ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 49.

\*\* There is no being shot at without a little risk. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3, (279).

\*\*\* The greatest pain I can suffer is the being talked to and being stared at. AD., *Spect.*, I.

I am not disposed to maintain that the being born in a workhouse is in

Itself the most fortunate and enviable circumstance that can possibly befall a human being. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 19.

They enjoyed the not being hurried. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*.

ii. \* Their greatness seems to consist in their never having done anything to distinguish themselves. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 54.

I don't think the minister will like your having given her a novel to read. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil*, II, 51.

\*\* Grandcourt .. was little else to her than a living sign of what she felt to be her failure as a wife — the not having presented Sir Hugo with a son. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, III, Ch. XXV, 4.

It is the having been so near claiming you for my own that makes the denial so hard to bear. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXI, 237.

iii. He had been at great pains to atone for the having been obliged to make his toilet .. without the aid of dressing-case and tiring-equipage. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. IV, 57 *b*.

This seemed a satire upon his having been born without that useful article of plate (sc. a silver spoon) in his mouth. *id.*, *Nick.*, Ch. I, 2 *a*.

How he regretted, if not the giving away of his cake, at least the having been caught in such a strange act of charity. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

23. Quite common are also those constructions in which the gerund preceded by a preposition exhibits the distinctions of either voice or tense, or of both together.

i. He is desirous of being admired. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 197.

ii. He went crazy through having lost his fortune. *ib*.

iii. He went crazy through having been robbed of all his money.

24. Of equal frequency are those constructions in which a gerund is preceded by a preposition and is attended by a verb-modifier.

i. He escaped by crossing the river. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 197.

ii. What with mugging at that blasted constituency and hanging about this beastly lobby, I'm all out of condition. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 4 *a*.

iii. There is no use in even talking of a reformed Second Chamber. *ib.*, No. 5255, 2 *a*.

It is difficult in these days to escape from the topic of politics, even by deliberately talking about something else. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3694, 184 *a*.

## Further Syntactical Observations about the Gerund.

### The Distinction of Voice disregarded.

25. The distinction of voice which is the gerund is capable of expressing is often disregarded. The reason why, apart from its origin (58—65), the gerund often preserves the active voice instead of the passive, apparently required by the meaning, is that its passiveness is often more or less vague or uncertain (27). Naturally this is most frequently the case when, through the absence of verb-modifiers, especially objects, the verbal element in it is dimmed. It is then felt to differ little from the noun of action, which, indeed, is mostly preferred, if there is one to express the meaning intended (47). It should be observed that adverbial

adjuncts modifying the sentence generally do not affect the voice of the gerund.

The student is strongly recommended to compare the following quotations with those in 8, *a*), in which the passive gerund could not be replaced by the active.

He has not, in fact, either murdered his parents, or committed any act worthy of transportation or hanging up to the present day. THACKERAY, *Pendennis*, I, Ch. II, 25.

It was the custom for knights to keep their shields covered, to prevent tarnishing. F. J. ROWE, note to *Ten. in the Lane*, & EI, 7.

The Russian people are certainly not incapable of training. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 331, 76 *a*.

I doubt whether any specimen of the book can be quite fairly judged without both seeing and reading. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8633, 10 *a*. (Possibly the printer has dropped *it* after *reading*.)

Note *a*) Adnominal adjuncts naturally favour the use of the active voice. See the examples in 13, *b*.

My wounds will not bear this perpetual tampering. GODWIN, *Cal. Will.*, II, Ch. III, 163

*β*) It stands to reason that when the gerund is followed by a prepositional phrase with *by*, representing the inverted subject (Ch. XLVII, 3), the passive voice is used when required by the sense.

One of the real dangers in Belgium was being shot by one's own sentries. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 72, 495.

26. Some cases in which the gerund, when attended by no object, adverbial adjunct, or inverted subject, is kept in the active voice, notwithstanding its passive meaning, deserve special mention. We find it in this form practically regularly:

*a*) when it is the subject of the sentence and, as such, is placed in front-position.

Hanging and wiving goes by destiny. SHAKESPEARE, *Merchant*, II, 9, 83.

Horsewhipping would be too good for such a scoundrel. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norrs.*, Ch. XXXIV, 300.

Compare: It's as sudden as being shot. RUDY. KIPLING, *Light*, Ch. VIII, 107.

*b*) when it is the object of *to need* (and its synonyms *to require* and *to want*), *to choose*, *to deserve* and *to repay*.

i. Only two small incidents that befell the novice need mentioning. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

ii. Charles Belford will require looking after one of these days. *Punch*.

iii. He wanted comforting. DICKENS, *Great Expectations*, Ch. XVIII, 175.

I want to know exactly what you want doing to this house. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. V, 132.

Thus also in: The candles were in need of snuffing. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. X, 118.

iv. It was not until she discovered that she had gained nothing by her recantation but close imprisonment for life that she withdrew it and explicitly chose burning instead. SHAW, *Saint Joan*, 30. T.

v. I thought the whole story altogether deserved commemorating. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. X, 53.

He deserves hanging for that. DOUGLAS JERROLD, *Black-Eyed Susan*, II, I, (30).

vi. His last essay .. will repay reading and re-reading. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8591, 13 *a*.

This book published twenty years ago .. will repay studying in these times. *ib.*, 21/10, 1922, 8 *a*.

*Note.* Also *to bear* seems to preserve the active voice as a rule.

i. Alas, the life of such boys does not bear telling altogether. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

These houses won't bear dancing in. *MARRYAT*, *Olla Podrida*.

It won't bear thinking about. *CON. DOYLE*, *Trag. of the Korosko*, Ch. II, 65.

ii. Those soft words do not bear being written down. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXVI, 699.

In the following quotation the passive voice may be due to the gerund being attended by an adverbial modifier of instrumentality:

He sometimes could not bear being teased with questions. *BOSWELL*, *Johns.*, 375 *a*.

*c)* when it stands by way of object after *worth* (Ch. XLV, 27, *a*).  
See also Ch. III, 13, *Obs.* I.

The whole world has smiled, or sighed over that extraordinary diary, in which Louis XVI entered, day after day, what seemed to him best worth recording and remembering. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 4 *b*.

*Note.* It may here be observed that the gerund after *worth* is not unfrequently preceded by the definite article.

It was worth the getting-up for. *HOR. HUTCHINSON* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 2 *c*).

The secret .. was well worth the giving. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8627, 6 *b*.

Such a risk was certainly not worth the running. *MARZIALS*, *Life of Dick.*, Ch. II, 37.

*d)* when it stands after final *for*.

There were in the book things that were not ripe for telling. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8333, 5 *a*.

Every block .. was shipped from the home quarries ready for placing in position. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3862, 586 *a*.

The active voice of the gerund seems also to be regularly preserved after *beyond*, which in this connexion has the value of an adjective (Ch. LX, 46, *b*).

This fellow's formal, modest impudence is beyond bearing. *GOLDSMITH*, *She stoops*, V, (222)

He tried her patience beyond bearing. *EDNA LYALL*, *Hardy Novels*, Ch. XVII, 157.

The Turks are beyond reasoning. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6288, 1 *c*.

Also after *past* the ordinary practice seems to be in favour of the active voice.

i. He was past rousing. *WILK. COL.*, *Wom. in White*, I, 152.

He would have been past saving. *ib.*, III, Ch. XI, 448.

That we can come out of it with credit or dignity is past hoping. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/10, 1922, 7 *a*.

ii. I tried vainly to soothe her and reason with her; she was past being soothed. *WILK. COL.*, *Wom. in White*, I, 152.

Other prepositions of the same grammatical force seem to take the

passive voice of the gerund when required by the meaning of the sentence.

He was .. above being pleased. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 14.

Thus certainly when followed by the inverted subject or a prepositional phrase of a similar import.

You are above being dazzled by good looks. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, II, 33.

Mary, however sage and serious, was not above being pleased with the admiration of her rustic companion SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XIV, 159.

27. In the case of the active gerund with a passive meaning being modified by a genitive or a possessive pronoun, the latter may be understood as an objective genitive or its pronominal equivalent. Compare 13, *d*, 2; also Ch. XXIV, 20; Ch. XXXIII, 7. The construction appears to be common enough in the case of the gerund being one which readily suggests a noun of action of a similar meaning. Compare *christening* with *baptism*, *bringing-up* (or *up-bringing*) with *education*, *burying* with *burial*, *taking-off* with *destruction*, *training* with *education*, *undoing* with *ruin*.

I must present your friend with some little token, on the occasion of Paul's christening. DICK, *Dom b.*, Ch. V, 34.

What Lord Lansdowne asks is that, the Lords having created one disastrous precedent to the prejudice of the Commons, the Commons should now avert the consequences by making another precedent to their own undoing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 1 *b*.

Even the addition of the inverted subject does not always necessitate the passive voice.

He got much sympathy in the constituency for his rough handling by a band of hooligans. *Manch. Guard.*, IV, No. 10, 185 *a*.

28. In view of the origin of the gerund (58—65), there is nothing surprising in the fact that in Early Modern English gerunds are often placed in the active voice where Present English, owing to their distinctly passive meaning, would have used the passive voice. See especially FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 665; A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex., Gram., Obs.*, 5.

Excuse his throwing into the water. SHAK., *Merry Wives*, III, 2, 206.

You have learn'd .. to watch, like one that fears robbing. *id.*, *Two Gent.*, II, 1, 26.

29. The frequent disregarding of voice is not confined to the gerund, but may also be observed in the infinitive and in the present participle. The cases in which the illogical active voice is found with either of the two last verbals differ, however, from those which concern the gerund. Compare Ch. LV, 72 ff; Ch. LVII, 5. In this place it is of some interest to observe that in cases in which the gerund varies with the infinitive the illogical active voice of the former always corresponds to the passive voice of the latter. Thus the verbs mentioned in 26, *b*), when construed with an H. POUTSMA, III 1.

infinitive, always have the latter in the passive voice when its meaning is passive,

Vice to be hated needs but to be seen. POPE, *Es. on Man*, II, 218.

This unique and momentous change evidently requires to be accounted for. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 49.

Gallows-bird. One who deserves to be hanged. O. E. D.

The actors in those great tragedies do not bear to be scanned too closely.

THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 962.

### The Distinction of Tense disregarded.

30. a) As in the case of the finite verb (Ch. L, 141), the disregarding of the tense-distinction in the gerund is mostly due to the fact that no necessity is felt to consider the time-spheres of the two predications in mutual relation, the mind being satisfied with viewing both of them from one and the same dividing-point (Ch. L, 3). Thus there is nothing strange in the use of the imperfect, instead of the perfect gerund, in such a sentence as *He was hanged for killing a man* (MASON, *Eng Gram.*, § 200), seeing that the difference of the time-spheres of the two predications may also be left unexpressed if the gerund-clause is replaced by a full clause introduced by *because*: *He was hanged because he killed a man* (Ch. L, 144).

Further instances of the tense-distinction being disregarded are afforded by:

i. Pray make my excuses to Pratt for not keeping my engagement. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 285.

I thank you for assembling here. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 29*b*.

I don't remember seeing more than one or two drunken men on week-days.

J. G. WOOD, *Good Words* (STOF., *Leesb.*, I, 72).

It is the sort of thing a man remembers eating. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. III, 50.

ii. After giving a masterly summary of the whole case, his Lordship concluded as follows. RID. HAG., *Mees. Mill*, Ch. XXI, 219.

He thanked him for saving his life. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1257.

I wasn't very likely to return without speaking to you. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 66.

b) Comparing the above quotations, in which the tense-distinction is disregarded, with those mentioned in 8, *b*), in which it is observed, it seems futile to attempt finding any principle which underlies the different practice. Thus by the side of the quotation in which *after* is followed by the imperfect gerund we find:

After having married you, I should never pretend to taste again. SHER., *School*, II, I, (377).

After having seen him publicly thus comport himself, but one course was open to me -- to cut his acquaintance. THACK., *Snoobs*, Ch. I, 14.



Also a comparison of the two following quotations may be adduced as evidence that the choice of tense is not always determined by any definite principle.

I don't remember ever having a keener sense of remorse. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

I remember having seen him. *id.*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 325.

31. Like the passive gerund (28), the perfect gerund is rare in Early Modern English (62, *e*). FRANZ (*Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 665) mentions but three instances from SHAKESPEARE, viz.: *Two Gent.*, I, 3, 16; *Temp.*, III, 1, 19; *Cymb.*, II, 3, 130.

### The Gerund followed by an Adnominal Adjunct with *of*.

32. Instead of gerund + non-prepositional object we often find *the* + gerund + adnominal adjunct with *of*, the adnominal adjunct representing an objective genitive.

a) Sometimes the two constructions would seem to be interchangeable, replacing one by the other, however, involving, of course, a substitution of an adverb of quality for an adjective, or vice versa.

i. He had little taste or genius for the pursuing of the exact sciences. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187. (= pursuing the exact sciences.)

I confess that, on the first reading of this letter, I was in such a fury that I forgot almost the painful situation in which it plunged me. *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XI, 144. (= first reading this letter.)

This week, which begins with Boxing-day is not one for the publishing of many books. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8579, 24 *a*. (= publishing many books.)

ii. The first half-hour was spent in piling up the fire. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XI, 57. (= the piling up of the fire.)

A bird-fancier is one who takes pleasure in rearing or collecting birds. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *bird-fancier*. (= the rearing or collecting of birds.)

Mrs. Boxer was employed in trimming a cap, LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 291. (= the trimming of a cap.)

b) In many cases, however, the first construction is impracticable, because it would imply association of the predication it expresses with the subject of the finite verb, which may be at variance with the meaning intended. The second construction, which is free from this implication, then appears as a welcome alternative. Thus the first construction could not be used instead of second employed in:

I'll be with you in the squeezing of a lemon. GOLD., *She stoops*, I, (174).  
We have no doubt he regrets the closing of the door upon his re-appearance in the House of Commons. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 2 *b*.

Conversely the second construction could not replace the first, because it would destroy the association mentioned above, in:

I always delight in overthrowing such kind schemes. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 55.

He troubled himself little about decorating his abode. MAC, Hist., I, Ch. III, 315.

I do care about filling properly the place to which I am born. L. B. WALFORD, Stay-at-homes, Ch. I.

c) Sometimes the two constructions, although both implying the above association, convey different shades of meaning. Thus the substitution of the first construction for the second would impart an unintended temporal meaning to the gerund in:

In the making of an anthology he displays a skill that almost entitles him to a share of Hazlitt's greatest fame. J. H. LOBBAN, Sel. from Leigh Hunt, Intr.

d) The second construction hardly admits of the gerund being encumbered by lengthy adjuncts, and could not, therefore, be very well be used in place of the first employed in:

This insinuation put me upon observing the behaviour of my mistress more narrowly for the future. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch XIX, 125.

Accordingly, he set seriously about sheltering and refreshing our hero for the night. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LX, 149 e.

The benefits of free emigration would result in freeing the country of a great number of undesirable characters. Daily Mail.

e) For the rest it should be observed that it is often the inscrutable laws of idiom that render one or the other construction practically obligatory, or at least highly preferable; thus in:

i. Jones resumes the lacing of his boots. GALSW., Silv. Box, II, I, (45).

The main purpose is now stated to be the exploring of the present unknown regions north of Franz Josef Land and Spitsbergen. Westm. Gaz., No. 5249, 8 c.

He then described the taking of hostages as a barbarian and an un-Christian method of war. ib., No. 8574, 5 a.

ii. Hating one's neighbours is forbidden by the Gospel. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 368

He amused himself with embellishing his grounds. MAC., War. Hist., (656 a).

I shall begin by reading the earlier will. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXXV, 247.

33. Constructions in which the gerund is followed by an adnominal adjunct with *of* representing an objective genitive, without being preceded by such a definitive adjunct as the definite article or a demonstrative pronoun, were common in Early Modern English, but survive now only as archaisms or vulgarisms. Compare Ch. LII, 46, *b*; Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VIII; and see STOF., Taalstudie, III, 326; FRANZ, E. S., XII; id., Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 667; EINENKEL, Hist. Synt., § 3, 7.

Leave wringing of your hands. SHAK., Hamlet, III, 4, 34.

Asahel would not turn aside from following of him. Bible, Sam., B, II, 21.

I hear of a fellow, too, committed just now for stealing of horses. FARQUHAR, Rec. Of., V, 4, (333).

Addison, blushing, began reading of his verses. THACK., Es m., II, Ch. XI, 249.

I could only be happy by forgetting of her. DICK., *Cop*, Ch. LI, 367 *a*.

It is the fashion in this clime for women | To go twelve months in bearing of a child. TEN., *Queen Mary*, III, 6, (623 *b*).

We must cease throwing of stones either at saints or squirrels. RUSKIN, *For s Clav.*, XLVIII, 278.<sup>1)</sup>

### The Gerund preceded by the Common Case of a (Pro)noun or the Objective of a Personal Pronoun.

34. *a*) As has already been shown in Ch. XXIII, 12 and Ch. XXIV, 52—56, the common case of nouns often takes the place of the genitive, if the relation for which the latter stands is vague or ill-defined. The result is that in certain combinations the two forms are used side by side with no, or hardly any appreciable difference in meaning being thought of. In this place the following sets of quotations must suffice to illustrate this variety of practice:

i. It was her life's task and duty to dedicate all her powers to the prosperity and interests of her Fatherland. *Times*.

ii. He made it his life work to determine those positions for each sound. *LLOYD, Mod. Lang. Quart.*

i. She had an angel's face. *Mrs. Wood, East Lynne*, I, 121. T.

ii. So sweet a face, such angel grace, | In all that land had never been. TEN., *Beg. Maid*.

i. The Duke of Omnium (saw) with his eagle's eye that the welfare of his countrymen at large required that some great step should be initiated. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 78.

ii. Thou hast an eagle eye. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 16.

i. One would almost imagine that the Government's policy in Ireland was to create Sinn Feiners as fast as it eliminated them. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8579, 3 *a*.

ii. The signs of victory are not apparent, but if the Government policy is successful in crushing the whole opposition to it in Ireland, what then? *ib.*, 2 *a*.

The student may be here be reminded of the fact that in Northern Middle English the mark of the genitive was often absent, and is still frequently dispensed with in Northern English. Compare CURME, E. S., XLV, 363 f; EINENKEL, *Hist. Synt.*, § 16, 8.

1275. At the appostele biding (= at the apostle's bidding) sone þai went | Til (= to) þam again þat þam had sent. *HORSTMAN, Alteng. Leg., Neue Folge*, 140/187. (Compare: at the duke's praying | In Babiloine þe appostels dwelled. *ib.*, 140/214.)

*b*) In like manner the word denoting the originator of the predication expressed by the gerund is often kept in the common case even when it denotes a person. This practice is, naturally,

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 31.

the rule when it indicates a thing to which, strictly speaking, no personal activity can be ascribed, and is unavoidable when it has no genitive inflection, as is the case with certain pronouns and with numerals. In an analogous way the objective of a personal pronoun sometimes takes the place of the corresponding possessive pronoun (13, e). For discussion and illustration see Ch. XIX, 5.

35. Apart from the causes which may be assigned for the substitution of the common case for the genitive generally, the following factors may be mainly responsible for the shaking of the case-system concerning the (pro)nouns which stand by way of subject before the gerund:

a) the uncertainty of the interpretation to be put on some constructions in which a (pro)noun in the common case or the objective of a personal pronoun stands before the verbal in *ing*. 1) Thus *I cannot imagine anybody disliking Jack* (FLOR. MAR., *A Bankrupt Heart*) may be understood to mean *I cannot imagine that anybody should dislike Jack*, or *I cannot imagine anybody who would dislike Jack*; i. e. the object of *imagine* may be regarded to be the whole word-group *anybody disliking Jack*, or the pronoun *anybody* alone. According as either the first or the second interpretation is applied, *disliking* is to be regarded as a gerund or a present participle. To a person who would favour the first view, which seems the least rational, *anybody* would appear as an alternative form for *anybody's*. With the above compare *He could imagine himself cutting his throat in one of those rooms* (HUTCHINSON, *If Winter comes*, Ch. III, IV, 29), which admits only of the first interpretation.

On the other hand two interpretations, resembling those put upon the first example, are possible of:

*I cannot conceive a woman in her senses refusing Dick.* KIPL., *Light*, Ch. X, 131.

*He detested people laughing when he himself perceived no joke.* GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VII, 202.

*He speaks of a young married man being seized and shot, though his wife pleaded on her knees for his life.* WESTM. GAZ., No. 8615, 1 b.

If the verbal in *ing* in such an ambiguous sentence is understood as a participle, the clause of which it forms part may sometimes be expanded into an adverbial clause of time; thus:

*He watched her reading it (sc. the letter).* HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, II, Ch. III, III, 89. (also = as she read it)

*Mr. Macklean had collected us in the drawing-room, in order to listen to him reading the history of Joseph.* DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. IX. (also = as he read the history of Joseph.)

2) Another analysis may be applied to such a sentence as *Pardon me saying it* (TEN., *Princ.*, I, 154). In it *Pardon me* gives complete sense, *saying it* imparting to it more point by stating the matter as to which pardon is requested. The logical relation between *me* and *saying*

it might be expressed by the preposition *for*: *Pardon me for saying it*. But grammatically *saying it* modifies *me* adnominally, and *saying it* is a participle.

We may, however, also apprehend the whole of the notions expressed by *me saying it* as the object of *pardon*. This interpretation, which appears to be the more logical, would render the use of the possessive pronoun more appropriate than the personal pronoun *me*. We may add that it is also the more usual in Standard English, the possessive pronoun being distinctly preferred to the personal pronoun by educated speakers.

The comparative currency of *pardon me saying it*, also in good colloquial English, may have been furthered by its being unconsciously placed on a line with the equally common and strictly synonymous *pardon me for saying it*.

In like manner it may be the influence of the parallel constructions with *from* which is responsible for the relative frequency of the use of the personal, instead of the possessive pronoun, in such sentences as:

What can prevent us getting married. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXIX, 200.

They couldn't stop him marrying her. GALSW., *Tollet*, II, Ch. X, (1000).

3) If in such a sentence as *She's a bit lonesome poor thing, with her husband being so much away* (EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXI, 188) the preposition *with* is eliminated, the undeveloped clause is changed into what is called a nominative absolute (Ch. XX, 8), the verbal in it being an unmistakable participle. It will be observed that, although the meaning of the sentence is hardly affected by the elimination, the grammatical relations between the component elements of the latter have undergone a change. While in the sentence as it originally stands *her husband* is felt to be the modifying element and *being so much away* the element modified, these functions are reversed in the altered sentence: *her husband* now being the element modified, *being so much away* the modifying element. In sentences with *with* of the above type, which are frequent enough, the verbal never appears with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; no instances of this practice have, at least, come to hand. They may, however, have borne a part in causing uncertainty as to the form of the word which indicates the originator of the action or state denoted by the gerund.

4) CURME (E. S., XLV, 372) cites *I do not like to think of mother sitting all alone in the old home*, and observes that he feels "the construction as participial on account of the presence of the progressive idea, the conception of the continuation of the verbal activity," contrasting it with *I am not in favour of mother selling the old home*, in which he regards the construction as gerundial. The observation seems right enough, but it may be asked whether the alternative interpretation of considering the complex of the ideas expressed by *mother sitting all alone in the old home* as the (prepositional) object of *think* is inadmissible. The observant student will, most probably, have remarked that the sitting alone may be apprehended either as a fact or a contingency.

5) MURRAY (in O. E. D., s. v. *ing*) illustrates the probable influence of the participle constructions in furthering the use of the common case before gerunds by comparing the following sentences: *John was digging potatoes. Who saw John digging potatoes? Who ever heard of John (= John's) digging potatoes?*

6) It may here also be observed that in constructions with the common case, or the objective of a personal pronoun, before the verbal in *ing* of verbs which may also be construed with an accusative + infinitive, the verbal is best understood as a participle after such as express a perceiving. But the alternative interpretation of regarding this (pro)noun as a variant of a genitive or possessive pronoun, and, consequently, the verbal as a gerund is the more plausible one after other groups of this class of verbs (Ch. XVIII, 29—38). This view is borne out by the fact that the alternative construction with a genitive or possessive pronoun is admissible only so far as the latter verbs are concerned.

i. They had noticed the German sitting far down the woodland path. BUCH. Wint. Night, Ch. XI, 92.

You could hear him eating. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, II, Ch. I, 206.

ii. \* I can't abide a woman whistling. J. M. BARRIE.

Compare: I cannot bear your remaining at Bell-thorpe like a jewel in a sty. MER, Rich. Fev., Ch. XX, 137.

\*\* Mrs. Barthwick wouldn't like him coming about the place. GALSW., Silv. Box, I, 2, (20).

I don't like my daughter playing hockey. II. Lond. News, No. 3841, 793 a.

Compare: I don't like your binding yourself to work for so many years. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors, Ch. VII, 55.

\*\*\* To permit the present muddle-headed anarchy prevailing in such a serious problem is little short of a social indictment. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 255.

Compare: The charms of melody and beauty were too strongly impressed in Edward's breast to permit his declining an invitation so pleasing. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XXIII, 74 a.

\*\*\*\* I remember my poor grandmother once incidentally observing [etc.]. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, V, 69.

I remember you telling me. BEATR. HAR, Ships. I, Ch. XIII.

Compare: Since we have parted, I can never remember Emma's omitting to do anything I wished. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. V, 35.

\*\*\*\*\* I can quite understand you saying so. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., I, 104.

Compare: I can hardly understand a young Frenchman's not entering the army. MER., Lord Ormont, Ch. V, 79.

We understand Portia to hesitate for a word which shall describe her appropriately. Note to Merch. of Ven., III, 2, 159, in Clar. Press Ed.

b) the absolute phonetic identity of the genitive and the common case in the plural of practically all nouns, and also of the possessive and the personal pronoun *her*.

When we had dined, to prevent the ladies' leaving us, I generally ordered the table to be removed. GOLD., Vic., Ch. II

He insisted on his sisters' accepting the invitation. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 82.

c) the frequent uncertainty whether a given noun whose last sound is the blade-sibilant should be understood as a genitive singular or as a plural. Thus a person, hearing such a sentence

as *He spoke of the girl's (or girls') coming*, may, in many cases, be in doubt whether the reference is to a single girl or to a plurality of girls. And it is only natural that the unsophisticated mind should hit upon the simple expedient of using the noun without a sibilant when only one individual is in question.

36. Obs. I. Grammarians have been greatly puzzled to tell the exact nature of the verbal in *ing* when preceded by the common case of a (pro)noun, or the objective of a personal pronoun, in the connexion described above and have, consequently, felt a difficulty in giving it an appropriate name. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2328) calls it a half-gerund; KRÜGER styles it a gerundial participle-construction in his *Schulgrammatik*, § 549. Thinking that participial gerund-construction would better describe its nature, he adopted this name in his paper *Die Partizipiale Gerundialfügung, ihr Wesen und ihr Ursprung*, which he contributed to E. S., XXXVI.

It is difficult to see why two names should be needed for a verbal form which, although preceded by modifiers of a grammatically different description, remains unaltered in its relations to the other elements of the sentence. Comparing two such sentences as *Excuse the boy's saying so* and *Excuse the boy saying so*, we find that the logical relations between what is expressed by the different elements of the sentences are absolutely identical. And this appears to be the case with almost every pair of sentences which differ only as to the form of the noun preceding the verbal in *ing*. Compare Obs. II. We have seen (34) that also before an ordinary noun the genitive is often enough replaced by the common-case form of an adnominal noun. But nobody will for a moment entertain the notion that in this case the relations between what is expressed by the modifier and its head-word are altered. For discussion of the problem see also JESPERSEN, *Growth & Struct.*<sup>2</sup>, § 204; id., *De to Hovedarter av Grammatiske Forbindelser*, 19; CURME, E. S., XLV; KRUISINGA, *Handb.*<sup>3</sup>, 609 ff. An appropriate name for the construction illustrated by such sentences as *I do not like him coming here so often*, *Do you mind me smoking*, etc. is suggested by DEUTSCHBEIN (*System*, § 60, 4, c), who proposes to call it accusative + gerundium. The name implies the close resemblance of the accusative + infinitive, and suggests the fact that it provides for those cases in which the accusative + infinitive is not available or, at least, at variance with idiom (Ch. XIX, 70). The name is, of course, only suitable for those cases in which the (pro)noun is the non-prepositional object of the preceding finite verb, as in the examples given above, or depends on a preposition as in:

I insist on Miss Sharp appearing. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch XI, 108.

She listened to the door slamming. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, II, Ch. II. 214.

Instances of what might be called a nominative + gerund, e. g.: *It's no good you hanging round* (Punch), *My daughter staying so late worried me* (CURME, l. c., 367), are not frequently met with.

II. Only in a few instances is the general meaning of the sentence materially modified by a change of construction. Compare *What do you think of my sister's singing?* with *What do you think of my sister singing?* and *Paul was quite alarmed at Mr. Feeder's yawning* (DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 104) with *Paul was quite alarmed at Mr. Feeder yawning*; and *What is the use of my speaking?* with *What is the use of me speaking* (= if I speak)? and *Papa did not care about their learning* with *Papa did not care about them learning* (THACK., *Es m.*, I, 242). Compare 37, *b*. For discussion see also KRUIS., *Hand b.*<sup>3</sup>, § 279 ff; DUBISLAW *Beitr.*, § 14.

37. The different areas of the use of the construction with the genitive or a possessive pronoun and that with the common case of a (pro)noun or the objective of a personal pronoun, which in the following discussions will be, respectively, called construction A and construction B, have already been described, in broad outline, in Ch. XIX, 5—6. It seems advisable to revert in this connexion to the subject and to supplement the observations there made.

*a)* Construction B is distinctly more colloquial than construction A. Naturally so. The propensity of the human mind, especially of the uneducated, is to use an analytical construction rather than a synthetic, the former admitting of the different elements of a complex of notions being thought of separately and in orderly succession and, consequently, preferred to the latter, which forces the mind to grasp these elements as a whole. Thus in *You must excuse the boy saying so* we are enabled to think of the notions expressed by *the boy* and *saying so* in succession, while in *You must excuse the boy's saying so* we are obliged to take in at once the ideas involved in *the boy's saying so*. For further illustration see Ch. XIX, 5, *e*.

We subjoin a quotation in which, notwithstanding the absence of all refinement, construction A is used:

An' when I see'd the book open upo' the stall, wi' the lady lookin' out of it wi' eyes a bit like your'n when you was frettin' - you'll excuse my takin' the liberty, Miss - I thought I'd make free to buy it for you. G. ELIOT, *MILL*, IV, Ch. III, 258.

*b)* Construction B is in especial favour when the originator of the action or state has to be indicated with emphasis. This even causes the personal pronoun to be not unfrequently preferred to the possessive pronoun, although the practice of using the former is not, on the whole, in great favour in educated English. MURRAY (in *O. E. D.*, s. v. *ing*) observes "Even a pronoun standing before the gerund is put in the objective, in dialect speech; and when the pronoun is emphatic, this is common in ordinary colloquial English." He quotes:

Papa did not care about them learning. THACK., *Es m.*

But who ever heard of them eating an owl. *id.*, *New c.*

That is no excuse for him beating you. So what is the excuse of me speaking. READE, *Hard Cash*.

It will strike the observant student that MURRAY here overlooks the



difference which substitution of construction A for construction B would involve in the first and the third quotation (36, Obs. II).

As an instance of polite speakers preferring construction A, notwithstanding the emphasis, we quote:

To think of *your* turning book-hunter! LYTTON, *Caxt.*, XVII, Ch. I, 450. (The author has *your* placed in italics.)

c) Construction B is distinctly the rule when the originator of the action or state expressed by the gerund is indicated by a compound indefinite pronoun with *body* or *one*; it is almost the only one in practical use when that originator is an inanimate thing. A few quotations showing the alternative practice may be deemed acceptable. See also Ch. XIX, 5, *b*. It is of some importance to observe that examples of the latter description are not so rare as is sometimes believed.

i. We can put a great deal of copper into the gold without anybody's finding it out. RUSKIN, *The King of the Golden River*, Ch. II.

ii. The utmost that was in the power of a lawyer was to prevent the law's taking effect. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. III, 207.

I told him of the church's being so very well worth seeing. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIV, 133.

The fact of the pencil's falling in the school-room the previous evening occurred to him. Mrs. Wood, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VIII, 112.

There is a real danger of our literature's being americanized. H. W. & F. G. FOWLER, *The King's Eng.*, Ch. I, 24.

The case of a bird's being run into in flight and killed, by a motor-car, is comparatively rare. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5613, 13*a*.

d) Construction B is, naturally, obligatory when the subject pronoun of the gerund is followed by a noun in apposition, as in:

Talk of us girls being vain, what are we to you? THACK., *Esm.*, Ch. II, 323.

But *we* (*you*, or *they*) + *both* or *all*, in which also *both* or *all* stands by way of apposition to the preceding pronoun, mostly become *our* (*your* or *their*) + *both* or *all* before a gerund (Ch. XXXIII, 9, *a*).

She .. insisted on their both accepting it (sc. the invitation) directly. JANE AUSTEN, *Sense & Sens.*, Ch. XXV, 152.

One set might recommend their all removing to Donwell. *id.*, *Emma*, Ch. LIII, 442.

e) Construction B is the only one in practical use when the subject of the gerund is formed by a lengthy word-group.

But it does signify about the parishioners in Tipton being comfortable. G. ELIOT, *Mids.*, Ch. XXXVII, 285.

The father insisted on John and Mary staying at home.

f) Construction B is distinctly unusual when the combination is the subject of the sentence and has front-position, unless, indeed, the modifying element is a word which has no genitive, or is rarely placed in the genitive, or contains a modifying adjunct following it (Ch. XIX, 6, Obs. I).

Your being Sir Anthony's son, captain, would itself be a sufficient recommendation. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2.

Harriet's staying away so long was beginning to make her uneasy. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. VIII, 64.

The following are the only instances of the alternative practice that have come to hand:

And is a wench having a bastard all your news, Doctor? FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 556.

I feel a bit unstrung: that beast caterwauling over yonder was just more than I could put up with. CON. DOYLE, Trag. of the Kor., Ch. I, 27.

Young gentlemen calling at my apartments might cause remarks. M. E. FRANCIS, The Manor Farm, Ch. XI. (The common-case form may have been preferred on account of the speaker being distinctly conscious of the implied conditionality (36, Obs. II.)

But in such a sentence as *To-day being Saturday rather complicates matters*, the genitive could hardly take the place of the common case, not, at least, in the English spoken in the British Isles. According to CURME (E. S., XLV, 371) American English prefers the genitive even here.

Construction B is, however, the usual one, also in the case of the subject-indicating word of the gerund being a noun indicating a person, when the gerund-clause stands after the head-sentence and is announced by *it*.

Mrs. Cadwallader says it is nonsense, people going a long journey when they are married. G. ELIOT, Mid., III, Ch. XXVIII, 203.

It was no use Virginie venting her wrath upon Humphrey. FLOR. MONTG., Mis., Ch. IX. 1)

Instances with the personal pronoun in the same position and function are met with only in vulgar and colloquial language.

Doesn't seem the least use me speaking to her. PETT RIDGE, Name of Garland, Ch. XIII, 219. 1)

Compare: It's rather rich your talking of beating me at billiards, considering that I've devoted the last three years to billiards and nothing else. H. J. BYRON, Our Boys, II, (40).

It's rather amusing your bragging of rivalling me. *ib.*, II, (41).

g) Construction B appears to be impossible when the combination is the nominal part of the predicate.

Emma, this is your doing. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. VIII, 50.

Similarly it is obligatory after verbs which express a modified *to be*. Your making the match . . means only your planning it. *ib.*, Ch. I, 13.

h) Construction A cannot be replaced by construction B when the *ing*-form has the value of a noun of action.

Ichabod prided himself about his dancing. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 363.

The day soon broke for our going. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 14a. (= departure.) Tom was very proud of his running. HUGHES, Tom Brown. He resumed his listening. WELLS, Ann Veronica, Ch. I, § 5, 26.

i) In conclusion it may be observed that construction B appears to be less common in American English than in British English. Thus to MURRAY's comment on the much-quoted sentence *I insist upon Miss Sharp appearing* (THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XI, 108) to the effect

1) KRUIS., Handb.<sup>3</sup>, § 618.

that "*Miss Sharp's* would now sound pedantic or archaic," CURME (E. S., XLV, 368) observes, "In America we still cling here to the older literary usage, and many still prefer the genitive although the new usage is also well-known." It would be of some interest to ascertain whether, as CURME's words imply, construction A was more in favour in the older stages of the language than it is to-day. This much is, at least, certain that JANE AUSTEN appears to have been extremely partial to it, her works containing numerous instances which would hardly be tolerated in Present English.

### Compound Gerunds.

38. A gerund often enters into combination with a noun, an adverb, or a preposition, to form with it a kind of compound (3, *a*). In these combinations the constituent parts are welded together with various degrees of closeness, in the written or printed language often indicated by junction, hyphening, or separation of the component parts.
39. The nouns used in these gerund-compounds are mostly in the objective, less frequently in the subjective or in some adverbial relation to the verb with which they are connected. Sometimes also the relation is uncertain, more than one interpretation being possible. What distinguishes these compounds from combinations of gerunds with nouns which constitute no compounds, is that the noun always stands without any modifier and, so far as it stands in the objective or adverbial relation to the verb, is placed before the latter. The compound as a whole can, however, be modified by any adnominal adjunct, which shows that it is felt as a substantival word.

i. He gave up cigar-smoking. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 219.

How delighted I should be to devote my time to agriculture, especially to horse-breeding. *Times*, 1921, 21 Jan., 45 *b*.

Her original was at that moment sound asleep, and oblivious of all love and letter-writing. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIV, 114.

His love-making struck us as unconvincing. WELLS, *Ann Ver.*, Ch. I, § 5, 26.

Mr. Joseph Keating .. has given up coal-mining for novel-writing. *Times*, 11. Sect., No. 2300, 2.

For shoe-making or house-building, for the management of a ship, or locomotive engine, a long apprenticeship is needful. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 26 *b*

Why don't you go back to school-keeping? HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. VII, 393

ii. He felt as if .. there had been .. no secret heart-burning. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, I, Ch. VI, 88.

Where he may be seen from Sun-rising to Sun-setting. AD., *Tattler*, No. 20. <sup>1)</sup>

All his drudgery from cock-crowing to starlight. EMERSON, *Young American* (Wks., II, 301). <sup>1)</sup>

---

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

iii. He had the mother-wit that is often quicker to detect a fallacy than book-learning. *Times*, No. 2303, 139 *b*.

Hence it came to pass that Milby respectability refused to recognize the Countess Czerlaski in spite of her assiduous church-going. *G. ELIOT, Scenes*, I, Ch. IV, 37.

This is a poor home-coming. *MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Prog.*, Ch. II, 24.

In the coal country of Upper Silesia the Poles have done most of the farming, and the Germans most of the mining and metal-working. *Manch. Guard.*, V, No. 16, 302 *b*.

It was too much to go on taxing good Mrs. Hughes with night-watching and sick-nursing. *Mrs. GASK., Ruth*, Ch. XI, 77.

40. It is only adverbs that are also used as prepositions, such as *down*, *in*, *up*, etc., which can form real compounds with gerunds. Their ordinary position is after the latter, placing them before the verbals making for closer union.

i. The master of the week came down in cap and gown to calling-over. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 94.

This falling-off (sc. of the output) cannot be ascribed to any slackness on the miners' part. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8597, 1 *a*.

There is first to be a great speeding-up of shipbuilding. *ib.*, No. 7401, 1 *a*.

ii. He stood watching the pageant of the sun's down-going. *HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 8.

To be a queen dethroned is not so hard as some other down-stepping. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der.*, II, III, Ch. XXVI, 21.

All the changes in me have come about .. by the inbreathing of a spirit not my own. *Mrs. WARD, Rich. Meyn.*, I, Ch. V, 106.

All the sounds hitherto described imply out-breathing or expiration. But they can also be formed with in-breathing or inspiration. *SWEET, Sounds*, § 139.

Kossuth was a powerless exile, and looked with a jealous eye on the ingathering by others of the harvest. *Times*.

Please help to maintain the many activities of the Church Army for uplifting those who have fallen in Life's Struggle. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8438, 24 *b*.

She understood something of the struggle provoked .. by the uprising of the typical modern problems. *Mrs. WARD, Rich. Meyn.*, I, Ch. IV, 68.

Observe that *bringing-up* varies with *up-bringing*.

i. In him woke | With his first babe's first cry the noble wish | To save all earnings to the uttermost, | And give his child a better bringing-up | Than his had been or hers. *TEN., En. Ard.*, 87.

ii. She divined his home and upbringing. *Mrs. WARD, Rich. Meyn.*, I, Ch. V, 106.

There were many romantic stories as to the humble birth and upbringing of the late Lord Strathcona. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3902, 161 *a*.

41. Verbs which govern fixed prepositions may form compound gerunds with these prepositions (Ch. XLV, 24).

You will never read anything that's worth listening-to. *SHER., Critic*, I, 1, (443).

People occasionally called him a prig; now and then he received what the vernacular of youth terms 'a sitting upon'. *GISSING, A Life's Morn.*, Ch. III, 36.

42. Obs. I. Only one instance of a gerund-compound whose first member is an adjective has come to-hand, viz.: *well-being*.

The well-being of society is of more importance than the interest of the individual. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8579, 4 *b*.

Also in *merry-making* the first member is, indeed, an adjective, but in *to make merry* from which the compound is formed, *merry* is felt rather as a noun than an adjective (Ch. I, 5).

He came clattering up to the school-door with an invitation to Ichabod to attend a merry-making or "quilting-frolic", to be held that evening at Mijneer Van Tassel's. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.*, No. XXXII, 358.

II. Compounds in which a noun stands in an objective or adverbial relation to the verb, can, in many cases, be replaced by gerund phrases in which the noun is placed after the verb, no material change of meaning being involved. Thus there is no appreciable difference between *I do not like letter-writing*, *Note-taking in such a position is very difficult*, *Great festivities took place at his home-coming*, *He gave up cigar-smoking*, and, respectively, *I do not like writing letters*, *Taking notes in such a position is very difficult*, *Great festivities took place at his coming home*, *He gave up smoking cigars*. Compare also the two following quotations:

The somewhat superfluous heart-searchings he has undergone. *Athen.*, 1885, 28 Nov., 697/1.

By the water-courses of the Lagan and the Foyle there must be searchings of heart. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8603, 2 *b*.

Numerous as these compounds are, especially such as have the noun in the objective relation to the verb, they cannot be formed freely. Thus we could not substitute *call-paying* for *paying calls* in:

Chapters on dress, paying calls, letter-writing. *Business Letter Writer*.

III. Compound gerunds containing an adverb may form a further compound with a preposition.

(These things) were worth the getting-up-for. *HOR. HUTCHINSON (Westm. Gaz.)*, No. 6011, 2 *c*).

IV. Like simple gerunds, compound gerunds of the first and the second kind are often used as adnominal modifiers, sometimes forming fresh compounds with their head-words.

i. He was a slow and time-taking speaker. *DICK., Nick.*, Ch. I, 3 *b*.

The prosperity of our mercantile marine and of our ship-building yards, depends on our total trade, both coming in and going out. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8591, 4 *a*.

We are ceasing to be a game-playing nation and becoming, instead, a nation that looks on at games. *ib.*, No. 8603, 10 *b*.

ii. "The lying-in room, I suppose?" said Mr. Bumble. *DICK., Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXXVII, 340.

The getting-on races took place last week. *Pall Mall Gaz.*

V. In conclusion it may be observed that these compounds have the mark of the plural attached to the verbal part. Of none of them the plural is, however, at all common; of those of the third kind it is non-existent.

It is only natural that she should not attach much importance to home-comings. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste*, I, Ch. VI, 75.

(That ball) is kicked about anyhow from one boy to another before callings-

over and dinner. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 93.

She felt sure there must be goings-on when her back was turned. AMBER REEVES, *The Reward of Virtue*, Ch. II, 16.

## The Gerund compared with other Verbals and the Noun of Action.

### The Gerund compared with the Infinitive.

43. It has already been observed (1) that the gerund bears a close resemblance to the infinitive on the one hand and to the noun of action on the other.

44. Most of the features which distinguish the infinitive from the gerund have already been referred to in the preceding pages, and it is, therefore, sufficient to pass them rapidly in review.

Owing to its being more distinctly verbal in its functions than the gerund, the infinitive, unlike the latter,

a) does not suffer the distinction of tense to be disregarded, except so far as futurity is concerned (Ch. LV, 57). Thus, granted that idiom would tolerate the change, the imperfect gerund would take the place of the perfect infinitive in:

To have taken the field openly against his rival would have been madness. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XXXII, 355. (Taking the field, etc.)

Conversely the imperfect gerund would correspond to the perfect infinitive in:

I don't remember seeing more than one or two drunken men on week-days. J. G. WOOD, *Good Words* (STOR., *Leesb.*, I, 72). (I don't remember to have seen etc.)

Note. Like the gerund, the infinitive is frequently enough placed in the active voice when it is passive in meaning, but the cases in which the two verbals exhibit this grammatical peculiarity differ entirely. Compare 25 ff with Ch. LV, 72 ff.

b) can take no other preposition before it than *to*, save for archaic or dialectal English, which sometimes has *for* placed before *to* + infinitive Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. III; Ch. LV, 3, Obs. III.

c) cannot be attended by adnominal modifiers (13—14).

Note. It may here be observed that the genitive or possessive pronoun, sometimes replaced by the common case or objective personal pronoun respectively (34 ff), which are often placed before the gerund to indicate the originator of the action or state it expresses (13, *d*, *e*), is sometimes represented by *for* + (pro)noun before the infinitive. Compare the following pairs of quotations:

i. I feel quite certain it is worth while for you to be very industrious with your painting. E. F. BENSON, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch II, 49.

ii. Anyhow, it's worth while my having a game of golf-croquet with you. *ib.*, 50.

- i. There is no use for me to cry about the matter. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 118 b.
- ii. There is no use your telling me that you are going to be good. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. XIX, 268. T.

For detailed discussion of *for* + (pro)noun + infinitive see Ch. XVIII, 45 ff; Ch. LX, 65 ff. Compare also Ch. XIX, 7.

d) cannot be used as an adnominal modifier (15).

e) admits of no inflection for number or case (16). In Old English, as we have seen in Ch. LV, Obs. 1, the infinitive had a dative, but no further inflection.

45. For the rest, when no subject-indicating word precedes, either the gerund or the infinitive can be used in numerous cases, sometimes with a marked difference in meaning, sometimes with no, or a hardly appreciable distinction. For a comparison of the two verbals as members of the sentence see Ch. XIX. For detailed discussion see also ELLINGER (*Anglia*, XXXIII, 408 ff).

#### The Gerund compared with the Noun of Action.

46. a) The noun of action is distinguished from the gerund,  
1) by its utter incapability of showing the distinctions of either voice or tense. In other words nouns of action are strictly neutral as to voice and tense.

Thus *admiration* might take the place of *being admired* in *He is desirous of being admired*. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 397.

Conversely *being uttered* might be substituted for *utterance* in *She had started up with defiant words ready to burst from her lips, but they fell back again without utterance*. G. ELIOT, *Rom.*, II, Ch. LX, 310. *Robbery* and *assassination* are, respectively, equivalent to *being robbed* and *being assassinated in*:

His accidental presence .. assisted Sir Percival's escape from robbery and assassination. WILK. COL., *Woman in White*, I, 167.

2) by its incapability of taking a non-prepositional object. The (pro)noun which in the case of a gerund may be used in this function, figures as part of an adnominal adjunct with *of* when the noun of action is used.

Thus *Arranging flowers is a favourite pastime of mine* (HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 55) might be changed into *The arrangement of flowers* etc.

Conversely in *To doubt his originality in the creation of poetic phrases would be to show the extreme of poetical incapacity* (A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on Ten's In Mem.*, Ch. VII, 73) *the creation of poetic phrases* might be replaced by *creating poetic phrases*.

In like manner as in the case of gerunds (39), nouns in the objective relation to the verbal idea implied in nouns of action

H. POUTSMA, III 1.

are often enough found before the latter, forming with them a kind of compound. Such a compound mostly admits of being expanded into a word-group consisting of a noun of action + a adnominal adjunct with *of*. Thus *land reclamation* = *reclamation of land*; *debt redemption* = *redemption of debt*.

Compare the two following quotations:

We have great doubts whether the country can afford to foster the complacency of Mr. Austen Chamberlain any longer by setting aside large sums for debt redemption. *Times*, No 2303, 138 *a*.

There are signs in the King's Speech that the pride of the Chancellor of the Exchequer in the heavy demands made upon the Country for redemption of debt is not now shared by his colleagues *ib*.

Note. It may here be observed that the subjective genitive standing before a noun of action is never replaced by the common case, which, as we have seen, is often the case before a gerund (13, *e*: 34—37).

The arguments for Lady Clementine's rejection of Christianity had been given with terrible power. *E. F. BENSON*, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. II, 29.

*b*) The noun of action, however, is like the gerund in being capable of modification by a word-group with a preposition, corresponding to either a prepositional object or an adverbial adjunct (Ch. XLV, 28, *a*).

i. Haven't you made yourself the jest of all your acquaintance by your interference in matters where you have no business. *SHER.*, *Critic*, I, 1.

ii. She did not make this sacrifice without a motive, which may have sprung from a keen sense of justice, and of gratitude to the plaintiff for his interference on her behalf. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 224.

Note. Nouns of action are very rarely found attended by an adverb of quality, the distinctly verbal notion, which is implied in the use of such a modifier, rendering the employment of the gerund practically obligatory. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

Mark actually held him to prevent his interference foolishly. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 281 *a*.

47. *a*) When a verb has no noun of action, the gerund supplies the want as a very useful make-shift. For the rest there is a distinct tendency to use the former in preference to the latter when the grammatical function is mainly substantival. A few moments' attentive reading will bring this fact home to any student interested in the subject. Thus idiomatic propriety would suffer, if in the following quotations the gerund were substituted for the noun of action:

Ah, Charles, if you associated more with your brother, one might, indeed, hope for your reformation. *SHER.*, *School*, IV, 3, (428).

And in due course there was bed, where, but for the resumption of the studies which took place in dreams, were rest and sweet forgetfulness. *DICK.*, *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 110.



A resolution to avoid an evil is seldom framed till the evil is so far advanced as to make avoidance impossible. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XVIII, 141.

The Reverend Charles forbade the further mention of her name by any member of his household. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. 1, 13.

The following quotations, in which gerunds and nouns of action, corresponding to different verbs, are used alternately, will bring out this fact still more clearly:

For pickling, *preserving*, and cookery, none could excel her. GOLD, *Vic.*, Ch. I.

Sleep is, perhaps, Nature's never-failing relief, as swooning is upon the rack. LEIGH HUNT, *A few Thoughts on Sleep*.

Large sums have been expended in the rebuilding of dwelling-houses, in the laying-down of main roads, in the reclamation of land by drainage, planting and enclosure. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 33.

b) Sometimes, however the gerund and the noun of action appear to be both appropriate, being used in practically identical connexions. This is shown by the following groups of quotations, which by assiduous reading could, no doubt, be considerably added to:

i. No difficulties but of my own creating. SHER, *Riv.*, IV, 3.

ii. A legion of goblins all of my own creation. DICK, *Christm. Car.* I.

i. Peter the Groot did not think it worth mentioning. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyi*. (STOF., *Handl*, I, 105).

ii. His remark .. is worth mention. *Athen.*, No. 4535, 297 b.

i. Parliament has itself thought well to provide in advance for a review of its results by a statutory commission ten years after the passing of the Act. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8597, 12 a.

ii. They could do nothing to prevent the passage of the Home Rule Bill. *ib.*, No. 6535, 12 a.

c) In some cases the gerund and the corresponding noun of action stand for different notions. Thus in the above quotation from GOLDSMITH *cookery* and *preserving* differ considerably from respectively *cooking* and *preservation*. The discussion of these differences belongs to the department of lexicography and is not, therefore, attempted in these pages.

48. Obs. I. In SHAKESPEARE not a few instances are met with of nouns of action for which Present English would most probably have the gerund. See FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 670.

If chance will have me king, why chance may crown me without my stir. *Mac b.*, I, 3, 144.

She .. appear'd not: | And, to be short, for not appearance and | The king's late scruple, by the main assent | Of all these learned men she was divorced. *Henry VIII.* IV, 1, 30.

II. Owing, apparently, to the nouns of a kindred meaning, nouns of action which correspond to transitive verbs, sometimes take another preposition than *of* in the adnominal adjunct containing the (pro)noun which is in the objective relation to the verbal idea implied in them; thus regularly or frequently, *attempt*, (*dis*)*like*, *hate* (*hatred*), *love*, etc.

(Ch. XIX, 49, Obs. II and III). The discussion of this subject belongs to the Chapter of the Government of Verbs, Adjectives and Nouns, for which the present writer has a long time been preparing the necessary materials. One example must here suffice.

This is best promoted by an incessant preaching of Liberal doctrine on great issues, on the saving of the world through the League of Nations, on resistance to Carsonism in Ireland [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8521, 6*b*. (instead of *resistance of*, *to resist* being a transitive verb.)

### The Gerund compared with the Present Participle.

49. Although the present participle in its grammatical function markedly differs from the gerund, the one being as distinctly adnominal as the other is substantival, its area of incidence overlaps that of the other to a considerable extent. As we have seen in sections 34—37, the verbal in *ing*, when preceded by the common case of a (pro)noun or the objective of a personal pronoun, is more or less of a doubtful nature, assuming as it does, in various degrees, a function which causes it to be considered, with some justice, as a present participle or, at least, as a verbal which partakes considerably of the character of a present participle. As the following discussions will show, this is not, however, the only connexion in which the character of the verbal in *ing* is disputed.
50. a) Through the suppression of a preposition the verbal in *ing* has often come to be used in a way which causes its grammatical function to be changed, to the extent that it is no longer to be distinguished from an ordinary present participle. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2333), commenting on two such sentences as *She caught cold sitting on the grass*, *He tears his clothes climbing trees*, observes that they have taken this form through the dropping of a preposition. On the strength of this suppression of a preposition he calls the verbals used in them half-gerunds. Although this view may be inexpugnable when the genesis of the construction used in sentences like the above is taken as the determining factor, it cannot be denied that the verbals they contain, considered in their present function, are pure participles used as predicative adnominal adjuncts of the first kind (Ch. VI).  
 b) In SWEET's sentences it appears to be the preposition *by* which might be supplied. Thus also in:

He had half ruined himself, buying new music. *Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col.*, Ch. VIII, 116.

He made a fool himself, marrying a child like Leo. *SHAW, Getting Married*, I, (206).

He gets to feeling very low, walking about all day after work, and being refused so often. *GALSW., Silv. Box*, I, 2, (20).

c) More frequently insertion of the preposition *in* would seem to be more in harmony with the meaning of the sentence; thus in:

The stream, in struggling onward, turns the mill-wheel; the coral insect, fashioning its tiny cell, joins continents to one another. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 62. (Note the remarkable variation of construction)

I broke my looking-glass, dressing to go out. HALL CAINE, *Christ*, II, 32.

I was detained playing bridge with your father. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXVI, 237.

I have spent many hours in the last few days, reading the treaty. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8121, 4 b.

Part of the year he spends, visiting Museums. *ib.*, No. 6135, 1 b.

In the following quotation more than a preposition would have to be supplied:

Mrs. Kirk would be much better mending her husband's clothes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 82. (= .. employed in mending ...)

Of particular interest are the participle-constructions after:

1) such verbs as *to catch*, *to surprise* and *to take*, the participle modifying the object (Ch. XX, 21).

Old Momus caught me construing off the leaf of a crib. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 309.

Actæon. A huntsman, who having surprised Diana bathing, was turned by her into a stag and torn by his own dogs. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*, s.v. *Actæon*.

I suppose these fellows have been taken robbing your house. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 115.

2) *to be long*, *to be a long time* and similar phrases (Ch. II, 37 f; Ch. LIII, 17).

We were a long time delivering a bedstead at a public-house and calling at other houses. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 14 b.

He had been an unconscionable time dying. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 12.

c) Sometimes it is difficult to think of a particular preposition that would suit the meaning of the sentence.

What should such fellows as I do crawling between heaven and earth? SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 1, 130.

I shall be contented waiting here for the year to come round to bring you both to see me. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. XIV, 337.

His father also took him riding in Richmond Park. GALSW., *Awakening*, (770).

We are little likely to be afraid of him fighting on. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6122, 2 a.

51. Obs. I. In generalizing sentences there is sometimes no particular (pro)noun to which the participle can be said to refer.

Is not a bouquet rather in the way dancing? EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambr.*, Ch. III.

II. The suppression of the preposition, although leading to vagueness, has this advantage that it enables the speaker to express a wider range of relations than the use of the preposition would involve. Thus in SWEET's sentences, cited above, the relation between what is expressed by the head-sentence and the participle-clause appears to be a blending of cause and time, so that it would not have been

adequately expressed by *by*. Thus also the participle-constructions in the second group of the above quotations, although, apparently, implying a distinctly temporal relation, may be replaced by gerund-constructions with different prepositions. Compare:

The first half-hour was spent in piling up the fire. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XI, 57.

Katharina spent more time than necessary over dressing for dinner. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XIV, 247.

Conversely it may be said that the vagueness attaching to many of the commoner prepositions leads to their suppression (Ch. LX, 107—115). III. It should be observed that, in explaining a given construction, it is often exceptionable to assume the ellipsis of a word. The assumption seems to be proper only if it can be proved that such a word is sometimes met with in parallel cases, or was employed in an earlier stage of the language. Thus, although it seems probable that the construction in the above quotations has arisen through the dropping of a preposition, it would not, certainly, do to assume the suppression of a preposition in a large number of sentences in which also the participle forms part of a clause in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind (Ch. VI). This will soon be brought home to the student if he takes the trouble of glancing through the numerous quotations in Ch. XX, 12 ff. We copy a few, in which suppression of a preposition is out of the question. See also CURME *E. S.*, XLV, 372; KRUISINGA, *Handb.*<sup>1</sup>, § 591 ff.

The doctor, having felt his pulse, . . . declared him much better. FIELD., *Jos. And.*, I, Ch. XVI, 47.

Having had no facilities for learning, he was forced to teach. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (635 *b.*)

Lady Holmhurst presently left the room, leaving them to settle it as they liked. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XVII, 169.

We fled to the hills, seeking shelter and walking all night. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 18, 346 *d.*

IV. For a full discussion of those cases in which a verbal in *ing*, through the loss of the preposition *on* (or *an*), or *in*, has changed its grammatical character, see Ch. LVII, § 6, Obs. VII and VIII.

### The Gerund compared with the Past Participle.

52. Although the past participle has, grammatically, nothing in common with the gerund, there are certain cases in which a construction with the former is equivalent to a construction with the latter.
- a)* Such a sentence as *He heard the chain and bolts withdrawn* (DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 146), in which a verb of perceiving is followed by an accusative + past participle (Ch. XVIII, 32, Obs. II), is equivalent to *He heard the withdrawing of the chain and bolts*, which might, indeed, be used instead without great prejudice to idiomatic propriety.

An analogous construction might have been used in place of:

They had never seen a human being killed. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. X, 57.

Many sentences, constructed on the same plan, would, however, hardly, tolerate the change. Thus it would be impracticable in:

I perceived him led through the outward hall as a prisoner. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII. 111.

I saw him thrown out of his trap. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 331.

We see various kinds of Bills carried by substantial majorities. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6223, 1 c.

*b)* Also in other connexions (pro)noun + past participle has the value of a gerund-combination.

1) In literary language we find constructions which bear some resemblance to the well-known Latin idioms *post urbem conditam*, *ante Christum natum*, *post hoc factum*, in which noun + past participle stands after a preposition governing an accusative.

'Twas at the royal feast, for Persia won | By Philip's warlike son. DRYDEN, *Alex. Feast*, 1.

Waste not a sigh on fortune changed, | On thankless courts or friends estranged. SCOTT, *Lady*, II, III, 15—16.

By this the lazy gossips of the port, | Abhorrent of a calculation crost, | Began to chafe as at a personal wrong. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 470.

2) More common, but also, to all appearance, purely literary is a construction in which the same combination, noun + past participle, stands as the subject or, more rarely, as the non-prepositional object. Also this construction may be an imitation of a Latin original. Thus TENNYSON'S *Things seen are mightier than things heard* (*En. Ard.*, 762) appears to have been suggested by HORACE'S *Segnius irritant animos demissa per aurem Quam quæ sunt oculis subjecta*. *Ars Poet.* 180—181. (= things communicated through the ear stir men's feelings less powerfully than things set before the eyes).

i. Freeze, freeze, thou bitter ský, | That dost not bite so nigh | As benefits forgot. SHAK., *As you like it*, II, 7, 186. (= the forgetting of benefits.)

Since the day | When foolish Stena's ribaldry detected | Unfix'd your quiet, you are greatly changed. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, II, 1. (361 *b*).

New shores descried make every bosom gay. *id.*, *Ch. Har.*, I, XIV.

It has often been observed that one truth concealed gives rise to a dozen current lies. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 120).

Cruel massacres followed by cruel retribution, provinces wasted, convents plundered, and cities razed to the ground make up the greater part of the history of those days. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 10.

ii. Nor is it | Wiser to weep a true occasion lost. TEN., *Princ.*, IV, 50.

For discussion of the constructions referred to under *b)*, 1) and 2), see also BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute in English*, § 21; JESPERSEN, *De to Hovedarter av Grammatiske Forbindelser*, B 8 and B 10; *id.*, the *Philos. of Gram.*, 124 f.

The Distinction between Gerund and Verbal  
Noun not justifiable.

53. Most grammarians hold that we ought to distinguish two substantival verbal forms in *ing*, viz.: the gerund and the verbal noun, the former mainly verbal, the latter mainly substantival. It is, of course, easy to see that in some cases the verbal features, in others the substantival features come to the fore. But, as has been shown in the above discussions (17—24), there are a great many cases in which the gerund exhibits at once verbal and substantival features. Though it cannot be said that in all of them these several features appear with equal prominence, any line of demarcation which should divide gerunds from so-called verbal nouns seems to be drawn more or less arbitrarily.

a) 1) Thus when a preposition precedes a gerund which is followed by either an object or an adverbial adjunct, or by both, we have no hesitation in saying that the substantival nature is subservient to the verbal. This is, for example, the case in *in making a speech, the expediency of getting up early, the necessity of writing the letter at once*.

2) Also when a genitive or possessive pronoun precedes a gerund which is attended by the above verb-modifiers, the verbal features seem to be more marked than the substantival, as in *his breaking his arm, her staying in the town*.

b) Conversely one is inclined to ascribe rather a substantival than a verbal character to the gerund when it stands without any verb-modifier and is accompanied by some adnominal modifier, an adjective making it practically purely substantival; thus in *The story took an hour in the telling, I heard a knocking, There was some dancing, I admire his singing, I don't like this shooting, I don't believe in early rising*.

c) But it seems, among other cases, difficult to decide whether the verbal or the substantival character predominates,

1) when another modifier than a genitive or a possessive pronoun precedes a complex gerund (2), as in *this being kept in suspense, the not being hurried, the being born in a workhouse, the having been caught in a strange act of charity, there is no being shot at without a little risk*.

2) when a definite or indefinite article precedes a gerund with an object or an adverbial adjunct, as in *the quitting my home, a turning English into French, the running away in such haste*.

3) when the gerund stands entirely by itself and is not preceded by a preposition, as in *swimming is healthy, saving is having, I like skating*, both infinitives and nouns of action being found in the same functions.

54. Nor can differentiation be defended on historical grounds, the substantival verbal form in *ing* being, by common consent, the lineal descendant of practically only one form, the Old-English noun of action in *ing* (earlier *ung*). See below 58—64. From these considerations it does not seem advisable, or even justifiable, to distinguish two substantival verbal forms in *ing*, and as no useful purpose is served by differentiation, it seems needless to insist on it.
55. The most energetic advocacy of differentiation seems to have been displayed by German grammarians, the late Mr. KRÜGER, the well-known writer of numerous works on English grammar, being one of its staunchest supporters. Students interested in the problem should read his exposition of the subject in his *Vermischte Beiträge zur Syntax*. JESPERSEN appears to lean to the view that any attempt to distinguish two substantival verbals in *ing* is rather futile. His bestowing on them the common denomination of *ings* in *Growth & Structure*, § 200 ff hardly bears another interpretation. Similarly CURME's statement (E. S., XLV, 359): "There is but one gerund, and it is always a noun even where it has a strong verbal force" implies that, in his view, the variety of grammatical potentialities in the substantival verbal in *ing* affords no sufficient ground for differentiation. Compare also KRUISINGA, *Handb.*<sup>4</sup>, § 467 ff.
56. From what has been said above, it must not, of course, be inferred that all substantival forms in *ing* which have been derived from verbs, should be regarded as gerunds. Many such do not express any action or state at all and are, therefore, to be apprehended as pure nouns. This is the case with:
- a) a large number of nouns which have a distinctly material meaning, denoting things which may be understood to be in a subjective or objective, or also in a local or instrumental relation to the action indicated by the verb from which they have been derived. Of those a great many appear exclusively or preferentially in the plural.

Thus *covering* = that which covers, or with which a thing is covered; *dripping* = melted fat which drips from roasting meat; *holding* = land which is held by legal right, especially of a superior; *sewing* = work sewn; *digging(s)* = a place where digging is carried on, especially in gold-fields; *landing* = a place for disembarking passengers or unlading goods, also a platform in which a flight of stairs terminates; etc. Similar interpretations may be put upon *bearings*, *binding*, *blackings*, *clipping(s)*, *cutting(s)*, *drainings*, *drawing*, *earnings*, *engraving*, *hanging(s)*, *incomings*, *leavings*, *lightning*, *losings*, *outgoings*, *parings*, *savings*, *scrapings*, *shavings*, *stitching*, *surroundings*, *sweepings*, *winding*, *winnings*, *workings*, *writing*, etc., etc.

b) many nouns of a collective meaning denoting the substance or material employed in the action or process indicated by the verb from which they have been formed.

Thus *clothing* = things employed in clothing; *roofing* = things used in roofing; etc. A similar collective meaning can be traced in *bedding*, *carpeting*, *ceiling*, *edging*, *flooring*, *gearing*, *gilding*, *housing*, *lining*, *rigging*, *shipping*, *tackling*, *tiling*, etc., etc.

Note. The *ing*-nouns here referred to have, for the greater part, been formed from verbs that have been derived from nouns, and it is with the latter that they are most closely associated. Some have been formed direct from nouns, there being no corresponding verb. Such are, among many others, *coping*, *piping*, *scaffolding*, *tubing*; *bagging*, *quilting*, *sacking*, *sheeting*, *shirting*, *trouser**ing*. These latter formations are especially frequent in industrial and commercial language.

Illustration of the above words is the task of the lexicographer rather than the grammarian. The following may, however, be acceptable:

*boiling*: If Russia intervenes she (sc. Turkey) may find that the question of Asia Minor has been thrown into the boiling with that of her European territory. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6294, 1*b*.

*eating*: Pig with pruin sauce is very good eating. *GOLD.*, *She stoops*, II. I'm for plain eating. *ib*.

I wonder when it (sc. the nation) will begin to see the folly of spending so much on eating. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5555, 4*b*.

*following*: (They) are the constant butt of plots on the part of Mr. Asquith's following. *ib.*, No. 8615, 2*b*.

*footing*: A sum of £ 200.000 is needed to put it (sc. the Scout movement) on a sound footing. *Times*, No. 2209, 55*a*.

*shipping*: Shipping is being laid up for want of goods to carry. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8615, 4*a*.

*writing*: There's some writing on it (sc. the card). *PINERO*, *Mid-Channel*. IV, (220).

This agreement has not been put into writing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6205, 1*b*. Grace was pre-eminent in all his writing. *Athen.*, No. 4422, 93*a*.

57. Some words in *ing*, although having no material sense, are only remotely associated with an action or state, denoting as they do:
- a) an event, a state or a ceremony characterized by or resulting from an action.

Thus *meeting* in the sense of an assembly of a number of people for purposes of discussion, legislation, etc. Thus also *gathering* in a similar meaning. Further instances are *wedding* (i. e. nuptial ceremonies), *christening* (i. e. baptismal ceremonies), and a great many others, such as *merry-making*, *outing*, *sitting*, etc. in certain of their meanings which need no definition in these pages.

b) an art or ability acquired by assiduous or constant practice of an action.

Thus *reading* and *writing* in such a sentence as *Reading and writing are now common acquirements*. Of a similar meaning are *drawing*, *engraving*, *fencing*, *swimming*, etc.

Note. It is difficult to find an appropriate name for these words in



*ing*. Noun of action is not quite suitable. Nor is a abstract noun more serviceable on account of its vagueness and its varied application by different grammarians. The term half-gerund might, perhaps, be used to good purpose if it were not for the fact that it has been employed by SWEET and his followers for an entirely different function. Under these circumstances there seems to be no alternative but to stretch the denomination gerund sufficiently for it to include these words in *ing* of an immaterial meaning, which, although associated with an action or state, do not strictly denote an action or state.

Some miscellaneous words in *ing*, like the above of a dubious nature, deserve recording.

*bearing*: Then came .. orchards of fruit-trees in full bearing. SAM. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. IX, 90.

*beginnings*: He began from very low beginnings. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

*calling*: He has betaken himself to the high and honourable calling of letters. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 42.

*crossings-out*: He isn't to take any notice of the crossings-out in red ink. ARN. BENNETT, *The Card*, I, Ch. III, 7.

*failing*: And ever in her mind she cast about | For that unnoticed failing in herself. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 46.

*findings*: The Government definitely refuse to publish the findings of the Strickland report. *Times*, No. 2303, 138 *d*.

*happening*: Some unforeseen happening may change their minds. *Times*, No. 2298, 23 *d*.

*hearings*: Another cause which makes candidates unwilling to attempt prosecutions or to bring in petitions is the remembrance of judgments in certain recent hearings of election petitions. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 4 *b*.

*learning*: A little learning is a dangerous thing. POPE, *Es. on Crit.* II, 215.

*makings*: You've not the makings of a Porson in you, or a Leibnitz either. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVI, 258.

*reading*: He was a man of great reading. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 97.

*showing*: He is, according to his showing, guilty of a twenty-thousand-fold act of treason. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 200, 161 *b*.

The corn duty, on their own showing, could not possibly injure anybody. *Times*.

Had it not been for that factor, South Bucks would have made a better showing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6465, 3 *a*.

*taking*: Poor aunt G., she was in a regular taking. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 133.

*understanding*: He's a man of an excellent understanding. GOLD., *She stoops*, I, (170).

*undertakings*: The complete fulfilment of British undertakings is not likely to be delayed when the people of India have fully proved their capacity in the art of government. *Times*, No. 2301, 98 *d*.

## Historical Survey of the Rise of the Gerund.

58. The origin of the gerund has been the subject of much speculation, and the rise of some of the syntactical applications of which it

is capable has not yet been satisfactorily cleared up. The following exposition is intended as a summary of the views ventilated by various scholars.

59. The main source of the gerund, as we know it in Present English, is the noun in *ung* or *ing*.

According to EINKEL (Die Entwicklung des englischen Gerundiums, Anglia, XXXVIII, 5), *ung* was the ordinary ending in Old-English, *ing* appearing but occasionally. See, however, DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 60, 1.

Nouns in *ung* (or *ing*) seem to have been formed originally from nouns in a way which has its analogue in the formation of such words as *schooling*, *shirting*, *stabling*, etc. in Modern English. As some of the nouns from which such words in *ung* (or *ing*) were derived, were also used as weak verbs, the latter came to be regarded as the base of these derivatives. This led to the formation of similar words from other weak verbs, even including such as were of Romance origin. Gradually the practice was extended to strong verbs, and towards the beginning of the sixteenth century words in *ing*, which had become the usual form, or *yng*, which towards the end of this period was used as a frequent variant, could be formed from practically any verb.

It may be interesting to the Dutch student to observe that the *ing*-nouns were originally as limited in number as similar formations are in Dutch, which has *verkoop*ing, *verspreid*ing, *wandel*ing, *ont-roer*ing, etc., but not *\*koop*ing, *\*spreid*ing, *\*loop*ing, *\*roer*ing, etc.

60. The process described above may have been accelerated by the present participle becoming uniform with the *ing*-noun. It may be assumed that this levelling commenced in those dialects in which the suffix of the former was *inde*, i. e. in those spoken in the south and some of the adjacent Midlands. With persons speaking any of these dialects it may have been a habit to drop the oral dental *d* after the nasal dental *n*, i. e. to change *inde* into *inne*. The latter suffix could not fail to be frequently confounded with that of the verbal nouns in *inge*, the point nasal being often replaced by the back nasal, and vice-versa, in unstressed syllables after high-front or mid-front vowels. These substitutions may still be heard in the language of many illiterate speakers of the present day, who may be constantly heard to say *capt*ing, *kitch*ing, etc. instead of *captain*, *kitchen*, etc., and, conversely, *puddin*, *nothin*, *readin*, etc. instead of *pudding*, *nothing*, *reading*, etc.

The stressless positions of the endings must, moreover, have occasioned a frequent dropping of the final *e*, which in course of time became normal.

The confusion was, no doubt, aggravated by the futile attempts at accuracy of some precisians, who, objecting to the back nasal being replaced by the point nasal, made a point of re-establishing the former, and, being often ill-informed, effected the so-called correction in the wrong place.

Some further comment on the endings of the present participle in Middle English may be acceptable.

a) In the Southern dialects the normal ending was *inde*.

± 1280. *Idul nolde he neuere beo: ake euere doinde he was.* South Eng. Legendary, 116, 337. (= Idle he would never be, also he was always active.)

1272–1307. *Selde comeþ lone lahynde hom.* HENDYNG, Prov. XXV (MORRIS & SKEAT, Spec.). (= Seldom cometh loan laughing home.)

1340. *Vader oure | et art ine heuenes | y-halged by þi name . cominde þi riche.* DAN MICHEL OF NORTHGATE, Sermon (MORRIS & SKEAT, Spec., 105). The same form of the present participle is to be found in the Kentish *Ayenbite of Inwit* (1340) (or *Remorse of Conscience*) and many other texts.

b) In the early texts of most Midland dialects the normal ending was *ende*, but the later texts, through Southern influence, mostly have *inde*.

± 1150. *Gif twā men ȝȝer đrē cōman rīdend tō ān tūn, al | ē tūnscepe flugen for heom.* The Peterborough Chronicle (EMERSON, Mid. Eng. Read., 4). (= If two or three men came riding to a town, all the inhabitants flew to meet them.)

In the romance of *Havelock the Dane* (author unknown), written about 1300, the ending is usually *ind(e)*, but *ende* occurs in line 2702: *driuende* (= driving); while the Northern ending *ande* is found in line 2283: *gangande* (= going). In the same work the gerund ends in *ing(e)*, but in one case it has *ende*, viz. in line 1386: *he hauede his offrende* (= offering) *on the auter leyd*.

c) In the Northern dialects the ending was *and*.

before 1300. *Vpsteġh reke in his ire, | And of face of him brent þe fire: | Koles þat ware dounfalland | Kindled ere of him glouand.* Northumbrian Psalter, XVII, 23–26 (MORRIS & SKEAT, Spec.). (= Smoke rose (from his nostrils) in his ire, | And from out of his face burnt the fire; | Coals that were falling down | Are kindled glowing by him.) Compare Auth. Vers., Psalm XVIII, 8.

d) In the Southern and Midland dialects *inge*, or *yngē*, as a participial ending began to appear ± 1200, and gradually ousted the original endings *inde* or *ende*. In the Northern dialects the participle ending maintained itself longer; in some, indeed, the participle and the gerund ending are still distinguished, being respectively *and* or *an*, and *ing* or *in'*. MURRAY (in O. E. D., s.v. *and* and *ing*<sup>2</sup>).

± 1250. *Nū bȝe twō þēs swēte þinge | Crīe hire mercī al wēpinge.* Floris and Blancheflur (EMERSON, Mid. Eng. Read., 38, 14. (= Now both these sweet things (or creatures) weeping cry to her to have mercy upon them.)

1362. *A Feir feld ful of folkfond | þer bi-twene, | Of alle maner of men.*

þe mene and þe riche, þ Worchinge and wondringe as þe world asketh. *LANGLAND, Vision, Prol. 19* (MORRIS & SKEAT, Spec.).

± 1380. Jhon was in desert baptisynge, and prechinge the baptyne of pen-aunce. *WYCLIF, Mark, 1* (MORRIS & SKEAT, Spec.).

61. Nouns in *ing* having thus become formally identical with the participle in *ing*, the way was paved for extending the constructions of the latter to the former, in other words for the noun in *ing* to become capable of practically all the constructions which are peculiar to verbs. In course of time we accordingly find it, like the present participle, capable of being modified by any variety of adverbial adjuncts, taking a non-prepositional object, and showing the distinction of voice and, to a certain extent, that of tense.

The development of the verbal character in the nouns in *ing* was most probably furthered by the influence of the French *en* + *gérondif*. This appears from the frequency of constructions with *in*, instead of the older *on*, in Middle English.

± 1250. þu sittest in longynge. *O. E. Misc., 201* (ed. RICH. MORRIS).

± 1280. Heo was a gast (= aghast) and in feringe (= in fearing). *Childh. Jesus, 75* (ed. HORSTMANN). Compare: in grete fering. *ib. 467*, in mourn-inge *ib. 749*.)

± 1387. I slow Sampson in shaking the piler. *CHAUC, Cant. Tales, A, 2466*.

Also the uncertainty which attaches to the interpretation of certain constructions may have been of some influence in this direction. Thus, as has already been pointed out (35, a, 2), in such a sentence as *Pardon the boys saying so* the object of *pardon* is *the boys saying so*, in which *saying* is the head-word, *the boys* the modifying element. But there is another, less rational, interpretation, according to which *the boys* is the object of *pardon*, *saying so* modifying *the boys*. The latter interpretation, which to an unschooled mind would, most probably, appear more plausible than the former, would lead to the view of considering *saying* as a present participle.

62. a) The first traces of the noun in *ing* assuming a verbal regimen consist in its taking such adverbial modifiers as *down*, *in*, etc. This came about by such compounds as *downcoming*, *downfalling*, *ingoing*, etc. being resolved into their component parts and the adverb being placed after the verb, which resulted in such forms as *coming down*, *falling down*, *going in*, etc. The earliest instances of this altered practice are said to appear with any frequency about the middle of the fifteenth century.

± We pray you hertily, that ye wil yeve (= give) attendaunce at such day and place as ye . . . shal mow (= may, be able) attende to the making up of the seide evidencz. *Past. Let., No. 43*.

± 1440. Rysynge vp from sei (= seat) or restynge place. *Promptorium. Parvulorum, col. 375* (ed. MAYHEW).

b) The construction in which the noun in *ing* governs a non-prepositional object may also have arisen from a transposition of the component parts of such compounds as *peace-making*, *book-selling*, etc., mentioned in 39. Of such compounds instances may be found in the earliest English. KELLNER (Hist. Outl., § 416) quotes some which would not be tolerated in Present English.

+ 700. Biscopas mid folcum buton, ænigre are sceawunge fornumene wæron. BEDE, Eccles. Hist., I, 5 (ed. SCHIPPER). (= Bishops and people without any \*mercy-showing were destroyed. Probably an imitation of the Latin *sine ullo respectu honoris*).

+ 1175. bi his cldes wrixlunge. Old Eng. Hom., I, 207. (= by his \*clothes-changing.)

Further instances are found in:

Heigh labour, and ful greet apparailinge | Was at the service and the fyr-makinge. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, A, 2914.

+ 1464. Master Constantyn sewyd (= sued) hym for feith and trowth brekyng. Paston Let., No. 490.

The following are early instances of the new practice, which appears to have come in about the last quarter of the fourteenth century.

1455. He be meke to God in not anyss tempting God agens reson. PECOCK, Repressor, I, 13.

+ 1470. I suppose that he hath slayn her in fullyllynge his fowle lust of lecherye. MALORY, Morte Darthur, 16619 (ed. SOMMER).

c) When the verbal regimen of the noun in *ing* had been fully established, we find the construction with the definite article and a prepositional phrase with *of* varying with that in which this form is followed by a non-prepositional object. Both are found in:

Concerning the means of procuring unity, men must beware that, in the procuring and muniting of religious unity, they do not dissolve and deface the laws of charity and of human society. BACON, Es., Of Unity in Religion, 8. (to munite = to fortify, to strengthen.)

d) By the side of these constructions we sometimes meet with that in which the *ing*-word is not preceded by any adnominal modifier, beyond a potential adjective, and followed by *of*. The verbal may, or may not, stand after a preposition. Sometimes two different constructions are found in one and the same sentence. Thus in some of the following quotations which seem to show that the construction with *of* is rarely used when the object of the action is indicated by a pronoun.

i. Afterward, in getting of your riches and in usinge hem, ye shul alwey have three thinges in your herte. CHAUC., Cant. T., B, 2813.

I am in bildyng of a pore house. Past. Let., No. 348.

Thou art so fat-witted, with drinking of old sack and unbuttoning thee after supper and sleeping upon benches after noon, that thou hast forgotten to demand that truly which thou wouldst truly know. SHAK., Henry IV., A, I, 2, 2.

I had the misfortune to displease him by unveiling of the future and revealing all the dangers. LYTTON.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. ± 1420. Vnto the Roll[e]s I gat me from thence, | Before the Clarkes of the Chauncerye, | Where many I found earnynge of pence, | But none at all once regarded mee. JOHN LYDGATE, London Lyckpenny, V (SKEAT, Spec.).

1545. and lykewise as burnyng of thistles and diligent weding them oute of the corne doth not halfe so moche ryd them as when ye ground is falloed. ROGER ASCHAM.<sup>2)</sup>

e) According to CURME (E. S., XLV, 362), it was not until the close of the sixteenth century that the gerund began to adopt formations showing distinctions of voice and tense. In ROGER ASCHAM's works there are no instances of complex gerunds; thus:

1545. A shootynge Gloue is chieflie for to save a mannes fyngers from hurtyng. Toxophilus. (Present Eng.: being hurt.)

Similarly the following quotations show that at one time the gerund was neutral as to voice.

1330—1340. þe to er (sc. thyng þat clenches vs) es: schryft of mouth: again þe syn of mouth: | And þat selle be hasty with-uten delaying. | Naked with-uten excusyng. | Hale with-uten partyng. RICH. ROLLE OF HAMPOLE, Works, I, 25, Cambr. M. S., ed. HORSTMANN. (= the other is shrift of mouth against the sin of mouth. And that shall be hasty (i. e. must be done at once) without being put off. Naked without anything being excused. Entire without being divided (i. e. the whole sin must be confessed without part of it being kept back.)

1455. Poul wrote his bothe Epistles to Corintheis eer he was bounden by prisoning in Rome. PECOCK, Repressor, I, 57. (= being imprisoned.)

The following are the earliest instances of the gerund showing the distinction of voice that have come to hand:

1585—1591. by being unto God united. HOOKER, Ecc l. Pol., I, XI, § 2<sup>3)</sup> Thou wert dignified enough, | Even to the point of envy, if 'twere made | Comparative for your virtues, to be styled | The under-hangman of his kingdom, and hated | For being preferr'd so well. SHAK., Cymb., II, 3, 136.

Complex gerunds showing tense are yet very rare in SHAKESPEARE (31). The earliest instance cited by the O. E. D. is:

1580. Want of consideration in not having demanded thus much. SIDNEY, Arcadia, I, 68.

Even for a considerable time after SHAKESPEARE's days the simple gerund was mostly used for the complex, in other words the gerund continued to be neutral as to voice and tense, which, as we have seen (25—27) it is, to a considerable extent, even in Present English.

63. The construction in which the common case of a noun or the objective of a personal pronoun stands before the word in *ing*

1) DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 60.

2) CURME, E. S., XLV, 352.

3) O. E. D.

has been traced to quite early times. KELLNER (Hist. Outl., § 418) quotes:

1330—1340. Alle waters als þai sall rynne | And þat sal last fra þe son rysyng· | Till þe tyme of þe son doun gangyng. HAMPOLE, *Pricke of Conscience*, 4777 f.

± 1400. After the sunne goyng down. WYCLIFF, *Gen.*, XXVIII, 11,

The construction may have been used in direct imitation of Latin originals with participles.

± 700. se be Diocletiane lyfgendum Gallia rice rehte. BEDE, *Ec. Hist.*, I, 8. (= qui vivente Diocletiano Galliam regebat.)

Wæs he be ðæm bræðer lifigendum wræcca in Gallia. *ib.*, II, 15 (= qui vivente adhuc fratre cum exsulerat in Galliam)

Thus also the participle form is used in:

To-janes þo sunne risindde. *Old Eng. Misc.*, 26.<sup>1</sup>) (= towards the time of the sun rising.)

± 1275. Tifings come to þe Emperoure, | þat .. A fer cuntre bud him wend to | For changeand thinges þat war to do. *Alteng. Leg.*, *Neue Folge* (ed. HORSTMANN). (= Tidings came to the Emperor, that .. commanded him (to) go to a far country, for ordering things that were to be done)<sup>1</sup>)

64. A secondary source of the gerund is, perhaps, to be traced to the inflected infinitive, which, so far as it ended in *ende* or *inde*, must have had a tendency of taking the suffix *enge* or *inge*. According to V. D. GAAF (*Three Remarkable Infinitives*, *Neophilologus*, III, 193) "Inflected infinitives in *yngē*, *ingē*, instead of *enē* are fairly usual in some southern dialect varieties from the twelfth century onwards." This may have given rise to the notion of there being two infinitives, e. g.: (*to*) *binden* and (*to*) *bindenge* or *bindinge*. This notion would appear all the more rational, because also in Latin and French there were two forms, viz.: the infinitive proper and, respectively, the gerundium and the gérondif, differing only in grammatical function.

The second form (*to*) *bindenge* or *bindinge* gave way to the first (*to*) *binden* when purely verbal functions had to be expressed, but maintained itself when distinctly substantival functions made themselves felt. In the latter case it coalesced with the verbal noun in *ing*.

The use of *ende* instead of *en(n)e* as the ending of the inflected infinitive is characteristic of the South and South-East Midlands. The ending *ende* occurs in three Mss. of WULFSTAN'S *Homilies* (B, D and N), viz.: *to halgiende* (34/15), *to smeagende* (185 6), *to cweðende* (185 7), *to swerigende* (253/7), *to fyligende* (253 9).

The ending *ende* for *enne* is also frequent in the Early Mid. Eng. *Rule of St. Benet* (ed. SCHRÖER), in the *Trinity Homilies*, and the B text of *LAȜAMON*.

<sup>1</sup> KELLNER, *HIST. OUTL.*, § 418

H. POOTSMA, III L.

± 1010. þæt is ofer eal gemet to smeagende .. and on mycelre care to cweðende. WULFSTAN, 1855—7. (= that is beyond all measure (i. e. exceedingly) to be considered .. and with great care to be said.)

± 1200. Ne com ic to donde mine azenum willan. Rule of St. Benet, 29/3 = 35/23. (= Non ueni facere voluntatem meam.)

± 1298. As þe hende he dude verst. and messagers him sende, | þæt he vnderstode him bet. is dede vor to amende. ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER, Chron. (SKEAT, Spec., 14.) (= Like a courteous man he did first and sent messengers to him | That he should consider to amend his deeds better.)

A generacioun to comyng schal be teld to the Lord. WYCLIF, Psalm XXI, 32. (= Vulgate: Annunciabitur Domino generatio ventura.)

Confusion of final infinitives with final gerunds will appear natural enough on comparing the above with the following quotations given by CURME (E. S., XLV, 379):

þa steorran sint mannum to nihtlicere lihtunge gesceapene. SWEET'S Sel. Hom., of Ælfric, 28. (= the stars have been created to give light to men at night.)

summe nolden his lare underfon heom sylfe to rihtunge. Twelfth Cent. Hom., 8. (= Some refused to receive His teaching for the purpose of reforming themselves.)

Observe also that the gerund is sometimes used in SHAKESPEARE where Present English would have a passive infinitive; thus in:

Behold what honest clothes you send forth to bleaching! Merry Wives, IV, 2, 126. (= to be bleached.)

Throw foul linen upon him, as if it were going to bucking. ib., III, 3, 140. (= to be washed.)

The gerunds in the following quotations have a similar function:

Put the liveries to making. Merch., II, 2, 124.

Happy are they that hear their detractions and can put them to mending. Much ado, II, 3, 238.

65. The change of the infinitive in *en* into one in *ing* may have come about through the same cause as that which affected the Old-English participle in *ende* or *inde*, i. e. one with which every Englishman of the present day is familiar, who at any moment may hear *chicken*, *children*, *garden*, *luncheon*, etc. pronounced *chicking*, *childring*, *garding*, *lunching*, etc. Compare also the archaic *beholding* for *beholden*.



## CHAPTER LVII.

### THE PARTICIPLES.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Name, Tense and Voice . . . . .	1— 6
Syntax . . . . .	7—43
The Verbal and Adjectival Character of the Participles . . . . .	7—18
The Present Participle in Detail . . . . .	19—27
The Past Participle in Detail . . . . .	28—40
The Participles compared with Allied Forms . . . . .	41—43



## Name, Tense and Voice.

1. Participles are those forms of the verb which partake of the nature of both verbs and adjectives (Ch. XLV, 29, *b*).
2. There are two participles: the present and the past participle, e. g.: *speaking, spoken*.

The terms *p r e s e n t* and *p a s t*, as applied to participles, are exceptionable, seeing that the present participle is capable of indicating only partly a relative difference of time-sphere of the action or state it expresses (3), and the past participle is utterly neutral in this respect. Absolute differences of time-sphere as regards the present participle as well as the past are expressed by the (finite verb of the) predicate, by an adverbial adjunct, or by both. Thus the time-sphere of the action denoted by *walking* is, respectively, indicated by *meet, met* and *shall meet* in *Walking home I meet (met, shall meet) my friend*.

The adverbial adjunct *some time ago* indicates the time-sphere of the action denoted by *erected* in *A column, erected some time ago, stands in front of the building*.

In *Walking home yesterday I met my friend* the time-sphere of the action of walking is expressed twice, viz. by the adverb *yesterday* and by the preterite *met*.

Also the terms *a c t i v e*, instead of *p r e s e n t*, and *p a s s i v e*, instead of *p a s t*, which are used by some grammarians, are equally open to objection. The term *passive* cannot possibly be applied to the participle used in the perfect tenses of a subjective verb, as in *I have walked a long way*.

The terms *i m p e r f e c t* and *p e r f e c t* would be quite suitable so far as the simple forms (*walking, walked*) are concerned, seeing that they are descriptive of the two aspects implied by these verbals; but as they are currently applied to express tense-distinctions in the finite verb, their employment gives rise to uncertainty in nomenclature, besides entailing difficulties in naming such complex forms as *having walked, having been seen*. It seems, therefore, advisable to retain the time-honoured terms *p r e s e n t* and *p a s t*.

3. In virtue of its verbal character the present participle is capable of exhibiting the distinction of:  
*a*) tense, but, as in the case of the infinitive (Ch. LV, 57) and

the gerund (Ch. LVI, 8), only to show that its time-sphere is anterior to that of the finite verb with which it is connected, e. g.: imperfect present participle *walking*, perfect present participle *having walked*. Only the perfect present participle requires some illustration.

Society having ordained certain customs, men are bound to obey the laws of society. THACK., *SNOBS*, Ch. I, 16.

Not having received an answer, I wrote again. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2344.

*b*) voice, e. g.: active present participle *hearing*, passive present participle *being heard*. Only the passive present participle requires some illustration.

The water-plug being left in solitude, its over-flowings suddenly congealed. DICK., *CHRISTMAS CAROL*, I.

Not being seen by any one, he escaped. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 333.

*c*) tense and voice combined, e. g.: perfect passive present participle *having been observed*.

These injuries having been comforted externally, with patches of pickled brown paper, and Mr. Pecksniff having been comforted internally, with some brandy-and-water, the eldest Miss Pecksniff sat down to make the tea. DICK., *CHUZZY*, Ch. II, 6*b*.

Note *a*) Like the infinitive (Ch. LV, 57, *b*) and the gerund (Ch. LVI, 9, Obs. I), the present participle is incapable of indicating that its time-sphere is posterior to that of the finite verb with which it is connected. It differs, however, from these verbals in that the context but rarely implies such posteriority. This implication is, for example, to be found in:

Miss Tyrell regarded her for a moment in silence, and then quitted the room, *coming back again* from half-way up the stairs to answer a knock at the door. JACOBS, *A MASTER OF CRAFT*, Ch. XVII, 87 *a*.

Of a different nature are the following examples, in which, however, there is the same posteriority of time-sphere:

The King (sc. Leodogran) | Sent to him (sc. Arthur), saying, "Arise, and help us thou! | For here between the man and beast we die!" TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 45. (It is, of course, the messenger who is to say the words quoted to Arthur. Another instance is to be found in line 137.)

As in the case of the infinitive and the gerund, certain phrases, such as *to be about*, *to be going* etc., are available to express the posteriority of the time-sphere explicitly.

The train being about to start, he took a hurried leave of his friends.

*β*) The present participle also resembles the infinitive (Ch. LV, 57, *a*) and the gerund (Ch. LVI, 9, Obs. II) in that it is not affected by a change of time-sphere in the finite verb with which it is connected. Compare also Ch. L, 12, *c*.

Being well-to-do,	{	he is a liberal protector of all charities.
	{	he was a liberal protector of all charities.
	{	he will be a liberal protector of all charities.

*γ*) Neither tense nor voice can be expressed by the present participle when it is used attributively.

4. The difference of time-sphere is not always expressed; i. e. the imperfect present participle sometimes has to do duty for the perfect. Apparently this applies chiefly to complex sentences in which the relation of the participle-clause to its head-sentence is one of pure time.

Passing through the wall of mud and stone, they found a cheerful company assembled. DICK., *Christm. Car*, II, 65. (= having passed.)

Making Warmson bring him an early cup of coffee, he stole out of the house before the hour of breakfast. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. IV, (592). (= having made.)

5. The active present participle is often used in a passive meaning, especially:

a) when modifying the subject of a sentence or clause with (*there*) *is* or its variations.

i. I guessed there was some mischief contriving. SWIFT, *Gul.*, II, Ch. II, 143 a.

Sheets of ham were there, cooking on the gridiron; half-a-dozen eggs were there, poaching in the frying-pan. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 333 a.

There is nothing doing. *id.*, *Domb.*, Ch. IV, 29.

Whenever Kew and Charles Belsize are together, I know there is some wickedness planning. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 123.

There is a glorious dish of eggs and bacon making ready. EDNA LYALL, *In the Golden Days*.

There can hardly be much doing. *id.*, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XVI, 145.

ii. In the ash-pit was a heap of potatoes roasting. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XV, 117.

Similarly in: All round the present town the ruins of Kilkenny's former greatness testify to the decay. Nothing doing. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 106, 273.

b) when used in the function of nominal part of the predicate.

Well, my lord: | If he steal aught the whilst this play is playing, | And 'scape detection, I will pay the theft. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 93.

While this ballad was reading. GOLD., *Vic.*, Ch. VIII. (281).

A part of the game was cooking for the evening's repast. WASH. IRV., *Dollf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 139).

Preparations were making to receive Mr. Creakle and the boys. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IVI, 49 b.

While these preparations were making in Scotland, James called into his closet Arnold van Citters, who had long resided in England as Ambassador from the United Provinces. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 116.

They (sc. the *Pickwick Papers*) were then publishing in parts. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. I, 21.

Others conjectured that she was going to be married, and that the settlements were preparing. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 222.

I also have my hour of exigency .. and its minutes are now numbering. DISR., *Syb.*, V, Ch. V 316.

Similarly in: How little the things actually doing around us affect the springs of our sorrow or joy! LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. X, 412.

c) when modifying the object of verbs of perceiving, and occasionally other verbs that may be construed with an accusative + infinitive.

I. I hear some fiddles tuning. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, V, 3, (127)

When Joe and I got home, we found the table laid .. and the dinner dressing. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. IV, 30.

Annie seem'd to hear | Her own death-scaffold raising. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 175.

I have read of such things in books of the ancients, and I have watched them making. KINGSLEY, *Her.*, Ch. XXV, 106 *a*.

To-morrow I shall expect to hear your mother's goods unloading. HARDY, *Tess*, VI, Ch. LI, 461.

I saw the things shaping. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4 *b*.

ii. And any man, wherever placed, however far from other sources of interest or beauty, has this doing for him constantly. RUSKIN, *Mod. Paint.*, II, III, Ch. I, 1)

iii. I want a button sewing on. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 200, N.

I want these (sc. rabbits) sending off by the first train. *Punch*, No. 3995, 66 *b*.

The lower classes want their independence encouraging. HUTCHINSON, *II Winter Comes*, Ch. VII, 1, 49.

We want it clearing up, but it must be complete, and we shall not allow a false illumination. *Manch. Guard.*, 136, 1924, II *b*.

Note. In constructions exemplified by the following quotations the use of the active participle with a passive meaning appears to be archaic and rare (Ch. II, 38, Obs. I, Ch. LVI, 50):

Women are angels, wooing. SHAK., *Troil & Cres.*, I, 2, 312.

That piano of ours is a jolly long time mending. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, II, 91.

6. Obs. I. As to the construction mentioned under 5, *a*), it may be observed that substitution of the passive present participle would, apparently, hardly be tolerated by idiom. Save for the forms with *doing*, the construction, however, seems to be unfrequent.

II. *a*) As nominal part of the predicate the active present participle with passive meaning is now getting more and more unusual, modern practice mostly substituting the passive present participle (Ch. LII, 46, *a*). We are always being complained of and guarded against. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 11.

Whenever fights were being talked of, the small boys shook their heads, saying [etc.]. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. V, 286.

The work which is being carried on appeals by its practical side to a colonial statesman of eminently practical capacity. *Times*, 1899, 265 *b*.

Despite many adverse criticisms, the affairs of England in China are not being neglected. *Il. Lond. News*, 1899, 421 C.

Twelve months ago the effects of the coal strike were still being felt. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6223, 2 *b*.

*β*) Substitution of the passive for the active present participle is, however, impracticable after *to be* in the perfect and pluperfect tenses (Ch. LII, 44).

At length some supper, which had been warming up, was placed on the table. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 153.

Nor would the passive present participle be possible after the future tense and the periphrastic conditional of *to be*. It should, however, be added that also the active present participle with passive meaning

1) ARONSTEIN, *Anglia*, XLII, 17.

in like positions seems to be non-existent, no instances having come to hand of such sentences as \**The book will (would) soon be printing.*  
 γ) The active voice is regularly retained in the present participle of *to owe*; is still quite usual in that of *to do*; and, apparently, frequent enough in that of *to build*.

i. He paid all that was owing. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

A man's property and the sums owing to him are called his Assets; the sums owing by him, his Liabilities. *HAMILTON & HALL, Book-keeping, 5.*

Similarly: When Martha's wages and the rent are paid, I have not a farthing owing. *Mrs GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIII, 250.*

ii. We asked him what was doing in it. *DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LXV, 531.*  
 The good people knew all that was doing at London. *LYTTON, My Novel, I, V, Ch. VIII, 317.*

He took for granted that nothing had been done in Glencoe beyond what was doing in many other glens. *MAC., Hist., VII, Ch. XVIII, 28.*

In this part of the world we are all so close together that everybody knows what is doing in the territory of everybody else. *Times.*

iii. At the end of March 1919 4.133.523 tons were actually building. *Times, No. 2298, 25 b.*

Similarly: The tonnage building in the United Kingdom at the end of last year was 3.708.906 tons.

The destruction of vessels now building would require a fairly large amount of money. *Manch. Guard, V, No. 21, 408 c.*

Passiveness is dimmed, passing into intransitiveness (Ch. XLVII, 10—11), in certain present participles when they assume the character of adjectives or have the value of prepositions, either by themselves or in connexion with another preposition; thus:

*missing*, as in: There is a page missing. A page is missing. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

He was missing during the whole day. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XI, 89.*

*owing*, as in: All this was owing merely to ill-luck. Owing to the drought crops are short. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

*wanting*, as in: One of the twelve is wanting. We have the means, but the application is wanting. *WEBST., Dict.*

Wanting common honesty nothing can be done. He made a century wanting one run. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

III. After verbs that may be construed with an accusative + infinitive the active present participle with passive meaning varies with the passive present participle, the passive infinitive and the bare infinitive. There is, accordingly a fourfold variety of construction, illustrated respectively by 1) *I want a button sewing on*, 2) *I want a button being sewn on*, 3) *I want a button to be sewn on*, and 4) *I want a button sewn on*. To these we may add a fifth construction consisting of a head-sentence followed by a subordinate statement: *I want that a button shall (or should) be sewn on*. This last construction is common enough, at least in literary style, after most verbs of wishing, (dis)liking or commanding, but is distinctly unfrequent after *to want* (Ch. XLIX, 21, Obs. V). Here follow some quotations for illustration, a few of construction 1), already given higher up, being repeated for comparison:

#### Constructions after verbs of perceiving.

construction 1): I hear some fiddles tuning. *FARQUHAR, Const. Couple, V, 3, (127).*

construction 2): As to his title, he said that he had felt himself being called names in his old age. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, *Introd.*, 4.

In an instant the child saw them close together and remote, near the door, gone through the door, which she neither heard nor saw being opened or shut. CONRAD, *Chance*, IV, 99.

He was to watch us being drilled by the sergeant. DON. HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, IV, 7.

Marjory watched the breakfast being removed with a sort of dumb anger. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. VII, 117.

At last Mr. Ismay saw the boats being launched. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 499, 674 c.

construction 3): instances non-existent.

construction 4): I saw him thrown out of his trap. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 331. They had never seen a human being killed. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. X, 57.

Constructions 1) and 2) are both fairly common, although not nearly so usual as construction 4). They always imply a distinctly durative aspect, whereas the last construction may be either momentaneous, as in the two above quotations, or durative as in:

I perceived him led through the outward hall as a prisoner. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 111.

Sometimes also the aspect is far from clear; thus in:

What was his discomfiture when he heard the chain and bolts *withdrawn* and saw the door slowly opening, wider and wider! DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 146.

### Constructions after verbs of wishing, (dis)liking and commanding.

construction 1): I want these (sc. rabbits) sending off by the first train. *Punch*, No. 3995, 66 b.

construction 2); Our people don't like things being ordered and left. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 a.

You and I don't like our pictures and statues being found fault with. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXIX, 288.

construction 3): He commanded the bridge to be lowered. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 397.

construction 4): i. He wants these two letters posted. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XVII, 207.

Monkly told the Baron that he did not wish anything said about Sylvester's father. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, Ch. II, 68.

ii. You can tell me what you would like done in the rooms. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, iv, Ch. XXIX, 73.

You must tell us exactly what you would like done. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holmes*, II, D, 191.

iii. He stood to it that Mr. Carlyle had ordered the work done in another way. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 257. T.

I ordered my bill made out. SAVAGE, *My Official Wife*, 185.

Construction 1) is confined to some dialects of the Northern Midlands. EARLE (*Phil.*<sup>5</sup>, § 580, *h*) observes, "While we are on this flexional infinitive (by which he means what is called a gerund in these pages). I must call attention to a well-marked provincialism, which might be thought to belong here. In all classes of society in Yorkshire it is common to hear *Do you want the tea making? I want my coat brushing*,



*Father wants the door shutting.* I think this is not an infinitive, but a strong participle in *en* disguised to *ing*." Few scholars would be prepared to endorse the conjecture contained in the last words of this citation.

Construction 2) seems to be distinctly uncommon only a few instances having turned up. Construction 3) is the ordinary one, while construction 4), although not unfrequent after *to want*, *to wish*, *to like* and *to order* is, apparently, rarely, if ever, used after verbs of a similar meaning. From the available evidence no conclusions can be drawn as to different shades of meaning implied by the various constructions. In conclusion it may be observed that the verbal in *ing*, whether active or passive, on the strength of its logical relation to the preceding (pro)noun, may, with some justice, be regarded as a gerund. This applies especially to such as stand after verbs of wishing, (dis)liking and ordering (Ch. LVI, 35, *a*).

IV. The active present participle with passive meaning should be distinguished from present participles in like grammatical functions, which are apparently passive, but are really intransitive, their original transitive application having, through various processes, been changed into an intransitive one (Ch. XLVI, 25—35); thus in:

i. The door was open, and a number of carriages full of ladies were drawing up and setting down. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 12.

There were no soldiers drilling. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8098, 4 *b*.

ii. Seed-potatoes are now selling at £ 12 to £ 15 a ton. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 99, 155.

The troops have arrived, and the rioters are scattering. *Mrs. WARD, Cous. Phil.*, Ch. VII, 153.

Comparing such sentences as *Her eyes were filling with tears* ( $\alpha$ ) and *This is selling very well* ( $\beta$ ) with such a sentence as *The house is building* ( $\gamma$ ), it is easy to see that in ( $\alpha$ ) and ( $\beta$ ) the passive meaning which attaches to the participle, is independent of its grammatical function, whereas in ( $\gamma$ ) it extends no further than the participle in the particular function in which it is used. Thus we could very well say *Her eyes filled with tears*, *This article sells well*, etc.; but *\*The house builds*, *has built*, etc. are impossible.

V. The passive present participle as a variant of the active present participle with passive meaning is of comparatively recent date. Although it has been traced so far back as the the end of the sixteenth century, the construction did not gain general currency until the middle of the last century. It has been obliged to fight its way against considerable opposition from purists and hide-bound grammarians, but it is now generally recognized as an established and useful idiom (Ch. LII, 46).

VI. About the rise of the active present participle in a passive meaning quite an extensive literature has sprung up in the last few years. The theory which has received the most general recognition is that the verbal in *ing* in such sentences as *The house is building* was originally a gerund preceded by the preposition *in*, earlier *on* (often weakened to *an*). The preposition, owing to its unstressed nature, was often reduced to a mere prefix *a*, which, as it did not express any distinct meaning,

was, naturally enough, dropped. The use of *in* before gerunds in the function here described is common enough in Early Modern English, and has not yet become quite extinct; the parallel use of *on* (or *an*) + gerund does not seem to extend into Modern English. The placing of the prefix *a* before gerunds, on the other hand, is still vigorously alive in most of the southern dialects, and the vulgar speech both in England and America. The prefix *o* in like position seems to be very rare. It may, however, be assumed that in some cases the construction illustrated by *the house is building*, has arisen independently of an earlier construction with *an* (*in* or *a*) + gerund, and is due to the influence of verbs which in all their forms admit of being used in a kind of passive meaning, as exemplified by *the book is selling well*, *the book sold well*; *this fruit is spoiling rapidly*, *the fruit soon spoiled*, etc.

Here follow some examples of the constructions, *on*, *in* or *a* + gerund. To those with *in* are added a few in which the gerund, mostly *making*, is preceded by the definite article.

i. Your wits are gone on wool-gathering. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIX, 202. (Compare: The thoughts of the hare-brained boy went a-wool-gathering after more agreeable topics. *ib.*, Ch. XX, 217.)

ii. \* A piece many years in doing. SHAK., *Wint. Tale*, V, 2, 104.

While these sentences are in reading. *Book of Com. Pray.*, 156.

My hair has been in training. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1, (231).

These here ones as is below, though, ain't reglar thorough-bred Sawbones; they're only in training. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 266.

The Holborn Viaduct was then in building. JEROME, *Paul Kever*, Ch. VIII, 67 *a*.

\*\* The man was still in the making, as much as the Middlemarch doctor and immortal discoverer. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, II, Ch. XV, 108.

Not action, but character, and not character formed but in the forming, there is the style of Browning's art. *Athen.*, 1889, 858 *b*.

All possible suasion was used by the Imperial Government while the Constitution was in the making. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5083, 1 *c*.

iii. \* The feast is sold | That is not often vouch'd, while 'tis a-making, | 'Tis given with welcome. SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 4, 34.

While the ark was a-preparing. *Bible*, *Peter*, A, III, 20.

While my mittimus was a-making. BUNYAN, *A Relation of my Imprisonment*, (108).

\*\* Their gallows must even now be 'o'building. CARL., *Sart. Res.*, Ch. III, 15.

The theory referred to above receives vigorous support from the fact that the construction is identical, and often interchangeable, with one in which the preposition *in* stands before a noun of action, and is often an exact rendering of the Dutch *in* + noun of action, which may end in *ing* (27, *a*, 2); e.g.: *in onderzoek*, *in ontbinding*.

The plot was evidently in execution. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 144.

The opera is in rehearsal. *Punch*, 1889, 183 *c*.

VII. The prefix *a* is also frequently found before active participles that are not passive in meaning; thus: *a*) after *to go*, *to run*, *to be off*, *to come* and verbs of a similar meaning, the participle denoting the purpose of the action indicated by the preceding verb; *β*) after *to set*

in the meaning of *to start* or *to cause*; γ) after *to fall* in the meaning of *to begin*; δ) after the copula *to be*, or in positions where *to be* may be supplied, and also after verbs which approximate to the copula *to be* through weakening of their sense; similarly after verbs governing an accusative + infinitive; ε) after *to burst out*.

In the majority of these connexions this *a* also represents an earlier *an* (for *on*), although in some it may be a mere rhythmic insertion. The use of the prefix has become extinct in Standard Modern English, but is still quite common in the language of illiterates and in dialects where, no doubt, it has, at least in part, been preserved for rhythmical reasons. In some combinations it is still common enough in good colloquial language. Such are *to go a-begging*, *a-courting*, *a-wooing*; *to set the clock a-going*, *the bells a-ringing*, *folk a thinking* (O. E. D., s.v. *a*, prep., 13, *b*).

For *to go a-hunting* and similar collocations Modern Standard English mostly substitutes *to go out hunting*, etc. Further variants are *to go out a-hunting*, etc., which is found but rarely, and *to go hunting*, etc., which is not unfrequent. Such a combination as *to go to hunt* seems to be rare, but the use of *to go to* + other infinitives is common enough. Constructions in which *to go* is followed by an infinitive without *to* are now archaic or dialectal (Ch. LV, 34).

*To set* may be followed by a bare participle and also, in a somewhat different shade of meaning, by an infinitive with *to*. The construction with *on* + gerund is, apparently, still in common use, although obsolete when the reference is to a physical movement as in *to set on going*, *packing* (O. E. D., s.v. *set*, 114, *b*). Compare: There's something in his soul | O'er which his melancholy sits on brood. SHAK., Hamlet, III, 1, 173.

After *to fall* we also find a bare participle, a gerund preceded by *in* (this but rarely), a gerund preceded by *to*, an infinitive with *to*.

For further discussion of these constructions especially of the use of the prefix *a* and the prepositions *in*, *on* (or *an*) before gerunds, see also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 783 ff; O. E. D., s.v. *a* prep.<sup>1</sup>; id., s.v. *burst*, 6; id., s.v. *go*, 32; FIJN VAN DRAAT, Rhythm in Eng. Prose, Anglia XXIV. Compare also Ch. XIX, § 44, s.v. *fall*, and § 63, Obs. I—IV; and my article on Hendiadys in Eng., in Neophil., II, 202 ff and 284 ff.

### Constructions after *to go*, *to come*, and similar verbs.

i. So it befell in the month of May, Queen Guenever called unto her knights of the Table Round; and she gave them warning that early upon the morrow she would ride on Maying into the woods, and fields beside Westminster. MALORY, Le Morte d'Arthur, XIX, Ch. I, 315.

ii. A duke's income — a duke's — and going a-begging, as I may say. LYTTON, Caxt., I, Ch. III, 43.

I should not like to go a-begging. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 23.

Have you any remembrance of what used to happen when Mr. Grundy came a-wooing. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXIX, 725.

Politicians cannot have it both ways, and if they are all going a-gunning for the moneyed man, the moneyed men naturally refuse to supply them with ammunition. Rev. of Rev., No. 226, 312 *b*.

- iii How heavenly it would be to go out boating such a night as this! Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. V, 83.  
 He went out walking. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 35.  
 iv. The man went out a-shooting. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, 98.<sup>1)</sup>  
 You don't want to go out a-walking, eh Fagin? DICK., *Ol. Twist*, 234.<sup>1)</sup>  
 He went out to-day a-wooing. id. *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. III, 15 *b*.  
 v. I am going travelling upon a round of visits. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVI, 374.  
 He meant to go hunting. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. I, 119.  
 It'll be a shame to let a watch go begging. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. V, 67. T.  
 If Isabel Vane were not the lady Isabel, they would think you went there courting. id., *East Lynne*, I, 121. T.  
 I am off shooting. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch. IV, 34.  
 Robert and I go fishing. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*  
 I am not going shooting to-morrow. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VII.  
 You'll go riding, won't you? GALSW., *Beyond*, II, Ch. X, 145.  
 You won't have to pay for your cabin on the *Mauretania*. It's going begging. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. III, 21.  
 vii. May I give you the book to-morrow morning before we go to shoot? EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXVI, 236.  
 vii. In the meantime I'll go to prepare matters for our elopement. GOLD., *She stoops*, IV, (207).  
 viii Let Mary go find Will. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXV, 265.

#### Constructions after *to set*.

- i. He busied himself with .. making a specification of the expenses, that he might show it to Burge the next morning, and set him on persuading the Squire to consent. G. ELIOT, *Ad Bede*, IV, Ch. XXVII, 254.  
 ii. With the 5000 l. our office must be set a-going. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 131.  
 A wandering breeze set now and again the leafy breast a-heaving. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. III, 141.  
 iii. With reference to your duties I can set you going. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 309 *b*.  
 iv. She set herself to make as light of the whole affair as was possible. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXV, 229.

#### Constructions after *to fall*.

- i. And Enid fell in longing for a dress | All branch'd and flower'd with gold. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 630.  
 ii. It was not for nothing that my nose fell a-bleeding. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 5, 25.  
 At this we all fell a-crying. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 *a*.  
 iii. After a while they fell crying. KINGSLEY, *Her.*, Ch. V, 36 *b*.  
 iv. He fell at once to talking about the Squire. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 382.  
 v. The distinction was immediately approved by all, and so they fell again to examine. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, (62 *b*).  
 Upon this they fell again to rummage the well. ib., (63 *b*).

<sup>1</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Anglia*, XXIV, 512.

The verbal with proclitic *a* after *to be*, etc.

- i. You're a-going to be made a 'prentice of. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 39.  
I've been a-turning the bis'ness over in my mind, and he may make hisself easy, Sammy. id., *Pickw.*  
What was I a-saying? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 37.
- ii. There was a bishop's lady in the shop, a-buying just such another. (?), *Aunt Jane at the Sea-shore*, Ch. II.
- iii. For he had only one daughter .. and she lay a-dying. BIBLE, *Luke*, VIII, 42.
- iv. You don't know how it pleases me, sir .. to hear you a-going on in that there uncommon considerate way of yours. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 333*a*.

Constructions after *to burst out*.

- i. After having looked at me earnestly for some time he burst out a-laughing. SMOL., *Humph. Clink.*, 112. T.  
My uncle burst out a-laughing. THACK., *Barry Lynd.*

ii. He burst out sobbing and crying. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 49. VIII. Another survival of an ancient practice preserved in dialects and the language of unlettered people is the use of the preposition *of* after the present participle of transitive verbs. This use of *of* goes far to show that in the majority of cases the Expanded Form of verbs goes back to a construction with the gerund in *ing* (Ch. LII, 46*b*). Compare also Ch. LVI, 33.

In vulgar English the participle is, also in this construction, often preceded by the prefix *a*, which mostly represents an earlier *an* or *on*, but in some cases may be a rhythmical insertion.

Observe also that such a sentence as *She was (a-)writing of a letter* corresponds to the Dutch *zij was aan het schrijven van een brief*.

- i. Whom I left cooling of the air with sighs. SHAK., *Temp.*, I, 2, 222.  
Coming out of another room and seeing of me .. he said unto me, who is there, John Bunyan? BUNYAN, *A Relation of my Imprisonment*, (109).

Suppose Baker was to come in and find you squeez'ng of my hand. THACK., *Lovel the Wid.*, Ch. III, 48.

- ii. "They're a-twigging of you, sir," whispered Mr. Weller. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XX, 173.

Does the boy know what he's a-saying of? id., *Barn Rudge*, Ch. III, 12*b*.  
She fancied the bull was a-chasing of her again. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. III, 49.

The vulgar use of what is now an illogical *of* after other forms of the verb, as in the following quotations, seems to be rare:

If so be you like of the match, why, I am your man. GODWIN, *Cal Wil.*, I, Ch. VII, 68.

Have I offended of your feelings? J. M. BARRIE, *The Adm. Chrichton*, II, 64.

IX. In conclusion it may be observed that in vulgar language also the past participle is sometimes preceded by the prefix *a*.

If he hadn't a got out time enough, I'd a let him out for Sunday. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 291.

He said he "never could forget the kindness with which the Colonel have a treated him." ib., 296.

## Syntax.

## The Verbal and Adjectival Character of the Participles.

7. As has already been stated (1), the participles hold a position intermediate between verbs and adjectives.

They are like verbs in admitting of the ordinary verbal modification by adverbial adjuncts and objects and, chiefly, in indicating an action or state with a more or less distinct time-association; i. e. a notion that the action or state they indicate is thought of in connexion with a certain length of time (Ch. XLV, 28, 29). They differ from the finite forms of the verb in calling forth this notion less clearly and, besides, in being incapable of expressing the grammatical distinctions of person, number and mood and marking less regularly those of voice and tense (3—6).

They are like adjectives in being applicable as adnominal modifiers, and in admitting of the same modifications (22, 35). They differ from adjectives in being associated with time-limitations, which are entirely lacking in the latter.

While, however, the participle in the majority of cases is intermediate between a verb and an adjective, we find it also in functions in which it has exclusively, or almost exclusively, the characteristics of either the former or the latter.

8. The past participle is now purely verbal when it is employed to assist in forming the complex tenses of the verb, as in *I have (had or shall have) come*.

In the earlier stages of the language the past participle in the complex tenses was distinctly felt as an adjective. Thus in Old English the past participle of transitive verbs, which was placed after the object, was often put in the accusative, e. g.: *hē hæfth ānne man ofslægenne*<sup>1)</sup> (= literally *he has a man killed*), while the past participle of such intransitive verbs as were conjugated with *to be* was always in concord with the subject, e. g.: *hie wæron āfarene*<sup>2)</sup> (= *they were in a state of having departed*, Modern English *they had departed*) (Ch. L, 13—14). This adjectival character still clings more or less to the participle in those cases in which an intransitive verb is conjugated with *to be*, a practice which, although now well-nigh obsolete, has left some traces in the latest English (Ch. L, 16).

Dickens is not merely alive: he is risen from the dead. CHESTERTON (II. Lond. News, No. 3844, 919 c).

It may be added that in French the adjectival character of the past participle in the complex tenses is still often shown by the variability of its written form, e. g.: *Les fleurs qu'il a cueillies. Mes sœurs sont parties*.

<sup>1)</sup> BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch.

<sup>2)</sup> SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2166.

When a state resulting from an action is indicated by a combination of *to be* with the past participle of an intransitive verb, the latter may be said to be purely adjectival (Ch. XLVII, 6), *to be* having the function of a copula; thus in:

While I am gone, .. I wish you to read over what I have marked in these books. DICK, *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 109.

9. Both participles are virtually pure adjectives when the action they primarily imply is completely overshadowed by the quality of which this action is understood to be the manifestation, so that the time-association is absent from the speaker's or writer's mind; thus in *a charming young lady* (i. e. *an attractive or sweet young lady*), *a stolen interview* (i. e. *a secret interview*). In its changed application the present participle often expresses an inclination or a cast of mind, i. e. a permanent attribute. Thus *a grasping attorney* may have the meaning of *an attorney of a covetous cast of mind*. In the following quotations there are several examples:

Captain Benwick and Louisa Musgrove! The high-spirited, joyous-talking Louisa Musgrave, and the dejected, thinking, reading Captain Benwick, seemed each of them everything that would not suit the other. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVIII, 170.

A raging, ranting, cursing scold she is. FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shakespeare*, Ch. II, 42.

A similar notion is less frequently expressed by a past participle: *drunken* is a well-known example.

He could not live with his drunken wife. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. III, 21.  
Our rough country fellows are not, so far as I know, so drunken as the rabble of London. BESANT, *Dor. Forster*, Ch. I, 7.

The purely adjectival nature of a participle is often evidenced by its being modified by an intensive such as is ordinarily met with before an adjective or adverb of quality (22, 35; Ch. LIX, 76—79).

10. In all other applications both participles are mixed in character, i. e. the verbal and adjectival features appear in various degrees of prominence.

The verbal features stand out the most clearly, the time-association being unmistakable, when the participle denotes a physical or mental activity, as in *playing children*, *laughing girls*, *cogitating philosophers*; *with his drawn sword*, *a led horse*, *a muttered reply*.

The adjectival features stand out more boldly than the verbal in the case of participles which indicate a psychical disposition or, but in a less degree, the manifestation of such a disposition (Ch. XLV, 16, c); thus those in *a loving mother*, *the trembling offender*, *his (be)loved country*, *their venerated leader*, *her loathed enemy*, *the admired pictures*.

Also participles which express a state rather than an activity  
H. POOTSMA, III 1.

are mostly mainly adjectival in character; e. g.: those in *the existing regulations, a sleeping partner*.

**11.** The prominently adjectival character of the participle can often be told by:

a) the fact that there is an ordinary adjective of practically the same meaning. Thus *cheering* and *cheerful* are practically interchangeable in:

- i. The aspect of affairs was, on the whole, cheering. MAC., Hist., IV, 119.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. Forth we stepped | Into the presence of the cheerful light. WORDSW., Exc., II, 514.

Similarly *trembling* and *tremulous* might change places in:

- i. It was delivered in .. low and trembling accents. MRS. RADCLIFFE, Italian, XI.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. "My attachment to your person, sir," said Mr. Tupman, speaking in a voice tremulous with emotion .. "is great — very great — but upon that person I must take summary vengeance." DICK., Pickw., Ch. XV, 130.

Rather frequently the language has a Romance adjective in *ant* or *ent* varying with an adjectival participle in *ing*; thus:

*defiant* = *defying*: i. She had started up with defiant words ready to burst from her lips, but they fell back without utterance. G. ELIOT, Romola, II, Ch. XL, 310.

ii. Her impetuous, adventurous and defying character. MAC., Es. Pitt, 309/1.<sup>1)</sup>

*existent* = *existing*: i. The quantity (sc. of gold) existent and in circulation. ROGERS, Pol. Econ., III, 27.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The existing franchise may be virtually regarded as manhood suffrage. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. II, 18.

*repellent* = *repelling*: i. Presently the rude Real burst coarsely in — all evil, grovelling and repellent as she too often is. CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XII, 134.

ii. The wild steed's sinewy nerves still strain | Up the repelling bank. BYRON, Mazeppa, XV.

*resistant* = *resisting*: i. The resistant gravity about his mouth and eyes, as he was being smiled upon, made their beauty the more impressive. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, II, Ch. XVI, 251.

ii. But the resisting thoughts were not yet overborne. id., Rom., II, Ch. XL, 314.

*resultant* = *resulting*: i. We shall look for an expression of regret at the insufficient rainfall in India and the resultant famine. Times.

ii. There would either be a resulting trust, or it would belong to the person who takes the estate. JARMAN, Powell's Devises, II, 41.<sup>1)</sup>

b) the fact that there is an ordinary adjective in the same sentence or sequence of sentences used in the same function.

These are but wild and whirling words. SHAK., Hamlet, I, 5, 133.

Such institutions are either public or private, free or paying. O. E. D., s. v. *hospital*, 5.

His manner was formal, but not surly and forbidding. READE, Never too late, I, Ch. X, 113.

ii. She was very weak and reduced. LYTTON, My Novel, I, VII, Ch. XV, 467.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.



12. The present participle is predominantly verbal in character when it is connected with the verb *to be* to form with it the Expanded Form of the verb, and also in similar combinations with *to lie*, *to sit* and *to stand*; *to remain* and *to get*; and *to seem*, discussed in Ch. LII, 49—51.

An exception must be made with that application of the Expanded Form which has been described as its qualitative function. In this function the participle, as the examples in Ch. LII, 36 show, exhibits some verbal features, but these are subservient to the adjectival, no distinct time-limitation being implied.

13. The past participle is essentially verbal when it is employed to assist in forming the passive voice; thus in:

Thousands of letters are received daily. Fruit was eaten in large quantities.  
ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 116.

But there is no passive voice in the strict sense of the word when the combination *to be* + past participle serves to denote a state resulting from an action. In this case the verb *to be* has the function of a copula and the past participle that of an adjective (Ch. XLVII, 6); thus in:

All his money is spent, he has not a penny left.

14. For the rest there is much uncertainty about the prominence of either the verbal or the adjectival principle in participles, especially when used attributively. As most participles admit of indicating either principle in various degrees, the context alone is often the only determining factor. Thus *boiling* is rather verbal than adjectival in *boiling water*, but rather adjectival than verbal in *water at boiling temperature*.

In such a combination as *running footman*, when taken by itself, *running* would, on the first blush, call forth to the hearer's mind the notion of a participle with a distinctly verbal character, but in the following quotation it reveals itself almost as a pure adjective:

At length, late in the afternoon, the Knight-Marshal's men appeared on horseback. Then came a long train of running footmen. *MAC., Hist.*, III, Ch. VIII, 99.

15. Present participles are often transferred from their proper subjects to others which are in some way related to them. The change is often attended by an obscuring of the time-association and by a substitution of a notion of a quality for that of an action in the speaker's mind. Compare *a paying guest* with *a paying business*, *a blooming tree* with *a blooming month*, *a flying bird* with *a flying visit*. The great range of subjects to which some participles may be extended is shown by the numerous applications of which, for example, the participle *running* is capable, as illustrated in the O. E. D.

Some further examples of participles in transferred applications are found in the following quotations:

Be plain, good son, and homely in thy drift; | Riddling confession finds but riddling shrift. SHAK., ROM. & JUL., II, 3, 56.

I observed your niece's maid coming forth from a circulating library. SHER., RIV., I, 2.

She was in dancing, singing, exclaiming spirits. JANE AUSTEN, EMMA, Ch. LIV, 447. T.

Sir James ended with a pitying disgust. G. ELIOT, MID., IV, Ch. XXXVIII, 282.

Then first, since Enoch's golden ring had girt | Her finger, Annie fought against his will: | Yet not with brawling opposition she. TEN, EN. ARD., 159.

16. Also past participles are often transferred from their original subjects, but this change concerns only their application as adjectives. Compare *a retired gentleman* with *a retired spot*, *a learned man* with *a learned book*, *a drunken man* with *a drunken brawl*.

Note. In such word-groups as *faded cheeks*, *faded powers*, *faded cheese*, *his faded appearance*, *his faded eyes*, *faded metaphors*, *faded glories* (O. E. D., s.v. *faded*) there is no transference of epithets in the sense indicated above, but a predication of what is indicated by the participle of a variety of things likened to flowers.

17. The nature of the participle to some extent determines its position in the sentence: a distinct time-association causing it to be placed after its head-word; thus in *He himself took all the letters written to the post*, as compared with *He sent me a written circular not a printed one*, in which all time-association is absent. It will be observed that post-position of the participle imparts to it the weight of an undeveloped clause; indeed in the above example *written* readily admits of being expanded into *which he had written*, or *which had been written*, or a similar clause (Ch. VIII, 104).

But as, in the case of a participle being placed before its head-word, the action or state it expresses is, in many cases, also thought of as limited to a definite or indefinite length of time (14), there is often a great deal of latitude as to the place to be assigned to the participle. Nor can it be said that the placing is always meant to mark a gradation of the time-association. Sometimes it appears to be rather conditioned by considerations of metre or rhythm, and also of relative importance of the ideas expressed by the participle and its head-word, post-position of the former having the effect of throwing it into relative prominence. Here follow some sets of quotations with one and the same participle, which are intended to show that the placing of this verbal is to a large extent a matter of indifference.

*adjoining*: i. Jude went to the widow's house adjoining. HARDY, *Jude*, IV, Ch. II, 264.

The others had gone into the dressing-room adjoining. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. XIV, 382.

ii. To step aside into some adjoining room. MAC., *Hist.*, II, 506.<sup>1)</sup>

*following*: i. On the day following he entered my room. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, IX, Ch. I, 270.

ii. On the following day appeared in the Gazette a proclamation dissolving that Parliament. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. VIII, 99. (Observe that *ensuing*, a strict synonym of *following*, is always placed before its head-word; thus in: early on the ensuing morning. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 139.)

*living*: i. Within memory of many people living, English was a feudal club without right of entry from without. SHANE LESLIE, *The End of a Chapter*, Ch. IX, 164.

No man living could do better. CONC. OXF. *Dict.* s.v. *living*.

ii. The greatest living master of irony. The first of living artists. *ib.*

*pending*: i. There are some litigations pending. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IX, 181.

ii. A series of inquiries followed: as to the term of the proposed agreement; the degree of freedom that would be granted him; the date at which his duties would begin .. passing on to .. the nature of the pending litigations. *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 183.

*acquitted*: i. The party acquitted should be released from confinement without delay.

ii. The friends of the acquitted prisoner had dispersed. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. IV, 99.

A portion of the public both inside and outside the building hurried towards the acquitted man. *Times*.

*indicated*: i. Shagran snorted .. and refused to move one yard in the direction indicated. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. III, 66.

ii. The young man seated himself in the indicated seat at the bottom of the bed. MISS BRAD., *Lady Audley*.<sup>2)</sup>

*before-mentioned* and analogous formations: i. He saw him with ineffable satisfaction dancing with the sisters of the young noblemen before-mentioned. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XX, 204.

ii. I had received the above-named haunch from Lord Guttlebury's park. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 55.

Annual subscriptions, which must be prepaid, are received to the under-mentioned periodicals. *Times*.

*injured*: i. The party injured growled forth an oath or two of indignation. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XIX, 198.

ii. The injured party applied to the magistrate for redress.

*interested*: i. "The very thing," said Mr. Weller, who was a party interested, inasmuch as he ardently longed to see the sport. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

ii. The evidence of interested persons is now received, and its value estimated according to its worth. WILLIAMS, *Real Prop.*, 207.<sup>1)</sup>

*invited*: i. Among the guests invited were several foreigners.

ii. Mr. Asquith and the Home Secretary were among the sixty invited guests. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3715, 6c.

*required*: i. There seemed to be nobody among his numerous friends who could give him the information required.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

<sup>2)</sup> BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adj. Attrib.*, § 29.

ii. Saying this, Mr. Brownlow looked round the office as if in search of some person who would afford him the required information. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XI, 105.

Note. It is chiefly considerations of rhythm that seem to determine the place of *born* in:

i. He was a gentleman born. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVIII, 301.

He's a liar born, and he'll die a liar. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. V, 46.

She was a lady born. KINGSLEY, *Water Babies*, VI.

ii. This good lady is a born lady, a high lady. DICK., *Hard Times*, I, Ch. XI, 31 *b*.

The Boer is a born conservative, FROUDE, *O c.*, Ch. III, 48.

For detailed discussion of the placing of attributive participles see Ch. VIII, 103 ff. An interesting study of the subject is contained in *The Place of the Adjective Attribute in English Prose* by BIRGER PALM.

18. Three important grammatical functions of the participles have already been discussed in the preceding pages of this grammar, viz. the use of either participle as a constituent of an undeveloped clause (Ch. XX); the use of the past participle in forming the Passive Voice (Ch. XLVII); the use of the present participle in forming the Expanded Form (Ch. LII). In the following pages we shall be chiefly concerned with the attributive employment of the participles, instances of their predicative application being only occasionally included.

For convenience of reference a participle may be called a verbal participle when the time-association is distinctly perceptible, and an adjectival participle when this association is highly weakened or entirely absent. It should, however, be distinctly understood that a rigid line of demarcation cannot be drawn.

### The Present Participle in Detail.

19. The present participle of practically all verbs can be freely used attributively. Purely verbal participles requiring no illustration, we may confine ourselves to giving some quotations with participles in which the notion of an acting agent is more or less completely overshadowed by the notion of a quality, and the time-association is, accordingly, considerably dimmed or entirely obliterated (14).

*affecting*: At this affecting appeal, Goodwin got up a little domestic tragedy of her own. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVIII, 157.

*arresting*: Mr. Charles Rivet .. in an arresting study, entitled the Last of the Romanofs, sets forth many things that needed to be said. PUNCH, No. 4005, 240 *a*.

*attending*: How silver-sweet sound lovers' tongues by night, | Like softest music to attending ears! SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, II, 2, 166.

*compelling*: One would imagine that all Europe, Asia and America had rushed in a body to see this compelling drama (sc. *Salome* by Oscar Wilde). Lord ALFRED DOUGLAS, *Osc. Wilde and myself*, Ch. XXVI, 301.

*confiding*: They disturb the peace of mind and happiness of a confiding female. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVIII, 160.

*damning*: A duty of  $33\frac{1}{3}$  per cent is proposed on imported lace, in spite of the damning condemnations of this device, which were given in evidence during the inquiry. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/5, 1925, 31 c.

*designing*: You may be an unfortunate man, sir, or you may be a designing one. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XX, 174.

*forbidding*: Then the frown returned, redoubled in its forbidding scowl. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. VI, 255.

*grasping*: It's .. a base conspiracy between these two grasping attorneys. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVIII, 161.

*imploring*: Mr. Pott cast an imploring look at the innocent cause of the mischief. *ib.*, 158.

*knowing*: That .. was what the knowing ones call 'nuts' to Scrooge. *id.*, *Christm. Car.*, I.

*rambling*: It must have been of great service to you in the course of your rambling life. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 138.

*retreating*: A retreating forehead and an equally retreating chin. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. I, 109.

*revealing*: (This) is a most revealing series (of maps). *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/5, 1925, 40 c.

*seeming*: He came to be known for his seeming eccentricities. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. VI, 256.

*strapping*: Well, it's a pretty spot .. and one meets some fine strapping fellows about too. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. II, 11.

*taking*: He has written a taking song. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XII, 98.

*understanding*: "A modest, understanding sort of man," was Honor's mental verdict. MAUD, *Diver, Capt. Desmond*, Ch. III, 25.

Note α) In the case of objective verbs the object is often absorbed in the participle through being vague or indistinct, thus rendering them subjective (Ch. XLVI, 26 ff). Thus in most of the above quotations: *affecting appeal*, *attending ears*, *a designing man*, *grasping attorneys*, *a knowing man*, *a taking song*, *an understanding sort of man*.

β) Sometimes the object is implied in the head-word.

What a prodigy in God's world is a professing atheist! MANNING, *Serm. Myst. Sin*, I, 16.<sup>1)</sup> (= a man who professes atheism.)

Intending passengers should book early. *Notice Great West. Railway*. (= persons who intend to be passengers.)

γ) In the majority of cases the head-word of the attributive present participle is in the subjective relation to it; thus in all the preceding quotations. Occasionally the relation is objective, e.g. in:

Tell him, from his all-obeying breath I hear | The doom of Egypt. SHAK., *Ant. & Cleop.*, III, 13, 77. (= his breath, i. e. his language, which is obeyed by all.)

That hand shall burn in never quenching fire | That staggers thus my person. *id.*, *Rich.* II, V, 5, 109. (= fire that will never be quenched.)

Let me now conjure my kind, my condescending angel, to fix the day when I

1) O. E. D.

may rescue her from undeserving persecution. SHER., Riv., III, 3. (= persecution which is undeserved.)

20. Many adjectival present participles govern a prepositional object with *to*, like many adjectives when used predicatively (Ch. III, 11); thus *charming*, *disturbing*.

Others require other prepositions; thus *binding (on)*, *lacking (in)*. A few admit of being construed either with or without a preposition. Thus *unbecoming* and *(un)befitting* stand with or without *to*; *(un)deserving* stands with or without *of*.

For illustration see Ch. LIV, 6.

21. Present participles sometimes take the negating prefix *un*. Such formations are devoid of almost all verbal force, the negating *un* not being used in connection with verbs. Compare however, 34, Obs. 1.

His name must bring unpleasing recollections. SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. III, 34. I must say it is very unfeeling of him to be running away from his poor little boy. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. VII, 55.

There is nothing very unforgiving in that. *ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 177.

You are a female, and unforgiving. LYTTON, My Novel, I, VII, Ch. XI, 460. (She) clench'd her fingers till they bit the palm, | And shriek'd out 'Traitor' to the unhearing wall. TEN, Lanc. and El., 608.

People are so extremely unthinking about such a number of interesting things. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XII, 109.

Missionaries have been as scurvily rewarded by our unknowing British Ministers of State as that other great body of public servants, the officers and men of the mercantile marine. Westm. Gaz., No. 7595, 13 a.

22. Many also admit of being modified by the same intensives as are found with quality-expressing adjectives; thus:

*alarming*: (This), being only light, was more alarming than a dozen ghosts. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>10</sup>, III, 58.

*appealing*: To him the sight of a distant ship, outward bound, would be more appealing .. than anything he was likely to see at the Opera House. Westm. Gaz., 95, 1925, 42 a.

*arresting*: The movement on the western front during the last week is one of the most arresting in the war. The Nation, XX, 22, 721 a.

*confiding*: I'm a very confiding soul by nature. JEAN WEBSTER, Daddy-Long-Legs, 42.

*demanding*: Master Jervie is very demanding. *ib.*, 254.

*doting*: The other (sc. grandfather) was an earl, who endowed him with the most doting mother in the world. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 55.

*entertaining*: This is a very entertaining world. JEAN WEBSTER, Daddy-Long-Legs, 117.

*forbidding*: She is most forbidding. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XIV, 125.

*leading*: He was told so by a companion .. one Tom Towers, a very leading genius. TROL., The Warden, Ch. X, 126.

*loving*: After every outbreak of ill-humour this extraordinary pair became more loving than before. MAC., Fred., (691 a).

*quenching*: But there are some delicious jam-sandwiches, .. which are more quenching than anything. BRADBY, Dick., Ch. XII, 128.

*saving*: Grant that they are a little less saving, have they not greater temptations to and excuses for improvidence? ESCOTT, England, Ch. XII, 219.

*smiling*: A too, too smiling large man, .. appearing with his wife, instantly deserts his wife and darts at Twemlow. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 11.

*speaking*: She was still looking at him with the most speaking amazement. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 443.

*taking*: They were all ready to pay attention to that deucedly taking niece of Rashleigh's. Mrs. ALEXANDER, *For his sake*, II, Ch. II, 29.

Note. It is chiefly in vulgar or colloquial style that adjectival present participles are at all placed in the terminational superlative. Instances of the terminational comparative have not come to hand.

Dolly might take pattern by her blessed mother, who .. was the mildest, amiablest, forgivingest spirited, long-sufferingest female as ever she could have believed. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXII, 86.

I have always found him the bitingest and tightest screw in London. id., *Our Mut. Friend*, III, Ch. XIII, 227.

Mr. Deane, he considered, was the "knowingest" man of his acquaintance. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VIII, 64.

He once had a sister himself — the rippingest in the world. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6975, 8 b.

23. Present participles are not, apparently, often converted, either wholly or partially, into nouns. A very common instance of partial conversion is afforded by *living*, which is used not only to denote a class of persons in a generalizing way, but also a single individual.

i. The land of the living. Bible, Psalm XXVII, 13; LIII, 5.

ii. Every night before I lie down to rest, I look at the pictures and bless both the living and the dead. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 27.

A class of persons in a generalizing way is indicated by the present participle in:

The sleeping and the dead | Are but as pictures. SHAK., *Mac b.*, II, 2, 54.

A single individual is referred to in:

Who could look on and see her lavish caresses and endearments and not desire to be in Emma Haredeale's place; to be either her or Dolly; either the hugging or the hugged? DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. LIX, 230 a.

24. Present participles are not seldom used as intensives of either adjectives or adverbs. In the majority of cases they then denote an action or quality which is caused by the excess of the quality expressed by the adjective or adverb (LIX, 32).

I am afeard, | Being in night, all this is but a dream, | Too flattering-sweet to be substantial. SHAK., *Rom. and Jul.*, II, 2, 141.

Her breast was so aching-full of other things that all besides seemed like a dream. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXI, 224.

It was a pouring-wet day. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, Ch. IX, 103.

She and I get on rattling well together. SHAW, *Mrs. War. Prof.*, I, (174).

Note a) In the case of *passing* and *exceeding*, which are now used only archaically as intensives, there is some vague notion of an object implied in the participle. Thus *passing fair* is more or less distinctly felt to stand for *so fair as to pass all others*. JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 15.28.

i. Show me a mistress that is passing fair, | What doth her beauty serve,  
but as a note | Where I may read who pass'd that passing fair? SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, I, 240—242.

A man he was to all the country dear, | And passing rich with forty pounds  
a year. GOLD., *Des. Vil.*, 142.

ii. Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven.  
Bible, *Matth.*, V, 12.

Mr. Bromley guessed him to be in an exceeding ill-humour. MARJ. BOWEN,  
I will maintain, I, Ch. XI, 126.

β) The participle may be understood as either an adverb or an adjective in:

Susannah's glittering brown hair was blown across her brow. MARJ. BOWEN,  
*The Rake's Progress*, I, Ch. I, 13.

One of her fair hands lay among the glasses on the shining white cloth., *ib.*, 9.

25. Some present participles may assume the function of:

a) conjunctions, in this case often in connexion with *that*; thus *barring*, *being*, *considering*, *notwithstanding* *providing* (= *provided*), *saving*, *seeing*. For illustration see Ch. XVII, §§ 46, 71, 77, 91, 156.

I fancy we have had enough of Jerusalem, considering we are not descended  
from the Jews. HARDY, *Jude*, II, Ch. V, 129.

Barring that she seldom says a word about anything but the way the rheumatism  
has her tormented, her Irish is as good as you'd hear. BIRMINGHAM, *The Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. V, 122.

b) prepositions; thus *bating*, *barring*, *according (to)*, *concerning*,  
*considering*, *during*, *excepting* (= *excepted*, *except*), *failing*,  
*notwithstanding*, *pending*, *regarding*, *relating (to)*, *saving*, *touching*;  
also the phrases *setting aside*, *leaving (or putting) on one side*.  
For discussion and illustration see Ch. XX, §§ 4, 7, 9; also  
Ch. LX, 5—9.

26. Present participles often enter into combination with other words  
forming compounds with them, which are written in separation,  
with a hyphen or in combination, according to the closeness of  
the connexion. In many of these compounds the verbal principle  
is considerably or wholly obliterated.

a) with nouns, 1) in the objective relation. These compounds  
can be freely made of any suitable combination; they are,  
however, unfrequent in colloquial language. Thus we have a  
*pains-taking student*, a *God-fearing man*, *pleasure-seeking  
gentlemen*, *holiday-making youths*, a *shop-keeping nation*, the  
*wage-earning classes*, a *heart-piercing shriek*, a *heart-rending  
sensation*, an *epoch-making event*, etc. Further examples are to  
be found in:

She will not stay the siege of loving terms, | Nor bide the encounter of  
assailing eyes, | Nor ope her lap to saint-seducing gold. SHAK., *Rom. &  
Jul.*, I, I, 218—220.

There are stories going about him as a quill-driving alien. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*,  
IV, Ch. XXXVIII, 280.



Far as the portal-warding lion-whelp. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 98.

And on him fell, | Altho' a grave and staid God-fearing man, | Yet lying thus inactive, doubt and gloom. *ib.*, 112.

Mary Fitton's lecherous, change-loving temperament .. is not only ignored, but is transmuted into tender loyalty and devotion. FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shak.*, Ch. IV, 77.

Note a) Of a similar nature are compounds with words that are not primarily substantives, but have a substantival function, as in:

In those days there were pocket-boroughs .. a brawny and many-breeding pauperism, and other departed evils. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, Intr., 2.

The great majority are Dutch born and *Dutch speaking*. *Times*, No. 2003, 447 a.

Shakespeare is more like Marcus Aurelius than Goethe and Cervantes; but even Marcus Aurelius has not his all-pitying soul. FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shakespeare*, Ch. II, 20.

β) Some compounds are practically equivalent to present participle + object and are, accordingly, purely verbal.

It must have been Treherne who was tree-felling. J. M. BARRIE, *The Admir. Crichton*, II, 58. (= felling trees.)

2) in an adverbial relation. Although not, apparently, restricted to any particular adverbial relation, these compounds cannot be freely made and are met with only in literary language.

Home-keeping youth have ever homely wits. SHAK., *Two Gent.*, I, I, 2.

Who knows but this night-walking old fellow of the Haunted House may be in the habit of haunting every visitor. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 145).

Enoch's ocean spoil | In ocean-smelling osier. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 94.

And Enoch's comrade. careless of himself, | Fire-hollowing this in Indian fashion, fell, | Sun-stricken. *ib.*, 565.

A raw wind stirred the mass of night-cloud, and showed, as it slowly rose — leaving a colourless silver-gleaming ring, all round the horizon — not blue sky. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. V, 79.

Water-living creatures, which are always under water, wave the freely exposed gills by which they breathe in that water and extract the air dissolved in it. WELLS, *Outl. of Hist.*, I, IV, § 1, 16 a.

Plant now autumn-flowering bulbs. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7265, 22 a.

The English people, by losing their land, had been transformed into wage-earners, rural or town-dwelling. *Bookmann*, No. 316, 125 a.

b) with adverbs. These compounds can be freely formed of any suitable combination, but, save for certain fixed formations, such as *incoming*, *outgoing*, *outstanding*, *outlying*, etc. they are not particularly frequent and are chiefly met with in the higher literary style. The adverb may be one of:

1) place. He thrice had pluck'd a life | From the dread sweep of the down-streaming seas. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 55.

Until the forward-creeping tides | Began to foam. *id.*, *In Memoriam*, CIII, 37.

An English girl would not have told him that story in the same frank upstanding way. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, III, Ch. XVI, 328.

The outstanding event of the month at sea was the destruction of the Breslau. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 338, 88 a.

This great trunk cable once laid, branches still more closely connecting outlying portions of our dominions, will easily and naturally follow. *Times*, 1899, 264 *b*.  
The last two coaches of the incoming train were thrown off the rails. *11. Lond. News*, No. 3859, 450.

Their being put out of action now suggests far-reaching possibilities. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 338, 88 *b*.

Here we may also mention *foreign-going*, as in the following quotation, in which *foreign* may be understood as an adverb, i.e. as equivalent to *to foreign parts*.

You've been on foreign-going ships, then. *JACOBS. A Master of Craft*, Ch. I, 8 *b*.

2) time: Hedges, fields, and trees, hill and moorland presented to the eye their ever-varying shades of deep rich green. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 162.  
The seldom-frowning King frown'd. *TEN., Lanc. & El.*, 710.

Thus over Enoch's early-silvering head | The sunny and rainy season came and went | Year after year. *id., En. Ard.*, 618.

Before these lines appear in print, a long-standing injustice will have been finally removed. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 338, 90 *a*.

3) quality: Show a fair presence and put off these frowns, | An ill-beseeming semblance for a feast. *SHAK., Rom. & Jul.*, I, 5, 77.

A man of an easy-going disposition. *GORD. HOLMES, Silvia Craven*, 18.

The slow-moving figure of the chair-mender. *MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Progress*, Ch. IV, 41.

The finely-discriminating essay on Ben Jonson. *Bookman*, No. 316, 134 *b*.

4) degree: He is a convinced and thorough-going Imperialist. *Times*.

*c)* with adjectives or adjectival participles. The participles used in these compounds are, naturally, only such as have been formed from verbs that do duty as quasi-copulas (Ch. I, 5; Ch. LIX, 22). Only compounds with *looking* are at all frequent.

i. He was .. well-looking, though in an effeminate style. *DICK., Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 30 *a*. (uncommon, *good-looking* being the ordinary word to convey this sense; see Ch. LIX, 22 Note  $\beta$ ).

"Come in, d'y'e hear!" growled this engaging-looking ruffian. *id., Ol. Twist*, Ch. XLII.

He was a young-looking man. *id., Great Exp.*, Ch. XXIII, 224.

She is much too striking-looking. *EL. GLYN, The Reason Why*, Ch. XIV, 123.

Such a provoking-looking type of beauty as she was did not long leave the men of the party cold to her charms. *ib.*, Ch. XXI, 193.

She could not help ownfng to herself that he was extraordinarily distinguished-looking. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 149.

ii. Autumn .. comes when we remember nothing but clear skies, green fields and sweet smelling flowers. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 137.

Could it be that he was poor — at least, not well enough off to live at a good-sounding address. *TEMPLE THURSTON, City*, I, Ch. XVIII, 153.

He put on his cloak over his bright shining dress. *MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Progress*, Ch. III, 39. (*Bright* and *shining* may also be understood as two co-ordinate adjuncts.)

Note *a)* The following is a formation of which it would be difficult to find a parallel in Present English:

(He) won to his shameful lust | The will of my most seeming-virtuous queen. *SHAK., Ham I.*, I, 5, 46.

Also the participial compound in the following quotation is one of very rare occurrence:

Then slowly climb the many-winding way. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, XX.

β) When modified by *as* or *so*, a compound consisting of an adjective and a present participle is occasionally split up into its component parts, the indefinite article being placed between them. For similar formations with respectively past participles and adjectives in *ed* see 40, Obs. I and 43, Obs. V.

That, now to me, is as stern a looking rogue as ever I saw. SHER., *School*, IV, 1, (405).

I think it is as honest a looking face as any in the room. *ib.*, IV, 1.

Monstrous handsome young man that — as fine a looking soldier as ever I saw. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 115.

Another curious construction is that instanced by:

What sort of looking man is Mr. Martin? JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. IV, 28. T.

27. In conclusion we call attention to some interesting periphrastic equivalents of present participles:

a) such as are made up of the stem of the verb and the prefix *a*, the worn-down proclitic form of the Old-English preposition *on* (or *an*). Compare 6, Obs. VI—IX.

"In these compounds the word governed by *a* was originally a noun, e.g. *life*, *sleep*, *work*, *float*, but being often the verbal substantive of state or act, it has been in modern times erroneously taken as a verb, and used as a model for forming such adverbial phrases from any verb, as *a-wash*, *a-bask*, *a-swim*. *a-flaunt*, *a-blow*, *a-dance*, *a-run*, *a-stare*, *a-gaze*, *a-howl*, *a-tremble*, *a-shake*, *a-jump*. These are purely modern and analogical." MURRAY in *O. E. D.* s.v. *a*, prep., 11. MURRAY, calls these compounds adverbial: they are, however, mostly adnominal. Some of those mentioned above would seem to be of only rare occurrence. Why should these words, | Writ by her hand, so set my heart adance? BRIDGES, *Hum of the Court*, I, 707.

Fathers and sons agaze at each other's haggardness. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, VII, Ch. I, 114.

Here the monotonous round of life was already astir. MAUD DIVER, *Captain Desmond*, V. C., Ch. I, 10.

It (sc. Oxford) is a wholly congenial one (sc. environment) to Mrs. Ward .. athrob with causes never desperately forlorn. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7277, 16 b. With the above compare: Accordingly they were soon a-foot and walking in the direction of the scene of action. *Dick., Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 30.

b) such as are composed of a preposition and a noun, whether uniform or not with the stem of the verb, and preceded by either the definite or indefinite article, or standing without either. The word-groups may be passive in meaning, when the noun answers to a transitive verb.

1) word-groups with the preposition *at*, almost always without either article, invariably active in meaning. They can be freely formed, but only a few are in current use.

*at feed*: We may see rabbits out at feed on the young grass. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 2 c).

*at gaze*: Sue remained at gaze in painful tension, hearing every word, but speaking none. HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. III, 331.

*at play*: See if you can take it (sc. my handkerchief) out without my feeling it, as you saw them do, when we were at play this morning. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IX, 94.

*at study*: He was at study in the cell, or at prayer in the Church. WALDO H. DUNN, *Eng. Biogr.*, Ch. I, 17. (also *in study*.)

*at watch*: Old Gaffer Solomons who .. had been for the last ten minutes at watch on the threshold, shook his head and said [etc.]. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, III, Ch. XXV, 197. (more frequently *on the watch*.)

Some one was also at watch by that casement. *ib.*, I, VI, Ch. V, 373.

*at work*: The oldest and youngest are at work with the strongest. WORDSW., *A Morning in March*.

Note a) The following is the only instance with the noun preceded by the indefinite article that has come to hand:

We were going up a hill at the time and the mare was at a walk. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/10, 1924, 393 d.

β) The construction with the gerund, as in the following quotation, appears to be very rare:

When he is drunk, or in his rage, | Or in the incestuous pleasure of his bed; | At gaming, swearing, or about some act | That has no relish of salvation in't. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 3, 91.

2) word-groups with the preposition *in*, with the definite or indefinite article or, which is mostly the case, without either article (6, Obs. VI).

i. *in the fight*: Those who are in the fight need not professions and promises, but concrete and definite acts, before they can dream of laying down their arms. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7577, 2 a.

*in the wane*: It appears, by his (sc. the moon's) small light of discretion, that he is in the wane. SHAK., *Mids.*, V, 1, 254. (Modern English has *on the wane*.)

ii. *in a quiver*: Figs, all whose limbs were in a quiver, and whose nostrils were breathing rage, put his bottle-holder aside, and went in for the fourth time. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 45.

*in a roar*: The story .. was sure to set the table in a roar. R. ASHÉ KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. I, 4. (also *on a roar*.)

*in a tremble*: I am all in a tremble. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 4 a. (also *of a tremble*.)

iii. *in dispute*: France's greater claims are in dispute. *Manch. Guard.*, V, No. 24, 482 c.

*in expectation*: He was rather in expectation of hearing something of the kind. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIII, 438.

*in flight*: The Opposition are surprised to find the Government in flight before they brought up their guns. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8333, 4 a.

*in motion*: The reaper once more stoops to his work: the cart-horses have moved on, and all are again in motion. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 137.

*in preparation*: The most prominent object was a long table with a table-cloth spread on it, as if a feast had been in preparation, when the house and the clock all stopped together. *id.*, *Great Expect.*, Ch. XI, 102.

*in receipt*: If certain writers would regard journalism and authorship in a more business-like light than they usually do, they would soon find themselves in receipt of larger incomes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8121, 26 b.

*in rehearsal*: The comedy .. had been in rehearsal for a week. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, Ch. VIII, 66.

*in study*: He is always in study, and must not be disturbed. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VII, Ch. VIII, 453. (also *at study*.)

*in wear*: No one who has not experienced life on two dress-shirts — one in wear, the other in the wash — can quite understand what this will mean to me. PUNCH, No. 3811, 83a.

3) word-groups with the preposition *of*, always with the indefinite article, chiefly met with in colloquial language.

*of a flutter*: "Oh, my dear, Caractacus is jealous," says your aunt all of a flutter. AGN. and EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 133. (also *in a flutter*.)

*of a tremble*: I was all of a tremble: it was as if I'd been a coat pulled by the two tails, like. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. VI, 42. (also *in a tremble*.)

4) word-groups with the preposition *on*, occasionally *upon*, with the definite article or without either article. Those with the definite article, always active in meaning, are very frequent, especially in colloquial language; those without either article are often passive in meaning, i. e. when the noun answers to a transitive verb.

i. *on the boil*: It was singing now merrily .. a soft effervescent melody, something like that of a kettle on the boil. JOHN RUSKIN, *The King of the Golden River*, Ch. II.

*on the decline*: During the eighteenth century the influence of the Church of Rome was constantly on the decline. MAC., *Popes*, (562 b).

The malady is now pronounced to be on the decline. GRAPHIC, 1891, 542.

*on the drink and gamble*: Her brute of a husband was away on the drink and gamble. RID. HAG., *Jess.*, Ch. I, 6.

*on the increase*: The importance of the House of Commons was constantly on the increase. MAC., *Boswell's Life of Johns.*, (179 b).

Bee-keeping is declining, but silk-culture is greatly on the increase. HARMSWORTH ENCYCL., s.v. *Servia*. (Note the varied practice.)

*on the laugh*: "Of course you forgot him," said Osborne, still on the laugh. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 62.

*on the look-out*: Helen was on the look-out for this expected guest. id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 79.

*on the march*: Next morning we were on the march. BUCH., *Winter Night*, Ch. XIII, 102.

*on the move*: Everybody seemed to be busy, humming and on the move. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

*on the prowl*: He was on the prowl for what he could pick up. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, 15.

*on a roar*: Where be .. your flashes of merriment, that were wont to set the table on a roar. SHAK., *Hamlet*, V, 1, 210. (also *in a roar*.)

He was famous there in his student days for setting the table on a roar. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm., Introd.*, 21.

*on the turn*: Fine art is at a low ebb. But the tide is on the turn. R. H. PATTERSON, *Es. Hist. Art.*, 329.

*on the wane*: In every direction we find British influence on the wane. SAT. REV.

*on the watch*: The serpent was on the watch. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 309. (Compare *at watch*.)

*on the whimper*: Mrs. Mountain is constantly on the whimper when George's name is mentioned. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XII, 118.

ii. \* *upon drill*: I learned to hold my hands this way, when I was upon drill for the militia. GOLD., *She stoops*, II, (178).

*on exhibition*: The wonderful Pearl Carpet, now on exhibition at the Victoria and Albert museum. Graph.

*on offer*: To-night, therefore, sherry was on offer. E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 42.

\*\* *on strike*: Six hundred and fifty thousand railway workmen were on strike. Rev. of Rev., No. 191, 500*b*.

*on tour*: In a company that was nearly always on tour in those years, he could not have learned all that he did learn about the drama. Times, Lit. Sup., 990, 9*a*.

*on tramp*: The plan of the poem (sc. the Traveller) was conceived, and some of it was written, while Goldsmith was on tramp through Europe. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. XIV, 158.

Note. Sometimes the noun is preceded by a possessive pronoun; thus in:

Scopolamine (sc. a kind of drug) is still on its trial. Athen., No. 4567, 431*c*.

5) word-groups with the preposition *under*, always without either article and always passive in meaning.

*under construction*: The Workers' Home at Colon (is) under construction. Graph.

*under discussion*: His thoughts .. were occupied with other matters than the topics under discussion. Dick., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 3*a*.

*under study*: When he (sc. M. Herriot) came into power, he announced his intention of working for a settlement, and the question has since been continually under study. Manch. Guard., 31/10, 1924, 361*b* (= Dutch in studie.)

c) such as are composed of a preposition-phrase containing a noun + gerund, noun of action, or infinitive.

1) *in the act of* + gerund, varying with *in the act to* + infinitive, which seems to be unusual.

i. When her mother was in the act of brushing out the reluctant black crop, Maggie suddenly rushed from under her hands. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 20.

ii. She was in the act to turn away, as a tear dropped on his forehead. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. III, 21*a*.

Note. *To be in act* (+ infinitive) seems to be used only to represent an action as imminent or close at hand (Ch. L, 70, *b*).

(Atreides then) his massy lance prepares | In act to throw, POPE, *Iliad*, III, 349. (Thus frequently in POPE.)

Sprung from a race whose rising blood, | When stirr'd beyond its calmer mood, | And trodden hard upon, is like | The rattlesnake's in act to strike, | What marvel if this worn-out trunk | Beneath its woes a moment sunk? BYRON, *Mazeppa*, XIII.

(She) moved away, and left me, statue-like, | In act to render thanks. TEN., *Gard. Daught.*, 160.

He gazed so long | That both his eyes were dazzled as he stood, | This way and that dividing the swift mind, | In act to throw. id., *Morte d'Arthur*, 61.

2) *in course of* + noun of action. The meaning is always passive.

A corridor was in course of erection from the entrance to the Hall staircase, of gay red and buff bunting. HARDY, *Jude*, VI, Ch. XI, 510.

Not even .. the great Oxford English Dictionary, now in course of publication, can be implicitly trusted in matters of pronunciation. RIPPmann, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, 4, footnote.

3) *in process of*, followed by an active or a passive gerund, or by a noun of action, which may be either active or passive in meaning.

i. \* The Cape Colony is in process of revising its law affecting the use of the motor vehicle. *11. Lond. News*, No. 3866, 760 *a*.

Sir Edward Carson is in process of changing the whole conception of Ulster which has prevailed in England hitherto. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6341, 1 *b*.

\*\* Conscription, he explained, was in the process of being abolished, and it was always intended that it should pass away. *ib.*, No. 8144, 4 *b*. (The use of the article seems to be exceptional.)

ii. \* The enemy's rear-guards .. are in process of orderly withdrawal to a deliberately prepared alignment. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 101, 377.

\*\* A cowslip-ball was in process of manufacture. *DOR. GER., The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XXVI.

Mr. Asquith .. announced that a Coalition Government was in process of formation. *The New Age*, No. 1185, 73 *b*.

*d*) such as are composed of *busy (employed or engaged) + in + gerund*.

The German was busy in washing his hands. *LYTTON, Night & Morn.*, 129.

Mrs. Boxer was employed in trimming a cap. *ib.*, 291.

Two (sc. young gentlemen) .. were engaged in solving mathematical problems. *DICK., Domb.*, Ch. XII, 103.

### The Past Participle in Detail.

28. The past participle of practically all transitive verbs can be freely used attributively. There is no call for illustration of past participles when used to denote a physical or mental activity and, consequently, distinctly associated with some time-limitation (10). Nor is ample illustration of adjectival past participle greatly needed, examples being found in plenty in every page of prose or poetry. It will be found that in most of them there is only a remote association with the original meaning. In the majority of cases they indicate a quality that is the natural result of the activity indicated by the verb. The following illustration will be deemed sufficient:

*beaten*: But, in the beaten way of friendship, what make you at Elsinore? *SHAK., Hamlet*, II, 2, 279.

*chosen*: The avenue was a chosen place for secret meetings and stolen interviews. *MISS BRADDON, Audley*, I, Ch. I, 5.

*fixed*: The handsome lady regarded me with a fixed look. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. XII, 398 *a*.

*known*: He was .. selected by the Commander-in-Chief for the command of the regiment because of his known influence over the Sepoys. *Times*.

*stolen*: Our own was a stolen match. *GOLD., Good-nat. Man*, V.

29. Obs. I. When distinctly verbal in nature, the attributive past participle mostly has a momentaneous or resultative aspect, readily suggesting
- H. POUTSMA, III 1.

an adnominal clause with the predicate in the Unexpanded Form, either active or passive.

i. Edward stepped forward with his drawn sword in his hand. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVI, 283. (= the sword which he had drawn)

"Like her audacity!" so Netta had understood his muttered comment. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, Prol., Ch. II, 36.

ii. Lady Spratt had taken a discharged servant of Mrs. Leslie's without applying for her character. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, viii, Ch. V, 40. (= a servant who had been discharged.)

Not caring to go too near the door, until the appointed time, Mr. Pickwick crouched into an angle of the wall. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 145.

Sometimes, however, such a past participle is of a durative aspect, suggesting an adnominal clause with the predicate in the Expanded Form; thus in:

Heaven had placed her there for the safety and protection of the persecuted stranger. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVIII, 301. (= the stranger who was being persecuted.)

He caused one of his attendants to mount his own led horse. *id.*, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 22. (= his own horse which was being led.)

Ellen and I will seek, apart, | The refuge of some forest cell, | There, like the hunted quarry, dwell, | Till on the mountain and the moor, | The stern pursuit be pass'd and o'er. *id.*, *Lady*, II, XXIX, 24. (= the quarry which is being hunted.)

Two led horses, which in the field always closely followed his person, were struck dead by cannon shots. MAC., *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XX, 220.

II. The relation between the participle and the noun modified is not seldom one for which there is no parallel in the relation between any of the other forms of the verb and its object; thus in some combinations with:

*born*: He never was so delighted in his born days. RICH., *Pam.*, III, 383.<sup>1)</sup>

*confirmed*: The Englishman is a confirmed grumbler at the weather. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6240, 2a.

*destined*: The destined combatants returned no answer to this greeting. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIV, 358.

*dissipated*: Glaucus soon found himself amidst a group of merry and dissipated friends. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. VII, 29b.

*past*: Both are past-masters in the old diplomacy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7649, 1b.

III. Sometimes the participle has been formed from a verb of declaring, the word-group, participle + noun, corresponding to a nominative + infinitive or to an accusative + infinitive. The following participles have been found in this application:

i. *admitted*: The whole world is wondering at our stupidity in being thus misled by a man who is an admitted rebel. *Eng. Rev.*, No. III, 166. (= a man who is admitted to be a rebel.)

*alleged*: The hearing of the charge against the alleged conspirators at Pretoria has been postponed. *Times*. (= the men who are alleged to be conspirators.)

*reputed*: The Santa Casa is the reputed house of the Virgin Mary at Nazareth. COBH. BREW., *Read. Handb.*, s.v. *Loretto*. (= the house which is reputed to be the house etc.)

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.



ii. *avowed*: The former (sc. young man) is an avowed admirer of your ladyship. *SHER.*, *School*, I, 4, (364). (= a man who has avowed himself to be an admirer of your ladyship.)

*confessed*: He instantly arrested the confessed culprit. *Times*. (= the man who had confessed himself to be the culprit, *or* the culprit who had confessed.)

*declared*: Nor can I pretend to guess under what wicked delusion it is that you kiss a declared lover. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXV, 261. (= a man who has declared himself to be a lover.)

*professed*: Dryden generally exhibits himself in the light, if not of a professed misogynist, yet of one who delighted to gird at marriage. *SHAW*, *Eng. Lit.*, Ch. XII, 229. (Compare: I have professed me thy friend. *SHAK.*, *Oth.*, I, 3, 342; also: a professing misogynist = a man who is professing to be a misogynist (19, Note  $\beta$ ).

He was, moreover, aided by a professed female cook. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 231.

IV. What is denoted by a genitive or possessive pronoun modifying the head-word of an attributive past participle may in various ways be related to be verbal notion implied in the latter; thus especially in combinations with:

*appointed*: And out he went into the world, and toiled | In his own appointed way. *JOHN HAY*, *The Enchanted Shirt*, XIX. (= the way which he had appointed for himself.)

He had taunted the Tories with their appointed destiny of "stewing in Parnellite juice." *Times*. (= the destiny which was appointed for them.)

Before long matters may develop in such a manner that a British Ambassador may again be in his appointed place in Petrograd. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 338, 94a. (= the place to which he has been appointed.)

*decided*: Mrs. Sowerberry was his decided enemy. *DICK.*, *Ol Twist*, Ch. VI, 65. (= a person who had decided to be his enemy.)

*destined*: To restore her to her destined Husband. *STEELE*, *Tatler*, No. 58. (= the husband that was destined for her.)

However much he yearned to make complete | The tale of diamonds for his destined boon. *TEN.*, *Lanc. & El.*, 91. (= the thing which he destined to be the boon (to be offered to the Queen.)

*devoted*: They agreed with his devoted sister .. as to the prudence of keeping him out of England for a time. *MER.*, *Ormont*, Ch. II, 29 (= his sister who had devoted herself to him, i.e. who was strongly attached to him.)

*limited*: I'll make so bold to call, | For 'tis my limited service. *SHAK.*, *Macb.*, II, 3, 55. (= the service to which I have been limited, i.e. appointed.)

*meditated*: Wringing convulsively the hand of his meditated father-in-law, .. the ingenuous young suitor faltered forth [etc.]. *LYTTON*, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. XI, 414. (= the man whom he meditated making his father-in-law.)

*presumed*: Mr. Cross has voted twice with the Government for every time he has voted with his presumed friends. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5071, 1c. (= the members who were presumed to be his friends.)

*threatened*: He did not see his threatened foe. *MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *The Man born to be King*, 43a. (= the foe with (*or* by) whom he was threatened.)

V. The past participle sometimes seems to have the value of a present participle or, at least to be exchangeable for a present participle without much change of meaning (*ABBOT*, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 294); thus, apparently:

*brooded*, in: Then, in despite of brooded watchful day, | I would into

thy bosom pour my words. SHAK., King John, III, 3, 52. (= brooding day i. e.: day on which a man will be brooding.)

*curst*, in: Here she comes, curst and sad. id., Mids., III, 2, 439. (= cursing.)  
*disdain'd*, in: Yet time serves wherein, you may .. | Revenge the jeering and disdain'd contempt | of this proud king. id., Henry IV, A, I, 3, 183. (= disdaining *or, perhaps*, marked by disdain.)

*fatigued*, in: Do we not while away moments of inanity or fatigued waiting by repeating some trivial movement or sound? G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., I, Ch. II, 15. (= fatiguing waiting *or, perhaps*, waiting marked by fatigue.)

*ground*, in: "Away, harlot!" muttered Clodius between his ground teeth. LYTTON, Pomp., V, Ch. VI, 146*b*. (Compare: grinding teeth = grinders = molar teeth.)

*guiled*, in: Thus ornament is but the guiled shore | To a most dangerous sea. SHAK., Merch., III, 2, 97. (= guiling shore *or, perhaps*, shore full of guile.)

*hung*, in: With hung head and tottering steps she instinctively chose the shortest cut to that home. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XX, 216. (= hanging head.)

*threatened*, in: This had the effect of averting the threatened misfortune. SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. III, 36. (= threatening misfortune *or, perhaps*, misfortune with *or* by which he was threatened.)

At last he rose up from his bed, | That he might ponder how he best might keep | The threatened danger from so dear a head. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Son of Cræus, IV.

The threatened railway strike. Times, No. 1807, 662*d*

*transformed*, in: And, gentle Puck, take this transformed scalp | From off the head of this Athenian swain. SHAK., Mids., IV, 1, 67. (= transforming scalp *or, perhaps*, scalp with which he has been transformed.)

Observe also that *bent head* and *bending head* (the last the least usual) may have the same meaning, as appears from:

i. He walked to and fro in the room with bent head. FRANKF. MOORE, Jes. Bride, Ch. XVI, 140.

ii. The afternoon sun fell on her bending head. Mrs. GASK., Cous. Phil., II, 26.

Thus also *unbroken* and *unbreaking* (unusual) may express the same notion, as is shown by:

i. Scrooge .. could not help thinking that a night of unbroken rest would have been more conducive to that end. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 29.

ii. An old gentleman lying in a tiny room, .. his hands crossed upon his breast in unbreaking sleep. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. XVI, 356.

Conversely the transferring of the present participle from its proper subject may result in its assuming the value of a past participle; thus, apparently, in the case of:

*whispering*, in: I have seen the day | That I have worn a visor, and could tell | A whispering tale in a fair lady's ear. SHAK., Rom. & Jul., I, 5, 27.

VI. Some participles of transitive verbs have exchanged their passive for an active meaning in a pregnant sense; thus:

*cultivated*, as in *a cultivated man*, i. e. a man who has cultivated many acts and sciences, e. g.:

Happily there were others of quite another stamp; notably Colonel St. John, C. B., a genuine soldier and a cultivated man. MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter, II, Ch. I, 41.

*drunk*, as in *the man is drunk*, i. e. the man has drunk too much.

*drunken*, as in *a drunken man*, i. e. a man who has drunk too much.

*learned*, as in *a learned man*. i. e. a man who has learned much, and in *a learned society*, i. e. a society composed of learned men.

*mistaken*, as in *he is mistaken*, i. e. he has mistaken something, and in *the mistaken multitude*, i. e. the multitude which is made up of people who have mistaken something.

*practised*, as in *a practised man*, i. e. a man who has practised something very much; e. g.:

expert(n) = an expert, skilful, or practised person. WEBST., Dict.

The practised eye of Clive could perceive that both the men and the horses were more powerful than those of the Carnatic. MAC., Clive, (518*b*).

*read*, as in *he is read in the classics*, i. e. he has read much in the classics.

Thus also the archaic *drawn*, as in *he is drawn*, i. e. he has drawn his sword, e. g.:

Why are you drawn? SHAK., Temp., II, 1, 308.

VII. Sometimes, especially in SHAKESPEARE, we find past participles with the value of adjectives in *able* or *ible*. Compare ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 375; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 662.

Inestimable stones, unvalued jewels. Rich. III, 1, 4, 27. (— invaluable.)

All unavowed is the doom of destiny. ib., IV, 4, 217. (= unavoidable.)

With all imagined speed. Merch., III, 4, 52. (= imaginable.)

You have displaced the mirth, broke the good meeting, | With most admired disorder. Macb., III, 4, 110. (= admirable, in the now obsolete sense of *to be wondered at*, as in: But howsoever, strange and admirable. Mids., V, 1, 27.)

Thus also, perhaps, the participles in:

Full many a gem of purest ray serene, | The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear. GRAY, Elegy, XIV.

Mary was an easily satisfied little person. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 89.

Conversely (*un*)*comfortable* has rather an active than a passive meaning (Ch. XLVII, 48, Obs. III).

(There was a fire) piled half-way up the chimney, and roaring and crackling with a sound that of itself would have warmed the heart of any reasonable man. This was comfortable, but this was not all. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 120. This was an uncomfortable coincidence. id., Cop., Ch. V, 35.

Observe also that *irritable* does not mean merely *capable of being irritated*, but *excessively capable of being irritated*.

30. Comparatively unusual is the attributive use of the past participle of verbs that govern a prepositional object. In this application the preposition is regularly retained. Such a word-group is, indeed, frequently enough found after its head-word, but in this position it is felt as (a constituent of) an undeveloped clause. Some attributive word-groups of the above description, especially such as are furnished with the negating prefix *un*, are frequent enough (33). As the attributive past participle may be modified by an adverb of quality (in *ly*), it is evident that it is largely felt as a verb; see the last of the following quotations:

Then there were the much-talked-of perils of the Tappaan-zee. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 124).

He heard his dear and his doted-on Mary Anne say...: "Do you think I could care anything for that lame boy?" LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 14*a*. Was he not the most brilliant and most sought-after young man in all England? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XI, 97.

They were content to pay the European trader the agreed-upon price. WESTM. GAZ., 6483, 7*a*.

The longed-for just and democratic peace. REV. OF REV., No. 338, 93*a*.

It is certainly probable that the more tenderly cared-for child of to-day may grow up stronger than the inhabitants of the crowded Victorian nursery. MANCH. GUARD., VIII, 14, 275*c*.

31. Among the subjective verbs (Ch. XLV, 20) it is only some of the mutatives (Ch. XLV, 16, *b*) whose part participle admits of being used attributively. In the majority of cases the verbal features are fairly prominent; thus in:

*assembled*: (He) was shortly afterwards elected, by the unanimous voice of the assembled company, into the tap-room chair. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 139.

*deceased*: They were contented to wish success to the son of a deceased presbyterian leader. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. III, 30. T.

He lived in chambers which had once belonged to his deceased partner. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

*departed*: Their talk was often about the departed mother. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 321.

*escaped*: Nobody thought for a moment that he was the escaped convict, about whom such a stir had been made. TIT-BITS.

*faded*: The fields with faded flowers did seem to mourn. SPENSER, *Colin Clout*, 27.

*fallen*: The fallen and unfortunate King of France. DICK., *Two Cities*, III, Ch. I, 276.

*foregone*: The result was a foregone conclusion. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, 37.

*mouldered*: A moulder'd church. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 4.

*retired*: He was a retired servant, with a large family come to him in his old age. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 82.

*returned*: What would he say to the returned convict? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 52.

*travelled*: The phenomenon of travelled or perched blocks is also a common one in all glacier countries. WALLACE, *Isl. Life*, VII, 106.<sup>1)</sup>

In the following participles, however, it is rather a quality than a state as the result of an activity that is referred to:

*shrunk*: He had rather a shrunken appearance. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. IV, 154.

The Act as passed was but a shrunken image of its earlier inspiring form. MANCH. GUARD., VIII, 14, 263*d*.

*sunk*: The sunk corners of her mouth. HARDY, *Tess*, V, Ch. XXXVI, 314.

*sunken*: He met her gaze with those yearning, sunken eyes. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, 266.

*travelled*: Like many a travelled man, (he) was not master of the English language. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob* Ch. III.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

Note *a*) It should be distinctly understood that the attributive use of the past participles of mutative verbs is anything but a free one. Thus such combinations as \**a come guest*, \**the started train*, \**the arrived passengers*, etc. are impossible. Observe that, although the attributive use of *deceased* is quite common, that of the strictly synonymous *died* is impossible.

*β*) Apart from such compounds as *well-behaved*, *plain-spoken*, etc., for which see 39, *b*, 2, the attributive use of the past participle of non-mutative subjective verbs appears to be non-existent.

*γ*) In such a construction as *Mr. Jones deceased*, (*retired*, etc.) the past participle is best understood as an undeveloped clause.

32. Obs. I. Sometimes the attributive past participle corresponds to a reflexive verb, or to an intransitive that goes back to a reflexive verb; thus in:

Where is this perjured dancing girl of yours? ANSTEY, *A Fallen Idol*, Prol., 14. (from *to perjure oneself*.)

Acting on information volunteered by a surrendered Boer, Captain Valentine left Pretoria this evening for the purpose of capturing a large herd of cattle. TIMES. (from *to surrender (oneself)*.)

II. The predicative use of past participles of subjective verbs appears to be even more limited than the attributive, being extended to only a few mutatives. Only the following instances have come to hand. It will be observed that they are practically pure adjectives.

*shrunk*: Sir Henry came pottering in — oh, so shrunk in appearance. SARAH GRAND, *Our Man*. Nat., 31.

*sunken*: His cheeks were sunken and his eyes unnaturally large. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIX, 237a.

The predicative use of past participles of non-mutative subjective verbs, as that of *bathed* in the following quotation, seems to be very rare:

His valet-butler found him already bathed and ready for a cup of tea at half past seven. WELLS, *The Soul of a Bishop*, 89.

33. Derivatives with the negating prefix *un* are freely formed from most adjectival past participles corresponding to objective verbs.

i. Religion! what treasure untold! Resides in that heavenly word! COWPER, *Alex. Selk.*, IV.

The house was several centuries old, with a long unbroken family history. SARAH GRAND, *Our Man*. Nat., 31.

White as the driven unsullied snow. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*.

ii. One Saturday afternoon, at dusk, great consternation was occasioned in the Castle by the unlooked-for announcement of Mr. Dombey as a visitor. DICK., *Dombey*, Ch. XI, 94.

Where was he to date from? Not from home, or the unheard-of arrival of letters there would arouse suspicion. JOHN OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler*. If, after all, the unlooked-for son should be born, the money would have been thrown away. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XV, 236.

Dodo discovered that it (sc. the hut) was undwelled in. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. X, 169.

Note. Participles with the negating *un* that correspond to subjective verbs appear to be very rare. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

My heart untravell'd fondly turns to thee. GOLDSMITH, *Trav.*, 8.

34. Obs. I. Quite frequently we find these derivatives with negating *un* followed by a *by*-adjunct with the inverted subject, evidently on the strength of the verbal force which is felt to dwell in them.

i. The board was uncovered by a cloth. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. III, 24.

Thou merry, laughing sprite! | With spirits feather-light, | Untouched by sorrow and unsoiled by sin. THOM. HOOD, *Parental Ode*.

A secluded region, untrodden as yet by tourist or landscape painter. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. II, 10.

She thought herself unloved by him. RICH. BAGOT, *The Just and the Unjust*, II, Ch. II, 43. T.

The arrival of the Force was quite unexpected by the public. *Times*, No. 1972, 1 a.

ii. And to this end (he) | Had made the pretext of a hindering wound, | That he might joust unknown of all TEN., *Lanc. & E.L.*, 581.

II. Also when no such *by*-adjunct follows, the verbal force may stand forth quite distinctly in such a derivative.

She had sat the whole evening through in the same chair without occupation, not speaking, and unspoken to. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. VI, 80.

35. The ordinary intensives of adjectives may also be found before adjectival past participles; thus:

*more*: I do not believe that our more travelled novelists have gained anything from their explorations which has put them on a footing with the stay-at-home artist. *Westm. Gaz.*, 165, 1925, 85 c.

*most*: "Goldsmith", says Thackeray, "is the most loved of all authors." R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. XIII, 153.

Home Rule and the Insurance Act . . remain the most talked-of subjects in the contest. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 2 b.

*rather*: The tenth anniversary of the Tariff-Reform movement . . was kept in a rather chastened mood by the stalwarts of the movement. *ib.*, No. 6228, 1 c.

*so*: Our study is better than ever this year — faces the South with two huge windows — and oh! so furnished. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 164.

*very*: It may well be supposed that men who wrote thus to each other, were not very guarded in what they said to each other. MAC., *Fred.*, (691 b). He had a large, sallow, ugly face, very sunken eyes, and a gigantic head. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 140.

This is a very interrupted letter. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 42.

Note a) Also *much*, which is now rarely found before ordinary adjectives (Ch. XL, 95, Note), is sometimes met with before certain adjectival past participles (Ch. LIX, 76).

So said the Harold Smithians, much elated. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 192,

I hope you're not much tired. LEW. CARROLL, *Through the Looking-Glass*, Ch. IV, 71. (a rare combination.)

β) Like adjectival present participles (22, Note), adjectival past participles are but rarely found in the terminational superlative. Instances of the terminational comparative appear to be still rarer.

i. Good fortune then! | To make me blest or cursed'st among men. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, I, 47.

There never were such times for the working-classes, and to recommend thrift to them as the blesseddest of virtues. *The New Statesman*, No. 96, 433 a.

The staidest opinions have modified or seek correction. Eng. Rev., No. 103, 544 *a*.

ii. We couldn't see a thing, and then I got lost and lost. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. X, 4, 261.

36. Some adjectival past participles, when used predicatively, may take a prepositional object, like many ordinary adjectives; thus: *bathed*: We found Ned panting and bathed in perspiration. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

(*un*)*broken*: The nation, unbroken to such servitude, began to struggle fiercely. MAC., *Hist.*

*crammed*: The book is crammed with matter, but never burdened with it. Bookman, No. 316, 123 *b*.

*confirmed*: Cicero never spoke better. Once more, and you are confirmed in assurance for ever. GOLDS., *She stoops*, II, (189).

*known*: Somerset was very little known to the public. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. VIII, 98. (The use of *known by*, as in the following quotation, seems to be less usual: Two women whom he loved and injured are known by every reader of books so familiarly that, if we had seen them, or if they had been relatives of our own, we scarcely could have known them better. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, I, 41. T. Compare, however, 34, Obs. I.)

*learned*: Sharp practitioners learned in the wiles of insolvency and bankruptcy. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 30 *b*.

*read*: I did not think you had been read in these matters. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 4, (255).

He is deeply read in the writers, ancient and modern, who have treated on the subject. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, No. 21, 194.

37. Many past participles are not unfrequently converted, either totally or partially, into nouns (Ch. XXIX, 18).

i. Some day she would .. come back — to those beloveds who had given her up — so tenderly. Mrs. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. VII, 189. The Prison Chaplain entered the condemned's cell for the last time. Westm. Gaz., No. 4983, 9 *a*.

ii. \* It was at once our duty and privilege .. to raise the fallen, seek the lost and restore the outcast. Mrs. WOOD, *The Channings*, Ch. I, 3. . The self-taught are keen and quick observers. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VII, Ch. VII, 449.

We justified our conquest to ourselves by taking away the character of the conquered. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 43.

\*\* I file into the old pew first, like a guarded captive brought to a condemned service. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 26 *b*. (i.e. a service held for the condemned.) To the Allied cause the situation is more than hopeful. Eng. Rev., No. 74, 193. (i.e. the cause of the Allied.)

\*\*\* Ourselves will hear | The accuser and the accused freely speak. SHAK., *Rich.* II, I, I, 17.

Would God's anointed, accountable to God alone, pay homage to the clamorous multitude? MAC., *Bacon*, (380 *a*).

38. Some past participles may assume the function of prepositions (Ch. LX, 8); thus those in:

It's gone half past six. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. III, 50.

Things past redress are now with me past care. SHAK., *Rich.* II, II, 3, 171.

'Tis now struck twelve. *id.*, *Hamlet*, I, I, 7.

Now she knows she's to be married, turned Michaelmas. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, II, Ch. XVII, 132.

**Note.** *Provided* seems to be only past participle that may assume the function of a conjunction. It is, however, mostly followed by the conjunction *that*, which confers on it the character of a preposition. Compare Ch. XVII, 71 and Ch. XX, 8. In this place it may be observed that it is sometimes either preceded or followed by *always*, in like manner as the Dutch *mits* is sometimes connected with *altijd*.

i. Now my idea is that, if Englishmen advance the money for railway construction and other work, a certain proportion of the English money thus lent should be spent in buying English goods — always provided, of course, that we can supply them as cheap and good as any of our competitors. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 369 *b*.

ii. He therefore informed them that he should not take it ill of them if they made their peace with the dynasty, provided always that they were prepared to rise in insurrection as soon as he should call upon them to do so. *Mac., Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 1.

The question is likely to drag on for many months, provided always that Mr. Redmond can be induced to believe that Mr. Asquith is not playing with him. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5243, 16 *c*.

39. Past participles enter into combination with various other parts of speech, forming compounds with them in which the verbal principle appears in various degrees of prominence. Partly depending on this and partly also in harmony with the supposed closeness of the connexion, these compounds are written in separation, with a hyphen, or in combination.

a) with nouns, the participle corresponding to 1) a transitive verb. The noun stands in some adverbial relation to the verb, mostly one of agency. Although these compounds can be freely formed of any suitable combination, they are not common in colloquial language:

i. But Enid fear'd his eyes, | Moist as they were, wine-heated from the feast. *TEN., Ger. & En.*, 351.

A luckier and a bolder fisherman | .. did not breathe | For leagues along that breaker-beaten coast. *id., En. Ard.*, 51.

The level rays poured dazzling between the tree-tunks; turning the dust-ridden air into a mist of dusky gold. *E. F. BENSON, Arundel*, Ch. I, 7.

The bank sloped away to a stream crossed by a moss-covered bridge. *MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Progress*, Ch. II, 17.

I believe he's spent his first few years in some God-forsaken hole, *MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter*, II, Ch. II, 51.

The railways are State-owned. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6435, 2 *a*.

ii. Helen Pendennis was a country-bred woman. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 81.

The master of that ship | Enoch had served in .. | Came .. | Reporting of his vessel China-bound. *TEN., En. Ard.*, 122.

His pore (= poor) mother, not being a Scripture-read woman, made a mistake at his christening. *HARDY, Madding Crowd*, Ch. X, 91.

Tongue-tied timidity is the best proof of sincerity. *FRANK HARRIS, The Women of Shak.*, Ch. III, 238.

2) a subjective verb. Instances are distinctly uncommon. The two last of the following examples are but remotely suggestive of a verbal idea:

No busy steps the grass-grown footway tread. *GOLDS., Des. Vil.*, 127.



He extended both hands to the home-come warrior. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XIX, 238.

There was, not a shade of difference between .. the learned Scribes and the world-travelled warriors. CHESTERTON, (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3373, 48c).

If I was not clever and book-learned myself, it was something to belong to some one who was. MRS GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, II, 28.

Note. In this place mention may be made of compounds consisting of *self* + past participle. In them *self* may be apprehended as a substantival word standing in various relations to the participle. *Self-made* is a very common example.

He had been presumptuous and silly and self-deceived before. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LV, 453.

Helen says you are self-taught. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VII, Ch. XIX, 489.

Regularly, every morning after he had finished his breakfast she performed her self-appointed task. JACK LONDON, *The Call of the Wild*, Ch. IV, 123.

b) with adverbs, the participle corresponding to 1) a transitive verb. The adverb may be one of a) quality. Such compounds can almost be formed ad libitum. See, for example, the numerous compounds with *ill* in the O. E. D., s. v. *ill*, 7.

An ill-advised and unfortunate insurrection. WORDSWORTH.

You are an honest man, and well-affected to our family. LYTTON, *Eug. Ar.*, Ch. IX, 60.

The influence of the season seems to extend itself to the very waggon, whose slow motion across the well-reaped field is perceptible only to the eye. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 137.

There were a few well-disposed natives who saw them and were sorry for them. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 187.

Nor can I ever be persuaded that the so-called hardening is necessary in a world which .. requires softening down rather than stiffening up. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 113, 343.

Tennyson pieces exquisitely-observed detail into a delicately-wrought picture. *Bookman*, No. 316, 122 b.

β) degree: He saw the Jew with his half-closed eyes. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IX, 89.

The street of labour before the war was a street of starvation — of badly-fed women and underfed children. *The New Statesman*, No. 250, 372 a.

γ) place: He came up with outstretched hand. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 321.

He exhorted them to show their inbred superiority as Dorians. GROTE, *Greece*, V, 237,

Jane arrested her with an odd, shy motion like that of an out-flung claw. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. I, 117.

δ) time: Local tales and superstitions thrive best in these sheltered long-settled retreats. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 365.

This is, perhaps, the reason why we seldom hear of ghosts, except in our long-established Dutch communities. *ib.*

It is not our purpose to describe this oft-travelled tour. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIX, 199.

The "Ode to Psyche" was not .. the last-composed, but the first of the five famous Odes. *Bookman*, No. 316, 122 b.

But if it was the earliest-composed [etc.]. *ib.*

For the numerous compounds with *new* and *newly* see Ch. LIX, 33, b.

Such a construction as that illustrated by the following quotations appears to be a mere nonce-formation:

The master told me to light a fire in the many-weeks-deserted parlour. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XIII, 69 *b*.

She that ever kept | The one-day-seen Sir Lancelot in her heart. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 742.

2) a subjective verb. Instances are not very common, being almost confined to certain fixed combinations, especially such with *behaved* and *spoken*, which are fairly numerous. See also Ch. LIX, 33, *b*.

i. A very pretty-behaved gentleman. SHER., *Riv.*, 5, 1, (275).

Hussy = an ill-behaved woman or girl. WEBST., *Dict.*

David was very well-behaved to his mother. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I.  
Lord Roberts declares that he has the best-behaved army in the world. *Times*.

I don't consider myself at all a badly-behaved woman. SHAW., *Overruled* (*Eng. Rev.*, No. 54, 182). (Compare: Some rich peasants in a village in Brunswick used to meet at the village inn about the time well-conducted people entered the church. STOF., *Handl.*, 1, 58.)

ii. She is a civil, pretty-spoken child. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. I, 9.

The Captain .. was at least a civil-spoken gentleman. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, III, Ch. X, 161.

Mrs. Hazelden, though an excellent woman, was rather a bluff, plain-spoken one. *ib.*, I, III, Ch. XIII, 171.

He's a nice, fair-spoken, pretty young man. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 64.

A free-spoken young man. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, II, 73.

Thus also *outspoken*, as in: She had always been remarkably frank and outspoken. EDNA LYALL, *Two*, I, 43.

iii. Again the long-fallen column sought the skies. GOLDS., *Trav.*, 136.

"I must have gone about the world with closed eyes," was the remark of a well-travelled man after he had completed only half the Course. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 111.

Note *a*) In some compounds the adverb stands after the participle; thus in *grown-up*, as in:

Those years of too early and too heavy toil .. made her (sc. Octavia Hill) prematurely grown-up. *Athen.*, No. 4463, 515 *b*.

$\beta$ ) Sometimes the compound contains two adverbs.

Shelley's "Hymn to Intellectual Beauty" is more long-drawn-out. *Bookman*, No. 316, 123 *a*.

c) with adjectives, 1) such as denote a place of origin.

The foreign-born resident of a country. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *alien*.

The great majority are Dutch-born and Dutch-speaking. *Times*, No. 2003, 447 *a*.

Note. In some combinations of a similar nature the origin-denoting word is rather adverbial than adnominal (Ch. LIX, 24, *a*); thus in:

She was a stout, round, Dutch-built vessel. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, 1, 84).

The Opposition propose a Canadian-built and Canadian-manned navy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6161, 1 *b*.

American-made boots; foreign-manufactured goods. *Times*.

British subjects and British-protected subjects are known to have been carried off to the slave markets. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/5. 1925, 74 *c*.

As in Egypt and India, the lead seems to be taken by western-educated students. *ib.*, 13/6, 1925, 176 *b*.

2) Such as denote the result of the action implied in the participle.

Thou sure and firm-set earth, | Hear not my steps, which way they walk. SHAK., *Mac b.*, II, 1, 56.

Clean-shaven was he as a priest. LONGF., *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, *Prel.*

He purchased a sufficiency of ready-dressed ham. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VIII, 82.

His small bundle of clothes was ready-packed. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. 1.

Observe that *cooked and ready* stands by way of hendiadys for *ready-cooked* in:

All the time there's dinner cooked and ready for him. RICH. BAGOT, *Darnely Place*, I, Ch. II, 19.

40. Obs. I. When modified by such adverbs of degree as *as* and *so*, the component parts of the compound are occasionally separated by the indefinite article. See especially A. SCHMIDT, *Shak., Lex.*, I. For similar constructions with present participles and adjectives in *ed* see, respectively, 26, *c*, Note  $\beta$ ); and 43, Obs. V.

There's no man is so vain | That would refuse so fair an offer'd chain. SHAK., *Com. of Er.*, III, 2, 186

I hold myself as well a born man as thyself. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XV, 140.

II. Sometimes two past participles connected by *and*, forming a kind of semantic unit, are placed attributively before a noun.

He would certainly have struck a stranger as a born-and-bred gentleman. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XIV, 75 *b*.

There are apartments at the Bank where a born-and-bred lady, as keeper of the place, would be rather a catch than otherwise. DICK., *Hard Times*, I, Ch. XVI, 47 *b*.

Their speculative faculties seem only to be able to run into cut-and-dried channels. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XII, 109.

A similar formation is *dead-and-gone*, in which *dead* has the value of an adjectival participle.

The rather stout lady was no other than the quondam relict and sole executrix of the dead-and-gone Mr. Clarke. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 240.

### The Participles compared with Allied Forms.

41. Attributive present participles are distinguished from attributive gerunds by being differently stressed: word-groups with the former having double stress (often called level or even stress), those with the latter having strong stress on the gerund and weak stress on the head-word. Thus *falling sickness* (= illness in which the patient falls) has double stress, while *training college* has strong stress on *training* and weaker stress on *college*. In some cases the nature of the verbal in *ing* in these combinations is uncertain, causing the stressing of the word-group to be variable; thus, for example, *reforming days*,

*retiring pension, working man.* For further discussion and illustration see Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. VII; and Ch. LVI, 15. Compare also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2338; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 73; and especially KRUIS., Handb.<sup>4</sup>, § 589.

42. Attributive past participles should not be confounded with adjectives derived from nouns by means of the suffix *ed*, such as *aged, crooked, gifted, skilled, talented*, etc.

Thus also *stringed*, as in *stringed instruments*, which is sometimes, erroneously, given as a variant of the participle *strung*. But *bended*, as in *on his bended knees*, is a real participle; in Middle English it was largely superseded by *bent* (O. E. D., s. v. *bended*).

In the above formations the suffix is distinctly used in the sense of *possessing, provided with, characterized by* (whatever is expressed by the preceding word or word-group). This meaning is considerably weakened or irre recognizable in certain words similarly formed, such as *bigoted, crabbed, dogged* (O. E. D., s. v. *ed*, suffix, 2).

Some forms in *ed* admit of a two-fold interpretation; i. e. they may be apprehended as adjectives derived from nouns by means of the suffix *ed*, or as past participles of verbs which are derived from nouns; thus those in:

I found this a limited source of information. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. I, 21. There were great, round, pot-bellied baskets of chestnuts, shaped like the waistcoats of jolly old gentlemen. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III. (best understood as formed from the noun *shape*.)

From earliest times the Waganda have been a clothed people. GRAPH., No. 2281, 962 *b*.

*Sweated*, as in *sweated operatives, sweated trades, sweated industries*, etc., described in the O. E. D. as a participial adjective (ppl. a.), is best regarded as a derivative of the noun *sweat*, the ordinary, if not the only, form of the past participle of the verb being *sweat*.

Sometimes there is an adjective with the prefix *be*, similarly furnished with the adjective-forming suffix *ed*, mostly adding to the notion referred to above that of surrounding, covering or bedaubing (O. E. D., s. v. prefix *be*, 6). Also these forms can in some cases be regarded as participles, but only when there is a verb with the prefix *be* used in all the forms of an ordinary verb. When, however, there are no such variations, the form *ed* is best considered as an adjective. The O. E. D., accordingly, somewhat misses the point in observing that "some are used only in the passive voice". Instances are not particularly frequent and seem to be confined to literary prose, where they are chiefly used to impart a mocking, half-humorous, tinge to the sentence.

Mrs. Farebrother, the vicar's white-haired mother, befrilled and kerchiefed with dainty cleanliness [etc.]. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, II, Ch. XVII, 123.

In the highroad he saw a man he knew, a member of his club, top-hatted and befrocked. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, Ch. XI, 79.

He was in a state of befogged memory. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XVII, 204.

Encouraged by certain be-monocled war-correspondents, they picture us all grouped round Salonica. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8179, 11 *a*.

43. Obs. I. Adjectives formed from nouns by means of the suffix *ed* are very common, may, indeed, be freely formed of practically any noun of a material meaning. Only a limited number, however, have found general currency. Thus *a chimneyed house, a stoved room, a hatted man*, and a host of other such formations, would hardly be tolerated. Some writers have, indeed, found occasion to exclaim in rather strong terms against the free coining of such adjectives. Thus JOHNSON, commenting on GRAY's poetry, writes, "There has of late arisen a practice of giving to adjectives, derived from substantives, the termination of participles; such as *the cultured plain*, . . . but I was sorry to see, in the lines of a scholar like Gray, *the honeyed spring*." See also COLERIDGE in *Table-Talk*, 171; DEAN ALFORD in *The Queen's English*, §§ 218—219.

Among the following examples, taken partly from prose, partly from verse, some may be regarded as nonce-formations.

*estated*: Thus young Pen, the only son of an estates country gentleman, looked to be a lad of much more consequence than he was really. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

*honeyed*: He had not the self-command necessary for addressing his brother with a sufficiently honeyed accent. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jacob*, Ch. I.

*ivied*: Many a night from yonder ivied casement, ere I went to rest, | Did I look on great Orion sloping slowly to the west. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 7.

*stockinged*: Dixon, creeping past the door of the sick-room on his stockinged feet, could hear the moaning. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. IV, 93.

*storied*: Can storied urn or animated bust | Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath? GRAY, *Elegy*, 41.

It (sc. Windsor Castle) is a place full of storied and poetical associations. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, X, 82.

*verandahed*: The verandahed bungalow. GALSW., *Beyond*, Ch. VI, 275.

*walled*: Brick houses with walled gardens behind them. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. III, 64.

*window'd*: Within a window'd niche of that high hall | Sate Brunswick's fated chieftain. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, III, xxiii.

II. Like ordinary adjectives, these forms in *ed* may take the negating prefix *un*; thus:

*uncarpeted*: They descended the flights of uncarpeted wooden stairs and passed outside the door. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, Ch. XVI, 122.

*ungifted*: Do you think I am absolutely ungifted that way? *ib.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 154.

*unharboured*: She that has that (sc. chastity), is clad in complete steel, | And like a quiver'd nymph with arrows keen | May trace huge forests, and unharbour'd heaths. MILTON, *Comus*, 423.

III. Also such compounds as *clear-headed, good-natured, kind-hearted, strong-minded*, etc., in which an adjective and a noun are welded together by the adjective-forming *ed*, are very numerous and frequent, and can be made of practically any suitable combination.

*even-handed*: This is the even-handed dealing of the world. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II.

*plain-fronted*: A creepered, plain-fronted little brick house. GALSW., *Beyond*, Ch. X, 227.

*single-handed*: The Russian Democracy in its single-handed struggle with Prussian Junkers. Rev. of Rev., No. 338, 93 a.

Accumulated formations of the above type in one and the same sentence are not seldom affected for stylistic effect.

The captain was splendid in person and raiment; fr  sh-coloured, blue-eyed, black-whiskered, broad-chested [etc.]. THACK., Pen d., I, Ch. XXII, 228.

When the adjective forms a kind of compound with the noun, the adjective in *ed* may also be apprehended to be formed direct from this compound (Ch. LIX, 33, b). This interpretation may be put upon *good-natured*, *good-humoured* and, not improbably, upon many more such compounds, as the following examples may show:

Miss Laura's face was blaming with pleasure and good-nature. THACK., Pen d., I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

The Major was in high good-humour. ib., I, Ch. XXXVI, 386.

γ) Combinations with *half*, *double*, *triple*, such as *half-hearted* (cf. *whole-hearted*), *double-edged*, etc., may be included among these formations. These also can be freely coined of any suitable combination. This is shown by such words as:

*half-breakfasted*: I always say a half-breakfasted man is no good. GALSW., The Country House, I, Ch. II, 20.

*triple-proofed*: Winton was triple-proofed against betrayal of feeling. id., Beyond, I, Ch. I, 10.

δ) The above compounds should be distinguished from those in which an adjective in *ed* derived from a noun is modified by an adverb, as in *well-intentioned*, *well-mannered*, etc., which are, evidently, formed on the analogy with *ill-intentioned*, *ill-mannered*, in which *ill* may be understood as an adjective.

"Count, Count," screamed Mrs. Leo Hunter to a well-whiskered individual in a foreign uniform, who was passing by. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XV, 133.

Miss Mary — a well-looking, well-meant and, on the whole, well-dispositioned girl — wore her complacency with some taste. CH. BRONT  , Shirley, I, Ch. VII, 145.

He went as a well-natured dog goes for a walk with its mistress. GALSW., To let, Ch. I, (911).

ε) When there is a verb uniform with a noun, it is difficult to tell whether in these compounds the suffix *ed* is a verbal (i. e. participial) or an adjectival formative; thus, for example in the case of *beautifully-coloured*, *well-conducted*, *well-shaped*.

Shakespeare .. was himself, not only handsome and well-shaped, but very gentle and courteous, with most ingratiating manners. FRANK HARRIS, The Women of Shak., Ch. I, 3.

Fiorsen stared fixedly at that perfectly-shaped face. GALSW., Beyond, III, Ch. IX, 301.

Compare: He had a queer-shaped little deal box fastened across his shoulders. LEW. CARROLL, Through the Looking-Glass, Ch. VIII, 162.

The uncertain nature of the suffix *ed* is also responsible for the fact that the language sometimes has two kinds of compounds, one with an adverb and one with an adjective. Thus we meet with *well-sized* and *good-sized* (the ordinary word). Thus also we find *absent-minded*, *high-minded*, *noble-minded*, *strong-minded*, etc. by the side of *cruelly-*

*mind*ed, *justly-mind*ed, *cheerfully-mind*ed, etc., the latter compounds being comparatively rare.

For comment on and illustration of these and many other similar formations see especially JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.34 ff.

5) There is no difficulty in distinguishing the above compounds, in which one of the constituents is a noun, or may be understood as a noun, from such as are made up of an adverb + participle, e.g.: *ill-bred*, *well-bred*, *ill-advised*, etc. discussed higher up (39, b). It may, however, be observed that in the compounds *long-lived* and *short-lived*, made up of an adjective and a noun *live* (for *life*) + *ed*, the form *lived* is often, erroneously, apprehended as a participle and, consequently, mispronounced as the past participle of the verb *to live* (O. E. D., s. v. *long-lived* and *short-lived*).

IV. On the plan of such compounds as *blue-eyed*, *left-handed*, etc., we also find such as have for their first member:

a) a noun, e. g.: *eagle-eyed*, *lantern-jawed*, etc. Instances are quite common, any suitable combination, indeed, being capable of developing such a compound. Thus we have:

*mole-eyed*: (These) facts and circumstances .. are beheld by every one, but our mole-eyed contemporary. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVIII, 156.

*pot-bellied*: There were great, round, pot-bellied baskets of chestnuts. id., *Christm. Car.*, III.

*plum-coloured*: He was dressed in a plum-coloured velvet. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, Ch. IV, 43.

β) a definite or indefinite numeral. As to compounds with the latter, it should be observed that instances are at all common only with *many*; e.g.: *a four-footed animal*, *a many-coloured carpet*.

i. *four-footed*: It was late in the afternoon when the four friends and their four-footed companion turned into the lane leading to Manor Farm. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 43.

*four-handed*: Miss Arrowpoint and Herr Klesmer played a four-handed piece on two pianos. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, 1, Ch. V, 65

*two-edged*: They (sc. the women) do not .. know how terribly two-edged is their gift of loveliness. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVII, 212.

ii. *few*: Men and women and children, who, guided by hope o' hearsay, | Sought for their kith and their kin among the few-acred farmers | On the Acadian coast. LONGF., *Evang.* II, 2, 9.

*many*: Entering then, | Right o'er a mount of newly-fallen stones, | The dusky-rafter'd, many-cobwebb'd hall, | He found an ancient dame in dim brocade. TEN., *Mar. & Ger.*, 362.

The sun of late June is warm upon the many-charioted streets. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XX, 272.

We have seen many-sized rooms since then. TEMPLE THURSTON, *The World of Wonderful Reality*, *Dedic.* (= *largely varying as to size*, certainly a very rare application.)

All (sc. the rooms) were low-beamed and many-windowed with lattice windows. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, I, IV, 18.

*multi*: His love burned with a steady and unwinking flame, without rockets and multi-coloured stars. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. I, 7.

*no*: He was a brown-whiskered, white-hatted no-coated cabman. DICK., *Boz*, XVII.

H. POUTSMA, III 1.

*several*: It is a several-chorded lute on which they play. SYMONDS (Macm. Mag., XLV, 325).<sup>1)</sup>

Readers of TENNYSON will have noticed his frequent employment of compounds with *many*. Thus he has *many-tower'd*, *many-corridor'd*, *many-fountain'd*, *many-headed*, *many-knotted*, *many-shielded*, *many-winter'd*. See ROWE & WEBB, Note to The Lady of Shalott, 5.

γ) different pronouns, only in occasional instances.

She's got thy coloured eyes. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, 161.<sup>2)</sup>

This shaped eye or that. MER., Rich. Fev., 231.<sup>2)</sup>

I always like correcting in the same coloured ink as the type. E. F. BENSON, Dodo wonders, Ch. IX, 157.

V. When modified by such adverbs of degree as *as*, *so* or *too*, the compound is sometimes split up into its component parts, the indefinite article being interposed. Such a word-group as *so honest a face* appears then to be moulded into a compound adjective through taking the suffix *ed*. See ALEX. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., I. Late Modern English instances appear to be very rare. For similar formations with the present and the past participle see respectively 26, c Note β; and 40, Obs. I.

It makes .. sound opinion sick and truth suspected, | For putting on so new a fashion'd robe. SHAK., King John, IV, 2, 27.

I have known as honest a faced fellow have art enough to do that. SCOTT, Ken., Ch. XII, 141.

Similarly such word-groups as *such a colour*, *what sort of temper* may take the suffix *ed*, the result being the compounds *such-a-coloured*, *what sort of tempered*.

Her hair is auburn, mine is perfect yellow: | If that be all the difference in his love, | I'll get me such-a-colour'd periwig. SHAK., Two Gent., IV, 4, 196.  
What sort of tempered man was Dryden? Times, 186, 1925, 691 c.

VI. The unaltered noun is sometimes used where the meaning intended seems to require the adjective with the suffix *ed*. Thus *edge-tool* varies with *edged-tool* (for the difference sometimes observed see the O. E. D.), *barefoot* with *barefooted* (the choice is, probably, a matter of metre, rhythm or rime). SCOTT (Old Mort., Ch. II, 25) has *wheel carriage* instead of the ordinary *wheeled carriage*.

Thus especially compounds whose first element is a numeral not unfrequently drop the suffix, through the influence of similar compounds containing a noun that denotes a measure, such as *four-foot ruler*, *five-act comedy*, *thirty-mile walk*, *three-day visit*, etc., discussed, in Ch. XXV, 31 ff.

The Elliot pride could not endure to make a third in a one-horse chaise. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. X, 92.

His poor old mother had the happiness of seeing .. her beloved John step into a close carriage, a one-horse carriage, it is true, but [etc.]. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 17.

The four-horse stage-coach by which I was a passenger. DICK., Great

1) O. E. D.

2) JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.351.



Exp., Ch. XX, 193. (Compare: They drove to the Town-Hall in a four-horsed carriage. Graph., No. 2276, 55.)

A very nice four-wheel chaise. DICK., Pickw., Ch. V, 51. (Collins' Clear-Type Press; other editions have *four-wheeled*, and this seems to represent Dickens's ordinary practice).

A comfortable four-post bed. JEAN WEBST., Daddy-Long-Legs, 234.

Here's a four-leaf clover. *ib.*, 213. (The O. E. D. has only *four-leaved*.)

The hotel rising like a great stucco tower above the lowly roofs of the dirty-yellow two-storey houses. CONRAD, Chance, I, Ch. VII, 158.

Tom's two-word reply. G. F. BRADBY, For this I have borne him, Ch. VII, 83.

Observe also that *seven-league boots* varies with *seven-leagued boots*. It may be added that about the form of adnominal combinations consisting of definite numeral + name of measure (+ adjective) the language has not come to an established system. This is not the place to discuss the subject at length. Suffice it to say that, judging from the numerous examples that have come to hand,

a) in the combination consisting of definite numeral + name of measure of time the plural is rather more frequent than the singular, and is often furnished with the apostrophe. Thus *a four-years* (or *a four-years')* *course* seems to be mostly preferred to *a four-year course*.

β) in the combination consisting of definite numeral + name of another measure than one of time the singular is far more frequent than the plural, which is sometimes furnished with the apostrophe. Thus *a ten-mile walk* is distinctly the ordinary form, not *a ten-miles* (or *a ten-miles')* *walk*.

γ) in the combination consisting of definite numeral + name of measure of time + adjective (mostly *old*) the singular is preferred to the plural, so far as the noun *year* is concerned, other names of measure being mostly placed in the plural, which is more often than not furnished with the apostrophe. Thus *a two-year old sheep* (O. E. D.) is more common than *a two-years* (or *two years')* *old sheep*; conversely *a six-months* (or *six-months')* *old child* is more frequent than *a six-month-old child*.

Names of other measures than one of time in similar combinations (*feet* excepted) are almost regularly kept in the singular, thus *a two-mile-long footpath*, but *a two-thousand-feet-high* mountain.



CHAPTER LVIII.

CONJUGATION.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Regular Conjugation . . . . .	1— 3
Irregular Conjugation . . . . .	4— 7
Anomalies . . . . .	8—17
Isolated Forms . . . . .	18



### Regular Conjugation.

1. The following scheme shows the forms of the majority of English verbs, as they appear in the printed or written language:  
Infinitive: *to call, to jump, to push, to raise, to wait.*

Gerund and Present Participle: *calling, jumping, pushing, raising, waiting.*

Past Participle: *called, jumped, pushed, raised, waited.*

Imperative: *call, jump, push, raise, wait.*

Present Indicative: *I call, jump, push, raise, wait; thou callest, jumpest, pushest, raisest, waitest; he calls (or calleth), jumps (or jumpeth), pushes (or pusheth), raises (or raiseth), waits (or waiteth); we (you, they) call, jump, push, raise, wait.*

Preterite Indicative: *I (he, we, you, they) called, jumped, pushed, raised, waited; thou calledst, jumpedst, pushedst, raisedst, waitedst.*

Present Subjunctive: *I (thou, he, we, you, they) call, jump, push, raise, wait.*

Preterite Subjunctive: the same as the Preterite Indicative.

Verbs which show deviations from this scheme may be termed irregular. Most of them have practically the same personal endings as the regular verbs: thus *thou knowest, he knows (or knoweth), thou knewest*. The only difference is, accordingly, in the second person singular of the preterite.

The regular conjugation is also the only living conjugation, all newly-formed verbs being conjugated according to this scheme.

2. As to the spoken language, of which the written and printed language, as exhibited in the above scheme, is but an imperfect representative, we may observe that:

a) the ordinary ending in the third person singular of the present indicative is [z] after vowels and voiced consonants that are not sibilants, thus in *he knows, he comes*; [s] after voiceless consonants that are not sibilants, thus in *he walks*; [ɪz] after a sibilant, thus in *he loses, he wishes*.

Note a) In vulgar language the sibilant of the third person singular is extended to all the other forms of the present indicative, this ending being felt as typical of this tense; thus *I says, you says, we says, they says*. Even the verb *to be* is, in the language of illiterates, subjected to this levelling tendency, taking the form *is*, sometimes spelled *se* in conformity with the pronunciation, throughout.

"Peggotty," says I, suddenly, "were you ever married?" DICK., C o p., II, 8 b.  
The lawyers lives here and has their names on the doors. THACK., P e n d., I, Ch XXVIII, 302.

I'se garner and stable-man and lives in the ladge now. ib., I, Ch. XXI, 218.

For detailed discussion of vulgarisms in the conjugation of verbs, especially in DICKENS, see FRANZ, E. S., XII.

β) The older suffix, of which *eth* is the printed or written symbol, survives only in the higher literary style. It almost always forms a separate syllable. The only exceptions are *hath*, *saith* and *doth*, the last form being used only so far as it is followed by an infinitive; thus *he doth not do his duty*, but *he doeth his duty*.

For detailed discussion of the use of (e)*th*, as compared with *s*, in various dialects and periods of the language prior to the present, see especially ERIK HOLMQVIST, On the Hist. of the Eng. Pres. Infl.; also JESP., Growth & Struct., § 193 ff; EIL. EKWALL in E. S., XLVI, II, 27 a.

γ) There are two verbs which have vowel-change in the third person singular of the present indicative, viz. *to say* and *to do*; thus [sez] or [sep] and [dʌz] or [dʌp] as distinct from respectively [sei] and [du:]. For the pronunciation of *says* and *saith* see also 7, s. v. *say*.

b) the personal ending of the second person singular is what the symbols *st* represent, sometimes preceded by the modified high-front vowel, sometimes without that vowel, i. e. sometimes pronounced as a separate syllable, sometimes not. The difference is shown by the spelling, which in the first case is *est*, in the second *st*. As appears from the above scheme, regular verbs have *st* in the preterite, the personal suffix forming with the tense suffix a separate syllable.

Irregular preterites mostly have *est*, but such as end in a point-stop sometimes have only *st*; thus (*thou*) *knewest*, *boundest*; but (*thou*) *saidst* besides *saidest*, (*thou*) *broughtst* besides *broughtest*. For the anomalous verbs which have *st* more or less regularly see below 8 ff.

Camest thou not from thy journey? Bible, Sam., B, XI, 10.

I have considered the things which thou sentest to me. id., Kings, A, V, 11.

But how knewest thou them to be women, when thou hast never yet .. seen the face of a daughter of Eve? KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. I, 3 a

And thou thoughtest them beautiful? ib., 3 b.

Note a) As the consonant-group *st* at the end of a preterite, especially when preceded by a point-stop, has a peculiarly harsh sound, the forms in *st* and *est* are sometimes avoided and replaced by *didst* + infinitive, the form *didst* having somehow, through frequent use, lost some of its grating character.

Thou didst speak to her, | Thou didst teach her, .. and yet Thou wast ready to give her that blessing which she had never sought. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, Ch. II, 17.

I was told that thou didst desire greatly to see me. KINGSLEY, Her, Ch. XX, 90 b.

β) The forms used in the following quotations are distinctly vulgar:

Thou must fight, Charlie, whether thou wilt or no. SHAW, *Saint Joan*, II, (30).

And thou needs new clothes, Charlie. *ib.*, II, (29).

γ) Poets sometimes simply drop the suffix in the preterite of regular verbs, especially when the verb is separated from its pronoun. SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 1273) quotes:

Where thou once formed thy paradise. BYRON.

δ) Verbs whose preterite is like the present, especially such as end in *st*, sometimes drop the suffix or else add it with an intervening *ed* for the sake of distinctness; thus *thou cast* or *thou castedst*.

ε) The ending of the preterite and the past participle is [d] after a vowel or a voiced consonant that is not an oral point-stop, thus in *played*, *raised*; [t] after a voiceless stop that is not an oral point-stop, thus in *looked*; [ɪd] after an oral point-stop, thus *nodded*, *fitted*.

Only in the last-mentioned case is the ending, accordingly, to be pronounced as a separate syllable. In poetry, however, it is, occasionally, made to count as a separate syllable also in the two first-mentioned cases.

When I have fears that I may cease to be | Before my pen has glean'd my teeming brain, | Before high-piled books, in charact'ry | Hold like rich garners the full-ripen'd grain. KEATS, *Son (The Terror of Death)*, 3).

I knew 'twas hopeless, but my dread | Would not be thus admonished. BYRON, *Chil.*, VIII.

Note α) Also in the reading of the Bible and the Liturgy one sometimes hears the ending pronounced as a separate syllable independently of the last sound of the base. About this practice Webster's *Dictionary, Principles of Pronunciation* (1876), observes, "In reading the Scriptures and Prayer-book, some persons, chiefly among the clergy, make it a practice to pronounce the participial termination *ed*, in most cases in which it is not preceded by a vowel (as in *believed*, *revealed*), as a distinct syllable. Thus *whom he did predestinate*, *them he also call-ed*; and *whom he call-ed*, *them he also justifi-ed*; and *whom he justifi-ed*, *them he also glorifi-ed*. This usage was formerly a very prevalent one, but at the present time, it is much more limited, and is commonly regarded as savouring of affectation or of an old-school education." Compare also BRADLEY *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 50: "Within the memory of living persons it was still usual in the reading of the Bible or the Liturgy to make two syllables of such words as *loved* and *changed*, which are now pronounced in one syllable."

β) Some participles, when used as adjectives, always have *ed* pronounced as a separate syllable; thus *learned*, as in a *learned man*; *beloved*, as in *dearly beloved brethren*; *blessed*, as in *Blessed are the peace-makers*. But with the majority of such participial adjectives the ending does not count as a separate syllable; thus *fixed*, as in a *fixed salary*; *travelled*, as in a *travelled man*.

γ) It may be added that *ed* is always heard as a separate syllable in derivatives in *ly* when the base ends in a stressed syllable, and in

derivatives in *ness*; thus in *assuredly*, *fixedly*, *markedly*, *composedness*, *preparedness*; but *hurriedly* has three, not four, syllables.

3. Some orthographical peculiarities deserve attention. Mainly in accordance with certain rules of spelling of general application:

a) the symbol *e* disappears before all endings beginning with a vowel-symbol; thus in *savest*, *saveth*, *saved*, *saving*; *risest*, *riseth*, *roset*, *rising*. The *e* is, however, retained before *ing* 1) when it is preceded by a vowel-symbol; thus in *seeing*, *eyeing*, *dyeing*, *rueing*, *canoeing*, *shoeing*, *hoeing*; 2) in *singeing* (infinitive *to singe*), *swingeing* (infinitive *to swinge*), to obviate confusion with *singing* (infinitive *to sing*) and *swinging* (infinitive *to swing*).

b) In verbs of one syllable, and in those of more than one syllable which have the stress on the last, a final single consonant-symbol when preceded by a single vowel-symbol is doubled before the endings that begin with a vowel-symbol; thus in *droppet*, *droppeth*, *dropped*, *dropping*, *puttest*, *putteth*, *putting*; *marrest*, *marreth*, *marred*, *marring*; *controllest*, *controlleth* *controlled*, *controlling*.

The doubling also takes place in verbs of more than one syllable if the last syllable has strong medium stress; thus in *handicapped*, *handicapping*; *kidnapped*, *kidnapping*; *humbugged*, *humbugging*; *zigzagged*, *zigzagging*; *nonplussed*, *nonplussing*.

Final *l* is geminated, irrespective of stress; thus in *travellest*, *travelleth*, *travelled*, *travelling*; *rivallest*, *rivalleth*, *rivalled*, *rivalling*; *cavillest*, *cavilleth*, *cavilled*, *cavilling*.

In (un)paralleled, however, there is no gemination, owing to the *ll* preceding.

This virtually applies also to the *c*, the second *c* being, however, replaced by the symbol *k*; thus in *mimickest*, *mimicketh*, *mimicked*, *mimicking*.

*Worship* mostly doubles the *p*, notwithstanding the weak stress of the last syllable; thus in *worshippest*, *worshippeth*, *worshipped*, *worshipping*. Compare *gallop*, *develop*, etc., which leave the *p* single: *galloping*, *developing*, etc.

Also final *t* is sometimes doubled in unstressed syllables by some writers or printers; thus in *fidgetted*, *fidgetting*.

c) The *y* when preceded by a consonant-symbol is changed into *ie* or *i*, as the case may be, before all the endings, except *ing*; thus in *triest*, *tries*, *trieth*, *tried*; but *trying*.

Such spellings as *pryed*, *plyed*, etc., instead of *pried*, *plied*, etc. occur exceptionally in Late Modern English:

I .. never pryed into your letters. LYT., *My Nov.*, II, viii, Ch. XIII, 66.

She plyed her needle. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 230.

Conversely *ie*, which takes the place of *y* when only one consonant precedes, is changed into *y* before *ing*; thus in *lying*.

The *y* is retained when preceded by a vowel-symbol; thus in *prayest*, *prays*, *prays*, *prayeth*, *prayed*, *praying*.

But *lay*, *pay* and *say* undergo a modification in spelling in the preterite and past participle, becoming respectively *laid*, *paid* and *said*. As to



to say it should, further, be observed that, as the forms *says* and *said* have a different vowel-sound from that heard in the other forms of the verb, it is to be included among the irregular verbs.

d) The personal ending of the third person singular is spelled *es* after *o* preceded by a consonant-symbol; thus in *goes*, *does*. Compare *coos*, as in *the bird coos*, and *woos*, as in:

Lake Lemman woos me with its crystal face. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, III, LXVIII, 1.

Such spellings as *wooes* are, however, also met with.

For the creation of some women, she (sc. Nature) reserves the May morning hours when with light and dew she wooes the primrose from the turf, and the lily from the wood-moss. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. X, 232. T.

The tense-ending *ed*, however, does not drop the *e* after *oo*.

He was .. too good-natured to say nay to any woman who wooed him. SAM. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. I, 1.

The large crowd round the bungalow booed and hissed. *Manch. Guard.*, 9/5, 1924, 367 a.

e) In conclusion mention may be made of some peculiarities chiefly affected by poets.

1) The ending *ed* when not forming a separate syllable is often indicated by 'd in the case of the infinitive ending in a consonant symbol; thus in *seem'd*, *answer'd*, *ask'd*, *look'd*, *scoop'd*, *reach'd*, *vanish'd*. Compare *seized*, *ranged*.

2) The apostrophe is also sometimes used to replace the *e* of the past participle in *en*, but only when it is formed from a base not ending in *e*; thus in *fall'n*, *ridd'n*; but *carven*.

3) When a single consonant-symbol, or a union of two like consonant-symbols, representing a breathed consonant is preceded by a single vowel-symbol indicating a checked vowel, the spelling is occasionally made to conform to the pronunciation; i. e. *ed* is replaced by *t*; thus *dipt* instead of *dipped*, *past* instead of *passed*, *prest* instead of *pressed*. In ordinary prose the spelling *past* has become fixed, so far as the word has assumed the function of an adjective or a preposition.

In the case of *wrapt* the simplified spelling may be due to confusion with *rapt* (= entranced, enraptured, from the Latin *raptus*, past participle of *rapĕre*). The two adjectival participles, although totally different in meaning, sometimes express allied mental attitudes. Thus *rapt* would seem to be a better spelling than *wrapt* in:

Wrapt in these dreams of imagination. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVI, 60 a.

Erect the wrapt musician stood. LONGF., *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, Prel.

Wrapped in deep thought. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. III, 35.

The prince was wrapt in his grief. *Westm. Gaz.* No. 5382, 2 c.

### Irregular Conjugation.

4. The irregular verbs, i. e. such as do not form the preterite and past participle merely by adding [d], [t] or [id], may be divided into certain groups. The time-honoured distinction of verbs into

weak and strong, which in the course of the ages has been largely obliterated, can afford no satisfactory basis for the division in the present stage of the language. Nor does the system elaborated by SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1283 ff), in which he considers the conjugation of the Modern-English verb from a descriptive point of view, afford a practical plan, being too complicated for ready reference and offering no convenient opportunities for adequate comment needful for the modern student.

5. The present writer may therefore, it is hoped, be excused for submitting the following scheme, which has, at least, the recommendation of being very simple.

Irregular verbs may be divided into:

- a) Such as in both the preterite and past participle take the breathed instead of the voiced point-stop, although their base ends in a voiced sound; thus *burn* — *burnt*, *smell* — *smelt*. Such spellings as *burned*, *smelled*, etc. are at variance with the ordinary pronunciation.
  - b) Such as merely exchange the voiced for the breathed point-stop; thus *built* — *built*, *send* — *sent*, *lend* — *lent*.
  - c) Such as in the preterite and past participle not only take a voiced or breathed point-stop, but have internal change as well; thus *hear* — *heard*, *feel* — *felt*, *teach* — *taught*.
  - d) Such as form the preterite and past participle by vowel-change without the addition of the point-stop, and have different forms for the preterite and the past participle; thus *rise* — *rose* — *risen*, *write* — *wrote* — *written*.
  - e) Such as form the preterite and past participle by vowel-change without the addition of the point-stop and have the same forms for both; thus *stand* — *stood* — *stood*, *shine* — *shone* — *shone*, *sit* — *sat* — *sat*.
  - f) Such as form only the preterite or the past participle by the addition of the point-stop; thus *show* — *showed* — *shown*, *crow* — *crew* — *crowed*.
  - g) Such as have the same forms in the preterite and past participle as in the infinitive; thus *cast* — *cast* — *cast*, *let* — *let* — *let*, *set* — *set* — *set*.
6. Besides the above groups there are a number of verbs which show other deviations than such as concern the formation of the preterite and past participle. These may be comprehended under the denomination of anomalous verbs; thus *to be*, *to have*, *can*, *dare*, *may*, *need*, *ought*, *shall*, *to wit*, *will*.  
Lastly there are some isolated forms, remnants of verbs that have gradually fallen into desuetude, and which are still in occasional use as archaisms; thus *besprent*, *dight*, *hight*, *quoth*, *wont*, *worth*, *yclept*.

7. Even this division is not satisfactory from a practical point of view. It offers no suitable opportunities for making the observations to which so many of the verbs give rise, and which demand the attention of every one who wishes to familiarize himself with the actual facts of present usage. Thus there are numerous verbs which have more than one form either in the preterite or in the past participle, or in both. Some of these forms may be dialectal, colloquial or archaic, some confined to special applications or connexions. Only in a few cases can these variations be said to follow fixed rules or principles. This being so, the best plan of exhibiting and discussing the numerous irregularities in the conjugation of English verbs seems to be to mention them simply in the succession of their alphabetical order. It is, therefore, hoped that the following arrangement, which, of course, waives all claim to a scientific treatment of the subject, will, after all, be held acceptable. The letters *a*, *d*, *l*, *oc*, *obs*, *p* and *r* placed within brackets after some of the forms are respectively abbreviations of *archaic*, *dialectal*, *literary*, *occasional*, *obsolete*, *poetic* and *rare*. It is hardly necessary to observe that these terms are not to be apprehended with absolute strictness.

When more than one form is given, the one standing first is to be regarded as the most usual. It stands to reason that an absolutely reliable pronouncement on the relative frequency of a number of forms could only be obtained by prolonged attentive listening to the speech of different persons belonging to different classes of society and living in different parts of the country.

*abide* — *abode*, *abided*(l) — *abode*, *abided*(l), *abid*(r), *abidden*(r).

Note. In other meanings than that of *to dwell*, the form *abided* may be more common than *abode*.

The old king was now left with no other companion than the poor fool, who still abided with him. LAMB, *Tales*, *Lear*, 159.

The boisterous manner which Jonas had exhibited during the latter part of this conversation .. abided by him. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLI, 323*b*.

All the other thinkers abided by the conclusions to which they were led. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, 63.

*aid* — *aided* — *aided*, *aiden*(r).

Note. *Aiden* is not registered in the O. E. D., and appears to be very rare. In the following quotation, taken from the Pocket Edition (Smith, Elder & Co., London) the Oxford Thackeray, edited by SAINTSBURY, has *aided*, instead of *aiden*.

Frosch, aided by the Slavey .. carried Major Pendennis's boxes to the cab in waiting. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXI, 345.

*arise* — *arose* — *arisen*.

*awake* — *awoke*, *awaked*(a) — *awoke*, *awaked*, *awoken*(r).

Note. According to the O. E. D., "there has been some tendency, especially in later times, to restrain the strong past tense and past participle to the original intransitive sense, and the weak inflexion to the transitive sense, but this has never been fully carried out." SHAKESPEARE used only the weak inflexions. *Awoken*, not registered in the O. E. D., appears to be very rare.

Instead of struggling vainly and unsuccessfully, you would be able to regard your temporary bondage as an evil dream from which you had awoken. Times, 7/5, 1925, 521 a.

*to bear* — *bore, bare* (a, l) — *borne, born*.

Note a) *Born* is used only in the passive, but never followed by *by* and the name of the mother, like the Dutch *geboren in geboren worden*: *to be born* is virtually an intransitive, being equivalent to *to come into existence*, French *naître* (Ch. XLVII, 10, a).

β) The compound *forbear* is conjugated like *to bear*: *forbear* — *forbore* — *forborne*.

*beat* — *beat* — *beaten, beat* (a).

Note. The form *beat* as the past participle is not unfrequent in the meaning of *overcome, conquered, surpassed*, and in the phrase *dead beat* (Dutch *dood af*). As an attributive adjectival participle, only *beaten* is used; thus in *beaten gold, a broad and beaten way, a beaten question*.

*beget* — *begot, begat* (a) — *begotten*.

Note. *Beget* being a Bible-word, the form *begat* is less unfamiliar than either *gat* (for *got*) or *for gat* (for *forgot*).

*begin* — *began, begun* (p) — *begun*.

Note. *To gin*, an aphetic form of *to begin*, is now used only archaically.

*behold* — *beheld* — *beheld, beholden* (a).

Note α) *Beholden*, in the sense of *obliged, under an obligation*, although archaic, is not uncommon in Late Modern English.

I am beholden to him for his civility in bringing me here. DICK, *Chuz.*, Ch. XVI, 142 a.

I am proud and don't like to be beholden to people. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 217.

It evidently pained his vanity to be beholden to the orphan for succour. *ib.*, 219.

β) Shakespeare frequently has *beholding* for *beholden*. POPE always altered *beholding* into *beholden*.

Well, Shylock, shall we be beholding to you? *Merch.*, I, 3, 106.

*bend* — *bent* — *bent, bended* (a).

Note. Although semi-archaic, *bended* is not uncommon in Late Modern English, especially as an attributive adjectival participle in the phrase *on bended knees* when implying an attitude of humility. Naturally poets sometimes use *bended* for the sake of the metre.

i. (This tree) may be broken, but can never be bended. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. I, 14.

II. He was forced to ask pardon on his bended knees. MAC., *Ad.*, (733 a).

I'd bless her on my bended knees. FLOR. MARRYAT, *Open Sesame*, 144.

I prayed Heaven, many a time, on my bended knees, to help me. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XIII, 274.

The other (sc. hand) upon Saturn's bended neck | She laid. KEATS, *Hyp.*, I, 45.

With *bended*, as used in the above examples, compare *bent* in the following quotations, in which the word implies another emotion than that of humility:

From under his bent brows, Montreal darted one keen glance at Stephen. LYT., *Rienzi*, II, Ch. I, 81.

He walked to and fro in the room with bent head. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. XVI, 140.

Boulby heard and deliberated with bent brow and protruded under lip. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIV, 345.

When he had finished, he went slowly back to his office, with bent head, taking no notice of the swarming thousands on the pavements. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. V, 185.

*bereave* — *bereft*, *bereaved* — *bereft*, *bereaved*, *bereaven*(a).

Note. *Bereaved* is specifically used when the reference is to a loss of relatives by death, *bereft* when other losses (joy, hope, etc.) are referred to. In Present English the word is rarely used in regard to the loss of material possessions.

i. Trilby, who seemed bereft of motion, exclaimed [etc]. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 212.

ii. I have not deserved the foul suspicions which your Majesty's words imply. I pardon them, from the distraction of a bereaved father. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXV, 374.

The following quotations represent exceptional practice:

So spoke, in the emphatic words of Scripture, the helpless and bereft father, tearing his grey beard and hoary hair. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXV, 373.

Nobody has the brutality to say to the newly bereft father, mother, husband, wife, brother, or sister, "you have killed your lost darling by your credulity". BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Pref., XVII.

*beseech* — *besought* — *besought*.

*bestride* — *bestrode*, *bestrid*(oc) — *bestrid*den, *bestrid*(oc).

*betide* — *betided*, *betid*(obs.) — *betided*, *betid*(obs.).

Note. As a participle the form *betid* seems to be more common than as a preterite. Altogether the verb is little used in Present English, except in the literary. *Woe betide! Whatever betide.*

Not so much perdition as an hair | Betid to any creature in the vessel. SHAK., *Temp.*, I, 2, 31.

Who 'gan to tell | Mishaps betid upon the winter seas. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, III, iv, 3.

Whate'er betide, we'll turn aside, | And see the Braes of Yarrow. WORDSW., *Yarrow Unvisited*, 8.

*bid* — *bade*, *bid* — *bidden*, *bid*, *bade*(d).

Note a) In the preterite *bid* is less common than *bade*; but *bid* is now the ordinary form, both in the preterite and the past participle, of the verb in the meaning of *to offer* (a price), Scotch writers retain the preterite *bad* (or *bade*), used by Dr. JOHNSON. Some writers, TENNYSON, and others, prefer the spelling *bad* to the spelling *bade*, as more in harmony with orthographical rules.

In the past participle *bidden* is now more common than *bid*; in Early Modern English the case was reversed. *Bade* as a past participle borders on the vulgar. The attributive *unbidden* has no alternative form.

In the South of England *to bid* in the sense of *to command* has fallen into disuse, *to tell* being used instead.

i. Some one bid five shillings. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 175.

The Hebrew aide-de-camp in the service of the officer, at the table, bid against the Hebrew gentleman employed by the elephant purchasers. *ib.*, 176.

ii. Can the king only do what he is *bid*? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6459, 5a.

iii. He had bade her good night. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XI, 115.

Cousin Philip had scarcely addressed a word to her during the evening, and had bade her a chilly good night. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. VI, 97.

iv. He has not bid us good-bye. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVII, 401.

v. This is well done of you, sir, to corrupt my servants, and enter my house unbidden! DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIV, 56 b.

An unbidden suffusion for one moment both softened and brightened her eyes. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVII, 401.

β) The compound *forbid* seems to have no other conjugation than *forbid* — *forbad*(e) — *forbidden*, *forbid*(a).

*bide* — *bided*, *bode*(r) — *bided*.

Note. The O. E. D. illustrates no other forms than *bide* and the preterite *bided* from Late Modern English.

The following instances of *bode* are the only ones that have come to hand:

And there awhile it (sc. the cup) bode. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 54.

And thither wending there that night they bode. id., *Lanc. & El.*, 410.

*to bind* — *bound* — *bound*, *bounden*(oc).

Note α) The form *bounden* is currently used only in the collocation *bounden duty* (= Dutch *dure plicht*).

When you saw a thing was not meant to be, .. it was a bounden duty to leave off so much as wishing for it. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVII, 136.

For the sake of the metre *bounden* is used instead of *bound* in:

And ever as he mingled with the crew, | And heard them talking, his long bounden tongue | Was loosen'd. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 639.

β) The adjectival participle *bound*, as we know it in *bound to* (or *for*) a place, *bound on a journey*, *homeward bound*, *outward bound*, *China bound*, etc., is in no way connected with *to bind*. It is the participle of *boun*, also spelled *boune* or *bowne*, itself properly a past participle, but understood as an infinitive. The *d* may be a phonetic outgrowth aided by confusion with *bound* as the participle of *bind*. Compare *sound*, *compound*, *astound* and the vulgar *gownd*, *drownd*, etc.

The verb *boun* (to make ready) became obsolete about 1600, but was revived by SCOTT, who uses it repeatedly in his poetry.

And Lothian heard the Regent's order, | That all should bowne them for the Border. LAY, III, 392.

So mourn'd he, till Lord Dacre's band | Were bowning back to Cumberland. id., V, 499.

On Hallow-Mass Eve, ere ye boune ye to rest, | Ever beware that your couch be blessed. id., *St. Swithin's Chair*, I (Wav., Ch. XIII, 51 b).

SCOTT also has *boune* as a past participle; thus in:

This certain, -- that a band of war | Has for two days been ready boune. LADY, IV, III, 5. (*ready boune* is tautological, *ready* and *boune* having the same meaning.)

γ) SHAKESPEARE appears to quibble about the two meanings of *bound* in:

GHOST. Pity me not, but lend thy serious hearing | To what I shall unfold —  
HAML. Speak; I am bound to hear. GHOST. So art thou to revenge when thou shalt hear. HAML, I, 5, 6. (Hamlet uses the word in the meaning of *prepared*, *ready*; the Ghost understands it in the meaning of *compelled*, *obliged*.)

*bite* — *bit* — *bitten*, *bit*(a).

Note. Except for the phrase *the biter bit*, the form *bit* in the past participle is now archaic.

*bleed* — *bled* — *bled*.

*blend* — *blended*, *blent* — *blended*, *blent*.

Note. In matter-of-fact language *blended* would seem to be the ordinary form; thus *the teas are well blended*, *full-cream dairy-milk blended with extracts of choice wheat flour*. But when the reference is to immaterial things, *blent*, especially as a participle, appears to be preferred.

i. The earth is cover'd thick with other clay, | Which her own clay shall cover, heap'd and pent, | Rider and horse, — friends, foe, — in one red burial blent! BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, III, XXVIII, 9.

Such traces have blent themselves irrecoverably with the firmer texture of our youth and manhood. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 56.

There is charm in beauty for itself, Caroline; when it is blent with goodness, there is a powerful charm. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 277.

ii. After which kind of speeches, in which fashion and the main chance were

blended, .. Mrs. Frederick Bullock would .. simper back into her carriage. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XI, 115.

*bless* — *blessed*, *blest* — *blessed*, *blest*.

Note. Both the preterite and past participle are now generally spelt *blessed*, though always pronounced [blest] in modern prose; the participle may be pronounced [blesɪd] in verse or liturgical reading. As an adjective [blesɪd] is now the regular prose-form, but the archaic [blest] is frequent in verse, and traditional phrases, as e.g. the Isles of the Blest. O. E. D. See also 2, c, Note β.

*blow* — *blew* — *blown*, *blowed*.

Note. *Blowed* is only used as a vulgar curse-word.

*break* — *broke*, *brake*(a) — *broken*, *broke*(a).

Note. *Brake*, the form used in the Authorized Version, is still familiar as an archaic word. *Broke* as a past participle was exceedingly common in prose and speech during the 17–18th century, and is still recognized in verse. O. E. D. Also in the language of the illiterate it is still common enough.

*breed* — *bred* — *bred*.

*bring* — *brought* — *brought*.

*build* — *built*, *builded*(a) — *built*, *builded*(a).

*burn* — *burnt*, *burned* — *burnt*, *burned*.

Note. The distinction in usage between the two modern forms of the preterite and past participle is difficult to state with precision. *Burnt* is now the prevailing form, and its use is always permissible; *burned* is slightly archaic, and somewhat more formal in effect; it occurs more frequently as preterite, or in combination with the auxiliary *have*, than as participial adjective. O. E. D.

*burst* — *burst*, *brast*(a) — *burst*, *bursten*(a).

*buy* — *bought* — *bought*.

*carve* — *carved* — *carved*, *carven*(a).

Note. The archaic form *carven* is rather common in literary English, especially as an attributive adjectival participle.

A vacant chair | Carven with strange figures. TEN., Holy Grail, 169.

Long carven silver-banded ebony wands. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Prol. 3 b.

A carven stall in Westminster Abbey. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 23.

*to cast* — *cast*, *casted*(a) — *cast*, *casted*(a).

Note. Of the compound *forecast* the form *forecasted* seems to be more common than *forecast*. *Broadcast*, on the other hand, seems to contract as a rule, so far, at least, as the participle is concerned.

i. The success with which the response of the country was forecasted is due to the application of a very simple and very obvious law. Rev. of Rev., No. 194, 113 a.

The writer .. forecasted what has practically since happened. ib., No. 315, 169.

As I forecasted two or three weeks ago, the R. A. C. ... has decided not to hold the race. II. Lond. News, No. 3856, 360 a.

ii. The first variety programme to be broadcast by the animals at the Zoo will begin at five o'clock this afternoon. Manch. Guard., 3 10, 1924, 283 c.

When the King opens the British Empire Exhibition on May 9, his speech in the Stadium will be broadcast, as last year. Times, 23 4, 1925, 450 a.

*catch* — *caught* — *caught*.

*chide* — *chid*, *chided*(oc) — *chid*, *chidden*, *chided*(oc).

Note. *Chided* is occasionally met with in modern writers. O. E. D.

*choose* — *chose* — *chosen*.

*cleave* (split) — *cleft*, *clove*(oc, l) — *cleft*, *cloven*(oc), *cleaved*(a).

*cleave* (adhere) — *cleaved*, *clave*, *clove* — *cleaved*.

Note. *Clove* in the sense of *split* is frequent enough in literary language.

Hermenius struck at Seius, | And clove him to the teeth. MAC., Horatius, 314.

*Cloven* occurs only as an attributive adjectival participle.

He was lying stark with a cloven skull. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXI, 91 *b*.

It is most familiar in the collocation *cloven foot*, often used allusively as the indication of Satan, Satanic agency, or temptation.

With *cloven foot* compare *cleft palate* and *cleft stick* (= a position in which advance and retreat are alike impossible, a dilemma, a fix). O. E. D.

Both *clave* and *clove* occur in the sense of *stuck, adhered*; the former appears to be used only in the meaning of *to be loyal, faithful*: the latter is said specifically of the tongue.

Who loved one only, and who clave to her. TEN., *Id. of the King*, Dedic.  
His parched tongue clove to the roof of his mouth. WASH. IRV., *Legend of Sleepy Hollow*, (371).

Her tongue clove to its roof. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XVI, 65 *b*.

He sought to speak, but his tongue clove to his mouth. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 316.

His tongue clove to the roof of his mouth. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, iv, 67.

It should be observed that the second *to cleave* in all its forms is only used in the higher literary language, ordinary English preferring *to stick*.

*climb* — *climbed*, *clomb* (a) — *climbed*, *clomb* (a).

*cling* — *clung* — *clung*.

*clothe* — *clothed*, *clad* (a) — *clothed*, *clad* (l).

Note. The preterite *clad* is distinctly uncommon, even in verse.

His keepers clad him in mean . . . garments. MISS YONGE, *Cameos*, I, Ch. XLI, 356.

She clad herself in russet gown. TEN., *Lady Clare*, XV.

He rose, and clad himself, and girt his sword. ARNOLD, *Sohrab & Rustum*, 8.

The participle *clad*, although literary, is quite common in prose; it is used:

1) mostly predicatively, as in: The woman was wretchedly clad. WALT. BES., *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XXV, 167

Passengers rushed on deck half clad. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. XI, 336.

2) rarely attributively, as in: Had ye still gone on . . . ye . . . | Had Found clad folk. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, Prol., 19a. (Compare: From earliest times the Waganda have been a clothed people. Graph., No. 2271, 962 *b*.)

3) in compounds, such as *snow-clad*, *ironclad*.

For the rest *clothed*, both as a preterite and a participle, is the ordinary form, in the ordinary as well as the transferred meanings.

The beautiful language in which he clothed his ideas. MRS. SHELLEY.

Behind her rose a great wall of rock, clothed here and there with some dark growth. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. IV, 43,

The counsel (was) clothed in sugared words. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVI, 305.

In the meaning of *to provide with clothes* the verb is always regular.

She already saw the hungry fed, the naked clothed. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIV, 341.

*come* — *came* — *come*.

*cost* — *cost* — *cost*.

*creep* — *crept* — *crept*.

*crow* — *crowed*, *crew* — *crowed*, *crow* (d).

Note. In the preterite, *crew* is more common than *crowed* when the reference is to the cry of a cock. In all other applications of the verb the preterite is only *crowed*.

He crowed like a cock behind the Speaker's chair. Westm. Gaz., 21 8, 1925, 616 *b*.

*cut* — *cut* — *cut*.

*dea* — *dealt* — *dealt*.



*dig* — *dug*, *digger*(a) — *dug*, *digger*(a).

*distract* — *distracted* — *distracted*, *distracted*(a).

Note. *Distraught* is, properly, a modification of the adjective *distract*, the modification being probably due to the influence of such participles as *caught*, *taught*, *bought*, *brought*, etc. When *distract* was made into a verb in Early Modern English, *distraught* came to be understood as its participle. In Present English *distraught* is used archaically as an attributive and predicative participial adjective.

i. He knelt down beside the distraught woman and tried to take her hand. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 96.

ii. Now so it chanced, upon a May morning, | Wakeful he lay when yet low was the sun, | Looking distraught at many a royal thing. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, Proud King, III.

*draw* — *drew* — *drawn*.

*dream* — *dreamt*, *dreamed* — *dreamt*, *dreamed*.

Note. The regular and irregular forms appear to be equally current.

*drink* — *drank*, *drunk* (obs.) — *drunk*, *drunken*. *drank* (oc).

Note. The preterite *drunk*, rather common in Early Modern English, is now rare.

*Drunken* is chiefly used as an attributive adjectival participle, oftener in the sense of *given to drink* than in that of *intoxicated*. When used predicatively, it mostly has the former meaning, *drunk* being the ordinary word when a temporary state of drunkenness is referred to. *Drunken* in a purely verbal meaning is rare.

i. He could not live with his drunken wife. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. III, 21.

Our rough country fellows are not, so far as I know, so drunken as the rabble of London. WALT. BES., *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. I, 2.

ii. Wherefore, he asked, should the buttler brew strong ale to be drunken three years hence. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. II, 19.

Ye have eaten of my dish and drunken of my cup for a dozen years. TEN., *Becket*, I, iv, 75.

Having sufficiently eaten and drunken. RUSKIN, *Fors Clav.*, VI, Ch. LXVII, 214.

*Drank* is not unfrequently used as a participle to avoid the inebriate associations of *drunk*.

They had drank her ladyship's health with the greatest gratitude. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 55.

*drive* — *drove*, *drave*(a) — *driven*.

*dwelt* — *dwelt*, *dwelled*(r) — *dwelt*, *dwelled*(r).

*eat* — *ate*, *eat* — *eaten*.

Note. The O. E. D. registers three phonetic values for the vowel in the preterite, viz. [e], [ei] and [i:], the first of which is most probably the one most heard. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1402) mentions no other.

*engrave* — *engraved* — *engraved*, *engraven*(a).

Note. The O. E. D. observes that "the strong pa.pple *engraven* is now somewhat archaic or formal." In the Dictionary the quotations with *engraven*, however, outnumber those with *engraved*.

*fall* — *fell* — *fallen*.

*feel* — *felt* — *felt*.

*fight* — *fought* — *fought*.

*find* — *found* — *found*.

*fling* — *flung* — *flung*.

*flee* — *fled* — *fled*.

*fly* — *flew* — *flown*.

Note. *To fly* is now used in the meaning of *to run away* only in those forms

in which the vowel of *fly* is heard, the participle *flown* occurring in this sense only as a predicative adjectival participle. For the rest the preterite *flew* and the participle *flown*, as a purely verbal form, now always mean *to be or get on the wing*. Conversely *to flee* is usual in the meaning of *to run away* only in the preterite and participle. For the rest it is only used in literary diction.

i. I must fly this kingdom instantly. SHER., Riv., V, 1, (270).

Like the flying Parthian he had kept his keenest arrow in the moment of defeat. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. V, 53.

ii. He had returned to Birmingham to find his lady-love flown. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXII, 238.

In the following quotation *flew* in the sense of *ran away* is used for the sake of rime :

And, as a hare, whom hounds and horse pursue, | Pants to the place from whence at first she flew. GOLDSMITH, Des. Vil., 94. (Compare with these the following lines in the same poem, where *fled* is preferred to *flown* for the same reason: These round thy bowers their cheerful influence shed, | These were thy charms — but all these charms are fled, 35.)

*fling* — *flung* — *flung*.

*forget* — *forgot*, *forgat*(a) — *forgotten*, *forgot*(a, p).

*forsake* — *forsook* — *forsaken*

*freeze* — *froze* — *frozeu*.

*freight* — *freighted* — *freighted*, *fraught*.

Note. As a matter-of-fact word, in the meaning of *loaded* (with a cargo), the only participle is *freighted*. *Fraught* is now only used as a predicative adjectival participle in the sense of *attended* (with), 'big' (with the promise or menace of).

*get* — *got*, *gat*(a) — *got*, *gotten* (obs.).

Note The participle *gotten* is now obsolete, except in dialects and in American English. In Standard English it is, however, the usual form in the compound *ill-gotten*, such compounds as *ill-got*, *well-got* being uncommon.

Never with my consent shall a penny of Mr. Norberry's ill-gotten gains go to enrich my child. WALT. BES., *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. xvii, 78.

*gild* — *gilt*, *gilded* — *gilt*, *gilded*

Note. The two forms are, perhaps, equally frequent, but *gilt* is the ordinary word in matter-of-fact language, *gilded* in the higher literary style and in figurative meanings.

Crowded in the glassy bay were the vessels of commerce and the gilded galleys for the pleasures of the rich citizens. LYT., *Pomp.*, I, Ch. II, 12a.

Pearly paleness gilded the building. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 296.

Of some special interest are *the Gilded Chamber* (= the House of Lords), *gilded spurs* (one of the emblems of knighthood), *the gilded youth* (translation of the French *la jeunesse dorée*).

Naseby and a few friends of his, some "gilded youths" like himself, .. had done wonders. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXII, 187c.

In parasynthetic compounds *gilt* is the only form; thus *gilt-handled*, *gilt-headed*, *gilt-edged*.

*gird* — *girt*, *girded* — *girt*, *girded*.

Note a) There is not, apparently, any general predilection for either form, beyond that which is determined by metrical (or rhythmical) considerations.

β) *To gird* in the meaning of *to gibe* is regular.

*give* — *gave* — *given*.

*to go* — *went* — *gone*.

Note a) *Went* is the preterite of *to wend*, which early became synonymous with *to go*. Readers of CHAUCER will remember:

Than longen folk to goon on pilgrimages | . . ; And specially, from every shires ende | of Engelond, to Caunterbury they wende. *Cant. Tales*, *Prolog.*, 12–16. In the literary language *to wend* as a regularly conjugated verb is still common enough. It is used:

1) as an intransitive in the same meaning as *to go*.

The King wends back to fair Carlisle. *SCOTT*, *Bridal of Triermain*, II, x. Some benighted horseman wending towards London. *DICK.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIV, 56 a.

It was not unusual for those who wended home alone at midnight, to keep the middle of the road, the better to guard against surprise from lurking footpads. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 62 a.

We entered the wood, and wended homeward. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 552.

A hundred yards further on, the Rye opened up like a large park, beginning in the town, and wending far away into a country prospect. *G. MOORE*, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XXVI, 182.

2) as a transitive in the meaning of *to direct*, *to bend*, in the collocation *to wend one's way*.

He wended his way . . to the farmhouse where he happened to be quartered. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 348.

Towards the City, whither he wended his way, whatever had been the ball or the dissipation of the night before, young Barnes Newcome might be seen walking every morning. *THACK.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. VI, 73.

Our boat was waiting for us at Kingston just below the bridge, and to it we wended our way, and round it we stored our luggage, and into it we stepped. *JEROME*, *Three Men*, Ch. V, 59.

β) *To wend one's way* varies with 1) *to wend one's steps*, which appears to be less common:

They wended their steps to Connaught Place. *Punch*.

2) *to bend one's way*: The melancholy party bent their way speedily homewards. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXI, 218.

3) *to bend one's steps*: Thither we all three bent our steps. *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Mr. Isaacs*, Ch. XII, 368.

γ) Compare also: 1) He that would her heights ascend, | Many a weary step must wend. *SCOTT*, *Brid. of Triermain*, III, xxxiv. (In this quotation *to wend* may also be understood in the meaning of *to go* governing a kind of cognate object.)

2) Toward the King's palace did they take their way. *MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræs.*, LVI.

*grave* — *graved* — *graven*, *graved*.

Note. Probably from association with the second of the Ten Commandments, *graven* appears to be the more common form of the participle. In verse *graved* is, no doubt, often used for metrical reasons.

i. On his brow | The thunder-scars are graven. *BYRON*, *Manfr.*, III, 4.

For indelibly graven in her heart, was the never-fading image of the little English painter. *DU MAURIER*, *Trilby*, II, 165.

ii. Approach and read (for thou canst read) the lay, | Grav'd on the stone beneath yon aged thorn. *GRAY*, *El.*, 116.

*grind* — *ground* — *ground*, *grinded*.

Note. The ordinary form of the participle is *ground*, but *grinded* occurs not unfrequently as an adjectival participle.

As Gawtreysaid this, he drew the words out, one by one, through his grinded teeth *LYT.*, *Night & Morn.*, 198. (Compare: Seeing it (sc. the sword) not, he said, between his ground teeth, to Cecco del Vecchio [etc.]. *id.*, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 90.)

And every man had ready to his hand | Sharp spear, and painted shield, and grinded sword. MORRIS, Jason, XVI, 9.

*grow — grew — grown.*

*hang — hung, hanged — hung, hanged.*

Note. The regular forms are used only in the sense of *to put to death by hanging*. The regular participle is established in the objurgatory expressions *You be hanged, I'll be hanged if I do*, and the like. In the south *hung* is often used in the same sense.

i. That boy will be hung. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 33.

It's a great deal better . . . that she died when she did, or else she'd have been hard labouring in Bridewell, or transported, or hung. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 69.

ii. They hanged at Tyburn, in those days. *id.*, Two Cities, II, Ch. II, 75.

*hear — heard — heard.*

*to heave — heaved, hove — heaved, hove.*

Note. The preterite and participle *hove* is chiefly used as a nautical term. For the rest *heaved* is the ordinary form.

i. Directly you hove in view. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. I, 5.

Then saw they how there hove a dusky barge. TEN., Pas. of Arth., 361.

Then the steamer hove to a little and seemed to notice us. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. XII, 344.

ii. He heaved a deep sigh. WASII. IRV., Sketch - Bk., I, 343.<sup>1)</sup>

Her breast heaved. LYT., Caxt., V, Ch. I, 117.

Her bosom heaved. GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem, Ch. VII.

*help — helped, holp(a) — helped, holp(a), holpen(a).*

*hew — hewed — hewn, hewed.*

Note. *Hewn* appears to be more usual than *hewed*, and is used to the exclusion of the latter as an attributive adjectival participle.

*hide — hid — hidden, hid.*

Note. *Hidden* is distinctly more common than *hid*, and is used to the exclusion of the latter as an attributive adjectival participle.

*hit — hit — hit.*

*hold — held — held, holden(a).*

Note. *Holden* is still the ordinary form in the language of laws, statutes, etc.: A common council Holden in the Chamber of the Guildhall of the "City of London" Resolved unanimously that the Thanks of the Court be given to Commodore Nelson for his gallant behaviour on the 14th of February last in defeating the Spanish fleet. And that he be presented with the freedom of this City in a gold box of one thousand guineas. Notice in Greenwich Museum.

*hurt — hurt — hurt.*

*kneel — knelt, kneeled — knelt, kneeled.*

Note. *Knelt* is of southern origin, and is a much later form than *kneeled*. In Present English it may be more common than the latter.

i. There were the seats where the poor people sat, . . . the homely altar where they knelt in after life. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. XVII, 63a.

ii. He kneeled down again, and felt once more all round the hole. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn. I, Ch. V, 36

*knit — knitted, knit — knitted, knit.*

Note a) On the whole the regular form seems to be more common than the contracted; the latter, however, appears to be exclusively used in such compounds *close-knit*, *well-knit*, *firmly-knit*. In verse the choice is, most probably, determined by the requirements of the metre.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

i. What harm could such a small thing do to your thick knitted stockings? Daily Mail (LLOYD, North. Eng., 88.)

ii His brows knit themselves into a sort of puzzled frown. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. III, 55.

iii. In a close-knit statement of facts he showed that [etc.]. Manch. Guard., 3/10, 1924, 281 a.

β) As an adjectival participle *knitted* is the ordinary form in the familiar combination *knitted brow(s)*.

i. \* His looks — to judge from his folded arms and knitted brows — were occupied with other matters than the topic under discussion. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 3 a.

Wild grey eyes gleamed out from under huge knitted brows. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Ch. II, 28.

"Out?" she cried, and rattled the room, thumping, under knitted brows. MER., Ormont, Ch. II, 30.

\*\* The knitted brow and brief word for the fireside; the smile, the jest, the witty sally, for society. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XII, 273.

ii. The raised knit brow and inexplicable curve of the mouth became straight again. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVII, 394.

β) Observe also the reversed word-order of the combination in: I never see you walking or sitting at her side, and observe her lips compressed, or her brow knit, .. but I think of the fable of Semele reversed. *ib.*, II, Ch. XII, 256. *know — knew — known*.

*lade — laded — laden, laded*.

Note α) In the meaning of *to load, to burden*, the ordinary form of the participle is *laden*, *laded* being comparatively rare. In the meaning of *to bale* (a boat) the verb is conjugated regularly.

β) *To laden* is an unfrequent variant of *to lade*: We started about one in the morning ladened up with everything you can possibly imagine on a soldier. WELLS, Britling, II, Ch. IV, § 13, 331.

*lead — led — led*.

*lean — leant, leaned — leant, leaned*.

Note. The regular and irregular forms appear to be equally frequent.

*leap — leapt, leaped — leapt, leaped*.

Note. According to WEBSTER'S Dict., the form *leapt* is rare. The O. E. D. does not pronounce upon the relative frequency of the two forms, but while it has a goodly number of quotations with *leaped*, it has but two with *leapt*.

*learn — learnt, learned — learnt, learned*.

Note. The O. E. D. gives both forms furnished with different phonetic transcriptions, according to the spelling. But it is open to doubt whether persons who spell *learned* actually pronounce the word with the voiced dental.

As a participial adjective *learned* is the only form, *ed* being pronounced as a separate syllable.

*leave — left — left*

*lend — lent — lent*.

*let — let — let*.

*lie — lay — lain*.

Note. In the meaning of *to tell a falsehood* the verb is conjugated regularly.

*light — lighted, lit — lighted, lit*.

Note α) The regular forms are more usual than the irregular. In attributive function *lighted* is used practically to the exclusion of *lit*; thus in *a lighted lamp, a lighted cigar*. In compounds, however, *lit* hardly bears replacing by *lighted*; thus *a moonlit night, starlit hours, a well-lit fire*.

"Mr. Malone, how do you do?" continued Shirley, lifting up her mirth-lit face to the gallery! CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XV, 352.

β) Of *to alight* the irregular forms are very rare.

*load* — *loaded* — *loaded*, *loaden* (a, p).

Note. The participle *loaden*, formed on the analogy of *laden*, is distinctly unusual, and, apparently, never used in the meaning of *to put the charge in* (a gun).

*lose* — *lost* — *lost*.

Note. The older participle *lorn* still survives as a participial adjective in the compound *love-lorn*. Compare also the adjective *forlorn*.

*make* — *made* — *made*.

*mean* — *meant* — *meant*.

*meet* — *met* — *met*.

*melt* — *melted* — *melted*, *molten*.

Note. *Molten* is now used only as an attributive adjectival participle, chiefly of substances which are difficult to liquefy, especially metals. Compare *molten gold*, *molten lava*, *molten glass* with *melted butter*, *melted snow*. Even this use of *molten* is, however, merely literary, *melted* being preferred throughout in matter-of-fact language. In transferred applications the latter would, however, hardly be tolerated.

You will see all that white and yellow metal running in molten streams of light. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City III*, Ch. I, 220.

Elizabeth pointed to the molten west. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. I, 16

*mow* — *mowed* — *mown*, *mowed*.

Note. *Mown* appears to be more common than *mowed*, and is distinctly preferred to the latter as an attributive adjectival participle.

*pave* — *paved* — *paved*, *paven* (l, r).

Rise, rise and heave thy rosy head | From thy coral-pav'n bed. MILTON, *Comus*, 886.

*pen* — *penned* — *penned*, *pent*.

Note α) The ordinary form of the participle is *penned*, but *pent* is used in such combinations as *pent-up emotions*, *pent-up wrath*, in which the word forms a kind of adjective with the adverb.

The long pent-up feeling is beginning to manifest itself. Manch. Guard.

β) *To pen* in the meaning of *to write* is regular.

*prove* — *proved* — *proved*, *proven* (oc).

Note. *Proven*, properly a Scotch participle, is the established form in the legal phrase *not proven*. For the rest it is only used in the higher literary style. The verdict of this court is most likely to be that which Scottish law, but not English, recognizes — “not proven.” Westm. Gaz., No. 6171, 4c.

Gawain .. | Ask'd me to tilt with him, the proven knight. TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 27.

The man is proven by the hour. id., *Queen Mary*, II, 1, (600 b).

I should like them to feel .. that their claim .. had been examined, and was held to be not proven. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVI, 304.

In all but the misshapen body of him he was a proven man. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 2

*put* — *put* — *put*.

*read* — *read* — *read*.

*reave* — *reft*, *reaved* (r) — *reft*, *reaved* (r).

Note. In Present English the verb is used archaically only in the higher literary language. Only the participle *reft* is at all common.

Reft of a crown, he yet may share the feast. GRAY, *The Bard*, 79.

You left me, or were reft from me. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 495.

All the energy which Florence had so long thrown into the cause of liberty she flung, now that her liberty was reft from her, into the cause of letters. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, Sect. IV, 304.

*rend — rent — rent.*

*rid — rid, ridded(r) — rid, ridded(r).*

*ride — rode, rid (obs.) — ridden, rid (obs.)*

*ring — rang, rung (oc.) — rung.*

*rise — rose — risen*

*rive — rived — riven, rived(r).*

Note. The only current form of the verb is the participle *riven*.

Brutus has rived my heart. SHAK., JUL. CÆS., IV, 3, 84.

If you had managed *that* feat, the gentry here would have riven the horses out of the coach, yoked to a score of asses, and drawn you into Stilbro' like a conquering general. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. XIII, 261.

*rot — rotted — rotten, rotted.*

Note. *Rotted*, both as a pure verb and an adjectival participle, is only used in the literal sense of *passed into a state of decomposition*. *Rotten*, only used as an adjective, adds to the above notion unpleasant or disgusting associations, and is, besides, often used in the sense of *corrupt, offensive* or *worthless* generally.

These trees .. are planted in a good clayey soil, enriched with both animal manure and rotted leaf-mould. BERNARD CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. II, 25.

The way .. had been ploughed up by the wheels of heavy waggons, and rendered rotten by the frosts and thaws of the preceding winter. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. II, 9a.

*run — ran — run.*

*saw — sawed — sawn, sawed.*

Note. *Sawn* appears to be more common than *sawed*, and is distinctly preferred to the latter as an attributive adjectival participle.

*say — said — said*

Note. The vowel-sound of the preterite and past participle is also heard in *says*. But *sayest* and *saysst* have the same vowel-sound as the infinitive. According to the evidence produced by KRUISINGA (Handb.<sup>3</sup>, § 23) this may also be heard in *saith*, but this pronunciation is not acknowledged in the O. E. D., and seems to be rare. Compare 2, a, Note 7).

The compound *gainsay* is regular in that the last syllable of the form *gainsaid* is mostly pronounced with the same vowel-sound as that of the infinitive. This may be responsible for the occasional spelling *gainsayed*.

Never gainsayed me in her life. READE, Never too late, I, Ch. I, 6.

*see — saw — seen.*

*seek — sought — sought.*

*seethe — seethed — seethed, sodden.*

Note. The verb is now conjugated regularly, *sodden* having ceased to be associated with it. From *sodden*, which is used only as an adjective, even a new verb, *to sodden*, has been formed.

i. So saying, he .. took from the larger board a mess of pottage and seethed kid. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. V, 42.

The street seethed with unrest. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. V, 64. Every village I rode through seethed with discontent. ib., II, Ch. IV, 208.

ii. The complexion was pale and sodden. LYT., Night & Morn., 61.

From the whole man there rose a sort of exhalation of sodden vice. G. ELIOT, B. Costrell.

The cakes are sometimes sodden. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, 200.

One dull and heavy drink-sodden navy .. was drowsy for a week. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. I, 17.

The notion that .. policemen can accomplish anything is sodden stupidity Eng. Rev., No 63, 396.

iii. The rains have soddened the eath. Daily News.

*sell — sold — sold.*

*send — sent — sent.*

*set — set — set.*

*to sew — sewed — sewed, sewn.*

Note. *Sewn* (occasionally spelled *sown*) appears to be more frequent than *sewed*, especially as an adjectival participle.

A hundred and fifty of their beds, sown together, made up the breadth and length. SWIFT, *Gull.*, I, Ch. II, (119 *b*).

*shake — shook — shaken.*

*shade — shaded — shaped, shapen* (a).

Note. *Shapen* now appears only in the compounds *well-shapen*, *misshapen*, the former somewhat archaic.

She was a good-looking woman, not more than eight-and-thirty, of fair complexion and sandy hair, well-shapen, light-looted. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. VI, 62.

The clumps of misshapen and dusty prickly-pears that girt round the thatched huts of the Kaffir work-people. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. VII, 196.

*shave — shaved — shaved, shaven.*

Note. *Shaven* is used only as an attributive adjectival participle and in the compound *clean-shaven*.

And red and ever redder grew the General's shaven gill. RUDY. KIPL., *Deparm. Ditties*, 24.

His pale face was clean-shaven, save for a thin and wiry grizzled moustache. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. I, 2.

*to shear — shored, sheared — shorn, sheared.*

Note. In the ordinary sense of *to remove the hair or beard* (by means of some sharp instrument), the regular and irregular preterites and participles may be of equal frequency. The adjectival participle *unshorn*, as in *unshorn beard*, is certainly more usual than *unsheared*. Except for *unshorn*, *to shave* is now in practically regular use when the reference is to the operation mentioned above. In the wider sense of *deprived*, *bereft*, the form *shorn* is quite common in literary diction, and is used practically to the exclusion of *sheared*. A slouching, moody, drunken sloven, wasted by intemperance and vice, and with his matted hair and unshorn beard in wild disorder. DICK., *Chimes*, III, 70.

The average Boer is unshorn, unwashed, unbrushed. Graph.

The Papacy, although shorn of its temporal power, is still begrudged complete spiritual independence. Rev. of Rev.

At his death he (sc. Napoleon) had not only lost everything, but had also shorn his country of power. Westm. Gaz., 1615, 1925, 84 *b*.

*shed — shed — shed, shedded* (r).

*shend* (obs, r) — *shent* (obs, r) — *shent* (a, oc), *shended* (a, r).

Note. The verb has long been practically obsolete, save for the participle *shent*, which in different meanings is occasionally used by poets as a deliberate archaism.

He'll be shent .. | When he shall hear the wedding lutes a-playing. KEATS, *End.*, IV, 599.

No personage of high or mean degree | Doth care for cleanness of surtout or shirt; | Though shent with Egypt's plague. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, xvii.

*shine — shone — shone.*

*shoe — shod, shoed — shod, shoed, shodden* (r).

Note. According to SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 1301), the verb is now conjugated regularly, *shod* now being used chiefly as an adjective. The O. E. D., however, mentions *shoed* as a rare form, and does not give a single quotation with this form drawn from Nineteenth Century or later English.



His thick cane (was) shod with a mighty ferrule. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XVI, 132 *b*.  
The vicar threatened that in future the mare should be shod by Hawkins. MAR. CRAWF., *Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Ch. I, 10.

He left his shoes on the mat; mounted the stair unshod. CH. BRONTE, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVI, 325.

*shoot — shot — shot.*

*show — showed — shown, showed* (oc).

Note. The spelling *shew*, prevalent in the 18th century, and not uncommon in the first half of the 19th century, is now obsolete, except in legal documents. O. E. D. The older form *showed* for the participle is still sometimes used in the perfect tenses active (chiefly with material object), but in the passive it is obsolete, except as a deliberate archaism. O. E. D.

*shred — shred, shredded — shred, shredded.*

Note. The regular and irregular forms appear to be equally divided.

*shrink — shrank, shrunk — shrunk, shrunk, shrank* (r).

Note. The preterite is now mostly *shrank*, but *shrunk* appears to have been more common before the beginning of the Nineteenth Century (SWAEN, *Anglia*, XVII). The participle *shrunk* is used only as an adjectival participle, either attributively or predicatively.

The ravines in which the shrunken becks trickle musically down. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 11.

Sir Henry came pottering in — oh, so shrunken in appearance. (?)

*shrive — shrove, shrived — shriven, shrived.*

Note. The O. E. D. gives only the irregular forms; WEBSTER'S Dictionary only the regular.

*shut — shut — shut.*

*sing — sang, sung — sung.*

Note. *Sung* was the usual form of the preterite in the 17th and 18th centuries. Recent usage, however, has been mainly in favour of *sang*. O. E. D.

*sink — sank, sunk — sunk, sunken.*

Note. The use of *sunk* as the preterite has been extremely common. O. E. D. *Sank*, however, seems to be the more usual preterite in Present English. *Sunk* is the ordinary participle in forming the perfect tenses. Both *sunk* and *sunken* are used as adjectival participles in various shades of meanings. To a certain extent they are used indifferently, but *sunk* is preferred in the sense of *placed on a lower level* (than that of the surroundings), *sunken* in the meaning of *fallen in* (said of the eyes, cheeks, etc.).

i. In the garden stood Rose, on the edge of the sunk fence. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 288,

ii. His cheeks were sunken and his eyes unnaturally large. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 237 *a*.

He met her gaze with those yearning, sunken eyes. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 266.

His eyes were a little sunken. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. II, 32.

*sit — sat, sate(a) — sat, sate(a).*

Note. *Sate* as a preterite or participle, is now obsolete. THACKERAY has it regularly.

*slay — slew — slain.*

*sleep — slept — slept.*

*sling — slung, slang* (obs) — *slung*.

Note. *Slang* occurs in the Bible. (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1373).

*slink — slunk — slunk.*

*slit — slit — slit.*

*smell — smelt, smelled — smelt, smelled.*

Note. *Smelt* is not only the ordinary written or printed form, but also, no doubt, represents the usual pronunciation.

*smite — smote — smitten.*

*sow — sowed — sown, sowed.*

*Sown* is distinctly more common than *sowed*, and is used to the exclusion of the latter as an attributive participial adjective.

*speak — spoke, spake(a) — spoken, spoke.*

Note. *Spoke* as a participle is colloquial and rare, but is familiar in the rather humorous expression *English as she is spoke*. *Bespoke* as an attributive participial adjective appears frequently enough, especially in advertisements, as in *Bespoke Tailoring at Ready-made Prices*.

*speed — sped, speeded(r) — sped, speeded.*

Note. *Speeded*, both as a preterite and a participle, appears to be rare, but *speeded up* as a participle, chiefly, if not exclusively, in a passive construction, although not registered by the O. E. D., seems to be used to the exclusion of *sped up*.

(This) process will be speeded up by every move known to the Admiral in command of a squadron. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 119.

Ship-construction is to be speeded up by all possible means. Westm. Gaz., No. 7393, 1a.

The elementary authorities are to be speeded up in all that concerns the physical well-being of the children. ib., No. 6288, 2a.

The scenes succeed each other quickly, and we obtain pace in the delivery of the speeches, so that the whole action is speeded up. Il. Lond. News, No. 3832, 4 0c.

*spelt — spelt, spelled — spelt, spelled.*

Note. *Spelt* is the ordinary spelling, and most probably represents the ordinary pronunciation, even of those persons who prefer the spelling *spelled*.

*spent — spent — spent.*

*spill — spilt, spilled — spilt, spilled.*

Note. *Spilt* is far more common than *spilled* and, no doubt, represents the ordinary pronunciation.

*spin — spun, span — spun.*

Note. In the preterite *spun* may be rather more common than *span* (SWAEN Anglia, XVII).

*spit — spit, spat — spit, spat.*

Note. *Spat* is probably more usual than *spit*, especially as a preterite.

Isaac .. spat in the direction of Meadows. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. II, 36.

Svengali spat in his face. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 152.

Our tormentors .. manned each bridge before us, and actually spat upon our heads as we pulled under. Lit World.

*split — split — split.*

*spoil — spoiled, spoilt — spoiled, spoilt.*

Note. The regular forms are the usual ones in the written or printed language, and may also represent the ordinary pronunciation. They are the only ones of the verb in the sense of *to despoil*, *to plunder*.

Thou hast spoilt the purpose of my life. TEN., *Guin.*, 450.

As usual, local and internal dissections spoiled everything. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, IV, 144.

*spread — spread — spread.*

*spring — sprang, sprung — sprung.*

Note. The usual form of the preterite is *sprang* (SWAEN, Anglia, XVII).

*stave — staved, stove — staved, stove.*

Note. In the meaning of *to crush in* or *to be crushed in*, mostly said of vessels, the preterite and participle *stove* appears to be the only current form. For the rest the verb is regular.

i. Like a vessel of glass she stove and sank. LONGF., Wreck of the Hesp., XVIII.

The hanging-lamp in the dining-room was stove in. THACK., A Little Din. at Tim., Ch. VII, (337).

There were no plates stove in. Times.

ii. He staved all the wine in a vintner's cellar. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 200.

And just as a bulky sugar puncheon, | All ready staved, like a great sun shone  
Glorious scarce an inch before me, | Just as, methought, it said, come, bore  
me! — | I found the Weser rolling o'er me. BROWNING, Pied Piper.

*stand — stood — stood.*

Note. Thus also *understand* and other compounds of *stand*. The obsolete participle *understanded* survives in the collocation *understanded of* (or *by*) the *people*, not uncommon in journalistic English. The survival is due to its occurrence in the Thirty-Nine Articles of Religion of the Church of England, XXXV, printed in the Book of Common Prayer, which contain these words, "*It is a thing plainly repugnant to the Word of God . . . to minister the Sacraments in a tongue not understanded of the people.*" See the O. E. D.; also STOF., Stud. in Eng., 168.

However poor the translation may be, the fact that it is sung in a tongue understanded of the people brings the plot within the reach of all. Graph.

*steal — stole — stolen.*

*stick — stuck — stuck.*

*sting — stung — stung*

*stink — stunk, stank(oc) — stunk.*

*strew — strewed — strewn, strewed.*

Note a) *Strew* varies with *strow* (— *strowed* — *strown*), which, however, is now archaic and dialectal. According to modern usage, the two spellings correspond to the two pronunciations; formerly the spelling *strew* was often used where the rime was a word like *so*, and conversely *strow* was made to rime with *new*, etc. The participle is now most commonly *strewn* or *strown* in passive tenses, especially when there is no distinct reference to an agent; and *strewed*, *strowed* in active senses. O. E. D.

Newspapers were strewn upon the table. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXIX, 151 a

He had strewed the carriage with newspapers and magazines. Miss BRADDON, Wyllard's Weird, I, 1, 13.

β) The derivative *bestrewn* is chiefly used in passive constructions.

We turned down lanes bestrewn with bits of chips and little hillocks of sand. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 15 a.

*stride — strode, strided(oc) — stridden(r), strided(oc).*

Note. The O. E. D. observes, "The recent examples show much uncertainty with regard to the conjugation. Perhaps (though this is far from certain) most people would give *strode*, *stridden* in answer to a grammatical question; but in actual speech and writing there is often hesitation as to the correct form. The p.a.p.ple. rarely occurs; our material includes hardly any 19th or 20th c. examples of *stridden*, and not many of *strided*. In the p.a.t. *strode* is certainly the usual form; but where the reference is to a single act and not to a manner of progression, there seems to be a tendency to say *strided* ('*I strided over the ditch*')."

Randal stood still for a few moments as Harley strided on. LYTTON, My Nov., II, XII, Ch. VI, 383

*strike — struck, strook(a) — struck, stricken.*

Note α) *Stricken*, the older participle, occurs now only in the higher literary style, especially in speaking of calamities, diseases, etc.: so far as the evidence goes, only in the passive construction.

He had been stricken by paralysis through overwork. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. III, 36.

No plausible reason has been given why well-to-do classes have, in proportion to their numbers, been stricken more frequently than the poor. Graph.

In this application it is particularly common in compounds, such as in: *a fever-stricken wretch* (READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. X, 124); *this conscience-stricken deceiver* (WALT. BES., *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XXI, 122), *the sore-stricken city* (Rev. of Rev.), *As the curtain rises, the Imperial Family are discovered terror-stricken* (Punch).

*Struck* occurs in similar compounds, but, apparently, only in predicative use.

Sir Simon was horror-struck. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 44.

*Stricken* is used to the exclusion of *struck* in *stricken field* (= pitched battle). A stricken field is one of the stages upon the road of history. Times, 1898, 710a.

We are glad to see a general disposition to accept the logic of the stricken field. Westm. Gaz., No. 6066, 1c.

"You lay hands on that little fellow," was Russia's retort, now being made good in the stricken field, "and I will tear your ramshackle Empire limb from limb." ib., No. 6648, 3a.

;) *Stricken in years* (earlier *in age*), now archaic, in which the participle belongs to *to strike* in the sense of *to go*, is now only in archaic use; but, in a slightly modified meaning the verb is still current in *to strike across* (*into*, *down*, etc.) *the desert* (*the country*, etc.) and similar combinations.

A third group, more stricken in age, were speculating on the chance of the trade with Alexandria. LYTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. VII, 29a.

He was well-stricken in years. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 77.

δ) The participle *strickened*, not registered in the O. E. D., seems to be of rare occurrence and to belong to the speech of the illiterate.

Does my lord ask *me* .. who, strickened by the magic of his eloquence in Scotland but a year ago, abjured the errors of the Romish church? DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXV, 137b.

*string* — *strung* — *strung*.

Note. *Stringed*, as in *stringed instruments*, is a pure adjective, formed from the noun *string* by appending the suffix *ed* (Ch. LVII, 42).

*strive* — *strove* — *striven*.

*swear* — *swore*, *sware*(a) — *sworn*.

*sweat* — *sweat*, *sweated* (oc) *swat*(a) — *sweat*, *sweated* (oc), *sweaten*(r).

Note a) Of *sweaten* only one example has come to hand: I have toil'd, and till'd, and *sweaten* in the sun. BYRON, *Cain*, III, 1, 109.

β) *Sweated* appears to be the usual form in the causative sense of the verb. See the quotations in the O. E. D., s.v. *sweat*, 11 and 13. See also the definition in this Dictionary of *sweating-house*, which runs: *a house or building in which persons are sweated*. For the rest this form is unusual.

The horses .. *sweated* as though after a run-away from sudden fright. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 12.

I've worked for this, I've *sweated* and I've starved for this. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. IV, 50.

;) *Sweated* in such combinations as *sweated workmen*, *sweated labour*, etc. does not correspond to any application of the verb *to sweat* (Ch. LVII, 42).

She's engaged in .. organizing shop-assistants and *sweated* work-girls. SHAW, *Getting Married*, (227).

*sweep* — *swept* — *swept*.

*swelled* — *swelled*, *swoll* (oc) — *swelled* — *swollen*.

Note a) *Swelled* is the ordinary participle, except when the reference is to a

morbid enlargement of some tissue in the body, or to an increase of size suggesting such a notion. In this case *swollen* is the ordinary participle, especially frequent in the passive construction, and as an adjectival participle.

i. He had swelled into a giant. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXIX, 149 *a*.

The crowd round the inn-door .. had .. swelled to a considerable-size. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 6.

Each year the list of visitors is swelled. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3843, 897 *a*.

ii. \* The opening words of "God save the King!" were heard at the southern entrance, to be quickly swollen by the crowd into a mighty chorus, as the Royal party passed out. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6153, 8 *b*.

Anglers .. have encountered nothing but unfavourable weather and swollen and muddy rivers. *ib*.

The law has, especially of late years, through grave faults in our legal system, become swollen out of all proportion. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 104, 64.

\*\* A man with a great puffed head and forehead, swelled veins in his temples. DICK., *Hard Times*, Ch. IV, 7 *a*.

The cheeks were swelled and bloated. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. I, 38 *a*.

(The dog) lay all gory, stiff, and swelled, on a mat at her feet. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. III, 49.

β) Observe the difference between *swollen head* and the colloquial *swelled head*, the latter denoting inordinate self-conceit, excessive pride or vanity (humorously regarded as a morbid affection). O. E. D.

Dick, it is of common report that you are suffering from swelled head. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. IV, 57.

Have I been boasting? You see some sign of swelled head? Mrs. WARD, *The Case of Rich. Meyn.*, II, Ch. X, 204.

*swim* — *swam* — *swum*.

*swing* — *swung* — *swung*.

*take* — *took* — *taken*.

*tear* — *tore* — *torn*.

*tell* — *told* — *told*.

*think* — *thought* — *thought*.

*thrive* — *throve*, *thrived* (oc) — *thriven*, *thrived* (oc).

Note. The O. E. D. mentions *thrived* as a secondary form for the preterite and the participle, without any comment, but it seems safe to assume that the irregular forms are the ordinary ones.

A small apple tree .. grew just inside the gate, the only one which thrived in the garden. HARDY, *Return*, IV, Ch. V, 346.

*thrust* — *thrust* — *thrust*.

*tread* — *trod*, *trode* (a) — *trodden*, *trod* (oc).

*wake* — *waked*, *woke* — *waked*, *woke*, *woken* (obs).

Note. *Waked* and *woke*, whether as preterites or participles, appear to be equally common. The participle *woken* is said (by the O. E. D.) to be obsolescent.

Mrs. Richards found that her maid-servant was never woken by Mr. Charley's raps after midnight. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. II, 20.

She had just woken up. BARRY PAIN, *A Change of Rôle*, Ch. I.

*weave* — *wove*, *weaved* (a) — *woven*, *wove*, *weaved* (a).

The threats of that Will seem to me to be weaved into the decorations of my walls. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (13).

Note *a*) The participle *wove* seems, at all times, to have been a welcome metrical variant of the more usual *woven*.

A bank | With ivy canopied and interwove | With flaunting honeysuckle. MILT., *Com*, 544.

The web is wove, | The work is done. GRAY, *Bard.*, 100.

Wove Sargossa weed. RUDY. KIPL., *White Horses*.

β) As part of an adjectival compound *wove* may be common enough. Thus *cloth* is defined by the O. E. D. *a plain-wove woollen fabric*.

*weep* — *wept* — *wept*.

*win* — *won* — *won*.

*wind* (turn) — *wound*, *winded* (r) — *wound*, *winded* (r).

Note. In Present English *winded* appears to be rare. In the following quotations *wind(ed)* is, perhaps, to be understood in the sense of *wend(ed)*.

The livelong day Lord Marmion rode: | The mountain path the Palmer show'd, |  
By glen and streamlet winded still, | Where stunted birches hid the rill. SCOTT,  
*Marm.*, III, 1, 3.

Then of the alder-boughs a bier they wrought, | And laid the corpse thereon,  
and 'gan to wind | Homeward amidst the tangled wood and blind. MORRIS,  
*Earthly Par.*, Son of Cræsus, LV.

*wind* (Dutch: blazen) — *wound*, *winded* (r) — *wound*, *winded* (r).

Note. The verb *wind* in *to wind a horn* was formed direct from the noun *wind*, and was conjugated weak — preterite *winded* — in Early Modern English. Horns winded within. SHAK., *Mids.*, IV, 1, 101.

The noun *wind* had the same sound as the verb *wind* in Early Modern English [waɪnd], so that, when the noun came to be pronounced [waɪnd], as it is in Present English, the verb *wind* (= blow), which kept the older pronunciation, was isolated from the noun *wind*, and associated with the old strong *wind*, and took a strong preterite form. *He wound the horn*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1367.

*work* — *worked*, *wrought* (a) — *worked*, *wrought* (a).

Note a) In Early Modern English *wrought* appears to have been the ordinary form of the preterite and the participle.

Being unprepared, | Our will became the servant to defect; | Which else should  
free have wrought. SHAK., *Macb.*, II, 1, 19.

He has wrought with God this day. Bible, *Sam.*, A, XIV, 45.

They wrought with cheerfulness on days of labour. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. VI.

β) In Present Literary English the participle *wrought* is still used:

1) in the meaning of *to produce*, especially of immaterial things, *change* being a frequent object.

Sleeves and gloves .. as flexible to the body as those which are now *wrought*  
in the stocking-loom. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 13.

Tom felt some pride in contemplating the change he had wrought. DICK.,  
*Chuz.*, Ch. L, 389 b.

Time had wrought its natural changes. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 2.

The last few years have wrought a complete change in Oxford. ESCOTT,  
*England*, Ch. VII, 93.

What evil have ye wrought. TEN., *Merl. & Viv.*, 66.

We do not yet feel very much frightened as to the political effects, or even as  
to the direct social effects, wrought and to be wrought by the International  
Council of Women and their International Congress. Times, 1899, 409 b.

We have a glimpse of the mischief that can be wrought in the consequences  
of the rejection of the Ministry of Health Bill. Westm. Gaz., No. 8569, 2 a.

The preterite appears to preserve the regular form in this meaning.

(This) worked such a change in me that I was pronounced well. WATTS  
DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 43.

2) in the meaning of *to influence* in connexion with the preposition (*up*)on.

Philip was not without confidence that his father would be ultimately wrought  
upon as he had expected. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 395.

Timothy .. was not to be wrought on by any oratory. id., *Mid.*, VI, Ch. LVI, 414.

3) in the meaning of *to excite* in connexion with the adverb *up*.

The crowd was wrought up to such an ecstasy of rage that the executioner was in danger of being torn in pieces. *Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 195.*

4) in the meaning of *to manufacture*, in connexion with the preposition *in*; e.g.: purses wrought in steel. *Dick., Christm. Car., I.*

γ) The participle *wrought* is, besides, quite common in certain compounds, such as *highly-wrought prose, a finely-wrought picture, his overwrought nerves*; also in *wrought iron*.

*wreath* — *wreathed* — *wreathed, wreathen* (I).

Note. *Wreathen* seems to be fairly common, in the higher literary style, as part of a compound.

For since the mate had seen at early dawn | Across a break on the mist-wreathen isle | The silent water slipping from the hills, [etc.]. *TEN., En. Ard., 627.*

And all the scowling faces became smile-wreathen. *ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 75.*

*wring* — *wrung* — *wrung*.

*write* — *wrote, writ(a)* — *written, writ(a), wrote(a)*.

Here lies one whose name was writ in water. Epitaph on the grave-stone of Keats, dictated by himself.

Poverty and superstition are writ large over these people. *Westm. Gaz.*

Note. *Wrote*, as a past participle, is met with in the ironic phrase *English as she is wrote*.

*writhe* — *writhed* — *writhed, writhen* (a, I).

See how his writhen features show under the hollow helmet. *SCOTT, Fair Maid, Introd., 14.*

Their countenances seemed fiercely writhen into the wildest expression of pride. *ib., Ch. XXXIV, 362.*

That tawny stream | .. Of intertwining writhen snakes was full. *MORRIS, Earthly Par., Doom of King Acrisius, 72b.*

### Anomalies.

8. a) In the Literary English of the present day the conjugation of *to be* is as follows: Infinitive *to be*; Gerund and Present Participle: *being*; Past Participle: *been*; Imperative: *be*; Indicative Present: *I am, thou art, he is, we are*, etc.; Indicative Preterite: *I was, thou wast, he was, we were*, etc.; Subjunctive Present: *I be, thou be, he be, we be*, etc.; Conditional Preterite: *I were, thou wert, he were, we were*, etc.

b) In the Indicative Preterite *thou wert* is an occasional variant of *thou wast*; in the Subjunctive Present there is a tendency to replace *thou be* by *thou beest*.

Note. For the use of *thou wert* as an indicative in Modern English see especially JESPERSEN (*Beiblatt zur Anglia* XXII, viii, 255). According to H. T. PRICE (in the same periodical XXII, xii, 374), the modern distinction is due to the Authorized Version.

Hail to thee, blithe Spirit! | Bird thou never wert. *SHELLEY, To a Skylark, I.*  
Most glorious night! | Thou wert not sent for slumber. *BYRON, Ch. Har., III, xciii.*

Just now thou wert but a coward. *KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho! Ch. XVIII, 137a.*  
I saw thee that thou wert fair: I knew thee that thou wert mine. *CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. X, 208.*

c) By the side of the ordinary conjugation Early Modern English not unfrequently has *I be, thou beest, he be, we be, you (ye) be, they be* in the present indicative (Ch. XLIX, § 2). For illustration in SHAKESPEARE see A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s. v. *be*.

Such men as he be never at heart's ease | Whiles they behold a greater than themselves. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 208.

For such there be, but unbelief is blind. MILTON, COMUS, 519.

If thou beest he. id., PAR. LOST, I, 84.

Here be a set of fellows willing to be merry. SCOTT, KENILW., Ch. I, 20.

There be those in this house who would be alarmed by the sight of a stranger. ib., Ch. III, 39.

But there be deeds thou dardest not do. BYRON, BRIDE OF ABYDOS, I, v.

OLD GENTLEMAN: "Everything seems very forward, Thomas." — THOMAS: "Yes, Sir; I suppose that be on account of Easter fallen' so early. PUNCH, No. 3741, 217.

GENIAL SQUIRE: "Many happy returns, William. I was just going to call on you with a little bit of tobacco" — WILLIAM (aged 80): "Thank ye kindly, Sir, but I be done wi' smokin'." ib., 213 b.

In Literary English of the present day they survive in certain idioms, such as are illustrated in:

There be times and seasons. GOOD WORDS (= Dutch Alles op zijn tijd).

(He) was always a friend to the powers that be. THACK., ESML., I, Ch. X, 99.

Few there be who reach those startling heights. IL. LOND. NEWS, No. 3859, 443 a.

d) According to SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1490), there is a tendency in Modern English to substitute *was* for *were* in the preterite conditional; i. e., for example, to replace *if I were you* by *if I was you*. It seems open to doubt that this tendency is widespread, and that the substitution is not grating on the ears of the educated. In his scheme of the conjugation of *to be* in Present Spoken English the form *was* as the preterite conditional is wanting.

e) In the eighteenth century *you was* seems to have been common enough in the speech of educated people in addressing one person. See UHRSTRÖM, Studies on the Language of Samuel Richardson, 18. He quotes:

I am honest, tho' poor: And if you was a prince, I would not be otherwise. RICH., PAMELA, I, 19.

To say the truth this was the only house in the kingdom where you was sure to gain a dinner by deserving it. FIELD., TOM JONES, I, Ch. X, 11 a.

f) The interrogative *am not I* is replaced by *aren't I*, but *am I not* would most probably be preferred by most grammatically-trained persons.

I am bound to know, aren't I? HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, II, Ch. II, III, 79.

I say, aren't I the limit, gassing away like this? ib., II, Ch. IV, VII, 112.

9. The main anomalies in the conjugation of *to have* are in the formation of the second person singular present and preterite *thou*



*hast, thou hadst*, and of the third person singular present *he has* or *hath*.

10. As to *to do* it should be observed that it has different forms in the singular present, according as it is followed by an infinitive or *not*. Compare *thou dost not do thy duty* with *thou doest thy duty*, and *he does* (or *doth*) *not do his duty* with *he does* (or *doeth*) *his duty*.
11. A separate group of anomalous verbs is formed by the so-called preterite-present verbs, characterized by not having a personal ending in the third person singular of what is now used as a present, viz. *can, dare, may, must, shall, will* (originally a preterite subjunctive), and the archaic *wit*, (Ch. L, 8, *e*). Except for *dare* they are all of them defective in not having an imperative, nor any of the verbals. *Will*, however, has also developed a regular conjugation (15, *d*). For discussion of *to dare* see Ch. LV, 16—31; for that of *to need*, which has undergone more or less the influence of the preterite-present verbs (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1487), see Ch. LV, 6—15.
12. In Present English the only forms of *can* are *can, (thou) canst, could, (thou) could(e)st*; the only forms of *may* are *may, (thou) may(est), might, (thou) might(e)st*; the only forms of *shall* are *shall, (thou) shalt, should, (thou) should(e)st*.
13. *Must*, originally a preterite conditional is now chiefly used as a present indicative; as a preterite indicative it is current only if the time-sphere of both the utterance and the obligation is the past. The preterite conditional is mostly met with in connexion with the perfect infinitive. For illustration see Ch. I, 23 f; 34 f; Ch. LV, 60.  
The verb has no other form than the above. The old present *mote* survives in the language of the Free-Masons, who use *So mote it be* (= So may it be) in place of *Amen*.
14. What has been said about the way in which *must* is used in Present English applies also to *ought*, which is the descendant of the preterite *āhte (ahte)* of the Old English *āgan* (= possess), one of the preterite-present verbs. It has now two forms *ought* and *ought(e)st*. It is now distinguished from the other preterite-present verbs (except *dare*) in that it is normally followed by an infinitive with *to*.

In vulgar language *ought* is often used as an infinitive in connexion with *to do*, and as a past participle preceded by the conditional *had* and followed by an infinitive with *to*. See FRANZ, *Die Dialect Sprache bei Dickens*, E. S., XII; STOF., *Taalstudie VIII*.

i. It's a young woman, sir — a young woman that Em'ly knowed once, and doesn't ought to know no more. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 167 *b*.

And now the old lady downstairs is turning down the gas; she always does at half past ten. She didn't ought. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 3, 307.

You think I'm just a little cad who took liberties he didn't ought to. *ib.*, § 4, 309.

They did ought to let me have my man or my boy, one or the other. GALSW., *Tat.*, I, iv, 90,

ii. They hadn't ought to shirk the consequences. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*. Old folks hadn't ought to work like the young. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVI, 307.

Note. *Ought* in the meaning of *owed* or *possessed* is now obsolete.

i. He said .. you ought him a thousand pound. SHAK., *Henry, IV*, A, III, 3, 152.

ii. I would give half of what I am aught, to know if it (sc. the monument) is still in existence. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, *Introd.*, 3.

15. a) *Will* as a defective verb has the following forms: *will*, *wilt*, *would*, *would(e)st*.

The colloquial *won't* goes back to a frequent secondary form of the present indicative *wol(e)*.

I wol my-selven gladly with yow ryde. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 803.

b) In Old English *will*, like several other verbs, had a special negative form, the result of contraction with a preceding *ne* (= not); thus *iċ nyle*, *þū nylt*, etc. Instances of these contracted form occur also in Middle English and Early Modern English.

Certes, I nil never ete breed. CHAUC., *The Book of the Duchesse*, 92.

And what ensues in this fell storm | Shall for itself itself perform. | I nill relate, action may | Conveniently the rest convey. SHAK., *Per.*, III, *Dumb Show*, 55.

The form survives in the phrase *will he*, *nill he*, in Present English mostly written or printed *willy*, *nilly* and understood as a compound adverb.

And, will you, nill you, I will marry you. SHAK., *Tam.*, II, 273.

c) The defective *will* is mostly construed with an infinitive, but may also be followed by a subordinate statement, unequivocally only in the preterite subjunctive. This *would* is only used in the higher literary language.

Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them. Bible, *Matth.*, VII, 12.

Special mention may be made of (*I*) *would* before a subordinate statement which expresses what is the subject of an idle wish (Ch. XLIX, 10, 18).

I would to heaven you had been his son! DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. LI, 395 *a*.

d) In the higher literary style *will* is frequent enough as a full verb conjugated regularly, save for the second person singular of the present, which appears, so far as the evidence goes, only in the form *wilt*. Of the regular second person of the preterite,

which would be *willedst*, no instances have come to hand. The conjugation, accordingly, appears to be: Infinitive: *to will*; Present Participle and Gerund: *willing*; Past Participle: *willed*; Present: (*I*) *will*, (*thou*) *wilt*, (*he*) *wills* (or *willeth*), *we will* etc.; Preterite: (*I*) *willed*, etc.

This *will* is used:

1) as a transitive verb, construed with α) a (pro)noun: When God Almighty wills it, our secrets are found out. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVIII, 141.

If the King willed your restoration, Prince, he could accomplish it. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. XII, 143.

He who wishes a temporal end for itself does in truth will the means. COLERIDGE, *Note to Macb.*, I, 5, 18 (*The Era Shakespeare*).

Neither thanks nor threats affect the man who wholly wills the thing he wills. *Lit. World*, 1890, 355 *b*.

But fate had willed it otherwise. *ib.*, 207 *a*.

We all know what the Kaiser meant to do three years ago. The difference is that he now realises that he cannot do what he willed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7530, 2 *b*.

β) an infinitive: Though he had willed more than a year before not to see her again, he had all the time nursed a faint hope of a possible reunion. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, II, 201.

You willed not to play and it was the right you willed. *ib.*, 207.

Suppose one wills to raise one's arm and whirl it round. HUXL., *Meth. and Res.*, Ch. IV, 187.

γ) a subordinate statement: What wilt thou that I shall do unto thee? Bible, *Luke*, XVIII, 41.

Then falling upon his knees, he prayed Heaven to spare him from such deeds, and rather to will that he should die at once, than be reserved for crimes so fearful and appalling. DICK., *Ol. Twist*.

Two things God willeth, that we should be good, and that we should be happy. WEBST., *Dict.*

To the end of our way we will be her brothers, as fate wills that we can be no more. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIV, 363.

He had resolved not to play, had willed that he would utterly renounce gaming. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, 204.

δ) an accusative with infinitive: They willed me to wait thy arrival. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. III, 99.

Her Highness willed me to send you word, that she wisheth you as great good rap and safety to your ship as if she were there in person. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XI, 97 *b*.

2) as an intransitive verb:

Not as I will, but as thou wilt. Bible, *Matth.*, XXVI, 39.

'Il ne'er gi' up mine — the lawyers and doctors may do as they will. SHER., *Riv.*, I, I, (214).

Thou know'st the secret wishes of my heart. Do with me as thou wilt, thy will is best. MISS YONGE, *Redc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 131.

'And will you begin this Gehad against the Infidel?' — "That is as Allah wills," the Amine responded, bowing his head. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XVIII.

Note the proverbial saying: He who will not when he may, when he wills it shall have nay. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, I, Ch. IX, 36.

e) *Will* in the sense of *to bequeath* is, naturally, regular in every respect.

Was it not enough that I should have been willed away? DICK, *Our Mut. Friend*, II.

We fell to discussing .. the settlement of the property that her husband had willed my daughter. SAVAGE, *My Offic. Wife*, 149.

All the rest of her property .. she had willed not to me, seeing I was already rich, but to a good man, who would make the best use of it that any human being could do. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch XI, 225.

16. The archaic, almost obsolete, *wot* is the descendant of the Old English preterite-present *wāt*. Also its preterite *wist* occurs now only as an occasional archaism. Besides the above forms the verb has *wotst*, *wotteth*, *wots*, *wotting*, all of them due to ignorance of *wot* being a preterite, and but rarely met with in Late Modern English; *to wit*, used as a literary equivalent of *viz.* (namely) and in the formal phrase *I do you to wit*; *witting*, which is at all common only in *unwittingly* (= unknowingly); *unweeting*, very rare, used by MILTON.

Note. The antiquated *I wis* is a corruption of the Middle-English *iwis*, which stands for the Old-English *ġewiss*, an old past participle. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1486.

i. Yea, but (quoth she) the perill of this place | I better wot then you. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, i, 13, 3.

And wot you what I found | There, on my conscience, put unwittingly? SHAK., *Henry VIII*, III, 2, 122.

Nor wot we how a name — a word — | Makes clansmen vassals to a lord. SCOTT, *Lady*, VI, xi, 23.

Mike may have mended like other folks, you wot. *id.*, *Kenilw.*, Ch. I, 21.

Wot we not, | As all his brethren borderers wot, | How blind of heart, how keen and hot | The wild north lives and hates the south. SWINB., *Tale of Balen*, I, 11.

ii. Wot'st thou whom thou movest? SHAK., *Ant. & Cleop.*, I, 5, 22.

iii. More water glideth by the mill than wots the miller of. *id.*, *Tit. Adron.*, II, I, 86.

Behold, my master wotteth not what is with me in the house. Bible, *Gen.* XXXIX, 8.

iv. And even so fell it that his doom, | For all his bright life's kindling bloom, | Fell as a breath from the opening soul | Full on him ere he wist or thought. SWINB., *Tale of Balen*, I, 10.

He wist not how Sir Launceor | Drew nigh from Camelot. *ib.*, III, 14.

v. \* Queen Elizabeth had slept there one night while upon a hunting excursion, to wit, in a certain oak-panelled room with a deep bay-window. DICK, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 2a.

I cannot but secretly applaud the benevolent barbarian who had painted another and larger apartment of Fieldhead — the drawing-room to wit — .. of a delicate pinky white. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XI, 254.

\*\* Moreover, brethren, we do you to wit of the grace of God bestowed on the churches of Macedonia Bible, *Cor.*, B, VIII, I.

vi. The gods themselves, | Wotting no more than I, are ignorant. SHAK., *Wint. Tale*, III, 2, 77.

vii. Yet have they many baits, and guilefull spells | To inveigle and invite

th'unwary sense | Of them that pass unweeting by the way. MILTON, *Com.*, 539.  
 iii. He nas unwittingly injured himself, or his neighbour. WEBST., *Dict.*  
 The unwitting Sue and Jude, the couple in question, had determined to [etc.].  
 HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. V, 365.  
 ix. I wis your grandam had a worsen match. SHAK, *Rich*, III, I, 3, 102.  
 I wis, in all the Senate, | There was no heart so bold, | But sore it ached and  
 fast it beat, | When that ill news was told. MAC, *Hor.*, XVIII.  
 The falsest damosel she is | That works men ill on earth I wis. SWINB.,  
*Tale of Balen*, III, 18.

17. It will have been observed that a good many verbs ending in a dental stop owe their irregularity to the suppression of the ending *ed* in the preterite and past participle; thus *to spread* — *spread* — *spread*, *to cast* — *cast* — *cast*.

Although due allowance should be made for the requirements of metre and rime, which also in Present English may sometimes have been the occasion of the dropping of this suffix, this suppression appears to have been more common in Early Modern English than it is now. ABBOT (*Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 342) mentions the following instances from SHAKESPEARE: *acquit*, *addict*, *articulate*, *betid*, *bloat(ed)*, *contract*, *degenerate*, *deject*, *devote*, *disjoint*, *enshield*, *exhaust*, *graft*, *heat*, *hoist*, *infect*, *quit*, *suffocate*, *taint*, *wed*, *waft*, *wet*, *whist*.

The list is not complete, most probably is not intended to be complete. To the above examples we may add those in the following quotations:

And the issue there create | Ever shall be fortunate. SHAK., *Mids.*, V, 412.  
 With this field-dew consecrate, | Every fairy take his gait. *ib.*, 422.  
 And this report | Hath so exasperate the King, that he | Prepares for some  
 attempt of war. *id.*, *Mac b.*, III, 6, 38.

A few examples drawn from Late Modern English are added:

In vain a rival barr'd his claim, | Whose faith with Clare's was plight. SCOTT,  
*Marm.*, II, xxviii, 3.  
 You've wet both your feet. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I,  
 Ch. III, 57.

### Isolated Forms.

18. In conclusion mention should be made of some isolated forms which have become obsolete or are used only as archaisms.

*besprent* = *besprinkled*: This evening late, by then the chewing flocks  
 Had ta'en their supper on the savoury herb | Of knot-grass dew-besprent, and  
 were in fold, | I sate me down to watch upon a bank. MILTON, *Comus*, 542.  
 Bare-headed, breathless and besprent with mire, | With sense of wrong and  
 outrage desperate, | (he) Strode on and thundered at the palace-gate. LONGF.,  
*King Rob. of Sicily*, 52.

*dight* = mostly *clad*, *arrayed*, not uncommon in SCOTT and in later poetic and romantic language:

Why do these steeds stand ready dight? SCOTT, *Lay*, I, 42.  
 All as they left the listed plain, | Much of the story she did gain; | .. How.

in Sir William's armour dight, | Stolen by his page, while slept the knight, |  
He took on him the single fight. *ib.*, V, 430.

Note. The word is sometimes understood in the synonymous meaning of *decked, adorned*:

The clouds in thousand liveries dight. MILTON.<sup>1)</sup>

Storied window richly dight. *id.*<sup>2)</sup>

In this sense also *bedight*, as in: And in his upper room at home |  
Stood many a rare and sumptuous tome, | In vellum bound, with gold bedight.  
LONGF., *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, Prel., 128.

*hight* = *called*, as a past participle: Childe Harold was he hight: but  
whence his name | And lineage long, it suits me not to say. BYRON, *Ch.*  
*Har.*, I, III.

Note. SCOTT has *hight* in the meaning of *promised* in:

Yet so the sage had hight to play his part, | That he should see her form in  
life and limb, | And mark, if still she loved, and still she thought of him.  
Lay, VI, 263. (See also CHAUC., *Cant. T.*, A, 2672.)

*quoth* = *said*, used only as a preterite in the first and third persons,  
with the subject always following the verb:

Quoth I: "But have you no prisons at all now?" MORRIS, *News from*  
*Nowhere*, Ch. VII, 47.

Quoth the irrepressible weaver: "Dear neighbour, since you knew the Forest  
some time ago, could you tell me what truth there is in the rumour that in  
the nineteenth century the trees were all pollards?" *ib.*, Ch. III, 16.

Note. *Quoth he* is sometimes mutilated into *quotha*, uttered with  
contemptuous or sarcastic force in repeating a word or phrase used  
by another; hence = *indeed! forsooth!* O. E. D.

"I don't think a boy wants much learning to spend fifteen hundred a year." —  
"Learning, quotha! a mere composition of tricks and mischief." GOLDSMITH,  
*She Stoops*, I, (168).

*wont* in *to be wont* (Ch. I, 54): It (sc. the village street) was the same  
as it was wont to be. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXV, 97 a.

In the days of my youth there were wont to be two solemn metropolitan in-  
stitutions. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, J, 122.

Note a) The verb *won*, of which *wont* is the past participle, is  
frequently used by SCOTT in the preterite *wont*, practically in the same  
meaning as *was* (or *were*) *wont* (Ch. LIV, 3).

Not his the form, nor his the eye, | That youthful maidens wont to fly. *Lady*,  
I, xx, 20.

And we must hold the wood and wold | As outlaws wont to do. *Alice*  
*Brand*, II.

b) SCOTT also has it in the meaning of *to dwell, to abide*.

Up spoke the moody Elfin King | Who wonn'd within the hill. *Alice*  
*Brand*, X.

c) The adjective *wonted*, which is quite common in literary English,  
has been formed from the noun *wont*: *He heard me with his wonted*  
*courtesy. He met with the wonted obstacles.* Conc. Oxf. Dict.

1) WEBST., Dict.

2) SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1346.

δ) MILTON has *wont'st*, probably as a present, in:

Unmuffle, ye faint stars; and thou fair Moon | That wont'st to love the tra-  
vailer's benison. *Comus*, 332.

*worth*, a relic of the old verb *weorthan* (= to become, Dutch *worden*), preserved in *Woe worth the day*, etc.

Woe worth the chase, woe worth the day, | That cost thy life, my gallant  
grey. *Scott, Lady*, I, ix.

*yclept* (or *iclept*), also, less commonly, *ycleped* = *called*; much  
affected as a literary archaism by Elizabethan and subsequent poets;  
in less dignified style often used for the sake of quaintness or with  
serio-comic intention. O. E. D.

The shortest path from the Hollow to the Rectory wound near a certain  
mansion, .. the old and tenantless dwelling yclept Fieldhead. *Ch. BRONTË*,  
*Shirley*, I, Ch. XI, 244.

Note. The other forms of the verb, of which the above is the past  
participle, are now seldom met with. Students of SHAKESPEARE will  
remember:

This heavy-headed revel east and west | Makes us traduced and tax'd of other  
nations: | They clepe us drunkards, and with swinish phrase | Soil our ad-  
dition. *Hamlet*, I, iv, 19.





THE PARTICLES.



## CHAPTER LIX.

### ADVERBS.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Formation of Adverbs . . . . .	1—48
Primary Adverbs . . . . .	2
Secondary Adverbs . . . . .	3—48
Secondary Adverbs and Group-adverbs formed by Inflection . . . . .	5—13
Genitive Inflection . . . . .	6—12
Dative Inflection . . . . .	13
Secondary Adverbs formed by Prefixes . . . . .	14
Secondary Adverbs formed by Suffixes . . . . .	15—38
The suffix <i>ly</i> . . . . .	16—36
The suffix <i>ling</i> . . . . .	37
The suffix <i>meal</i> . . . . .	38
Secondary Adverbs and Group-adverbs formed by Composition . . . . .	39—42
Adverbs in <i>wise</i> . . . . .	40
Adverbs in <i>fashion</i> . . . . .	41
Adverbs and Group-adverbs in <i>like</i> . . . . .	42
Secondary Adverbs with a Pronominal Root . . . . .	43—48
Different Parts of Speech turned into Adverbial Adjuncts . . . . .	49—71
Nouns turned into Adverbial Adjuncts . . . . .	49—58
Pronouns and Indefinite Numerals turned into Adverbial Adjuncts . . . . .	59—71
Meaning of Adverbs . . . . .	72—91
Adverbs divided into Different Groups . . . . .	72
Discussion of some Adverbs . . . . .	73—79
Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation . . . . .	80—88
Negating implied . . . . .	88—89

Negative and Affirmative Construction semantically identical . . . . .	90
Accumulation of Negatives . . . . .	91
Adverbial Notions expressed by other Parts of Speech . . . . .	92
Adverbial Notions expressed by Verbs . . . . .	93— 95
Adverbial Notions expressed by Adjectives . . . . .	96—100
Adverbial Notions expressed by Nouns . . . . .	101—102
Adverbial Notions expressed by Indefinite Pronouns or Numerals . . . . .	103
Adverbial Notions expressed by Phrases . . . . .	104
Function of Adverbs . . . . .	105—107
Adverbs denoting the nature or intensity of an action, state or quality, or circumstances generally . . . . .	105
Adverbs modifying Adjectives . . . . .	106—107
Conversion of Adverbs into other Parts of Speech . . . . .	108—114
Conversion of Adverbs into Adnominal Modifiers . . . . .	108—112
Conversion of Adverbs into Nouns . . . . .	113
Conversion of Adverbs into Verbs . . . . .	114

## The Formation of Adverbs.

1. As to their formation adverbs may be divided into *a)* primary and *b)* secondary adverbs.

### Primary Adverbs.

2. Primary adverbs show no connection with the other parts of speech, except the other particles (prepositions and conjunctions). Thus the adverbs *in* and *up* in *come in!* *come up!* are used also as prepositions, as in *to stay in the house, to come up the road*; but they are not related to ordinary nouns, adjectives or verbs. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 337.

*b)* Among the primary adverbs there are two which have another form or, at least, another spelling, than that of the corresponding preposition, viz.:

*fro*, corresponding to the preposition *from* and only used, at least in Standard English, in the phrase *to and fro*.

A fierce mental struggle wrenched him to and fro. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. V, 55.

*too*, in the sense of *a)* *also*, *besides*, and *β)* French *trop*.

According to STOF (*Taalstudie*, X, 159 ff) it was not until the middle of the sixteenth century that the adverb *to* in the above meanings came to be distinguished from the preposition *to* and the adverb *to* in its other senses, by taking the spelling *too*. The old editions of SHAKESPEARE, for example, though they always give the unemphatic preposition as *to*, often print the modern *too* as *to*, and the adverb *to* as *too*. CAXTON consistently printed *to*, to represent modern *to* as well as *too*.

The modern *too* in either of the two above-mentioned meanings, originated in a peculiar application of the preposition *to*, viz. *added to*, which is frequent in Elizabethan English, but obsolete in Present English.

'Tis much he dares; | And, to that dauntless temper of his mind, | He hath a wisdom that doth guide his valour | To act in safety. SHAK., *Macb.*, III, I, 52.

The Greeks are strong and skilful to their strength. id., *Troil. & Cres.*, I, 1, 7.

*To*, as an adverb, has maintained itself in a variety of meanings. Although the definition and illustration of these meanings lies outside the department of grammar, being a matter of pure lexicography, the

following discussion of them will, it is hoped, be deemed acceptable. The adverb *to* is used:

1) to express a movement in the direction of the speaker; now only in the combination *to and fro*. In earlier English also in other connexions, thus:

My wind cooling my broth | Would blow me to an ague. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, 1, 23.

2) to express sharp contact, especially after verbs denoting a shutting or closing. The O. E. D. brands this application as archaic and colloquial, but the word seems to be used frequently enough also in ordinary English.

He banged the door to. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 25.

She scarcely ever opened the door of a dark cupboard, without clapping it to again, in the belief that she had got him. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24*b*

The door was slammed to. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 37.

Then that (sc. noise) stopped all of a sudden, and the bolts went to like fun. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 235.

"Dover express," the guard shouted, as he came along, banging the doors to. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 84.

The door was cautiously opened, and shut to again behind me as soon as I had passed. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. III, (200).

Before I had time to add a further protest, he pulled the door to, and I heard him lock me in from the outside. *ib.*, (203).

3) to express various forms of quietude after some movement or disturbance: *a*) rest after sailing, especially after *to bring* (O. E. D., s. v. *bring*, 25, *b*), *to come* (O. E. D., s. v. *come*, 68, *b*) and *to lie* (O. E. D., s. v. *lie*, 28).

i. Madame brought them to with a lively broadside across her bows. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*.

ii. The gale having gone over, we came-to. R. DANA, *Bef. Mast*, XXIV.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. A few hours afterwards they lay to until the morning, awaiting the arrival of a steamboat in which the passengers were to be conveyed ashore. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XV, 131*b*.

*β*) submission or acquiescence after resistance, especially after *to bring* (O. E. D., s. v. *bring*, 25, *d*), and *to come* (O. E. D., s. v. *come*, 68, *c*). Both combinations are marked as obsolete by the O. E. D.

i. I was forced to use a little fatherly authority to bring her to. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, XVIII, Ch. XII, 174*a*.

ii. Suppose the old lady does not come to. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 171. (Compare: Miss Crawley would infallibly relent or "come round," as he said, after a time. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 165.)

*γ*) recovery after a swoon or fainting fit, especially after *to bring* (O. E. D., s. v. *bring*, 25, *e*), and *to come* (O. E. D., s. v. *come*, 68, *d*).

i. "I'll bring her to!" said the driver with a brutal grin. Mrs. STOWE, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, XXXIII, 299 (= *to bring to oneself*, as in: Mrs. Partridge was, at length .. brought to herself. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. IV, 21*a*)

ii. When he came to, (they) saw him safely out of the churchyard. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 63. (= *to come to oneself*, as in: It was with a start that he

---

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

suddenly came to himself. CON. DOYLE, Ref., 324. Compare Ch. XXXIV, 31, s. v. *to*, V.)

4) to express great vigour as to the starting of certain activities, *a*) such as eating, especially in connexion with *to fall* (O. E. D., s. v. *fall*, 99, *c*), *to set* (O. E. D., s. v. *set*, 152, *f*), and *to stand* (O. E. D., s. v. *stand*, 101, *b*). None of these combinations appear to be common in Present English; that with *to stand* is distinctly obsolete.

i. As I had had nothing to eat since morning, I fell to directly. MRS. GASK., COUS. PHIL., III, 61.

We fell to on our breakfast. MORRIS, News from Nowhere, Ch. III, 15.

ii. Edward then set to with a good appetite. MARRYAT, Childr. New For., Ch. VIII.

iii. I will stand to and feed, | Although my last: no matter, since I feel | The best is past. Brother, my lord the duke, | Stand to and do as we. SHAK., Temp., III, 3, 49.

*β*) such as fighting, especially after *to set* (O. E. D. s. v. *set*, 152, *f*).

i. Du Loo and his pet of the Fancy retired to the far end of the room, and there set-to, delivering from the left shoulder. OUIDA, Held in Bondage, Ch. VI, 70.

Note. *Set-to* is frequently used as a noun, mostly in the meaning of a fight (O. E. D., s. v. *set-to*).

A good set-to between the Highlanders and the French cuirassiers. PUNCH, 1890, 15 *b*.

*γ*) such as are expressed by *to buckle* (O. E. D., s. v. *buckle*, 2, *c*), *to fall* (O. E. D., s. v. *fall*, 99, *c*), *to set* (O. E. D., s. v. *set*, 152, *f*), *to turn* (O. E. D., s. v. *turn*, 79, *a*); and *to lay* (O. E. D., s. v. *lay* (58): in connexion with the last verb now obsolete.

i. I must buckle to again and endeavour to get the steam up. DICK. (FORST., Life of Dick.)<sup>1)</sup>

ii. It's a nasty, stiff clayey, dauby bit of ground, and thou and I must fall to, come next Monday. MRS. GASK., COUS. PHIL., I, 15.

iii. Robinson set to with energy, and dug for the bare life. READE, Never too late, I, Ch. X, 116.

iv. As you was so good as to say that, .. why I turned to with a will. DICK., Cop., Ch. IX, 63 *b*.

v. Monster, lay-to your fingers: help to bear this away where my hogshead of wine is. SHAK., Temp., IV, 251.

Some applications of adverbial *to* have fallen into disuse; thus those illustrated by:

i. My wind cooling my broth | Would blow me to an ague. SHAK., Merch. I, 1, 23.

ii. And they said one to another, Go to, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly. Bible, Gen., XI, 3. (Thus also: ib., XI, 7; ib., James, V, 1.)

iii. If the iron be blunt and he do not whet the edge, then must he put to more strength. Bible, Eccles., X, 10.

iv. Can honour set to a leg? Henry IV, A, V, 1, 133 (= Present Eng. *set*.) He that hath received his testimony hath set to his seal that God is true. Bible, John, III, 33.

Note. The adverbial *to* also occurs as the head-word of the adverbial *close* or *near*.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

i. Won't it be jolly to see a clown close to? ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. IX, 183.

Close to, he had not so much that look of an animal behind bars. GALSW., *Beyond*, I, Ch. III, 36.

ii. The majority of the tenements were in Carpenter's Square near to. ARN. BENNETT, *The Card*, Ch. II, iii, 34.

c) *For*, *from*, *of*, *till* and *with* are the only prepositions that are not used as adverbs also. *From* and *of* have, however, adverbial representatives in *fro* (in *to* and *fro*), and *off* respectively.

### Secondary Adverbs and Group-adverbs.

3. Secondary adverbs are formed from other parts of speech, such as adjectives, nouns, pronouns and verbs. Thus *brightly* and *afresh* are respectively formed from the adjectives *bright* and *fresh*; *partly* and *namely* from the nouns *part* and *name*; *piercingly* and *affectedly* from the participles *piercing* and *affected*; *there* and *then* from a pronominal root.
4. From various causes many secondary adverbs are uniform with the words from which they are derived. Thus the adverbs in *He worked hard*, *He went home*, *We came bang against one another* (MARRYAT, *Poacher*, Ch. XXVIII), have the same form as the corresponding adjective, noun and verb. For further instances of adjectives that are used as adverbs without undergoing any change of form see below.

### Secondary Adverbs and Group-Adverbs formed by Inflection.

5. Many secondary adverbs are formed by derivation, which may be inflection, or by composition from nouns, adjectives and pronouns. Inflection often goes together with other forms of derivation or with composition. The formation of adverbs through inflection has now become extinct.

### Genitive Inflection.

6. Many instances have come down from earlier English of adverbs and adverbial word-groups formed by genitive inflection. See also Ch. V, 5. In most cases there is a secondary form without the genitival suffix, sometimes expressing a modified meaning, sometimes used in a different, mostly a more literary form of diction, sometimes belonging to another, mostly an earlier, period of the language.

The adverbs and adverbial word-groups formed by genitive inflection may be divided into certain groups.



## Adverbs denoting a relation of Time.

7. *a-nights*, varying with *a-night*; both now only met with as archaisms, *at night* being used in their stead. *A-nights* is due to the coalescence of the two Old-English forms *on-night*, in which *on* by common change was reduced to *a*, and *nigh*tes, an adverbial genitive. See the O. E. D.
- i. Sleek-headed men and such as sleep a-nights. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 193. She had lain awake a'nights. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 63. If a man has no worse sin on his conscience than shooting a black cock on the Twelfth, he should sleep sound a'nights. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. VIII.

- ii. Anight my shallop, rustling thro' | The low and bloomed foliage, drove | The fragrant, glistening deeps, and clove | The citron-shadows in the blue: TEN., Rec. Arab. Nights, 12.

Note. The corresponding *a-day(s)* seems at all times to have been less common, except in the compound *now-a-days*: Pray thee, Doralice, why do we quarrel thus a-days? DRYD., Mar., III, 1.

*betimes*, varying with *betime*, which is now obsolete. SHAKESPEARE has both.

- i. He tires betimes that spurs too fast betimes. SHAK., Rich. II, II, 1, 36.

They went off betimes next morning. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXIV, 277 b.

- ii. To business that we love we rise betime. SHAK., Ant. & Cleop., IV, 4, 20.

*early days*, apparently uncommon and dialectal. It occurs but once in SHAKESPEARE (Troil., IV, 5, 12).

It's early days, Major, to be labelling Leigh the wrong sort. MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter, II, Ch. I, 45.

But it is early days for the Prime Minister to deal in hints of dissolution to the faithful Commons. Westm. Gaz., No. 8052, 1 b.

Note. Also *early times*, a variant of *early days*, is uncommon: Have you gathered any intelligence? — None that can be depended on as yet; .. but it's early times as yet. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LVII, 474.

*eftsoons*, varying with *eftsoon*, the older but rarer form; both now obsolete or archaic.

- i. Now must I mark the villany we found; | But, ah! too late, as shall eftsoons be shewn. THOMS., Castle of Indol., I, LXXXIII.

- ii. Sir Oluf questioned the Knight eftsoon | If he were come from heaven down. LONGF., The Elected Knight, VII.

*now-a-days*, also written without hyphens, varying with *now-a-day*, which is not nearly as frequent.

- i. There are but few now-a-days who could show so blameless a life. EDNA LYALL, Kn. Er., Ch. I, 13.

- ii. A very humble branch of manufactures, receives several names, now-a-day, according to the means used. WHITTOCK, Bk. Trades, 411. 1)

Note. *Thenadays*, modelled after *now-a-days*, is as yet uncommon.

We always had in our minds the big, roomy pockets which our mothers wore under their gowns; there were no dressers thenadays. Notes & Quer.

*sometimes*, according to SKEAT (Etym. Dict.) the *s* is the suffix of the genitive singular; according to the O. E. D., it is the suffix of

1) O. E. D.

the plural. The uninflected *sometime* is now mostly used in the sense of *at one time*, in a function which is difficult to distinguish from that of an ordinary adjective. CHAUCER has only *som-tyme*. SHAKESPEARE uses the inflected and the uninflected forms indifferently in three meanings, the uninflected forms, however, outnumbering the inflected. Only in the meaning of *at other times, on other occasions* (German *sonst*) is *sometime* used to the exclusion of *sometimes*. SCHMIDT (Shak. Lex.) registers only two examples: Mids., IV, 1, 58, and Henry VI, C, II, 2, 30.

*Sometimes* and *sometime* are now rigidly distinguished from *some time* and *at some time*. All the above words and word-groups having already been amply discussed in Ch. XL, 176, Obs. III, and 181, there is no need of ample illustration in this place. The following must, therefore, suffice:

in CHAUCER.

- i. This ilke worthy knight had been also | Somtyme with the lord of Palatye. CHAUCER, Cant. Tales, A, 65. (= once.)
- ii. For som-tyme, lady, er men praye to thee. | Thou goost biforn of thy benignitee. ib., B, 1667. (= now and then.)
- 'Parfay,' seistow, 'somtyme he rekne shal.' ib., B, 110. (= some day.)

in SHAKESPEARE.

- i. A servant only, and a gentleman | Which I have sometime known. SHAK., All's well, III, 2, 87. (= once.)
- ii. The body of your discourse is sometime guarded with fragments, and the guards are but slightly basted on neither. id., Much Ado, I, 1, 288. (= now and then.)
- iii. I will discase me, and myself present | As I was sometime Milan. id., Temp., V, 86 (= formerly.)
- iv. And that same dew, which sometime on the buds | Was wont to swell like round and orient pearls, | Stood now within the pretty flowerets' eyes | Like tears that did their own disgrace bewail. id., Mids., IV, 1, 58. (= German *sonst*.)

in Present English.

- i. The aide-de-camp must have arrived sometime while Jos and Rebecca were making their bargain together. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 348.
- ii. I lived in hope that sometime you would come | To these my lists with him whom best you loved. TEN., Ger. & En., 838.
- iii. \* James A. H. Murray, L. L. D., sometime President of the Philological Society.

\*\* One was a sculptor, a Slav, a sometime resident in New York. GALSW. To let, II, Ch. VII, (973).

*Whiles*, now used only archaically, the uninflected *while* having taken its place. Besides *while* Present English has *whilst*, which may be as common. With *whilst* compare *amidst*, *amongst* and *betwixt*, all of them furnished with a *t*, which is apt to arise after final *s* (JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., I, 7.64), furthered by form-association with superlatives (O. E. D., s. v. *admidst*, etc.). *Whiles*, *whilst* and *while* are sometimes found preceded by the definite article or followed by the conjunctions *that* or *as*. All these forms are now obsolete or archaic. In Modern English *while* and its variants are used almost exclusively as conjunctives. For illustration and some further comment see Ch. XVII, 24 f. In the following quotation *whiles* . . . *whiles* is a conjunctive adverbial expression:

Whiles did we dwell ashore, whiles were we hurled | Out to the landless ocean. MORRIS, *Earthly Par., Wand.*, 19*b*.

In this expression, which appears to be uncommon, *whiles* is, perhaps, better understood as a plural than a genitive. This also applies to *other whiles*, as in:

For often would the lonely man entrapped, | In vain from his dire fury strive to hide | In some thick hedge, and other whiles it happed | Some careless stranger by this place would ride. *ib.*, *Son. of Cræ s*, XXII.

*The while* is quite commonly used as an adverb; thus in:

Catharine, however, talked away gently, stroking the while the girl's rough hand, which lay on her knee. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 163.

### Adverbs in *ward(s)*.

8. The adverbs in *wards* vary with the uninflected and, apparently, older forms in *ward*; e. g.: *afterward(s)*, *backward(s)*, *downward(s)*, *forward(s)*, *homeward(s)*, *inward(s)*, *outward(s)*, *toward(s)*, *upward(s)*, etc. For the difference in application of the inflected and uninflected forms see the Dictionary. The uninflected forms are largely used adnominally and, in this case, felt as ordinary adjectives. Some of them are in their changed function used as the base of an adverb in *ly*, e. g.: *inwardly*, *outwardly*. Some forms in *ward* are used only as adjectives, such are *awkward*, *froward*, *wayward*, *windward*. *Toward(s)* is chiefly used a preposition.

Illustration of the above words lying outside the task of the grammarian, we will confine ourselves to a few observations.

- a) Except for *afterward(s)*, the words here mentioned mostly denote a movement in a certain direction. Some are, metaphorically, used to indicate an indefinite length of time reckoned from a specified point of time.

From this time forward, religion was the predominant object of his thoughts. BOSWELL, *Life of Johns.*, 13*b*.

From Waterloo downward England knew no real war. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 132.

- b) *Afterwards*, only used in reference to time, is now far more common than *afterward*. Some writers, however, seem to affect the use of the latter. Observant readers may have noticed this in the works of RUDYARD KIPLING.

Dick waited for what should happen afterward. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. II, 29.

She suffers afterward. *id.*, *Gadsbys A*, 14.

- c) *Straightforward* has come to be used as an adjective of quality; as such it admits of the degrees of comparison, and is used as the base of an adverb of quality (*straightforwardly*), and a noun in *ness* (*straightforwardness*).

- d) *Ward(s)* is a living suffix, although new formations strike us as serving only a particular occasion; thus those in:

They saw the gleaming river seaward flow. TEN., *Lotus-Eat.*, 14.

This mounting wave will roll us shoreward soon. *ib.*, 2.

The tendency among the Free Church ministers is to migrate suburbwards. Rev. of Rev., No. 226, 309 *b*.

So thitherward he turned. MORRIS, *Earthly Par*, *Atal's Race*, V.

In the following quotations the adverbs in *ward(s)* may be set down as nonce-words.

My heart aches, and a drowsy numbness pains | My sense, as though of hemlock I had drunk, | Or emptied some dull opiate to the drains | One minute past, and Lethe-wards had sunk. KEATS, *Ode to a Nightingale*, 4.

"Alas!" King Arthur said, "he hath shown such love to me-ward" SWINBURNE, *Tale of Balen*, V, 24.

### Adverbs in *way(s)*.

9. As in the case of the adverbs in *wards*, the majority of those ending in *ways* have a secondary form without the inflectional *s*. The following are among the commoner ones: *alway(s)*, *breadthway(s)* (= *broadway(s)*, *crossway(s)*, *edgeway(s)*, *endway(s)*, *leastway(s)*, *lengthway(s)* (= *longways*), *sideway(s)*, *straightway(s)*.

*Way* being used as a word by itself, the adverbs in *way(s)* are compounds. Several forms in *ways* vary with forms in *wise*, the two words resembling each other semantically and phonetically (38). See also MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 267, 1, Note.

The following observations are of some interest:

*a)* *Breadthways*, *broadways*, *crossways*, *endways*, *lengthways*, *longways* and *sideways* are distinctly more common than their uninflected variants *breadthway*, etc.

The form *alway* is especially affected as a poetic archaism.

And lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Bible, Matth., XXVIII, 20

There be thirty chosen prophets, | The wisest of the land, | Who alway by Lars Porsena, | Both morn and evening stand. MAC., *Lays*, Horatius, IX.

*Leastways* is a more or less vulgar variant of *at least*.

"I have news for you, sir," said he, "leastways I think so." CH. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch 1, 6.

The literary *straightway* is used practically to the exclusion of *straightways*.

i. (He) was straightway led down-stairs to the bar from which he had lately come. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 23 *b*.

When Bindo succeeded to the inheritance, he sends straightway for Massacio and shares all with him. BROWNING, *A Soul's Tragedy*, II, 32. T.

ii. Straightways she went to the big house, and inquired for the young squire. (?) *Three Advices* (GÜNTHER, *Handbook*).

*Elseways* seems to be very rare: it is not registered in the O. E. D.

Liz and I had to work and save and calculate just like other people; elseways we should be as poor as any good-for-nothing, drunken waster of a woman. SHAW, *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, II, (196).

*b)* In new-formations, which are, however, but loose compounds, the uninflected word is the usual formative.

He must have gone York way. DICK., *Nich. Nick*, Ch. XIII, 76 *a*.

One of my pupils .. is watching developments U. S. A.-way with keenness. *Punch*, No. 3995, *Advert*.

Unwittingly I smote him such-a-way | That dead upon the green grass he was laid. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræsus*, XIII.

c) Also in compounds whose first member is an indefinite pronoun, *any*, *every*, *no*, or *some*, the uninflected form appears practically to the exclusion of the inflected, the latter occurring only in vulgar language. In some of their applications they are felt as shortened forms for word-groups with the preposition *in*, which, indeed, frequently take their place. For illustration see Ch. XL under the respective words, and compare 12, c; and Ch. LX, 112, d.

i. Master Marnar knows too, I hope, as I'm able and willing to do a turn o' work for him, and he won't do me the unkindness to anyways take it out o' my hands. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI, 120.

ii. The Kaiser has withdrawn his objection, which the German newspapers are carefully explaining was not personal in any way. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 220, 335 a.

d) *Sideway* (and perhaps some other forms in *way*) admits of being used adjectively. With *sideway* compare *sidelong*, which has practically the same meaning (37).

With his sideway smile he said: "I've had your letter." GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Ch. III, (700).

He strolled to and fro with a badly assumed nonchalance, as if to say that he was merely taking exercise, but also with a sideway look, which made it clear that he was longing to be called back into favour. DESMOND COKE, *The Cure* Ch. VI, 74.

e) Such a combination as *sideways to* does duty as a preposition.

His father was sitting before the dressing-table sideways to the mirror. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Ch. VIII, (716).

#### Adverbs in *about(s)*.

10. The adverbs in *abouts* are compounds of *here*, *there* and *where*: *hereabouts*, *thereabouts*, *whereabouts*. Their uninflected variants, *hereabout*, etc., are of an earlier date, but are now less common. The affixing of *s* may be due to the faulty articulation of the *t*, known as assibilation, consisting in the retarded separation of the articulating bodies after the explosion. See especially DANIEL JONES, (*Outline of Eng. Phon.*, § 198 ff), who remarks (§ 204) that "it is often difficult to tell whether a Londoner says *cat* or *cats*." The tendency of adding an *s* to a final *t* may also explain the frequency of such forms as *no doubts*, *on accounts*, etc. in the dialects of Dickens's novels. See FRANZ, E. S., XII.

a) Only *thenabout(s)* calls for illustration.

Then or thenabouts, the devil hinted 'steal it'. TUPPER, *Crock of G.*, XXIV. <sup>1)</sup>

Five year ago, or thenabout. DICK., *Chuzzle*, Ch. XIII, 112 a.

b) *Thereabouts* preceded by *or* is frequently used to emphasize the indefiniteness of *some*.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

At length a party of some twelve men, or thereabouts, landed with the bold object of attacking their assailants and driving them back. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

c) *Whereabout(s)* admits of being turned into a noun.

Thou sure and firm-set earth, | Hear not my steps, which way they walk, for fear | Thy very stones prate of my whereabouts. SHAK., *Mac b.*, II, 1, 58.

It was also arranged that Mr. Pickwick and Mr. Winkle .. should parade the town .. in the hope of seeing or hearing something of the young lady's whereabouts. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIX, 357.

### Other Adverbs formed by Genitive Inflection.

11. *Besides* has almost supplanted *beside*, except in a purely local meaning, in which the former is obsolete and the latter survives only archaically.

The adverb *besides* as used in Present English requires no illustration. The adverb *beside* is used in a local meaning in:

Of another tomb .. tradition can only aver that a certain nameless bishop lies interred there. But upon other two stones which lie beside, may still be read in rude prose, and ruder rhyme, the history of those who sleep beneath them. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. I, 13.

It has the value of Present-English *besides* in:

Over comes to Ireland Saunders, one of those Jesuit foxes, as the Pope's legate, with money and bulls, and a banner hallowed by the Pope, and the devil knows what beside. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. V, 39 b.

Note a) As a preposition *besides* is obsolete, and *beside* quite common in a purely local meaning. In the other meanings *besides* is now the usual form, *beside* occurring as an occasional variant.

β) The differentiation between *besides* and *beside* whether as adverbs or prepositions, observed with considerable strictness in Standard English of the present day, was largely disregarded in early Modern English.

b) *Half-seas-over*, probably to be understood as *half sea's over*, i.e. *half of the sea over*, is now best known as a humorous expression for *drunk*.

c) *Needs* appears to be used only in connexion with *must* or *will* (*would*).

i. My head is twice as big as yours. | They therefore needs must fit. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, 188.

All who have travelled through the delicious scenery of North Devon must needs know the little white town of Bideford. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 1 a.

ii. Some of them hearing of the news which I made to Moll White, will needs have it that Sir Roger has brought down a cunning man with him. *Spectator*, No. 131.

And he, | Who needs would work for Annie to the last, | Ascending tired, heavily slept till morn. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 180.

Note the impersonal *needs must* as in: i. Needs must when the devil drives. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. III, 31.

ii. I would have no more of these follies than needs must. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. XVI, 185.

iii. If needs must, the Allies themselves are bound to face the situation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8273, 2 a.

d) *Overseas* varies with *oversea*, the choice being, apparently, a matter of personal predilection. The two component parts of the compound are sometimes hyphenated or written apart. In the latter case the uninflected form appears to be the commoner one. The form *overseas* is now probably mostly apprehended as a plural, but may have originated as a genitive singular. Compare *half-seas-over*.

i. He, sick of home, went overseas for change. TEN., *Walking to the Mail*, 18.

Three or four hundred thousand men .. have been sent over-seas. Acad. & Lit.

ii. The remedy is only to be attained by a powerful, organised demand by Britons oversea for a voice in the Imperial Parliament. *Daily Mail*.

Or has thy wife been carried over sea? W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræses*, XI.

The examples show that the above forms are used to denote a moving to, as well as a being or moving at a place beyond the sea. A moving from a place beyond the sea is expressed by *from overseas*.

The nobility and visitors from overseas were largely represented. 11. *Lond. News*.

Note a) By the side of *overseas* we also find *beyond seas* and *across seas*, in which *seas* is distinctly apprehended as a plural: Our ploughman voyages beyond seas. MER., *Ord. Rich. Fev.*, Ch. V, 33.

This finds little or no favour with the Powers now seeking their fortunes and their futures across the seas. *Times*. (Compare: And nought of mine the pirate folk did bear | Across the sea. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræses*, XII.)

β) Both *overseas* and *oversea* are often used adnominally; e.g., *oversea(s) possessions*, the *Daily Mail over-seas edition*.

e) *Unawares* varies with *unaware*, but the latter is distinctly uncommon. For the various shades of meaning in which the words are used see the Dictionary. Of especial frequency is the combination *to take unawares*. *To catch unawares*, which has practically the same meaning, appears to be less common. By the side of *unaware(s)* in the meaning of *unexpectedly*, we find *at unaware(s)* as an occasional variant. *Awares* seems to occur but rarely: it is not registered in the O. E. D.

It is like coming to the edge of a precipice at unawares. NETTLESHIP, *Es. Brown.*, I, 40.<sup>1)</sup>

At unaware | They met eye to eye. CHR. ROSSETTI, *Prince's Progr.*, etc. 20.<sup>1)</sup>

He heads the list of those who .. trust to luck or a fond partiality — which we never harbour awares — to excuse their laziness. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8052, 6 a.

12. Obs. I. In some cases the genitive is disguised through spelling, *ce* taking the place of *es*. About this substitution of *ce* for *es* see Ch. XXV, 10. Compare also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 997; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 6.61.

This disguised genitive may be seen in: a) the pronominal adverbs

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

*hence, thence* and *whence*;  $\beta$ ) the numerals of repetition *once, twice* and *thrice*;  $\gamma$ ) the adverbs *else* and *since*.

The Chaucerian spellings *onis* (or *ones*) *twyes, thryes* show the genitive suffix distinctly.

II. It must be observed that, although in many adverbial adjuncts the genitival suffix has become lost in course of time, it has been more frequently extended to words and word-groups of this description, "especially to such as in Old English ended in a vowel or *n*, in order to make them more distinct" SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1504.

It has become lost in *oversea, go thy way, while*; also in *day and night* (Old English *dæg es and niht es*), *summer and winter* (Old English *sumer es and wintra*).

The genitive suffix is a later popular excrescence in *once, twice, thrice; hence, thence, whence; since; always, betimes, sometimes; besides*; the words in *ways, wards* and *abouts*. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1504; MASON, Eng. Gram., § 267, 3; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 237; ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 25.

The addition of the *s* is in many cases due to the word to which it is attached being understood as a plural. This would apply to the forms in *ways, times*, and also to *besides, overseas, half-seas-over*.

III. In vulgar language the *s* is attached to many more adverbs, especially such as are compounded with *where*. See especially FRANZ, E. S. XII, where numerous instances, taken from the dialects spoken by illiterate personages, are given. Also some words in *ways* not recognized in Standard English are richly sprinkled in dialects; such are *anyways* for *anyway*, *likeways* for *likewise*, *all ways* for *in all directions*, *otherways* for *otherwise*. See FRANZ, E. S., XVIII; also above, 9, and Chapter XL.

Never anywheres will he meet such a cook as Bessy Berry. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXVIII, 229.

I was finishing a coat that I had someways fashioned with my undeft fingers. HALL CAINE, Deemster, Ch. XLII, 305.

IV. In vulgar language the excrescent *t*, which we have noticed above in *amidst, amongst, betwixt* and *whilst* (7), is also met with in such forms as *once't, twice't*. See FRANZ, E. S., XII; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1504; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., I, 7.64.

V. The loss of the genitive suffix sometimes gave rise to the use of a new adverbial word-group. Thus *of right* has taken the place of the Old-English *ryht es*, *of a truth* of the Old-English *sōþ es*. Compare also *of necessity* with *needs*. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1504 and 1507.

The use of *of* may have been furthered by that of the French *de* applied in an analogous way, as in *de grand matin, de mon vivant*. MOLIÈRE even has *d'aujourd'hui* (Ce n'est que d'aujourd'hui, qu'il s'est résolu à l'accepter. Bourgeois Gentilhomme, III, 6). Compare WENDT, Eng. Stud., IV, 104.

Also in the colloquial *of an evening, of a morning, of a Sunday afternoon*, and similar combinations, *of* may be a substitute for an Old-English genitive suffix. See the O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 52. For comment on these combinations see Ch. V, 8.



Further instances of adverbial word-groups in which the preposition *of* has the same force as the suffix *s* of the adverbial genitive, are:

*of a certainty*: Now indeed he saw that he must of a certainty escape. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXV, 180.

Nothing did I know of a certainty until a day toward the first week of September. *ib.*, Ch. XLII, 305.

Note. In this expression *of* varies with *for* and *to*, anciently also with *in* and *at*. See O. E. D., s.v. *certainty*, 7. The phrase *of a certain* is used by SCOTT, but is now obsolete.

i. Know for a certainty that the Lord your God will no more drive out any of these nations from before you. Bible, *Joshua*, XXIII, 13.

ii. One or other will fall in love with her to a certainty. Mrs. OLIPHANT, *Innocent*, Ch. IX.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. For of a certain, those whingers are pretty toys, but more fit for a boy's hand than a man's. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. IV, 48.

*of a surety*: Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not their's. Bible, *Gen.*, XV, 13.

That the world was nigh about its end he knew of a surety. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XL, 291.

We shall know of a surety that in such a mood Portia would exclaim that the full sum of her was the 'sum of — nothing'. ROWE AND WEBB, *Note to Merch of Ven.*, III, 2, 160.

*of force*: Dear Sir, of force I must attempt you further. SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, 1, 421.

#### Dative Inflection.

13. Of adverbial datives the only instance preserved in Modern English is *whilom(e)*, which, however, is only met with in the higher literary style and in mock-dignified language. Compare, however, JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 2.414, where it is observed that "probably the *m* of *whilom* is not the direct continuation of O. E. dat. pl. *hwīlum*, but a recent development of the M. E. *hwilen*."

Whilom she was a daughter of Locrine. MILTON, *Comus*, 827.

Like the lion bold, which whilom so magnanimously the lamb did hold, he would sit with a child on one knee and rock a cradle with his foot for whole hours together. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 346.

Mr. Bailey Jnnior — for this sporting character, whilome of general utility at Todgers's, had now regularly set up life under that name — gazed indolently at society from the apron of his master's cab. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVII, 217 b.

#### Secondary Adverbs formed by Prefixes.

14. The commonest prefixes to form adverbs are *a* and *be*.

a) The adverbial prefix *a* represents the weakened form of the Old English *an* (or *on*) of various values, chiefly those of the Modern English *on* or *of*; e. g.: *abed*, *adown* (now only literary), *adrift*, *afoot*,

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

*afresh, ahead, aslant* (= *askance, askant*), *amain, amid, anew, atop, away, awry*.

In *apace* the prefix *a* represents the indefinite article, in *apart* the French *à*. *Ago*, and the archaic *agone*, stand for the past participle of the obsolete *agon*, Old English *agan* (= German *ergehen*). See SKEAT, *Etym. Dict.*, and the O. E. D. Compare also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 238 ff.

*In bed* and *on foot* are frequent variants of *abed* and *afoot* respectively. For the literary *adown* ordinary English has *down*.

The charmed sunset linger'd low adown | In the red West. TEN., *Lotos-Eaters*, 19.

And you couldn't so properly have said he wore a hat, as that he was covered in a-top, like an old building, with something pitchy. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15 a.

b) The adverbial prefix *be* is a weakened form of the preposition *by*; thus in *before, between* (= *betwixt*), *beneath, below*.

### Secondary Adverbs formed by Suffixes.

15. The principal suffixes to form adverbs are *ly, ling (long), meal* and *ward(s)*. For discussion of adverbs in *ward(s)*, in which *s* is a genitival suffix, see 8.

#### The Suffix *ly*.

16. Besides *ward(s)* (8), only *ly* is now a living adverbial suffix, i. e. used in forming new adverbs. We find it added to:

a) many adjectives, almost any adjective of quality admitting of being changed into an adverb with *ly*. The following quotation contains many examples:

A desire to see clearly, to think precisely, to judge fairly, to speak plainly is attractively evident in this book. ATHENÆUM.

Also such parasynthetic compounds as *kind-hearted, good-natured, ill-natured*, etc., so far as they express a quality, have corresponding adverb-forms in *ly*.

I'm sure it is best and wisest to take no notice of these speeches. After all, they may not mean them ill-naturedly. MRS. GASK., *Wiv. & Daught.*, Ch. XLVIII, 469.

For adjectives of quality which are rarely used as the base of adverbs in *ly* see 17.

b) participles, whether present or past, that have assumed the character of adjectives of quality. Although any suitable participle can be used as the base of an adverb in *ly*, instances are confined to the higher literary language.

i. *delayingly*: And yet she held him on delayingly. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 464.

*falteringly*: Then Philip standing up said falteringly, | "Annje, I came to ask a favour of you." *ib.*, 284.

*fatiguingly*: In fact, everything and everybody is on a fatiguingly tremendous scale. *Academy*.

*lingeringly*: Her hand dwelt lingeringly on the latch. *TEN., En. Ard., 514.*

*lovingly*: Enter a King and a Queen very lovingly. *SHAK., Haml., III, 2, 146.*

*painstakingly*: This little book has been painstakingly prepared. *Sat. Rev., 1891, 19 Dec., 705/2.*

*unwittingly*: Unwittingly I smote him such-a-way | That dead upon the green grass he was laid. *W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Son of Cræs., XIII.*

ii. *admittedly*: This measure admittedly raised political strife to a heroic plane. *Rev. of Rev., No. 321, 452 b.*

*brokenly*: And there the tale he utter'd brokenly. *TEN., En. Ard., 642.*

*mistakenly*: Shakespeare mistakenly places the murder of Cæsar in the Capitol, though in reality it took place in or near Pompey's theatre. *DEIGHTON, Note to Haml., III, 2, 96.*

*undisguisedly*: What I complain of is that they carry this preference so undisguisedly. *LAMB., El., Bach. Compl., (259).*

c) the comparatives *former*, *latter* and *utter*, and the superlatives *first*, *last* and *most*.

d) ordinal numerals *first*, *second*, *third*, etc. The number of such adverbs is confined to those denoting a low rank, *sixthly* or *seventhly* being practically the limit beyond which a speaker or writer would hardly go.

e) the multiplicative numerals *double* and *treble*, and the distributive numeral *single*.

Note. Multiplicatives in *fold* form no adverbs in *ly*, the unaltered form being used as an adverb as well as an adjective.

The cautions old gentleman knit his brows tenfold closer after this explanation. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, Postscript.*

My lord, you overpay me fifty-fold. *TEN., Ger. & En., 220.*

f) certain nouns. Only *chiefly*, *instantly*, *partly*, *purposely* are in common use. All the other adverbs formed from nouns by the suffix *ly* are met with only occasionally. This applies to *angrily* (since the 17th century replaced by *angrily*; but used as an archaism by some 19th century poets. *O. E. D.*), *averagely*, *gamely*, *matter-of-factly*, *starchly*.

*angrily*: Why, how now, Hecate! you look angrily. *SHAK., Macb., III, 5, 1.*

A mother never is afraid | Of speaking angrily to any child. *Mrs. BROWN., Aur. Leigh, I, 14.*

*averagely*: He (sc. Lord Avebury) had the faculty of doing more than averagely well a number of things. *Westm. Gaz., No. 6240, 2 b.*

Anybody with an averagely good ear .. could immediately spot a man hailing from any part of that country (sc. Lancashire). *T. P.'s Weekly, No. 488, 334 a.*

*gamely*: The fresher .. struggled gamely through somehow. *HAM. GIBBS, Compl. Oxf. Man., Ch. II, 13.*

Adams tried to pull him out (sc. out of the crevasse), and he struggled gamely. *SHACKLETON, The Heart of the Antarctic, Ch. XI, 157.*

*matter-of-factly*: VIVIE [matter-of-factly] Good-bye! SHAW, Mrs. Warren's Profession, IV, (234).

*starchly*: "I hope she'll never love any man till she's married to him..." said Mrs. Avenel, somewhat starchly. LYTTON, My Novel, II, xi, Ch. XVII, 336.

g) adverbs in *ward*. Only *inwardly* and *outwardly* and, in a less degree, *backwardly* and *forwardly*, are in common use.

Note. Instead of *inwardly* the higher literary style sometimes has *inly*. And when the trance was o'er, the maid | Paused awhile, and inly prayed. COLERIDGE, Christabel, II, 614,

17. a) Formations from adjectives in *ly*, such as *friendly*, *lovely*, *lonely*, *lovelily*, *stately*, are now hardly ever met with, but appear to have been more frequent in Early Modern English (25, Note β). The following examples will, no doubt, be acceptable:

*friendlily*: As a rule, with practical good sense, she kept her doubting eyes fixed friendlily on every little phase in turn. GALSW., Fraternity, Ch. VII.

*melancholily*: "I'll fetch Harrop," she said melancholily to his cousin. id., Old Wives' Tale, II, Ch. V, § 1.<sup>1)</sup>

*statelily*: "The Padrone jests," said Jackeymo, statelily. LYTTON, My Novel, I, ii, Ch. VII, 106.

~~S~~weetly and statelily, and with all grace of womanhood and queenhood (she) answer'd him. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 175.

b) In the second place it is nationality-names which are rarely made the base of adverbs in *ly*, such forms as *Americantly*, *Germanly*, *Englishly*, *Frenchly*, etc. being either non-existent or mere dictionary-words. Compare 24, a) and b).

c) Also most adjectives ending in the side-consonant, such as *still*, *dull*, *shrill* (not *full* and *whole*), and some others, such as *big*, *difficult*, *foreign*, *long*, *troublesome*, are seldom or never used as the base of adverbs in *ly*. The following examples show that some writers take no serious exception to adverbial formations of some of the above adjectives:

*dully*: All jog-trot men, who go on smoothly and dully. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. XX, (363).

Soames, who had passed through all the sensations of being choked, answered dully [etc.] GALSW., To let, II, Ch. VI, (970).

*shrilly*: Then shrilly... a wee, feminine voice floats down from the gallery: "Geegee-Bowwow." Eng. Rev., No. 53, 157.

d) Instead of the unusual forms *livelily*, *stilly*, etc. we mostly find periphrases, such as *in a lively way* (*manner*, *fashion*), or an adverb formed from a synonymous adjective, as *briskly* (for *livelily*), *quietly* (for *stilly*).

The whole party left the ground in a more lively manner than they had proceeded to it. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 21.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., Handb.<sup>3</sup>, § 1651.

## Modifications in Spelling.

18. The addition of the suffix *ly* is attended by certain modifications of spelling in the base.

a) Adverbs formed from adjectives ending in syllabic [l], i. e. adverbs which in the printed or written language end in a consonant-symbol + *le*, contract; e. g.: *able* — *ably*, *double* — *doubly*, *simple* — *simply*.

There is no contraction in the case of adverbs formed from adjectives ending in non-syllabic [l], i. e. such as in the printed or written language end in a vowel-symbol + *le*. Nor is the symbol *e* dropped, except of *whole*, which becomes *wholly*. This adverb and *palely*, *solely*, *vilely* etc. are, in careful speech, pronounced with lengthened [l], which makes the suffix distinctly audible.

Adjectives ending graphically with *ll* lose one *l* in the corresponding adverb forms; thus *full* — *fully*, *dull* — *dully*, *shrill* — *shrilly*. Except for *fully*, the *ll* in those adverbs would mostly be pronounced with lengthened [l] by careful speakers.

b) Adjectives of more than one syllable ending in *y* change *y* into *i*; e. g.: *merry* — *merrily*.

The *y* is usually retained in formations from adjectives of one syllable; e. g.: *shy* — *shyly*, *grey* — *greyly*, *gray* — *grayly*.

*Slyly* is more common than *slily*; *dryly* varies with *drily*, and is the better spelling as being more analogical (also *dryness*, but *drier*, *driest*, the form *dryer* being reserved for the noun in certain technical uses); *gaily* is the ordinary English spelling through the influence of *daily*: *gayly* being American or old-fashioned English.

c) The *e* is dropped in adverbs formed from *due* and *true*; thus: *duly*, *truly*.

19. It is unusual to append *ly* to an adjective in *ic*; the ending of the adverb is nearly always *ically*, even when the only current form of the adjective ends in *ic*; thus: *chronically*, *dramatically*, *energetically*, *scientifically*. Note, however, *publicly*, and *politically* (rare).

Such were the epithets which rose to Lady Arabella's mind; but she politically suppressed them. TROL., Dr. Thorne, Ch. XLII, 553.<sup>1)</sup>

The Suffix *ly* also used to form Adjectives.

20. The suffix *ly* is also used to form adjectives, a) from adjectives; e. g.: *cleanly*, *deadly*, *goodly*, *kindly*, *likely*, *lowly*, *poorly*, *sickly*, *weakly*.

*Elderly* is an instance of such an adjective formed from a comparative. *deadly*: Everybody is in deadly earnest. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XXXIV, 313.

*goodly*: In sooth it was a goodly time. TEN., Rec. Arab. Nights, 20. He journeyed along the side of a range of hills which looked out upon some of the goodliest scenes of the mighty Hudson. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 361.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., Handb. 3, § 1648, foot-note.

*weakly*: And he | This pretty, puny, weakly little one. TEN., *En. Ar d.*, 195.

Some of such adjectives are especially affected by poets as useful metrical expedients; thus:

*dully*: Far off she seem'd to hear the dully sound | Of human footsteps. TEN., *Pal. of Art*, 275.

*shrilly*: The shrilly whinnys of the team of Hell, | Ascending, pierce the glad and songful air. *id.*, *Desm. & Pers.*, 44.

*stilly*: A realm of pleasance, many a mound, | And many a shadow-  
chequer'd lawn | Full of the city's stilly sound. *id.*, *Rec. of Arab. Nights*, 103.

Or shall the years | Push me, with soft and inoffensive pace, | Into the stilly twilight of my age. BRYANT, *Ev. Rev.*, 56.

b) from nouns, 1) names of persons, the termination having a eulogistic force, except, of course, in such adjectives as have been formed from a dyslogistic base; e. g.: *friendly*, *kingly*, *knightly*, *masterly*, *princely*, *scholarly*, *soldierly*, *sprightly*; *beggarly*, *cowardly*, *dastardly*, *rascally*, *ruffianly*, *scoundrelly*. With *manly* and *womanly* compare the dyslogistic *mannish* and *womanish*.

2) names of things: *bodily*, *deathly*, *earthly*, *heavenly*, *lively*, *timely*, etc.; e. g.: *daily*, *hourly*, *monthly*, *quarterly*, *yearly* and similar words denoting periodical recurrence. Thus also *momently*, which is rare as an adjective and uncommon as an adverb.

21. Sometimes there is some difficulty in deciding whether we have to deal with an adverb formed from the adjective by the suffix *ly*, or with an adjective in *ly* used by way of adverb (27); thus in:

We get on poorly. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. VIII, 184.

A deadly wounded man. WEBST., *Dict.*

She was very cleanly and painly dressed. DICK., *Hard Times*, Ch. XII, 34 b.

Uncertainty of Form owing to Uncertainty of Grammatical Function.

22. In some connexions some uncertainty is felt about the grammatical function of a particular element of the sentence, with the result that there is some hesitation whether the adnominal form without *ly* or the adverbial form with *ly* should be used. Thus the words standing after such verbs as *to blow*, *to fall*, *to look*, *to ring*, *to shine*, *to show*, *to smell*, *to sound*, *to stand*, *to taste* and some others, are mostly understood as adnominal, these verbs often striking us as being more or less faded in meaning and, consequently, as approaching to copulas (Ch. I, 5). See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 263 f, § 376, and § 2339; BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, page 77 f; WESTERN, *E. S.*, XXXVI, I, 12.

Here follow two groups of quotations in which the alternative form of the word in question might, with more or less justice, have been used, although in not a few cases excluded by long-established usage.

i. *to blow*: The wind blew cold. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVI, 322.

*to fall*: Many things that I imagined would give me intense satisfaction had fallen curiously flat. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. VII, 92.

Mr. Turner's high-flown phrases are likely to fall very flat on the majority of his readers. *Lit. World*, 1889, 241 *a*.

*to look*: We had hardly time to put up the forms again, and look serious before he came in. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

*to ring*: Never did Blake's noble verses ring more true to my ear. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 195, 225.

*to run*: Still waters run deep. *Proverb*.

*to shine*: The moon shone bright. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. IX.

The sun shines bright. SKEAT, *Princ.*, I, 258.

The broad pavement in front shone pale also. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 296.

The moon shines clear. *ib.*, II, Ch. VI, 133.

*to show*: It and the horse showed dark against a wide sky. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 131.

The faces of the crowd showed pale under that glare. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. II, 137.

*to smell*: The rose smells sweet. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 393, IV.

The dinner smelt delicious. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVII, 298 *a*.

The flowers smell sweet for all noses. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIX, 735.

Everything smells good in England. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. VI, 144.

*to sound*: They (*sc.* such words) sound romantic, perhaps, in books: in real life, they are harrowing. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VI, 132.

The voice sounded harsh. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 393, IV.

His voice sounded funny in the darkness. GALSW., *A wakening*, (788).

*to stand*: He stood firm. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 376.

A few stand firm. ANNIE BES., *Autobiography*, 278.

*to taste*: It was the pig that smelt so, and the pig that tasted so delicious. LAMB., *El.*, *Dis. upon Roast Pig*.

Upon my word, London tastes good — after Teheran. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 9 *b*.

The dinner tasted flat. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. II, 32.

ii. *to fall*: The jokes of his companions fell flatly on his ear. THACK., *Pend.*

*to look*: How charmingly he looks. RICHARDSON, *Pam.*, II, 57.

*to shine*: As the moon shines so clearly . . . who can resist the attraction of such interest? CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 297.

Within the church just now that moonlight shines as softly as in my room. *ib.*, II, Ch. VI, 133.

The sun shines brightly. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 74.

All was quiet now, and the moon was shining brightly. BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 44. (The Expanded Form showing the verb to have its full meaning, *bright* would not be the right form.)

*to show*: For hut and palace show like filthily. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, xvii.

*to smell*: The rags smelt unpleasantly. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XVI, 305.

It smelt abominably. WELLS, *Kipps*, III, Ch. I, § 5, 286.

*to sound*: Mr. Baldwin began his speech on Saturday with an historical reflection that must have sounded rather oddly in the ears of some members of his audience. *Manch. Guard.*, 9/5, 1924, 362 *d*.

This would sound quite nicely. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. XVI, 72.

*to stand*: Why | Stands Macbeth thus amazedly? SHAK., *Macb.*, VI, 1, 126.

H. POUTSMA, III II.

*to taste*: I own it tastes well. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

Note a) Sometimes there seems to be an adjective, only vaguely present to the speaker's mind to which the adverb really belongs.

i. She felt quite charitably towards young Torry. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 407. (Supply some such word as *disposed*.)

I felt a little strangely, and not a little frightened. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 11. (Observe that *strangely* corresponds to the Dutch *vreemd te moede*.)

ii. You look most shockingly. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, I, (168). (Supply some such word as *poorly*.)

But she looks dreadfully, does not she? MAR. CRAWF., *Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Ch. XIX.

β) About the use of *to look* with adverbs of manner BRADLEY (in the O. E. D., s.v. *look* III, 9, b) observes that "this use is often indiscriminately condemned, but is justly censurable only where *look* is virtually equivalent to *seem*, so that it requires a predicative complement and not a qualification of manner . . . Owing, however, to the prejudice excited by the inaccurate use, *look* now rarely occurs with adverbs of manner other than *well*, *ill*, *badly*. In some early instances the apparent adverb may be an adjective in *ly*." It should, further, be observed that *well* and *ill* are often used as predicative adjectives after *to be*, and may, accordingly, be regarded as adjectives after *to look*. Compare also *well-looking* which occurs as an occasional variant of the far more frequent *good-looking* (Ch. LVII, 26, c). See the comment on these expressions in DEAN ALFORD, *The Queen's English*<sup>8</sup>, § 208.

Is it one of my well-looking days, child? GOLDSM., *She stoops*, I, (171). "He is well-looking," said Mr. Pecksniff slowly and distinctly. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. II, 8 b.

He was not so well-looking or so strongly made as my sculler-friend. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 12.

In *You look wearily* (SHAK., *Temp.*, III, 1, 32) the verb may be understood to denote an act of the organs of sight. Thus also in:

There is either liquor in his pate, or money in his purse, when he looks so merrily. *id.*, *Merry Wives*, II, 1, 198.

In the vulgar *to look sadly*, the form in *ly* should, perhaps, be considered as a pure adjective, like *poorly*, and a few other similar formations (Ch. XXVIII, 8, c).

You look sadly. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. XIV, 160.

Lyddy had said, "Miss, you look sadly." *id.*, *Felix Holt*, II, Ch. XXVII, 31. (Compare: I told him you was sadly. *ib.*)

23. Similarly predicative adnominal adjuncts of the first kind (Ch. VI, 3) are of a hybrid nature: i. e. they are adnominal because they refer to a noun or pronoun, and they are adverbial as well, because they also refer to the predicate in the sentence. They are, consequently, replaced by adverbial adjuncts whenever the latter function prevails over the former. Compare DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakkunst*, III, § 107; WESTERN, *Some Remarks on the Use of English Adverbs*, E. S., XXXVI, I, 75 ff.



a) As a general rule it may be stated that the adverbial forms are preferred whenever the adjunct is not intended to describe a state naturally belonging to the subject, but one of a passing nature; thus in:

There were none to see the frail, perishable figure, as it glided from the fire and leaned pensively at the open casement. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. LII, 192 a.

Tom .. ran to pick up Lucy, who lay crying helplessly. Maggie retreated to the roots of a tree a few yards off, and looked on impenitently. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. X, 89.

Soames recoiled to the chair, and stonily sat down. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Ch. XII, (760).

Even when logical analysis leads to ascribing the adjunct to the subject, the adverb-form is not unfrequently employed. The adjunct is then meant to denote the circumstances generally by which the action is attended, so that the adjective-form would not express the meaning intended.

Lucy looked on mutely, like a kitten pausing from its lapping. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IX, 75. (= without saying a word.)

In passing it may be observed that sometimes the place of the adverb indicates whether it is intended as an adjunct of quality or one of attendant circumstances. Thus in the following quotations the adjuncts denote attendant circumstances:

I indolently seated myself at the window. FANNY BURNEY, *Ev.*, LIV, 258.

He calmly cast the crumbs on the grass. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. IX, 170.

In *I seated myself indolently at the window* and *He cast the crumbs calmly on the grass* the adverbs are adjuncts of quality. In the quotations as they stand the adjuncts refer partly to the subject, partly to the predicate; in the sentences with the adverbs removed to another place they refer only to the predicate.

b) It is not difficult to account for the adjective-form of the adjuncts in:

i. Tudlow always went about very shabby. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 12.  
Her eyes flashed large, dilated, unsmiling. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 186.

Her hair flows plenteous, long and glossy, .. she haunts the wood harmless and thoughtful. *ib.*, II, Ch. X, 205.

ii. I see the difference plain enough. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. III, 31.

iii. An egg boiled very soft is not unwholesome. *ib.*, Ch. III, 24.

The rush of the surf to the sands was heard soft and soothing. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 190.

c) In many cases the two forms appear to be equally legitimate, so that the choice depends on the individual fancy of the speaker or writer, or is a matter of mere chance. See also Ch. VI, 3; and WESTERN, *l. c.*, § 12.

i. He lived happy ever afterwards. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 391.

ii. They lived long and happily together. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XX, 394.

i. God will bring you safe back to me. BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 24.

ii. God will bring you safely back to Mademoiselle. *ib.*, Ch. I, 17.

i. Misfortunes never come single. *Spectator*, No. VII.

ii. Misfortunes, saith the adage, never come singly. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXII, 123 b.

i. He had said that he would stay quiet in the hall. GALSW., Awakening, (780).

I'll take it (sc. the tea) out if you'll stay quiet here. *ib.*, (779).

ii. "Come Mildred! Come my love!" he cried, waiting impatiently at the carriage door to hand her in. PHILIPS, Madame Leroux, Ch. X.

i. Could this be, she demanded, when the flame of her intelligence burned so vivid? CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. X, 206.

ii. It bursts suddenly into flame and burns vividly. HUXLEY, Physiogr., 103 <sup>1)</sup>

d) When the adverbial and the adjectival form of the adjunct seem equally justifiable, the use of the latter is sometimes, apparently, due to the fact that another adjunct precedes which can only be apprehended as an adnominal adjunct.

The stream . . . there flowed glassy and smooth. MRS. GASK., Ruth, Ch. XI, 77.  
The wood-smoke went up blue and straight. GALSW., In Chanc., III, Ch. XIV, (764).

An obligatory adverbial form, on the other hand, does not always appear to entail an optional adverbial form in a following adjunct.

People moved about ceaselessly and restless. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 340. (*ceaseless people*, be it understood, is an impossible combination.)

There is no apparent reason for the different forms of the adjuncts in:  
He looked at me composedly, not angry, as I had feared. MRS. OLIPHANT, Neighb. on the Green, The Scientific Gentleman, Ch. VI.

e) In some collocations certain modifiers are always felt as adnominal adjuncts and are, therefore, never furnished with the adverbial suffix; thus:

*close*, as in: He shaved his beard as close as if it were one of his great national companies. LYTTON, Caxt., II, Ch. II, 36.

*double*, as in: Thus in the Middle English of Chaucer, consonants written double were still pronounced double. SWEET, Sounds of English, § 172.

Such words as *high* and *low*, when denoting place, are, evidently, distinctly felt as adnominal words and are, consequently, never furnished with the suffix *ly*.

The grapes or the cherries are sour — 'hung too high.' CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. XVIII, 356.

Blackbirds sang recklessly in the shrubbery, swallows were flying high. GALSW., To let, I, Ch. III, (827).

But in a metaphorical meaning *highly* is common enough.

Do you wish that Robert's brother were more highly placed? CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. IX, 198.

Highly as the chap ranked, he would rank even higher before they had finished him. GALSW., To let, I, Ch. I, (798). (For the use of *higher* in place of *more highly* see 33.)

He had thought highly of Desert; and — odd! — he still did not think lowly of him. *id.*, The White Monkey, I, Ch. IX, 76.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

Observe also that the almost regular absence of the suffix in the case of *near*, when denoting proximity, may be due to the fact that the word is felt as an adnominal adjunct. Thus in *They dwelt near (to) one another. He drew near (to) the table. Let her come near me*, etc. The use of *nearly* to denote proximity, as in the following quotation, is rare:

The light, which they now approached more nearly, assumed a broader, redder and more irregular splendour. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVII, 60 a.

f) Conversely the adverbial forms are practically regularly used in connexion with *to say* and similar verbs denoting an uttering.

She lamented, very mournfully, the fate of her Lyons silk. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVII, 64.

"You see," remarked Caroline, apologetically, "his feelings are so often hurt, it makes him morose." CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. IX, 170.

"No," said Soames firmly. GALSW., *In Chance*, III, Ch. X, (727).

The following quotation represents exceptional practice:

"Ah! she has not forgotten, you see, Sir," said Henry exultant. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 211.

Present participles, however, when distinctly felt as adjuncts of attendant circumstances, reject the suffix *ly*.

"Bless my soul!" .. cried Pen laughing: "why sir, he's the most popular man of the University." THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIX, 196 (= with a laugh.)

"Who told you I always say exactly what I mean?" her aunt asked smiling. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 123. (= with a smile.)

When, however, they are adjuncts of quality, i. e. distinctly intended to indicate the manner of the utterance, they take the suffix. In this case they are mostly placed before the verb, post-position admitting of the alternative interpretation.

i. Pen laughingly said, he by no means wished to be let off just debts he owed. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 195. (= in a laughing tone.)

ii. "It would be impossible," he said laughingly. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 57. (= in a laughing tone, or with a laugh.)

The divergent practice in the following quotation needs no comment:

"Come in, Mr. Dance," says he, very stately and condescending. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, I, Ch. VI, 40.

g) In connexion with other verbs than those of saying present participles and the verbal forms in *ant* or *ent* distinctly prefer the adverbial forms, even when they can hardly be said to modify the verb. See the second group of the following quotations. But even here examples of the alternative practice are not uncommon. See the third group of quotations.

i. England has howled savagely against this man, uncle; and she will one day roar exultingly over him. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XIV, 292.

His long series of reverses had made him loth to trust to Fortune, even though she seemed to look smilingly once more upon him. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XV, 210.

ii. He was patient and quiet; often sat brooding, but not despondently, for a long space. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop.*, Ch. XII, 45 b.

Agnes laughingly put back some scattered locks of his grey hair. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. LXIII, 431 b.

iii. She (sc. the dog) bit it (sc. the arm) so as to draw blood, and then ran panting on. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 235.

George turned smiling to his companion. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXII, 186*a*. (A comma after *turned* would change the meaning of the sentence.)

*h*) Adjuncts standing after *to lie*, *to sit* and *to stand* mostly preserve the unaltered form. The fact is that these verbs in these connexions lose some of their full meaning and approach to copulas in the manner of most of the verbs commented on in 22. See also the O. E. D., s. v. *still*, Note. In fact some of these latter verbs might have been discussed in this section.

i. The sheep on the Downs lay quiet as stones. GALSW., *To let*, I, Ch. XII, (907).

It often happens that the grandson of a successful man will be more successful than the son — the spirit that actuated the grandfather having lain fallow in the son and being refreshed by repose so as to be ready for fresh exertion in the grandson. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. V, 20.

ii. He lay there .. quite tranquilly. DICK., *Domb.*

*sit*: Hereward sat silent, appalled. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XVII, 71*b*.

Old Scrooge sat busy in his counting house. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 4.

He sat still for quite a minute. GALSW., *Awakening*, Ch. I, (780).

Note. Thus also quite usually in a modified meaning, as in: i. They (sc. the fetters) 'll sit as easy as a glove. GAY, *Beg. Op.*, II, 1.

Clara noticed that the cap sat even more crooked than usual. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XII.

ii. His confidence in her sat more easily upon him than the indecision with which he had twice contended. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, II, Ch. I, 5.

On the morrow Caroline found Shirley sitting gravely at her desk. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIV, 336.

It sits so softly on the shoulders that [etc.]. Whiteley's *Diary* for 1894.

*stand*: I. He was otherwise quite self-possessed, bowed to the Judge, and stood quiet. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. II, 77.

Soames stood silent, stroking her hand. GALSW., in *Chanc.*, III, Ch. XIV, (766).

ii. He was still standing sullenly at the sideboard, when he heard the doctor's carriage. *ib.*, III, Ch. XIII, (751).

Naturally present participles are always kept in the unaltered form after these verbs (Ch. I, 6).

Mr. Meeson lay gasping at the bottom of the boat. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VIII, 78.

## 24. Besides the above there are other connexions in which the adjunct admits of a twofold interpretation.

*a*) Thus such a combination as *American made goods* may be apprehended to stand for *goods made after an American method* or *goods made in America*. But whichever interpretation is put upon the combination, *American* would have to be understood rather as an adverbial than an adnominal modifier. This cannot, however, be shown by a modification of the word in question, nationality-names, such as *American*, *French*, *German*, etc. having, practically, no adverbial forms in *ly* (17, *b*).

An analogous observation may be made about *a Dutch built vessel*, *foreign manufactured engines*, etc. In *the King's Dutch born subjects*,

*Dutch* is, of course, best understood as an adjective used as predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. LVII, 39, c, 1).

b) Of a different nature is the interpretation to be put upon the second *British* in *Be British — buy British* (Times, No. 1980, 979), in which *British* may be expanded into either *in a British spirit* or *things that are British*, i. e. *British made*.

Note. With *British made* compare *London made*, there being no adjective corresponding to *London*.

c) In *the newly rich* in which *rich* is an adjective partially converted into a noun, the original adjective function of this word makes itself felt strongly enough for the adverbial form to be used. It is worth mentioning that in French and Dutch the corresponding adjunct has the adjective form: *de nieuwe rijken*, *les nouveaux riches*, owing to the total conversion of the adjectives into nouns.

The club hat made a stand against the newly rich. GALSW., To let, II, Ch. III, (937).

The suffix *ly* not originally an Adverbial Formative.

25. The suffix *ly* was not originally an adverbial ending. In Old English adverbs were formed from adjectives by adding *e*, which was appended also to the numerous adjectives in *lic* (the modern *ly*).

Note a) In Middle English *e* is still used side by side with *ly*, e. g.: *brighte*, *deepe*, *faire*, *hote*, *newe*, etc. Some few adverbs had *e* before *ly*, thus *boldely*, *needely*, *softely*, *semely*, *trewely*. See MORRIS, Chaucer, Prol. etc., Introd., 40.

i. Wel coude he sitte on hors, and faire ryde. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, Prol., 94.

So hote he lovede, that by nightertale | He sleep namore than dooth the nightingale. ib., 98.

ii. And French she spak ful faire and fetishly. ib., 124.

iii. Ful wel she song the service divyne, | Entuned in hir nose ful semely. ib., 124.

Sometimes either suffix is omitted for metrical reasons; thus in:

Speketh so pleyn at this tyme, I yow preye | That we may understonde what ye seye. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, E, 18.

β) "In Old English .. there are several instances (e. g. *bealdlice*, *boldly*, *swétlice* *sweetly*) in which an adverb in *lice* has been formed directly from a simple adjective without the intervention of an adjective in *lic*. In Middle-English the number of these direct formations was greatly increased, and when the final *e*, which was the original Old-English adverb-making suffix, ceased to be pronounced, it became usual to append *ly* to an adjective as the regular mode of forming an adverb of manner. It was, down to the seventeenth century, somewhat frequently attached, with this function, even to adjectives in *ly*, as *earlily*, *godlily*, *kindlily*, *livelily*, *lovelily*, *statelily*; but these formations are now generally avoided as awkward, while on the other hand it is felt to be ungraceful to use words like *godly*, *goodly*, *lovely*, *mannerly*, *timely* as adverbs; the difficulty is usually evaded by recourse to some periphrastic form of expression." BRADLEY, in O. E. D., s. v. *ly*, suffix.

See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1496; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 241; DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakk., III, § 107, Opmerkingen.

26. The dropping of the old adverbial suffix *e* early reduced many adverbs to the same form as the adjectives. The following deserve especial mention:

a) words denoting periodic recurrence, e. g. : *daily*, *weekly*, *yearly*, *momently* (rare), etc.

The garden-glasses glanced, and momentarily | The twinkling laurel scatter'd silver lights. TEN., Gard. Daught., 117.

b) *fain*, *fast*, *lief*, *long*, *stark*.

By the side of *fast* and *stark* the language has *fastly*, now obsolete or rare, and *starkly*, now uncommon. BYRON uses these forms for metrical reasons in:

I seem'd to sink upon the ground; | But err'd, for I was fastly bound. Mazeppa XIII.

With feeble effort still I tried | To rend the bonds so starkly tied. ib., XVI.

### The Suffix *ly* suppressed.

27. The suffix *ly* being essentially a comparatively recent grammatical device to distinguish adverbs from adjectives, it is but natural that it should be often omitted when the need of it is not felt, or when it would hamper metrical or rhythmical smoothness. The tendency of omitting it is furthered by the fact that in not a few cases some uncertainty is felt as to the grammatical function of the word (22—24), and that there are several adverbs in common use which, in accordance with former practice, never or rarely take it (26). Numerous instances of adverbs rejecting the adverb suffix will be mentioned below (28 ff).

28. a) The unwieldy adjectives in *ly* are almost regularly left unaltered, not only in poetry for metrical reasons, but also in ordinary prose, the accumulation of two identical suffixes having a peculiarly harsh effect (17, *a*; 25, Note *β*).

*Christianly*: Poor Rumbold was a great support to me, and a brave man, and died Christianly. ARGYLE (Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 137).

*clerkly*: Write to him that we come instantly to attend his commands, and do it clerkly. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXX, 311.

*courtly*: Full courtly, yet not falsely, thus returned. TEN., Lanc. & El., 236.

*knightly*: He .. | Made such excuses as he might, and these | Full knightly without scorn. id., Guin., 39.

*leisurely*: In the afternoon we proceeded leisurely with our guides up the slope, TYND., Glac., I, Ch. XVI, 105.

*orderly*: But, orderly to end where I begun, | Our wills and fates do so contrary run | That our devices still are overthrown. SHAK., Hamlet, III, 2, 220.

*seemly*: The abbot hath lain awake for a full hour, thinking how these matters might be ordered seemly and suitably. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV 362.

*untimely*: Come, Gertrude, we'll call up our wisest friends; | And let them know, both what we mean to do, | And what's untimely done. SHAK., Hamlet, IV, 1, 40.

We see daily how the false and worthless live and prosper, while the good are called away and the dear and young perish untimely. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 416.

I shall prepare this my wounded lamb for that account to which your man's cruelty has untimely sent him. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 116 b.

*worldly*: It is not worldly wise to stake all one's fortune on a throw. R. HAG., Jess.

b) Some adjectives have not developed adverbial forms in *ly* and, consequently, remain unaltered when they have to fulfil an adverbial function; thus:

1) names of colours, such as *black*, *white* *yellow*, etc.

Mr. Bradshaw .. went grey-pale. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. XXXI, 288.

The fire was black out. SWINNERTON, Nocturne, III, Ch. XII, III, 249.

2) words in *en* or *y*, derived from names of materials, some of them also expressing colour; thus: *ashen* (or *ashy*) *pale*, *snowy-white*.

*ashy* (*ashen*) *pale*: By fits, so ashy pale she grew | Her maidens thought her dying. SCOTT, The Maid of Neidpath, II.

She turned ashen pale. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. X, 109.

*dirty-white*: Little Jon intended to paint ceilings and walls, standing on a board between two step ladders, in a dirty-white apron, and a lovely smell of whitewash. GALSW., A wakening, Ch. I, (770).

*golden-brown*: Her short rich curls were golden-brown in the slanting sunlight. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. XVIII, 133.

*golden-dark*: The rest of the room was golden dark. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. I, 160.

*rosy-red*: She .. put up her rosy-red mouth to be kissed. Mrs. GASK., Mary Bart., Ch. XXV, 265.

*silvery white*: He was almost in shade, except for one or two marked or two marked lights which fell on hair already silvery white. id., Ruth, Ch. XVII, 126.

*snowy-white*: Her hair had become almost snowy-white. ib., Ch. XIX, 143.

Note a) In most cases it is not the derivative in *en* or *y*, which is used in these combinations, but the name of the material itself; thus: *crystal-clear*, *blood-red*, *ivory-white*. For further discussion see 54.

β) Observe that *icily* is used by the side of *icy* or *ice*; thus *icily-cold* = *icy-cold* = *ice-cold*, the variety offering a welcome expedient to satisfy the requirements of metre or rhythm. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.21.

29. a) In poetry the unaltered forms are often used for the sake of the metre or rhythm, and also, no doubt, because they are considered more adapted for emotional language than the matter-of-fact forms in *ly*.

How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank! SHAK., Merch., V, 1, 54.

Hope springs eternal in the human breast. POPE, Es. on Man, I, 105.

Cause of the din, a naked blade | Dropp'd from the sheath, that careless flung | Upon a stag's huge antlers swung. SCOTT, Lady, I, xxvii, 9.

Mark many rude-carved crosses by the path. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, XXI.  
John Barleycorn got up again, | And sore surpris'd them all. BURNS, *John Barleycorn*, III.

But William answer'd short, | 'I cannot marry Dora; by my life, I will not marry Dora.' TEN., *Dora*, 20.

b) Conversely the requirements of the metre may be the occasion of the use of a *ly*-form, which would hardly find favour in ordinary prose.

Deeply he drunk, and fiercely fed. SCOTT, *Rokeby*, I, VI. (Compare 34.)  
Heard a carol | mournful, holy, | Chanted loudly, chanted lowly. TEN., *Lady of Shal.*, IV, IV. (Compare 34.)

30. a) In colloquial language, and especially in the language of the illiterate, the suffix is often rejected.

I can walk a minuet easy enough. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (251).

Oh, master says he'll attend to it immediate. DICK., *Cop.*, XXVII, 199 b.

He shut his lips firm, breathing only by his nose. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. IX.

She took me home again very quick. GALSW., *Awakening*, (484).

b) The rejection of the suffix is especially frequent with adverbs of degree modifying adjectives or adverbs. For discussion and illustration see also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 241; BORST, *Die Gradadverbien im Englischen*; STOFFEL, *Intensives and Down-toners*; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.21; WESTERN, *Some Remarks on the Use of English Adverbs*, E. S., XXXVI, I, 75 ff. Literary English would hardly tolerate the unaltered forms used in the following quotations:

You're desperate hard upon me. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 39.

You do look uncommon well, to be sure. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 34.

Mr. Sedley was uncommon wild last night, sir. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 60.

When there's no hinds with them (sc. the stags), it is easier to get at them, for they are not near so wary as the hinds. BLACK., *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. IX.

He thought it excellent good. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, I, Ch. XX, 178.

Your hair grows quite remarkable strong. *Punch*, 1892, 136.

After the usual salutations William Fielding, sore against the grain, began. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 16.

c) Some intensives of adjectives or adverbs, chiefly in colloquial use, regularly, or almost regularly, stand without the adverbial suffix.

*jolly*: "He is so jolly green," said Charley. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IX, 93.

*mighty*: There was mighty little wine left. DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. I, 5a.  
She was looking mighty serious, but a little puzzled. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIV, 336. (Compare: Widows are mightily given to dream. WYCH., *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, I, (140).)

*monstrous*: Old Lobbs being very hungry, was monstrous cross. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 153.

What a monstrous fine girl that is in the lodgings over the milliner's! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXII, 229.



*precious*: We've got a pair o' precious large wheels on. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 5.

*pretty*: You are pretty wet. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 168.

Parties are balanced pretty much as they were in the last Parliament. *Graph.*, 1887, 450 a

Note. It is hardly necessary to state that *very*, the most common intensive of adjectives and adverbs, is not confined to any particular form of diction.

31. There is a distinct tendency in the colloquial language of using the unaltered form as the base of adverbs in the degrees of comparison. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, §§ 376, 1524; TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, V.

As the sun sank low in the heavens, the breath came slower and slower. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 126.

Easier said than done. *Prov.*

But if you looked closer, you saw that the shoulders were narrow. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 42.

This presentment of her sells quicker than all the rest. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 162.

Highly as the chap ranked, he would rank even higher before they had finished with him. GALSW., *To let*, I, Ch. I, (798). (Compare, 23, e.)

On extra special nights one always sleeps soundest. *id.*, *Awakening*, (788).

32. a) Present participles used as intensives do not take the ending *ly* when they are meant to express a notion understood to be an excess of that denoted by the adjective (or adverb) modified; as in *burning* (*scalding* or *smoking*) *hot*, *dazzling white*, *raving* (or *raging*) *mad*, *soaking wet* (Ch. LVII, 24). Compare also TRAMPE BÖDTKER, *Beibl. zur Angl. XXVII*, VII, 203 ff.

Religion | Drives his wife raving mad. SHELLEY, *Queen Mab*, V, 113.

The porridge .. chanced to be scalding hot. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. VI, 65.

She (sc. the dog) is raging mad. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 236.

All underfoot was still soaking wet with the floods of yesterday. *id.*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 53.

b) When no such similarity is meant, the participle now mostly takes the suffix; e. g.: *exceedingly troublesome*, *bewilderingly difficult*; *surprisingly favourable*; *amazingly prosperous*. Naturally there is not a rigid line of demarcation between these and the preceding participles. Compare 106.

The weather outside was piercingly cold. MARRYAT, *Peter Simple*, 185. (T.)

Charmingly novel in its colourful stripes .. Japsan, for all its daintiness, is a tremendously durable silk. *Manch. Guard.*, 66, 1924, I.

In Early Modern English a tendency may be observed of leaving also these participles unaltered; thus:

I am afeard, | Being in night, all this is but a dream. | Too flattering-sweet to be substantial. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, II, 2, 141.

Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 12.

33. Some adverbs preserve the adnominal form in certain combinations, some of which assume the character of compounds. The second element may be:

a) a present participle; e. g.: *easy-going* (as in *a man of an easy-going disposition*), *new-appearing* (*-bleeding* etc.), *quick-burning* (*-firing*, etc.) *slow-going* (*-moving*, etc.), *thorough-going* (as in *a thorough-going party-leader*).

The affections are strong, and their foundations lie deep: but they are not — such affections seldom are — wide-spreading, Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, Ch. II, 9.

Then came the blinding lightning and the rumble of the quick-following peal of thunder right over our heads. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, III, 56.

The Dutch are a slow-going people. *Daily Tel.*

The slow-moving figure of the chair-mender. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, Ch. IV, 41.

Note. In such combinations as *sweet-smelling*, *good-sounding*, etc. the first element is rather adnominal than adverbial (22). Thus also, although less clearly, in *close-fitting*, which varies with *closely-fitted*, as in:

(Mr. Winkle communicated) additional lustre to a new green shooting coat, plaid neckerchief, and closely-fitted drabs. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 3.

b) a past participle, 1) of a transitive verb; e. g.: *deep-laid* (as in *deep-laid designs* or *schemes*), *double-dyed* (as in *a double-dyed villain*), *hard-earned* (as in *hard-earned savings*), *hard-set* (as in *a hard-set egg*), *high-bred* (as in *a high-bred person*); *sore-stricken* (as in *a sore-stricken town*), *thoroughbred* (as in *a thoroughbred horse*).

When the union is not close enough to constitute a distinct compound, the first element mostly takes the adverb-suffix. It is only natural that there should be considerable variety in practice. As a general rule it may be stated that it is chiefly the long-established combinations that have the unaltered form, while new formations mostly appear with the adverb-suffix. Sometimes also the two combinations convey different shades of meaning: thus *widespread* = *general*, as in *widespread enthusiasm*, *alarm*; *widely spread* = *spread over a large surface*, as in *widely spread moisture*, *disease*; *hard-pressed* = *much pressed* as in *a hard-pressed governor*, *politician*; *hardly pressed* = *cruelly pressed*, as in *the hardly pressed subjects*; *heavy-laden* = *laden* or *loaded heavily*, or *weighed down* with trouble, weariness, etc.; *heavily laden* = *only laden* or *loaded heavily*.

Only a few of the commoner combinations can be illustrated here.

*close-knit*, — *knotted*: In a close-knit statement of facts he showed that [etc.]. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/10, 1924, 281 a.

More curious than Ruth, she awaited the untying of the close-knotted string. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XV, 109.

*double-dyed*: He is a double-dyed and most intolerable villain. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 251 a.

*fresh-cut*: i. There was still the smell of fresh-cut grass. GALSW., *Tollet*, II, Ch. VI, (966).

ii. The excommunication of the king was then freshly published. FROUDE, *Hist. Eng.*, II, 276.<sup>1)</sup>

*hard-pressed*: Palliative expedients such as politicians resort to when hard-pressed, will no longer avail anything. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 17, 335 *b*.

*heavy-laden*: i. \* One of Pickford's heavy-laden vans. Mrs. CARLYLE, *Lett.*, III, 13.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy-laden, and I will give you rest. *Bible*, *Matth.*, XI, 28.

ii. There are those yet alive who remember seven heavily-laden carts lumbering slowly up the long stone street. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, Ch. II, 29. T.

*high-bred*: The horse is a high-bred, high-spirited creature. FLOR. MARYAT, *Open Sesame*, 180.

*New* is mostly left unaltered in *new-born*, and regularly in *new-laid*; it appears to be the usual form also in *new-found*, *new-made* and *new-mown*. For the rest *newly* is, apparently, the ordinary form.

i. The new-born pleasure. LAMB., *Ess. El*, *Roast Pig*.

(They intimated) to their new-found acquaintance that they were journeying to the same city. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II 17.

His woodland musings disclosed to him a new-found charm in the coming day. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVII, 334.

Sweet as a musk-rose upon new-made hay. KEATS, *Endym.*, IV, 102.

ii. The low whitewashed inn with its newly-painted signboard was to his right. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 159.

This .. would certainly cause a momentary cloud of indignation .. to pass over the minds of a newly married couple. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 11.

She left also a newly-born child, his brother John, who survived to manhood. *Pref. Mem. of Wil. Cowp.*, *Chand. Clas*, 17.

We steered through newly formed cat-ice. *Times Weekly*, No. 2440, 353.

*Plain-dressed* varies with *plainly-dressed*, which may be as common.

They (sc. the old maids) should be allowed to be as absorbed, grave, plain-looking, and plain-dressed as they please. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 291.

*sore-stricken*: They hastened to render the sore-stricken town the assistance it so greatly needed. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1892, 320 *a*.

*widespread*: i. Widespread plundering took place at Gelsenkirchen. *Times*, I.I, No. 2442, 406 *b*.

The Ruhr mine-owners have decided to dismiss 20 per cent of all juvenile employees as a first step in widespread reduction. *ib*.

ii. Every day the most widely-read Conservative paper in London abuses Mr. Baldwin and all his works. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 22, 426 *c*.

Note *a*) In some compounds with past participles the unaltered form of the first element may be due to the fact that it is understood as adnominal in function; thus in *clean-shaven*, *free-born*, *fresh-gathered*.

Whenever he met a great man, he grovelled before him and my-lorded him as only a free-born Briton can do. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

*β*) Many combinations resembling the above consist of an adjective and a noun joined together by the suffix *ed* (Ch. LVII, 43, Obs. III); thus *close-grained* as in:

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

Wegg was a knotty man, and a close-grained, with a face carved out of very hard material. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. V, 68.

γ) The compounds *great-coated*, *full-dressed* (= in gala, compare *fully-dressed* = completely dressed) are formed from the compounds *great-coat* and *full-dress* respectively (Ch. LVII, 43, Obs. III).

2) of an intransitive verb, e. g.: *ill-* (*well-*, *pretty-*, etc.) *behaved* (as in *an ill-behaved man*); *civil-* (*fair-*, *free-*, *plain-*, etc.) *spoken* (as in *a civil-spoken gentleman*), *full-blown* (as in *a full-blown rose*), *full-grown* (as in *a full-grown animal*), *high-flown* (as in *high-flown phrases*), *well-travelled* (as in *a well-travelled man*). Combinations of this description are limited in number. For illustration see also Ch. LVII, 39, b.

combinations with *behaved*: A very pretty-behaved gentleman. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1, (275). (Compare: I like Aaron to be fond of me, and come and see us often, and behave pretty to you. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI, 130.)

David was very well-behaved to his mother. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I, (473).

Note. With *ill-behaved* compare *badly-behaved*, the unaltered form *bad* being used as an adverb only in the language of the illiterate:

I don't consider myself at all a badly-behaved woman. SHAW, *Overruled* (*Eng. Rev.*, No. 54, 182).

combinations with *spoken*: She is a civil, pretty-spoken child. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. I, 9.

He's a nice, fair-spoken, pretty young man. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 64.

*high-flown*: Mr. Turner's high-flown phrases are likely to fall very flat on the majority of his readers, *Lit. World*, 1889, 241 a.

*new-fallen*: i. (She was) forgetful of the clue given me by her footmarks on the new-fallen snow. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, III, 72.

ii. In honour of this toast Mr. Weller imbibed, at a draught, at least two thirds of the newly-arrived pint. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIII, 206.

c) an adjective, the modifier serving 1) to indicate the shade of a colour; thus *dark*, as in *dark blue*, etc., *bright*, as in *bright scarlet*, etc., *light*, as in *light brown*, etc.

The eye was dark blue, with an expression both majestic and benignant. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 54 a.

The sand of the cove was bright gold, and the low rocks to either side of it were a dark red. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. IX, 3, 222.

Note. Such combinations are usually preceded by the indefinite article, in which case, of course, the first element assumes the function of an adjective, the second element being an adjective converted into a noun (Ch. XXIX, 10, Note I). Compare Ch. LX, 108, b, 2.

They often painted the lower half of their columns a bright red. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. II, 15 a.

2) to do duty as an intensive; thus:

*bitter*, as in *bitter cold*: (It is) a fresh and exhilarating walk in summer, but a bitter cold one in winter. Mrs. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, Ch. IV, 55.

The night was bitter cold. WILDE, *Lord Arthur Savile's Crime*, Ch. II, 20.

*broad*, as in *broad awake*: He awoke at six o'clock with a start and sat up broad awake at once. WALT. BESANT, *The Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XIV, 36.

*clean*, as in *clean forgotten*, — *demented*: Dobbin knew he was as clean forgotten as if he had never existed in this world. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 57.

You have gone clean demented. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. XXXI, 307.

*close*, as in *close handy* (= or *to hand*), — *together*: He lives close handy to you. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 12.

He explained to her that he would not take the weed that came up close to hand. TROL., *Mal. Cove* (*Sel. Sh. St.*, I, 277).

Hampshire and Sussex lie very close together. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 369.

There we were, cowered down, close together. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, III, 56.

Note. Similarly the unaltered form of *close* is found before distinctly significant prepositions or group-prepositions denoting a relation of place or time (Ch. LX, 10, *a*; 46, *c* and *d*).

i. In the meantime, his son, .. whose young eyes stood close by one another, .. kept the required watch upon his mother. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. I, 71.

Sometimes they (sc the peewits) dashed close by us. SWEET, *Old Chapel*. Farmer Gunliffe's small homestead .. was close by the village of Tintagel. TROL., *Mal. Cove* (*Sel. Sh. St.*, I, 276).

The garden lay close under the house. MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. VII, 58.

ii. After a turn or two I found myself close in front of the Hope Farm. *id.*, *Cous. Phil.*, I, 8.

*dead*, as in *dead beat*, — *lame*, — *sleepy*: My horse is dead beat. WILK. COL., *Woman in White*, Ch. IV, 30.

"I can't go," said East; "I'm dead lame." HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VII, 131.

I was tired of reading, and dead sleepy. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 8 *b*.

Note *a*) Thus also *dead* as an intensive could not be replaced by *deadly* in: The wind is dead ahead. WEBST., *Dict.*

She was dead against it. EDNA LYALL, *Kn. Err.*, Ch. V, 40.

Reuben stopped dead short. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Gr.*, III, 223.

*β*) When there is a distinct suggestion of death, the form *deadly* is used, as in: His face turned deadly white. *Il. M'ag.*

How deadly pale he was! SWEET, *The Old Chapel*.

Everything was deadly still. CONAN DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 120.

All else in the stables was deadly quiet. GALSW., *Country House*, III, Ch. IX, 289.

He had only just fixed on an amethyst before feeling deadly ill. *id.*, *Tat.*, I, 1, 17.

Lord Arthur grew deadly pale. WILDE, *Lord Arthur Savile's Crime*, Ch. IV, 41.

*γ*) It is of some interest to observe that *deadly pale* varies with *deathly pale*, *death pale* and *deathlike pale*, all of them, apparently, less common.

i. His face had grown deathly pale. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. V, 44.

While he spoke | She neither blush'd nor shook, but deathly pale | Stood grasping what was nearest. TEN, *Lanc. & El.*, 959.

ii. Sweet father, I behold him in my dreams | Gaunt as it were the skeleton of himself, | Death-pale, for lack of gentle maiden's aid. *ib.*, 760.

iii. Death-like pale, but untrembling, (she) regarded him with unutterable disdain. LYTON, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. VIII, 388.

He was deathlike pale. *ib.*, II, x, Ch. XVIII, 219.

δ) The same variations may be possible with some of the other combinations with *deadly*.

It was "deathly cold" in these stony lanes. C. F. WOOLSON, (*Harper's Mag.*, 1884, Jan., 197/1). <sup>1)</sup>

Oh, Maisie, let's go to the cabin. I'm sick — deathly sick! RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VII, 91.

*wide*, as in *wide awake*, — *apart*, — *open*: He was still so wide awake at dawn that he got up, slipped on tennis shoes, .. and in silence crept down<sup>2</sup> stairs. GALSW., *To Let*, I, Ch. III, (831).

Her wide-apart brown eyes were set in whites so clear that they glinted when they moved. *ib.*, I, Ch. I, 809.

He awoke, standing on his bed, with his eyes wide open. *id.*, *Awakening*, (790).

Note. It is of some interest to compare these combinations mentioned under c) with such as consist of two co-ordinate adjectives (or adverbs) connected by *and*, the first of which, from a semantic point of view, modifies the second by way of an adverb of degree. Some of these belong to good colloquial or even literary diction, others are confined to the language of the illiterate. Compare 107, Obs. IV; also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.29; *id.*, *Philos.* 97. Of the first kind are those in:

Was the hope drunk | Wherein you dress'd yourself? hath it slept since? | And wakes it now, to look so green and pale | At what it did so freely? SHAK., *Mac b.*, I, 7, 47.

If we all keep our own homes sweet and clean, our children's lives will be spared the horrors of summer sickness. *Graph.*, No. 2323, 1022 c.

Another cup of tea? I see you're ready. This one will be nice and strong. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 124.

Of the second kind are those in:

You'll make yourself fine and beholden to Aaron. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn*, II, Ch. XVI, 121.

You're fine and strong. *ib.*, II, Ch. XVI, 129.

"Ah," said Luke, "but he'll be fine an' vexed, as the rabbits are all dead. *id.*, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 23.

Ah! Waken 'ud be fine and glad to have a son like mine. *ib.*, V, Ch. VI, 324.

He was fine an' altered before you come into the parish. *id.*, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 82.

You've got a jest-book, han't you, as you're rare and proud on. *id.*, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. I, 4.

She's rare and dirty. ARN. BENNET, *Buried alive*, Ch. VI, 130.

Mother'll be main and glad to hear as he's gotten out. Mrs. GASK, *Sylvia's Lovers*, Ch. VI, 86.

In all the above examples the combination is used predicatively. So far as the scanty evidence goes, *and* is absent when it is used attributively.

It looks a nice warm exercise that, doesn't it? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 270. I suppose Mr. Shawn has a rare fine situation here? A. BENNETT, *The Great Adventure*, I, I, (21).

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

34. Also as verb-modifiers numerous adverbs reject the adverb-suffix in certain connexions, most of them of widespread currency and long standing and, accordingly, exhibiting the older practice of using *ly*-less forms; thus:

*big* (which has not developed a current adverbial form), as in *to look big*, *to talk big*: I looked very big at the mighty ocean. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 18*a*. Tosti came back again to St. Omer and talked big. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XVII, 70*b*.

*broad*, as in *to speak broad*: We Devonshire men speak very broad. O. E. D., s.v. *broad*, 3. (Compare: *broadly speaking*, i.e. speaking with a broad or general view.)

*clean*, as an intensive: A ball or two may pass clean through your body, and never do any harm at all. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3, (280).

I haven't hit him — I missed him clean. BLACK, *The New Prince Fort*, Ch. IX.

*close* as in *to run close* (i. e. to press in competition or rivalry), *to live close* (i. e. to live economically). Also in numerous combinations in which the word conveys a notion of approaching, crowding or pressing, such as *to clasp*, *close*, *come*, *follow*, *go*, *hold*, *hug*, *lie*, *lock*, *press*, *shut (up) sit*, etc. In most of these *closely* appears as an occasional or rather frequent variant.

i. *to clasp*: He clasped her hand close. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. LII, 343.

*to come*: Bella came close and looked him over. GALSW., *Awakening*, (779).

*to follow*: Mr. Donaldson took his arm, and led him into the bedroom. Margaret followed close. MRS. GASK., *North and South*, Ch. XXI, 132.

*to go*: Soames went quite close and bent over. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Ch. XIII, (759).

*to hold*: He stroked her hand and held it close. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 68.

*to lie*: The farms lie pretty close all the way. MORSE, *Amer. Geog.*, I, 147.<sup>1)</sup>

*to live*: You must live close. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 221.

*to lock*: The gates of his heart were close locked. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 145.

*to press*: They have always been pressed close by primitive wants. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. I, 3.

*to run*: Queen Charlotte presented him (sc. George III) with fifteen children, and he certainly was the only king of England who had so many children by one wife. But James II ran him very close, having had fourteen sons and daughters in all, and Edward I exceeded him by three or four. *Notes and Queries*.

*to shut up*: His room was shut up close. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVI, 259*a*.

*to sit*: We must sit close. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 35.

ii. *to button*: It (sc. the green coat) was buttoned closely up to his chin. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 7.

*to follow*: He was closely followed by Mr. Pickwick and his disciples. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 6.

Hubert, the picture of misery, followed closely behind her. BUCH., *Winter Night*, Ch. V, 52.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

The sale follows closely upon that of Lord Falmouth's mansion in St. James's-square to an insurance company. *Times*, No. 2443, 430 *e*.

*to hug*: He hugged them all (sc. the books) closely. *Dick.*, *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 109.

*to pack*: While the price of the book has been lowered, the matter contained in it has been augmented by thirty-two closely-packed pages. *ANNANDALE*, *Conc. Dict.*, Note to New Ed.

A closely-packed basket of cut flowers. *Mrs. WARD*, *Marc.*, I, 56.

*to shut*: The windows were new, the doors fresh-painted and closely shut. *id.*, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 12.

*dead*, as in *to stop dead*: Every driver is compelled to drive in such a manner that he can stop dead whenever there is any obstruction. *Manch. Guard.*, 9/5, 1924, II *c*.

*deep*, as in *to drink deep*: Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring. *POPE*, *Es. on Crit.*, 206.

*fair*, as in *to bid fair*, *to fight fair*, *to play fair*, *to speak fair* and, perhaps, some more connexions:

Rotterdam bids fair to rival her elder and wealthier sister, Amsterdam. *Lit. World*.

This was fish that fought fair. *BLACK*, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VII.

I'll play fair. *ANSTEY*, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIV, 267.

If you speak me fair. | I'll tell you news indifferent good for either. *SHAK.*, *Taming of the Shrew*, I, 2, 180.

Observe also the elliptic *fair and softly*, as in: So "Fair and softly," John he cried, | But John he cried in vain. *COWPER*, *John Gilpin*, XXII. Fair and softly, young people! Everything in its turn. *THACK.*, *Virg.* Ch. LXXVI, 811.

*false*, as in *to play false*: This treacherous alpenstock played me false. *EDNA LYALL*, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. IV, 34.

*light*, as in *to sleep light*: She slept very light. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 141.

*low*, as in *to speak (talk, sing, etc.) low*.

Note. Occasionally we find *lowly* in this connexion, thus in: Something he said about falling on the cliffs, but it was muttered so lowly that Mally hardly understood him. *TROL.*, *Mal. Cove* (*Sel. Sh. St.*, I, 291)

Job and Mr. Carson were there, talking together lowly and solemnly. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Mary Bart*, Ch. XXXV, 352.

*plain*, as in *to speak plain*: Learn to speak plain. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

*right*, as in *to answer (guess, judge, tell, etc.) right*, in which the adjunct is, perhaps, felt to belong to an object that is understood: *what you answer is right*. Compare the examples with *wrong*.

You prophesied right. *SHER.*, *School*, III, (393).

You have guessed right. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XV, 159.

He had been anxious she should answer right. *READE*, *Never too late*, I, Ch. VI, 78.

The Normans could have pronounced this right. *H. BRADLEY*, *Eng. Place-names*.

Note *a*) The word may also be apprehended as an adnominal modifier in: That business is settled right and tight. *HARDY*, *Jude*, V, Ch. III, 343.

*β*) Also in (*that*) *served him right* and its variations the unaltered form is regular:

You whopped me and you served me right. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 402. (Compare: Why should you take such trouble for a woman who has served you so badly? *HARDY*, *Jude*, V, Ch. II, 332.)



*sharp*, as in *to turn a corner sharp*: "This is a confoundedly out-of-the-way place," said Mortimer .. as the bay turned the corner sharp. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 29.

Observe also *at five o'clock sharp* and similar expressions.

*short*, as in *to halt (or to stop) short, to cut short, to break off short, to come short*: i. \* The stranger now reached the little table, and halting short, took up the brown jug without ceremony or preface. LYTTON, *Eug. Ar.*, Ch. II, 12.

\*\* "Don't let us disturb you, good people," said Ellinor, as they now moved towards the boon companions, when her eye suddenly falling on the Stranger, she stopped short *ib.*, Ch. II, 17.

ii. The cook cuts us short in our bacon. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. II, 10. I cut him short at the first word. EM. LAWLESS, *A Col. of the Empire*, Ch. X.

iii. He broke off short, and said in a kind voice [etc.]. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 10.

iv. He knew that if he had possession of the rod, his breath would be coming short and thick. BLACK, *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. VII.

*straight*, as in *to look a man straight in the face*: She looked her straight in the eyes. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 169. (Compare with this the combination in the following examples, which conveys another shade of meaning: The Grand Pensionary looked straightly into the soldier's face. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. V, 61. She laughed and looked at him straightly. *ib.*, I, Ch. XII, 138.)

*wide*, as in *to speak (talk, etc.) wide of the mark*: But though he may talk wide of the mark — you'll find you won't get him to vote any way but Blue. PHILIPS, *Madame Leroux*.

*wrong* as in *to answer (guess, judge, tell, etc.) wrong*. (Compare the examples with *right*); *to go wrong, to lead wrong, to work out wrong, to do wrong*.

i. Your sight is jaundiced: you have seen wrong. Your mind is warped: you have judged wrong. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. III, 269.

You have heard it all wrong. GALSW., *To let*, II, Ch. IV, (948).

We fell because the women voted wrong. *Times*.

ii. Everything seems to have gone wrong with him. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XX.

She led you wrong with her artifices. MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. VIII, 63.

It is all wrong, and it will work out wrong. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 19, 367 *a*.

What has he done wrong? TROL., *Warden*, Ch. XI, 143.

Note. In some combinations differing but slightly from the above *wrongly* appears to be the usual form: Then as now there were precisians in the land who, also as now, were sometimes wrongly informed. SKELAT, *Notes & Queries*, 1890, 375 *a*.

The easiest test of grammatical knowledge is to ask an Englishman to parse a word in *ing*. Eleven persons out of twelve will do it wrongly. *ib.*

They interpret the law wrongly. *Graph.*, 1882, 695.

### The forms with and without *ly* differing in Meaning or Function.

35. The unaltered form of adverbs is far from restricted to the examples discussed in the preceding sections. In fact the number of words which in some of their meanings or functions reject the suffix more or less regularly, either in colloquial or vulgar language alone, or also in ordinary Standard English, is well-

nigh endless. The discussion of these forms and especially a comparison of the unaltered with the altered forms, however interesting and useful from a practical point of view, would, however, result into a still further straying into the field of lexicography than has already been the case in the preceding sections. On these considerations the present writer is fain to relegate the extensive material bearing on the subject that he has collected in the course of many years, to the limbo of forgotten things.

The forms with and without *ly* used indifferently.

36. In some instances the two forms appear to be used indifferently, no influences of style occasioning predilection for either. Thus no difference appears to be observed between:

*to sleep sound* and *to sleep soundly*.

i. May the new Abbot-expectant sleep as sound as he who is about to resign his mitre. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXIV, 366.

Lord Lilburne retired to rest betimes that night. He slept sound. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 455

If a man has no worse sin on his conscience than shooting a black cock on the Twelfth, he should sleep sound o'nights. BLACK, *The New Prince Fort*, Ch. VIII.

ii. "He sleeps soundly then," said the count. MRS. RADCLIFFE, *Myst. of Ud.*, II, Ch. XLV, 107*a*.

At once weary and content, I slept soon and soundly. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XI, 116.

Note. But for *to beat soundly* we could hardly say *to beat sound*.

*to clasp (hold, hug, shut, etc.) tight* and *to clasp (hold, hug, shut, etc.) tightly*.

i. He held the rest (sc. of his books) so tight that he only dropped one more on the first floor. DICKENS, *Dombey*, Ch. XII, 109

I held tight to the leg of the table. *id.*, *Great Expect.*, Ch. IV, 35.

With the utmost caution and with his lips still shut very tight, he raised himself somewhat and got his rifle into his hand. BLACK, *The New Prince Fort*, Ch. IX.

ii. He grasped her more and more tightly in his vice-like hands, till she made a little involuntary sound of pain. MRS. GASKELL, *Wiv. & Daught.*, Ch. XLVIII, 467.

She was trying to take one of his hands; but he kept them tightly in his pocket. *ib.*, 468.

He bent forward clasping his hands tightly. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, III, 241.

#### The Suffix *ling*.

37. The adverbial suffix *ling*, the result of a blending of two Old-English adverbial suffixes, *unga (inga)* and *ling*, has been confused with the adjective *long*, with the result that in Early Modern English two forms were used side by side, one ending in *ling*, one in *long*; e. g.: *sideling*, *sidelong*; *flatling*, *flatlong*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1500; *O. E. D.*, s. v. *ling*<sup>2</sup> and *long*. These

words now occur in either one or the other form, partly as adverbs, partly as adjectives. The genitival ending with which they were often furnished in the older stages of the language is now seldom or ever met with. Compare such Dutch adverbs as *blindelings*, *zijdelings*, *rakelings*.

None of the words in *ling* or *long* are now used in ordinary spoken or literary English. The following deserve some discussion and illustration:

*darkling*, used both as an adverb and an adjective. In the latter function it has been mistaken for a present participle, from which, perhaps through the influence of *sparkling*, a new verb, *to darkle*, has been evolved. *Darklings* is now rare.

O, wilt thou darkling leave me? SHAK., *Mids*, II, 2, 86.

Must helpless man, in ignorance sedate, | Roll darkling down the torrent of his fate? JOHNSON, *Van. of Hum. Wishes*, 346.

For darkling was the battle tried, | And fortune sped the lance. SCOTT, *Al. Brand*, VI.

He darkling felt the sculptured ornament. TEN., *Viv.*, 732.

Compare: We buried him darkly at dead of night. WOLFE, *Bur. of Sir John Moore*, II.

ii. Those who had augured ill from his darkling demeanour [etc.] THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 250.

As he saw their darkling outlines (sc. of the trees) against the sky, different thoughts came to the young man's mind. *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 306.

He gives his genius a darkling swagger. *id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XVII, 190.

iii. A kind of pantomime done darklings in a lawyer's back shop. *Tait's Mag.*, XIV, 11.<sup>1)</sup>

iv. Her cheek began to flush, her eyes to sparkle, | And her proud brow's blue veins to swell and darkle. BYRON, *Don Juan*, VI, c1.

The Founder's tomb darkless and shines with the most wonderful shadows and lights. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XXXVII, 396.

*endlong*, in Standard Modern English used chiefly as an adverb, rarely as an adjective:

Galloping in full career .. about and around, crossways and endlong. SCOTT, *Talism.*, Ch. VII.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Giant rushes grew | Like demons' endlong tresses. BROWN., *Sordello*, III, 347.

*flatlings*, varying with *flatlong*, now both obsolete:

i. He smote him flatling with his sheathed sword. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Proud King*, XL.

ii. The blade struck me flatlings. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XLII, 450.

iii. ANT. What a blow was there given! — SEB. An it had not fallen flat-long. SHAK., *Temp.*, II, 1, 181.

*grovel(l)ing*, which has come to be misunderstood as a present participle, which has led to the formation of *to grovel* as a verb. The adverb is now only used in collocations where it can also be apprehended as an adjective in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct. The genitive form *grovellings* is now obsolete, except in dialects. Note *to grovel in the dust* (or dirt) = to humble oneself to perform an act of humiliation.

i. Circe .. | Whose charmed cup | Whoever tasted, lost his upright shape, | And downward fell into a groveling swine. MILTON, *Comus*, 53.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

Some of the most powerful minds were still corrupted by foolish and *grovelling* superstition. BUCKLE.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The bull fell grovelling on his knees. KINGSLEY, *Heroes*, IV, 138.<sup>1)</sup>

The Earl of the West Saxons bowed himself to the ground, and lay *grovelling*. FREEMAN, *Norman Conquest*, III, xi, 92.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. But when armed feet | Thro' the long gallery from the outer doors | Rang coming, prone from off her seat she fell, | And grovell'd with her face against the floor. TEN., *Guin.*, 412.

She is not such a paragon that a man should condescend to grovel in the dirt for her. TROL., *Chron. Bars.*, III, Ch. LIII, 105.<sup>1)</sup>

*headlong*, used as an adverb and as an adjective. *Headling(s)* and *headlongs* are obsolete; the latter occurs still in dialects.

i. Gunpowder (the horse) . . plunged headlong downhill to the left. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, XXXII, 372.

They ought to have known that, unless they wished to run headlong to ruin, they must either repose full confidence in their leader, or relinquish all thoughts of military enterprise. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 111.

He ran headlong at me. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 6.

Another bird fell headlong. BLACK., *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. XXXVIII.

ii. The sparkling glance, soon blown to fire, Of hasty love, or headlong ire. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xxi.

He ran, he knew not where, at headlong speed. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *The Proud King*, XXXV.

That's the road you'd all like to go, headlongs to ruin. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. VI, 63.

*Sidelong*, now chiefly used as an adjective, in the same meaning as *sideway* (9, d). *Sideling*, whether as an adverb or an adjective, is far less common than *sidelong*. It has been apprehended as a participle, which has given rise to the development of the verb *to sidle*. The genitive-form *sidelings* is very rare.

i. \* Philip started and would have fallen sidelong from the coach, if his neighbour had not griped him hard with a hand that could have kept a young oak from falling. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 67.

He looked round sidelong. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, I, Ch. VIII, (512).

\*\* Or east, or west, or sideling to the north, | Or south careering, it is follow'd still. W. PHILIPS, *Mt. Sinai*, I, 392.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. \* While he feigned to be reading a book, he threw sidelong glances over the way in search of the bright eyes of Maria Lobbs. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151.

\*\* Henry struck him a sideling blow on the steel head-piece. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIII, 245.

iii. He sidled in and out of a room, to take up the less space. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 5b.

For sidling up she said, "Canst thou live twice, | Fair son?" MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Atalanta's Race*, XXXIX.

#### The Suffix *meal*.

38. *Meal* is the descendant of the Old-English *mælum*, the instrumental plural of the neuter noun *mæl* in the sense of measure,

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

quantity taken at one time. Already in Old English *mælum* had come to be used as a mere suffix with the force of the Latin (a)tim, as in *provinciatim*, *tributim* etc. In place of adverbs in *meal*, Modern English has now normally two identical substantives connected by *by*, as in *year by year*. The preposition *by* (rarely *in*) is also occasionally found before the formations in *meal* (O. E. D., s. v. *meal*, suffix).

*inchmeal*: i. People will stand to be cut to pieces inchmeal rather than submit to a conqueror. MAR. EDGEWORTH, *Patron*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 187.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. All the infections that the sun sucks up | From bogs, fens, flats on Prosper fall and make him | By inch-meal a disease! SHAK., *Temp.*, II, 2, 3.

*limbmeal*: O, that I had her here, to tear her limbmeal! SHAK., *Cymb.*, II, 4, 147.

*piecemeal*, still fairly common, especially as an adjective. *By* and *in piecemeal* have practically disappeared from the language.

i. I dreamt that a young lamb was set upon by a wolf, when, strange to say, a lion leapt upon it, and tore it piecemeal. DOUGLAS JERROLD, *Black-Ey'd Susan*, II, 1 (30).

He means to conquer England piecemeal. KINGSLEY, *Here W.*, Ch. XVII, 73 a.

ii. They (sc. the dispatches) make clear .. much that was doubtful in the piecemeal narratives hitherto published. *Times*, No. 1973, 832 c.

It is an interesting speculation to consider how far this method would provide a practical, if piecemeal, solution of the problems before the Economic Conference. *ib.*, No. 2442, 412 b.

The enemy was familiarised with them (sc. the tanks) by their piecemeal use. *Manch. Guard*, IX, 17, 327 b.

He stated the case for nationalisation of the mines broadly and without descending to details of the plan, except to say that it must not be piecemeal unification. *ib.*, 10/10, 1924. 308 b.

ii. It is better to do the whole work once for all, than to be recurring to it by piecemeal. JEFFERSON, *Writ.*, IV, 130.1)

iii. Is any student tearing his straw in piece-meal, | Swearing and Blaspheming? SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Ch. IX, 86 a.

### Secondary Adverbs and Group-adverbs formed by Composition.

#### 39. Compound adverbs and group-adverbs are made up of:

a) a noun either uninflected or in the genitive, preceded by an adnominal word, which may be:

1) a noun; e. g.: *crossways*, *edgeways*, *sideways*, etc. (9); *crosswise*, *endwise*, *lengthwise*, etc., 2) an adjective; e. g.: *mid-way*, *straightway(s)*, *likewise*, *meantime* (= *meanwhile*), etc.; 3) an indefinite pronoun; e. g.: *alway(s)*, *anywise*, *sometime(s)*, etc.;

b) a noun followed by an adnominal word; e. g.: *point-blank*;

c) a noun preceded by a preposition; e. g.: *down-stairs*, *in-doors*, *inside*, *off-hand*, *out-of-doors*, *outside*, *to-day*, *to-night*, *up-stairs*, etc.;

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

- d) two adjectives; e. g.: *casual-like*;  
 e) two or more adverbs; e. g.: *anywhere, nevertheless, howsoever*, etc.;  
 f) two verbs; e. g.: *may-be, may-hap(pen)*.

Only the formations with *wise, fashion* and *like* require special discussion in this place. As to the rest, some of them have already been commented on in the preceding pages of these volumes. In this section we will confine ourselves to illustration of a few.

*off-hand*: Dick Loftus had made a clean breast of it off-hand Mrs WOOD, ORV. COL., Ch. III, 38.

*out of hand*: I think for a kiss from such a dear creature as Amelia, I would purchase all Mr. Lee's conservatories out of hand. THACK., VAN FAIR, I, Ch. IV, 37.

*point-blank*: I wouldn't mention it to Mr. Chuzzlewit on his return, . . . unless it were necessary, or he asked you point-blank. DICK., CHUZZ., Ch. XXV, 208 a.

#### Adverbs in *wise*.

40. a) Adverbs in *wise* have been formed from nouns, adjectives, past participles and indefinite pronouns (or numerals). *Wise* resembling *ways* semantically and phonetically (9), some adverbs with the former have variants with the latter. *Wise* is a living formative, but new-formations are not particularly frequent: they appear to be confined to such as have been formed from nouns.

i. *anticlockwise*: We turned south in order to reach the south coast of North East Land and to attempt a circumnavigation anticlockwise. TIMES, No. 2440, 353 a.

*bachelorwise*: Dickens, who had apparently left the paternal roof for some little time, was living bachelorwise, in Furnival's Inn. MARZIALS, Life of Dick., Ch. III, 40.

*crosswise*: He laid it (sc. the umbrella) crosswise over the trestles. DICK., OUR MUT. FRIEND, I, Ch. V, 65.

*dropwise*: I cull'd the spring | That gather'd trickling dropwise from the cleft. TEN., MERL. & VIV., 272.

*endwise*: Now when I came to an unknown place, where a stone was set up endwise, . . . I gathered my courage to stop and think, having sped on the way too hotly. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XIII, 78.

*lengthwise*: The child slept, and grannie put it on the pillow turned lengthwise at Kate's side. HALL CAINE, The Manxman, IV, viii, 228.

*Jerichowise*: She did not expect besieged cities to fall Jerichowise at the sound of her trumpet. SHAW, Saint Joan, Pref., 25.

*tandem-wise*: A mile further on he overtook . . . an immense tree-trunk slung between three pairs of wheels and dragged by two tremendous horses, harnessed tandem-wise. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, II, Ch. I, VII, 74.

ii. *broadwise, longwise*: He refolded the letter, and was sitting trifling with it, standing it long-wise and broad-wise on his table, . . . when Mr. Perch, the messenger, knocked softly at the door. DICK., DOMB., Ch. XXII, 198. You might have got a hearse up that staircase, and taken it broadwise. id., Christm. Car., I, 19.

Note. By the side of *broadwise*, *breadthway(s)* and *broadway(s)* there is a further variant, viz.: *broadside*, as in: Instead of starting forward, the perverse old animal made a lateral movement, and ran broadside against the fence. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 370.

*contrariwise*: Nor do we agree with those who think that, by skilful discipline, children may be made altogether what they should be. Contrariwise, we are satisfied that, though imperfections of nature can be diminished, they cannot be removed by it. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. III, 71 a.

*leastwise*, somewhat rare (O. E. D.): It was a sign that his money would come to light again, or leastwise that the robber would be made to answer for it. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XVI, 122.

iii. *brokenwise*: Then thro' the portal-arch | Peering askance, and muttering brokenwise, | As one that labours with an idle dream, | Beheld the Queen and Lancelot get to horse. TEN., *Merl. and Viv.*, 98.

*stolen-wise*: And Lancelot, that ever more | Look'd stol'n-wise on the Queen. SCOTT, *Bridal of Triermain*, II, xiii.

iv. *anywise*, unfrequent, *anyway(s)*, *in any way* (or *wise*) being mostly used instead. For illustration of these variants see Ch. XL, 21, and below.

Neither is it *anywise* essential. HAWTHORNE, *Eng. Note-Bks.*, II, 11 <sup>1)</sup>

*nowise*, unfrequent, *noway(s)*, *in no way* (or *wise*) being mostly used instead. For illustration of these variants see Ch. XL, 134, and below.

I'm nowise a man to speak out of my place. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. VI, 39.

b) Most of the adverbs in *wise* go back to combinations with *in* (or *on*) (Ch. LX, 112, d). In course of time the preposition was dropped, and the remaining parts of the combination united into one word. Full combinations with *in*, although hardly current in ordinary English, are not uncommon in literary diction.

*in any wise*: And bold the Ka'dee who dares say what he will believe, what disbelieve — not knowing in any wise the mind of Allah — not knowing in any wise his own heart. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 38.

*in maiden wise*: And Geraldine in maiden wise | Casting down her large bright eyes, | With blushing cheek and courtesy fine | She turned her from Sir Leoline. COLERIDGE, *Christabel*, II, 573.

*in no wise*: She in no wise objected to the fair exchange. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVI, 334.

A student who is unacquainted with the older forms (of English) is in no wise qualified to give opinions upon the derivation of English words. SKEAT, *Princ. of Etym.*, I, Ch. I, 2.

Compare with the above the following combination with *on*: Over against a London house, .. a man with a wooden leg had sat for some years, with his remaining foot in a basket in cold weather, picking up a living on this wise: [etc]. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. V, 65.

41. a) Also *fashion* may be apprehended as a formative of a compound adverb, although it is felt to be more of an independent word than *wise*, which expresses practically the same notion. Compound adverbs in *fashion* are formed from nouns and adjectives, chiefly the former, any suitable noun or adjective being capable of entering into combination with it. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *fashion*, 13, c.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

*i. bachelor-fashion*: The chamber, furnished bachelor-fashion, that you wished to see, .. is on the fifth floor. DICK., *Two Cities*, I, Ch. V, 49.

*child-fashion*: She, with other boys and girls, are amusing themselves child-fashion in a garden. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 504 2c.

*lance-fashion*: (They carried) lance-fashion their long staves, with axe at end. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 8.

*native-fashion*: He had learnt to sit native-fashion and to eat with his fingers. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 99.

*ii. foreign-fashion*: He cuts his hair foreign-fashion. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, II, 47.

*French-fashion*: The middle compartment of the window opened to the ground, French-fashion. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 45.

*Scotch-fashion*: Gwendolen (waş) looking busily at her scarf, which she was arranging across her shoulders Scotch-fashion. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XIV, 228.

*b)* As in the case of the adverbs in *wise*, these adverbs in *fashion* may be assumed to go back to a combination with *in*. This appears from a comparison of the preceding with the following examples:

*in library fashion*: (The) room (was) abundantly supplied with books and furnished in library fashion. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XIV, 205.

*in sailor fashion*: But when he turn'd | The current of his talk to graver things | In sailor fashion roughly sermonizing | On Providence and trust in Heaven [etc.]. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 204.

*in this fashion*: What we fear is that the policy of pacific penetration will not prosper much when it is pursued in this fashion. Rev. of Rev., CCXX, 335 b.

42. *a)* Adverbs in *'like* are formed from adjectives. They are only met with in the language of the illiterate, Standard English employing the forms in *ly* instead.

*casual-like*: To think that next Tuesday it'll be six and twenty years since you walked out o' the house casual-like. A. BENNETT, *The Great Adventure*, 2, (118).

*clear-like*: But it come to me all clear-like. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI, 125.

*foolish-like*: She could pick up just anything she heard, pick it up quite easy with the right hand, though she could only vamp, foolish-like, with the left. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, I, Ch. XVI, 126.

*quiet-like*: Doctor hinted to me quiet-like, as he'd never leave his bed again. A. BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways*, I, Ch. II, 1, 16.

*sarcastic-like*: "You sur-prise me," ses Ginger sarcastic-like. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, D, 76.

*sudden-like*: She has never gone away in this way, sudden-like, before. MARIE CORELLI, *The Murder of Delicia*.

*b)* *Like* is also used to form adjectives, 1) in ordinary Standard English, from any suitable noun; e. g.: *gentlemanlike*, *ladylike*, *deathlike*, *lionlike*, etc.

The schoolmaster is generally a man of some importance in the female circle of a rural neighbourhood; being considered a kind of idle, gentlemanlike personage. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 347.

Early morning brought a deathlike exhaustion. GALSW., *Tat.*, I, I, 22.



The use of these adjectives as adverbs is uncommon, except, perhaps, in dialects. The following examples, however, hardly bear the stigma of vulgarity.

*death-like*: Death-like pale, but untrembling, (she) regarded him with unutterable disdain. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. VIII, 388.

*ghost-like*: So day by day she past | In either twilight ghost-like to and fro. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 844.

*lightning-like*: Now she knew the truth, that earth has no barrier which avails against agony. It comes lightning-like down from heaven, into the mountain-house and town-garret; into the palace and into the cottage. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. VII, 58.

*lion-like*: (He) aroused Lancelot, who rushing outward lionlike Leapt on him. TEN., *Guin.*, 106.

*mushroom-like*: A large number of anti-Christian magazines that, mushroom-like, have sprung up in all parts of the country. *Westm. Gaz.*, 27/6, 1925, 227 a.

*tradesman-like*: Your master had need to be ashamed of you as a 'prentice, if you can't do a thing more tradesman-like than this! Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XVIII, 136.

2) in illiterate English, from adjectives. Instances are uncommon. The O. E. D. mentions *genteel-like* and *human-like*, but quotes no instances from standard writers.

I tried the horse over the bar yesterday, but he was quite restive like. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 37.

c) In the language of the illiterate *like* is not rarely tagged on to a lengthy word-group or even an entire sentence, to impart to it an adverbial force, which in Standard English might be expressed by *as it were*. See also FRANZ, E. S., XII.

Well, sir, and now that has failed me like, I am ashamed, as it were, to have thought of it. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, II, Ch. II, 157. (Observe that *as it were* is used here as a variant of the preceding *like*.)

He was a "thinnish-faced man, wth a sort o' cast in his eye, like." G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 50.

Her voice seemed sometimes to fill the room, an' then it went low an' soft, as if it was whisperin' close to your heart, like. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 82.

They had only come out to see "what war a-going" on, like. *id.*, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 13.

I have kept my real sentiments more to myself like. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, III, 40.

d) Instead of *mad-like*, which appears to be non-existent, the language employs *like mad*, which seems to occur also in good colloquial language.

He saddled that unfortunate Rebecca himself, and rode her on the Downs like mad. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 66.

Benjamin, drive like mad! WILKIE COLLINS, *Wom. in White*, II, Ch. III, 196. His hat dangling like mad behind him. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. IV, 55.

Note α) Such a construction as is used in the following quotation, in which *like* is placed before an adverbial adjunct with a preposition, seems to be very rare:

He just reached down t'owd book (pointing to a great Bible in the book-case), opened it like at a chance, and [etc.]. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. IV, 72.

β) Quite common, on the other hand, are combinations with *like* placed before a (pro)noun (Ch. XVII, 105 f), which have the value of an incomplete clause. Such combinations are, however, in many cases exchangeable for adverbs in *ly*; thus *He acted like an honest man* differs little from *He acted honestly*. Similarly *Don't talk like that* (MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 213) means practically the same as *Don't talk so*. Compare Ch. LX, 20, *a*.

### Secondary Adverbs with a Pronominal Root.

43. Pronominal adverbs are such as are etymologically connected with the Old-English pronouns *he*, *þæt* and *hwæt*. They are either:

*a)* simple: *here*, *hither*, *hence*; *there* *thither*, *thence*, *then*, *thus*, *the*; *where*, *whither*, *whence*, *when*, *how*, *why*.

*b)* or compound: *hereby*, *herein*, etc.; *hitherto*, *henceforth* (— *forward*); *thereby*, *therein*, etc.; *thenceforth*, — *forward*; *whereby*, *wherein*, etc., *whenceforth*, — *forward*.

*whereso(ever)*, *wherever*; *whenever*; *howsoever*, *however*; *anywhere*, *everywhere*, *nowhere*, *somewhere*.

44. Except for the collocation *hither* and *thither*, the forms *hither*, *thither* and *whither* are used only in the higher literary style. In ordinary English they have been supplanted by *here*, *there* and *where*, *to* being often added to *where* and placed in back-position; e. g.: *Come here*, *Go there*, *Where are you going (to)?* To poets the disyllabic forms are often welcome expedients to satisfy the requirements of the metre. Ample illustration is hardly necessary.

*hither*: "Harry Esmond, come hither," cries out Dick. THACK., *Es m.*, IV, Ch. XI, 243.

For hither had she fled. TEN., *Guin.*, 9.

*thither*: KING. Where is Polonius? — HAML. In heaven; send thither to see. SHAK., *Ham l.*, IV, 3, 36.

And thither, when the summer days were long, † Sir Walter led his wondering paramour. WORDSW., *Harl-Leap Well*, 89.

*whither*: I know not whither your insinuations would tend. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (244).

He invited the two gentleman to his apartment in the Haymarket, whither we, accordingly, went. THACK., *Es m.*, IV, Ch. XI, 244.

*hither and thither*: She kept him running hither and thither on her errands. WASH. IRV., *Doll Heyl.*, (STOF., *Hand l.*, I, 108).

Hither and thither plied the busy tramcars. EDNA LYALL, *Kn. Er.*, Ch. I, 12.

45. Also *hence*, *thence* and *whence* are literary words, *thence* being the least usual. In ordinary English they have been replaced by *from here*, *from there* and *from where* respectively. *Hence* is frequently used with regard to time (*a fortnight hence* = *in a*

*fortnight*); both *hence* and *whence* are also used as conjunctive adverbs, the former in co-ordination, the latter in subordination; *thence*, as a co-ordinative conjunctive adverb, is uncommon (Ch. XII, 3; Ch. XVII, 52). Not unfrequently do we meet with a redundant *from* before *hence* and, especially *whence*. The latter is also met with at the head of a restrictive adnominal clause.

*hence*: i. Go you hence, and never see me more. TEN., *Dora*, 98.

ii. He chose a day only a fortnight hence. THACK., *Pend*, II, Ch. II, 23.

I will call three days hence. *id.*, *A little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. IV, 319.

iii. The moon performs a revolution round the earth in 27 days 7 hours and 43 minutes, but in consequence of the progressive motion of the earth in its orbit, it takes 2 days 5 hours longer for the moon to again occupy the same position between the sun and the earth. Hence it is that the lunar month (i.e. from new moon to new moon) is  $29\frac{1}{2}$  days. CASSILL'S *Conc. Cycl.*

*thence*: i. Very little was obtained from London. Six thousand pounds had been expected thence. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 114.

Thence arose the quarrel. RID. HAG., *She*, Ch. II, 20.

ii. More able to endure, | As more exposed to suffering and distress; | Thence, also, more alive to tenderness. WORDSW., *Char. of Happy War.*, 26.

*whence*: i. An old gentleman and a young lady — coming nobody knew whence, and going nobody knew whither — had turned out of the highroad and driven unexpectedly to the Blue Dragon. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 14*a*.

ii. \* Sleek unwieldy porkers were grunting in the repose and abundance of their pens; whence sallied forth, now and then, troops of sucking-pigs. WASH. Irv., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 351.

\*\* The moon always presents the same face to the earth; whence it follows that it must turn round on its axis in the same time that it revolves round the earth. CASSILL'S *Conc. Cyclop.*

iii. Of all places Holland is that whence a blow may be best aimed against me. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 117.

iv. On ascending to the spot from whence this music proceeded, they found him recumbent in the midst of a fortification of luggage. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XVII, 144*a*.

For there was no man knew from whence he came. TEN., *Guin*, 287.

46. The adverbs *here*, *there* and *where* are often joined on to prepositions to form compounds. Those with *here* and *there* occur chiefly as pure adverbs, partly also as co-ordinative conjunctive adverbs (Ch. IX, 10). Those with *where* are met with chiefly as subordinative conjunctive adverbs, introducing adnominal clauses (Ch. XVI, 4) or adverbial clauses (Ch. XVII, 14, 50), occasionally infinitive-clauses answering to adnominal clauses (Ch. XVIII, 16, c). They are but rarely found as pure adverbs introducing interrogative sentences or subordinate questions. In the literary, but otherwise quite common *heretofore*, the second element, *tofore*, is now quite obsolete, *before* having taken its place.

These formations, which in Old English were quite as common as in Modern Dutch, are, with a few exceptions, only met with

in the literary language. Quite common are *therefore*, and the compounds with *about*, which in colloquial language mostly have the genitival *s* attached to them (10). Also many compounds with *where* are rather frequently met with, especially when introducing adverbial clauses. But the bulk are decidedly archaic, and as such are especially met with in legal, biblical or poetic language, and in mock-dignified style. ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 60.

The ordinary substitutes of most of these formations are word-groups consisting of a preposition + the demonstrative *this* or *that* (or the personal pronoun *it*), the interrogative pronoun *what*, or the relative pronoun *which*, sometimes followed by a suitable noun, such as *place* (or *spot*), *time*, *reason*, etc. Instead of the older *herein* and *therein* Modern English has also *in here* and *in there*.

Note. The grammatical status of the component members of these compounds and their equivalents is hard to define and not the same in all of them. In *herein* and *therein* both members may be regarded as adverbs, the first modifying the second: thus *herein* may be apprehended to stand for \**here* i. e. *in(side)*. But this analysis can certainly not be extended to all these compounds. As to *hereupon* it would already be impossible for the simple fact that *upon* is never used as an adverb. The analysis which seems least open to exception and could be applied to all these compounds is to consider them as word-groups in which the preposition is placed after, instead of before its complement. Compare the Latin *me cum*, *tecum quo - usque*, etc.

In *in here*, *in there*, and most of the other combinations with *here* and *there*, the second member is best regarded as an adverb that has assumed the function of a noun; compare such word-groups as *until now*, *from abroad*, *since then*, etc. (113, b). But in *up here*, *over there* both members are felt as adverbs, the second serving to specialize the meaning of the first. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 379 and § 387, Note; also DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, § 110, Opm. 3.

*Compounds of here*: i. We turned back on my humbly insinuating that it might be useful hereafter. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37 a.

ii. Notice is hereby given that the half-yearly examination for matriculation in this University will commence on Monday the 11th January, 1892. *Acad. Cyclists* are hereby cautioned against riding at a pace exceeding 8 miles an hour. *Notice in London Parks*.

iii. Herein lies the difference between a grammatical and a philological illustration, that the former requires literary authority, and the latter only existence as its warrant. *EARLE*, *Phil.*<sup>5</sup>, § 221.

iv. This chapter has to do with a church. With the church so often mentioned heretofore, in which Tom Pinch played the organ for nothing. *DICK.* *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 247 b.

Hereford once more had its Musical Festival, and this time under far happier conditions than heretofore. *Graph.*

v. Herewith he fell to poking the fire with all his might. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. III, 19.

*Compounds of there:* i. About five minutes thereafter, when the company had swarmed into the dining-room. BLACK, The New Prince Fort., Ch. XIV.

ii. Wide is the gate and broad is the way that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat. Bible, Matth., VII, 13.

iii. And thereby hangs a tale. SHAK., As you like it, II, 7, 28.

She took up her station on a low stool at his feet: thereby bringing her eyes on a level with the teaboard. DICK., Chuz., Ch. II, 6*b*.

I adopted the plan of taking a stiff glass of brandy and water immediately on the top of them, and found much relief thereby. JER., Idle Thoughts, V, 72.

An important hiatus would thereby be filled. Times.

iv. Wherefore for us that life thou shouldest spend, | If any day there should be need therefor. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Son of Cræus, XLI.

v. Dick took up the pages of manuscript, and began to read therefrom with great emphasis and volubility. THACK., Es m., II, Ch. XI, 245.

vi. The wicked dig pits for others and fall therein themselves. WALT. BESANT, The Bell of St. Paul's, II, Ch IX, 110.

vii. In the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die. Bible, Gen., II, 17.

The vale of Blackmoor was to her the world, and its inhabitants the races thereof. HARDY, Tess, Ch. I, V, 72.

viii. The scholarship had been won by a precocious Etonian with an extraordinary talent for 'stems' and all that appertaineth thereto, Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 88.

ix. Now there was nothing that one may call decidedly original in this remark, nor can it be exactly said to have contained any wise precept theretofore unknown to mankind. DICK., Chuz., Ch. III, 18*a*.

x. Mr. Weller and the fat boy, having by their joint endeavours cut out a slide, were exercising themselves thereupon. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 270. He had observed Durbeyfield's name on his waggon, and had thereupon been led to make inquiries about his father and grandfather till he had no doubt on the subject. HARDY, Tess, Ch. I, 5.

xi. He went therewith, nor anywhere would bide. W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Atalanta's Race, LI, (= at these words.)

xii. And therewithal with glory to be paid. *ib.*, XL (= besides).

*Compounds of where:* i. Wherefore didst thou doubt? Bible, Matth., XIV, 31.

ii. It is worth while to consider whether there is any test whereby words of native English origin may be known from others. SKEAT, Princ. of Etym., I, Ch. III, § 15, 19.

I have not brought you here for the sole purpose of asking for assistance whereby to educate young and deserving musicians. Lit. World.

iii. By the time Dick had come to that part of the poem, wherein the bard describes [etc.] THACK., Esmond, II, Ch. XI, 245.

iv. "You see," says Mr. Addison, pointing to his writing-table, whereon was a map of the action at Hochstedt [etc.] *ib.*, II, Ch. XI, 245.

v. He descended upon some neighbouring houses whereof the families were not gone abroad. *id.*, Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

For the first time in her life she beheld the spot whereof her father had spoken. HARDY, Tess.

vi. "What have you done, my lord, with the dead body?" — "Compounded it with dust, whereto 'tis kin." SHAK., Hamlet, IV, 2, 6.

vii. He seemed one who had lived hard, but who had much yet left in the lamp wherewith to feed the wick. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 87.

viii. She had stolen from her little hoard wherewithal to make some small purchases. *id.*, 342.

Then had he (= he had) saved and pinched from his own necessities to have wherewithal to enter theaïres and gaming-houses. *id.*, *Caxt.*, XVI, Ch. IV, 423

ix. Dominee v. Schaik sung a Latin hymn in honour of St. Nicholas; whereupon the goblin threw himself up into the air like a ball. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 89).

*word-groups with a demonstrative*: i. At this we all fell a-crying together. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11a.

ii. Upon this Hans van Pelt ordered his boat and set off to board her. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 85).

iii. With this the old lady bade me adieu. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.  
With that Dunstan slammed the door behind him. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. III, 24

- 47 a) Of the other pronominal adverbs mentioned in 43 it is only *hither* that forms a current compound with a preposition. This is *hitherto*, which is used:

a) to express a relation of place, but only in archaic language. *Hitherto* shalt thou come, but no further. Bible, Job, XXXVIII, 11.

b) to express a relation of time. We find it with regard to the moment of writing or speaking, and to an epoch in the past.

i. I have been too much of a child *hitherto*. PHILIPS, *Mad. Leroux*, Ch. XII

ii. She gave vent to feelings which she had *hitherto* suppressed. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 15b

c) *Thitherto* is but rarely met with in Present English.

The latter (sc. Dr. Wilson) agreed to the occupation of the Rhineland by Allied troops for fifteen years, which he had *thitherto* opposed. *Manch. Guard.*, 82, 1924, 101a.

48. *Hence*, *thence* and *whence* form compounds with *forth* and *forward*. Those with *whence* are, however, quite obsolete. The compounds with *forth* and *forward* are used indifferently, and belong to the literary language. *Henceforth* and *henceforward* are used with regard to the moment of speaking or writing, and with regard to an epoch in the past; *thenceforth* and *thenceforward* only with regard to an epoch in the past. The genitival *s* is but rarely found attached to the compounds with *forward*, and only in the older stages of the language.

From the meaning of *hence*, etc. it follows that the addition of *forth* or *forward* is really redundant. The redundancy is sometimes made worse by the preposition *from* being placed before these formations.

In ordinary language *from this (that) time (forth, forward(s))*, *in future* or analogous expressions are mostly used instead of them.

*henceforth*, — *forward*(s): i. Henceforward I am ever ruled by you. SHAK., ROM. & JUL., IV, 2, 22.

ii. Henceforward, too, the Powers that tend the soul, .. began | To vex and plague her. TEN., GUIN., 64.

A power had at last risen up in the Commons with which the Monarchy was henceforth to reckon. GREEN, SHORT HIST., Ch. VIII, Sect. 2.

iii. Henceforwards all your interest shall be mine. VANBRUGH, MISTAKE, II. 1)

iv. We hope that we have at last come to the end of this period of unrest, and that we may look from henceforth to a return of normal politics. WESTM. GAZ., No. 4925, 1 a.

*thenceforth*, — *forward*(s): i. No better dining-table could be required than the chest which he solemnly devoted to that useful service thenceforth. DICK., CHUZ., Ch. XXIII, 195 a.

Thenceforward there was a greater solidarity between the two than ever. MRS. WARD, DAV. GRIEVE, II, 97.

ii. He had been wondering whether all boards were born with that white stuff on their heads, and were boards from thenceforth on that account. DICK., OL. TWIST, Ch. III, 41.

*equivalents of the above*: i. From that time Miss Murdstone kept the keys. DICK., COP., Ch. IV, 24 b.

She begged the favour of being shown to her room, which became to me from that time forth a place of awe and dread. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 24 a.

From that time forward mathematics became a solid part of her education. SARAH GRAND, THE HEAVENLY TWINS, I, 15.

ii. I'll attend to all this kind of thing in future. DICK., COP., Ch. IV, 24 b.

For the compounds *whereso*, *wheresoever* and *wherever*; *whensoever* and *whenever* see Ch. XLI.

## Different Parts of Speech turned into Adverbial Adjuncts.

### Nouns turned into Adverbial Adjuncts.

49. Nouns, or word-groups whose chief constituent is a noun, that may be used as adverbs are very numerous. In many cases the adverbial use is so common that we are hardly aware of a conversion. This applies to *yesterday*, *to-day*, etc.; *a bit*, *a whit*, etc.; *home* (in *to come home*), *cheap* (in *to buy cheap*); and innumerable others.

Some nouns or substantival word-groups when used as adverbial adjuncts, on the other hand, are clearly felt to be used out of their proper function. The varied processes how this conversion has come about will be passed in rapid review in the following sections.

50. Some are the (onomatopoetic) stems of verbs and serve to indicate the notion of abruptness suggested by the verb; thus:

*jump*: Jump at this dead hour. SHAK., HAMLET, I, I, 65. (See also HAMLET, V, 2, 386; OTH., II, 3, 392.

1) O. E. D.

H. POUTSMA, III II.

The spectre started full jump with him. WASH. IRV., Sketch - Bk., XXXII, 372. (This use of *jump* is now obsolete. O. E. D.)

*plump*: One morning .. he came plump .. upon Madame Gonzalès and her young charges. BERN. CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. VI, 69.

She refused it plump. READE, Cloister, Ch. IX, 48.

*smack*: Smack went the whip, round went the wheels. COWPER, John Gilpin, X.

*smash*: I wish you would mind the child -- it is crumpling up, and playing almighty smash with that flim-flam book. LYTTON, My Novel, II, x, Ch. XIX, 224.

51. Obs. I. Some of these words may, apparently, be made the base of adverbs in *ly*.

The other day, sailing towards Barnes Bridge, he observed a large sack floating plumply down-stream. Manch. Guard., 10/10, 1924, 316 a.

II. In *bung-full* and *chock-* (or *choke-*)*full* the first element is used as an intensive, and may be understood either as a noun or as the stem of a verb formed from that noun.

I'm going to stuff my pack absolutely bung-full of socks. HUTCHINSON, If Winter comes, III, Ch. VII, 193.

III. In passing it may be observed that some participles, present or past, may do duty as adverbs; thus:

*approaching*: It is by the application of this Golden Rule that we believe we most assuredly receive approaching the full 100 per cent of efficiency from every member of the Staff of this House. Westm. Gaz., No. 7277, 15 b. (= approximately, about.)

*gone*: Time was flying, and they should have been on the trail an hour gone. JACK LONDON, The Call of the Wild, Ch. IV, 74. (= ago.)

52. In numerous cases nouns or substantival word-groups become adverbial in function through what, from the point of view of Modern English, appears to be the suppression of a preposition. For illustration see also Ch. V, 10—11; and Ch. LX, 107 ff.

*full-face*: He moving up with pliant courtliness, | Greeted Geraint full-face. TEN, Ger. and En., 279. (Not registered in O. E. D.)

*haphazard*: His fingers seemed to wander haphazard over the strings. BERN. CAPES, The Pot of Basil, Ch. V, 62.

To wreck shops bearing German names haphazard is simply to emulate an attitude for which the Germans themselves have been properly denounced. Times, No. 1973, 837 c.

*the night*: "My cousin, Mr. George Forsyte? How is he?" — "Not expected to last the night, sir." GALSW., The White Monk, I, Ch. X, 32.

*post*: My thoughts .. were travelling post. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XIV, 55 b. (Thus also we may assume a preposition to be understood in: Two cruisers arrived post-haste from Gibraltar. Daily Mail.)

*steerage*: As money was scarce in those days, young Bibby decided to go steerage. Rev. of Rev., No. 222, 555 b.

*the while*: Gawain the while thro' all the region round | Rode with his diamond. TEN., LANC. & EL., 611.

53. Some adverbs suggest such a phrase as *in the way of* whatever is expressed by the noun.

*blue-steel*: Zara saw that Tristram's eyes flashed blue-steel. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XXV, 229.



*bodkin*: Mr. Osborne sitting bodkin opposite between Captain Dobbin and Amelia. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 53.

*full-summer*: The sad chariot-bier | Past like a shadow thro' the field,  
that shone | Full-summer TEN., Lanc. and El., 1134.

*liberal*: The whole fourteen had voted Liberal at the last election. Rev. of Rev., No 222, 564*a*.

*public-school*: As a matter of fact, neither House nor Government is predominantly public-school educated in these times Westm. Gaz., No. 7559, 3*a*.

54. As in Dutch, a noun denoting a thing which is assumed to be possessed of the height of a quality is often placed before an adjective to modify it adverbially. In many cases a form in *y* or *en* does the same duty; thus *snow-white* varies with *snowy-white* (28, *b*). Naturally the choice is sometimes determined by considerations of metre or rhythm.

*blood-red*: He is one of Mrs. Yorke's warning examples — one of the blood-red lights she hangs out to scare young ladies from matrimony. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. IX, 161.

*crystal-clear*: Though Goldsmith .. had to write .. almost as quickly as he could put pen to paper, his work was crystal clear. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XVI, 184.

The weather became crystal-clear again. E. F. BENSON, Dodo wonders, Ch. XI, 186.

*emerald clear*: Some lone wanderer is out on these rocks, .. glancing down into hollows where the brine lies fathoms deep and emerald-clear. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. XV, 310

*ivory-white*: Her form gleams ivory-white through the trees. *ib.*, II, Ch. X, 205.

*mist-pale*: He would rather have appointed tryste with a phantom abbess, or mist-pale nun. *ib.*, II, Ch. XII, 247.

*night-dark*: The lights of ocean-going vessels throw out a quivering, wistful beam across a night-dark sea. Westm. Gaz., 13/6, 1925, 184*c*.

*pearl-white*: A pearl-white moon smiles through the gray trees. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. XV, 308.

*rose-red*: Shirley opened her lips; but instead of speaking, she only glowed rose-red. *ib.*, II, Ch. XIV, 291.

*ruby-red*: A fine Port .. of a rich ruby-red colour. Times.

*silver-clear*: Her voice, even in speaking, was sweet and silver-clear. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. VI, 134.

*silver-white*: His hair was silver-white. *ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 58.

*snow-pure*: Ruth was innocent and snow-pure. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. III, 31.

*snow-white*: Forth-riding from the formless folds of the mist, dawns on him the brightest vision — a green-robed lady, on a snow-white palfrey. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. XV, 309.

*stock-still*: He stood stock-still. DICK., Crick., I, 3.

*stone-dead*: Then home he went, and left the hart, stone-dead. WORDSW., Hart-Leap Well, 77.

*summer-mild*: It is so fine a night, so summer-mild and still, I have no particular wish to return yet to the Hollow. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XIII, 326.

*world-old*: The world-old instinct of birds tells them that this must not be. Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 13*a*.

Sometimes this assumption is, apparently, rather arbitrary; thus in:

*bone-tired*: She came in so bone-tired that she would drop on the tiger-skin before the fire, rather than face the stairs. GALSW., *Beyond*, I, Ch. II, 15.

*dog-weary*: I am simply dog-weary. PINERO, *Iris*, I (32).

*gallows-bad*: In his father's time the house had had a gallows-bad name. JOHN MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, I, Ch. I, J.

55. Such phrases as *every inch (of him)*, *every word*, *every shilling*, etc. have functionally the value of *entirely* or the semi-adverbial *all* (Ch. XL, 11).

(He swore that) since the board had refused his money, he would spend it every shilling before he went to bed, in treating his friend. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 112.

Mr. Vholes did as he was asked and seemed to read it every word. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXII, 518.

56. *The first thing* and *the last thing* are frequently used as approximate equivalents of *before all other things* and *after all other things* respectively. The definite article is sometimes dropped for the sake of brevity.

i. It's only saying good-bye, my dear, the last thing at night, instead of the first thing in the morning. WILKIE COLLINS, *No Name*, II, Scene IV, Ch. II, 57.

I see no objection to your getting a breath of fresh air the first thing in the morning, or the last thing at night. *ib.*, II, Scene IV, Ch. V, 214.

I might mention my case the first thing. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 35.

You must pay him the first thing. G. ELIOT, *Mill.*, III, Ch. IV, 203.

Go down the first thing to-morrow, by the six o'clock train. MER., *Ordeal*, Ch. XXXI, 251.

ii. You can order a fly first thing and bring me my breakfast early. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 14 a.

Note α) Thus by analogy also *first-place*, as in: Where have you been to, first place? MRS. GASK., *Mary Bart.*, Ch. XII, 133.

β) The adverbial function of these phrases is shown by the fact that they may be inserted between the component parts of a complex predicate.

Here it (sc. the piano) would be, the first thing, unloaded from the truck. WIL. DEANE HOWELLS, *The Pursuit of the Piano* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, II, 25).

57. Various nouns denoting a quantity, especially a small quantity, such as *a bit* (= *a whit*), *a thought*, *a shade*, *a trifle*, *a degree*; *a lot* are often used as adverbial adjuncts of degree.

The mobile lips were a thought too sensitive. Eng. Rev., No 62, 274.

Queseda .. was only a degree better than commanders of the type of Ojeda, Cortes, Pizarro .. and the rest. Athen., No. 4451, 183.

Note α) Such nouns are in this function followed by partitive *of* when the thing measured is denoted by a noun; thus in:

He thought him a bit of a cad. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. IV, 325.

β) Mention may here be made of the use of *a matter of* in a similar function before a numeral, the word-group having the value of *no less than*, *quite*.

I've been in London, a matter of five-and-twenty year ago. WILK. COL., Wom. in White, III, Ch. IX, 424.

He had been taken into partnership by Brough for a matter of thirty thousand pounds. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 11.

58. A curious conversion of a noun into an adverb is the colloquial and vulgar use of *sort of* and *kind of*, often shortened into respectively *sorter* and *kinder*, to modify verbs or adjectives. The genesis may have been as follows: *She was a kind of mother to me* > *She was kind of mother to me* > *She kind of mothered me*. See O. E. D., s. v. *kind*, 14, d. The practice does not seem to have found currency until quite recent times, but is now common enough. Compare KRUIS., Handbk., §§ 69, 70, 2236.

i. (He assured her) that he had no sort of present intention of altering his condition. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 89.

He took a sort of hate against her. BARING GOULD, The Red-haired Girl (SWAEN, Sel., III, 151).

ii. I've always sort of dreamed of what we should do together. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, I, Ch. XXI, 188.

This seemed to sort of lighten the boat. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. IX, 108. OLD GENT (giving Barber's assistant a tip). "How is it that you expect tips in this place, and yet display that 'no gratuities' placard"? — BARBER'S ASSISTANT. "Well, sir, we find it pays best, sorter reminds gents, sir." Punch.

I sort of scented a mystery. A. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. X, 212.

It's kind of brought me down in my own estimation. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, I, Ch. III, 43.

She sort of freezed me. RITA, Am. seen through Eng. eyes, Ch. IV, 94.

I kind of thought you didn't (sc. love me). EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambr., III, 39.

iii. I am sort o' hurt. THACK., Virg., Ch. XV, 152.

You know those early mornings, when the sun's white and all the shadows are sort of misty. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, I, Ch. XXI, 189.

If I'm to give up feeling sort of nice in here (sc. my breast) about people — then I don't know what I'm to do. GALSW., The Pigeon (Times, No. 1831, 89 a).

Pug is kind of right. BOYD CABLE, Grapes of Wrath, II.

I'm a sort of sorry for the young man. J. M. BARRIE, What Every Woman knows, I, 37.

I'm kinder curous (sic) to hear what you've got to say about a woman. GILBERT, Charity, II, (106).

Note. Such a combination as is found in the following quotation is very vulgar and appears to be very rare:

Theere's been kiender a blessing fell upon us. DICK., Cop., Ch. XLIII, 432 a.

### Pronouns and Indefinite Numerals turned into Adverbial Adjuncts.

59. A rapid survey of the adverbial applications of certain pronouns and indefinite numerals, already discussed in considerable detail in the foregoing Chapters, will not, it is hoped, be regarded out of place in this Chapter.

60. Both the determinative pronouns, *same* and *such*, are often used in a more or less distinctly adverbial function:

*the same*, in various shades of meaning (Ch. XXXVII, 3, e):

i. The old fable of the wheel and the fly. I am afraid the wheel rolls on the same. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. XII, 423. (= in the same way.)

I came in and went to bed the same as usual. GALSW., *The Silver Box*, II, 2, (61).

ii. Here was a most respectful attachment, and she would have taken Bullock Senior just the same. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 119. (= with just the same readiness.)

I shall always love you the same. GALSW., *To Let*, III, (1061). (= with the same ardour.)

iii. Joseph *would* speak his mind and lecture her all the same as if she were a little girl. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. IX, 46 b (= nevertheless.)

*such*, as an intensive of a following adjective, as in *such a violent storm*, *such violent storms*, *such good wine* (Ch. XXXVII, 7, b).

61. The interrogative *what* is used adverbially in exclamations, a) as an intensive of a following adjective (Ch. XXXVIII, 10); e. g.:

What good cigars these are! THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 273.

What famous wine this is! id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 320.

b) as an intensive of certain verbs, such as *to avail*, *to care*, *to matter*, *to signify* (Ch. XXXVIII, 11); e. g.:

What avail all these accomplishments? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 370.

What care I to be a colonel or a general? id., *Esmond*, II, Ch. XV, 290.

What matters a little name or a little fortune? ib., II, Ch. XI, 250.

What signifies what weather we have? GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man*, I.

c) as a modifier of *to need* and some other verbs (Ch. XXXVIII, 11, b), in approximately the same meaning as *why* (now obs.); thus in:

What need we any spur but our own cause | To prick us to redress? SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 123.

What dares the slave | Come hither? id., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 5, 57.

What could he want to do wrong? COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, Ch. II, 60.

d) as a modifier of the adverb *the* before a comparative (Ch. XXXVIII, 11, c); e. g.:

We have hurried through all the scenes that have framed the history, the poetry, the romance of the world — and what the better are we? *Periodical*.<sup>1)</sup>

The following is a doubtful case.

Would that thou wert living yet, that I might comfort thee! What thou must have suffered! LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VI, Ch. XVIII, 413.

62. What has the sense of *partly* and is, accordingly, adverbial in the conjunctive word-group *what with* . . . *what with* (Ch. X, 22; Ch. XXXVIII, 13, b).

What with bloom and grace, what with small proportions and movements light as air, what with an inventive refinement in dress and personal adornment that never failed, all Letty Sewell's defects of feature or expression were easily lost in a general aspect which most men found dazzling and perturbing enough. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 7 b

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 212.

Note α) In many cases the simple connective *and* takes the place of *what with* in the second and subsequent members of the complex.

I am convinced that what with my perennial weariness and my deafness, I ought to go. HUXLEY, (Life and Letters, II, 411).

β) In this case *between* is a frequent variant of *with*, the expressing of the causative relation thus being lost.

What between "Bleak House," *Household Words*, and "the Child's History of England," Dickens, in the spring of 1853, was overworked and ill. MARZIALS, Dick., Ch. IX, 119.

What between the poor men I won't have, and the rich men who won't have me, I stand forlorn. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. IX, 85.

γ) The use of *from* in the same position appears to be very rare. In fact the following is the only instance that has come to hand.

But of all kinds of ambition — what from the refinement of the times, from different systems of criticism, and from the divisions of party — that which pursues poetical fame is the wildest. GOLDSMITH, Pref. to the Traveller.

δ) By a further modification also *what* may disappear in the first member, *between* remaining.

The General, between his cocoa and his newspaper, had luckily no leisure for noticing her. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXV, 194.

We might, therefore, expect that, between forgetfulness and the instinct for consistency, the rarer conjugations and declensions would always rapidly drop out of use. BRADLEY, *Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 19.

ε) A sentence, or element of a sentence, introduced by *what with* may also stand by itself, i.e. without being connected with a subsequent member of a sentence.

I must walk up and see Jones about the duties, and then, what with getting ready, I shall have enough to do to get off in time. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 16.

η) A curious variant of *what with*, also met with in a complex of two members is *what of*. It appears to be very rare, but is frequent enough in the works of JACK LONDON. Compare E. S., XLIV, 3, 480.

It was only a short distance, though it had taken me, what of my wandering, all of a week to arrive. JACK LONDON, *Before Adam*, 26.

He sat down very slowly and painstakingly what of his great stiffness. JACK LONDON, *The Call of the Wild*, Ch. V, 115.

What of the thin and rotten ice he had felt under his feet all day, it seemed that he sensed disaster close at hand. *ib.*, Ch. V, 117.

63. The indefinite pronouns or numerals that are often used in the function of adverbs are *all*, *any*, *both*, (*n*)*either*, *little* (*less*, *least*), *much* (*more*, *most*), *none* and *some*.

64. a) All as a pure adverb mostly modifies a predicative adjective (or equivalent word(-group), or an adverbial adjunct (or clause); e. g.: *all right*, *all against Home Rule*, *it is all one to me*; *all at once*, *he ached all over*; *all to make you sport*, *all as a son would have done*. For full discussion and illustration of these and some other adverbial applications of *all* see Ch. XL, 13—15.

b) *All* is often partly pronominal partly adverbial. For discus-

sion and illustration see Ch. V, 15—16; Ch. VIII, 100; and especially Ch. XL, 11.

65. a) Any as an adverb of degree modifies a comparative, or the adverb *the* in its turn modifying a comparative; e. g.: *He is not any better than his predecessors, He was not any the better for taking that medicine.*

b) The use of adverbial *any* to modify *too* in negative sentences seems to be on the increase.

The triumphant people haven't any too much food. Westm. Gaz., No. 7069, 6 a.

We do not think that the language used by Lord Robert . . . was any too strong. ib., No. 8414, 2 b.

The Royal Commission on wheat has not been appointed any too soon. Rev. of Rev.

c) Also the American application of adverbial *any* in other connexions than the above seems to be gaining ground.

Remember that I can amuse myself in any hedge, with plants and insects and a cigar, and that you may leave me anywhere, any long, certain that I shall be busy and happy. CH. KINGSLEY, (Life and Let., II, Ch. XXI, 123).

She would not, as far as she was aware, behave any differently if Australia was suddenly swallowed up in the ocean. E. F. BENSON, Arundel, Ch. I, 29.

d) In conclusion it should be observed that *any* is purely adverbial as a constituent of certain compounds, such as *anyhow*, *anywhen*, *anywhere*, *anywhither*. For further comment on adverbial *any* see Ch. XL, 20.

66. Both, like *all*, is often more or less adverbial in function. See Ch. V, 15—16; Ch. VIII, 100; and especially Ch. XL, 33. For comment on *both* . . . *and*, as a conjunctive adverbial word-group see also Ch. X, 11.

67. Either is used as an adverb in the last of two co-ordinate sentences, a) when it is made negative by another word than *nor*, *neither* or *no more*.

He may not be a pauper, but he is not exactly well-off either.

b) when it is made negative by *nor* and contains but one element.

He is not rich, nor his brother either.

c) when it is incomplete and, though introduced by *or*, is negative in import.

Women are not always reasonable, or men either. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXVIII, 255.

Note. In place of *either*, colloquial and vulgar English often have *neither* in these connexions. For further comment see Ch. X, 10, Obs. VI.

68. Both *little* and *a little* are often used adverbially. As a modifier of verbs, especially *to care*, *to know* and *to think*,

*little* has a strong negative force. Thus *He little knows* or *Little does he know* is practically equivalent to *He is far from knowing*. For further illustration see Ch. XL, 69 and 71.

For comment on the adverbial use of *less* and *least* see Ch. XL, 78 and 84.

69. a) The adverbial *much*, often preceded by an intensive, especially *very*, is used in those cases in which the bare *very* is not available (76; Ch. LVIII, 22, 35); i. e. as a modifier of:

1) verbs as in *I admire that picture very much*.

2) certain adjectival participles, as in *I am (very) much obliged to you*.

Every one who is much read in Johnson will recall for himself other and better instances than these of his rare faculty of gathering together in one sentence some piece of the common stock of wisdom or observation. JOHN BAILEY, *Johnson & his Circle*, I, 35.

3) prepositional word-groups used predicatively, as in *Ginger was not much in request*. SHAK., *Meas. for Meas.*, IV, 3, 9.

4) predicative nouns, as in *His wife is much his junior*. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (20).

5) comparatives or superlatives, as in *This is much the better (the best) plan*. *This is a much better plan*.

For further illustration see Ch. XXX, 43.

Note. The use of *much* as an intensive of positives, not uncommon in Early Modern English, is now confined to *like*.

The boy (is) .. much like myself. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. V, 81.

But for the Early Modern English *I am much ill*, *much sorry*, *much forgetful*, etc. Present English has *I am very ill*, etc.

6) the adverb *too*, as in *In this respect Tudor was much too much for him*. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. IX, 94.

b) In a weakened sense, approaching to that of *nearly* or *approximately*, we find it also in other connexions, as is shown by:

My ancestors .. appear to have led much the same life as is natural to their class. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. Sherl. Holm.*, II, C, 96.

My father was in much such a station. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XI, 130.

He began to climb up, very much as a fly climbs up a pane of glass. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

The duke has it pretty much his own way there. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, XXXII, 313.

Also in some of the connexions mentioned under a) *much* may have this weakened sense.

I'm much of your opinion. DICK., *Gr. Exp.*, Ch. III, 23.

It was pretty much a sinecure. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. VIII, 68.

For further discussion and illustration of adverbial *much* see Ch. XL, 95—96.

As to the various adverbial applications of *more* and *most* the student is referred to Ch. XXX, where they have been discussed in their function to form the so-called periphrastic degrees of comparison; and to Ch. XL, 100, Obs. I,  $\beta$ ; 102—103; 106—107; where other functions have been passed in review.

70. The adverbial *none* is chiefly used to modify: *a*) the adverb *the*, as in *I am none the happier for it* (CON. DOYLE, Ref., 27), *b*) the adverb *so*, as in *Master Marnier is none so young* (G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., II, Ch. XVI, 122), *c*) the adverb *too*, as in *They have none too much time for research* (Cont. Rev., 1919, Oct. 19).

Note. In the language of the illiterate the adverb *none* has a wider sphere of application. For illustration and further discussion see Ch. XL, 143—144.

71. *a*) *Some* as an adverb is, in Standard English, used only in the meaning of *about*,

- 1) chiefly before cardinal numerals, as in *some twenty miles*;
- 2) less frequently before nouns denoting a definite number, such as *dozen* and *score*, as in *some dozen of miles*;
- 3) comparatively unfrequently before nouns denoting a measure of time or length, such as *hour*, *month*; *league*, *mile*, etc., as in:

The squirrel .. had been bought by Mrs. Britling for the boys some month or so ago. WELLS, Britling, I, Ch. V, § 2, 127.

Built upon a dismal reef of sunken rocks, some league or so from shore, .. there stood a solitary lighthouse. DICK., Christm. Carol, III, 75.

- 4) comparatively unfrequently before the multiplicatives *twice* and *thrice*, as in *some twice a year*.

*b*) Other applications of adverbial *some* are as yet only met with in slipshod English:

We'll play some more after tea. WELLS, Britling, I, Ch. III, § 5, 87.

If it isn't it (sc. that she cries), you scold her some more. FLOR. BARCLAY, The Rosary, Ch. IV, 24.

For further illustration of adverbial *some* see Ch. XL, 180.

### Meaning of Adverbs.

#### Adverbs divided into Groups.

72. As to their meaning adverbs may be divided into *a*) general and special adverbs, *b*) adverbs of place, time, cause and effect, attendant circumstances, quality, degree, mood.

General adverbs only refer to adverbial relations without naming them, as is done by special adverbs. Thus the adverb *thus* in *He acted thus* may indicate any manner of acting, and it is from the context alone that the reader can infer what manner of acting is meant. Such words as *foolishly*, *wisely*,



*prudently*, on the other hand, indicate special manners of acting. The following sentences contain examples of general adverbs: *How did you manage this? He acted otherwise. He did likewise. Where does your uncle live? He lives here. When were you born? Then he came to me. The apple-trees are in flower now. He is very rich. She is quite right. He is not rich.*

General adverbs are related to special adverbs in like manner as pronouns are related to nouns and adjectives. Compare also *He wrote a letter* with *John wrote a letter*, and *these letters* with *long letters*. For further discussion see SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 193 f and § 336 ff. Compare also DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakk., III, 103, Opm. For the rest this distinction is of little practical value and will not, therefore, be pursued in these pages.

Also the discussion of adverbs from the other semantic point of view will here be passed over in silence, falling as it does within the purview of lexicography. Apart from these distinctions some comment on some adverbs of frequent occurrence may not be deemed out of place in a grammar which is especially intended for foreign students.

#### Discussion of Some Adverbs.

73. *So* as an adverb of quality is in some of its applications functionally almost equivalent to a demonstrative pronoun or the personal pronoun *it*. Thus especially:
- a) as the representative of a subordinate statement after certain verbs of judging and declaring, as in *Does the mayor live here. I believe so, They have told me so*. For detailed discussion see Ch. XXXII, 26 f. Compare also Ch. XXXII, 41; 42.
  - b) as the representative of a nominal in the function of nominal part of the predicate or predicative adnominal adjunct, as in: *He is an honest man, and I hope he will remain so, At least most people think him so*. For detailed discussion see Ch. XXXII, 28. Compare also Ch. XXXII, 38, II; 41, 42.
  - c) after *to do*, this verb together with *so* representing a preceding verb with its enlargements, as in *Do you slide? I used to do so when I was a boy*. For detailed discussion see Ch. XXXII, 29.
  - d) after or before certain equivalents of *will*, as the representative of a preceding verb with its enlargements, as in *He might have married her had he so chosen*. For further illustration see Ch. XXXII, 30, e.
  - e) in front-position, in affirmative sentences, as the representative of various elements of a preceding sentence with *to be, to have, to do, can, may, must*, etc.

1) either to express assent to the view of a preceding speaker, the regular word-order being preserved, as in *He is an honest man — So he is. He has a kind heart — So he has. The war caused widespread misery — So it did.* For further discussion see Ch. XXXII, 32 f.

2) or to express the fact that the person(s) or thing(s) indicated by the subject is (are) in the same circumstances as that (those) indicated by the subject of the preceding sentence, the word-order being inverted, as in *He is a liar and so is his friend. He has a short memory and so have you. He wrote novels and so did his son.* For further discussion see Ch. XXXII, 34 f.

f) as the representative of the main part of a preceding sentence after adverbs, or after the conjunction *if*; as in *He is in a position to help you, not only so, but he is willing to do so. You say that he is innocent, if so, why does not he speak?* For further discussion see Ch. XXXII, 36.

g) in the collocation *so much*, as in *So much for Julia . . . Now we'll turn to Juan.* See Ch. XXXVI, 10, II, a, Note γ.

Note. Also the word-groups *as much* and the less frequent *so much* often have a pronominal value; thus after:

*to know*, as in: I am grieved to know as much. TEN., Becket, ProI., 3.  
verbs of judging or declaring, as in: I must confess that I have heard so much. SHAK., Mids., I, I, III.

*to do*, as in: Do you know many men or Majors who would do as much? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

For further illustration see Ch. XXXII, 43.

74. a) Also *thus* is sometimes, functionally, equivalent to a demonstrative pronoun; thus:

1) in the collocation *thus saying*, a rather unfrequent variant of *so saying* (= Dutch *dit zeggende*). See Ch. XXXII, 27, I, Note α.

2) in the collocation *thus much*, as in *Thus much, at least, is certain that [etc.].* See Ch. XXXVI, 10, II, a, Note β.

b) A peculiar application of *thus*, not shared by the Dutch *dus*, is that in which it is a blend between an adverb of quality and degree; e. g. in:

Therefore let me be thus bold with you. SHAK., Taming, I, 2, 104.

Mr. Winkle actually staggered with astonishment as he heard his own costume thus minutely described. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

I have been thus particular in my account of the West Diddlesex Assurance Office, . . . because the fate of me and my diamond-pin was mysteriously bound up with both. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 20.

It amazed her that this soft little creature could be thus firm. MERED., Ordeal, Ch. XXX, 248.

c) *Thus*, although now chiefly literary or formal (O. E. D.), seems to be preferred to *so* in the collocation *thus far* (= to

this point), as used to indicate the end of a quotation. O. E. D. This preference may be due to the fact that *so far* is mostly used in another shade of meaning, viz. that of *up to the present moment, hitherto* (Dutch tot nog toe, tot dus ver). See especially STOFFEL, *Intens. & Down-Ton.*, 104 ff.

So far no great harm has been done. O. E. D., s.v. *so far*, 6, b.

We've not seen each other very much so far. SUTRO, *The Choice*, I, (28).

Dartie was behaving himself so far. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. XV, (672).

Note. In the following quotation *thus far* is used in the same meaning as this *so far*.

The saints have protected me thus far. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXVIII, 310.

d) Unlike the Dutch *dus*, the English *thus* is not currently used in sentences denoting the effect or conclusion of what is expressed in a preceding sentence, *accordingly, therefore, so, consequently (in consequence, by consequence), hence (thence)* and *then* being the ordinary words employed for this purpose in various shades of meaning. For illustration see Ch. XII. The sense of *in this manner*, one of the commoner meanings of *thus* (Dutch *aldus*) is, however, apt to pass into that of *accordingly*, so that in some cases *thus* appears to stand as an equivalent of the latter.

As the curtain rises one of the clocks strikes two, another strikes eleven, while the others remain silent. It is thus impossible to tell what time it is. *Punch*, No. 3787, 87 a.

75. a) Weak *there*, like the Dutch *er*, is practically devoid of all meaning, and seems to serve no further purpose than that of giving a pleasing, rhythmical, balance to the sentence. We find it in sentences with inverted word-order opening with an adverbial adjunct, the predicate being mostly formed by an intransitive or passive verb, sometimes by a transitive verb.

i. In the afternoon there occurred an accident. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 144.

ii. In this volume there are to be found treasures that seldom are offered so cheaply to lovers of verse. *Lit. World*.

iii. Among the rest, there overtook us a little elderly lady. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVI, 153.

Its emptiness of meaning is shown by the fact that it may stand in one and the same sentence with *here, where* and strong *there*, as in *There is a fire here, There was a man there which had a withered hand* (Bible, Mark, III, 1), *Where there is a will there is a way*.

Weak *there* is more common than the Dutch *er*, but is by no means obligatory in sentences of the above types.

Near that village stood an ancient and stately hall. MAC. 1)

1) FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 322.

On each side of the hall are recesses for ottomans and couches. Above an inner porch is a balcony WASH. IRV. 1)

For further illustration see Ch. II, 5; Ch. VIII, 10; and compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 344, Note; KRUIS., Handbk.<sup>4</sup> §§ 265, 1838.

b) A peculiar application of *there* is that in *there is*, as a variant of *that is*, in sentences intended to coax a person into compliance with a wish expressed by a preceding (imperative) sentence.

And now return to the nursery — there's a dear CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 39.

Minnie, come to me an instant, there's a dear girl. RUDY. KIPLING, *Gadsbys*, 8.

For further illustration see Ch. XXXII, 10, II, e.

76. a) *Very*, the commonest of all intensives, is not available as a modifier of verbs, any more than the French *très*. To make up this deficiency the language uses *much*, or more frequently *very much*. Also such adverbs as *highly*, *greatly*, *largely*, *strongly*, and, in colloquial language, *badly* and *sadly* may serve as substitutes (69).

O, let him pass! He hates him much, | That would upon the rack of this rough world | Stretch him out longer. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. XXV, 284.

I have been very much alarmed to-night. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 16 a.

"He wants *ton* sadly," said Mrs. Hollyock. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXVI, 291.

He rejoiced greatly in the prospect of hearing the story of his own dinner party. MISS YONGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. V, 65.

His conscience pricked him badly. GALSW., *To let*, II, Ch. III, (934).

b) Many participles, whether present or past, which have lost almost all their verbal features and have, accordingly, virtually assumed the character of adjectives, are often enough preceded by *very*. Thus we repeatedly meet with such combinations as *very ailing*, *very amusing*, *very becoming*, *very charming*, *very interesting*, *very willing*; *very accomplished*, *very (dis)contented*, *very fatigued*, *very frightened*, *very learned*, *very pleased*, *very tired*. In the case of some of such adjectival participles *very* is used practically to the exclusion of (*very*) *much*; thus with all the above present participles; also with some past participles, such as *accomplished*, *learned*, *tired* the use of (*very*) *much* is practically excluded. Others prefer (*very*) *much*; thus *frightened*, *vexed* and, perhaps, *pleased*. Some tolerate only *much* or *very much*. Not a few hardly ever stand with either *very* or (*very*) *much*, but prefer other intensives; thus *attached*, *opposed*.

For comment see also DEAN ALFORD, *The Queen's English*<sup>8</sup>, § 209; and especially STOFFEL, *Intensives and Down-Toners*; EUGEN BORST, *Die Gradadverbien im Englischen*; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 711, 750; O. E. D. s. v. *very*, B, 2, c.

1) FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 322.

A good many examples of *very* or some other intensive modifying an adjectival participle, whether present or past, have already been given in Ch. LVII, 22 and 35. Here are a few more; in some of them the use of *very* has a more or less incongruous effect.

i. *amusing*: He was very amusing. WILDE, Lord Arthur Savile's Crime, Ch. I, 7.

*baffling*: The intricacies of local government are very baffling. Westm. Gaz., 9/5, 1925, 62 a.

*becoming*: I didn't think it very becoming myself, but papa said it was historical. WILDE, Lord Arthur Savile's Crime, Ch. V, 51.

*disturbing*: That is a very disturbing fact. Times, 30/4, 1925, 488 a.

*entertaining*: It is all very entertaining. Westm. Gaz., 13/6, 1925, 185 c.

*humanising*: The whipping-post (is) another dear old institution, very humanising and softening to behold in action. DICK., Two Cities, II, Ch. II, 75.

*languishing*: He spoke and looked very languishing. TROL., Dr. Thorne, Ch. VI, 87.

*moving*: (This) is only a setting for a very moving tale. Manch. Guard., 31/10, 1924, 377 b.

*overflowing*: I must say, that Robert Martin's heart seemed for *him*, and to *me*, very overflowing. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LIV, 444.

*thriving*: It may be thought that with so many irons in the fire he could hardly be a very thriving man. SAM. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. I, 2.

*tiring*: It was very tiring and slow work. STEV., Treas. Isl., Ch. XXIV, 127.

ii. *decided*: Emma was very decided in thinking such an attachment no bad thing for her friend JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XL, 322.

*frightened*: In all conscience I was very frightened .. that I should be caught in my first attempt to cheat the king. LOUIS BECKE, A First-Fleet-Family, Ch. IV

*disappointed*: He was very disappointed at losing Vienna. HICHENS, The Fruitful Vine, Ch. I, 15.

*moonlit*: They stood for a moment facing each other in the shadow of an acacia-tree with very moonlit blossoms. GALSW., To let, II, Ch. IX, (995).

*vexed*: Mamma will be very vexed with you. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 91.

iii. *attached*: To do the varlet justice, he was strongly attached to his parent. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF, Handl., I, 104).

On the 7th of May, 1837, .. he lost .. quite suddenly, a sister-in-law, Mary Hogarth, to whom he was greatly attached. MARZIALS, Dick., Ch. IV, 52.

She saw that he was much attached to herself. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. XXXV, 150.

*opposed*: Mr. Bright was strongly opposed to capital punishment. Graph.

c) (*Very*) *much* is now rarely found before the positive of pure adjectives (Ch. XL, 95). Thus such combinations as are illustrated by the following quotations would hardly be tolerated in Present English:

He hath an uncle here in Messina will be very much glad of it. SHAK., Much ado, I, 1, 19.

I am much forgetful. id., Jul. Cæs., IV, 3, 255.

d) In conclusion it may be observed that in colloquial language *very* is sometimes placed (or repeated) after its head-word, when especial emphasis is intended.

Father was a handsome man — very. THACK., Phil., 116.<sup>1)</sup>

Oh! I see . . ; negus too strong here — liberal landlord — very foolish — very. DICK., Pickw., Ch. III, 15.

77. a) Also too is unavailable as a modifier of verbs, but is not unfrequent before adjectival participles, where it often varies with *too much*.

i. It's too maddening. RUDY. KIPL., The Light that failed.

Lucy was much too frightened to speak. MRS. WARD, Dav. Grieve, I, 299.

ii. She was) too much agitated to notice that or anything else. MRS. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. XIII, 213.

(He was) apparently too much astonished to speak. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. I, 11.

b) It is of some interest to observe that *too* is sometimes preceded by *all*, or *but* (or *only*), in like manner as the Dutch *te* by *al*, or *maar al*. For further illustration see also Ch. XL, 13, b, 1.

i. The serpent had all too soon invaded his paradise. EDNA LYALL, Knight Errant, Ch IV, 37.

For Lionel the time went by all too quickly. BLACK, The New Prince Fort, Ch. VII.

ii. What the stupid boy said was only too true. THACK., Es m., I, Ch, IX, 79. (Compare: *Am* I very much changed? Alas! I fear 'tis too true, *ib.*)

They were only too glad for a little breathing space until some sort of square could be formed. RUDY. KIPL., Light, Ch. II, 25.

78. However is another adverb that requires the assistance of *much* as an intensive modifier of verbs, the use of the bare *however* in this function being now obsolete or archaic. O. E. D., s. v. *however*, 1, c.

THACKERAY, whose English is archaically tinged, through his extensive reading of eighteenth-century literature, has the bare *however* in:

However he might be called upon to study every branch of literature, (he) would by no means prescribe such a course of reading to a young lady. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 185.

Compare with the above quotation the following with *however much*: However much he might consider himself ill-treated by the publishing fraternity, he was, of course, rapidly getting far richer than he had been. MARZIALS, Dick, Ch. IV, 52.

There is not, however, anything unusual in the use of the bare *however* as a modifier of participles that have assumed the character of adjectives: *however amusing*, *however tired*, etc.

79. a) As modifiers of adjectival participles *so* and *as* vary with respectively *so much* and *as much*, the choice following most probably the same lines as in the case of *very* (76).

i. She appeared so hurt at this conduct in her son. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. VII, 225.

To-day its words (sc. of the Ambassadors' Conference) fall as gently and as unheeded as the dew. Manch. Guard., IX, 20, 386 d.

<sup>1)</sup> STOF., Int. & Down-ton., 34.

\*\* But he (sc. Charles I) was so intriguing that the Scots grew tired of him. ARABELLA B. BUCKLEY, *Hist. of Eng.*, 82 (*Hist. Prim.*).

ii. Mr. Toots is so much gratified by this politeness .. that he pulls out his card-case .. and hands his name and address to Mr. Carker. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XXII, 208.

The gentleman .. being so much bent on having no assistance, must terrify you very much, miss, id., CHUZ., Ch. III, 16 *a*.

This Poem .. is .. so lovely, and so much desired, that the often copying of it hath tired my pen. Dedic. MILLON'S *Comus*.

*b*) But *so* differs from *as* in that, unlike the latter, it admits of being used as a verb-modifier.

For God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son. Bible, John, III, 16.

She so won upon the girl that she consented to be privy to Miranda's escape. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 103 *b*.

For further comment on *so* and *as*, and other intensives, see STOF., *Intensives and Down-Toners*; and BORST, *Die Gradadverbien im Englischen*.

### Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation.

80. The ordinary words in affirmative or negative response to a question are now *yes* or *no* respectively. For the former we also have *ay* (which the O. E. D. prefers to spell *aye*), and *yea*; for the latter *nay*.

81. *Ay* is still common enough in the language of the illiterate, in which it is apt to be shortened to *ah*.

I heard the same old woman ask Mrs. Fibbitson, if it wasn't delicious (meaning the flute), to which Mrs. Fibbitson replied: "Ay! ay! Yes!" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38 *b*.

"Peggotty do you mean, Sir?" — "Ah!" said Mr. Barkis. "Her." *ib.*, Ch. V, 32 *a*.

In ordinary English *ay* is, apparently, sometimes preferred as being more solemn than *yes*.

"Can you tell me any other living creature who will bear the test of contact with myself?" — "Of contact with yourself, sir?" echoed Mr. Pecksniff. — "Ay," returned the old man, "the test of contact with me — with me." DICK., CHUZ., Ch. III, 21 *a*.

Thus also in another application *ay* serves to add solemnity to an utterance.

She was a widow, but years ago had passed through her state of weeds, and burst into flower again; and in full bloom she had continued ever since; and in full bloom she was now; with roses on her ample skirts, and roses on her bodice, roses in her cap, roses in her cheeks, — ay, and roses, worth the gathering too, on her lips, for that matter. DICK., CHUZ., Ch. III, 15 *a*.

The pike .. is voracious indeed, but daring and wily; a fighter — aye, to the bitter end. MANCH. GUARD., IX, 20, 404 *d*.

In the parlance of Parliamentary procedure *aye* is still the technical word to express assent to a bill.

THE SPEAKER. — I must put the question to the House, as it stands, and the House must say 'Aye' or 'No'. *Daily News*.<sup>1)</sup>

This *aye* is used substantively in *The ayes have it* (WEBST., Dict.).

82. Yea was formerly the ordinary word of assent to a question with no negative, *yes* being used in answer to a question with a negative. In Present English *yea* survives only in the solemn language of the Bible and in poetry. See especially ALDIS WRIGHT, *The Bible Word-Book*, s. v. *yea* and *nay*.

i. Jesus saith unto them, Have ye understood all these things? They say unto him, Yea, Lord. Bible, Matth., XIII, 51.

"Then, Enid, shall you ride | Behind me?" — "Yea," said Enid, "let us go." TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 757.

ii. "What means your ladyship? do you not like it?" — "Yes, yes: the lines are very quaintly writ." SHAK., *Two Gent.*, II, I, 128.

In a function similar to that of *ay(e)*, commented on in the preceding section, *yea* is used in solemn asseverations.

If he found in high or low — in the head clerk at six hundred a-year down to the porter who cleaned the steps — if he found the slightest taint of dissipation, he would cast the offender from him — yea, though he were his own son, he would cast him from him. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 13.

83. Nay, which was formerly used to express negation, dissent or refusal in answer to a question or statement containing no negative, as distinguished from *no*, which was the usual answer when the preceding question was negatived, survives now chiefly in dialects or archaic language, *no* being the ordinary word of denial throughout. Compare also WEBST., Dict., s. v. *no*.

"What, turn glover at last, Conachar?" said Simon; "this beats the legend of St. Crispin. Nay, nay, your hand was not framed for that; you shall spoil me no more doe-skins" SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIX, 303.

"What a pack of fools, to let a few rats and mice frighten them out of good quarters!" — "Nay, nay," said the housekeeper, "there's more in it than rats and mice." WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 113).

Time was when the Supreme Council ruled Europe with a nod. Under the less assuming title of the Ambassadors' Conference it could still on occasion say "Yea" and "Nay" to the lesser Powers of Europe. To-day its words fall as gently and as unheeded as the dew. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 20, 386 d.

Note α) *Nay* is still common in ordinary Standard English in the combination *to say (a person) nay*.

He was .. too good-natured to say nay to any woman who wooed him. SAM. BUTLER, *The Way of All Flesh*, Ch. I, 1.

β) *Nay* in another function than mere denial, i. e. to introduce a statement or word(-group), which rises superior to a preceding one, is still quite common in literary language.

Within a few days, nay, perhaps within a few hours, Francesco might be his own. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. II, 14.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.



;) Quite common, also in ordinary colloquial language, is the use of *nay* to express incredulous surprise at a preceding statement.

"Have you heard the latest news from Japan. An earthquake has destroyed the capital and several other towns." — "Nay!"

- ✓ 84. The combination *whether or no*, either in a subordinate question or in an adverbial clause of disjunctive concession, has developed from *whether* .. *yes or no*. See STOF., Stud. in Eng., 110 f. Originally the first member of the alternative was regularly placed between *whether* and *or*. But in the beginning of the eighteenth century some writers began to put *or no* immediately after *whether*. It was about the same time that the expression *whether* .. *or not* came into use as a fancied improvement on the old *whether* .. *or no*. In Present English we have a fourfold variety; viz.: *whether* .. *or no*, *whether or no*, *whether* .. *or not*, *whether or not*. According to STOFFEL, "colloquial English, independent of the schools, certainly prefers the older *whether* .. *or no*." This may be so, but *whether* .. *or not* seems to be now the most frequent of these collocations in the printed language.

i. Whether you will or no, I will marry you. LAMB, Tales, Taming, 199.  
Pen .. asked Mr. Buck .. whether it (sc. the river Scamander) was navigable or no. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIX, 199.

ii. What matters whether or no I make my way in life? THACK., Esmond, I, Ch. IX, 94.

There was a slight squabble as to whether or no we should take any lunch with us. Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero, 45.

Whether or no I passed my examination with credit, I cannot tell. *ib.*, 64.

iii. Joseph does not seem to care much whether I love him or not. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 17.

Whether that fellow were coming or not, she evidently knew all about it. GALSW., To Let, II, Ch. XI, (1003).

iv. A great deal of conversation had taken place whether or not young ladies wore powder as well as hoops when presented. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 16.

He did not lie awake all night, thinking whether or not he was in love with Miss Sharp. *ib.* Ch. IV, 37.

Note α) In colloquial language *whether or no* has come to be used in the sense of *willy-nilly*, and, by a further step, in that of *at all events*.

i. Even in the depths o' winter there's some pleasure in conquering the butter, and making it come whether or no. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., II, Ch. XVII, 132.  
You're to come back, whether or no. TROL., Dr. Thorne, Ch. X, 138.

ii. I am not certain whether I found out then or afterwards that .. he had some share in .. a wine-merchant's house in London; .. but I may mention it in this place, whether or no. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 23 b.

β) SHAKESPEARE has *or no* with the ellipsis of *yes*, where Present English mostly has *or not*, which is to be understood as a contracted form of the second member of a double question.

I pray you, is Signior Mountanto returned from the wars or no? Much ado, I, I, 31.

Compare: Do you believe in me or not? DICK., Christm. Car. I.  
(= Do you believe in me, or do you not?)

Will you do as I tell you, once for all, sir or will you not? THACK., Van. Fair, I. Ch. XXI, 224.

γ) For the disjunctive *or no*, instead of *whether or no*, which may have been usual in SHAKESPEARE's time, Present English seems to have *or not*.

He'll speak with you, will you or no. Twelfth Night, I, 5, 163.

THACKERAY, however, has:

Bankrupt or no, my sisters are not fit to hold candles to her. Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 221.

85. Both *yes* and *no* are often followed by either asseverative or emphatic negating phrases, echoing the preceding question or statement.

"Are you the brother of the prize-winner?" "Yes, I am." — "No, I am not." "I do not know he ever preached there." — "Oh, yes, he did." MARK TWAIN, Tramp Abroad, XXVII.<sup>1)</sup>

Such a phrase, mostly without either *yes* or *no*, is always used, not only in English, but also in Dutch and other languages, in responses that serve to contradict a preceding statement.

"I can't come this evening." — "You can." (= Dutch *Dat kun je wel*.)

"Peace has been concluded." — "No, it isn't." (Dutch *Dat is hij niet*.)

Also in other functions these phrases often stand without either *yes* or *no*.

"Are you the spirit whose coming was foretold me?" asked Scrooge. — "I am." DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 34.

86. The ordinary word to negative a sentence is *not*, often emphasized by some word of a diminutive meaning, as in *not a bit*, *not a jot*, *not a scrap*, *not a whit*. Of the same force as these phrases are *not at all*, *by no (manner of) means* or *not by any (manner of) means* (Ch. XXV, 20), *not (in) the least (in the world)*, *not in any way (or in no way)*, *not in any respect (or in no respect)*.

Only *not in the least* and *not the least*, the latter, apparently, less common than the former, require some illustration in this place:

i. He is a comely youth, and not proud in the least. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. III, 25.

(That) does not concern me in the least. ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. VIII, 118.

He strolls about a bit, as if he were not in the least bit hungry. Daily Mail (LLOYD, North. Eng., 88).

ii. I am not the least in the world affected by anything you may have done. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLI, 322 b.

87. Negating is also effected by:

a) *ne*, which is now quite obsolete (Ch. X, 10, Obs. VII).

This day ne herde I of your tonge a word. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, E, 4.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

Whilome in Albion's isle there dwelt a youth, | Who ne in virtue's ways did take delight. BYRON, Ch. Har., I, II.

b) *no*, either as an adnominal word or an adverb. Although attaching to a particular word, it often negatives the whole sentence as well. For detailed discussion see Ch. XL, 114 ff.

c) *never*, in which the temporal meaning sometimes fades to the extent of being practically imperceptible. This *never* is a stronger negative than *not* or *no*, and is especially found: 1) before the indefinite article, as in:

Never a saint took pity on | My soul in agony. COL., Anc. Mar., IV, III.  
Letter nor line know I never a one. SCOTT, Lay, I, XXIV.

Note. Of particular frequency is the combination *never a word*, as in: My aunt said never a word, but took her bonnet by the strings, in the manner of a sling, aimed a blow at Mr. Chillip's head with it [etc.] DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 6 b.

For further illustration see also Ch. XXXI, a, Note IV; Ch. XLII, 10; and JESPERSEN, Negation, 17 f.

2) before the adverb *the*, the descendant of the Old-English instrumental *þȳ*. In this connexion it survives only in the adversative conjunctive adverb *nevertheless*, which varies with *none the less* and *not the less*. See Ch. XI, 8. For the rest this use of *never* is now obsolete (Ch. XL, 144, Obs. III).

3) before the adverb *once*: *never once* = *not even once*.

I have gone, a rich man, among people of all kinds and grades; relatives, friends, and strangers; among people in whom, when I was poor, I had confidence, and justly, for they never once deceived me then, or, to me, wronged each other. DICK., Chuz., Ch. III, 21 a.

During these tours did Elsmere's hand never once fail to perform its needed service to the faint sleeper beside him. MRS WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 152.

### Negating implied.

88. Negating is implied in such words as *barely*, *hardly*, *scarce(ly)*; *little (less, least)*, *few (fewer, fewest)*; *rarely*, *seldom*; *alone*, *but*, *only*. For illustration see especially Ch. VIII, 7; also Ch. XL, 57—62, 64—84. Compare KRUIS., Handbk.<sup>1</sup> § 2234.

a) Observe that *hardly* (or *scarcely*) may, in colloquial and vulgar language, be attended by a redundant *not*, always placed in an earlier part of the sentence. See Ch. XL, 18, Obs. XII, β; also JESPERSEN, Negation, 74; FRANZ, E. S., XII.

I'm afeerd I couldn't hardly bear as she should be told I done that. DICK., Cop., Ch. LI, 367 a.

b) *Hardly* (or *scarcely*) *any* (or a compound of *any*, or *ever*) varies with *almost no* (or a compound of *no*, or *never*), the latter combination being far less common than the former, and by some considered improper. For illustration see Ch. XL, 18, Obs. XII, γ; also JESPERSEN, Negation, 39.

There had been almost no conversation before supper. A. BENNETT, *Hilda Lessways*, II, Ch. V, 1, 175.

c) *A little* and *a few* are to a certain extent affirmative, as distinct from *little* and *few*, which are distinctly negative. For further discussion and illustration see Ch. XL, 59—62; 70—74.

89. Negating may also be suggested by the context; thus by:

a) rhetorical questions containing no negative (Ch. VII, 3, c).

Need he ever know? GALSW., *Saint's Prog*, II, v, 1 §. 138.

What right have you to be dismal? What reason have you to be morose? DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 10.

Note. Thus also by elliptical sentences with an infinitive that have the value of rhetorical questions, and contain no negative (Ch. LV, 49).

"How?" cried I, "relinquish the cause of truth? GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. II, (243).

I think the worse of him? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XVII, 144.

b) sentences opening with an ironical *much* (Ch. VIII, 37, Note; Ch. XL, 93, Obs. IV).

Much you know of the matter! O. E. D.

Much good may it do you! Much good it has ever done you! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 7.

c) sentences opening with *the devil*, *the deuce*, or a phrase of like import.

"Captain Absolute and Ensign Beverley are one and the same person." — "The devil they are!" SHER., *Riv.*, I, I, (213)

"Mr. Halifax will, I hope, dine with us next Sunday." — "The devil he will!" Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVII, 168.

## Negative and Affirmative Constructions semantically identical.

90. A negative construction sometimes has the same meaning as the corresponding affirmative construction; thus:

a) *never so* = *ever so*, the latter having been substituted for the former on account of being, apparently, more logical. See O. E. D.; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 267, foot-note. *Never so*, although much older than *ever so*, occurs now only archaically. O. E. D. The earliest example of *ever so* registered in the O. E. D. is dated 1690—2.

i. But though the books were never so interesting, and never so full of novelty to Tom, they could not so enchain him as to make him unconscious, for a moment, of the lightest sound. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XL, 314 a.

"After all," thought I, "a diamond pin is a handsome thing, and will give me a *distinguishè* air, though my clothes be never so shabby." THACK., *Sam Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

ii. There are ever so many names in the Visitors' Book. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 158.

"You will sometimes see the Brittons," he said, his voice trembling ever so little. EDNA LYALL, *Kn. Er.*, Ch. XVII, 153.

b) *Don't do more than you can't help* = *Don't do more than you can help*, the latter, although less logical than the former, is the usual form. See the O. E. D., s. v. *help*, 11, c; and especially JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 80.

c) *much more* and *much less* may have the same meaning, i. e. after a negative statement or a statement implying a negative.

i. He (sc. the Major) would never submit to any deceit — much more to deceive such a charming young woman as Miss Foth. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIII, 132.

ii. He desires me to say that he cannot think of attending himself, much less of asking his Gracious Master to witness the performance. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXIX, 842.

For further illustration see Ch. XL, 103, Obs. VI.

d) *I want a cloth that will wear* = *I want a cloth that will not wear*. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. V, 189.

e) *A good many* = *a good few*, the latter far less common than the former.

i. A good many Liberals abstained from casting their vote.

ii. We fought all day there, and had a good few casualties. *Times*, LI, No. 2445, 494 b.

f) *Excuse my (me) doing that* may mean: a) *forgive me for doing that*, β) *forgive me for not doing that*. See JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 29. The explanation of the diametrically opposite meanings that the collocation may have, as given by KRUISINGA (*Eng. Stud.*, III, II, 57), is that *to excuse* may drop the prepositions *for* or *from* before the gerund, the construction with *for* corresponding to the first application of the expression, that with *from* to the second.

### Accumulation of Negatives.

91. The use of two or more negatives in one and the same sentence has at all times been quite common. In the standard language of Late Modern English, however, it is not tolerated, being found fault with on the false assumption that one negative neutralizes another negative, so that, it is argued, a negative sentence is rendered affirmative by a second negative. In dialects and vulgar speech, on the other hand, repeated negatives flourish to this day and will, most probably, never cease to flourish, although not, perhaps, to the extent as we often see it represented in novels and plays.

The widespread practice of repeating negatives has agitated many pens and given rise to the setting up of some ingenious theories. The student interested in these will find adequate discussion of them in JESPERSEN, *Negation*, Ch. VII; STOPP., *Stud.*, 192. In the majority of cases the practice seems to be due to an inclination, prevailing

especially with illiterate speakers, to use more than one expedient for the expression of one idea, partly from a desire of emphasizing or exaggerating, partly from a doubt of a simple word making the desired impression. A similar tendency lies at the bottom of such phrases as *each and every* (Ch. XL, 55, Note γ), and innumerable combinations of words of identical meaning placed in juxtaposition for distinctness, emphasis and also, no doubt, often enough merely to improve the balance of the sentence, as in:

(They) rightly considered that the selling of goods by retail is a shameful and infamous practice, meriting the contempt and scorn of all real gentlemen. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

All was indeterminate and vague within her. GALSW., *To let*, II, Ch. IX, (993).

A few examples of cumulative negatives may be acceptable.

He never yet no vileinye ne sayde. CHAUC., *Can't. T.*, A, 70.

Man delights not me: no, nor woman neither. SHAK., *Hamlet*, II, 2, 304.

"Nobody never went and hinted no such a thing," said Peggotty. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 a.

### Adverbial Notions expressed by other Parts of Speech.

92. Adverbial notions may also be expressed by verbs, adjectives nouns, pronouns, and phrases.

#### Adverbial Notions expressed by Verbs.

93. The verbs which express an adverbial notion are especially such as stand with an infinitive and express an accessory notion attending the action denoted by this infinitive. They include:
- a) 'the modal verbs and auxiliaries *may, might, let, must, shall, should, will, would* (Ch. XLV, 8; 13, d, 1; 26). For illustration see the respective verbs in Ch. I, 16, 27; and Ch. XLIX.

Thus also *to fail*, which often serves the same purpose as the negative *not*, as in: *I fail to understand you*.

- b) the verbs *to appear* and *to seem*. Compare Ch. XLV, 13, d, 2; 26. For illustration see Ch. I, 33; and Ch. LIV, 15.

- c) the verbs *to chance* and *to happen*. Compare Ch. XLV, 13, d, 3; 26. For illustration see Ch. I, 32; and Ch. LIV, 15.

Note. In vulgar language the isolated infinitive *happen* sometimes has the value of *perhaps*.

She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVIII, 554.

It would happen give her sleep. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXX, 291.

They're nash things, them lop-eared rabbits — they'd happen ha died, if they had been fed. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 24.

Why can't I make other people as careful as I am myself? Some of these

days there will be an accident happen — and when the register's lost, then the parish will find out the value of my copy. W. COL., Wom. in White, III, Ch. 427.

d) the verbs *to come* and *to fall*, so far as they express fortuity blended with ingressiveness (Ch. XVIII, 12).

i. How came you to care we should know beforehand? EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 40.

Thus it came to pass that this movement of pity towards Sally Oates heightened the repulsion between him and his neighbours. E. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. II, 15.

ii. William fell to be in ill terms with his mother. BURNET, *Own Times*, I, 443.<sup>1)</sup>

Thus also, to a certain extent, *to get* and *to grow*, as in:

i. When I was quite a young boy, . . I got to know what 'umbleness did. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 286 a.

When I got to be a man, and lost my illusions [etc]. BLACK, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, G, 115.

ii. He had grown to have an extreme fancy for my wife as well as my little boy. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 902.

Cranford had so long piqued itself on being an honest and moral town that it had grown to fancy itself too genteel and well-bred to be otherwise. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 180.

94. Besides the above verbs, also the following may, with some justice, be said to express an adverbial notion:

a) the defective verbs expressing some form of capability, possibility, necessity, coercion, volition or recurrency, such as *can*, *may*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, *will*; similarly the verbs *to have* and *to be* when expressing a necessity or coercion; also the phrases *had better*, *had rather*, etc.

b) verbs which express a movement of the human will, such as *to desire*, *to want*, *to wish*; *to intend*, *to mean*; *to hope*.

c) verbs which express a psychical disposition, such as *to fear*, *to dread*, *to like*, *to hate*.

d) verbs which serve to express a particular character or aspect of the predication, such as *to begin*, *to cease*, *to get*, *to grow*, *to fall*, *to come*, *to go*.

95. The adverbial notion of the verbs referred to in the two preceding sections appears from the fact that the meaning of some of them may, with some precision, be also expressed by an adverb, either in English or in some cognate language. Thus *The train may be late* differs little from *The train will, perhaps, be late*; any more than *He appears to be rich* from *He is, apparently, rich*; or *I happened to be within hearing* from *I was by accident within hearing*, or from *Ik was er toevallig dicht genoeg bij om het te hooren*; or *I should like to die a dry death*

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s. v. fall, 40, d.

from *I would fain die a dry death*, or from *Ik zou graag a droge dood sterven*. For comment see also Ch. XLV, 26; and compare KRUIS., *Handb. k.*, §§ 320, 340.

### Adverbial Notions expressed by Adjectives.

96. Among the adjectives that may express adverbial notions it is especially those which denote a relation of time, attendant circumstances, degree, or mood, which deserve the attention of the Dutch student, inasmuch as in the Dutch translation of the combinations in which they occur, an adverb would mostly be required or, at least, preferred. This applies to:

*a) early*, as in: The Emperor had early notice of it. SWIFT, *Gull.*, I, Ch. I.

Making Warman bring him an early cup of coffee, he stole out of the house before the hour of breakfast. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. IV, (592).

*frequent*, as in: I hope to have frequent conversations with you. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 281.

*immediate*, as in: He must either submit to immediate surrender, or prepare for immediate assault. MAC., *Hist.*

*instant*, as in: She took her brother into instant favour. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. X, 238.

*late*, as in: Every day that he dined at home Ellinor was placed opposite to him, while he ate his late dinner. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. III, (413).

*occasional*, as in: It was a great delight that Sarah did not object to William's occasional presence in their Sunday interviews. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. I, 7.

In this strain with an occasional glass of wine, by way of parenthesis, did the stranger proceed. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 9

*rare*, as in: She kept me aloof by the reserved gesture, the rare and alienated glance, the word calmly civil. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. 243.

*recent*, as in: Such was the individual .. to whom he proceeded to return in chosen terms his warmest thanks for his recent assistance. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 7.

*sudden*, as in: A sudden thought crossed his mind. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, II, 30.

*tardy*, as in: Then at length tardy justice was done to the memory of Oliver. MAC., *Hist.* (Observe that *at length* and *tardy* express practically the same idea, so that either one or the other is redundant.)

*untimely*, as in: The miners will not embarrass the first Labour Government by pressing untimely demands. *Manch. Guard.*, 4/1, 1924, 4d.

*b) additional*, as in: Her plain aspect, homely precise dress, and phlegmatic unattractive manner were, to her, so many additional recommendations. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VI, 99.

*exclusive*, as in: Mr. Weller contorted his features from behind the wheelbarrow, for the exclusive amusement of the boy with the leggings. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 165.

*particular*, as in: What had induced him to sing those particular words? ED. LYALL, *Hardy Novels*, Ch. VI, 51.

In this particular locality, I can assure you, that everything appears to be in a depressed state. BUS. LET. WRIT.



*separate*, as in: Any single Government of the Empire has the right to negotiate and to sign separate treaties. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 20, 385 *c*. (The adjective *single* expresses practically the same idea as *separate* and could, therefore, be dispensed with.)

*sheer*, as in: I could not stand for sheer exhaustion. *MAR. COR.*, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XLII, 274.

By sheer force of character he won his way to one of the highest positions in the Boer army. *Graph.*

*substantial*, as in: The Daily News vouched for the substantial correctness of the story. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8615, 1 *a*.

*c*) *absolute*, as in: In London I was an absolute stranger. *WATTS DUNT.*, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. II, 54.

A woman with fair opportunities and without an absolute hump may marry whom she likes. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

*comparative*, as in: To all comparative strangers who .. commented on the alterations in her looks, she had one reply: "I am perfectly well: I have not an ailment." *CH. BRONTË*, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 221.

*complete*, as in: On all the more critical questions of foreign policy they were in complete accord. *Manch. Guard.*, 31/10, 1924, 362 *b*.

*equal*, as in: They were equal strangers to opulence and poverty. *GOLD-SMITH*, *Vic.*, Ch. IV.

*mere*, as in: She is a mere child of thirteen or fourteen. *WALT. BESANT.* *By Celia's Arbour*, I, Ch. I, 8.

*perfect*, as in: Clara! are you a perfect fool? *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 29 *a*.

*sheer*, as in: My mother told me that everything of the kind was sheer nonsense. *WATTS DUNTON*, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. VI, 83.

*substantial*, as in: Over a large field of possible legislation they were in substantial accord. *Manch. Guard.*, 31/10, 1924, 362 *b*.

*utter*, as in: He confided to me his opinion that Clavering was an utter scoundrel. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 351.

And reverencing the custom of the house | Geraint, from utter courtesy, forbore. *TEN.*, *Mar. of Ger.*, 381.

This utter dependence of the speechless, bleeding youth, .. on his benevolence, secured that benevolence most effectually. *CH. BRONTË*, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XV, 302.

*d*) *apparent*, as in: Since the Germans had asked for it (sc. a hearing of their case), to refuse would be an apparent denial of justice. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 20, 385 *b*.

*evident*, as in: She congratulated Caroline on the evident improvement in her health. *CH. BRONTË*, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVIII, 349.

*ostensible*, as in: My ostensible errand on this occasion was to get measured for a pair of shoes. *id.*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 103.

*probable*, as in: Mr. Long began to be spoken of as a probable successor to Mr. Balfour as unionist leader. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/10, 1924, III *b*.

*virtual*, as in: Revolution sooner or later has become a virtual certainty. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 23, 456 *a*.

No reason has so far been offered for the virtual suppression of the principal organ of the Rhineland. *ib.*, IX, 23, 447 *c*.

97. Obs. I. It will have been observed that the different adverbial relations indicated by the adjectives in the preceding examples cannot always be rigidly discriminated, and that some of them express a notion which is more or less tinged with that of a quality. Thus, to mention one clear example, *untimely*, which in the above example approaches to *unseasonable*, i.e. *disagreeable because out of season*.

II. Nor will it have escaped notice that in the majority of cases the adjective naturally attaches to a noun which implies an action, state or quality. As to nouns denoting a state, or quality, inclusion should be reserved for those in such combinations as *an absolute stranger, equal strangers, a mere child, a perfect fool, an utter scoundrel*, in which the noun denotes a person that may be considered as the repository of a quality.

But as some of the above examples show, the adjective conveying an adverbial notion may also stand before nouns that imply no verbal or adjectival idea, even such as denote a material thing, as in *an early cup of coffee, occasional letters, an occasional glass of wine, those particular words, this particular locality, a late dinner, an absolute hump*.

III. As to *utter* it may here be remarked that, like the corresponding adverb *utterly*, it is almost regularly said of undesirable things; thus in *utter darkness, utter ruin, an utter mistake; an utter scoundrel, an utter wastrel*. Occasional instances, however, occur of the word being connected with a noun of a neutral or even eulogistic meaning; e. g.: *utter courtesy* (see the above example). Compare SWAEN, *Herrig Archiv*, CXXXIV, 51—52. It may be added that *perfect* is not analogously narrowed in its application in the opposite direction, being freely used of words of a dyslogistic as well as those of a eulogistic meaning; e. g.: *a perfect fool* (see the above example).

98. a) Also adjectives of quality may be made to do vicarious duty for adverbs, naturally almost exclusively as modifiers of nouns which imply an action, i. e. nouns of action, and especially agent-nouns. Thus such word-groups as *ardent love, rapid perusal, dogged resistance; an ardent lover, a desultory reader, a large distiller*, etc., are quite common and can be freely formed of any suitable combination. A few quotations illustrating such collocations will be deemed acceptable. In the function described we find:

i. *bright*, as in: A bright thought struck her. LEW. CAR., *Through the Looking Glass*, 21.

*obstinate*, as in: Had he betrayed injudicious emotion, perhaps obstinate persistence in silence would have been the result. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 233.

*secret*, as in: The widow had a secret regard for Mr. Smirke. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 161.

ii. *active*, as in: Up to May, 1915, when the *Lusitania* was sunk, the active interventionists in the United States were still but a small minority. *Manch. Guard.*, 8/2, 1924, 101 b.

*fluent*, as in: He is certainly a fluent orator. *id.*, 29/2, 1924, 172 b.

It made him a fluent talker in at least three languages. *Westm. Gaz.*, 6/6, 1925, 156 a.

*voluble*, as in: He is a voluble and impassioned orator. *Manch. Guard.*, 29/2, 1924, 172 c.

b) it is not often that we find adjectives of quality thus doing duty for adverbs before the names of material things, as is, for example, done by:

*facetious*, in: The people who were shovelling away on the housetops were jovial and full of glee; calling out to one another from the parapets, and now and then exchanging a facetious snowball. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 51.

*patient*, in: To wait, slowly turning over and over in their old minds the little joys and sorrows, events and expectancies, of their little family world, as cows chew patient cuds in a familiar field. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, Ch. XI, (744).

c) It should not be supposed that it is only adjectives of quality that are found as quasi-adverbial modifiers of agent-nouns, also the adjectives mentioned in the preceding section are frequently enough used in this function. Thus there is nothing out of the common in such collocations as *a constant attendant*, *an early riser*, *a regular contributor*, *a total abstainer*, etc., etc. The following illustration must suffice. In the function described we find:

*casual*, in: A casual observer might possibly have remarked nothing extraordinary in the bald head, and circular spectacles which were intently turned towards his (sc. the secretary's) face. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 2.

*deliberate*, in: I was inclined too look upon you as a bit of a deliberate interloper. HORNING, *No Hero*, Ch. VIII.

*new*, in: At the sound .. each turned and recognized the new-comer. LYTTON, *Pompey*, I, Ch. II, 13a.

*positive*, in: Fenella Stanley seems in later life to have set up as a positive seeress. W. DUNTON, *Aylw.*, I, Ch. VI, 34.

*rare*, in: Dirty Dame Tripp .. was a rare church-goer. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 72.

*regular*: I .. am not a very regular church-goer. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LV, 248.

*superficial*, in: A superficial traveller might object to the dirt which is their leading characteristic (sc. of the towns referred to). DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 10. (= a traveller who observes things only superficially.)

d) Sometimes the adjective, not necessarily one of quality, stands in a word-group which as a whole has the function of an adverb; thus that in:

She who went nowhere else called on an early day. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 278. (= soon.)

I fancied .. that he was gauging me in some fashion in his secret mind. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, I, 19. (= secretly.)

e) Some adjectives in their altered function admit of the degrees of comparison. This is shown by the use of:

*best*, as in: When we have this relation occurring between one book and a great number of readers, we are accustomed to speak of its author as a best-seller, or a genius, or a mountebank, or something of that kind. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7653, 6b.

*hardest*, as in: He had been one of the hardest livers and hardest readers of his time at Oxbridge. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 306.

*heaviest*, as in: The Liberals .. were the heaviest losers. *Manch. Guard.*, 7/11, 1924, 385b.

*longer*, as in: Be brisk awhile, and the longer liver take all. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 5, 16.

Similarly they may be preceded by an adverb of degree; thus in:

Mr. Miller-Jones is quite as hard a hitter as Major Atlee. *Times*, No. 2449, 598 a.

f) Adjectives used in the applications discussed in this and the preceding sections are called by JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 12.12; 12.21 - 12.262) shifted subjunct-adjuncts, by which he means that the words in question have been raised from subjuncts to adjuncts, i. e. from words of a tertiary rank to words of a secondary rank. Compare also *id.*, *Philos. of Gram.*, 101; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 92, 2; PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 258. The subject has also been discussed in Ch. IV, 13—19.

99. a) There is a distinct tendency in English to express adverbial relations by adjectives whenever a suitable noun is available with which they can be connected. This predilection for a construction with an adjective rather than an adverb seems to be chiefly due to:

1) the clumsiness of many adverbs in *ly*, which not seldom seriously interferes with the laws of rhythm and euphony. Thus *No sound broke the perfect stillness of the air* is distinctly preferable, from the point of view of rhythm and euphony, to *No sound broke the perfectly still air*.

Again such a sentence as the following could be rendered more smooth by changing *ought to be taken very seriously into account* into *ought to be taken into very serious account*:

(This aspect) ought to be taken very seriously into account by both the defenders and the assailants of the existing opium policy in the Far East. *Westm. Gaz.*, 21/3, 1925, 632 c.

It stands to reason that the use of two subsequent adverbs in *ly*, the first modifying the second, is hardly tolerated in good style. Thus *perfectly easily* is replaced by *with perfect ease* in: He went into a second examination and passed with perfect ease. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. XXI, 220.

He looked at the stranger for several seconds with a stern intensity. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 11.

She looks at him with equal steadiness. SHAW, *You never can tell*, II, (267).

She leaves the table with petulant suddenness. *ib.*, II, (237).

2) the frequent difficulty of finding a suitable place for the adverb, any position being not seldom objectionable for some reason or other. This difficulty would be experienced in replacing the adjectives by adverbs in *He kept his house in excellent order*, *The traffic got into a perfect tangle*, *I made a casual acquaintance with that man*. For discussion see also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 12.25; EIL. EKWALL, *Beibl. zur Anglia*, XXVI, X, 327.

b) It is only natural that the tendency referred to above makes itself especially felt when the predication is expressed in two

parts, one a verb that is purely or mainly connective, and one a noun that is the chief exponent of its nature. We may distinguish the following cases:

1) the connective verb is one of a vague meaning, the significant part of the predicate is a noun standing, indeed, in the objective relation to that verb, but hardly deserving to be called an object from a semantic point of view. Compare Ch. XLVII, 26 f; Ch. LIV, 9 ff.

George came and took a tender leave of her the next morning. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

The best way (sc. of catching your hat when it has been blown off and is rolling away) is .. to make a rapid dive, seize it by the crown, and stick it firmly on your head. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 33.

She bade Mrs. Pryor a quiet good night. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XIII, 30.

Caroline stole a quiet gaze towards her. ib., II, Ch. VI, 100.

Had they acted together at the present election, there was every prospect that they would achieve an easy victory. Manch. Guard., 31/10, 1924, 362 b.

The men were .. reconvinced by daily experience that the command would do its honest best for them. ib., 21/11, 1924, 427 b.

2) the connective verb is an intransitive turned into a transitive by being furnished with a cognate object, the former being distinctly subservient to the latter in significance. Compare Ch. XLVI, 6; 44; and 45 Obs. IV.

The plowman homeward plods his weary way. GRAY, Elegy, 3.

Mr. Higgins knew pretty well how to improve the acquaintance thus begun. He could sing a good song, tell a good story, and was well up in practical jokes. Mrs. GASK., The Squire's Story, (220).

Mrs. Yorke laughed her own peculiar short laugh. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. VI, 106.

In another half-hour he was on the coach on his way to Liverpool, smiling the smile of the triumphant wicked. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., I, (493).

The Cape Dutch fought a gallant action. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. III, 43.

c) But also in other connexions the use of adjectives for what might also be expressed by adverbs is frequent enough.

He entered the house, which, to tell the truth, Dame Van Winkle had always kept in neat order. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.

It was all he could do to keep the shop in decent repair. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 16.

Had the Dutch and the Hottentots been left to themselves, the latter .. would probably now be surviving and in a fair way to leading useful lives. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. III, 44.

During the critical breakfast with Mr. MacDonald M. Herriot was in constant wireless touch with M. Poincaré. Manch. Guard.

100. Also predicative adjectives are often made to convey adverbial notions; thus:

a) such as are followed by an infinitive which, from a semantic point of view, is the real element modified. We may distinguish the following types:

1) This is *easy* (or *difficult*) to understand.

Compare: The nature of her influence over James is not easily to be explained. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. VI, 303.

For further comment see Ch. LIII, 10; also Ch. LV, 80 and 86.

2) *He was quick (or slow) to perceive it.*

Even when we were alone, I was slow to disturb her. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. XIX, 384.

I had a hundred opportunities of setting him right and putting him down, and I was not slow to profit by them. STEV., Treas. Isl., II, Ch. VII, 49.

In cases of danger and emergency she was essentially swift to act. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, Ch. I, 8.

3) *He is sure (certain, or likely) to come.* For illustration and discussion see Ch. II, 35; and Ch. LIII, 16.

Note. In the following quotation the use of the adverb-form is, apparently, due to the writer feeling the adverbial force of the modifier. Everybody invited was certainly to come. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XXIX, 240.

b) such as are followed by *of* + noun of action, the latter denoting the notion whose nature is described by the predicative adjective; thus in:

Have you the lion's part written? pray you, if it be, give it me, for I am slow of study. SHAK., Mids., I, 2, 69.

I am always easy of belief when the creed pleases me. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XIV, 335.

The snow-figure .. had been begun as a man, but had been transformed into a lady, since skirts were more solid, and easier of execution than legs. E. F. BENSON, Dodo wonders, Ch. XII, 197.

Note. In such sentences as *He walks as slowly as usual*, *He walks faster than usual*, the adjective-form of *usual* is due to the fact that the incomplete clauses *as usual* and *than usual* are understood to be short for respectively *as is usual with him* and *than is usual with him*.

### Adverbial Notions expressed by Nouns.

101. Nouns as the bearers of an adverbial notion are especially met with as:

a) vague objects of verbs which denote the peculiar form in which a psychical disposition is uttered or manifested.

Madame saw me at work and smiled approbation. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XII, 132. (= smiled approvingly.)

Robert looked inquiry. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 46.

For further discussion and illustration see also Ch. XLVI, 6, b; 46; also W. VAN DOORN, Vitatio Adverbii (Berichten en Mededeelingen, No. 32).

Note a) When such a noun is preceded by an adjective, the latter may denote an additional adverbial notion, the construction serving at the same time the useful purpose of avoiding the harsh clash of two successive adverbs in *ly*.

"The man is mad," says Mammon, smiling supercilious pity. KINGSLEY, *Cheap Clothes and Nasty*, (63).

Doctor Slammer looked unutterable ferocity. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 15.

β) Instead of a noun denoting a state of mind, as in the preceding examples, there is the name of a thing symbolical of a state of mind in:

He looked daggers at me. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 372.

b) effective objects after verbs that in their ordinary application are intransitive. See also Ch. XLVI, 48.

It was raining cats and dogs.

The old steward had, as he said, sweated blood and water in his efforts to overcome the scruples and evasions of the moorland farmers. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. II, 26.

102. The substantival superlatives *first* and *last* followed by partitive *of* are sometimes used to denote the first or last glimpse that has been obtained of a departing person or thing, and, accordingly, approach in meaning to *for the first* or *last time* respectively (Ch. V, 19).

This was the last they saw of Svengali. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, 176.

That's the first I ever saw of B. J. id., *The Martin*, Ch. I.

### Adverbial Notions expressed by Indefinite Pronouns and Numerals.

103. a) Certain indefinite pronouns or numerals (or equivalent nouns denoting a quantity) are often called into requisition to express how far the attribute expressed by a noun is to be found in a person or thing. They are then used in the function of nominal part of the predicate and followed by partitive *of* (Ch. V, 17).

i. She is getting horribly tired of Kiffin, who, to tell the truth, is something of a milksop. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 383.

I am somewhat of a fowl-fancier. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

Burns was really as little of a Jacobin at heart as he was a Jacobite. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 37.

I'm enough of a doctor to tell whether a man is drunk or sober. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 133.

No man was less of a snob or an aristocrat, and more of a true believer in the innate political force of the British nation. *The Nation* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No 5329, 16 c).

By disposition, perhaps, he was more of the politician than the lawyer. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4919, 2 b.

ii. If I had not beene a peece of a Logician before I came to him, I think he would have perswaded mee to haue wished my selfe a horse. SIDNEY, *Apol. for Poetrie*, 19 (now obsolete O. E. D., s. v. *piece*, 2, e).

I was inclined to look upon you as a bit of a deliberate interloper. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. VIII.

b) *Little* and *much* or words (or word-groups) of a similar meaning, followed by partitive *of* are repeatedly employed to

H. POUTSMA, III II.

denote the comparative frequency with which a person or thing is seen.

He saw very little of her. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 138.

I saw a good deal of him in London. NORRIS, *An Eclipse*, Sc. I.

### Adverbial Notions expressed by Phrases.

104. Besides the ordinary modal adverbs, such as *surely*, *certainly*, *doubtless*, *perhaps*, *possibly*, *probably*, etc., there are innumerable word-groups or phrases in constant use to denote various shades of the mental attitude with which the speaker regards the fulfilment of the action or state expressed by the predicate. In some of them the meaning of the words of which they are composed is but vaguely thought of individually, so that they are, in a manner, to be regarded as linguistic units. For phrases of similar import in Dutch see DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 108, Opm. 1.

To the following phrases many more could, no doubt, be added:

*for all ihe world*: You look for all the world as if you wanted an opportunity of stealing out of the room. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops*, II, (180).

*no matter*: I . . . determined that, please God, I would always go to church every Sunday morning, no matter how fine it might be. W. HALE WHITE, *Mr. Whittaker's Retirement* (Sel. Sh. St., I, 309).

*to be sure*: It was very unkind of her to be well in your absence, to be sure. SHER., *Riv.*, II, I.

How these people love each other, to be sure. *Daily News*.

*sure(ly) enough*: i. Sure enough, they soon showed every sign of life. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

ii. In the evening later on I saw three very old men come chuckling out of a dissenting chapel, and, surely enough, they were my old friends the blacksmith, the carpenter and the shepherd. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. XIV, 64.

*I am certain* (or *sure*): An' you were to go to Clod Hall, I am certain, the old lady wouldn't know you. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4.

Poor Charles! I'm sure, I wish it were in my power to be of any essential service to him. *id.*, *School for Scand.*, I, I, (365).

Nobody wants his money, I'm sure. GALSW., *To let*, II, Ch. XI, (1009).

Note the colloquial *I'm sure I don't know*, or *I don't know, I am sure*.

*I suppose*: He comes on the old affair, I suppose. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I, I.

I suppose you have sometimes plucked a pear before it was ripe. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288 b.

*I warrant*: I warrant old Crop, who has carried your honour, field and road, these ten years, will curse the hour he was born. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, I.

*I believe you*: "Do you smoke?" asked Mr. James Harthouse when they came to the hotel. "I believe you!" said Tom. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. III, 59 b.

"Dread him," said Wemmink. "I believe you, they dread him. *id.*, *Gr. Exp.*, Ch. XXV, 244.

Note. The phrase corresponds to the colloquial Dutch *Nou en of!* A similar force is in:



*I think so*, as in: "Massive?" repeated Wemmink. "I think so." *ib.*, 245.

*I declare*: Why, it's nearly out (sc. the fire), I declare. No wonder I dreamed of being frozen. *Dick. Chuz.*, Ch. VI, 52 *b*.

I declare I'm quite afraid of you. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 36.

Half past two, I declare, and the young gents not arrived yet. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I, 1.

(*I have*) *no doubt*: If I was to be put upon my oath to-morrow, .. I have no doubt I could venture to swear to those identical words. *Dick.*, *Domb.*, Ch. XVIII, 162.

*it appears*: King Edward VII, it appears, was not a great reader. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 556 *c*.

*it seems*: The poems .. were written, it seems, by an American poetess. *Westm. Gaz.*, 21/3, 1925, 628 *a*.

For *I daresay*, and its occasional variants *I dare answer*, *I dare swear*, see Ch. I, 63; also Ch. LV, 22; for *to tell the truth* and its numerous variants see Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. V.

### Function of Adverbs and Group-adverbs.

Adverbs denoting the nature or intensity of an action, state or quality, or circumstances generally.

105. *a*) The most frequent function of adverbs and adverbial adjuncts is:

1) to denote the nature or intensity of the action expressed by a verb or group-verb, as in: *He walked slowly, I rather like this*.

2) to denote the intensity of some quality or state indicated by *a*) an adjective, as in: *The sea was very rough*; *β*) an adjectival word-group (Ch. LX, 87), as in: *He is quite at ease, He is desperately in love*; *γ*) an adverb, as in: *He walked very slowly*; *δ*) an adverbial word-group, as in: *Near at hand all (was) ablaze with flowering gorse* (*Mrs. GASK.*, *Cous. Phil.*, III, 56); *ε*) an adnominal noun, used either attributively or predicatively, as in:

i. I wish troubles would come in the daytime, for then a man could show his courage, and hardly beg for mercy of the most broomstick old woman he should see. *HARDY*, *Return*, IV, Ch. VII, 367.

He concluded .. to show himself the protector of artists from what was .. the too iron hand of capital. *GALSW.*, *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. V, 332.

For further illustration see Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. II, *γ*; and *JESPERSEN*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 13.51—4; *KRUIS*, *Handb. k.*, § 1463.

ii. He is fully master of the subject. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 361.

I told her my wishes, and she came into them. She would do anything for me. It was very game of her. *DICK*, *Hard Times*, II, Ch. III, 60 *b*.

A person with a nature far less matter-of-fact than James might have been excused for failing to pierce this halo. *GALSW.*, *Man of Prop.*, III, Ch. V, 333.

Do you mean to say Mr. Marvell's as swell as Mr. Popple? *ED. WHARTON*, *The Custom of the Country*, I, Ch. I, 7.

The grotto has often been described, and Pope certainly spent a great deal of time and money upon it; but to-day it looks very gimcrack. T. P.'s Weekly No. 487, 609 *a*.

I am not a Socialist; Socialism is too Tory for my tastes. CHESTERTON, 11 Lond. News, No. 3815, 828 *a*.

Note. It will have been observed that the adverbs in all the examples are intensives and that the nouns they modify, whether attributive or predicative, denote qualities as unequivocally as ordinary adjectives of quality. They may even be of the same force when preceded by an indefinite article as in *He is quite a gentleman*, *She is only a child*, *This is merely an opinion*, *This hill is almost a mountain*.

5) a preposition that has the value of an adjective or adverb.

i. I was just about falling into a doze, when he suddenly started up Poe, A. Gordon Pym, Ch. I, 11. (*About falling into a doze* may be compared with *ready to fall into a doze*. Compare Ch. LX, 46, *b*.)

I am half through my work. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 359.

The final result of the election gives the Conservatives a majority of well over two hundred. Manch Guard., 7/11, 1924, 385 *a*.

ii. She sailed right against wind and tide, which were both down the river. WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl., 1, 85).

Toll for the brave — | The brave! that are no more: | All sunk beneath the wave, | Fast by their native shore. COWPER, On the Loss of the Royal George, I.

The sparrow's dwelling, which, hard by | My father's house, in wet or dry | My sister Emmeline and I | Together visited. WORDSW., The Sparrow's Nest, I.

She sat on the ground close by the door. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. VII, 58.

There has been some recent talk .. about the habit of certain foxes, having their habitation near by the sea, of going down to the shore at whiles and catching for themselves aquatic dainties. Westm. Gaz., 14/10, 1922, 12 *a*.

Note. All these modifiers of *by* have practically the same force.

η) a prepositional word-group, as in:

I came here just for the sake of telling you. WELLS, Britling, II, Ch. I, § 2, 188.

There is no real reason to fear that it (sc. the Nationalist party) will pursue a policy utterly at variance with the interests of the country. Manch. Guard.

*b*) In many cases the adverb or adverbial word-group does not modify any particular word, so much as the whole sentence. This is the normal function of all such as indicate a relation of place, time, or attendant circumstances, as in *He lives at Oxford*, *He arrived yesterday*, *He wisely withdrew from the concern*; also of conjunctive adverbs, as in *He did not succeed however*; and modal adverbs, as in *He has evidently forgotten it*.

*c*) Sometimes also an adverb or adverbial word-group, though modifying the sentence in general, refers more to one particular element of the sentence than to any other; thus in:

Even Homer sometimes nods. SWEET, N. E. Gr., 367.

For full illustration of the word- and sentence-modifying adverbial adjuncts severally, see Ch. VIII, 42 ff. See also SWEET,

N. E. Gr., §§ 364 f, 1847, 1850; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram., I, 422; III, 126; and especially WESTERN, Some Remarks on the Use of English Adverbs, E. S., XXXVI, 75 ff.

### Adverbs modifying Adjectives.

106. It is especially adverbs that modify adjectives, or adjective equivalents, which require some special discussion in this place. The most frequent function of such adverbs is, indeed, to denote a measure or degree of whatever is expressed by the following adjective, but in many cases they serve other purposes which fully deserve the attention of the student. They may be used to denote:

a) a relation of time, as in:

He thought of the home he might at that moment have been seeking with pleasure and pride; of the different man he might have been that night; of the lightness then in his *now* heavy-laden breast; of the *then* restored honour, self-respect, and tranquillity all torn to pieces. DICK, *Hard Times*, Ch. XII, 37 a

You see what my daughters are, Miss Helstone, . . . how precociously wise in their own conceits. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VI, 104.

A new music in the always soft voice gently surprised and pleasingly captivated the listener. *ib.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 350.

The late exulting Meadows turned as pale as ashes. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 46.

John Cordy Jeaffreson, with that shrewdness which often redeems his oftener foolish book, comments thus on the Boatswain incident. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, I, Ch. VIII, 131.

b) an attitude of conviction or hesitancy on the part of the speaker as to the actual existence of the quality or state indicated by the adjective. In this case the adverb may be said to have a modal function; thus in:

The conversation of Lord Orville is really delightful. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVIII, 71.

The first time I heard your truly excellent friend preach, I could not understand his broad, northern tongue. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VIII, 158.

He knew the possibly fatal effects of visions like Camilla's. G. ELIOT, *Rom.*, II, 159 (T.)<sup>1)</sup>

Note. Modal adverbs denoting conviction are apt to assume an intensive force; thus *really* as used in the above example. A remarkable example of this weakening of meaning is the adverb *very*, which is now only used as a mere intensive and has lost its original modal meaning of *truly*.

c) the speaker's feelings evoked by what is expressed by the adjective; as in:

His spirited conduct to the meanly impertinent Lovel . . . prove him to be a

<sup>1)</sup> WESTERN, E. S. XXXVI, 79.

man of sense and of feeling. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XXIV, 121. (Lovel's impertinence strikes the speaker as mean.)

Mr. Tulliver .. was rather incautiously open in expressing his high estimate of his friend's business talents. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. III, 9.

How culpably careless in her to leave her desk open! CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XII, 252.

He was not only innocent, but deplorably — I might even say guiltily — innocent. SAM. BUTLER, *The Way of All Flesh*, Ch. XXXVIII, 165.

*Delightfully* summery in weave and texture — *charmingly* novel in its colourful stripes .. Japshan, for all its daintiness, is a tremendously durable silk. *Manch. Guard.*, 6/6, 1924, 1.

Most of us are strangely indifferent to what goes on in the outlying parts of the Empire. *Westm. Gaz.*, 6/6, 1925, 153 *b*.

Note. Most of the adverbs thus used lose the force of expressing the speaker's feelings regarding whatever is expressed by the following adjective, i. e. lose their original import to the extent of becoming intensives; thus those in:

In the kingdom of Fashion there are no greys: things are always outrageously black or impeccably white. *Manch. Guard.*

A striking example of this deterioration of meaning is afforded by *awfully*, vulgar *awful*, which as a mere intensive seems to have come in at a comparatively recent date.

d) peculiar circumstances attending the existence or the rise of what is expressed by the adjective; as in:

A man who appears so openly licentious .. is one who .. can never be seen but with the disgust which his manners ought to excite. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XXIV, 120 (i. e. the licentiousness was exhibited openly.)

Their mother was plainly disappointed in them. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. XXII, 94.

The financial position of France is manifestly precarious. *Manch. Guard.*, 23 5, 1924, 404 *b*.

The English municipal election results are notoriously unstable political guides. *ib.*, 7/11, 1924, 385 *b*.

How dangerously they are out of touch with opinion in the allied countries! *ib.*, 6/6, 1924, 441 *a*.

Note a) Also in this function adverbs are apt to assume an intensive function, especially when the adverb and the adjective express kindred notions, as in:

He is most assiduously attentive to please and to serve all who are in his company. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVIII, 71.

Mr. Tupman found it indispensably necessary to put his arm round her waist. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 34.

She was not dangerously ill. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VII, 131.

Between her and Mr. Helstone a very respectful but most rigidly ceremonious intercourse was kept up. *ib.*, II, Ch. VIII, 154.

I am desperately fond of Shirley. *ib.*, II, Ch. IX, 174.

You must be nervously sensitive. *ib.*, II, Ch. X, 198.

Does not the apparition make vividly manifest the obtuse mould of my heavy traits? *ib.*, Ch. XI, 245.

The more inflexibly stubborn the humour, the softer, the sadder the tone. *ib.*, II, Ch. XVII, 335.

e) the cause or the effect of what is expressed by the adjective.

Thus *suspiciously vigilant* (See the definition of *jealous*, 6 in the O. E. D.) may be understood to mean *vigilant, because suspicious, or suspicious and, therefore, vigilant*, or perhaps, simply *suspicious and vigilant* (107, Obs. 1).

And midmost of a rout of roisterers, | Femininely fair and dissolutely pale,  
Her suitor in old years before Geraint. TEN., Ger. & En., 275 (= fair so as to look feminine, or fair to the extent of looking feminine; pale through dissoluteness.)

(Maggie was) indignantly conscious, all the while, that she could have understood that, as well as everything else, if she had been taken into confidence. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. IX, 79. (= indignant, because conscious.)

The naturally dark tint of his skin was additionally bronzed by the same powdery deposit that gave a polished black surface to his leathern apron. id., Romola, I, Ch. I, 17. (= dark owing to his nature, i. e. his birth.)

He may .. become troublesomely garrulous. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. VIII, 154. (garrulous and, consequently, troublesome.)

I could not, and would not, sit silent with all that beauty modestly mute in my presence. ib., II, Ch. XIX, 370. (= mute out of modesty.)

Note a) Sometimes the notion expressed by the adverb seems to be at variance with that indicated by the adjective; thus in:

A man must have an untidily-comfortable apartment, into which he can retire and envelop himself in tobacco smoke. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, I, Ch. II, IV, 18.

β) Special mention may in this connexion be made of the adverb *frankly*, which in the latest English is often used in a sense in which little of its original meaning can be discerned, i. e. almost as a pure intensive. The origin of this altered application is, perhaps, to be sought in those connexions in which the word is followed by an adjective of a kindred meaning; as in:

You are not reserved. You are frankly communicative. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. IX, 162. (= communicative, because frank.)

In the following examples *frankly* is little more than a mere intensive:

The Poles are frankly suspicious. Westm. Gaz., No. 8203, 2 b.

A frankly protective tariff has been imposed on foreign hops. ib., 20/6, 1925, 201 a.

Some of their members (sc. of the Nationalists) are frankly in favour of the policy of fulfilment. Manch. Guard, 23/5, 1924, 401 a.

Much of it (sc. the Government's work) is "frankly patchwork". ib., 10/10, 1924, 308 b.

The Nigerian natives who have been at Wembley and were going home were frankly delighted with the prospect of getting back to the sort of weather that suits them. ib., 3/10, 1924, 296 c.

f) a peculiar colouring of what is indicated by the adjective: as in:

You would have laughed, had you seen how proudly grave I appeared. FANNY BURNEY, Evelina, LI, 240. (i. e. the gravity was tinged with pride.)

Last noon beheld them full of lusty life, | Last eve in Beauty's circle proudly gay, | The midnight brought the signal-sound of strife, | The morn the marshalling in arms, — the day | Battle's magnificently stern array! BYRON, Ch. Har., III, xxviii. (i. e. the gaiety was tinged with pride, the sternness of the battle's array was magnificent.)

The father was austerely civil. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. IX, 165.

She kept me aloof by the reserved gesture, the rare and alienated glance, the word calmly civil. *ib.*, II, Ch. XI, 243.

It is possible that the new generation may be respectfully curious about the work in question. *Manch. Guard.*, 30 5, 1924, 436 *b.* (i. e. the curiosity of the new generation may be tinged with respect.)

The statement was cleverly vague. *Westm. Gaz.*, 25 4, 1925, 755 *b.*

*g)* the fact that the quality indicated by the adjective can be ascribed to the person animal or thing in question only if certain conditions are fulfilled. Thus when we speak of *a comparatively large fortune*, we wish it to be understood that the fortune can only be called large if compared with other, less considerable, fortunes.

This neglect of fruit is dietetically unsound. *Manch. Guard.*, 3 10, 1924, 279 *d.* (i. e. from the point of view of dietetics, *or* if dietetics is taken into consideration.)

*h)* the fact that the predication indicated by the adjective is subject to some limitation; as in:

He at once saw how this — at first sight untoward event — might be turned to excellent account. *CH. BRONTË, Shirley*, II, Ch. XVI, 320.

107. Obs. I. It will have been observed that the functions of adverbs or group-adverbs, especially those referred to under *e)*—*h)*, cannot be rigidly discriminated, there being no word to indicate these functions. Thus *suspiciously vigilant*, given as an example of two words denoting notions that are related as cause and effect, may also be apprehended as a word-group in which the first is intended to impart a peculiar colouring to the second. Nor can it be said that the subordinate status of the adverb to the adjective is, from a semantic point of view, distinctly marked. Indeed two co-ordinate adjectives might not seldom be substituted for those word-groups without involving a material change of meaning. Thus *suspiciously vigilant* conveys practically the same meaning as *suspicious and vigilant*.

Conversely the first of the two co-ordinate adjectives in the following quotation could be replaced by the corresponding adverb-form without materially altering the meaning of the word-group.

Not that a man can't be an excellent miller and farmer, and a shrewd sensible fellow into the bargain. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, I, Ch. III, 10. (= shrewdly sensible.)

II. In not a few cases the choice of the construction with two co-ordinate adjectives is evidently determined by motives of euphony. Thus:

*a)* the first adjective may be one of inordinate length and end in a number of unstressed syllables.

"Well," said Mr. Riley, in an admonitory patronising tone, .. 'I advise you to put by the 'History of the Devil', and read some prettier book. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, I, Ch. III, 12.

He hastened his customary sharp pace. *CH. BRONTË, Shirley*, II, Ch. VII, 135. (Compare the following quotation in which the distinctly synonymous *habitual* has taken the adverbial suffix: You have managed to train your features into an habitually lackadaisical expression. *ib.*, II, Ch. VI, 105.)

Of some special interest are the following word-groups in which the first denotes a peculiar form of the affection expressed by the last.

I think the rats must have gone melancholy mad there. JOHN MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, I, Ch. I, 8.

(This) does not require us to think that the Germans have gone military mad. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9.5, 1925, 36 a,

β) or the first adjective is one ending in *ly*.

She might have added that her plain aspect, homely precise dress, and phlegmatic unattractive manner were, to her, so many additional recommendations. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II Ch. VI, 99.

γ) or the first adjective is modified by an adverb.

You are very nervous and womanish. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 237.

III. The use of two co-ordinate adjectives, as well as that of a word-group in which an adverb modifies an adjective is, no doubt, sometimes due to the speaker having no single adjective at his command to express what he has to say. Thus in the following quotations quite a succession of adjectives is resorted to to express the meaning intended :

Towards the servants, Mrs. Pryor's bearing was not uncourteous, but shy, freezing, ungenial. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VIII, 154.

Do not get into the pettyfogging, small, critical frame of mind which makes you get up in the morning and want to see something big in your newspapers. MACDONALD, *Speech*.

IV. The above substitution of two co-ordinate adjectives for adverb + adjective may, in a manner, be apprehended as a kind of hendiadys, different, however, from that current only in colloquial or vulgar speech, in which the first adjective is meant as an intensive of the second, as in :

Wakem 'ud be fine and glad to have a son like mine. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, V, Ch. VI, 324.

They'll be fine an' vexed at her for making a fool of herself. *id.*, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 10.

Compare 33, c, Note: also JESPERSEN, *Philos.*, 97; *id.*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.29.

V. It may in this connexion be observed that a similar co-ordination may, semantically, lie at the bottom of the notions expressed by an adjective and its head-word. Thus *jealousy* might be defined *suspicious vigilance* or *vigilant suspiciousness*; which would be equivalent to *suspiciousness and vigilance* or *vigilance and suspiciousness*. Substitution of two co-ordinate nouns is, however, far from generally possible, for the simple reason that there may be no current noun corresponding to the adjective.

When I thought I had made up my mind to seeing in her only a lofty stranger, she would suddenly show me such a glimpse of loving simplicity... that I could no more shut my heart on her image, than I could close that door against her presence. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XI, 244. (= love and simplicity.)

All the district will .. acknowledge his unassuming superiority. *ib.*, II, Ch. XX, 408. (There is no noun corresponding to the adjective *unassuming*.)

VI. Adverbs of degree placed before the whole combination of non-intensive adverb + adjective may belong to the adjective instead of the adverb. This position is, properly, incorrect, logical arrangement requiring the intensive to be placed before the adjective.

Most milkmaids .. are less practically fitted to make their way into the world. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. VI, 105. (= less fitted by practice.)

More than once some .. question of his had .. opened up ugly depths of doubt, even on the most seemingly-palpable certainties. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. VIII, 42*a*. (= seemingly the most palpable.)

VII. When a word-group consisting of an adjective + noun is made to do duty as an adnominal adjunct, the adjective takes the suffix *ly* if the noun is turned into an adjective. Thus *equilateral triangle* is changed into *equilaterally triangular* in:

His broad brow and pointed chin give him an equilaterally triangular face. SHAW, *Saint Joan*, III, (33), stage direction.

## Conversion of Adverbs into other Parts of Speech.

### Conversion of Adverbs into Adnominal Modifiers.

108. *a*) When adverbs that have no corresponding adjective-forms are used as attributive adnominal adjuncts, they are mostly hardly felt as adjectives, unless they are very common and are practically equivalent to existing adjectives; thus *far-away* in *far-away countries*, which differs not appreciably from *remote countries*; *out-of-the way* in *some out-of-the way part of Norway*, which approaches very nearly to *some retired (sequestered or secluded) part of Norway*. But the attributive *often*, although a strict synonym of *frequent*, has a distinctly incongruous effect (109, *a*). Also the adverbs and adverbial word-groups in the following quotations, owing to their general currency, are almost felt as ordinary adjectives:

*every-day*: You are so different to every-day young ladies. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIV, 334.

*far-off*: In that far-off time superstition clung easily round every person or thing that was at all unwonted. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. I, 1.

*b*) Some combinations, especially such as contain adverbs that are also used as prepositions, have become so common that they may be said to belong to standard speech; thus, among numerous others, *after-birth*, *after-thought*, etc.; *above observation*, *above rule*, etc.; *off-chance*, *off-side*, *off-leader*; *out-patient*, *in-patient*; *outside passenger*, *inside passenger*; *under-lip*, *under-garment*, etc. The following illustration must suffice:

*off*: All she ever gets from her family is a turkey at Christmas, in exchange for which she has to board two or three of her sisters in the off season. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. I, 2.

This is my off day. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XXIV, 222.

*out*: He is an out-pupil. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 48.

*outside*: Inevitably in such circumstances the power would pass from Parliament to irresponsible outside bodies. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6341, 1*c*.

Note. The adverbs in these combinations, nevertheless, strike us as words that have largely preserved their adverbial character, owing to



the fact that they do not suggest any equivalent adjective. It will be observed that many such combinations are as frequent in Dutch as they are in English.

c) Other adverbs that are also used as prepositions have an incongruous effect when placed attributively before a noun; thus:

*between*: I can get about the house comfortably. I rest in between times. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 125.

*beyond*: His (sc. Scriabine's) mazurkas, preludes, and impromptus are not the work of a "beyond-man", but of a normal composer. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3850, 152 b.

*underneath*: The ice began to drip through the paper, and in a little while the underneath part of *The Daily News* had disappeared altogether. *Punch*, No. 3810, 62 b.

He's tall and thinnish with a dark face all over lines, and the funniest underneath smile that never quite comes through, but just wrinkles up the corners of his mouth. JEAN WEBST., *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 75.

109. For the rest the attributive use of adverbs cannot be said to have struck firm root in the language. Although frequently seized on for the syntactic convenience it affords, it mostly grates on our linguistic instinct.

It may here be observed that the extensive use of attributive adverbs is a practice peculiar to English. Apart from a few isolated instances, both Dutch and German have to resort to adjectives coined for the occasion to meet the want. English, no doubt, owes this advantage over the sister languages to the fact that there is no formal difference between adverbs and adjectives, the latter having, long since, lost their inflections for number and gender.

a) The attributive use of adverbs or group-adverbs is least uncommon of such as express a relation of either place or time.

*above-water*: (He is) a student of extended above-water tactics. RUDY. KIPL., *Sea Warfare*, Ch. I, 56,

*here*: Whither, indeed, before thy here-approach, | Old Siward, with ten thousand warlike men, | Already at a point, was setting forth. SHAK., *Macb.*, IV, 133. (Another example in *ib.*, IV, 3, 148.)

*high-up*: He may like some of his high-up English friends. ANON., *What I found out*, Ch. IV, 66.

*long-ago*: I never saw this man since that long-ago time. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, Ch. XXII, 239.

She was thinking of that long-ago driving tour she had once taken with Septimus Small. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VII, 207.

*near-by*: They are .. queer big holes helped out with sleepers from a near-by railway track. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 13, 332.

She (sc. the mined neutral) was careened on a near-by shoal. RUDY. KIPL., *The Fringes of the Fleet*, Ch. I, 48.

*nearly*: At nearly Christmas the foliage was as brilliant as when the outrage was committed. MISS MITFORD, *Our Village*, Ch. I, 15.

*now*: She felt a little as she had used to feel when she sat by her now husband in the same spot during his wooing. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 24.

*oft(en)*: i. His often quotations of Doctor Dee, the conjuror, have less effect on Osborne than on Cumberland. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XVI, 126 b.

ii. So gear to Heav'n is saintly chastity, | That when a soul is found sincerely so, | A thousand liveried angels lackey her, .. | Till oft converse with heav'nly habitants | Begin to cast a beam on th' outward shape. MILTON, *Comus*, 459.

*soon*: He entreats her .. to preserve and honour it (the treasure) against his soon return. BERN. CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. V, 59.

*then*: She was of the tallest of women, and at her then age of six-and-twenty .. in the prime and fulness of her beauty. THACK, *Pend.*, I, Ch. IV, 48.

The damsel is too beautiful to take the voyage alone in the then state of things. *Acad.*, 1889, 234 a.

*then and still*: The amount and regularity of the cheques from Messrs. Bradbury and Evans, the then and still owners of that happy periodical, made him aware that he had found for himself a satisfactory career. TROLL, *Thack.*, Ch. I, 22.

*to-and-fro*: The Attorney General .. had to give information of a great deal of to-and-fro work between the lawyers and the politicians in regard to the Campbell! prosecution. *Manch. Guard.*, 10/10, 1924, 394 a.

Note. Observe that *present* may also be used in reference to an action or state of the past time-sphere, i. e. as a variant of the attributive *then*.

A trifling emotion made itself apparent in his present weak state. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVIII, 345.

b) It is distinctly rare of such as express a quality, a degree or attendant circumstances.

i. *well and truly*: The well and truly hiring of one coach. STERNE, *Tristram Shandy*, Ch. XV, 11 b.

*truly*: Give the Home my love — my truly love. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 223.

*otherwise*: I would have been a more wonderful fool than my friends tell me I look, if I had taken an otherwise view in the early spring of this year of the course of the military events that [etc.]. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 108, 462.

ii. *almost*: It is not our purpose to describe .. the almost terror with which she saw the black-veiled nuns. THACK, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIX, 199.

He was not prepared for the almost contempt with which Ernest now regarded the doctrines of baptismal regeneration and priestly absolutism. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. L, 231.

*outright*: The whole story is an admirable example of the troubles that may, and all too often do, follow upon the outright sale of literary or artistic property. *Eng. Rev.*, Ch. 51, 449.

iii. *herewith*: Mr. Bantam . begs to enclose Mr. Weller the herewith invitation. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVII, 339.

110. Obs. I. Some adverbial adjuncts more or less regularly undergo some modification in form when used attributively.

a) *In-doors* and *out-of-doors* mostly lose the s of the plural, while the latter, in its altered form, at the same time mostly discards the preposition *of*. Accordingly we mostly say and write *in-door* (or *out-door*) *work, life, games, flowers, servants*, etc.

I have been growing out-door flowers and vegetables for market for the past twelve years. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6564, 15 a.

*Out-of-doors*, however, occurs as a rather frequent variant of the attributive *out-door*, and may be the usual form in most of the fol-

lowing combinations: *out-of-doors reading* (LAMB, Last Es. of Elia, 301), *out-of-doors affairs* (DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXIII, 211), *out-of-doors dress* (Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. I, 4), *out-of-doors life* (Miss YONGE, Redc., Ch. V, 65), *out-of-doors drinking* (EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 129).

*Out-of-door* seems to occur but rarely. The following are the only instances that have come to hand:

The great principle of out-of-door relief is, to give the paupers exactly what they don't want. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXIII, 214.

The skin .. had remained unbronzed .. in spite of his constant out-of-door life. VICTORIA CROSS, Life's Shop Window, Ch. I, 17.

β) The preposition *at* is lost in *one time*, corresponding to the adverbial *at one time*.

He was an intimate of Henry Drury -- the one-time Harrow foe. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, Byron, I, Ch. VIII, 132.

This building was originally erected and adorned with lavish splendour by the Empress Katherine for her one-time favourite Count Potemkin. Daily Mail.

γ) Also *sometime* discards the preposition *at*. See however Ch. XL, 181, d.

Major General Sir Owen Tudor Burke, sometime Military Secretary to the Commander-in-Chief in India. Acad., 1891, 204.

The context is not clear about the exact meaning of the attributive *sometimes* in the following quotation, which may be that of either the Present-English *sometimes* or (*at*) *some time*. If it is understood in the latter meaning, it is a Late-Modern-English instance of the practice, common enough in SHAKESPEARE (Ch. XL, 181, e), of using *sometimes* adnominally in the same meaning as *sometime*.

There dwells, at present in single-blessedness, Betty Adams, the wife of our sometimes gardener. Miss MITFORD, Our Village, Ch. III, 30.

II. An attributive adverbial adjunct may be modified by an adverb. If there is any library at your end of the world which happens to contain the unfortunately out-of-print volume of his (sc. Chamberlain's) unauthorized "speeches," get it out and read it. Westm. Gaz., No. 6276, 5a.

III. For the vulgar use of the attributive *here* and *there*, often mutilated into *'ere*, as in *this here man* (or *this 'ere man*) and *that there man* (or *that 'ere man*), see Ch. XXXVI, 16.

IV. Adverbs in *wards* or *ward* always have the latter form when used attributively, e. g.: *a forward movement*.

111. a) In some rather unfrequent instances attributive adverbial adjuncts are found after their head-word, which in this case is always an agent-noun. BRADLEY (The Making of Eng., Ch. IV; 126) mentions *cutter-out*, *hanger-on*, *filler-in*, *filler-up* as "later examples of this mode of formation." Of these only *hanger-on* seems to have general currency. Further illustration is afforded by:

*diner-out*, as in: The manner in which these parasites repaid the hospitality of their hosts, was like that of modern diners-out, by witty jokes and amusing stories. LYTON, Pomp., Note b.

*hanger-on*, as in: When at home, he had always several Indian hangers-on who loitered about his house. WASH. Irv., DOLF HEYL. (STOF., HANDL., I, 132).

He was admitted by the leaders as among their nearer hangers-on. SAM. BUTLER, *The Way of All Flesh*, Ch. XLV, 200.

*knocker-up*, as in: With ringing blows from his boots on the pavement the "knocker-up" goes through the town calling the men to the tannery. Westm. Gaz., 13/6, 1925, 181 a.

*puller-down*, as in: Some years ago the "Saturday Review," long an organ of the upper dogs, fell upon him (sc. Galsworthy) angrily as an insidious puller-down of the British ruling class Manch. Guard, 1/2, 1924.

*sitter-by*, as in: He came to the part of the room where the sitters-by were collected. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXXVIII, 306.

*walker-alone*, as in: The mysterious privacy of narrower thoroughfares; the lights that flash and fade in upper windows; all the rustling of a city snuggling into bed — are privileges for the walker-alone. Westm. Gaz., No. 8615, 10 b.

*whipper-in*, as in: At the beginning of the Canadian 'Parliamentary Companion' a whole page is headed in large capitals 'Whippers-in.' Then follow the names of the various party 'Whips,' as we would call them. Westm. Gaz., 12/1, 1903, 9.

b) This practice is particularly clumsy in the case of the adjunct being a (lengthy) word-group. It seems least exceptionable when it is rather the person than the action implied by the agent-noun that is concerned in what is expressed by the adjunct, as in the last group of the following examples:

i. The centre of the hall was .. interdicted to the passers to and fro. LYTTON, *Pompey*, I, Ch. III, 14 b.

And as the sweetest voice of a bird | Heard by the lander in a lonely isle, | Moves him to think what kind of bird it is | That sings so delicately clear [etc.]. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 330.

It is the nose of the seeker after knowledge. R. THURSTON HOPKINS, *Rudy Kipl.*, Ch. III, 40.

Would they hang dabblers in poison gas? Manch. Guard.

ii. Some doubtful noise of creaking doors, | Heard by the watcher in a haunted house. TEN., *Guin.*, 72.

London will be a haunt for the tripper from abroad, and for those who come here with money to burn Westm. Gaz., 6/6, 1925, 161 b.

c) By the side of *stander-by* and *looker-on* the language has *bystander* and *onlooker*.

Let the bystander inform the ruler. JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, V, 254.

It is the onlooker that sees most of the game. Macm. Mag.

Note. These latter forms in which an adverb of place (or direction) modifies and precedes an agent-noun appear to be rare. *Down-toner*, a word coined by STOFFEL as a name of such adverbs as *rather*, *somewhat*, was pronounced an unEnglish formation by BRADLEY (*The Making of English* Ch. IV, 125).

A further instance of a compound of the above type, also registered in the O. E. D., is *home-comer*, as in:

in the evening and at night the stations were again thronged with the home-comers. Times, 4/6, 1925, 623 b.

112. a) Adverbs have practically been turned into genuine adjectives when in a predicative function they denote a quality or state. Compare DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 109, 4<sup>o</sup>; thus:

*about*, as in: She fainted, but she was about again in time. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 12.

*above-board*, as in: All is not open and above-board in the transaction of their business. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXVI, 564 *b*,

*down*, as in: We are all rather down here this morning. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. II, 27.

*every-day*, as in: Nothing could have been more reassuring or more every-day than his demeanour. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 270.

Note. *At first hand* loses the preposition.

His evidence was too first hand. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. X, 242.

- b) Like many adjectives, they may be construed with a prepositional object; thus:

*beforehand*, as in: While George was calling up his courage and wits to open his subject, Mr. Merton, who had no such difficulty, was beforehand with him. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 47.

*down*, as in: Hard it is upon the part of the law that it should be so confoundedly down upon us unfortunate victims. DICK, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVII, 227 *a*.

- c) Of some words, such as *(un)like*, *near*; *opposite*, *alongside*, *astride*, *outside*, *inside*, the status is uncertain, i. e. they approach in function to prepositions. See Ch. III, 14; Ch. LX, 16—32.

113. Adverbs have been partially converted into nouns, i. e. they have assumed some grammatical features of nouns,

- a) when they perform the duty of subject or object, as in:

i. Now will be the time. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXXVI, 291.

There's nowhere to practise. GALSWORTHY, *Beyond*, II, Ch. VIII, 129. (= no place in which to practise.)

ii. The only reparation that remains with you is to leave here immediately and finally. DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. II, 104 *b*. (= this place.)

At present he is worth nearly double that sum, and all as the result of leaving well alone. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXVIII, 356.

If you wish a prisoner well, don't come between him and me. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. XI, 130.

Note. *Well*, however, preserves its adverbial character to a certain extent, as appears from its being sometimes modified by the adverb *very*, as in: *She wished him very well* (JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXII, 171). In the light of the following quotation it may also be considered as an adjective: *I wish them happy with all my heart* (ib., Ch. XXXII, 254).

- b) when they are governed by a preposition; thus in such combinations as *from here*, *there*, *hence*, *thence*; *in here*, *there*; *up here*, *there*; *over there*.

Since lately she had so often carelessly thrown off her mask. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXI, 269.

Where are you off to? GALSW., *To let*, II, Ch. III, (935).

- c) when they are preceded by an adnominal modifier, i. e.:
- 1) the definite article, as in:

This is all that I can relate of the how, where and when. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 444.

It may not be superfluous to inquire into the why and wherefore of his (sc. Dickens's) success. MARZIALS, *Dick.*, Ch. III, 44.

One may dream that the pent water knows at last the whence and whither of its life. MRS. WARD., *Rich. Meyn.*, III, Ch. XVIII, 363.

Those old worshippers of Dionysos had grown intoxicated with the night and the desire of communion with the beyond. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XVII, 144.

Then there would be the afterwards. *ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 159.

The world needs to be rebuilt, and there is a feeling that the elegant has to give way before the downright. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8109, 8<sup>o</sup>.

The "Strange Story Book" filly completes the wonderful series, which the "Blue Fairy Book" began "in the long, long, ago." *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3896, 1066.

- 2) the indefinite article, as in:

'Tis heaven itself, that points out an Hereafter. ADDISON, *Cato*, V, 1.

- 3) a demonstrative pronoun, as in:

It was not such an easy matter in those few years ago to hire a motor. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXVII, 238. (*few years ago* is a kind of unit: *those few years ago* = *the recent past*.)

- 4) an indefinite numeral, as in: *every now and then, every now and again, every once in a while*. O. E. D.

- 5) a genitive or possessive pronoun, as in:

The lawyer commissioned him to track the young man's whereabouts. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 158,

There would be no Bristol mark (sc. post-mark) as a clue to their whereabouts. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XX, 169.

Note. The use of *once* in such combinations as (*for*) *this* (or *that*) *once* (Ch. XXXVI, 10, l, f; Ch. XLII, 21, Obs. IV), *for once* (*ib.*), *the once* (Ch. XLII, 21, Obs. IV), *for once and all* (Ch. XL, 11, Obs. VI, a, Note), (*all*) *at once* (Ch. XL, 13, b; Ch. XLII, 22, h) can hardly be regarded as on a par with that of the adverbs in the preceding examples, the word being equivalent to *one time*, so that the noun *time*, implied in *once*, is the real element governed.

- d) when they are placed in the plural, in which case they occur mostly in pairs; thus *ins and outs* (in a variety of meanings, for which see Ch. XXX, 16), *ups and downs* (Ch. XXX, 21).

The "ins" hold power until the "outs" have detached a sufficient number of soldiers and others from their allegiance to give them a chance of downing their opponents. *Westm. Gaz.*, 25/4, 1925, 756 b.

Further instances are found in:

The Insides and Outsides, to use the appropriate vehicular phrases, have reason to rue the exchange. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. I, 18.

She (wanted) to hear .. all the wheres and hows of a circumstance which highly entertained her. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLI, 330.

## Conversion of Adverbs into Verbs.

- 114.** The conversion of adverbs into verbs is as yet of a tentative nature and confined to a few instances belonging to colloquial or vulgar language.

Rather frequent in the verbal function are *down* and *up*, as in:

i. He who first downs with the red cross may crave | His heart's dearest wish; let him ask it, and have! BYRON, *Siege of Cor.*, XXII.

Mr. Churchill . . is persuaded that he is going to 'down' Lenin and Trotsky at last. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8385, 5*a*.

Your boy would have told you to stick it, . . you're not going to be downed again, are you? *GALSW., Saint's Prog.*, II, V, 1 §. 138.

They may not be over-scrupulous, in their anxiety to "down" the Labour party, about their choice of weapons. *Manch. Guard.*, 41, 1924, 3*c*.

ii. That made me savage — so I upped and said, very well, if I couldn't see Donald here, I should see him somewhere else. *Mrs. WARD, Cousin Philip*, Ch. III, 37.

I want to suggest that they (sc. the schoolmasters) should up and take hold of the world. *WELLS, Speech (Manch. Guard., 41, 1924, 5*d*.)*

Of other adverbs the practice is very rare and distinctly vulgar.

I went into a publisher's as woeful as a hearse. | The publisher he ups and says, "Why will you chaps write verse?" | The girl behind the Remington she tittered fit to die. | I outs into the street again and to myself says I: [etc.]. *CROSLAND (R. THURSTON HOPKINS, Rudy. Kipl., Introd., 11)*.

Note. Mention may in this connexion be made of the curious *down-tools*, not unfrequent in the literature of strikes and lock-outs.

This threatens us with confusion and darkness before the miners can down-tools. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8491, 5*a*.

Whereas I see the humbles work until half-past eight, the honey-bees seem to "down-tools" an hour earlier. *ib.*, No. 6288, 6*c*.

Tuesday will be too late, for by now on that day 50 per cent. of the men in Derbyshire will have downed tools. He had never been "outed," as he expressed it, before. *VACHELL, Quinneys'*, 39.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> *KRUIS., Handbk.*<sup>1</sup>, § 1805.





## CHAPTER LX.

### PREPOSITIONS.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Word or Word-groups used as Prepositions . . . . .	1— 41
Primary Prepositions . . . . .	1— 4
Secondary Prepositions and Group-prepositions . . . . .	5— 41
Participles used as Prepositions . . . . .	5— 9
Group-prepositions . . . . .	10— 41
Group-prepositions whose most significant part is a Noun . . . . .	12— 14
Group-prepositions whose most significant part is an Adjective or an Adverb . . . . .	15— 33
Group-prepositions consisting of a Primary Adverb and a Preposition . . . . .	34— 37
Group-prepositions containing the Adverb <i>as</i> . . . . .	38— 40
Miscellaneous Group-prepositions . . . . .	41
Function of Prepositions and Group-prepositions . . . . .	42—125
General Observations . . . . .	42— 47
Prepositions of a mainly constructional value. . . . .	48— 86
The Preposition <i>of</i> . . . . .	49— 59
The Preposition <i>to</i> . . . . .	60— 64
The Preposition <i>for</i> . . . . .	65— 85
The Preposition <i>by</i> . . . . .	86
Modifiers of Preposition-adjuncts . . . . .	87— 89
Complements of Prepositions . . . . .	90—102
Semantic Values of Prepositions and Consequent Pheno- mena . . . . .	103—115
Different Stress of Prepositions . . . . .	104
Loss of Sound . . . . .	105
Vacillation between different Prepositions . . . . .	106
Suppression of Prepositions . . . . .	107—115
Prepositions compared with Adverbs . . . . .	116—125



## Words and Word-groups used as Prepositions.

### Primary Prepositions.

1. The particles which are used as prepositions may be divided into: a) such as exhibit no clear trace of having been formed from other words. Here belong *after, at, by, ere, for, from, in, of, off, out, on, over, through, till, to, under, up, with*.  
b) such as can clearly be traced to a simpler base, such as *abaft, aboard, about, across, adown, afore, against, along, amid(st), among(st), anent, around, athwart, before, behind, below, beneath, beside(s), between, betwixt, beyond, but, down, inside, midmost, outside, overthwart, since, throughout, toward(s), underneath, withal, within, without*.

2. a) *After* is originally a comparative of *af* or *æf*, Modern-English *of* or *off*. The termination *ter* was in Old English modified into *ther*, which survives in such words as *other, (n)either, whether, further* (Ch. XXX, 18).

b) *Off* and *of*, although now ranking as separate words, originally represent the stressed and unstressed forms of one and the same word.

c) *Over* is in origin an old comparative of *ove*, which survives in *above*, but has not, apparently, been found as a word by itself (Ch. XXX, 20).

d) 1) The prefix *a* in the above forms is mostly the representative of the Old-English preposition *on*; in *adown* (now mostly aphetized into *down*) it represents *of*.

2) The prefix *be* is the descendant of the Old-English *be*, the weak or stressless form of the preposition and adverb *bi* (*biȝ*), Modern-English *by*. Also the *abaft* in *b* and *but* has this value.

3) For the sake of the metre poets often elide these prefixes, which gives rise to such forms as *'bove, 'cross, 'gainst, 'long, 'mid(st), 'fore, 'neath, 'tween, 'twixt*.

The forms *round* and *around* occur with equal frequency, also in ordinary prose. In the compounds *cross-country, cross-channel*, and the less common *cross-river, cross-town*, and some others, the aphetized forms are the normal ones.

4) *Adown* seems to be getting more and more into favour with the younger generations of poets, not only because it is a convenient metrical variant of *down*, but also because it appears to have a peculiar melodious ring to the poetic ear; thus in:

High over hill and low adown the dell | Again we wandered. WORDSW., *White Doe*, 38.

And as adown the gangway steps we passed. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, Prol., 9a.

e) 1) *To* was formerly sometimes shortened to *t'* before infinitives beginning with a vowel or an *h*, the *t* without the apostrophe being sometimes combined with the following word (O. E. D., s. v. *T'*, 1); e. g.: *t'attempt*, *tescape*, *tave*, instead of *to attempt*, *to escape*, *to have* (105). The shortening was often made for metrical reasons. Compare the two following quotations:

T'arrest the fleeting images that fill | The mirror of the mind, and hold them fast | And force them sit . . | Are occupations of the poet's mind. COWPER, *Task*, II, 295.

Vain th'attempt | To advertise in verse a public pest. *ib.*, IV, 501.

2) In vulgar English *of* and *on* are often shortened to *o'*, and *in* to *i'* (105). The same practice is often met with in the older poets. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 57.

Not as I'm one o' those as 'ud like to die without leaving more money out at interest than other folks had reckoned. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 49.

She's to be buried o' Saturday. *ib.*

There wasn't much good i' being so rich. *ib.*

The use of *o'* for *of* has become Standard English in expressions indicating the time of day, such as *five o'clock*. Some writers affect the archaic use of this *of*; thus in:

The scene was Mr. Cruncher's private lodging in Hanging-sword-alley, Whitefriars: the time, half-past, seven of the clock, on a windy March morning, Anno Domini seventeen hundred and eighty. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. I, 69.

At about six of the clock. DU MAURIER, *Tribby*, I, 32.

3) In verse the spelling *thro'* is often preferred to *through* (105).

f) *Beside* and *besides*, in Present-English standard prose distinguished, were used indifferently in Early Modern English (Ch. LIX, 11, b). In the following quotation the use of *besides* is at variance with ordinary practice:

The great beast besides the sea lies dead. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acrisius*, 79a.

3. All the above words are used exclusively as prepositions, adverbs or conjunctions, although some of them admit of conversion into adjectives, nouns or verbs (Ch. LIX, 108 ff). They have, therefore, been called *primary prepositions*, to distinguish them from the particles and the numerous phrases made up of nouns, adjectives, or adverbs, which may do duty as prepositions. These may be designated by the name of *secondary prepositions* or *group-prepositions* respectively.

4. Also the Romance *except* and *save*, and the half-naturalized *maugre*, *per*, *sans*, *versus* and *vice*, may be included among the primary prepositions.

*maugre*: I love thee so, that, maugre all thy pride, | Nor wit nor reason can my passion hide. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, III, I, 163.

*sans*: Last scene of all, | That ends this strange eventful history, | Is second childhood and mere oblivion, | Sans teeth, sans eyes, sans taste, sans everything. *id.*, As you like it, II, I, 166.

*versus*: The old battle-ground of free will versus necessity. SPENCER, *Stud.*

Sociol., II, 38.<sup>1)</sup> (The usual term in the language of competitions, matches, and law-suits.)

*vice*: Sir John French will shortly take up the command of the First Army Corps, vice General Buller. II. Lond. News. (Thus quite common in similar announcements.)

## Secondary Prepositions and Group-prepositions.

### Participles used as Prepositions.

5. Present participles used as prepositions owe this function to the fact that they are placed before the noun or substantival equivalent, which is the ordinary place of prepositions.

It will be observed that the participles in all the following examples preserve more or less their verbal character. Their prepositional function, indeed, appears not so much from the faded nature of this verbal character, as from the fact that they are exchangeable for, or at least suggestive of, ordinary prepositions, or correspond to prepositions in some cognate language. Thus *concerning*, *referring to*, *regarding* and *relating to* may be regarded as approximate equivalents of *about*. *Barring* corresponds to the Dutch *behoudens*, *during* to the Dutch *gedurende* and the French *pendant*, *owing to* to the Dutch *wegens*. The verbal character of some of these participles may be evidenced  $\alpha$ ) by their being in their altered function attended by some verb-modifier, as in *leaving* (or *putting*) *on one side the loss* (= Dutch *daargelaten het verlies*, or *het verlies daargelaten*), *setting aside this question* (= apart from this question), *let(ting) alone the loss* (= Dutch *daargelaten het verlies*);  $\beta$ ) by their retaining the preposition with which the verb they are derived from is construed, as in *relating to this business*, *referring to this question*, *owing to the frost*, *according to orders*.

*Owing to* is distinguished from the other participle-prepositions with *to* in that the preposition bears separation from the participle and may be placed in front-position; thus in:

To Pitt it was owing that there had been an impeachment. MAC., War. Hist., (655 *b*).

This separation to a large extent restores to the participle its full verbal character.

6. As has been shown in Ch. XX (4, Obs. II; 7, Obs. I; 9, Obs. V; 13, Obs. I), prepositional participles may be constituents of undeveloped clauses of different descriptions; but it must be understood that one and the same participle may be found in more than one variety. Thus *facing* is used in two different functions in such sentences as *He lived in a house facing the sea* and *He seated himself facing me*. See also the quotations with *concerning* in the O. E. D. The majority are, however, found in

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

only one variety of clauses. We may distinguish such as with their complement correspond to:

a) adnominal clauses opening with a relative pronoun; thus:

*concerning*, as in: He will make no inquiries concerning you. MAR. EDGEWORTH, *Moral T.*, I, ix, 71.<sup>1)</sup>

*regarding*, as in: Miss Crawley was pleased at the notion of a gossip with her sister-in-law regarding the late Lady Crawley. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 170.

*relating to*, as in: He has brought together a mass of information relating to earthquakes and other movements of the earth's crust. *Times*.

*touching*, as in: I was about to propound a question touching the manner in which the operation of changing my heart was to be performed. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 34.

The following participles, although exchangeable for prepositions of practically the same meaning, will not, perhaps, be readily apprehended to fulfil a prepositional function:

*following* = *after* in: On the second day following the death of poor little Jeannie Smithers, Mr. Eustace Meeson was strolling about Birmingham. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. IV, 35. (Compare this function of *following* with that illustrated in 6c and 7b)

Rather to the disappointment of the assembly Mr. Lloyd George and Sir John Simon spoke only a few words following the speech of Mr. Asquith. *Manch. Guard.*, 21 22, 1923, III a.

*lining* = *along* in: He saw .. the white umbels of the hemlock lining the bushy hedgerows. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 13.

*succeeding* = *after* in: The party were left to enjoy the cozy couple of hours succeeding dinner. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 11.

These participles, however, differ in prepositional force from those mentioned in the first part of this section in that they do not admit, any more than ordinary relative clauses, of being placed in front-position with their complement, as may be seen in such a sentence as: Concerning all the other provinces of the Western Empire we have continuous information. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 5.

b) adverbial clauses, 1) in which the (pro)noun they govern is in the objective relation, as is the case with:

*barring*, as in: Barring accidents, we shall arrive to-morrow. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 282.

*bating*, as in: Bating a little wilfulness, I don't know a more honest or gentle creature. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 163.

*considering*, as in: Considering all things, a stouter man than he would have shrunk from the competition. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 355. (Compare: All this is not only possible, but probable enough, the dates considered. KINGRLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. II, 20 a).

*excepting*, as in: Excepting a sore-throat and head-ache, there is not much the matter with me. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. VII, 36.

*saving*, as in: He seemed, saving his eyesight, as whole and sound as ever. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXII, 245 b.

Thus also, with scarcely less justice:

i. *begging*, as in: "Indeed, begging your honour's pardon," replied the

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

other, "you were (sc. married)." THACK, Virg., Ch. XXXI, 472. (Compare this function of *begging* with that illustrated in 6, c.)

*omitting*, as in: There are certain proposals for future educational policy, which, omitting details, may be summarized as follows. Manch. Guard., VII, 8, 150 a.

*weighing*, as in: Here, as I point my sword, the sun arises, | Which is a great way growing on the south, | Weighing the youthful season of the year. SHAK, Jul. Cæs., II, 1, 108.

ii. *setting aside*, as in: Setting aside the 10 000 l. it did not appear that she was at all Harriet's superior. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XXII, 171.

*leaving* (or *putting*) *on one side*, as in: Leaving (or putting) on one side the fear of consequences. BAIN, H. E. Gr.

2) in which the (pro)noun they govern is in the subjective relation, as is the case with:

*during*, as in: During the whole of this time Scrooge had acted like a man out of his wits. DICK., Christm. Car.

*failing*, as in: The heirs wished to sell the farm, but, failing a purchaser, were willing to let it on a short lease. Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve, III, 303.

Whenever the "Grand Customs" are held, a number of victims are sacrificed to the manes of Dahomey. These unlucky wretches are usually prisoners of war, or failing them, criminals. Graph. (Observe that *failing* has so entirely assumed the force of a preposition that it governs the objective, instead of the nominative, of a personal pronoun.)

*wanting*, as in: Wanting the support of your friendly elm, my vine has put forth few or no fruits. LAMB, Poems, Ded. to Col.

Note. In the case of *notwithstanding* and *pending*, adapted from the French *nonobstant* and *pendant* respectively, the language is hesitating as to their position in the sentence, these words being placed now before, now after the (pro)noun they govern. Observe that the French *pendant* is equivalent to the English *during*, not to *pending*, which has a different meaning, i. e.: that of *remaining undecided*, *awaiting decision or settlement*, said originally of a law-suit; compare the Latin *pendente lite*. O. E. D. It is also worth noting that, while *during* is now only used as a preposition, *pending* is not unfrequent as a predicative participle, this being, however, the only form in which the word is now used as a verb in Standard English.

*notwithstanding*: i. I shall go notwithstanding the rain. WEBST., Dict.

ii. All these reservations notwithstanding there is a strong case for applying a new policy. Times.

*pending*: i. He was confined in the Mont Valérien pending the Esterhazy trial. ib.

ii. Miss Crawley was pleased at the notion of a gossip with her sister-in-law regarding the late Lady Crawley, the funeral arrangements pending. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 170.

iii. He had been revolving in his mind the marriage-question pending between Jos and Rebecca. ib., I, Ch. VI, 60.

As an appeal is pending, we will confine ourselves to one general point of great importance raised by the case. Manch. Guard., 24/10, 1922, 4 b.

c) clauses in the grammatical function of predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind (Ch. VI, 3); thus:

*confronting*, as in: (The building) .. stands confronting the Treasury Chambers. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. I, I.

*facing*, as in: The steward stands facing him at the other side of the table. SHAW, *Saint Joan*, I, (1).

*following*, as in: Following custom, the Lord Mayor and the Sheriffs in full state, accompanied by the Lady Mayoress, arrived soon after the banquet had begun. *Times*. (Compare this function of *following* with that illustrated in 6, *a* and 7, *b*.)

*referring to*: Referring to the condition of agriculture, he said that all the members of the Royal Commission on Agriculture were agreed on something. *Times*.

Note. Thus, perhaps, also *begging*, as in: Begging your honour's pardon, I'm sorry they taught him philosophy at all. GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, I. (Compare this function of *begging* with that illustrated in 6, *b*.)

7. The above are not the only functions in which present participles may do duty as prepositions. Like many ordinary prepositions, some are also found:

*a*) as a constituent of the nominal part of the predicate, governing a prepositional object in like manner as an adjective; thus:

*according to*, in: I doubt if this be according to the will of God. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XI, 84.

*owing to*, in: His deformity was owing to a fall he had had when he was scarcely more than a baby. *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 94.

*b*) as a constituent of various adverbial adjuncts, thus:

*according to*, in: He had come, according to appointment, to conduct the ladies to a flower-show. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

Each gave according to his means. *Manch. Guard.*, 4/1, 1924, 5*a*.

*dating from*, in: Day by day, dating from his wife's death, his mental powers decreased. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. III, 26.

*following*, in: He has died following an attack of double pneumonia. *Times*. (Compare this function of *following* with that illustrated in 6, *a* and 6, *c*.)

Following the death of Liam Lynch, the Commander-in-Chief, they (sc. the Irish irregulars) have sustained further disaster by the capture this week of Austin Stack and Dan Breen, two leaders of bold reputation. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 16, 301 *b*.

*c*) as a constituent of a prepositional object, thus:

*concerning (touching)* in: He has asked me concerning (touching) my health. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 282.

8. Most of the *past* participles that may do duty as prepositions owe their altered function to the fact that they are derived from verbs which were formerly conjugated with *to be*, the so-called mutative verbs (Ch. XLV, 16, *b*). See the O. E. D., s. v. *past*.

*a*) It is only *past* which has developed into a pure preposition, outwardly shown by its having departed in spelling from the past participle in its ordinary function. It is chiefly used in combinations denoting a relation of time or place, not only after *to be*, but also in other connexions. This requires no illustration.

Metaphorically *past* is met with in many combinations to denote that something is beyond the reach, range, compass or scope of whatever is expressed by the following (pro)noun. These combinations, most of them only common in literary language, are chiefly Shakespearean or Biblical echoes. The O. E. D. registers *past belief*, *compare*, *comprehension*,



(all) cure, doubt, endurance, finding out, grace, hope, mending, question, recovery, redress, remedy, saving, shame. In most of them *beyond* would now be substituted for *past* in ordinary language. One example must suffice:

Things past redress are now with me past care. SHAK., Rich. II, II, 3, 171.

b) The other past participles used in a prepositional function are found only after *to be* or in a connexion where *to be* may be supplied. This verb itself has also undergone some modification: i. e. the auxiliary has changed into the copula. The participles referred to are far more limited in application than *past*, being used only in expressions denoting a point of time or, as in the case of *turned*, a person's age. In the function of a preposition we find:

*gone*, chiefly in colloquial language, as in: Don't you know church begins at two, and it's gone half after one a'ready. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, II, Ch. XVIII, 159. It's only gone three. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. XI, 131.

*struck*, now only in archaic language, as in: It is now struck twelve? SHAK., Hamlet, I, I, 7. (Another example in Rom. & Jul., I, I, 164.)

*turned*, as in: i. She's to be married, turned Michaelmas. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marne, II, Ch. XVII, 132.

ii. Tom went on even to the fifth half-year — till he was turned sixteen — at King's Lorton. id., Mill, Ch. VII, 168.

Note. *To be turned thirty*, etc. varies with *to be turned of thirty*, etc., which latter expressions appears to be distinctly less usual.

A little pale, crooked, sickly, bright-eyed urchin, just turned of sixteen, had written some copies of verses, in which discerning critics could detect the promise of future eminence. MAC., Com. Dram., (576 b).

9. a) In the following quotations the prepositional function of the past participle is on a par with that of the present participle as described in 6, b:

*given*: It has been shown that the Atlantic can be safely crossed, given adequate preparation and unlimited resources. Westm. Gaz., No. 8132, 3a.

*let alone*: He would never be able to support himself, let alone a wife and children. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 131. (The O. E. D. regards this *let alone* as an imperative, and gives *letting alone* as a variant.)

b) Also *opposed to* in such a sentence as *He is opposed to the measure*, may be apprehended as a prepositional phrase, expressing as it does the opposite of the preposition *for*; thus in:

He is not opposed to free trade. Times.

Note. *Come*, when used with a future date as the subject, as in the following example, is not a participle, but a present subjunctive. The construction, now archaic or dialectal, is the same as that in the French *dix-huit ans vienne la Saint-Martin — viennent les Pâques*. See the O. E. D., s. v. *come*, 35; and FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 660, Anmerkung.

He is dead a year, sir, come next 9th of July. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 6.

### Group-prepositions.

10. There are, besides, a host of word-groups which serve a similar purpose as prepositions (42), most of them expressing a relation for which no ordinary preposition is available.

Thus in the following quotation the use of *contrary to*, as the opposite of the preceding *after*, is evidently due to the fact that the speaker has no bare preposition at his disposal to express the notion he has in his mind:

In this mood he tumbled into bed, and fell asleep, after his wont, in two minutes' time; but (contrary to his wont) woke up again not long after in that curiously wide-awake condition which sometimes surprises even good sleepers. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. 1, 3.

We may distinguish the following phrases:

a) Such as are made up of a noun preceded by a primary preposition, mostly *at*, *by*, *in* or *on*, and followed by a primary preposition, mostly *of* or *to*, both prepositions being greatly weakened in meaning, or conveying no meaning at all (103). Of this description are:

<i>a t</i> the cost of	<i>f o r</i> the ends of
— the desire —	— lack —
— (the) finish —	— the purpose —
— the hand(s) —	— the sake —
— the instance —	— want —
— the peril —	<i>f r o m</i> lack of
— point to	— want —
— the point of	<i>i n</i> accordance with ( <i>or to</i> )
— the rate —	— addition to
— the request —	— advance of
— (the) risk —	— agreement with
— the service —	— aid of
— the side —	— behalf —
— the urgency —	— care —
<i>b e y o n d</i> (the) reach of	— case —
<i>b y</i> the advice of	— the cause —
— the aid —	— chase —
— comparison with	— (the) company of ( <i>or with</i> )
— the desire of	— command of
— dint —	— comparison with ( <i>to or of</i> )
— direction —	— compliance with ( <i>or to</i> )
— (the) favour —	— conformity with ( <i>or to</i> )
— force —	— conjunction with
— the help —	— consequence of
— invitation —	— consideration —
— lack —	— contempt —
— means —	— contrast with ( <i>or to</i> )
— (the) order(s) —	— contravention of
— reason —	— (the) course —
— right —	— default —
— (the) side —	— (the) defence —
— virtue —	— defiance —
— vote —	( <i>i n</i> ) despite of
— way —	<i>i n</i> disregard of
— word —	— distinction from ( <i>or to</i> )
<i>f o r</i> the behoof of	— (the) event of
— the benefit —	— (the) face —

in favour of	in (the) time of
— (the) front —	— token —
— fulfilment —	— view —
— justice to	— virtue —
— lack of	— (the) way —
— lieu —	<i>on</i> account —
— the matter —	— the advice —
— the middle —	— balance —
— (the) midst —	— behalf —
— the name —	— board (of)
— obedience to	— (a) charge of
— opposition to ( <i>or</i> with)	— the face —
— order to	— the instance —
— pain of	— the invitation —
— peril —	— (the) occasion —
— pity at	— pain —
— (the) place of	— the part —
— point —	— the point —
— praise —	— (the) pretence —
— preference to	— the recommendation —
— (the) presence of	— the score —
— proportion to	— the strength —
— pursuance of	— the subject —
— (the) quality —	— (the) top —
— quest —	<i>out of</i> regard to
— (the) rear —	<i>through</i> lack of
— recognition —	— means —
— reference to	<i>to</i> the order —
— regard to ( <i>or</i> of)	— the point —
— relation to	— the tune —
— reprisal for	<i>under</i> the command of
— respect of ( <i>or</i> to)	— cover —
— return for	— pain —
— right of	— (the) pretence —
— (the) room —	<i>with</i> the exception —
— search —	— an eye to
— service to	— the purpose of
— spite of ( <i>or</i> at)	— reference to
— stead —	— regard —
— the stead —	— respect —
— succession to	— a show of
— supplement —	— a ( <i>or</i> the) view of ( <i>or</i> to)
— the teeth of	<i>within</i> reach of.

To these we may add *because of*, in which *be* stands for a weakened *by*.  
*b)* such as consist of an adjective or an adverb with a primary preposition, mostly *of* or *to*, which in some phrases is apt to be suppressed. Here belong:

abreast of ( <i>or</i> with)	agreeable (-ly) to ( <i>or</i> with)
adverse to	ahead of

alongside of	inferior to
antecedent to	irrespective of
anterior —	inside (of)
apart from	like (to)
aside of	near (to)
astride (of)	opposite (to)
atop of	outside (of)
attendant on	posterior to
close to ( <i>or</i> on)	preparatory —
concurrently with	previous —
conditionally on	prior —
conformable (-ly) to ( <i>or</i> with)	pursuant —
contrary to	relative(ly) —
counter —	short of
due —	subsequent to
exclusive of	superior —
inclusive —	unlike (to)
independent(ly) —	upwards of

A separate group is formed by such phrases as contain the name of one of the points of the compass, e. g.: (*to the*) *east of*, (*to the*) *eastward(s) of*, etc.

Barking is 7 miles to the east of London. O. E. D., s v. *east*, B, 1.

The village lay southward of the house. WILK. COL., *Woman in White*, I, Ch. XI, 77.

Sometimes we find *from*, or, as a nautical term, *off*, instead of *of*, as the connecting preposition; thus in:

i. When yond same star that's westward from the pole | Had made his course to illume that part of heaven | Where now it burns [etc.]. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 1, 36.

ii. The boat had drifted many miles, and was now almost due west off Peeltown. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXII, 161.

c) Such as consist of a primary adverb and a primary preposition, belonging, strictly, to different elements of the sentence, but so closely connected as to form a kind of unit. Of this description are:

away from	round about
down to	throughout
forth of	up at
into	upon
on to	up till
out of	up to
over against	

d) such as consist of the conjunction *as* and 1) a primary preposition thus:

as against	as for
— at	— to
— between	

2) a verbal form, either a finite form or a past participle + primary preposition; thus:

as concerns	as compared with
— regards (regarded)	— distinguished (or distinct) from
— respects	— opposed to
e) the following:	
over and above	side by side with
to and fro	hand in hand with
up and down	thanks to
face to face with	no matter.

Group-prepositions whose most significant part  
is a noun.

11. Numerous as the phrases mentioned under 10 a) are, they admit of almost unlimited extension. The fact is that practically any word-group thus constituted may, in a manner, be regarded to serve the function of a preposition. It is, however, only when the noun in it is distinctly subservient to, i. e. less significant than, the complement of the phrase, that the prepositional force of the phrase is realized. This subservience is indubitable when the noun in it drops the definite article, which it otherwise would take on account of its specialized application (Ch. XXXI, 65, c). It is less marked when this noun is preceded by the definite or indefinite article, and especially when it is, besides, modified by an adjective, as in *for the exclusive benefit of the children* (= exclusively for the benefit of the children).

Some of the nouns here referred to occur hardly, or not all, in other connexions than these prepositional phrases; thus *behalf*, *behoof*, *sake*.

These phrases, as well as all the others mentioned in 10, are distinguished from primary prepositions in that, unlike the latter, they do not admit of being shifted from the ordinary place before the (pro)noun governed. The following is the only instance of such transposition that has come to hand:

What do you suppose you are living at the rate of? Dick., *Great Exp.*, Ch, XXXVI, 341.

12. a) Owing to the noun preserving some of its individual significance, the construction with the preposition *of* is often replaced by that with a genitive, if the complement is the name of a person, the construction with a possessive pronoun mostly taking the place of that with *of* + personal pronoun. Compare *on account of the cold* with *on the King's account* (or *on account of the King*) and *on his account*. See, however, Ch. XXXIII, 8, c). In the case of the constructions with a genitive or possessive pronoun *own* is sometimes added to the latter.

For the same reason the noun in the phrase sometimes admits of modification by a demonstrative or an indefinite pronoun (or numeral), the altered construction taking the place of that with *of*. This results,

for example, in *on that account*, *not on any account* being substituted for respectively *on account of that*, *not on account of anything*.

b) In some of these phrases the noun sufficiently maintains its individual significance to admit of being placed in the plural: thus *case*, *end*, *hand*, *order*, *sake*.

c) In many it may be modified by an adjective (89), as is shown by:  
The Board of Trade had no power to appoint an arbitrator, except at the mutual request of the parties. *Times*.

d) The prepositional force of the phrases is clearest when they have, functionally, the value of predicative adnominal adjuncts; thus, for example, it is clearer in *In agreement with your wishes, I will set to work at once* than in *I am in agreement with your wishes*.

e) The phrases commented on in this and the preceding sections are called by SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 386—7) *group-prepositions*, as distinguished from *preposition-groups*, by which he understands combinations of a preposition with its complement. In these pages, as the reader will have observed, the name is extended to all word-groups that serve the same function as (primary) prepositions.

13. Considerations of space make it imperative to leave illustration of many of the above phrases to the dictionary. It is also from lack of space that the variations mentioned in 12, a) have to be passed over in silence. A considerable number of the phrases, however, require some grammatical or semantic comment also in this place. This applies especially to:

*in advance of*, used with reference to place, time and precedence, as in:  
i. Cecil and Frithiof (were) walking in advance of the others. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. XX, 346.

Labour, .. blind like Samson, sees nothing in advance of its nose. *The New Age*, No. 1178, 611 b.

ii. The train reached Carlisle two minutes in advance of the scheduled time. *Times*.

The division took place ten minutes in advance of the expected hour. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 282 a.

iii. The towns are in advance of their times. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 25.

Their administration and military methods are far in advance of those of the Spaniards. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/5, 1925, 32 a.

*by the advice of*, which varies with *on the advice of*, the latter being, perhaps, the more common phrase: i. Maria Edgeworth, the celebrated novelist, was induced, by the advice of her father, and that of a more competent judge, Richard Brinley Sheridan, to attempt the drama. *Chambers's Cycl. of Eng. Lit.*, II, 237 b.

ii. On the advice of his Presbyterian friend, he joined the Episcopalians. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. I, 11.

*in aid of*, distinctly distinguished from *by the aide of*: Princess Henry of Battenberg opened a two days' sale of work in aid of home and foreign missions. *Times*.

ii. The Government must use its every power to see that a minority, by the aid of disorganisation and starvation, should not dictate policy to the country. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8144, 1 b.

*in behalf of* (= *in the interest of*, *for the benefit of*, with the additional

notion of interposition), to be distinguished from *on behalf of* (*on the part of, in the name of*).

i. His intervention in behalf of that young lady had not proved altogether so favourable as he could have wished. DICK., *Domb.*

ii. Jacob Maas had been elected to reply on behalf of the States-General. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 57*b*.

NOTE. *α*) The distinction is not always observed, i. e. in Early Modern English, and occasionally in later English, *in behalf of* is sometimes used in the sense of *on behalf of*, while the latter phrase is in Present English often used in the sense of the former, "to the loss of an important distinction." O. E. D.

i. Philip of France, in right and true behall | Of thy deceased brother Geoffrey's son, | Arthur Plantagenet, lays most lawful claim | To this fair island. SHAK., *King John*, I, I, 7. (See also SHAK., *Henry IV*, A, I, 3, 48.) I have cursed them (sc. chambermaids) in behalf of outraged bachelordom. MARK TWAIN.

ii. Perhaps I am doing a bold thing to bespeak your sympathy on behalf of a man who was so far from remarkable. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. V, 39.

I venture to break a lance on his behalf. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5137, 2*c*.

*β*) Both phrases are also used in the sense of *on account of*, the former, apparently, but rarely; thus in: i. He fought a battle with the coachman in her behalf. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 52.

ii. He had been vexed that his father should suffer on behalf of such a man. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 31.

*for the behoof of*, used only in literary prose: She delivered it (sc. this impressive observation) for the behoof of Mr. Chick. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. II, 12.

NOTE. For the numerous variants, all of them rare in Present English, *for behoof of*, *to (the) behoof of*, *in (on) behoof of*, see the Dictionary.

*on board of*, which often loses the preposition *of*: i. To compel men to dance and be merry by authority has scarcely succeeded even on board of slave-ships. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. II, 23.

ii. One (sc. Cape hen) that flew on board us was seven feet across the wings. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. V, 76.

*in care of*, which drops the preposition *in* in the address of a letter or package (O. E. D., s.v. *care*, 4). These letters will be addressed to Mr. John Smith, and will be sent in care of the secretary. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, I, 6.

*in company with*, which varies with *in (the) company of*, the latter phrase being, naturally, available only when the reference is to persons:

i. Pen returned to Fair Oaks in company with his friend, the Chevalier. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 287.

(Here) the venison was left in company with a couple of baskets of fruit. *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 56.

ii. The little thing came to Fair Oaks from Bristol, . . . in company of a soldier's wife. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

When Miss Costigan came home from rehearsal, which she did in the company of the faithful Mr. Bows [etc.], *ib.*, I, Ch. XII, 123.

*in comparison with*, which has several variants, viz. that of: *by comparison with*, which is fairly common, *in comparison to*, which seems to occur only occasionally, and *in comparison of*, which has fallen into disuse: i. In comparison with him, he is a mere chicken. *Times*.

ii. The British merchant, by comparison with his German rival, employs very few commercial travellers abroad. *ib.*

iii. The trousseau was not of the slightest consequence, in comparison to my brother's health. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XV, 134.

iv. These passions are of a very stubborn and untractable nature, in comparison of the sentiments and understanding. HUME, Es. XIII, Of Eloquence, 98.

Note. With the above compare the bare *to*, used in the same meaning, after *nothing*, as in: Beyond the place .. arose round, waving uplands; nothing to the fine outlines of the Welsh mountains. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. XII, 93.

*in conformity with*, varying with *in conformity to*, which appears to be less usual: i. Colonel Picquard is to be punished in conformity with the opinion of the Court of Inquiry, which assembled before the Zola Trial. Times.

ii. I may then depend upon this child .. being trained in conformity to her position and prospects? CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 36.

*in consequence of*, in archaic language, sometimes replaced by *by consequence of*: i. I quitted that service in consequence of a quarrel with my governor. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXII, 229.

ii. His father died soon after, by consequence of whose demise his wife became Lady Clavering. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXII, 222.

*in consideration of*, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *in view of, upon taking into account*, as in: In consideration of his youth (his former good conduct), he was slightly punished. BAIN, H. E. Gr.

In consideration of her social position as an earl's daughter, two doctors certified that hers was a death by misadventure. MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. XXXVII, 210.

2) *in return for*, as in: Many years before he had received five subsidies in consideration of his assent to the Petition of Right. MAC., Hampd., (205 b). in consideration of £ 60, advanced by me five years since, she has paid back to me the sum of £ 250. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXI, 345

3) *receiving payment in the shape of*, as in: I am the medical officer in consideration of a certain monthly payment. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXVII, 223 a. The medical man attends to all members in consideration of a small stipend. ESCOTT, England, Ch. II, 16.

Note: A curious variant of the phrase in the last shade of meaning is found in: (The) elderly female .. received the culprits at and for the consideration of sevenpence-halfpenny per small head per week. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 22.

*in contrast with*, varying with *in contrast to*: i. It (sc. the rouge) seemed to have concentrated and deepened, in contrast with the pallor upon which it lay. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. XI, 227.

ii. In contrast to France and Germany, the Budget of Italy shows a substantial surplus. Westm. Gaz., No. 5249. 2 b.

*in course of*, in different shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *in the ordinary or regular way of*, as in: I replied in course of post. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXVII, 469.

In course of post there came an answer. TROL., Belton Estate, Ch. XXIII, 267.

2) *in process of*, before a noun of action (Ch. LXII, 27, c, 2), as in: A corridor was in course of erection. HARDY, Jude, VI, Ch. XI, 510.

3) *during the progress of*, as in: He was, however, to reappear most signally in course of the events already preparing. MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. II, 77 a.

Note. In the third application *in the course of* appears as a frequent variant; thus in: In the course of time they grew tired. SAM. BUTLER, Erewhon, Ch. VI, 52.

In the course of time the pronunciation of a language undergoes changes



which appear to arise and develop in certain sounds. WYLD, *Growth*, Ch. VI, II, 74.

*at the desire of*, varying with *by the desire of*: i. I had no great difficulty in getting leave from my parents to go and see Ned, when they knew that Harry Webb's father had allowed him to go too, but on the understanding that it was at the desire of Ned's parents. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.  
ii. By his desire work was not suspended during his visit. *Times*. No. 598 b.

*in despite of*, mostly replaced by *despite of* or *despite*, occasionally by *in despite*: i. Though I did not mean to get out, somehow, in despite of myself, I did get out. STOF, *Handl.*, I, 76 (Thus mostly in this combination.)

ii. "Bergen will give us no aid," he wrote, "despite of all the letters we send him." MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 200 a.

iii. Despite its fogs and soot, there is no city like it (sc. London) in the world. *Good Words*. (STOF., *Leesb.*, I, 77).

He had, despite himself, . . . fed himself with hope that Mary's future might be made more secure. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XXV, 340.

iv. Flushed and joyful in despite her fear. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, II, 92. 1)

Note. *In one's own despite* is equivalent to *(in) despite (of) oneself*: We find ourselves, in our own despite, falling into arrears. *Notes & Quer.*

*by dint of*, before a gerund, noun of action, or noun suggesting an action, almost the same as *by*, but with some implication of vigour or persistence: By dint of doing blacksmith's work, says the French proverb, one becomes a blacksmith. MARZIALS, *Life of Ch. Dick.*, Ch. II, 33.

By dint of a clever tongue she was gaining the ear of the authorities. Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, III, 239.

Note. In the following quotation the phrase seems to have the meaning of *by means of*, an unfrequent application: At last the poor man, by dint of a chair, was mounted safely. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. III, 25 a.

*in distinction from*, varying with *in distinction to*, the latter condemned by purists: i. Draught = drawn directly from the barrel, or other receptacle, in distinction from bottled. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *draught*, adj.

ii. The warm light filled every corner of the kitchen, in strong distinction to the faint illumination of the one candle in the parlour. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XIII, 95.

*in the event of*, which sometimes drops the article: i. In the event of his not arriving. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*

ii. Papa writes to Arthur to know what settlement he proposes to make in event of a marriage. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 128.

*in face of*, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *facing*, as in: He seated himself in face of Dora. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVII, 349.

2) *owing to*, *in consequence of*, as in: In face of this suspicion it was proposed to establish an Imperial Customs Union. *Times*.

She (sc. Servia) will then abide by Europe's decision, in face of which she will relinquish all claims. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 2 a.

3) *when confronted by*, as in: Even reliable troops are helpless in face of a universal spirit of passive resistance. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 211, 6 b.

Note a) *In the face of* stands for slightly different shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *in the presence of*, as in: I'd as soon he had

1) O. E. D.

buried the pistols as sent me back with them in the face of the school. MRS. WOOD, ORV. COL., Ch. III, 44.

A similar meaning may be traced in the phrase in: Murders were committed in the face of day with perfect impunity. MAC., War. Hist., (239 b). (= openly.)

2) *notwithstanding 'the presence of, in defiance of,* as in: The fortification of Philippeville and Charlemont in the face of the enemy — his passage of the Meuse in Alva's sight — .. will always remain monuments of his practical military skill. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 899 b. (Observe that *in Alva's sight* is intended to express the same notion as *in the face of the enemy*).

β) *In face of* and *in the face of* seem to be used indifferently in the sense of *considering*, as in: i. In face of these facts, what becomes of the common-places about the sober French working man and the intemperate Englishman? Times.

ii. We said how strange it was that, in the face of things like these, there should be a popular notion that the Germans hadn't any sense of humour. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. VIII, 96.

γ) A third variant is *on the face of*, also used in the sense of *considering, in view of*, as in: Now, on the face of these circumstances, it is utterly unaccountable to me, why you, the widow of a city knight, .. should not close with the passion of a man of such character and expectations as Mr. Surface. SHER., School, I, I, (364).

In *on the face of it*, i.e. *even on a superficial view*, the phrase has a somewhat different meaning; thus in: It does not seem to mean much on the face of it. II. Lond. News.

This, of course, was impossible on the face of it, for even Boers in their mobility require time to cover several hundred miles. Times.

*by force of* (= *by dint of*, O. E. D., s.v. *force*, IV, 16), varying with *by the force of*, the latter with more significance of *force*: i. (He) paused by force of custom. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, Ch. I, 3.

ii. Helen Pendennis, by the force of sheer love, divined a great number of her son's secrets. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 40.

*in front of*, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately that of:

1) *before*, as in: His friend was seated in front of the fire. BLACK, The New Prince Fort., Ch. XXI.

2) *in the presence of*, as in: Evelyn was never noisy and annoying, like so many children, and always did her credit in front of visitors. AMBER REEVES, The Reward of Virtue, Ch. II, 10.

3) *confronted by*, as in: His majesty will speedily be in front of a new difficulty. Spectator, 1892. 1)

4) *in precedence of*, as in: You cannot go on day by day telling these men that .. the call to them is unnecessary, that others ought to go in front of them, without persuading large numbers of them that they ought not to go at all. Westm. Gaz., No. 7105, 2a.

Note. *In the front of* mostly has another meaning; thus in: *the windows in the front of the house*; but it is occasionally met with in the sense of:

1) *before*, as in: In the front of which (sc. box) sat Mr. Foker and his friend Mr. Spavin. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 72.

In the front of the house a long, solemn, straight avenue through a double row of lime-trees, leads away to lodge-gates. TROLL., Framl. Pars., Ch. III, 20.

2) *confronted by, notwithstanding*, as in: Those holy .. men, in the front of severest obloquy, are now labouring in remotest lands. CHALMERS, Astron. Disc., V, 124. 1)

*at the hand(s) of*, the plural now far more frequent than the singular.  
i. O Rome! I make thee promise; | If the redress will follow, thou receivest | Thy full petition at the hand of Brutus. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 58.

ii. She chose to accept these money-benefits at the hands of her father's enemy. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXII, 240.

Note a) It deserves attention that *at* in this phrase has the now obsolete meaning of *from*, which is practically that of the whole expression (O. E. D., s. v. *at*, 11; *hand*, 25, j); thus in: The Prince laid upon his counsellor the wrongs which, according to his version, he had received from the gentlemen of the Esmond family. THACK., *Esmond*, Ch. XI, 429.

*At* has also preserved the meaning of *from* in the expression *at first (second, third, etc.) hand*.

β) The use of the phrase to denote a relation of agency, usually expressed by *by*, as in the following quotation, seems to be rare: The suppression of the foreign circulation of the Nation at the hands of the present Government is a distinction of which we may be proud. *The Nation*, XXI, No. 2, 37 b. (Compare: And now, sir, I, his grandson, am thus used at such unworthy hands. SCOTT, *Waverley*, Ch. XV, 55 b.)

γ) Also the use of *from* instead of *at*, as in the following example, seems to be at variance with ordinary practice: (This) has prevailed with me to accept a favour from the hands of Harley L'Estrange. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. VI, 273. (Compare: Every new delay, and every new disappointment, is only a new injury from John Jarndyce's hand. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIX, 339.)

*by (the) help of*, the article being, most probably, retained by most writers: i. by help of favourable circumstances. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*,

ii. In addition to these resemblances, which lie on the surface, there are many others which can only be perceived by the help of the general laws of correspondence between German and English sounds. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. I, 2.

*at (or on) the instance of*, the two phrases being, apparently, equally frequent: i. Their civil appointments .. were given at the instance of politically powerful friends. FROUDE, *O.C.*, Ch. I, 14.

ii. Catholics had not so much as votes at the elections for Grattan's Irish Parliament, and obtained them only on England's insistence. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 209.

*by invitation of*, varying with *on the invitation of*, in the same meaning:

i. By invitation of the London County Council, eighty members of the Parisian municipality have spent a week of crowded festivity in the British capital. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 191, 459 b.

ii. It so happened that in 1918 I was in the United States of America, as Attorney-General, on the invitation of the American Government. *Manchester Guardian*, IX, 23, 464 a.

*for lack of*. Of the variants with *by*, *from* and *through*, mentioned by the O. E. D., only that with *from* seems to have general currency in Present English.

i. For lack of other occupation, I fell to breathing on the frost-flowers. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 30.

ii. From lack of prudence, Turkey neglected to fortify herself in Europe. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 57, 144.

Note. With the above compare *in lack of*, as in: Maximilian had proclaimed that all landed estates should, in lack of heirs male, escheat to his own exchequer. MOTLEY, *Rise, Hist. Intr.*, 29 b.

*in lieu of*, common only in literary language, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *instead of* (the ordinary meaning), as in: In

lien of whip, he carried in his hand a great gold-headed cane. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXXVII, 143 a.

In lieu of a dinner, (she) made herself some tea. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

2) *in the stead (place or room) of*, as in: In 1836 the Bodleyan Library was offered a grant of £ 500 a year, in lieu of the privilege. Times, 1898, 105 a.

3) *as a reward (payment or penalty) for*, as in: If the servants go to-morrow, they must have a month's wages, in lieu of a month's warning. WILK. COLL., Woman in White, 322.

He gave them each a month's wages and a month's board wages, in lieu of the customary warning of dismissal. Mrs. WOOD, East Lynne, I, 165.

4) *in exchange (or return) for*, as in: He (sc. the prince, our master), sends you . . . | This tun of treasure; and, in lieu of this, | Desires you let the dukedoms that you claim | Hear no more of you. SHAK., Henry V, I, 2, 255. (Thus also in Temp., I, 2, 123.)

5) *in consideration of*, as in: For that same scrubbed boy, the doctor's clerk, | In lieu of this, last night did lie with me. SHAK., Merch., V, 262.

*in the middle of*, used with reference to space, time, or a process, never with the secondary notion of *surrounded* (or *encompassed*) *by*, as is implied in *in the midst of*: i. She was standing in the middle of the room. DOR GER., Etern. Wom., Ch. XV. (Compare: In the centre of the room sat an old lady. *ib.*)

ii. Men in the middle of life, austere and grave in deportment. LONGF., Miles Standish, IV. (Compare:  $\alpha$ ) His son, now past the middle of life. MAC., Com. Dram., (575 b);  $\beta$ ) From mid-May to mid-September. Times;  $\gamma$ ) One day in mid-winter. Mrs. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., A, II, 21.)

*in the midst of*, used 1) with reference to place in the meaning of *in the middle of*, but mostly with the secondary notion of a person (or thing) being surrounded (or encompassed) by something pleasing or desirable, or, more frequently, by something undesirable or dangerous; thus in:  $\alpha$ ) She would be placed in the midst of those who loved her. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LV, 454.

In the midst of friends, home, and kind parents, she was alone. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 184.

She came back once more with a delicately-made glass, into which she put the flowers and set them down in the midst of our table. MORRIS, News from Nowhere, Ch. III, 15. (*In the middle of* would seem to be more appropriate in this example.)

$\beta$ ) I perceived my youngest daughter in the midst of a rapid stream. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. III.

The train stopped at a solitary halting-place, in the midst of a desolate expanse of rolling ground. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. VIII, 113.

2) with reference to an activity in the meaning of *in the middle of*, with the secondary notion of a person being engrossed by, or deeply involved in, the work engaged in; thus in: He rose abruptly in the midst of a song. JOHNS., Ras., Ch. II, 10.

In the midst of his joviality heer Antonie did not lose sight of discretion. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 133).

We were soon in the midst of the most interesting discoveries. SWEET, Old Chap.

*on (the) occasion of*, probably mostly with the article: i. It was in 1805 that Miss Jenkyns wrote the longest series of letters — on occasion of her absence on a visit to some friends. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. V, 97.

On occasion of the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes, in 1688, a surgeon of

the name of Martineau, .. crossed the Channel, and settled in England. HAR. MARTINEAU, *Autob. Pref.*

ii. On the occasion of her marriage with Mr. —. O. E. D.

*in opposition to*, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *in conflict with*, as in: I did not want to hurt Emily's feelings by acting in opposition to her opinion. Mrs. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 307.

2) *notwithstanding*, as in: She has never seen him since that day when, in opposition to all her efforts, he made his way into this room. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 401.

3) *as opposed to*, as in: Cash = specie, also, less strictly, banknotes which can at once be converted into specie, and are, therefore, taken as 'cash', in opposition to bills, or other securities. O. E. D., s.v. *cash*, 2, b.

Note. *In opposition with* seems to be unusual; thus in: Her whole feelings have been in opposition with mine. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

*by order of*, used when the reference is to constituted authority; thus in: By order of the Legate of the Holy Father, we affix to this public monument of justice and of wrath the bull of excommunication against a heretic and rebel. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, V, Ch. V, 216.

A few of the police were also wounded, and I think it was they who fired, by order of the French. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 22, 434 b.

Note. a) *By the orders of* and *at the orders of* appear as occasional variants; thus in: i. They were executed by the orders of the Ameer. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 57.

ii. They had to evacuate not only this, but all other buildings in the City of Charlemagne, at the orders of the Belgian High Commissioner. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/12, 1923, 511 b.

β) When the reference is to other powers than those of constituted authority, *at the orders of* seems to be the ordinary phrase; thus in: At Truncheon's orders she flung the whole shrubbery into the dust-house. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI.

γ) With the above compare also *to the order of*, as in: What is to be the largest motor-liner in the world is to be built by Harland and Wolff at Queen's Island, to the order of the Union Castle Mail Steamship Company. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 22, 443 c.

*in order to*, mostly used before an infinitive, which requires no illustration; occasionally before a gerund, or a noun of action; thus in: i. The young Scot was obliged .. to request permission .. to sit by the kitchen fire, in order to his attire being dried before morning. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XVII, 231.

ii. (They waited) only for a little increase to their mutual savings, in order to their marriage. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

*on* (or *upon*) *pain of*, now always followed by the name of the penalty or punishment in case of not fulfilling the command or condition stated, e.g.: *on pain of death, imprisonment, a fine*, etc.; formerly also used in connexion with the name of: α) that which one is liable to pay or forfeit, as in *on pain of a hundred pounds, on pain of life*; β) the crime with which one is liable to be charged, as in: *on pain of felony*.

That is necessary on pain of a fine. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Land.*, I, Ch. VII, 126.

The French forbid it on pain of imprisonment. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 22, 434 d.

The Austrians would be forced to bring up large and immediate reinforcements on pain of risking the safety of Trieste. *New Statesman*, No. 138, 170 a.

Note. *Under pain of* appears as an occasional variant; thus in: A proclamation ordering the tribes to join him under pain of death. *Times*, 1) *on* (or *upon*) *the part of*, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *as regards*, as in: The English writers of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries were able to assume on the part of their readers at least a moderate acquaintance with literary French. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. III, 91.

2) *proceeding from* (the person or party mentioned as agent), *performed by*, as in: Germany did not deserve such treatment on the part of Great Britain. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6642, 5 a.

3) *on behalf of*, as in: Do you come on the part of the young man to propose a compromise? LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 318.

*in the place of*, the phrase without the article implying rejection, that with the article substitution, of one person or thing for another: i. The faithless tutor entertained him with sentimental conversations, in place of lectures on algebra and Greek. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 37.

I would not have taken the Lord Mayor's own daughter, in place of Mary, with a plum to her fortune. *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 87.

This stood them in place of fuel. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 21.

ii. The Queen has appointed Mr. Morton to be Recorder of Rochester in the place of Mr. Justice Channel. *Times*, 1897, 754 b. (Practically equivalent to *in succession to*.)

Note. *In place of* is sometimes used in the meaning of *in the place of*, with the loss of a valuable distinction; thus in: Sir John Jellicoe becomes first Sea Lord, in place of Sir Henry Jackson. *The Nation*, XX, 9, 309 a.

*on* (or *upon*) *the point of* before a gerund or a noun of action, as in *on the point of starting*, *on the point of departure*.

Note. a) In the same meaning, but less frequent: 1) *at the point of*, as in: I was just at the point of proposing to her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

But at the point of noon the huge Earl Doorm. . . Came riding with a hundred lances up. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 536.

He had been at the point of death for nearly a fortnight. *Times*, 1898, 423 a.

2) *at point to*, followed by an infinitive, now only in archaic use, as in: The foemen seemed at point to gain the rampart. MORRIS, *Earthly Part.*, *ProL*, 27 a.

In the following example *at the point of death* varies with *on the point of death*: "He shouldn't use such language when he is at the point of death." — "Nor at any other point. But was Foul-mouthed Frank on the point of death?" SHAW, *Saint Joan*, II, 17.

β) *At the point of* has an entirely dissimilar meaning from that in the above quotations in: These three men were forced at the point of a revolver to join in the movement. *Manch. Guard.*, 29 2, 1924, 172 b.

γ) Other remarkable phrases with *point* are: 1) *in point of*, as in: I did not think Miss Creakle equal to little Emily in point of beauty. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 46 a.

In point of fact he should have married Miss Williams. SAR. GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 25.

2) *to the point of*, as in: Thousands were flogged to the point of death. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 25, 521 b.

*in the presence of*, the phrase without the article being, apparently, equally frequent as that with: i. Even Miss Fotheringay's dull heart . . . felt.

perhaps, a flutter, when she came in presence of the famous London impresario. THACK., *Pend.* I, Ch. XIV, 139.

In presence of this host of dangers, the country lay helpless, without army or fleet, or the means of manning one. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 370.

ii. His regrets for M. de Witt's comfortable service had vanished, when he found himself in the presence of the Prince. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. XI, 125.

What quarrel, what harshness, what unbelief in each other can subsist in the presence of a great calamity? G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. V, 382.

*on* (or *under*) *pretence of*, sometimes with the article: i. In a little time he returned, on pretence of poking the fire. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. LI, 370.

ii. Under pretence of going to read a Greek play with Smirke, the young reprobate set off so as to be in time for the Competitor down coach. THACK., *Pend.* I, Ch. VI, 47.

iii. She goes about with Mme Carmine, ... under the pretence that she is her niece. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, B, 49.

*in* (or *with*) *reference to*, the two phrases being, apparently equally frequent: i. In reference to the refusal of the Government to re-open the Indian mints, that was the only policy that was open to them. *Times*, 1897, 714 *a*.

ii. All existing lives must, with reference to their environment, be the best possible lives. H. DRUMMOND, *Ascent Man*, 266.<sup>1)</sup>

*in* (or *with*) *regard to*, apparently used indifferently, in the same meaning as the preceding: i. In regard to the Eastern question, Lord Salisbury said that the Powers had failed to prevent Greece from going to war. *Times*, 1897, 726 *b*.

ii. With regard to this subject, we lie under the deep and abiding suspicion of foreign nations. *ib.*, 1897, 714 *b*.

Note. For other functions of *in regard to*, now fallen into disuse, and for the functions of *in regard of*, now practically obsolete, see the O. E. D.

*in respect of* (or *to*), varying with *with respect to*, apparently used indifferently: i. Lord Salisbury proceeded to say that condemnation had been freely levelled against the Government in respect of their policy in South-Eastern Europe. *Times*, 1897, 742 *a*.

ii. Up to the present we are dependent upon the account given by Mr. J. H. Thomas of the negotiations between the Government and the railway men in respect to joint control. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8239, 3 *a*.

iii. With respect to the vacancy at Deptford, the electors are under a special responsibility. *Times*, 1897, 714 *d*.

Note. For obsolete or obsolescent functions of *in respect of* see the O. E. D.

*in right of*, in two shades of meaning, i. e. approximately in that of: 1) *by* (or *in*) *virtue of*, as in: To us, sir, every woman is a lady in right of her sex. LYTON, *Caxt.*, III, Ch. IV, 68.

Alone of all the novels that live, *The Vicar of Wakefield* lives in right of its appeal to what is divine within us. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. XIII, 153.

2) *on account of*, as in: I, in right of my great personal strength, took the head of the framework — my wife and Madame Rubeile took the foot. WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, III, 518.

Compare: No, my Brutus: | You have some sick offence within your mind, | Which, by the right and virtue of my place, | I ought to know of. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, I, 269.

*in (the) room of*, mostly with the article: i. The Queen has been pleased

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

to approve of the appointment of the Duke of Bedford to be Lord Lieutenant of the county of Middlesex, in the room of the late Earl of Strafford. *Times*.  
 ii. The old pupil of our departed friend .. is appointed the new judge, in room of Mr. Justice Jenkin. *Mrs. GASK., A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XII, (553).

*for the sake of*, used *a*) mostly to denote a relation of purpose, with various connotations, as is shown by the following examples: 1) for the sake of the children.

ii. For the sake of her money .. I was prostituting my honour. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 360.

iii. If, for the sake of argument, one were to suppose that tariffs helped trade, how soon is one to suppose that their beneficial effect would be felt? *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 23, 446 *d*.

iv. I came here just for the sake of telling you. *WELLS, Britling*, II, Ch. I, § 2, 188.

*β*) Sometimes to denote a relation of cause, as in: And many hated Uther for the sake of Gorlois. *TEN., Com. of Arth.*, 219.

This is how they treat you for my sake. *READE, Cloister*, Ch. IX, 49.

Note. The phrase sometimes drops the article, a practice which the O.E.D. brands as obsolete, but which is not unfrequent in the latest English.

They were asked to put bodily ease aside for sake of battle. *HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure*, Ch. III, 60.

For sake of her .. he would have sacrificed every mortal thing he valued most. *JOHN OXENHAM, Great-Heart Gillian*, Ch. IX, 65.

I am sorely tempted to publish some of these letters, but for sake of many kindnesses received, and many friendships made, I refrain from retaliation. *RITA, America seen through Eng. eyes*, Pref.

*at (or by) the side of*, used indifferently when a purely local relation is in question; thus in: i. At the side of Mr. George is Col. England, who fought Heywood and Radcliffe in the Liberal interest. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 23, 449.

ii. He cuts little bits out of the Bible and gums them with exquisite neatness by the side of other little bits. *BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. XVI, 68.

Note. When the relation of place is mixed with one of comparison, *by the side of* apparently brooks no replacing by *at the side of*; thus in: He was a youth by the side of Noah. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 24.

*at (the) sight of*, the phrase with the article and that without, to all appearance, used indifferently: i. The dog was angry at the sight of me. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. III, 22 *a*.

The crowd dispersing at the sight of soldiers. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3896, 167.

ii. He blenched at sight of her. *Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve*, III, 275.

At sight of her a girl came out from the niche. *JOHN OXENHAM, Great-Heart Gillian*, Ch. II, 15.

*in spite of*, which not unfrequently drops the preposition *in*, not only in verse for metrical reasons, but also in prose: i. Cæsar crossed in spite of this. *JEROME, Three Men*, Ch. VIII, 109.

The lilacs were already in full leaf, in spite of the east wind. *Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve*, III, III, 257.

ii. \* Spite of Rosey's delicate state of health, Mrs. Mackenzie did not hesitate to break the news to her. *THACK., Newc.*, II, Ch. XXXV, 379.

Spite of his Italian education, Enrico remained German. *EDNA LYALL, Kn. Er.*, Ch. I, 1.

\*\* And spite of fears | Pride ruled my will. *CARD. NEWMAN, Hymn II*.

Until at last there came to him this thought, | That never from this misery should he win, | But, spite of all his struggles, die therein. *MORRIS, Earthly Par., Proud King*, 91 *b*.



Note. The following Shakespearean application of *in spite of* deserves attention: Old Montague is come, | And flourishes his blade in spite of me. *Rom. & Jul.*, I, I, 82. (= to spite me; thus also in *Mids.*, III, 2, 114.)

*In spite at* has the same meaning in: In spite at Kemt, a late lodger, Parsons, contrived this method of raising a ghost, who purported to be a lady poisoned by Kempt. *Harmsw. Encycl.*, s.v. *Cock Lane Ghost*.

*instead of*, to be distinguished from *in the stead of*, which is rather uncommon, *in the place of*, or *in the room of* being mostly used instead:

i. The fellow, instead of answering me, pointed at my legs. *KINGSLEY, Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 59 *b*.

ii. Their success, however, was a cordial to every bosom, and seemed even to serve in the stead of food and refreshment. *SCOTT, Old Mort.*, Ch. XVIII, 193.

She nursed the babe, and became a mother to it, in the stead of her who had now no need of the comfort of a child. *Mrs. CRAIK, Dom. Stor.*, B, 69.

Note. *Instead of* is used in the meaning of *in the stead of* in: He was carried up to Olympus on the back of an eagle, to become cup-bearer to the gods, instead of Hebe. *COBH. BREW., Read. Handb.*, s.v. *Ganymede*.

*on (the) top of*, the article being mostly retained in a local, and dropped in a temporal meaning of the phrase: i. \* She shrank into her seat, lest she should fall on the top of him. *TEMPLE THURSTON, Traffic*, Ch. VII, 48.

\*\* On the top of that the mob at Tokio began to riot, and to burn Christian churches. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 337 *b*.

ii. \* We won't part on top of a row. *PINERO, Mid-Channel*, II, (135).

On top of the Lusitania tragedy, . . a political crisis of the first magnitude has been sprung without warning upon the nation. *The New Statesmen*, No. 111, 145 *a*.

\*\* The straddling bowman lost his left foothold and went over, head downwards, on the slope with John on top of him. *CHESTERTON, The Free Man* (*T. P.'s Christm. Numb. for 1911*, 4 *c*).

*in view of*, mostly used before the name of an existing fact, rarely before the name of a potential fact: i. I should have wished to go to France, but must take what I can get, in view of my age. *GALSW., Saint's Prog.*, IV, I, 354

ii. In view of a commercial Imperial Federation. *Times*.

Note. *In the view of* is used in an entirely different meaning, as appears from: Becky always made a point . . of smiling in the view of all persons. *THACK., Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XVI, 165.

*with a view to*, always before the name of a potential fact, indicated by a noun of action, a gerund or an infinitive: i. It was written with a view to publication. *Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë*

ii. Lord Milner was appointed High Commissioner by Mr. Chamberlain in 1897, with a view to driving matters to extremes. *Times*.

iii. I composed it (sc. Manfred) with a horror of the stage, with a view to render the thought of it impracticable. *BYRON, Let. to Dr. Murray*.

Note. There are several variants, viz.: 1) *with a view of*, mostly construed with a gerund, sometimes with a noun of action; thus in: i. A large area of the forest has been judiciously thinned, with a view of making the beauties of the domain more accessible. *Times*.

ii. Write poetry for its own sake not in a spirit of emulation, and not with a view of celebrity. *Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë*, 116.

2) *with the view of*, apparently regularly construed with a gerund; thus in: He left the university without taking a degree, with the view of becoming an artist. *TROL., Thack.*, Ch. I, 28.

He got up early, with the view of seeing what might be done in the way of emendation. *id.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 62.

3) *with the view to*, unusual, apparently regularly construed with an infinitive; thus in: They offered to be present with the view to maintain order among the unruly Belgian girls. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 198.

*by (or in) virtue of*, used indifferently: i. By virtue of my ownership of the Derby-winner, I was 'famous' at last. *MARIE CORELLI*, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. IV, 49.

ii. People who object to free criticism of the Christian Scriptures, forget that they are what they are in virtue of very free criticism. *HUXL.*, *Lect. & Es.*, 88*a*.

*by way of*, used in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *in the form of, as a substitute for*, as in: He carries a stick by way of weapon. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

The housekeeper gave him the Heidelberg Catechism by way of dagger. *WASH. IRV.*, *Dolf Heyl*. (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 120).

2) *for the purpose of*, mostly construed with a gerund; thus in: He followed up the attack with a blow on Mr. Pickwick's nose, and another on Mr. Pickwick's chest, and a third in Mr. Snodgrass's eye, and a fourth, by way of variety, in Mr. Tupman's waistcoat. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 6.

He took opium habitually, by way of stunning conscience. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 216.

We do not say these things by way of boasting. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 371*a*.

3) *in a fair way to*, also in this case construed with a gerund, as in: All friends of literature and decency must regret the raking up of a terrible scandal, which was by way of being forgotten. *Athen.*, No. 4461, 470*a*.

4) *pretending to*, also in this case construed with a gerund; thus in: He is by way of making an effort. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

Sir Reginald looked up from the evening paper, which he was by way of reading. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE*, *Diam. cut Paste*, I, Ch. VI, 74.

5) *something like*, in a predicative function, mostly followed by *being* + nominal, the phrase serving to qualify what is indicated by the nominal; thus in: During my father's lifetime I was by way of being a Tory. *Good Words for 1887*, 378.

Hodgins is by way of being a bird-fancier. *TEMPLE THURSTON*, *The Open Window*, 43.

Knowing that I was by way of being 'literary', even as we crossed the threshold of the dining-room, she said [etc.]. *Acad.*, 1901, 16/3, 232.

Note. *a*) The depreciative force of the phrase is sometimes emphasized by *something, a bit of*, or an expression of like import; thus in: Phipps was by way of being something of a Musician. *Good Words for 1887*, 349.<sup>1)</sup> She is by way of being a bit of a flirt. *FLOR. WARDEN*, *The Dazzling Miss Davidson*.<sup>2)</sup>

*β*) *Being* is sometimes omitted, as having no semantic significance; thus in: Is he by way of a gentleman? *TROL.*, *Doct. Thorne*, Ch. XIX, 263.

*in (the) way of*, rarely without the article, in various shades of meaning, i.e. approximately in that of: 1) *in the ordinary course of*, the ordinary sense, as in: Tom felt it necessary .. to explain that the basket .. had merely been presented to him in the way of friendship. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVI, 284.

He did it in the way of business. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

<sup>1)</sup> *Berichten & Mededeelingen*, XVIII, 300.

<sup>2)</sup> *De Drie Talen*, XXXV, 6, 88.

2) *in the matter of*, 'in re', as in: I find myself excessively ignorant. I can't tell what to order in the way of meat. CH. BRONTË (Mrs. GASK, Life of Ch. Brontë, II, Ch. 1).

And then I was done up in the way of breath. Miss BRAD., Capt. Thomas.

3) *for the purpose of*, before a gerund, as in: The duties of a reporter are manifold. He has to go everywhere and do all sorts of apparent impossibilities in the way of picking up and chronicling news in the shortest period of time. GOOD WORDS.

He applied to the employers to do all they could in the way of finding work for the men. TIMES.

Note. α) The following is the only example that has come to hand of the phrase without the article: I am enjoined by oath . . . never in my life | To woo a maid in way of marriage. SHAK., Merch., II, 9, 14.

β) With the above and the preceding phrase compare also *on the way to*, as in: The wine, already palatable, is on the way to becoming admirable. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. XX, 321.

#### 14. The following phrases bear some resemblance to the group-prepositions mentioned in the preceding section:

*next-door to*, as in: He lives next-door to a baker's. (Less common is *next-room to* as in: I sleep next-room to her. Mrs. GASK., CONS. Phil., IV, 87.)

*in common with*, as in: The idea that he shared a great secret in common with Coppy kept Wee Willie Winkie unusually virtuous for three weeks. RUDY. KIPPL., Wee Willie Winkie.

*à propos of*, still felt as an alien, but not uncommon, the preposition *of* sometimes replaced by *to*, or dropped altogether; thus in: i. Here is Tom's daring essay in defence of suicide, and of republicanism in general, *à propos* of the death of Roland and the Girondins. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 190. ii. There was a long sermon *à propos* to nothing which could possibly interest the congregation. LYTTON, My Novel, I, II, Ch. X, 119.

iii. "I hope," said Lord Shelbourne to Goldsmith, *à propos* a paragraph in that day's paper written by the poet, "that [etc.]." R. ASHE KING, Ol. Golds., Ch. XXV, 286.

Group-prepositions whose most significant part  
is an Adjective or an Adverb.

#### 15. In the majority of the prepositional phrases mentioned under 10, b), the significant part is mostly used in a function which partakes of that of predicative adnominal adjuncts of the first kind (Ch. VI). It is, therefore, only natural that in not a few cases adverbial forms vary with adjectival forms. Thus *agreeably to* varies with *agreeable to*, *conformably to* (or *with*) with *conformable to* (or *with*), *exclusively of* with *exclusive of*, *independently of* with *independent of*, *previously to* with *previous to*, *relatively to* with *relative to*.

In most of these phrases, however, so far as their significant part is an original adjective, the adnominal function maintains itself distinctly enough for the adjective-form to be used to the exclusion of the adverb-form. Here belong *attendant (up)on*,

*consequent (up)on, contingent (up)on, contrary to, counter to, irrespective of, opposite (to), preliminary to, preparatory to, prior to, pursuant to, short of, subject to, subsequent to.* In a few only the adverb-form is used; such are *concurrently with, conditionally on, inversely with.*

Note *a*) When they are used as nominal part of the predicate, they are indistinguishable from adjectives and, if their meaning admits, may be modified by intensives and placed in the degrees of comparison; thus especially *like (to)* and *near (to)*, but also some others, as may be seen in:

It will be more consonant with its dignity and peace of mind, if the British nation realizes once and for all that the period of the duration of the war cannot be calculated by weeks or months. *Times*.

*β*) The prepositional force of these phrases being granted, there appears to be no reasonable ground to deny this force to such expressions as *better than* (= superior to), *worse than* (= inferior to), *more than* (= upwards of), *less than* (= short of), *otherwise than* (= except).

;) As in the case of the group-prepositions enumerated in 10, *a*), the significant part sometimes re-assumes its individuality, an adverbial adjunct separating it from the connecting preposition; thus in:

I give it (sc. my promise) as the rendering of a debt, conditionally, of course, on my being a widow. *HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. LIII, 442.*

This is also the case when the significant part is modified by an intensive, as in:

It is probably far wide of the truth to say that there is as much drinking in Ontario now as before prohibition. *Manch. Guard., 3/10. 1924, III b.*

16. Among the numerous phrases *like (to)* and *near (to)* require more than mere illustration. In the following exposition a good deal of what has been observed about them in Ch. III, 14 and Ch. XVII, 102 ff, has to be briefly touched on again.

It is hardly necessary to state that their application as attributive adnominal adjuncts need not be discussed in this place.

17. *a*) *Like* is best apprehended as an adjective when, together with its complement, it is used in the function of the nominal part of the predicate, or has this function in the expansion of an incomplete relative clause. It differs from ordinary adjectives in usually dispensing with a primary preposition to connect it with its complement. See, however 26.

i. Uncle Jack was like a book of reference to my father. *LYTTON, Caxt., II, Ch. II, 37.*

ii. Who would care for a great blind ox like him? *KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXXIII, 247 b.*

For remarkable applications of the predicative *like* see Ch. III, 14. For the combinations *anything like* and *nothing like* see Ch. XLIII, 38, *a*), and *b*).

*b*) In the above examples *like* stands before a noun or pronoun. Instances of *like* being followed by a prepositional word-group

are unfrequent: in Standard English the practice would hardly be tolerated.

I suppose it is like in other countries. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XII, 106.

It's not like at the front. RUDY. KIPL., *Sea War-fare*, Ch. II, 58.

18. Obs. I. As used in the same connexions mostly differs from *like* in implying equality instead of similarity; thus in:

He was thanking his stars that he was not as Ribot. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 207.

At the Copenhagen University his lodgings were as those of the other students. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 498, 643 *a*.

Turkey is not as other powers. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 2 *a*.

Sometimes, however, it is difficult to see any difference; thus in the following example the two words are indistinguishable:

Her life is not like your life, and her ways are not as your ways. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XIII, 181.

II. In some connexions *as* suggests seeming instead of actual equality, a notion, that is, which is explicitly expressed by *as if* or *as though*. A time of sickness is as a time of siege. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. XVI, 357.

The whole people stood together as one man. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 191, 451 *b*.

But *like* may bear the same interpretation. In the two following quotations *like* and *as* are even used in absolutely identical connexions.

i. Edward arose and .. bore her away, lying like one dead, .. into his study. MRS. GASK, *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. II, (412).

ii. Ellinor's supper was sent for, and the servant who brought it in saw the child lying as one dead in her father's arms. *ib.*

III. Sometimes the use of *as*, as distinct from *like*, appears to be due to the fact that a comparison as to the degree of some quality, not expressed, is in the speaker's mind (Ch. XVII, 102, *d*, Note); thus, perhaps, in:

His reasons are as two grains of wheat in two bushels of chaff. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, I, 115. (approximately = as insignificant as.)

She did not see his face, | Which then was as an angel's. TEN., *Guin.*, 592. (approximately = as beautiful as.)

This function of *as* is unmistakable in:

"You'll be secret, Thomas?" — "As a coach-horse." SHER., *Riv.*, I, I. (i.e. as secret as a coach-horse.)

IV. *As* in the meaning of *in the capacity of* is distinctly different from *like*, as is shown by the following examples:

She lives with me, and belongs to me, and is as my daughter. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XIII, 178.

I promised her mother that I would be to her as a father. *ib.*, 181.

19. *Like* may be apprehended as an adverb when, together with its complement, it modifies the predicate, or the sentence as a whole.

i. He was generally seen trooping like a colt at his mother's heels. WASH. IRV., *Rip van Winkle*.

Don't talk like that. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XII, 213.

ii. He was waiting for us .. at the public house, and asked me how I found myself, like an old acquaintance. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15 *a*.

We are not demonstrative, like those confounded foreigners. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 347.

For certain remarkable applications of sentence-modifying *like* see Ch. XVII, 35, Obs. III.

20. Obs. I. Adverbial word-groups with *like* when modifying a verb are sometimes interchangeable with simple adverbs of quality. Thus *He acted like an honest man* = *He acted honestly*, and *Don't talk like that* = *Don't talk so*. Compare Ch. LIX, 42.

II. Frequently the notion of similarity as to quality, normally indicated by *like*, is mixed with that of similarity as to degree, usually indicated by *as*. But even when the quality in question is not actually expressed and only dimly thought of, *like* is the ordinary word. Thus *His coat fitted him like a glove* may be understood as a blending of *His coat fitted him in like manner as a glove* and *His coat fitted him as tightly as a glove*. Further instances of *like* bearing a similar interpretation are found in:

She was singing away like a robin. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 38. (Suggestive of: as merrily as a robin.)

(He has been) drinking like a fish. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VIII, III. (Suggestive of: as eagerly as a fish.)

III. Before adverbial adjuncts, especially such as contain a preposition, *like* is extremely rare, and is only met with in slipshod English, as being the standard word in this position.

You breakfast down-stairs at half past nine, like this morning. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXVI, 237.

She had not resisted like upon that other occasion. *ib.*, Ch. XXXV, 324.

Compare with this the standard practice, observed in: She talked about giving him alms as to a menial. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. I, 160.

21. a) *Like* is a conjunction when it introduces a full clause. This application of *like* is censured as unliterary, when the clause is continuative, and vulgar or, at best, colloquial, when it is restrictive (Ch. XVII, 105, c; 107, a).

i. They don't make any charge for programmes here, like they do at some theatres. *Punch*.

ii. I never see a young woman in any station conduct herself like you have conducted yourself. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LIX, 493.

Also in this function *as* is the standard conjunction; thus in:

I don't feel at all as Tom does on that subject. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. II, 347.

Men fear death, as children fear to go in the dark. BACON, *Es.*, II, (4).

22. a) *Like* is also best apprehended as a conjunction, when it introduces an incomplete clause in which the predicate is to be supplied from the head-sentence. In this function it appears to be met with also in literary diction or, at least, in good colloquial language (Ch. XVII, 105, b).

By this time the rings had begun to fall from the debtor's irresolute hands, like leaves from a wintry tree. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 32 a.

He is for ever with Margaret . . . and loves her like a cow her calf. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. VII, 36.

b) In this function, however, *as* is mostly preferred to *like*; thus in:

And all around them both | Sweet thoughts would swarm as bees about their queen. TEN., PRINC., I, 38.

He fascinates them as the snake the bird. READE, CHOISTER, Ch. XI, 58.

c) In place of such an incomplete clause with *like* or *as*, ordinary prose mostly has a full clause with *as*, in which the predicate of the head-sentence is either repeated in full or in part, or is represented by *to do*. This alternative construction is in especial favour as a welcome expedient to avoid the disagreeable clash of two (pro)nouns in the different functions of subject and object, and, naturally, often serves the purpose of securing a good metre or rhythm.

The childhood shows the man, | As morning shows the day. MILTON, PAR. REG., IV, 220.

(He was) equipped in a pair of his father's cast-off galligaskins, which he had much ado to hold up with one hand, as a fine lady does her train in bad weather. WASH. IRV., SKETCH-BK., V, 35.

23. a) As has been shown in ample detail in Ch. VI, the conjunction *as* is often used by way of connecting a predicative adnominal adjunct with its head-word; thus in:

She (sc. George Eliot) began it (sc. Romola), she said, as a young woman, and finished it as an old woman. LESLIE STEPHEN, G. ELIOT, Ch. IX, 125.

The world counted her as a heretic. EDNA LYALL, WE TWO, I, 77.

b) It has also been pointed out that this *as*, presumably owing to its being mostly devoid of all meaning, is in some connexions dispensed with, as in:

When sorrows come, they come not single spies, | But in battalions. SHAK., HAMLET, IV, 5, 77.

They hailed him king. MORRIS, EARTHLY PAR., PROL., 18a.

c) When followed by a noun, this *as* is not, in the majority of cases, difficult to distinguish from *like* in the same position, the former mainly serving the purpose of indirect predication, the latter of drawing a parallel between persons or things as to some state or quality. The difference appears clearly from a comparison of two such sentences as *As a law-student he lived in chambers* (Dutch *Als student in de rechten woonde hij op kamers*) and *Like a law-student he lived in chambers* (Dutch *Als een student in de rechten woonde hij op kamers*).

In some cases, however, there is some uncertainty how the sentence is to be understood, with the result that *as* and *like* are met with in identical connexions, without standing for distinctly different notions. Compare the following groups of sentences:

i. Indeed we loved you as a son. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. IX, 106.

ii. She loved Miss Pecksniff like a sister. DICK., CHUZZ, Ch. XXXII, 258a.

i. At Rome we must do as the Romans. FROUDE, OC., Ch. IX, 133.

ii. You must even do like other widows. GAY, BEG. OP., II, I.

i. She was a married woman, and she must behave as one. MAR. CRAWF., KATH. LAUD., II, Ch. XI, 199.

ii. He behaved like a scoundrel. EARLE, Phil.<sup>5</sup>, § 220,

In the following sentence *as* and *like* even appear alternately :

Because you approached her as a goddess, she used you like a dog. FARQUHAR, Rec. Of., I, 1, (258).

In some cases *as* is even used where *like* would appear to be more appropriate; thus in :

He (sc. Roosevelt) is not like March, who comes in as a lion and goes out as a lamb. Rev. of Rev., No. 230, 140 b.

24. When followed by a substantive or substantive equivalent, *like* may be apprehended as a preposition (46, d). It has, indeed, no less right to be considered as such than *beyond* (as in *His impudence is beyond bearing*), or *above* (as in *Health is above wealth*), or *against* (as in *He is against the measure*), and many other such words, which are universally included among the prepositions, and resemble *like* in having a distinctly semantic significance (103 ff).

The prepositional function of *like* in the above connexion distinctly appears also from its sharing a peculiar feature of the English primary preposition: its capability, that is, of being placed after, instead of before, its complement, when the latter is an interrogative pronoun or wordgroup or a relative pronoun. As a rule *like* stands at the end of the sentence, more rarely in immediate succession to the pronoun.

i. Tell me whom (what, which of your relatives) he is a like. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 100.

She mentioned a reigning beauty in London whom . . . Laura was rather like. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

ii. What like was he? SCOTT, Mon., Ch. IV, 73.

What like is Miss Havisham? DICK., Great Exp., Ch. IX, 81.

What like was he? id., Barn. Rudge, Ch. VI, 26 b.

Note. In passing it may be observed that also *as*, when connecting a predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind with its head-word (Ch. VI), is sometimes removed to the end of the sentence. This practice, however, appears as yet to be rare. It seems desirable that all the examples that have come to hand should here be presented.

At once a child, an elder girl, and the little woman I had been so happy as, I was not only oppressed by cares and difficulties, adapted to each station, but by the great perplexity of endlessly trying to reconcile them. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXV, 300.

What sort of a friend, do you think, I could introduce you as? TEMPLE THURST., City, I, Ch. XIX, 111.

The things that she would turn people into — king's sons, rightful princesses, such sort of people — people who after a time, one would think, must have quite forgotten what they started as. JEROME, Paul Kelv., Ch. IV, 34 b.

What'll I come as? WELLS, Britl., I, Ch. II, § 9, 54.

What did you start life as? Daily Mail, No. 4457, 5.

25. a) On the strength of the fact that *like* in the two first functions, denotes a quality which admits of gradation, it may be modified by an adverb of degree, which may be *more* or *most*.

You speak so like my dear old master that I almost think I hear him. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LI, 395 a.



He looked at her with something very like adoration. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 94.

He seemed most like an old, unprofitable serving-man. STEV., Kidn., Ch. III, (200).

b) For the same reason it admits of terminational comparison. Instances are, however, comparatively rare, and are hardly met with outside the higher literary style (Ch. III, 14, Note).

The wish, that of the living whole | No life may fail beyond the grave, | Derives it not from what we have | The likest God within the soul? TEN., In Mem., LV, 1.

26. a) *Like* is devoid of the nature of either a conjunction or a preposition when it is followed by *to* or *unto*. In this case it is a pure adjective or adverb, and it is the whole phrase which then has the value of a preposition, the connexion with the (pro)noun governed being effected by (*un*)*to*.

The use of *to* or *unto* after *like*, and its negative *unlike*, is exceptional in Present English, but seems to have been fairly common in earlier times. Poets naturally utilize the possibility of using the forms with or without (*un*)*to* as a welcome expedient to satisfy the requirements of metre or rhythm. For illustration see Ch. III, 14, Obs. I. Late instances are found in:

i. No three men could be, in head and heart, more unlike to one another. MAC., Hist., VI, Ch. XVIII, 167.

I am like to one who has been brought through a fearsome sickness. HALL CAINE, Deemster, Ch. XLII, 303.

For as he spoke, my fellow gazed at me | With something like to fear. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Prol., 8a.

ii. That is the first fact, and the second is like unto it. ASQUITH, Speech (Manch. Guard., 21/12, 1923, III b).

Roaring Camp changes its character in one short year, and .. becomes like unto a masculine Dorcas meeting. *ib.*, 31/10, 1924, 376 b.

b) *To* is indispensable when *like* is divided from its complement, as in:

'Tis no more like Melinda's character, than black is to white. FARQUHAR, Rec. Of., IV, 3, (324).

I have heard cousin Holman murmur .. and tell herself how like she was growing to Johnnie. Mrs. GASK., Cous. Phil., IV, 78.

27. a) *Near* resembles *like* in that it may be apprehended as an adjective when it is used predicatively, and as an adverb when together with its complement it modifies the predicate or the sentence in its entirety. But it differs from *like* in that it never introduces a clause by way of conjunction.

b) It resembles *like* in that it partakes of the nature of a preposition when followed by a substantive or substantive equivalent (46, d). But it differs from *like* in that it does not admit of transposition. In this respect, therefore, it is less prepositional in nature than *like*, but in another it is more of a real preposition in that it is a close synonym of *by*. From the latter it differs,

however, in admitting of the degrees of comparison, which is as much out of the question with *by*, as with all the genuine primary prepositions.

Note α) In passing it may be observed that *by* expresses greater proximity than *near* and, consequently, admits of less gradation than the latter. Indeed the only intensives found before the latter are *close*, *fast*, *hard* and *near*, which hardly stand for different notions (Ch. LIX, 105, a, ζ).

β) A comparison of two such expressions as *near by the sea* and *near to the sea* reveals the fact that *near* may serve different purposes. Although these two expressions do not materially differ in meaning, the grammatical function of *near* in the first is not the same as that in the second: a dissimilarity which is due to the difference in semantic significance of the prepositions *by* and *to*. Whereas *by* distinctly expresses proximity, *to* is practically devoid of all meaning. In fact it serves no further purpose than that of linking *near* to the following (pro)noun, in like manner as in such combinations as *it is incomprehensible to me*, *it is the same to me*, etc., where it is used to indicate a relation which in Old English is denoted by dative inflection. It follows that while in the first of the above expressions *near* performs the duty of emphasizing proximity, this notion is expressed by *near* itself in the second. *Near by* cannot, therefore, be called a group-preposition in the sense in which this term is used in these pages. Also in *near + adverbial by*, *near at hand*, *near together*, and similar collocations, *near* is an intensive adverb. With *near by* compare the Dutch *na bij*, in which also *na* modifies *bij* adverbially.

γ) *Near (up)on*, which mostly takes the place of *near (to)* when the reference is to the beginning of a period (31), may, on the other hand, be regarded as a group-preposition on the strength of *(up)on* in this combination being almost as meaningless as *to* is in *near to the sea*. This becomes apparent from the fact that also *(up)on* may be dispensed with after *near*, as is shown by a comparison of the following quotations:

i. He came right down to the river-side, and lingered a little, looking over the low wall to note the moonlit river, near upon high water. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. I, 3.

ii. However, there was still the Thames sparkling under the sun, and near high water, as last night I had seen it under the moon. *ib.*, Ch. II, 4.

δ) With *near by* and *near (up)on* compare also *close by* and *close (up)on*; *hard by* and *hard (up)on* in 33; *just on*, in all of which *by* and *(up)on* are more or less significant.

*Just on* 3 000 000 have been wounded. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 334, 271 b.

c) It resembles *like* in that it admits of being modified by adverbs of degree, and also of terminational comparison. But it differs from *like* in that the latter is quite usual.

d) It resembles *like* in that it may be followed by *to* or, in literary or liturgical language, *unto*. But it differs from it in that the use of *to* is quite frequent also in ordinary language.

It need hardly be repeated that the optional use of *to* or *unto* affords a convenient expedient to satisfy the requirements of metre or rhythm.

For the rest any reliable pronouncement as to the relative frequency of *near* and *near to*, and the degrees of comparison with and without *to*, can be arrived at only by extensive statistics, which the present writer has, he regrets to say, found no sufficient leisure to collect. He is, therefore, obliged to confine himself to tentatively stating what, according to the scanty material at his disposal, seems to be the ordinary practice.

As little is proved by an accumulation of illustrative examples, only a few of those which have been collected are given in the following exposition.

28. a) There appears to be a distinct preference for *near*, as compared with *near to*, when proximity as to place is to be expressed. This preference is even more striking when proximity as to a certain standard, station, or state in general is to be indicated.

i. \* Let her come near me. The ship was near the land. WEBST., Dict.

\*\* A translation near the original. BAIN, H. E. Gr.

I was near a joke. DICK., Crick., I, 9.

ii. Father and son .. with their heads as near to one another as the two eyes of each were, bore a considerable resemblance to a pair of monkeys. DICK., Two Cities, II, Ch. I, 72.

As they drew near to the top of the path, the other man whispered something to him. TROL., Mal. Cove (Sel. Sh. St., I, 286).

b) There appears to be a preference for *near to*, 1) when there is a reference to an order of succession, and also when a tie of love, friendship or devotion is spoken about, as in:

The German Emperor is near to the throne of Great Britain. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 100.

She never felt so near to him as at that minute. EDNA LYALL, Kn. Et., Ch. XXXIII, 334.

Cheapness is very near to a woman. Times, 20/12, 1923, 676 a.

2) when it is contrasted with *far from* in one and the same sentence, as in:

To the English he (sc. William the Third) appeared in a most unfortunate point of view. He was at once too near to them and too far from them. MAC., Hist., IV, Ch. XI, 50.

29. The predilections as to the use of *nearer*, *nearest* and *next*, with and without *to*, do not, apparently, follow the lines of those of *near* and *near to*.

a) 1) In a distinctly local meaning *nearer* appears to be less common than *nearer to*.

i. Dangers nearer home forced the Empire to recall its legions. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. I, § 1, 6.

ii. Before I draw nearer to that stone to which you point, .. answer me one question. DICK., Christm. Car., IV, 102.

2) Conversely, when the reference is to a quality or state, *nearer* appears to be more in favour than *nearer to*.

i. I had imagined him, I confess, a degree or two nearer gentility. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. IV, 31.

She had light hair, nearer yellow than any other colour. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, I, 9.

ii. On the whole he is nearer to the truth than Mr. Gerard. *Times*, 30/4, 1925, 489 *a*.

3) In regard to a tie of love or friendship, usage may be equally divided.

i. If Arthur Hallam had been somewhat nearer Alfred Tennyson — his brother instead of his friend — I should have distrusted this rhymed and measured and printed monument of grief. CH. BRONTË.

ii. Nearer to the popular fancy lay deities of wood and fell. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, § 1, 5.

Never was there a time when the Navy was nearer to the people's heart. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 466, 51 *b*.

4) In the constructions denoting a gradual increase of proximity, or an increase of proximity proportionate to that of another quality, *to* seems to be in regular use; thus in:

i. She had got nearer and nearer to him in her ecstatic admiration. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38 *b*.

ii. The nearer I got to that, the drearier it appeared. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. II, (198).

b) 1) In a distinctly local meaning *nearest* appears to be more frequent than *nearest to*.

i. Mrs. Gamp took the chair that was nearest the door. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXV, 207 *a*.

ii. But near and nearest to the wall .. | Was Alp, the Adrian renegade! BYRON, *Siege of Cor.*, III.

2) In regard to a tie of love or friendship, there is not, apparently, any predilection for either one or the other construction.

i. He introduced the subject which was nearest his heart. MAC., *Hist.*, VI, Ch. XVII, 170.

ii. One misty June evening Sir Michael took an opportunity .. of speaking upon the subject nearest to his heart. MISS BRADDON, *Audley*, I, Ch. I, 13.

c) 1) In a distinctly local meaning *next* and *next to* appear to be used with practically equal frequency.

i. Toots .. sat next Mr. Feeder on Paul's side of the table. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 106.

ii. Paul's chair was next to Miss Blimber. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 105.

2) *Next*, apparently, never discards *to* when it has the meaning of *following in importance (upon)*, as in:

Next to the capital, but next at an immense distance, stood Bristol. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 330.

Next to her I love all those who are faithful to her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 269.

3) Also in such combinations as *next to impossible*, *next to nothing*, the use of the preposition is obligatory.

i. Though, with diligence and good luck, he may be rich in time, it is next to impossible that he should have realised any thing yet. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. IV, 29.

ii. An unmarried man can live on next to nothing. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LIII, 243.

30. a) For syntactical reasons *near*, or any of its degrees of comparison, is regularly followed by *to*, 1) when it is divided from its complement, as in:

William determined to have another dwelling near enough to his capital for the transaction of business. MAC., Hist., IV, Ch. XI, 58.

He took .. the nearest course to the one from which he was debarred. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. XXXI, 133.

2) before a full clause, as in:

(She put) out her hand behind her, held mine in it, until we came near to where he was standing in the garden. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 24 a.

b) As to the practice before a gerund it may be observed that, to all appearance, the positive mostly stands without *to*, the degrees of comparison with *to*.

i. Molly was near crying again. MRS. GASK., Wives & Daught., Ch. X, 105.

ii. The nation was never nearer to thinking seriously of compulsory service. Westm. Gaz., No. 4943, 1 b,

iii. It (sc. the stone rolled down a hill) becomes most furiously rapid in its course when it is nearest to being consigned to rest for ever. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LXX, 171 b.

But *to go near* and *to come near* in the meaning illustrated by the following examples seem to require *to*:

Such pieces as 'We are seven' certainly gain nothing by their namby-pamby dialect, and sometimes go near to losing the beauty that really is in them, by dint of it. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. II, 53.

Once or twice she came near to throwing away all her chances of happiness. MRS. WARD, Tres., Ch. VII, 43 b,

M. Spahlinger's treatment comes nearer to a positive cure for tuberculosis than any yet known. Manch. Guard., 4 12, 1925, 443 d.

He has come near to having his youth restored to him. Manch. Guard.

Note. In passing it may be observed that after *to go near* the infinitive with *to* is a rather frequent variant of *to* + gerund. O. E. D., s. v. *near*, 15.

She was sinking deep, deep, in waters that were to go near to drown her warm heart. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. XXV, 305.

He was one of that thorough breed of misers that goes near to make the vice respectable. STEV., Kidn., Ch. III, (203).

For the rest *near* is but rarely followed by *to* + infinitive.

I at first was near to laugh. EMERSON, Eng. Traits, 80 a.

31. Obs. I. As has already been stated in 27, b, Note γ), *near* may take (up)on when the reference is to the beginning of a period. It may be added that this connecting preposition, which is practically meaningless in this connexion, is oftener dispensed with than not.

Your mother, who has long been ailing, is, I believe, near her end. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. LXXX, 375.

*Near upon* is also met with before the name of a quantity or number; thus in:

Old Thomas Green had owned an estate of near upon fifty acres. MRS. GASK, Cous. Philip., Ch. I, 5.

II. The use of *near of*, as in the following quotation, seems to be very rare:

His spear a sprig both stiff and strong, | And well near of two inches long. MICHAEL DRAYTON, The Fairy Prince arming himself for Battle.

III. In the following example *at* does not belong to *nearer*, but to the word-group *at an end*, the complement of *nearer*:

When a gentleman is cudgelling his brain to find any rhyme for *sorrow*, besides *borrow* and *morrow*, his woes are nearer at an end than he thinks for. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XV, 347.

32. a) Also *nigh*, now an archaic or literary doublet of *near*, stands with or without *to*, which for certain, chiefly metrical reasons, is sometimes replaced by *unto*.

i. They brought us to their houses nigh the sea. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prolog.*, 20 a.

ii. When their king drew nigh to death, | But still had left in him some little breath, | They bore him to that hill. *ib.*, 19 b.

iii. Nigh unto the sea | Were gathered folk for some festivity. *ib.*, *The Doom of King Acrisius*, 78 b.

b) *Nigh* may take (*up*)*on* in the same connexions as *near*.

Nigh upon two thousand years have gone. HALL CAINE, *Christ.*, II, 243.

Of *nigh upon* in a local meaning no further instance than the following has been found:

If she could but gain the summit of that weary, everlasting hill, she believed that she could run again, and would soon be nigh upon the carriage. MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. VIII, 65.

33. Owing to want of space many of the other phrases mentioned in 10, b, have to be passed over in silence. A few words of comment must, however, be bestowed on the following:

*a board*, regularly dispensing with the connecting preposition and admitting of transposition; thus in: i. Aboard ship he carried his crutch by a lanyard round his neck. STEV., *Treas.* I sl., II, Ch. X, 61.

ii. I'll find out how that old rascal got to know the names of the ship I was aboard. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, B, 48.

*a breast of*, varying with *abreast with*, the latter being preferred when the reference is to progressing persons or things. The O. E. D., mentions *to keep abreast with the thought of the age*. The distinction is, however, sometimes disregarded: The Modern Cyclopædia is fully abreast of the times. *Athen.*

The Magazine you must have to keep abreast of the times. *Stead's Annual* for 1906, 40 b

Note. According to the O. E. D., the connecting preposition is sometimes dropped in nautical language.

*agreeable to*, varying with *agreeably to*, the latter being, apparently, more usual than the former: i. The House took up the report of the committee agreeable to the order of the day. WEBST., *Dict.*

ii. Mr. Pecksniff withdrew .. agreeably to the wish just now expressed. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 337 a.

Note. By the side of *agreeably to* we also meet with *agreeably with*, which appears to be less common, and is considered incorrect by BAIN (*H. E. Gr.*, 88): Agreeably with your request I have examined the specimen sheets of the New Atlas. *Times*.

*along of*, not registered in the O. E. D., occurs at least six times in SHAKESPEARE, where it is abbreviated to *'long of*. It is now quite common in colloquial language in the meaning of *owing to*, *on account of*, as in: Mally, it's all along of you that I'm alive this moment. TROL., *Mal. Cove* (*Sel. Sh. St.*, I, 292).

Note. With *along of* compare *along with* (= together with), as in: Old Mr. Pontifer, along with his pride and affection, felt also a certain fear of his son. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. II, 9.

*alongside of*, often without the connecting preposition, used in various shades of meaning, i. e. in that approximating to: *a*) *by the side of*, as in: i. We shall not have to fight the Germans, but will be fighting alongside of them and the French on the frontiers of Poland. *Graph.*, No. 2309, 351 *a*. ii. My name is not worthy to appear alongside all of these. *Times*, No. 2449, 598 *c*.

*β*) *parallel to the side of* (of a ship), as in: i. As the vessel came alongside of the Quay, there were no idlers abroad. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 368.

ii. It was almost night when they came alongside the landing. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIII, 191 *b*.

*γ*) *together with, besides*, as in: i. After slavery (or sometimes alongside of it) came serfdom. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/5, 1925, 33 *c*.

ii. Alongside this problem is a second, equally thorny. *ib.*, 6/6, 1925, 153 *a*.

*δ*) *in comparison with*, only in colloquial use, as in: A lion is nothing alongside of Long John. *STEV.*, *Treas. Isl.*, II, Ch. X, 61.

*a midst of*, rarely with the connecting preposition, except in verse to secure the metre; thus in: i. That afternoon, within this well-hung hall, | Amidst of many thoughts the goodman lay. *MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *Rhodope*, XVI. Our band . . . | Amidst of tears and doubt and misery, | Sent after them a feeble farewell cry. *ib.*, *Prol.*, 19 *a*.

ii. This work was written amidst many interruptions. *WEBST.*, *Dict.*

Note. In literary diction *amid* often takes the place of *amidst*. The aphetic forms *midst* and *mid* occur chiefly in verse; thus in: And midst of all, war fell upon the land. *MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 21 *b*.

Mid such times | Shall dwell the hollow puppets of my rhymes. *ib.*, 3 *a*.

*aside from* (= *apart from*), said by the O. E. D. to be usual only in American English, but, apparently, common enough in certain newspapers published in England: Aside from the fact that the experiment seemed to make for order in the City and simplified the work of policing, it had done no good. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 63, 390.

A proof of this is the accumulation of English munitions in Maubeuge, aside from any other facts. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6642, 6 *b*.

Note. *Aside of* appears to be only in vulgar use, as in: I saw him as plain as plain, and he was standing in Misthress Mona's room, atween the bed and the wee craythur's cot, and he went down aside of it. *HALL CAINE*, *Deemster*, Ch. XVIII, 122.

*astride of*, often without the connecting preposition: i. He saw him sitting astride of his bow-spirit. *WASH. IRV.*, *The Storm-ship* (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 89).

ii. He sat with his legs astride the shank of the bowsprit. *CON. DOYLE*, *Ref.*, 148.

Note. In such sentences as the following *astride* does not form a group-preposition with *on*: Presently he was met by an elderly parson astride on a gray mare. *HARDY*, *Tess*, I, Ch. I, 3.

He sat down astride on a chair. *ib.*, I, Ch. V, 51.

*atop of*, sometimes without the connecting preposition: i. The engine fell atop of the carriages. *MRS. ALEX.*, *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VI, 100.

ii. Viewing the mysterious world of Literature and Art from atop the magic hills of inexperienced youth. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 201, 251 *a*.

*close to*, differing from *close (up)on* as *near (to)* differs from *near (up)on*:

i. Close to the bier was placed the throne. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIII, 242.

ii. It is close upon three by the sun. *G. ELIOT*, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. VI, 60.

(The tide) is close on the turn now. *MORRIS*, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 9.

They climbed to close on 27000 feet. *Manch. Guard.*, 24/10, 1924, II b.

Note. In *Miss Murdstone* .. follows close upon me (*Dick., Cop.*, Ch. IV, 26 b) *upon* belongs to *to follow*.

*conformable to* (or *with*), varying with *conformably to* (or *with*), the adverb-form being, apparently, more common than the adjective-form, the connecting preposition being usually *to*: i. They acted conformable to the Foundation and the End of Laws. *LOCKE, Govt.*, II, xiv, § 165.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* Everything was done conformably to ancient usage. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 197.

\*\* Conformably with this notion .. Miss Starke had relaxed the frigid austerity natural to her manner. *LYTTON, My Novel*, I, vii, Ch. XII, 461.

*exclusive of*, varying with *exclusively of*, the adjective-form being, apparently, more usual than the adverb-form: i. The châtlet contained four men, exclusive of myself and my guide. *TYNDALL, Glac.*, I, iii, 24.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Each elector drinks, on an average, five 'petits verres' a day, exclusively of spirits surreptitiously made by small producers. *Times*, 1897, 841 a.

*hard (up)on*, a variant of *near (up)on* and *close (up)on*, also used in a temporal meaning: i. I'm hard on fifty-six. *MORRIS, News from Nowhere*, Ch. III, 18.

ii. Arthur, holding then his court | Hard on the river nigh the place which now | Is this world's hugest, let proclaim a joust | At Camelot. *TEN., Lanc. & El.*, 75.

*independent of*, or *independently of*, apparently of equal frequency:

i. Independent of his newly acquired wealth and title, he was of distinguished appearance and fascinating manners. *Mrs. WOOD, East Lynne*, I, 3.

ii. Independently of the pleasure of seeing the familiar faces of the farmers and villagers, he liked also being seen and being congratulated on growing-up such a fine-looking and fortunate young man. *BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. II, 8.

*inside of*, apparently mostly retaining the connecting preposition: i. If she tries to publish a book inside of this country or out of it, I'll crush her. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will*, Ch. II, 17.

You don't know what goes on inside o' me. *GALSW., Silv. Box*, II, 1, (43).

ii. You're a deep un, and ha' got more inside you nor 'ull bear daylight. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. 67.

Inside the occupied territory the Prussian flag has been prominent. *Westm. Gaz.*, 27/6, 1925, 224 b.

Note. The use of *inside of* in reference to time is said by the O. E. D. to be "U. S. and Colonial Colloq": If you don't give us our money, our 'ard-earned money inside o' two minutes, I'll break every bone in your body. *JACOBS, Odd Craft*, A, 13.

*midmost of*, both with and without the connecting preposition, unusual and purely literary: i. But, midmost of the vale, a mound | Arose with airy turrets crown'd. *SCOTT, Brid. of Trierm.*, i, xiii.

And midmost of a rout of roisterers, | .. Her suitor in old years before Geraint. *TEN., Ger. & En.*, 274.

ii. Pardon me, | Who strive to build a shadowy isle of bliss | Midmost the beating of the steely sea. *MORRIS, Earthly Par., Apology*, VI.

*opposite to*, often without the connecting preposition, especially in colloquial language: i. Opposite to the fireplace .. was an oaken shovel-board. *Mrs. GASK., Cous. Phil.*, I, 19.

ii. Opposite me was an elderly lady in a great fur cloak. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. V, 36 a.

1) O. E. D.



*outside of*, mostly without the connecting preposition, in all the shades of meaning of the phrase: i. \* The real decisions are made outside of Parliament. *Westm. Gaz.*, 27/6, 1925, 224 *a*.

\*\* Outside the farm she had no authority. *SHAW, Saint Joan*, Pref., 48.

ii Let him live outside his income ..., and he will presently find himself dreaming of a possible benefactor. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn.*, Ch. IX, 63. (= beyond.)

iii. Outside these terrible events, the subjects of most interest have been the achievements of our military and naval forces. *Times*, 1898, 710 *b*. (= next after.)

*previous to*, varying with *previously to*, the latter being, apparently, more usual than the former: i. As the cool of the evening now came on, Lester proposed to Aram to enjoy it without, previous to returning to the parlour. *LYTTON, Eug. Ar.*, Ch. V, 36.

ii. It would have been fortunate for me if these views had been presented to me previously to my embracing my present profession. *GODWIN, Cal. Wil.*, III, Ch. III, 314.

It had been arranged previously to the convict's departure that he should write to his mother as soon as he could obtain permission. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 51.

*relative to*, varying with *relatively to*, the former form being used when the phrase may be apprehended as the constituent of an undeveloped adnominal clause: i. Mrs. Sedley had put an advertisement in the *Times* on her own account, relative to a niece of hers. *LYTTON, My Novel*, I, vii, Ch. XII, 462.

The discussion which is carried on relative to the Peace Commission procedure. *Times*, 1898, 674 *b*.

ii. Relatively to myself I am quite sure that the region of uncertainty is far more extensive than I could wish. *HUXL., Lect. & E s.*, 109 *a*.

Mr. Seddon said that an exhaustive inquiry would disclose that Great Britain was weakening industrially and commercially, relatively to America and other nations. *Times*.

#### Group-prepositions consisting of a Primary Adverb and a Primary Preposition.

34. In the prepositional phrases mentioned under 10, *c*, some interesting points of difference may be observed.

*a)* *Into* and *upon* are distinctly felt to form a unit: in both the original adverbial function of the first element is entirely thrown into the back-ground.

In the case of *into* the second element conveys the notion of direction, which, except for certain rather numerous combinations, the preposition *in* by itself is no longer capable of expressing. In this respect the preposition differs from the adverb *in*, which is freely used to indicate direction, as in *He came in*.

In *upon*, on the other hand, it is the first element which conveys the notion of direction; but as the preposition *on* by itself also is frequently used with implication of this notion, and, as, moreover, *up* in the compound no longer expresses an exclusively upward movement, the two forms *on* and *upon* are, with some exceptions, used indifferently, the choice depending to a certain extent, on metrical or

rhythmical considerations. Thus *on* is used to the exclusion of *upon* in *on fire*, *on sale*; *on the move*, *on the wane*; *on account of*; *on purpose*, *on an average*; *on the sly*, *on the cheap*, *on the square*, and numerous other phrases.

When *up* and *on* are separated, i. e. belong to different elements of the sentence, *up* has its full meaning, and always expresses an upward movement; thus in:

The little boy jumped up on Ferus's back. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*.

Note. It should here be observed that also *in* and *to* may represent two distinct notions, in print shown by their being placed in separation; thus in.

People turned round to look after Harry as he passed, and country folks stared at him as they came in to market. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 287.

It was time to go in to luncheon. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XI, 102.

It is of some interest to compare the coalescing of *in* and *to* into one word with the separateness of *in* and *at* in:

So saying, I enter into my room by the open French window, just as Bedford walks in at the door. THACK., *Lovel the Widower*.

*In* and *to* may even be separated by other elements of the sentence. This has been done for metrical reasons in:

The calender, right glad to find | His friend in merry pin, | Returned him not a single word, | But to the house went in. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, XLIV.

b) Of *throughout* the adverbial function seems to have been the primary one. Compare the German *durchaus*. The compound bears no semantic analysis, its component parts having coalesced into a perfect unit. In fact it differs from the simplex *through* only in being more emphatic, as may appear from a comparison of two such sentences as:

i. The thoughts . . occupied her through the day on which Mr. Casaubon had sent his letter to Will. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVII, 275.

ii. Throughout his life he was a constant reader of the Bible. E. MORRIS, *Introd. to Byron's Childe Harold*.

c) Of all the other phrases here referred to the component elements are more or less distinctly thought of separately, so that they are not written or printed in combination, as is regularly done with *into* and *upon*. An intermediate position is occupied by *out of*. In some of its applications it is, indeed, the exact opposite of *into*, less frequently of *in*, or has almost the same meaning as *from*, but it differs from *into* in that the first element distinctly preserves its adverbial character, *out* being, indeed, rarely used as a preposition by itself (see below, Note). When combined with *out*, *of* stands for a meaning which is now normally expressed by *from*, but its force is of the weakest, so that it is felt as a mere enclitic, added to the preceding *out* to make it fitted to fulfil the function of a preposition (42). When *from* is substituted for *of*, the adverb and the preposition are felt as two separate words, belonging to different elements of the sentence, although it must be admitted that *out from* is sometimes difficult to distinguish from *out of* (36). For the rest the fact that *out of* may be preceded by *from* clearly shows that it is felt as a unit; thus in:

Here comes an interminable succession of carriages that seem to open spontaneously. From out of them there instantly step hundreds and hundreds of individuals. HENRY DE NOUSSAIRE, *London's Human Tide*.

Note. *a*) In some connexions *out* also by itself does duty as a preposition; thus 1) when used absolutely, in contrast with a preceding *in* (118), as in:

In Parliament and out, Liberalism was being hunted, if possible, to death. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/4, 1924, 329 c.

All was changed — in-doors and out. WILK. COL., *Woman*, I, Ch. XV, 108.

2) when preceded by the preposition *from* (37, *b*), as in:

And coming there our keel, the Fighting Man, | We boarded, and long oars out we ran, | And swept from out the firth. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 6 a.

3) in the adnominal *out-door*, as in *out-door games*, *out-door relief* (Ch. LIX, 110, Obs. I). The use of the adverbial *out-doors*, as in the following quotation, instead of *out-of-doors*, appears to be rare:

He engaged in games out-doors and in, because he had a natural skill and aptitude for them. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIX, 299.

4) in the sequence *from out* (37, *b*).

*β*) Of the conjoint use of *out* after a preceding *in*, no further instances than the following have come to hand:

A flock of jackdaws flew in and out various holes. SWEET, *Prim. of Spok. Eng.* 57.

We saw doves and starlings going in and out the house. *ib.*, 58.

*d*) In *over against* and *round about* the first element seems to be mainly used to narrow the meaning of the following preposition. It should, however, be observed that *against* is no longer current English in the meaning of *opposite to*.

i. As he sat upon the mount of Olives over against the temple [etc.]. *Bible*, *Mark.*, XIII, 3.

He tried to conquer the call of blood . . and to set over against it the claims of his exalted mission. HALL CAINE, *Christ.*, II, 309.

ii. Round about the prow she wrote 'The Lady of Shalott.' TEN., *Lady of Shal.*, IV.

Note. In such a combination as is found in the following sentence, *round* and *about* are both adverbs, the latter meaning *approximately*: The Duke's estates in Scotland consist of round about 400 000 acres. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 14, 268 a.

*e*) "*On to*, or *onto* as a less frequent form, has the same relation to *on* as *into* has to *in*. But while *in to* (or *into*) was in use already by 900, the need for *on to* appears not to have been felt before the 16th century, while its written recognition as a combination is still quite recent and limited. By most writers *on to* is avoided or used only when ambiguity cannot otherwise be avoided." O. E. D.

Such ambiguity is, however, extremely rare. Thus in all the instances adduced by the O. E. D., in which *on to* is said to serve the possible purpose of precluding ambiguity, no reasonable person could miss the meaning intended, if *on* were used instead.

There is certainly no call for adding *to* to *on* after words which imply no (distinct) movement towards a place, as in:

They inhabited . . a small old-fashioned brick house, abutting on to the road but looking from its front windows on to a lawn and garden. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. III, 22.

French windows also looking on to the garden. PINERO, *Iris*.

f) The two notions conveyed by *up* and *to* in *up to* hardly form separate subjects of thought, so that the phrase may be apprehended as a group-preposition; thus in:

I blushed up to my ears when I said it. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 44.

He acted up to his principles of action. Mrs. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 39. T.

Up to the age of thirty-four Hosea Wilkinson never had any home but Home Sweet Home. MARK TWAIN.

Note. *Up* has the value of a predicative adjective governing a complement with *to* in the colloquial *What are you up to?*; also in such a sentence as:

By this time we were nearly up to him. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, I, 15.

In *up-to-date* the adjectival *up* has coalesced with its complement into a kind of compound adjective, which even admits of the degrees of comparison; thus in:

These watches are more up-to-date than any watch yet produced. Times.

Also in *up with the times*, which is strictly synonymous with *abreast with* (or *of*) *the times*, *up* has the same function as a predicative adjective governing a complement; thus in:

A snow-white shirt will make a man appear well, and show his laundress as up with the times. Punch.

g) The other phrases mentioned in 10, c, require no comment, simple illustration of some of them being all that is needed.

*away from*: In the Reichstag most of the parties, away from the Socialists, seem to have rallied to the military side. Westm. Gaz., No. 6447, 2b. (= except.)

*down to*: All within was the same, down to the sea-weed in the blue mug in my bedroom. Dick., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 70a.

*forth of*: I would willingly see (this pragmatical youngster) whipped forth of the barony. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. IV, 45. ('Now only poet. or rhetorical'. O. E. D., s.v. *forth*, 9, a.)

*up at*: Meanwhile a very different scene was being acted up at the house half a mile away. RID. HAG., *Jess*.

*up till*: Up till that moment, he had been happily married. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. XI, 318.

35. The word-groups mentioned in 10, c should be carefully distinguished from those combinations in which the adverb clearly belongs to a preceding word and the preposition, accordingly, performs a function by itself, not differing in any way from that in which it is not preceded by an adverb. Thus in *She continued holding on to the carriage*, the adverb *on* belongs to *holding*, and *to* has the same force as it has in *She continued clinging to the carriage*. This applies also to *on* and *to* respectively in *to walk on to the next station*, *to flow on to the sea*, *to hang on to a party*, *to lead on to another point*, *a ship lies broadside on to the waves*, mentioned in the O. E. D.

36. Similarly the following word-groups form no group-prepositions, the adverb and the preposition contained in them belonging to distinctly different elements of the sentence:

*in at*, as in: The sun streamed in at the window. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38 a.

*off from*, as in: He could not keep his great eyes off from her. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. III, 24. (Compare *from off* in 37, b.)

*off of*, as in: I can't keep my mind off of what is going on right under my eyes. HABBERTON, *Country Luck*, 183. <sup>1)</sup> (The combination is a very rare one, and *of*, being a weakened *off*, appears to be absolutely redundant.)

*out at*, as in: In another moment he was going out at the porch. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XVIII, 127.

*out from*, as in: The infernal serpent: he it was whose guile, | Stirred up with envy and revenge, deceived | The mother of mankind, what time his pride | Had cast him out from Heaven. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, I, 37. (Compare: Out she flounced from the room. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46.)

*out to*, as in: All (understood) that they must take the body of Ewan out to sea. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXII, 158.

In five minutes more they were standing out to sea. *ib.*

*out upon*, as in: Out upon merry Christmas! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 6

Out upon the angry wind! *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. I, 5 b.

*up to*, as in: (The) vainglories, rivalries, | And earthly heats .. waste the spiritual strength | Within us, better offer'd up to Heaven. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 36.

*up with*, as in: "Up with you," said the stranger, assisting Mr. Pickwick on to the roof. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 7.

37. The phrases mentioned in 10, c, should also be distinguished from sequences of two prepositions the first of which may be understood to govern the word-group containing the last with its complement, this word-group doing, accordingly, the duty in ordinary cases done by a (pro)noun. Thus in such a sentence as *A tall steeple peeped from among the foliage* the preposition *from* governs the word-group *among the foliage*, the latter serving the same purpose as, for example, such a noun as (*the*) *wood*.

In some cases it is also possible to interpolate a noun of a vague meaning dividing the prepositions which would represent the complement of the first preposition, the word-group with the last preposition modifying it adnominally. The above example would then be assumed to be equivalent to some such sentence as *A tall steeple peeped from a spot (or place) among the foliage*. But except for local or temporal collocations, such an interpolation would mostly yield a strained explanation.

While in the above sequence, and others like it, such as *from between*, *from below*, *from amidst*, etc., the two prepositions represent two notions distinctly thought of separately, we also meet with such as strike us as forming a kind of unit; thus:

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

a) some combinations in which the second preposition is *for*, such as:

*but for*, as in: The real state of the case would never have been known at all in the regiment, but for Captain Dobbin's indiscretion. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 123.

*except for*, as in: Past the Docks it is all flat pasture, once marsh, except for a few gardens. MORRIS, News from Nowhere, Ch. X, 75.

*only for*, as in: "Only for the respect she owed to Missus," as she afterwards declared, "she never would have so demeaned herself for all the captains in the Queen's battalions." TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. IV, 40.

We should have been here quarter of an hour ago, only for his nonsense. SHAW, The Philanderer, IV, (143).

Note. The use of *only* in this phrase has arisen from the false assumption that *only* being in some cases equivalent to *but*, it can also be used for the latter in the sense of *except*. For a detailed discussion of this *only* see STOF., Stud., C. Compare also ELLINGER, Beiträge, VIII, 2, 92.

*save for*: The room, save for three children, was quite empty. WALT. BESANT, Bell of St. Paul's, I, Ch. I, 12.

*saving for*: Saving for the little store he had mentioned, it (sc. the cabin) was perfectly bare of all furniture. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIII, 193 b.

b) some combinations in which the first preposition is *from* and the second conveys virtually the same meaning, and may, accordingly, be regarded as a redundant addition.

*from forth*, as in: I pray you bear me hence | From forth the noise and rumour of the field. SHAK., King John, V, 4, 44.

He from forth the closet brought a heap | Of candied apple. KEATS, St. Agnes, XXX.

Note. Except for this uncommon and purely literary phrase, *forth* is not used as a preposition. In Early Modern English the preposition *forth* is also found independent of a preceding *from*; thus in: If thou lovest me then, | Steal forth thy father's house to-morrow night. SHAK., Mid s., I, I, 164. (See also id., Rom. & Jul., I, I, 123.)

*from off*, as in: Noah sent forth a dove from him to see if the waters were abated from off the face of the ground. Bible, Gen., VIII, 8.

The quick wheels (dashed) the hoar-frost and snow from off the dark leaves of the evergreens like spray. DICK., Christm. Carol, II, 35.

The little child's skull .. grinned at her from off the chimney-piece. TROL., Dr. Thorne, Ch. XXVI, 349.

Note. Although distinctly literary, the phrase has at all times been common enough. In *far off from*, in which the two words are used in inverse order, *off* is an adverb modified by *far*; thus in: I only observed that my mother was as far off from me as she could. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 30 a. (Compare also *off from* in 36.)

*from out*, as in: Can ye not wring from out the hidden realms, .. what I ask. BYRON, Manf., I, I.

For tho' from out our bourne of Time and Place | The flood may bear me far, | I hope to see my Pilot face to face | When I have crost the bar. TEN., Crossing the Bar

Note. This is one of the few constructions in which *out* is still used as a preposition (34, c). The phrase is only common in verse, in which it sometimes serves as a convenient metrical variant of *out of*.

In *from of old* the word-group *of old* is felt as a unit with none of the old meaning of *of* (= from) left, so that it is practically equivalent to *olden times* or some such phrase; thus in:

From of old they had been zealous worshippers. CARLYLE, *Heroes*, II, 45.

c) Further instances of similar sequences of prepositions are:

*at after*, which seems to occur chiefly in northern dialects. It is also used as an adverbial adjunct and a group-conjunction; thus in:

i. By-and-by I was at him again with the same words; and at after that, again and again. MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XVI, 116.

ii. You can all meet together at after. *Id.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXV, 265.

iii. 'She pined a deal at after he went away. *Id.*, *Ruth*, Ch. XVI, 115.

I thought she'd soonest get over it and be thankful at after she'd the strength to do right. *ib.*

*in between*, as in: In between the curtains it is still the same. *Westm. Gaz.*, 23.12, 1922, 15*a*.

He knew where some (sc. blue-bells) still lingered, like little patches of sky fallen in between the trees, away out of the sun. GALSW., *Ind. Sum.*, Ch. I, (385).

*in from*, as in: She'll be home in from twenty minutes to half-an-hour's time. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. X, 70*a*.

*overthwart*, a metrical, literary variant of *athwart*, as in: Far beyond, and overthwart the stream, | That, as with molten, glass, inlays the vale, | The sloping land recedes into the clouds. COWPER, *Task*, I, 69.

*to within*, as in: He would have liked to .. flog him to within an inch of his life. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marne*, I, Ch. III, 24.

Group-prepositions containing the conjunction *as*.

38. In the group-prepositions mentioned in 10, *d*, *as* stands for a faded *as* (or *so*) *far as*. It is connected either with primary prepositions or with verbal forms.

In passing it may here be observed that *so far as* is used as a prepositional phrase by JANE AUSTEN; thus in:

I will own to you ... that so far as our living with Mr. Churchill at Enscombe, it is settled. *Emma*, Ch. LII, 434.

If I understand your brother, he only means so far as your having some thoughts of marrying. *ib.*, LIII, 438.

39. a) The most remarkable combinations of *as* with a preposition are *as for* and *as to*.

1) These two phrases are practically indistinguishable in meaning when they have the value of *as* (or *so*) *far as is* (or *are*, etc.) *concerned*. There is, however, a distinct preference for *as for*, *as to* occurring in this meaning only occasionally. It is worth observing that both phrases, in this particular application, stand in word-groups which regularly precede the rest of the sentence:

i. As for breeding, there were few country ladies who could show more. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*

As for me, I was a little puzzled. *MORRIS*, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. III, 18.

ii. As to thy burden, be content to bear it, untill thou comest to the place of Deliverance. *BUNYAN*, *Pilg. Prog.*, (159).

As to that matter, I don't believe one half of it myself. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, *Postscript*.

H. POUTSMA, III II.

As to doing family duty and keeping his farm in order, he found it impossible. *ib.*, V, 35.

Note. *For* is sometimes found in the same meaning and position as *as for*. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 483; *id.*, E. S., XX; thus in:

And for Mark Antony, think not of him. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 181.

For the weakness in her eyes, considering how much she reads by candlelight, it is not to be wondered at. SHER., *School*, II, 2, (381).

For health, I have so far got on very fairly. MRS. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 336.

For John — two minutes of such a gaze as his might in a man's deep heart do the work of years. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIII, 134.

For me, I thank the saints, I am not great. TEN., *Guin.*, 197.

This *for* is still quite frequent in Present English, and not exchangeable for *as for*, in certain expressions, such as 1) *for my (own) part*, *for myself*, and their variations, which also regularly have front-position; 2) *for the rest*, *for the most (greater or chief) part* (Ch. XXXI, 20, a, 4, δ), *for the matter of that* (or *for that matter*), only the first of which is regularly found in front-position; 3) *except (save or saving) for* (37, b).

We find it also in the idioms illustrated by:

i. My dear Madam, so long as a woman is beautiful, she may wear whatever she likes for me; and if she isn't, what does it matter what she wears? PUNCH.

They were welcome to it for him. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XXII, 298.

ii. By Jove! if you were on that mare, I'd back you, for style and appearance, against anything in Hyde Park. *ib.*, Ch. XXVIII, 377.

2) *As to* is rigidly distinguished from *as for*: a) when it has the meaning of *about*, its complement being a (pro)noun, a subordinate question, or a substantive clause; as in:

i. We must needs taste the fruit off the different trees, and pass our judgment as to their flavour. MRS. GASK., *Cous Phil.*, III, 61.

There is one fact as to which the results of free trade are absolutely unmistakable. TIMES.

ii. Great doubt exists as to which of these expressions is correct. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 319.

iii. The servants were to be on their guard as to what they said and did before her. MRS. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 40.

β) when it has the meaning of *in proportion to*, or *proportionate to*, as in:

The rates of postage varied .. both as to distance and as to weight, and even the size or shape of a letter. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 13.

Experience is as to intensity, and not as to duration. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XIX, 160.

b) The other prepositional phrases consisting of *as* and a preposition, may be given without comment.

*as against*: There are 10500 members now, as against 5000 in 1872. TIMES.

*as at*, apparently very rare: The latest valuation of the Society was made as at the 31st December, 1904, on a very stringent basis. WESTM. GAZ.

The following table gives the principal items as at the end of each of the last three years. MANCH. GUARD., 18/1, 1924, 58 b.

*as between*: The burden of the income tax has been more fairly adjusted as between earned and unearned incomes. REV. OF REV., No. 213, 217 b.



*as from*, apparently very rare: M. Poincaré has published an official decree, abolishing the two "free zones" as from November 10 next. *Manch. Guard.*, IX, 16, 305 c.

c) Some phrases of this description, such as *as after*, *as among*, *as by* and *as in*, have become obsolete. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 23; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 483 and § 584; *id.*, E. S., XVIII.

Note. As to *as in*, it may here be observed that CHAUCER has it in the function of Present-English *as to*; thus in:

And alle acorden as in hir sentence | Al be ther in hir telling difference.  
*Cant. T.*, B, 2137. (Thus also in: *ib.*, 2144.)

40. The verbal form with which *as* may be connected to form with it a group-preposition, is either a participle or a finite form.

a) The most frequent combinations of *as* with a participle are;

*as affecting*, as in: Russia considers it her duty to guard them against alien interference, especially as affecting Manchuria. *Times*.

*as compared with*, as in: Lord Rosebery said that the position of farmers and labourers now, as compared with what it was before the repeal of the Corn Laws, was greatly improved. *Times*, 1897, 714 a. (In front-position the phrase often loses *as*; thus in: Compared with the last season, there is an improvement in the catch of the whales. *ib.*, 764 d.)

Note. In the same function *comparing with*, as in: This payment will make .. a total distribution of 10 per cent for the year, comparing with 12 per cent. for the last four years. *Manch. Guard.*, 31/10, 1925. 358 a.

Compare also: The total distribution for the year is 8¾ per cent., against 5 per cent. for 1923—'24. *ib.*, 358 c.

*as opposed to*, as in: The mark + is used to indicate literary as opposed to colloquial. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, II, Pref.

Note. Mention may here also be made of *as distinct from*, in which *distinct* has the value of the participle *distinguished*.

What was the meaning of *Sophos*? Unquestionably what we mean by a wise man, as distinct from a philosopher. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, Pythagoras, 42.

b) The finite verbal forms which are connected with *as* to form with it a group-preposition, are the present or the preterite of the synonymous verbs *to regard*, *to concern* and *to respect*, the first being the most frequent. The use of the preterite in descriptions of what belongs to the past time-sphere shows that the phrases, notwithstanding the absence of a subject, preserve, to a certain extent, the character of the verbal element of a full clause.

*as regards*: i. As regards the cricket, the Englishmen have no reason to be dissatisfied with their performance. *Times*, 1897, 713 d.

ii. She almost accused herself for having, without authority, sought out her father; it had been, as regarded him, a fruitless mission. *Dis.*, *Syb.*, V, Ch. IX, 346.

As regarded giving compensation to a farmer who was arbitrarily turned out of his tenancy, he was in favour of the proposal. *Times*, 1897, 715 a.

*as respects*: As respects natural religion, it is easy to see that a philosopher of the present day is more favourably situated than Thales or Simonides. *Mac.*, *Ranké*, (543 a).

## Miscellaneous Group-prepositions

41. The miscellaneous prepositional phrases mentioned in 10, c) may be divided into three varieties.

a) In *over and above*, *to and fro*, and *up and down* two prepositions are closely connected by *and*, so as only vaguely indicating two different notions.

*over and above*: We reap what we sow, but Nature has love over and above that justice, and gives us shadow and blossom and fruit that spring from no planting of ours. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. V, 222.

*to and fro*: My father walked to and fro the room with his hands behind him. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. V, 23.

Note. The phrase *fro and to*, for which there is, naturally, as much occasion as for *to and fro*, is, apparently, very rare.

The tendency of birds on a long sea transit is to go *fro and to* the nearest point of land. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8373, 7 b).

*up and down*: He .. ran up and down the narrow yard. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 51.

b) In the combinations *arm-in-arm with*, *face-to-face with*, *hand-in-hand with*, and *side-by-side with*, the first three words have the value of an adjective or adverb, such as may be seen in the prepositional phrases mentioned in 10, b. Thus *face-to-face with* bears some resemblance to *opposite to*.

*arm-in-arm with*: Philosophy, that does not dream or stray, | Walks arm-in-arm with nature all his way. COWPER, *Charity*, 314.

Note. *Arm-in-arm* is sometimes, by way of hendiadys, replaced by *arm-and-arm*; thus in:

A thickset Individual .. arm-and-arm with some servant. CARLYLE, *Fr. Rev.*, II, II, iv. iii, 10. 1)

*face-to-face with*: I stood face-to-face with Mr. Peggotty. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XL, 290 a.

*hand-in-hand with*: Liberalism in France .. means sane finance, reduced military expenditure, and balanced budgets, and hand-in-hand with that, it means international pacification. *Westm. Gaz.*, 254, 1925, 755 b.

*side-by-side with*: A higher hand must .. guide | Her footsteps (sc. of knowledge) moving side-by-side | With wisdom. TEN., *In Mem.*, CXIV, v.

c) *Thanks to* and *no matter* may be understood as the residue of (short) sentences, which have been shorn of some of their semantically insignificant matter.

*thanks to* admits of other elements of the sentence intervening between its component parts.

i. Thanks to private charity, the teachers are to give them (sc. the children) .. hot cocoa at noon. *Times*, 20 12 1923, 677 b.

ii. The passengers — thanks, I expect, to the bitter cold — behaved more quietly at night than in the morning. *Westm. Gaz.*, 1894, 218, 3 c.

*no matter* appears to be used only before a subordinate question.

Thus the English change of [m] before [t] into a lip-teeth consonant is in

1) O. E. D.

natural speech carried out uniformly whenever the two consonants are run together, no matter whether they belong to the same word or not. SWEET, *Sounds*, § 177.

## Function of Prepositions and Group-prepositions.

### General Observations.

42. Prepositions (or group-prepositions) are words (or word-groups) that are used to make substantives or substantive-equivalents into adjuncts.

The adjunct into which a substantive or substantive-equivalent may be made through a preposition or group-preposition may be: *a)* an adverbial adjunct, *b)* a prepositional object, *c)* the nominal part of the predicate, *d)* a predicative adnominal adjunct, *e)* an attributive adnominal adjunct.

In the following discussions preposition is meant to include group-preposition.

43. *a)* In many cases the circumstances indicated by adverbial adjuncts relate not only to the action, but also to some person(s) or thing(s) mentioned in the sentence. The adjunct is then of a hybrid character and may also be termed a predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. VI). When we compare such sentences as *He returned home in an exhausted state*, *He travelled by himself*, with *He came home very tired*, *He travelled alone*, we have no difficulty in observing that the preposition-groups (12, *e*) are as clearly descriptive of circumstances relative to the subject as the adjectives *tired* and *alone*.

A similar observation may be made about the preposition-groups in: *Its hair, which hung about its neck and down its back, was white as if with age.* DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 28.

*Then all the Cratchit family drew round the hearth.* *ib.*, III, 60.

*b)* The adverbial adjunct may also more or less partake of the function of an attributive adnominal adjunct, i. e. it may admit of being placed in immediate succession to the subject, the shifting involving no material change of meaning; thus in:

*The wind moaned about the house and the sea rumbled in the distance.* HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXI, 148 (almost = *The wind about the house moaned, and the sea in the distance rumbled.*)

*Her rippling hair (fell) about her neck in a golden haze.* MISS BRADDON, *Audley*, I, Ch. XIV, 158 (almost = *Her rippling hair about her neck fell in a golden haze.*)

*c)* But the adjunct may also refer to the predicate alone, as in:

*Scrooge glanced about him on the floor.* DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 21.

*d)* In many cases it is rather the sentence as a whole than the predicate alone which is modified, thus in:

*I stopped at home because of the rain. I caught cold through you.* SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 389.

44. a) The chief function of prepositions is that of forming adverbial adjuncts, and it is in this function that their meaning stands forth most distinctly. The adverbial relations in which adjuncts with a preposition may be used have been divided into certain main groups, i e. such as place, time, causality, etc.

b) It is in adverbial adjuncts of place that most prepositions show their original import. This original import appears only in a modified light when the adjunct is one of time, but is considerably faded, often indeed irre recognizable, in adjuncts expressive of other relations.

The shades of meaning in which many prepositions appear as constituents of adverbial adjuncts are well-nigh endless. The description of these shades is the task of the lexicographer and will not, therefore, be attempted in these pages. For the rest it has already been done to perfection in the O. E. D.

45. As constituents of prepositional objects prepositions exhibit only a faint reflex of the meanings they have as part of adverbial adjuncts. Indeed their meaning is often so vague as to baffle all definition. The fact is that in this function they mostly serve no further purpose than that of linking the verb or adjective with which they stand with a noun or pronoun.

For detailed discussion of the nature of prepositional objects as compared with that of adverbial adjuncts see Ch. XLV, 24—25.

46. a) As part of a preposition-group (12, e) in the function of nominal part of the predicate, the preposition may have the same meaning as it has in an adverbial adjunct. Thus in *The pictures are in the library* the preposition *in* has the same meaning as it has in *The pictures hang in the library*. Compare also *It was on Christmas Eve that he arrived* with *He arrived on Christmas Eve* and *It was with reluctance that he acquiesced in the arrangement* with *He acquiesced with reluctance in the arrangement*.

It will be observed that in these and similar connexions the verb *to be* is not the meaningless copula (Ch. I, 4).

b) When the preposition-group is the nominal part of the predicate, it may be expressive of a state of the subject. In this case it may be only the whole word-group which conveys a distinct meaning, or the preposition and the noun may each stand for a distinct meaning. The difference appears clearly from a comparison of two such combinations as *to be at ease* and *to be against the measure*. In the former the preposition and the substantive form a unit which bears no analysis; indeed *at ease* is practically equivalent to the bare adjective *easy*. In the latter the preposition by itself has the value of the adjectival participle

*opposed*, from which it structurally differs in that it does not require the connecting preposition *to*.

Similarly in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct preposition-groups may denote a state, the same distinction as to the semantic value of the preposition being observable as they exhibit as nominal part of the predicate. Compare *He was quite at ease* with *He sat quite at ease at his writing-desk*, or *He is against the measure* with *He declared himself against the measure*.

c) The above are extreme cases. Mostly, however, the preposition is neither practically meaningless, as in *at ease*, nor fully significant as in *against the measure*. Thus in *The house is for sale* the preposition-group may, indisputably, be understood to stand for one notion, but it is equally indisputable that the preposition by itself conveys a distinct notion, approximately the same as that of *intended for*. In fact *for* may, in a manner, be regarded as short for *intended for*. Similarly in *He had been at the fortifying of the old castle* (G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. III, 65), *at* has practically the value of a weakened *present at*.

The relative semantic significance of the prepositions is, to some extent, reflected by the varied degrees of stress with which they are uttered in speech (104).

d) The above reasoning leads to the conclusion that prepositions in predicative word-groups, if at all significant, are, functionally, very much like adjectives, the prepositions placed after the latter serving, as has been observed in 45, no further purpose than that of linking them to their complement.

No real functional difference can be established between distinctly significant prepositions forming part of predicative preposition-groups, and adjectives that are followed by their complements without any intervening prepositional link, such as *worth* as in *no trouble worth the name*, or *(un)worthy* as in *(un)worthy our esteem*. The prepositional function of *(un)like*, and *near* with its degrees of comparison, has already been adverted to in §§ 19—32. Also the rather numerous prepositional phrases which may throw off the preposition *of* or *to*, mentioned in 33, are in their denuded form indistinguishable from ordinary simple prepositions of some semantic significance.

Here follow a few quotations with distinctly significant prepositions:  
*about*: I was just about falling into a doze, when he suddenly started up. POE, *A Gordon Pym*, Ch. I, 11.

What have you been about so long? KINGLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XIV, 118a.

*above*: He is above mean actions. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*

You must not be above taking advice. MRS. GASK., *Mr. Har.'s Conf.*, Ch. XIV, (429).

*after*: What tricks are you after now? SHER, *Riv.*, V, I, (276).

*down*: She sailed right against wind and tide, which were both down the river. WASH. IRV., *Storm-ship* (STOE., *Handl.*, I, 85).

*from*: Anything so overdone is from the purpose of playing. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 22.

Riccabocca was from home. LYTTON, *My Novel*, IV, Ch. XXII, 282.

(*upon*): Christmas was upon them before half she wanted to do was accomplished. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. II, 34.

There was a cry that the enemy was on them. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 138 *b*.

(*with*): I will take you back to the hotel, where you can order lunch, and rest, and by the time it is ready, I shall be with you. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. VII, 46.

Criticism in London is nothing better than voicing public opinion or crying with the majority. GEORGE MOORE (*Manch. Guard.*, 12, 1924, 95 *b*).

47. a) As attributive adjuncts preposition-groups answer to adverbial adjuncts, as in *the books on the table, the pictures on the wall*; or to prepositional objects, as in *his interference in the business, his persistence in the scheme*, or to nominal predicates, as in *his remarks about her conduct, a speech above his understanding*.

b) When corresponding to adverbial adjuncts they may be interpreted to stand for undeveloped participle-clauses (Ch. XX, 3). Thus *the books on the table* and *the pictures on the wall* may be expanded into, respectively, *the books lying on the table* and *the pictures hanging on the wall*.

Although in such combinations as the above some such verbs as *lying* or *hanging* are readily suggested, and are, indeed, indispensable for the right understanding of the relation of the two nouns, it must not be thought that their absence is a form of ellipsis, due to suppression of some element.

c) In the case of the attributive preposition-group answering to a nominal predicate, the preposition may have the full meaning of an adjective or adjectival participle. Thus *about* and *above* are not less significant in *He made remarks about my conduct*, and *He made a speech above my understanding* than they are in *He made remarks which were about my conduct* and *He made a speech which was above my understanding*.

d) A separate group of attributive preposition-groups is formed by those in which the preposition expresses a relation which can, or could, also be indicated by inflection; as in *the town-residence of the Prime Minister* for a genitive, *I reminded him of his promise to his father* for an Old-English dative.

e) In the majority of cases the preposition used in an attributive preposition-group is determined by the construction required by the verb or adjective from which the noun modified by the the adjunct is derived. In not a few cases, however, such a noun undergoes the influence of other nouns of an analogous meaning, and exchanges its proper construction for that of the latter. To give an instance: *dislike*, corresponding to a transitive verb, is, naturally, mostly construed with *of*, but we also find it construed with *to* and *for*. This is shown by the following examples:

- i. It was this jealousy which at the first occasioned Walter's dislike of Aram. LYTTON, *Eug. Aram*, Ch. IX., 64.
- ii. I have a vast dislike to puppies — quite a horror of them. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXXVII, 301.
- iii. He took a strong dislike for Brother Jonathan. MARZIALS, *Life of Dick*, Ch. VI, 78.

Full discussion of this subject, of pre-eminently practical importance, is held over for a projected book, for which the present writer has been collecting the necessary materials for a considerable number of years.

f) Sometimes the head-word of the attributive preposition-group, for example, such a vague word as *things*, seems to be suppressed, the suppression giving to the adjunct the apparent function of an adverbial adjunct or prepositional object; thus in:

She forgets about me. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 20.  
 Pray do not mind about me. *ib.*

### Prepositions of a mainly Constructional Value.

48. Some prepositions are found in constructions that may be regarded as the analytical equivalents of what in Present or Old English, or some cognate language, is, or at least may be, synthetically expressed by inflection. In them the semantic value is often of the slightest, the meaning conveyed by the combinations following rather from the nature of the word or word-groups and the way in which they are placed together. A similar, mainly constructional, value may be observed in these prepositions in some other combinations not corresponding to actual inflectional constructions but bearing a close resemblance to them. The most important of such prepositions are *of*, *to*, *for* and *by*: it is especially the three first which fully deserve detailed discussion.

#### The Preposition *of*.

49. a) The most important of the mainly constructional functions of *of* is that in which it serves to express the same relations as are denoted by the genitive; i. e. the *of*-adjunct may replace:
- 1) the genitive of possession. Compare *the horse of the miller* with *the miller's horse*.
  - 2) the genitive of origin. Compare *the nest of the pheasant* with *the pheasant's nest*.
  - 3) the genitive of agency or subjective genitive. Compare *the reign of Elizabeth* with *Elizabeth's reign*.
  - 4) the genitive of undergoing or objective genitive. Compare *the loss of his daughter* with *his daughter's loss*.
  - 5) the genitive of measure. Compare *the distance of a mile* with *a mile's distance*.

6) the genitive of apposition or specializing. Compare the *island of Albion* with *Albion's isle*.

It should be added that the *of*-construction and the genitive construction are far from being regularly interchangeable. For discussion of the relative prevalence of either one or the other see Ch. XXIII.

b) In many cases a noun used to specialize what is expressed by the preceding noun is placed after it without a connecting *of*. It is then said to be in apposition to the latter. In Ch. IV, 12 ff an attempt has been made to describe the connexions in which the connecting *of* is used or dispensed with.

c) The *of*-construction has, besides, taken the place of some genitive constructions which were in vogue in Old English, but have long since ceased to be current forms of speech: i. e. the partitive genitive, the adverbial genitive, and the genitive which was governed by certain verbs and adjectives.

Some interesting instances of the *of*-construction, several of which have already been discussed in various places in the preceding pages of this grammar, may be briefly touched on in this place.

50. a) Partitive *of* is met with a) before a genitive or an absolute possessive pronoun; e. g.: *a friend of my brother's*, *a friend of mine* For comment see Ch. XXIV, 33—34; Ch. XXXIII, 23—25.

b) after various pronoun and numerals, i. e. after:

1) the interrogative *what* (Ch. XXXVIII, 8, *b*; also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*; and 27, Obs. I); e. g.: *I know not what of harmony pervaded her whole person*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. VIII, 85.

2) the condensed relative *what* (Ch. XXXIX, 24, *b*); e. g.: *Distribute what else thou hast of goods*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 286.

3) definite, and plural indefinite numerals; e. g.: *two*, (*all*, *both*, *few*, *many*, *several* or *some*) *of the students (us or them) had scars on their faces*.

Note especially the idiom in *There were five of us* and its variations (Ch. XLII, 4, *f*, 2).

4) the indefinite pronoun *all* (Ch. XL, 3, Obs. III; also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*); e. g.: *But the Elizabeth they saw was far from being all of Elizabeth*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

5) the indefinite pronoun *aught* (Ch. XL, 24, Note *ε*); e. g.: *I would not aught of false*. TEN, *Princ.*, V, 392

6) the indefinite numeral *enough* (Ch. XL, 47, *b*, Note *α*); e. g.: *The whole matter was enveloped in enough of doubt and mystery to leave them in endurance of the most intense suspense*. DICK, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XLI, 473.

7) the indefinite numerals *little*, *less* and *least* (Ch. XL, 67, Obs. II; 77, Obs. I; 83, Obs. I; also XXIX, 26, *b*); e. g.: i. He has shown me very little of trust or friendship for the last few weeks. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 985

ii. Some feelings are to mortals given, | With less of earth in them than heaven. SCOTT, *Lady. II*, xxii.



iii. At last it was the turn of the good old-fashioned dance which has the least of vanity and the most of merriment in it. G. ELIOT, *MILL*, VI, Ch. X, 407.

8) the indefinite numerals *much*, *more* and *most* (Ch. XL, 93, Obs. III; 100, Obs. II; 105, Note  $\beta$ ; also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*); i. A fine sight, carrying in it much of majesty, was the procession as it passed through the streets. Mrs. WOOD, *The Channings*, Ch. I, 1.

ii. The manner in which the old servant treated Ruth had in it far more of respect than there had been the day before. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XIV, 102.

iii. In her daughter there was, perhaps, the most of genius. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6065, 5*a*.

9) the indefinite pronouns *anything*, *everything*, *nothing* and *something* (Ch. XLIII, 37); e. g.: i. Have you seen anything of Miss H. lately? Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 144.

ii. You call that which gives everything there is of beauty — everything there is of sweetness — to the life of man — you call it your enemy? FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. XVIII, 154.

iii. There is nothing of tragedy about her. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIV, 140

iv. He was something of a humourist and dry-joker. SCOTT, *Mid-Loth.*, Ch. V, 58.

10) the indefinite pronoun or numeral *none* (Ch. XL, 142); e. g.: i. You'll have none of the trouble. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XIII, 97.

ii. They none of them spoke of it for fear of accelerating the event. *Ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 136.

11) the indefinite or relative pronoun *what(so)ever* (Ch. XLI, 8, Obs. IV; also Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*); e. g.: Whatever of warmth and love the deceased might have had, .. he had shut them up within himself. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29

Our bond is not the bond of man and wife. | This good is in it, whatsoe'er of ill, | It can be broken easier. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1200.

Note. It may be observed that in many constructions partitive *of* might be dropped after the above indefinite numerals, the dropping changing their absolute into conjoint use, but not affecting the meaning of the combination. Thus *all (or both) of these women* = *all (or both) these women*; *enough (little, less, least, much, more or most) of patience* = *enough (little, less, least, much, more or most) patience*.

c) after a superlative before a noun modified by *any* (Ch. XL, 18, Obs. IX); e. g.:

The Daily Chronicle has the largest circulation of any daily paper in London.

d) before the indefinite *it* in the colloquial expression *to have a good (bad, excellent, etc.) time of it*; e. g.:

You will have a bad quarter of an hour of it. O. E. D., s.v. *of*, 25, *b*.

e) before the numeral *all*, whether conjoint or absolute, followed or preceded by a superlative; e. g.:

i. The New Testament was of all books the most unfamiliar to me. MAR. COR., *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 97.

ii. That's the hardest thing of all. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 68.

Note. From the above the following peculiar constructions have been evolved, in most of which the superlative is understood:

1) *of all things* (or some other plural noun), the combination serving as an intensive of the predicate, and practically equivalent to *exceedingly*, or a word(-group) of like import; e. g.: We like your company of all things. GOLDS., *The Stoops*, II, (189).

2) *of all men* (or some other plural noun), often followed by *in the world* (or some such phrase), the combination serving to denote the fact that the predication applies pre-eminently to (a) particular person(s) or thing(s); e. g. He smiled rather bitterly as he thought that he of all men in the world should be the person upon whom the care of this marriage had fallen. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 205

3) *of all others* (or *other* + plural noun), preceded or followed by a superlative; e. g.: Of all other affections it is the most importune. BAC., *Es.*, *Envy*.

4) *of all others* (or *other* + plural noun), without a superlative, in similar functions as those mentioned above under 2) and 3) respectively; e. g.: i. It is a time, of all others, when Want is keenly felt, and Abundance rejoices. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, I, 10.

ii. It is exceedingly unfortunate that they should have chosen this night, of all others, for such a purpose. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 145.

For further comment and illustration see Ch. XL, 11, Obs. IV.

51. The head-word of a preposition-group with partitive *of* may sometimes be assumed to be understood, the context suggesting as a word to be supplied:

a) *some* or *something* (Ch. XL, 178); as in:

He drank of the wine. Bible, *Gen.*, IX, 21.

He took of the stones of that place. *ib.*, XVIII, 12.

b) the partly numerical, partly pronominal *one* (Ch. XL, 161, *b*, Note); as in:

i. Wordsworth was also of this party. *Lit. World*, 1897, 150 *b*.

ii. Hers was not of those impassive faces which have the beauty of a marble bust. TROL., *The Warden*, Ch. XI, 140.

c) some such noun as (a) *member(s)*; thus especially in such expressions as *to be sworn of a college*, *to be entered of a college* (O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 46).

He had not been sworn of the Council. MAC., *Hist.*, XXIII, v, 83.<sup>1)</sup>

He was sent to London to study the law, and was entered of the Middle Temple. *id.*, *Com. Dram.*, 579 *b*.

George and Rawdon . . were both entered of the same college at Cambridge. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXIV, 370.

52. a) After a superlative the partitive force of *of* is considerably weakened when the following noun stands without the definite article, as in:

Biddy is the wisest of girls. DICK., *Gr. Expect.*, Ch. XVIII, 156.

About this interesting construction and its variations it may, further, be remarked: a) that the noun, mostly a plural, is used in a generalizing

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D.

sense, which in this combination approaches to indefiniteness: hence the frequent dropping of the definite article (Ch. XXXI, 33, Note 1);  $\beta$ ) that, from a semantic point of view, it is not the *of*-adjunct which qualifies the superlative (+ noun), but, the other way about, the superlative (+ noun) that qualifies the noun in the *of*-adjunct;  $\gamma$ ) that the superlative has an intensive force, in other words is rather absolute than relative: *the wisest of girls*, for example, being almost equivalent to *a very wise girl*.

The idiom is a very common one, so that a few examples will be deemed sufficient illustration:

I am in the lovingest of tempers. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XL, 289 *a*.

Francis Bell was the most famous of lovers. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 88.

There, on the morning of Sunday, the tenth of June, .. was born the most unfortunate of princes. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VIII, 179.

The marquis was not in the best of humours. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. X, 113.

She was one of the sweetest of young women. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. VI, 51.

*b*) The construction admits of some grammatical variation, as is shown by the following examples:

1) Mrs. Baddeley and I are the best of good friends. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Jes. Bride*, Ch. XXIV, 214.

Monte Carlo .. is a beautiful mountain above the bluest of blue seas. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/5, 1925, 54 *a*.

Dickens can have been in London but the fewest of few days. MARZIALS, *Life of Dick.*, Ch. VIII, 99.

2) "Now, regarding your respected father," said Lightfoot, bringing him to a subject they had expressly appointed to discuss: always the most slippery eel of eels of subjects to lay hold of [etc] DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. XII, 221.

3) He (sc. Dr. Johnson) considered himself the best of company. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. II, 14.

"No bad news I hope." — "The worst of news." SHAW, *Phil.*, III, (119).

To starve and stint your own soldiers .. is the meanest of policy. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 74, 185.

Both appeared to be in the best of health. *Times*, No. 1809, 698 *c*.

This would be denounced .. as the rankest of treason. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6389, 1 *b*.

4) I have been obliged to content myself through life with saying what I mean in the plainest of plain language. HUXLEY, *Autobiography*.

*c*) The superlative is sometimes replaced by a noun that has the value of a superlative; thus in:

i. Archibald Forbes, the prince of war-correspondents. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 4971, 613 *b*. (= the most eminent of war-correspondents.)

I lived with a king of men and did not know his greatness. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, III, 157.

ii. He had undergone the ordinary transitions from the height of conviviality to the depth of misery, and from the depth of misery to the height of conviviality. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 12.

Note *a*) The absence of the article before the noun in the *of*-adjunct does not always impart a distinctly absolute character to the superlative. This function can hardly be ascribed to that in:

The greatest of faults is to be conscious of none. CARLYLE, *Hero-Worship*, II, 43.

The best of women (I have heard my grandmother say) are hypocrites. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

Rotterdam is the most enterprising of Dutch cities. *Lit. World*.

Few of us realize how recently the changes have begun which have made London the healthiest of the unhealthiest of cities. *Graph*.

*β)* The preposition *of* has its full partitive force after a purely relative superlative, the definite article, whether generalizing or specializing, being retained; thus in *the Last of the Barons, the Last of the Mohicans*, etc. Similarly in:

(He only procured) a trifle occasionally by obtaining appearance at one or other of the commonest of the minor theatres. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 24.

Man is the shortest-lived of the beasts. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3831, 428 *a*.

53. *a)* A similar function may be performed by a noun that is identical with that in the *of*-adjunct, the combination indicating the most eminent, conspicuous or characteristic specimen of a species.

I remember him a buck of bucks when that coat first came out to Calcutta. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 97.

My old chief, Richardson, is a man of men, but troubles himself little with anything but detail zoölogy. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XIV, 137.

You are a dear of dears to put it that way. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XXI, 268.

Thackeray was an Englishman of Englishmen, a Londoner of Londoners. MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. XI, 99.

I was confronted with a difficulty of difficulties. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, III, Ch. XI, ix, 232.

*b)* Also this construction admits of considerable variation, as appears from the following examples:

1) Dad said it (sc. the frock) was too much of a Vanity Fair of a vanity for war-time. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XX, 241

2) The land question is the question of questions in Russia. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 224, 308 *a*

3) The youth, the strength of Glaucus had conquered; but the freshness of blood and soul – the life of life – its glory and its zest, were gone for ever. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, IV, Ch. VII, 109 *b*.

4) He was a Tommy of the Tommies. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XXVII, 208.

Without question he was a Puritan of the Puritans. ALDEN SAMPSON, *Stud. in Milton*, I, Ch. VII, 56.

Anatole France .. is a Parisian of the Parisians. *Bookman*, No. 2691, 249 *a*.

Lord Hugh Cecil now sits on the Front Opposition bench, and is a Diehard of the Diehards. *Manch. Guard*, VI, 8, 144 *b*.

5) We held this conversation in a low voice, well knowing my guardian's ears to be the sharpest of the sharp. DICK., *Great Exp.*, Ch. XXXVI, 347.

6) Kipling was violent English of the English and full of the unruly fires of our Saxon ancestors. R. THURSTON HOPKINS, *Rudy. Kipl.*, *Introd.*

7) Flower of the world's garden – Fountain of Delight – Italy of Italy – beautiful, benign Campania! LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. II, 64 *b*.

*c)* Sometimes it is not the height of a quality that is expressed by the above construction, so much as the innermost part of a

locality invested with a quality in the highest degree imaginable; thus in the Hebraism *the Holy of Holies*, and in *the Holiest of Holiests*, coined by DICKENS.

Monseigneur was in his inner room, his sanctuary of sanctuaries, the Holiest of Holiests, to the crowd of worshippers in the suite of rooms without. DICK., *Tale of Two Cities*, Ch. VIII, 122. (Observe that *sanctuary of sanctuaries* is of the same pattern as *Holy of Holies*.)

A similar meaning, but without a distinct thought of a quality, underlies the well-known expression *in one's heart of hearts*, according to the O. E. D., originally, and more correctly, *in one's heart of heart* (or *heart's heart*).

Do not you know in your heart of hearts that she was not suited to be happy as my wife, — or to make me happy? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXX, 296.

54. a) What in Latin grammars is styled a *genetivus qualitatis*, as in *vir magnæ virtutis*, *cervus vasti corporis*, is not without representatives in Modern English.

Such a combination as *a moment's complete silence* may, indeed, at the first blush, be felt as equivalent to *a moment of complete silence*, *of complete silence* forming, indeed, the modifying element from a semantic point of view; but, on being more closely looked into, will be found to stand for *a complete silence of a moment*, in which *of a moment*, the representative of the genitive, is the modifying element from a grammatical point of view. Also in *a lady's man*, an instance of what in an earlier part of this grammar has been described as a classifying genitive (Ch. XXIV, 7), the genitive has an indubitably qualifying function. Both of the above word-groups may, accordingly, with justice be said to afford instances of a genitive of quality.

b) In the majority of cases, however, an *of*-adjunct, and not a genitive, is made to do the duty of the Latin *genetivus qualitatus*; thus in such combinations as *a man of tact*, *a text-book of authority*, *a flag of three colours*, *a people of many languages*. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *of*, XII; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 94, 4; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 390. The following quotations contain instances of such combinations:

Say that a blunt old Captain, a man not of words but of actions, | Offers his hand and his heart, the hand and the heart of a soldier. LONGF., *Miles Standish*, II.

The old world of fact and of prose lay thousands of miles behind them. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVII, 132 b.

Note. Many of such *of*-adjuncts admit of being replaced by an attributive adjective or noun. Thus the above combinations are respectively equivalent to *a tactful man*, *an authoritative text-book*, *a tricolour flag*, *a polyglot people*. See the O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 38.

Among the adjectival equivalents special mention may be made of the numerous formations in *ed*, such as *skilled*, *talented*, etc.: *a skilled* (or *talented*) *man* = *a man of skill* (or *talent*). Many adjectives thus

formed admit, however, of another interpretation. For discussion see Ch. LVII, 42—43.

c) The *of*-adjunct may contain a numeral, as in *a house of four rooms, a house of four stories, a flower of many colours, a novel of three volumes, a comedy of five acts*.

Note. Also in this case the *of*-adjunct can often be replaced by a parasynthetic compound with *ed*, a compound in which the unmodified noun is preceded by the numeral sometimes taking its place; e.g.: *a four-roomed house, a four storied house, a many-coloured (or multi-coloured) flower; a three-volume novel, a five-act comedy*. For further details about these and allied constructions see Ch. XXIV, 56; Ch. XXV, 31 f; Ch. LVII, Obs. IV—VI.

d) The *of*-adjunct may also be apprehended to denote a quality in such combinations as *the House of Lords, the Chamber of Deputies*, etc., although many would regard it to stand for a genitive of possession. Similarly in *a doctor of medicine* we may understand *of medicine* to indicate a quality; but in *a student of medicine* the same word-group is distinctly felt to represent an objective genitive, in like manner as is the case with the *of*-adjunct in *a teacher of music, an importer of cigars*, etc.

e) The *of*-adjunct sometimes stands without a head-word, various nouns being, in this case, suggested by the context to supply its function; e.g.:

1) *man, woman, person, member*, etc. or their plurals; thus in:

You will find two of a face as soon as two of a mind. PROV.

When I see you, I feel that I am indeed of power. LYTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. X, 87 a.

He was of distinguished appearance. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, Ch. 1, 3

But any such noun could hardly be supplied in the case of such sentences as:

You will feel more of a man afterwards. MARIE CORELLI, *Sot. of Sat.*, I, Ch. X, 140.

She was still too much of a provincial to have caught the proper tone of conversation. (?), *Miss Providence*, Ch. XXII.

Note. Of such a sentence as *He weighs two of John* (= He weighs twice as much as John) the best grammatical explanation seems to be *He weighs (as much as) two persons' of John's weight*, which would represent *of John* as an adjunct of quality. See also Ch. XLII, 4, f, 1); and compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 5.59. Of the same pattern is:

She's a warm-hearted girl ... She is worth two of Mr. Richards. MRS. GASKELL, *Ruth*, Ch. XVII, 128.

2) *thing, matter*, or their plurals; thus in:

This is all stiff and of a piece with Houghton's description of the father of Keats. BOOKMAN, 1892, 47 a.

3) a preceding or following noun, or the indefinite pronoun *one* as a substitute for such a noun (Ch. XL, 161); thus in:

i. All their proceedings were of a piece with this demand. *Mac., Hist.*, I. Ch. II, 232.

(The) proudest royal houses are but of yesterday when compared with the line of the Supreme Pontiffs. *id., Popes*, (542 *a*).

The information he picked up in that country was of the slightest. *Punch*, No. 3729, 520.

The court was of the narrowest. *Dick., Christm. Carol*, I, 5.

I consider your expression of the least ceremonious. *Ch. Brontë, Vilette*, Ch. II, 15.

For further illustration see Ch. XXX, 44, Note III; and compare the O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 46, *b*.

Note. Separate mention may be made of *of*-adjuncts: 1) which denote a particular (tinge of a) colour; e. g. those in:

"What's the matter?" said Uriah turning of a deadly colour. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 287 *a*.

The agitation and surprise of meeting him were fading away, leaving his face of an ashy whiteness. *Mrs. Wood, East Lynne*, I, 330.

The distant hills were painted of a deep lilac. *Mrs. Craik, A Hero*, 13.

2) which have the value of present participles and are preceded by the adverb *all* (Ch. LVII, 27, *b*, 3); e. g. those in:

If this take wind, the house will quickly be all of a flame. *GOLDSM., Good-nat. Man*, IV.

I eats well, an' I drinks well, an' I sleeps well. But when I sees a job of work — there, I'm all of a tremble. *Punch*, 1898, 22.

55. For discussion of adverbial phrases in which *of* supplies the place of an Old-English genitive, see Ch. LVII, 12, Obs. V.

56. There are numerous verbs, many of which governed a genitive in Old English, that are construed with *of*. See the O. E. D. s. v. *of*, IX, 29. A good many of these verbs are now also used transitively or construed with other prepositions. Discussion of this pre-eminently practical subject is held over for a contemplated work dealing with the construction of verbs, adjectives and nouns.

57. Constructional *of* is also found after numerous adjectives, most of which governed a genitive in Old English. See O. E. D., s. v. *of*, IX, 30. In the case of several of these, *of* has been wholly or partially replaced by other prepositions. Details will be given in the contemplated work referred to above. Some illustration is found in Ch. LIV.

58. Apart from the above connexions *of* is of a merely constructional force in a good many more combinations which require discussion in this place. We find it:

*a*) before nouns indicating the form, department or respect as to which the person or thing indicated by a preceding noun is distinguished. Thus *He was the greatest traveller of a prince*

(O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 24, a) has approximately the same meaning as *He was the greatest traveller as princes go*, or *He was the greatest traveller in the person of a prince*.

The idiom is common only when from a semantic point of view the noun in the *of*-adjunct represents the notion qualified, that of the preceding noun the qualifying notion, as in *that fool of a man* (almost = *that foolish man*). Further instances given by the O. E. D. are *an angel of a woman*, *a gem of a poem*, *a duck of a hat* (colloquial). A good many examples are given in Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. VI. Compare also DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakkunst, III, § 117, 1<sup>o</sup>; DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 128, 5; ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 96.

A few more instances will, it is hoped, be acceptable in this place.

Her round pillar of a throat (was) whiter than ever. MRS. GASK., COUS. Phil., I, 19.

You have a devil of a temper. THACK., VAN. Fair, I, Ch. XXXIV, 370.

You made a fool of a mistake about her. HARDY, Jude, V, Ch. VIII, 399.

The audience .. still kept up their storm of applause. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXV, 235.

Note. Instead of the above a construction with *and* is sometimes used by way of hendiadys; thus in:

You acted like a man and a trump. THACK., PEND., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 401. (= a trump of a man.)

b) after nouns denoting some category or group, such as *class*, *order*, *species*, *sort*, *kind*, *variety*, *tint*, etc.; as in *a species (kind or sort) of flying-machine*, *a class of persons*, *a variety of domestic cat*, *a tint of yellow*, etc. For illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 67, b.

The trees were just turning a faint tint of yellow. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. I, 13.

Note. It is worth observing that a certain depreciative force often clings to the construction with *sort*, as in:

"Mine was not a poet, such as Dr. Goldsmith," said Garrick. "Mine was only a sort of poet." FRANKF. MOORE, Jes. Bride, Ch. III, 29.

This depreciative force is unmistakable when *sort* (or *kind*), or the plural *sorts*, is placed in the *of*-adjunct. Compare Ch. XXXI, 67, a, Note I; Corrections and Additions, page 1344; also O. E. D., s. v. *kind*, 14, c. This idiom seems to have only recently obtained general currency.

i. Your poor uncle has got a situation of a sort for the young man. BIRMINGHAM, Adv. of Dr. Whitty, Ch. VII, 147.

My coming down here on this beastly winter's day on an empty stomach .. is luck of a sort, I suppose, eh? PERCY WHITE, To-day, Ch. III, 22.

ii. The woman gets .. what she wanted .., a husband of sorts. Athen. No. 4542, 502 b.

What my man makes, I cannot say, but he is a king of sorts, even if not actually a Bethlehem boss. Punch, No. 3972, 131 a.

c) before a noun indicating the substance or material of which



the thing denoted by the preceding noun is made or composed, the *of*-adjunct being often interchangeable with an adjective or adnominal noun; thus in: *a chair of wood* (= a wooden chair), *a floor of tiles* (= a tile floor) For further comment and illustration see Ch. XXIII, 6—7.

d). before a noun denoting the elements of which a thing is made up, as in *an army of fifty thousand men*, *a reward of fifty pounds*, *a family of a dozen persons*, *a mass of withered leaves*.

e) before a noun denoting the thing to which the quality indicated by a preceding adjective refers in particular, as in *swift of foot*, *weak of mind*, *strong of limb*, etc., now literary and somewhat archaic, except in some few phrases, such as *blind of one eye*, *lame of one leg* (O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 35).

Note. a) The combination is often exchangeable for a parasynthetic compound with *ed*; thus *weak of mind* = *weak-minded*.

β) *Of* has the same force: 1) before a gerund, after such adjectives as *slow*, *quick*, *hard*, as in: *slow of understanding*, *quick of catching cold*, *hard of hearing*. Except for the above, *at* or *in* are now mostly used in these combinations.

2) before *age* in such a combination as *ten years of age*; also in *He is tall of his years*, in which, however, *for* mostly takes the place of *of*; thus in:

The boy is a stripling of fifteen — slight and tall of his years. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XV, 308.

59. Of an utterly different description is the force of *of* in the formation of the passive voice. For a discussion of this *of*, as compared with *by*, the usual preposition, see Ch. XLVII, Obs. I. Similar in nature to this *of* is that before a gerund or noun of action in such combinations as *difficulties of his own creating* or *creation*, discussed in Ch. LVI, 13, d. The O. E. D. (s. v. *of*, 41) gives the following examples: *trees of 'our planting* (= trees planted by us), *vegetables of his own growing*, *a canoe of my son's construction*, *the new nobility of Henry VII's creation*.

### The Preposition *to*.

60. The main constructional function of *to* is that in which it expresses the relations which in Old English were indicated, and in various languages are still indicated, by dative inflection.

Whereas in Old English, as in other highly inflected languages, word-order was only a secondary device to distinguish between the person- and the thing-object of a verb, outwardly, in the majority of cases, clearly recognizable by different inflections, it has come to be used as the main grammatical expedient for this purpose in Modern English. Sometimes it is assisted by certain prepositions, mostly *to*, to indicate

the person-object. In Ch. III, 27—35 an attempt has been made to give a survey of those cases in which *to*, or some other preposition, must or may be used.

61. *To* may, in a manner, be regarded as a substitute for genitive inflection when it is a constituent of an adjunct modifying a relational noun used predicatively. By a relational noun is meant a noun which requires or suggests another word, a noun or pronoun, to make the sense complete. Of this description are *brother*, *sister*, *father*, *mother* and other nouns denoting a relation of kinship; *apprentice*, *secretary*, *servant*, *slave*, *victim* and other nouns indicating an intersocial relation; *enemy*, *foe* and *friend* expressing a relation of sentiment. Thus there is no semantic difference between *He was secretary to Mr. A* (MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 15, N), *He was Mr. A's secretary* and *He was secretary of Mr. A*.

The reason why *to* may be used in sentences of this type is that nouns when used predicatively often bear some resemblance to nouns and adjectives which in like contexts govern an adjunct with *to*; thus, for example, in *This is a mystery to me*, *This is sacred to me*. Ample illustration of *to*-adjuncts corresponding to genitives and, to a certain extent, varying with *of*-adjuncts, has been given in Ch. XXIV, 36. Compare also Ch. III, 7—11; Ch. XXXI, 45—46; and also O. E. D., s. v. *to*, 17.

62. The number of adjectives and related adverbs and nouns which may be construed with *to*, mostly representing a dative in Old English, is well-nigh endless. Many are mentioned in the O. E. D., s. v. *to*, A, 33.

Under certain conditions these words are construed with *for* as another representative of the old dative (66). In some cases, practice is wavering between *for* and *to*, no appreciable variation of meaning being involved in the choice between the two prepositions. Thus in the following quotation the two prepositions might be transposed without affecting the meaning of the sentence:

His (sc. the Prince's) long journey has been both useful and instructive for himself and valuable to the Empire. Westm. Gaz., No. 8515, 3a.

Sometimes we even find one and the same nominal successively construed with the different prepositions in the course of a single sentence or sequence of sentences; thus in:

All things are lawful unto me, but all things are not expedient; all things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any. Bible, Cor., A, VI, 12.

"Cousin Harry." says my lady, "you mustn't stay longer in this dull place, but make a name to yourself, and for us too. THACK., Es m., I, Ch. IX, 92.

I can well understand what a shock it must be to you; we have just been saying it must be as bad for you as it would be to us. Mrs. GASK, A Dark Night's Work, Ch. XIII, (559).

We can amend the unfairness which winks, under forms of law, at the kind

of betting most convenient for rich gamblers, while restricting the gambling convenient to the poor. *Manch. Guard.*, 111, 1924, 23 *b*.

Observe also that *(un)becoming*, which is mostly construed with a complement with or without *to* (Ch. LIV, 6), may also take *for*; thus in: He has no taste for any of those field-sports which were not considered unbecoming for a clergyman forty years ago. *BUTLER*, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. XVI, 68.

The wavering between these prepositions may be due to the fact that the original meanings of *to* (direction) and *for* (*before*, naturally passing into that of *in behalf of*), have become obliterated.

63. *To* may also be considered to have a merely constructional function when it is used as a kind of link between a predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. VI) and its head-word. In this case it does, indeed, the same duty as the conjunction *as*. According to the O. E. D. (s. v. *to*, 11, *b*), the use of this *to* is now obsolete or archaic, except in certain phrases, as *to take to wife*, *to call to witness*, etc."

Charles had taken to wife Catharine, Princess of Portugal. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, 1, Ch. II, 187.

According to the above pronouncement of the O. E. D., the use of *to* after *to have* as in the following examples has ceased to be current English:

I know we shall have him well to friend. *SHAK.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 143.

Wilt thou have this man to thy wedded husband? *Book of Com. Pray.*

He hath a pretty young man to his son. *BUNYAN*, *Pilg. Progg.*, I, (152).

The counsellor had two sweet girls to his daughters. *GOLDSM.* (*W. ASHE KING*, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. III, 42).

The man who gets her will have a jewel to a wife. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, 1, Ch. XI, 117.

Give me thy daughter to wife. *TEN.*, *Com. of Arth.*, 97.

Note. Instead of this *to* Present English has *as* or *for*, as in:

i. We had as an enemy a past master in the tactics of mounted infantry. *Times*.

ii. You will have Miss Sharp one day for your relation. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, 1, Ch. XIV, 141.

64. From denoting originally an adverbial relation, chiefly one of purpose, *to* has come to be used as a meaningless prefix of infinitives in functions without a trace of any adverbial relation.

The reason why *to* is placed before an infinitive where it has no semantic value may be the fact that it affords a means of telling its grammatical nature in innumerable cases in which this form of the verb is outwardly indistinguishable from the corresponding noun. This is borne out by the fact that in connexions in which the infinitive is intimately connected with a preceding verb, so as to form a kind of complex predicate with it, *to* is dispensed with, no sign being needed to show its verbal nature.

As has been shown in Ch. LV, there is variable practice in not a few cases when no adverbial relation is implied; thus after *to need* (6—15), *to dare* (16—31); some phrases with the preterite conditional *had* (32);

*to come, to go* and *to help* (33—34); various verbs governing an accusative + infinitive (35—43); the conjunctions *but, as* and *than*. Similarly in certain elliptical sentences (49—52) *to* is often dispensed with. Nor is *to* at all regularly placed before the second (third, etc.) of a succession of infinitives governed by the same word, even when a relation of purpose is in question.

### The Preposition *for*.

65. Like *to*, *for* is a frequent substitute for dative inflection. When it has this function with verbs, it stands before the (pro)noun which indicates the person(s) to whose advantage or disadvantage the action expressed by the verb takes place, its area of incidence being rather rigidly distinguished from that of *to*. Compare the following examples with and without *for*:

i. Who bought it for us? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XI, 59 *a*.

Italy won for herself, with her national unity, a place amongst the leading Powers of Europe. *Times*.

His works gained for him a great reputation. *Haz. Annual*.

ii. Three guineas will buy me a couple of pair of trousers. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

His learning at once won him the friendship of Johnson. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, X, 770.

66. So far as nominals or nominal equivalents are concerned, the analytical equivalents of the dative with *to* and *for* respectively are in many connexions used without much, if any difference in meaning. See the examples in 62.

As has already been observed in Ch. III, 11, there is a tendency of using *for* in preference to *to* when an infinitive follows, the use of the former instead of the latter more or less distinctly involving an interesting grammatical distinction which, as the following discussions will show, has far-reaching consequences. The fact is that the *for*-adjuncts are felt to be less intimately intertwined in the texture of the sentence than the *to*-adjuncts and are, consequently, less strictly apprehended as indispensable elements of the head-sentence than the latter. See also Ch. XLV, 22, *b*. Thus if we compare *It would be quite a pleasure to me to serve so good a neighbour* (LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 90) with *It would be quite a pleasure for me* etc., we find that in reading the first sentence aloud there is a slight pause after *me*, whereas in doing the same with the second, some slight pause would be observed after *pleasure*. The fact is that the *for*-adjunct is more distinctly felt to contain the subjective element of the infinitive-clause than the *to*-adjunct. Consequently it is apprehended as somewhat independent of the head-sentence

A difference similar to that between the two above examples may be traced more or less distinctly between those of the following pairs of sentences:

- i. It will be very disagreeable to the Boers to receive terms of peace at the hands of Lord Milner and Mr. Chamberlain. Lord ROSEBURY, *Speech*.
- ii. It was very disagreeable for them to come down with their portmanteaus. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.
- i. It will be hardly convenient to me to release you from your engagement. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. VIII.
- ii. I came to inquire if it would be convenient for you to accompany me on my morning's round. Mrs. GASK, *Mr. Har. Conf.*, Ch. II, (397).
- i. The older a man gets, the more difficult it is to him to retain a believing conception of his own death. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. V, 34.
- ii. It is difficult for a man to believe in the advantage of a truth which will disclose him to be a liar. *id.*, *Broth. Jac.*, III, (543).
- i. When we are subdued by sickness, it seems possible to us to fulfil pledges which [etc.]. *id.*, *Mill*, II, Ch. IX, 240.
- ii. He began to see that it was not possible for him to shine. *id.*, *Broth. Jac.*, III, (528).
- i. I often wonder .. whether it is impossible to their (sc. the men's) natures to retain a constant interest and affection for those they see every day. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 274.
- ii. So long .. as my hands are not tied, it is impossible for me to be depressed. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVI, 369.
- i. It was a pleasure to her .. to see him there. HARDY, *Under the Greenwood Tree*, II, Ch. I, 85.
- ii. It was not displeasing for a nice woman like the tranter's wife to correct him. *ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 74.

67. Whereas in the above examples the comparative independence of the *for*-adjunct is more or less doubtful, it is indisputable in those cases in which *for* appears to have taken the place of another preposition. The prepositions which may be assumed to have been ousted by *for* in the infinitive phrases here referred to are especially *in*, *of* and *with*, all of them in a sense approaching to that of *on the part of*. A few examples illustrating the use of these prepositions without or with an infinitive may precede such as have a *for*-adjunct + infinitive. See also Ch. XVIII, 47, Obs. IV.

- in*: i. It will be generous in you, Lydia. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.  
That is very admirable in you, my dear Dorothea. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. X, 62.
- ii. It was friendly in him to offer to take that trouble. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XI, 78*b*.  
Nor is it natural in her to avoid her fellow-creatures. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. IV, 87.
- of*: i. That is very kind of you. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. IX, 58.
- ii. It is positively weak of you to attach importance to such a trifle. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. X, 140.
- with*: i. He was a great favourite among all the good wives of the village, who, as usual with the amiable sex, took his part in all family squabbles. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 34.
- ii. It was a habit with Scrooge, whenever he became thoughtful, to put his hands in his breeches pockets. DICK., *Christm. Car.*

*for*: It was in vain for me to change the subject. DICK., *Bleak House*. Ch. XXX, 254.

It wasn't considered the part of a gentleman in my time for a man to insult his father. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 223.

It was nothing very surprising for one of the Freely family to have an estate left him. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, II, (523).

It would be ill-bred for me to insist that you must wait. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. VI, 418.

It's not nice for little girls to be so inquisitive. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*. Ch. IX, 189.

It wouldn't be right for you to take away people's pleasure of studying your attire. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. VI, 37.

With his antecedents and surroundings it was the most natural thing in the world for him to have done. BUTLER *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXV, 342.

Note *a*) It will have been observed: 1) that, whereas the adjuncts with *in*, *of* or *with* belong to the head-sentence also when an infinitive-clause follows, the *for*-adjunct, as has already been observed, goes with the infinitive-clause; 2) that *for* when doing vicarious duty for other prepositions cannot be considered to be a substitute for dative inflection, and is practically meaningless.

*β*) The reason why this meaningless *for* may take the place of the above prepositions appears to be that these also are extremely vague in meaning. Nor is it always possible to tell with certainty for which of them *for* is substituted.

*γ*) It is only natural that in the majority of cases the (pro)noun in the *for*-adjunct should indicate a person; thus in all the preceding examples. It may, however, also denote a thing, as in:

Was it new for any thing in this world to be unequal, inconsistent, incongruous — or for chance and circumstance (as second causes) to direct the human fate? JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLVII, 390.

It was a very hard task for his prudence to master his rage and hatred towards poor Jacob. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jac.*, III, (536).

68. The *for*-adjunct as described in the preceding section mostly stands with a nominal predicate. It is common only with certain verbal predicates (Ch. XLV, 3), i. e. such as are found in:

It requires a high level of imagination and intelligence for individuals to realize that strict honesty in their dealings with the community is in the long run profitable to themselves. *Manch. Guard.*, 25 I, 1924, 63 c.

It took, however, some time for his oratory to conquer the House of Commons. *ib.*, 65 d.

69. *a*) A remarkable consequence of the comparative independence of the *for*-adjunct is the possibility of the infinitive-clause being placed before the head-sentence. This is a great advantage, inasmuch as it affords facility of arranging the members of the complex according to their relative importance. The practice appears to be common with verbal as well as nominal predicates. For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 47, Obs. I.

For me to put him to his purgation would perhaps plunge him into far more cholera. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 318.

For the son of a small Irish tradesman to find himself at the age of one-and-twenty flattered by the heir-apparent .. was indeed a dazzling promotion. STEPHEN GWYNN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. I, 21.

For the party .. to vote as it feels inclined from time to time, without regard to the consequences, would be to treat the situation with levity. *Manch. Guard.*, 18.1, 1924, 42 *b*.

*b*) A further step towards syntactic convenience is the capability of such an infinitive-clause with a *for*-adjunct of standing after the conjunctions *as*, *than* and *but*, either in the subjective or objective relation to the predicate in the head-sentence.

i. Nothing so easy as for a young lady to raise her expectations too high. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. VIII, 62.

Are they upon such terms as for her to disclose the real truth? *id.*, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVI, 274.

ii. \* Nothing could be easier, then, than for David on this Sunday afternoon to decline going to church. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, I, (475).

There is nothing meaner than for a man to sneak, and steal a young maid's heart without her people knowing it. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXX, 176.

\*\* I desire nothing more than for her to go. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 60.

iii. \* Nothing was wanted then, but for dear Tom to turn completely round. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XII, 423.

\*\* I see nothing for it but for you and I to constitute ourselves into a permanent "Committee of Public Safety." HUXLEY, *Life & Let.*, I, Ch. VIII, 170.

*c*) The independence of the *for*-adjunct and the purely constructional force of *for* is also unquestionable when the sentence contains also a *to*-adjunct as the representative of a dative, as in: The best thing that could happen to him would be for him to be lost to all sense of shame, dead to all knowledge of guilt, for his mother's sake. *Mrs. Gask.*, *Ruth*, Ch. XXVI, 237.

It would have been delightful to me for us to have worked together. HUXLEY, *Life & Let.*, II, 400.

70. Although the infinitive-clause with the *for*-adjunct is mostly in the subjective relation to the predicate in the head-sentence, it is not, as has already been observed in passing in the preceding section, confined to this function. It may here be expressly stated that we find it also:

*a*) as the nominal part of the predicate; thus in:

The thing would be for us all to come on donkeys. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLII, 334.

What I like best is for a nobleman to marry a miller's daughter .. And what I like next best is for a poor fellow to run away with a rich girl. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 110.

In Protestant countries the tendency is for the cost of living to increase more and more. *Eng. Rev.*, Sept. 1912, 280.

Note. In such a sentence as *My advice to you is to treat the child well* (THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. V) *to* may be replaced by *for*, if the adjunct and the verb *to be* change places: *My advice is for you to treat the child well*.

*b*) as the non-prepositional object, 1) taking the place of the accusative + infinitive, especially after:

*to like*: But you'd like better for us both to stay at home together. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. III, 21.

*to want*: I want for you and me to see everything as we seed it from first to last. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XIV, Ch. II, 394.

*to wish*: Papa wished for her to be at the marriage very much indeed. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XIII, 139.

I am clear in wishing heartily to keep my old friends, and for them to love my future wife for my take. *ib.*, Ch. XII.

I particularly wish for you to take his bed. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, V, Ch. II, 232.

She (*sc.* France) wishes for the conference to be profitable. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 6, 108*a*.

Note. *a*) In the case of *to like* and *to want* the construction answers no useful purpose and appears to be rare, at least in Standard English. In connexion with *to wish*, on the other hand, it is common enough, owing to the fact that this verb, like many others (76) frequently governs a complement with *for*. Nor can it be said to be a useless idiom: differing as it does from the accusative + infinitive in being less peremptory.

*β*) Similar in structure to the above construction is that in:

This was a miserable hour for Michael, who all the time was dreading many unfortunate events, as for the cabman to get down from his box and quarrel about his fare, or for the train to be full, or for Stella to be sick during the journey. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sinister Street*, 79.<sup>1)</sup>

That was what I was thinking of when I gave notice for him to leave the academy at Lady-day. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 3. (*to give notice* may be understood as a group-verb semantically equivalent to *to announce*.)

2) as the head-word of a nominal in connexion with a verb governing a predicative adnominal adjunct of the second kind (Ch. VI), as in:

You may make it necessary for me to send my daughter abroad again. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 276*a*. (Compare such a sentence as: This made my task difficult.)

He esteemed it almost as a personal insult for his hearers not to laugh. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 186.

Note. Observe that the infinitive-clause is announced by *it* in the head-sentence. For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 46, *b*.

*c*) as an apposition to some noun in the head-sentence, as in:

She had scouted Mrs. Doria's proposal for him to contest the legality of the marriage. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXIV, 291.

The letter was a reply to a vehement entreaty from Lady Blandish for him to come up to Richard and forgive him thoroughly. *ib.*, Ch. XXXVII, 340.

71. Obs. I. The (pro)noun in the *for*-adjunct is sometimes represented by weak *there*, which, in a manner, supplies the function of a subject to the infinitive; thus in:

It is usual for there to be many babies. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3897, 1096*c*.

II. The head-sentence of the infinitive-clause with a *for*-adjunct is sometimes understood. Thus in the following example, in which, through

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., *Handbook*<sup>1</sup>, § 388.



this omission, the phrase appears to be co-ordinate with the preceding statement:

It's so tiresome to have taken so much trouble, and then for it to be all wrong. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, II, Ch. II, 111. (may be expanded thus: .. and there may be evidence for it to be all wrong.)

Such a detached infinitive-clause with a *for*-adjunct may, in its purport, resemble the elliptical exclamatory sentences with the subject expressed which have been commented on in Ch. LV, 49, *b*). See also 72, *e*. Compare such sentences as *I think the worse of him!* (DICK.), *This fellow here to interrupt us!* (GOLDSM.) with:

"Let me order the carriage. It can be round in five minutes." — "Thank you, thank you; but on no account; I would rather walk. And for me to be afraid of walking alone; I who may so soon have to guard others!" JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLII, 34.

III. Considered from a semantic point of view, not a few of the infinitive clauses with a *for*-adjunct will be found to imply an adverbial relation of condition. Such an adverbial connotation shines forth distinctly in:

Is it not enough to cause feminine apprehension for a woman to be married in another woman's ring? MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXX, 245.

It is unmistakable when the head-sentence contains a verb in the conditional mood, as in:

I would make it death | For any male thing but to peep at us. TEN., *Princ.*, *ProL.*, 151.

IV. The infinitive-clause with the *for*-adjunct is equivalent to, and sometimes exchangeable for, a gerund-clause with a subjective pronoun (Ch. LVI, 44, *c*, Note).

It is out of the question your thinking of marrying her. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XXI, 227.

Is it not extraordinary his taking a fancy to me? MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. X, 117.

It is rather remarkable your knowing them. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 20.

Observe especially the constructions in such sentences as:

It was of no use my saying anything to you. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. II, 16.

There is no use your telling me that you are going to be good. OSC. WILDE, *Dor Gray*, Ch. XIX, 268. (Compare: There is no use for me to cry about the matter. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 118 *b*.)

Anyhow it's worth while my having a game of golf croquet with you. E. F. BENSON, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. II, 50. (Compare: It is worth while for you to be very industrious with your painting. *ib.*, Ch. II, 49.)

V. The above examples show that in like manner as a (pro)noun in the genitive or common case stands by way of subject to the gerund, the *for*-adjunct fulfils this function in regard to the infinitive. It may, indeed, be safely assumed that the need of furnishing the infinitive with a subjective element is in large measure responsible for the extraordinary spread of the construction described in the preceding pages. It is an exceedingly useful idiom, hardly less so than the corresponding gerund-construction. It makes for pliancy and conciseness, and may well excite the envy of other languages.

72. *a*) The rise of the *for*-adjunct as described in the preceding sections has exercised the pens of many scholars. A very able exposition of

the problem has been given by STOFFEL in *Studies in English*, A, VII, 49 ff. His view of the subject has been endorsed by FRANZ in *Shakespeare Grammatik*<sup>2</sup>, § 659. JESPERSEN touches on it in *Progress of Language*, § 211. EINENKEL discusses it at considerable length in *Streifzüge durch die mitttelenglische Syntax*, 247 ff. JACOB ZEITLIN, in *The Accusative with Infinitive and some kindred constructions*, passes the different explanations in review, partially rejects them all and gives his own, supporting it with detailed, but not over-clear reasoning, and a wealth of documentary evidence.

b) According to STOFFEL, the prototype of the subjective infinitive-clause opening with a (pro)noun preceded by what he calls inorganic *for*, is most probably to be found in a frequent Middle-English construction with an accusative (or common-case) + infinitive as the subject of a finite verb: a construction which corresponds to the well-known Latin idiom shown in such sentences as *oportet eum venire*, *æquum est homini prodesse*, *me sceptrum tenere decet*. Thus:

It is ful fair a man to bere him evene. CHAUC., *Cant. T.*, A, 1523.

The thridde grevance is a man to have harm in his body. *ib.*, *Pers. Tale*, § 51.

A barons childe to be begyled, it were a curssed dede. *The Nut-brown Maid*, XXIII (SKEAT, *Spec. of Eng. Lit.*, 105).

It is not good man to be alone. WYCLIF, *Gen.*, II, 8.1)

c) In such a sentence as WYCLIF's *It is not good man to be alone*, which is a translation of *Non est bonum hominem esse solum* of the Vulgate, *man*, naturally enough, came to be understood by many as a dative object to *good*, which, again naturally enough, led to the insertion of *for* before *man*, the sentence thus becoming *It is not good for man to be alone*.

The editors of the Authorized Version of 1611 evidently adhered to the original meaning, their translation of this passage running *It is not good that the man should be alone*.

Conversely they deviated from WYCLIF's *It is good us to be here*, his translation of *bonum est nos hic esse* in the Vulgate, by rendering this passage in MATTH., XVII, 4 (MARK, IX, 5; LUKE, IX, 33) by *It is good for us to be here*.

This they did also in translating Psalm 132, 1: *Ecce quam bonum, et quam iucundum habitare fratres in unum* into *Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity!* The Book of Common Prayer, which was composed about sixty years earlier (1549), preserved the older construction: *Behold, how good and joyful a thing it is: brethren to dwell together in unity!* in which the present generation, not impossibly, looks on *brethren* as a vocative.

d) It may be assumed that *for* also came to be inserted in sentences outwardly resembling the above example from WYCLIF, although

<sup>1)</sup> STOF., *Stud.*, A, 54.

their meaning did not distinctly suggest a dative relation between the nominal and the following (pro)noun. Thus the first of the above quotations from CHAUCER would become *It is full fair for a man to bear himself evenly (i. e. steadily).*

e) The impossibility of distinguishing between the nominative and accusative of nouns dating from an early period of the language led to uncertainty as to which case is used in the infinitive-phrase without *for*. STOFFEL (Studies, A, § 45) produces some evidence to show that SHAKESPEARE took it to be the nominative, seeing that in some places he uses this case of a personal pronoun preceding the infinitive; thus in:

*I to bear this is some burden. Timon, IV, 3, 266.*

*A heavier task could not have been imposed | Than I to speak my griefs unspeakable. Com. of Er., I, 1, 33*

This practice of SHAKESPEARE survives, in a manner, in exclamatory sentences, such as:

*I to cry out on pride | Who have won her favour! TEN., Maud, I, XII, v.*

*I to marry before your brother, and leave him with none to take care of him! BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXX, 178.*

Before these exclamations some "werturteil," i. e. some sentence giving the speaker's opinion of their contents, may be supplied, for example, *It would be shocking, blamable*, etc. For further examples see Ch. LV 49, b; and compare 71, Obs. II, above.

Some form of the subjective nominative + infinitive may also be traced in such a sentence as:

*The caul was put up in a raffle down in our part of the country, at half-a-crown a head, the winner to spend five shillings. Dick., Cop., Ch. I, 2 a.*

Similar to the above are such sentences as the following, in which the infinitive of the copula *to be* may be supplied:

*He well knew that his poor mother could not be cheerful, and he away. Dick., Pickw., Ch. VI, 53*

Of the same purport also is a sentence like the following, although the construction used is different. The use of the unconnected *me*, instead of *I* is not, of course, anything out of the common (Ch. XXXII, 8).

*How could the room be cleaned, and me with my rheumatism. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., 61 a, 4.*

In Anglo-Irish the construction, subjective nominative + infinitive, seems to lead a vigorous life to this day. In the case of a noun or *you* standing before the infinitive the construction may, of course, with equal justice be called a subjective accusative + infinitive.

i. *It's a pity you not to have left him where he was lying. YEATS, The Unicorn from the Stars.*

*It is a pity he not to awaken at this time. ib.*

ii. *It would be no credit at all such a thing to be heard in this house. ib.*

f) The subjective accusative + infinitive appears to have become extinct, except in the language of the uneducated; thus we find it in:

*I felt as if it was a great compliment him to come in friendly like, and take a*

chair and talk to you and me. M. O. W. OLIPHANT, *The Second Son*, VII.<sup>1)</sup>

In a disguised form we have it, perhaps, in such vulgar constructions as: And him struck as if it was with death when he got the letter as said you'd the hold upo' the land. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VII, 227.

Also in such sentences it may be assumed that some "werturteil", such as *It was a dreadful thing*, could be supplied.

g) SHAKESPEARE has several instances of the subjective infinitive-phrase with a meaningless *for* before the (pro)noun, which appears to show that in his day this construction had already struck firm root in the language. STOF. (*Stud.*, A, VII, § 49) quotes four, of which we copy two, supplementing them by a few words, that they may be better understood.

For Coriolanus neither to care whether they love or hate him manifests the true knowledge he has in their disposition. *Cor.*, II, 2, 13.

He hath so planted his honours in their eyes, and his actions in their hearts, that for their tongues to be silent, and not confess so much, were a kind of ingrateful injury. *ib.*, II, 2, 34.

These quotations show that SHAKESPEARE considered this construction with the *for*-adjunct as equivalent to the subjective nominative + infinitive which he uses in other places (72, *e*), both being descendants of the Middle-English subjective accusative + infinitive.

73. Besides the above complexes containing an infinitive-clause with a *for*-adjunct, there are a good many others with this phrase in which the preposition has another function than that of replacing a dative or merely furnishing an infinitive with a subjective element. In all of them the *for*-adjunct is necessitated by the fact that the subject of the action or state mentioned in the head-sentence does not coincide with that of the action or state indicated by the infinitive. In all of them also *for* serves more or less unequivocally to denote a relation of purpose. See also Ch. XVIII, 50.

74. The infinitive-clause with a *for*-adjunct is a frequent constituent of adverbial clauses, especially such as express a relation of purpose. In this case the *for*-adjunct belongs to the infinitive-clause alone; thus in:

i. (She) put out her thin, white hand for him to take and kiss. *Mrs. GASK.*, *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XVI, (589).

He stood aside for George to enter. *Mrs. WARD*, *Tres.*, Ch. VI, 37 *b*.

ii. After this it is extremely unlikely that there will be a strike. For this to happen there would have to be another ballot and a two-thirds majority. *Manch. Guard.*, 11<sup>4</sup>, 1924, 285 *a*.

The relation of purpose is not seldom mixed with that of other adverbial relations; i. e.: 1) with that of consequence, as in:

You had only to mention her name at afternoon teas for any woman in the room to rise up and call her — well not blessed. *RUDY. KIPL.*, *Plain Tales*, II, 19.

<sup>1)</sup> STOF., *Stud.*

Thus especially when the degree of a quality is in question. The head-sentence then expresses a state of things that is sufficient, excessive enough or too excessive, to produce or to destroy the result indicated by the infinitive-clause.

i. It was late enough for the sound of the gig-wheels to be expected. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 25.

She babbled on long enough for Flora to get a good long spell at the Christmas Carol. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 47.

ii. Chaucer was not so well off for subjects for it to be probable that, if he learnt this story from Petrarch in 1373, he would have left it unused for a dozen years or more. Pref. to *Chauc.*, *Globe Ed.*, 25<sup>1)</sup>.

iii. He talked .. too often in his light bantering tone for her to feel quite at ease with him. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, III, 59.

You are too young for me to talk to concerning such a thing. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XV, 313.

2) with that of condition, especially with an apodosis containing a conditional, but apparently frequently enough also if the predicate in the head-sentence is an indicative; thus in:

i. He felt that he would have given considerable sums for her to lift her veil. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVI, 201.

ii. You have to keep the thing so tight for it to be of any use. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, III, 47.

3) with that of restriction, as in:

The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland. SHAK., *Rich. II*, II, 2, 123. (almost = as regards the going of news to Ireland.)

Note. The adverbial relation is, apparently: 1) one of pure ground in: I must have made a real hit this time, for that woman to be as civil as all that. ANSTEY, *Fal. Id.*, Ch. VI, 89.

2) one of pure condition in: Would it improve our position, do you think, for Bruncker to throw the attorney out of the window? JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, XII, 205.

75. Infinitive clauses with a *for*-adjunct are found after numerous verbs and nominals or nominal equivalents governing a prepositional object with *for*. The connexion of the *for*-adjunct with the governing verb or nominal is unmistakable, but weakened through the attraction of the infinitive. This infinitive-phrase differs in another respect from that in the preceding section, viz. in being equivalent to, and not seldom exchangeable for a subordinate statement. Thus *It was arranged for her to stay in Cranford* (Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 189) = *It was arranged that she should stay in Cranford*. This latter construction is, however, mostly avoided as clumsy and pedantic.

76. This infinitive-clause with a *for*-adjunct is met with among other verbs, after *to arrange*, *to ask*, *to beg*, *to care*, *to long*, *to look*, *to ring*, *to send*, *to wait*, *to wish* (for illustration see Ch. XVIII, 51); also after:

<sup>1)</sup> KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 384.

*to cast about*, as in: He cast about for some one to accompany her. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XL, 395.

*to mean*, as in: I was not attending to what was not meant for me to hear. MRS. GASK., Cous. Phil., III, 69.

*to write*, as in: Mr. Richard writes for me to get lodgings for a lady. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXVI, 199.

Note α) The construction found in the above examples bears some resemblance to the accusative with infinitive governed by other verbs (Ch. XVIII, 30—38). In it the verb forms with its preposition a kind of unit that resembles a transitive verb. For discussion of this construction see also Ch. XVIII, 39—40, where it has been called *prepositional accusative with infinitive*. It may here be repeated that it is unusual with verbs that govern another preposition than *for*. See also STOF., Stud., A, VII, 71.

β) After *most*, if not all, of these verbs the infinitive-construction varies with a gerund-construction, a genitive or possessive pronoun in the latter corresponding to the *for*-adjunct in the former. The similarity speaks for the *for*-adjunct being drawn from the head-sentence into the infinitive-clause. The following examples must suffice:

*to arrange*: He had arranged for our assembling there. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, XII, 197.

*to wait*: She waited for Godfrey Hurndale's coming. COMPT. MACK., Silv. Scarl., Ch. II, 80.

γ) The construction is sometimes, through influences of analogy, extended to verbs that ordinarily govern other prepositions than *for*. Thus it is sometimes met with after:

*to see*, as in: Go and see for somebody to fetch the doctor. G. ELIOT, Mill, V, Ch VII, 328. (due to the influence of *to look for*.)

*to suit*, as in: The tide will suit for us to go to the Tofton way. *ib.*, VI, Ch. II, 352. (due to the influence of *suitable for*.)

77. Among the nominals or nominal equivalents that admit of being construed with *for* — (pro)noun + infinitive mention may be made of *anxious, impatient, willing, in a hurry* (for illustration see Ch. XVIII, 51), and the following:

*fit*: It is not fit for you to sit there on such a day as this. MRS. GASK., Cous. Phil., III, 73.

*in a fidget*: He was in such a fidget for her to leave the house before Osborne came home. *id.*, Wives & Daught., Ch. XII, 130.

*in wait*: He was always in wait for some boy to come to him with his confession of moral worthlessness. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. VIII, 145.

Note. α) In like manner as verbs, nominals or nominal equivalents that are construed with *for* often take a gerund-, instead of an infinitive-construction.

He was anxious for her seeing as much of the country as possible. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. VX, 146

β) Not a few nominals normally construed with another preposition than *for*, undergo the influence of such as govern a complement with *for*, in so far as they also may take an infinitive-clause with *for*; thus: *afraid*, as in: I am not afraid for them to see it. DICK., Christm. Car., IV, 82.

*glad*, as in: Catherine will be very glad for others to win. G. ELIOT, *Dan Der.*, I, I, Ch. X, 151.

*pleased*, as in: We shall be pleased for you to do so. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, XVI, 133.

*reluctant*, as in: He seemed very reluctant for me to leave him. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. XII, 453.

*willing*, as in: They wrote out a paper saying as they were willing for 'im to 'ave their money. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, A, 10.

;) If the head-sentence contains a conditional, the infinitive clause may also be understood to represent an adverbial clause of condition; thus that after:

*ashamed*, as in: One, pointing to the lady said such fout and devilish things as I should be ashamed either for me to speak, or for you to hear. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch VII, 58*b*.

*glad*, as in: Shouldn't you be glad for me to have the same sort of happiness? G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 397.

*sorry*, as in: I should be sorry for you to misapprehend me for a moment. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXIV, 250.

78. Infinitive-clauses with a *for*-adjunct are frequently found as modifiers of nouns. We may distinguish: *a*) such as represent subordinate statements, *b*) such as have the value of relative clauses.

79. Those of the first kind are very common and require little comment. Like the infinitive-clauses with a *for*-adjunct after verbs and nominals discussed in the two preceding sections, they often vary with gerund-clauses, as the following groups of examples may show:

*i. consent*: Before he would give his consent for Richard to go, Sir Austin desired to speak with him apart. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XL, 395.

*leave*: When we were children, she used sometimes to send her respects to my mother, and ask leave for us to come and take tea with her. SAM. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. I, 3.

*need*: (There is) no need for me to be told that. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. I, 419.

*permission*: He sent his permission for them to come. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. L, 307.

*sign*: He made signs for Rip to approach. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 39.

*ii. anxiety*: He had watched over her from a girl, with an endeavour to improve her, and an anxiety for her doing right. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLVIII, 391.

*necessity*: There is no necessity for my calling this morning. *ib.*, Ch. XXIII, 182.

*wish*: I have not the smallest wish for your marrying Jane Fairfax. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIII, 270.

80. The relative clauses that may be substituted for the adnominal infinitive-clauses with a *for*-adjunct open either with a bare relative pronoun, or with a relative pronoun either preceded or followed by a preposition. Thus *There are several letters for you to write* may be replaced by *There are several letters which it is for you to write*. In like manner *Here is a piece of paper*
- H. POOTSMA, III II.

*for you to write the answer on* is practically equivalent to *Here is a piece of paper on which it is for you to write the answer (or which it is for you to write the answer on)*.

It will be observed that his *for* has the value of an adjective + preposition, approximately equivalent to *incumbent on*.

The last example may also be assumed to stand for *Here is a piece of paper for you that you may write the answer on it*: i.e. the *for*-adjunct may also be drawn within the head-sentence, as distinguished from the first interpretation, according to which it belongs to the infinitive-clause. Some of the following examples admit of a similar twofold interpretation:

i. There remains only an act of justice for me to do. GOLDS., Vic.

I've a little spare money for that room for her to lay out. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XII, 129.

It is possible that he will have business for me to see to. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. IX, 76.

She sat in her bedroom, writing her secret thoughts for Wilfrid some day to read. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. VII, 112.

ii. He went up to London to order a brougham to be built for Ellinor to drive out in in wet weather. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. III, (422).

Some time ago I left a landscape for you to put a figure in. ANSTEY, *A Fallen Idol*, Ch. VII, 106.

The horse is just the thing for you to try your hand at riding on. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 19.

Note. Sometimes, especially after nouns denoting a length or point of time, the preposition appears to be suppressed. Thus *The day was fixed for Richard to depart* (MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 184) seems to stand for *The day was fixed on which it was for Richard to depart*. Compare Ch. XVII, 17 and 49. Similarly a preposition may be assumed to be suppressed in:

But the time draws on for experience and observation to take place of instruction. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, IV, 8.

I thought the moment had come for me to try to read the puzzle. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XII, Ch. II, 335.

Was it absolutely necessary to play the enemy's game by entrenching, and thus giving time for the Boers to envelop? Times.

81. Two more applications of *for* + (pro)noun + infinitive, differing entirely from those described in the preceding sections, deserve brief mention.

82. In such a sentence as *It was for women to fight their fight now* (MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 185) the infinitive with its enlargements is the subject of a nominal predicate in which *for* has the value of an adjective governing an object, in like manner as *worth* (46). Of the same kind are:

It was not for her to cast stones at those who inclined to the same belief. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIV, 260.

It is for me to receive your words, not to judge them. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. VI, 77.



It was not for him to make readers' flesh creep. STEPH. GWYNN, THOM. MOORE, I, 26.

Unless we desire war, it is not for us to demand from Germany any reduction in her Naval programme, or even to expect it. ENG. REV.

Note. In this construction *for*-adjuncts with a personal pronoun sometimes vary with absolute possessive pronouns. Thus *It is for me to receive your words* might be replaced by *It is mine to receive your words*. A good many examples illustrating this use of the absolute possessive pronoun, current only in the higher literary style, are to be found in Ch. XXXIII, 28, *d*. For other approximate equivalents of the above construction see Ch. XXXIII, 29, Obs. II. A solitary example will do in this place.

She felt that it was not hers to refuse. MRS. GASK., RUTH, Ch. XXX, 272.

83. A totally different application of *for* + (pro)noun + infinitive is to be found in such a sentence as *The father was for his son to go into the army*, in which *for* also has the function of an adjective governing a non-prepositional object, but in which the complement of *for* is not the (pro)noun alone, but the entire word-group consisting of the (pro)noun and the infinitive with its enlargements (46, *d*). The construction appears to be uncommon, a gerund-construction being mostly employed instead.

i. Ginger, who 'ad plenty of pluck, was for them all to set on 'im. JACOBS, Odd Craft, IV, 75. T.

ii. His uncle was for his going back. THACK., PEND, I, Ch. III, 32.

84. In conclusion a few words may be devoted to a constructional function of *for* in which it is not followed by (pro)noun + infinitive, viz. its use as an alternative of the conjunction *as* before a predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. VI).

Its vague semantic significance appears from the fact that, like *as*, it is in many connexions dispensed with. It may be added that, like *for* and *as*, also the empty copula *to be* is often used to link the predicative adnominal adjunct to its head-word, the result being a construction which is called accusative + infinitive. From the above it follows that we have here to deal with a fourfold variety of construction. Owing to circumstances which cannot be very well defined in this place, it is only a limited number of verbs which admit of this extraordinary variation. Also the facts determining the choice between the different constructions mentioned cannot be adequately discussed in the present chapter.

a) A fourfold variety of construction, among, perhaps, other verbs, is met with after:

*to breed (up)*: i. He was to be bred up for an English priest. THACK., ESM., I, Ch. III, 28.

ii. You, who are bred as a soldier, can say it in elegant language. LONGF., Miles Stand., II, 67.

iii. Dupleix had not been bred a soldier. MAC., Clive, (509 *b*).

iv. We were bred to be slaves always. THACK., ESM., I, Ch. IX, 87.

*to choose*: i. The blunder of Lewis in choosing Germany, instead of Holland, for his point of attack, was all but atoned for by the brilliant suc-

cesses with which he opened the war. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, § VIII, 684.

ii. Shelley's rooms (were) generally chosen as the scene of their symposia. SYMONDS, *Shelley*, II, 26.

iii. Boy as he was, he was chosen king. GREEN.

iv. I expect the young gentleman I have chosen to be your husband from town this very day. GOLDS., *She stoops*, I, (169).

Note. The construction with *for* is used only when the following noun is modified by a possessive pronoun.

*to hold*: O do not hold it for a crime | In the bold hero of my rhyme, | For Stoic look, and meet rebuke, | He lack'd the heart or time. SCOTT, *Bridal*, III, xxxii.

And he to whom she told her sins, or what | Her all but utter whiteness held for sin, | . . . Spake often with her of the Holy Grail. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 84.

ii. He was held by the Oxbridge tradesmen as quite a young buck. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

iii. The good mother holds me still a child. TEN., *Ger. & Lyn.*, 15.

I sometimes hold it half a sin | To put in words the grief I feel. *id.*, *In Mem.*, V, 1.

iv. Every man instinctively holds every woman to be a true woman, until she reveals herself as the contrary. DOR. GER., *The Etern. Woman*, Ch. XXI.

Note. The constructions with *for*, *as* or an infinitive are now archaic. O. E. D.

b) A threefold variety of construction has been found after :

*to brand*: i. When I refuse any danger or suffering by which the general good may be promoted, then brand me for a coward. GODWIN, *Cal. Will.*, I, Ch. XII, 135.

ii. This act he brands as "dissimulation" on the part of Peter of Antioch. HUXL., *Lect. & Ess.*, 105*b*.

iii. He hates me too; | So brands me in the stare of Christendom | A heretic! TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, 2 (640*b*).

*to count*: i. And be he dead, I count you for a fool. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 548.

ii. The world counted her as a heretic. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 77.

iii. Mother, though ye count me still the child. TEN., *Ger. & Lyn.*, 34.

*to set up*: i. I don't set up for a Joseph. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 454.

ii. Fenella Stanley seems in her later life to have set up as a positive seeress. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 34.

iii. I don't set up to be a lady-killer. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

c) Among the verbs that may be followed by *for*, besides admitting of one or another of the alternative constructions mentioned above, the following deserve attention :

*to enlist*: i. Richard had been requested by his father to submit to medical examination like a boor enlisting for a soldier. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. II, 9.

ii. The Bengalee scarcely ever enlists as a soldier. MAC., *Clive*, (512*a*).

*to guess*: i. You would have guessed him at once for a German. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 129.

ii. For by thy state | And presence I might guess thee chief of those, | After the King, who eat in Arthur's halls. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 182.

*to hail*: i. These and all men hail him for their king. TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 385.

ii. Sir Harry hailed him as a brother. MRS. GASK., *The Squire's Story*, (219).

*to know*: i. You know me for a gentleman. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. I, 5*a*.

ii. I know him a prince in a thousand. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. IX, 111.

*to pass*: i. Why does your master pass only for ensign? SHER., *Riv.*, I, I.

ii. He spoke English sufficiently well to think he could pass as an Englishman. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, ix, Ch. II, 78.

*to put down*: i. People used to put him down for a County Councillor or an Archdeacon at the very least. JEROME, *Lease of the Cross Keys*, 20*b*.

ii. Clara put this down as a pretext for gaining time. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. V.

*to serve*: i. A grasshopper, or almost any large fly, will serve for bait. *Encycl. Brit.*, II, 281.

ii. This served him as a place of prayer. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV, 187*a*. (Compare also: They have a kind of hard flints, which, by grinding against other stones, they form into instruments that serve instead of wedges, axes, and hammers. SWIFT., *Gull*, IV, Ch. IX, (208*a*).

*to set down*: i. If he does not set you down for an idiot, he lays an information against you before the bishop, and has you burned for a heretic. MAC.

ii. I set the one down as an old soldier; the other for a gentleman accustomed to move in good society. A. HOPE, *Pris. of Zenda*, Ch. III, 16.

*to take*: i. I took all Abednego's tales for gospel. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 85.

ii. I took her question as a rebuke. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, Ch. II, 17.

d) A few remarkable constructions with *for*, for which no alternative constructions have come to hand, are of some special interest; thus those after:

*to give*: The parents, after a long search for him, gave him for drowned. *Spect.*, No. 130.

Note. *To give* is now obsolete in this meaning, having been replaced by *to give up*, as in: We gave you up for dead. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. X, 89.

In the same meaning also *to give over*, as in: I oft have wish'd I'd gone to India with him, | Though you, desponding, give him o'er for lost. G. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, I, I.

*to fall, to lie, to be left, to leave*: The poor little lad .. gets three or four stabs of skenes, and falls for dead. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* He quivered with his feet and lay for dead. DRYDEN.<sup>1)</sup>

They were waylaid, and beaten, and left by the roadside for dead. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XV, 163.

They left him for dead on the ground. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. X, 4, 260.

*to think*: What do you think of that for a kite? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XIV, 101*b*.

e) Separate mention should be made of the use of *for* before opprobrious nouns, mostly preceded by opprobrious adjectives, the *for*-adjunct indicating, in a manner, the 'why' of the action expressed by the predicate. The practice is common after intransitives as well transitives, or otherwise objective verbs.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D

- i. If thou lovest it (sc. the prize), thou shalt be .. scourged out of the lists .. for a wordy and insolent braggart. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XIII, 135.  
Go to the deuce for an insolent, jealous, impertinent jackanapes. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 284.
- ii. The Matron laughingly scolded him for the coolest new boy in the house. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 86.  
George anathematized Mrs. G. for a lazy old woman. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XI, 130.
- iii. All the rest (of the boys) hooted and jeered at her for a witch. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

Note *a*) As occurs as an occasional variant; thus in:

The Provost of the lists shall .. expel thee from the presence as a faint-hearted craven. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XIII, 135.

*β*) *For* is far less common before nouns denoting praise, as in:

When he was only a boy, the sailors' wives and daughters in the street would call after him for a pretty lad. WALT. BESANT, *The World went very well then*, I, 67.

85. *For* often has no more than a constructional value before an infinitive with *to*, although, most probably, it originally served to denote the relation of purpose which *to* had lost the power to express. In Present English the use of *for* before an infinitive with *to* is confined to dialects or the language of the uneducated. For further discussion see Ch. LV, 3, Obs. III.

### The Preposition *by*.

86. *By* may be said to serve a mainly grammatical purpose when it helps to indicate the agent of an action in connexion with the passive voice. It shares this function with *of*, *with* and *in*, which latter prepositions are, however, used for this purpose with considerable restriction. For detailed discussion see Ch. XLVII, 1—4.

### Modifiers of Preposition-adjuncts.

87. Like ordinary adjectives, adjuncts with a weak or meaningless preposition, so far as they express a quality or state, may be modified by intensives. This is done by adverbs placed before the whole word-group, or by adjectives placed before the substantival part of it (Ch. LIX, 105, *a*, 2, *β*).
- i. I stood utterly at a loss how to behave myself. STEELE, *Spect.*, No. 53.  
She is very much to the taste of everybody. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. X, 82.  
To write to the son was still more out of the question. MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. X, 73.
  - ii. They were in a wild hurry. SHAK., *Cor.*, IV, 6, 4.  
The family were in great trouble on account on the death of the eldest son O. E. D.

88. If the preposition in the adjunct has a distinct meaning of its own, i. e. is semantically equivalent to an adjective (46, *d*), the adverbial modifier stands regularly before the preposition, and may be held to modify the latter by itself rather than the whole word-group. Thus in *I am strongly against the measure* the adverb *strongly* belongs as strictly to *against* as it does to *opposed* in *I am strongly opposed to the measure*.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 359) is, accordingly, slightly beside the mark in stating that in *He is quite in the wrong* and *I am half through my work* the adverbs *quite* and *half* do not modify the prepositions *in* and *through*, but the whole word-group in each case. Only in the first example can the adverb rightly be said to modify the whole word-group, *in* having little or no semantic significance. The meaning of *through* in the second example, on the other hand, is strong enough to bear qualification. This is also MASON's view: see his Eng. Gram., page 105, foot-note. Thus also in the following sentences the preposition has enough meaning of its own for the preceding intensive to belong rather to it than to the whole word-group:

*about*: I was just about falling into a doze, when he suddenly started up. POE, A. Gordon Pym, Ch. I, 11.

*at*: His father was usually sifting and sifting at his parliamentary cinder-heap in London, .. and was still hard at it in the national dust-yard. DICK., Hard Times, II, Ch. IX, 87 *b*.

*below*: He was a little below the middle size. WILK. COL., Wom. in White, I, Ch. XI, 73.

*outside*: Much less had she been far outside the valley. HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. V, 42.

89. In the group-prepositions consisting of a noun preceded and followed by a preposition, mentioned in 10, *a*, and illustrated in 13, it is either the noun which may receive a modifier in the shape of an adjective (12, *c*), or the whole group-preposition with or without its complement which may take a modifier in the shape of an adverb.

i. The warm light filled every corner of the kitchen, in strong distinction to the faint illumination of the one candle in the parlour. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. XIII, 95.

In the very middle of the vicar's sermon (he) winked deliberately at us three boys. Miss BRADDON, My first happy Christmas (STOF. Handl., I, 70).

(This) is in direct conflict with the facts. Manch. Guard.

ii. A senior clerk, .. though a man not given to much laughter, smiled slightly, probably in pity at the unceasing labour to which the youth was about to devote himself. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. II, 13.

iii. I was just at the point of proposing to her. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

One would need to be learned in the fashions of those times to know how far in the rear of them Mrs. Glegg's slate-coloured silk gown must have been. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. VII, 45.

I came here just for the sake of telling you. WELLS, Britl., Ch. I, § 2, 188.

## Complements of Prepositions.

90. a) The complement of a preposition in its simplest form is a noun or pronoun with or without one or more adnominal adjuncts.  
 b) When other parts of speech are used as the complement of a preposition, their grammatical status is changed, i. e. they are totally or partially converted into nouns.

Thus there is a case of total conversion of an adjective in such a sentence as *She thanked you in the name of France for all your benevolence towards our unfortunates* (THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXIV, 380); and one of partial conversion in *Before long the bells swung heavily in the church-tower* (Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. III, 24). Numerous instances of converted adjectives that serve as complements to prepositions may be found in Ch. XXIX.

Also adverbs when totally or partially changed into nouns may serve the function of complements to prepositions (Ch. LIX, 113; also Ch. LIX, 46); thus in:

i. It may not be superfluous to inquire into the why and wherefore of his (sc. Dickens's) success MARZIALS, Dick, Ch. III, 44.

When the sun breaks through, .. it discovers the rooks engaged on a steady to and fro. MANCH. GUARD., 16 10, 1925, 313 c.

ii. Since lately she had so often carelessly thrown off her mask. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXXI, 269.

91. In the second place the complement of a preposition may be represented by a word-group consisting of a preposition + (pro)noun (37).

I take no orders except from the king. SHAW, Saint Joan, I, (5).

There were two ponies in the stables of the Great House which they were allowed to ride, and which, unless on occasions, nobody else did ride. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. II, 21. (unless = except.)

92. In the third place the complement of a preposition may be a full clause.

93. A full subordinate clause governed by a preposition may be a subordinate statement introduced by the conjunction *that*.

As the preposition with its complement mostly has the value of an adverbial adjunct and the conjunction *that* is destitute of all meaning, the entire combination is mostly apprehended as an adverbial clause (Ch. XIII, 1, f; Ch. XVII, 2).

The fact that the conjunction *that* is devoid of all meaning causes it to be dropped in the majority of cases, the dropping imparting to the preceding particle the character of a conjunction. In only a few cases is the retention of *that* obligatory, or does the construction without *that* convey another meaning than that with *that*.

94. Only in the case of *but* may the preposition together with its complement have the function of a subordinate statement (Ch. XIII, 4—5); thus in:

I did not know but that I might be called by Will to make my words good. THACK., Virg., Ch. XC, 967.

Let no man dream but that I love thee still. TEN., Guin., 557.

There is no question but that Germany must lose these ore-fields. KEYNES, *Econ. Cons.*, Ch. VI, 90.

Note. α) By way of grammatical explanation of the construction we may interpolate the whole or part of the preceding predicate between *but* and *that*. Thus the above example from TENNYSON may be expanded into \**Let no man dream but let him dream that I love thee still*.

β) In good colloquial language, and even in ordinary Standard English, *but what* often takes the place of *but that*; thus in:

I don't say but what he's as free as ever. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XLIX, 410.

Who knew but what he might yet be lingering in the neighbourhood? MRS. GASK., *Cranford*, Ch. X, 187.

It is difficult to find a grammatical explanation of this construction. Possibly it is due to the influence of *but what*, often found at the head of attributive adnominal clauses, although also here there is a serious grammatical anomaly, viz. the use of *what* when the reference is to persons (Ch. XVI, 12), as in:

He had no visible friends but what had been acquired at Highbury. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. III, 22.

There's no Tulliver but what's honest. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. IX, 243.

According to the O. E. D. (s.v. *but*, 30), "*but what* often occurs for *but that* in various senses and is still dial. and colloq." See also under 12, c) of the same article, where *but what* is pronounced to be "erroneous" for *but*.

γ) More frequent than either *but that* or *but what* in the subordinate statements and attributive adnominal clauses referred to above, is the bare *but*, which, through the absence of *that* or *what* assumes the grammatical function of a conjunction; thus in:

i. I don't think but your conversation was very innocent. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (231).

ii. There is no situation in life but has its advantages and pleasures. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, Postscript.

δ) For the rest English does not admit of subordinate statements being used as the complement of a preposition, as is, for example, possible in Dutch; e. g. in *Uit dat je niet gekomen bent maak ik op dat je ziek bent* (literally in English = \**From that you have not come I conclude that you are ill*); and in Danish, as in *Der er ingen tvivl om at han er dræbt* (literally in English = \**There is no doubt of that he has been killed*). See JESPERSEN, *Philos.*, Ch. II, 32.

95. A full clause governed by a preposition may be a subordinate question or an exclamation which has the form of a subordinate question. Such a clause is either a constituent of a prepositional object or has the value of an attributive adnominal adjunct. In the latter case the preposition is mostly (appositional) *of*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Growth*, 83; id., *A Marginal Note on Synt.*, E. S., XLVI, 330 f. For illustration see also Ch. III, 41, and Ch. XVI, 1.

i. He enlarged on what a loss he would be on the magistrates' bench. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

I did not mind her talking about whom she should make her heir. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. XXXIII, 140.

ii. \* Reflect that it is absurd to set up a standard of how English people ought to speak. SWEET, *Prim of Phon.*, § 8.

\*\* Have they any sense of what they sing? TEN, *Gard. Daught.*, 101.

It would be a 'proof to him of how little this wretched business affects my opinion of him. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVIII, 256.

The elderly lady fumed with the uncertainty of what she had to do. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch VI, 143.

Note. Attention may here again be drawn to the frequent occurrence of the group-preposition *as to* before subordinate questions (Ch. III, 41), as in:

Mr. Boniface left no instructions as to whether you were to attend as usual. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXV, 232.

β) In a subordinate question thus governed by a preposition the interrogative pronoun may be governed by a preposition of its own; thus in:

It is only a question of with whom I shall do so. ALLEN, *The Woman who did*, 81<sup>1)</sup>.

γ) The preposition is not unfrequently dispensed with before questions of either the first or second kind (Ch. III, 41); thus in:

i. A great deal of conversation had taken place whether or not young ladies wore powder as well as hoops when presented. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 16.

ii. Be lion-mettled, proud; and take no care | Who chafes, who frets or where conspirers are. SHAK., *Macb.*, IV, I, 91.

We are pretty much masters what books we shall read. HUME, *Es.*, I, 4.

I am ignorant whom I have the honour to address. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 43.

What Schiller's ultimate opinions on this point were we are nowhere informed. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, II, 74.

We were thinking what we could talk about. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VIII, 153.

She hesitated what to reply. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVI, 134.

Before subordinate questions introduced by *if*, the absence of the preposition appears to be regular, thus in:

And as he push'd the cursed steel away, | Mark how the blood of Cæsar follow'd it, | As rushing out of doors, to be resolved | If Brutus so unkindly knock'd, or no. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 184.

96. A third group of full clauses that may be governed by a preposition is formed by substantive clauses, as constituents of prepositional objects, adverbial adjuncts, or attributive adnominal adjuncts (Ch. XV, 1).

i. While poor Sir Richard was brooding over what he considered as Addison's unkindness, a new cause of quarrel arose. MAC., *Ad.*, (772 a).

He let blood to whoever wished for that refreshment. WALT. BES., *The World went very well then*, Ch. I.

1) JESPERSEN, *Marg. Note on Synt.*, E. S., XLVI, 331.



ii. To him entered Tom, in what appeared to Mr. Glegg very questionable companionship. G. ELIOT, *MILL*, V, Ch. II, 288.

He had little to do with the Hope of Raynham beyond what he endured from his juvenile tricks. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 5.

iii. Here he recalled to himself some instances of what he could not help seeing was the artful simplicity of Blanche. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. X, 113.

Note  $\alpha$ ) As in the case of subordinate questions (95, Note  $\beta$ ), the condensed relative may have a preposition of its own, thus in:

He was thinking of what Will had no knowledge of. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288.

$\beta$ ) Omission of the preposition before a substantive clause appears to be rare. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

Be wary what you say or do. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VII, 71.

97. Also adverbial clauses, especially those of place or time, may be governed by a preposition. These clauses bear a great resemblance to those mentioned in the preceding section, inasmuch as they, too, replace a substantive.

i. Turn, gentle Hermit of the dale, | And guide my lonely way, | To where yon taper cheers the vale, | With hospitable ray. GOLDS., *Ballad*.

He turned his head slowly towards where I stood. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 32.

ii. I'm not thinking of the farm now, .. I'm thinking of when we were boys. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 43.

You must not heed me but when I am got three feet above the earth (sc. into the pulpit). MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, Ch. II, 21.

Note. Also *unless* may precede such an adverbial clause opening with *when*. From a conjunction it has then turned into a preposition; thus in:

Women .. generally think this sort of thing madness, unless when they read of it in the Bible. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, II, Ch. XXVII, 43. (Compare: You'll never have a sailor sitting as first lord, .. unless it be when some party man, high in rank, may happen to have been in the navy as a boy. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. IV, 48.)

98. Lastly a preposition may be a constituent of a continuative adnominal clause, the antecedent of the relative being an entire clause, or a (pro)noun.

i. Hans van Pelt screwed his mouth together and said nothing; upon which some shook their heads, and others shrugged their shoulders. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 85).

ii. Poor Joe's panic lasted for two or three days; during which he did not visit the house. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 26.

99. In the fourth place it is the substantival verbals, the infinitive and the gerund which may serve as complements to prepositions, forming with them undeveloped clauses of various descriptions (Ch. XVIII and Ch. XIX).

100. *a*) Besides *to*, sometimes preceded by *for* (Ch. LV, 2—3), the prepositions *near* and *about* may be found before an infinitive with *to*, as in:

i. I at first was near to laugh. EMERSON, *Eng. Traits*, 80 *a*.

- ii. He was about to speak. DICK., *Christm. Car.* II.  
For further discussion see Ch. XIX, 22 and Ch. L, 70, a, 1.

To these we may, perhaps, add *but* and its synonyms *except* and *save*, which are, however, in this connexion rather conjunctions than prepositions. They are found before infinitives with or without *to* (Ch. LV, 44).

- i. I cannot but admire his courage. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 194.  
ii. There remains no more but to thank you for your courteous attention. O. E. D., s. v. *but*.

b) Prepositions are quite common before infinitive questions, but, as in the case of full subordinate questions, appear to be frequently dispensed with.

- i. He meditated a full hour by the clock upon how to carry out her wishes to the letter. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVII, 470.  
ii. He was infinitely his superior in having early acquired a knowledge how best to use such intellect as he had. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. I, 8.

101. Gerunds are found after practically all prepositions and group-prepositions. The combination of a preposition with a gerund, with or without some further adjuncts, may be:

a) the nominal part of the predicate (46; Ch. XIX, 21—22), as in:  
Molly was near crying again. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. X, 105.  
He was above being pleased. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 14.

b) a prepositional object (Ch. XIX, 23—47), as in:

They do not care for having the hounds over their land. *Times*.  
I shall be careful about getting into these scrapes again. MER, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XI, 69.

c) an adverbial adjunct (Ch. XIX, 57—67), as in:

After having married you, I should never pretend to taste again. SHER., *School*, II, 1.

d) an attributive adnominal adjunct (Ch. XIX, 48—56), as in:

The art of printing with wooden types was invented by Laurentius of Haerlem in 1430. YOUNG, *Arithmetic*.

### Semantic Values of Prepositions and Consequent Phenomena.

103. Prepositions differ greatly as to their semantic value (43—47).

At the top of the scale stand prepositions which as part of a predicative adjunct have a distinct meaning of their own (46, b), as in:

Health is above wealth. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*

At the bottom of the scale stand: 1) such as do duty as substitutes for inflections of (pro)nouns, or otherwise serve certain constructional functions (48—86); 2) such as are component parts of certain word-groups that do duty as prepositions, i. e. word-groups in which the significant part is expressed by a

noun, as in *at the rate of*, *for the sake of*, etc., or by an adjective or adverb, as in *agreeable (-ly) to* (or *with*), *relative(ly) to*, (10—33).

Between these two extremes there are numerous gradations, which it would not answer any useful purpose to determine in detail. Some hints have been given in 43—47.

### Different Stress of Prepositions.

104. It is only natural that the semantic significance of a preposition determines in large measure the degree of stress with which it is uttered. It is equally natural that all prepositions, whether semantically distinct or indistinct,

a) have their stress heightened, 1) when their complement has weak stress, two consecutive weak forms being mostly avoided. This applies especially to those cases in which the complement is the pronoun *it*, which is rarely stressed; thus in:

She was anxious for him to marry Miss Duncombe. He cared little or nothing about it. MRS. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. III, 23.

I have come for it. SWEET, *Sounds*, § 215.

2) when they are removed from their complement, as in:

The length of those five days I can convey no idea of to any one. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 30 a.

The tracing of the two women I have already provided for. WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, I, Ch. XV, 106.

Who did you sell the geese to? CON. DOYLE, *Sherl Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*  
You're the man I wanted to have some talk with. DEAN ALF., *Queen's Eng.*, § 309.

b) have strong stress, 1) when they are contrasted with another, as in:

The wind blew — not up the road or down it, though that's bad enough, but sheer across it. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 118.

Did you throw it at him or to him? PALMER, *Gram. of Spok. Eng.*, § 18.

2) when they stand together with another preposition, the two having a complement in common, placed after the last, as in:

The only serious quarrel they had ever had .. had arisen from the refusal of the younger (cousin) to accept of and profit by these elegant presents. CH. BRONTË, *Shirl.*, I, Ch. VI, 107.

Note. It deserves observation that in the *Authorized Version* *to* stands before nouns and stressed pronouns, *unto* before unstressed pronouns. DEUTSCHBEIN, *Syst.*, § 14, 4, Anm. 2.

### Loss of Sound in Prepositions.

105. The semantic insignificance of some prepositions and their consequent stresslessness have, in some instances, caused loss of sound.

- a) In rapid speech the final consonants are apt to disappear in *in*, *of*, *on*, and *with*. The disappearance is sometimes symbolized in print by the apostrophe; thus *i'*, *o'*, *wi'* (2, e, 2).
- b) In *through* and *thorough* the final consonant has long since shared the fate of the velar spirant in many words, and disappeared also in slow and deliberate speech. Poets often affect to symbolize the disappearance of the sound by substituting an apostrophe for *gh*; thus *thro'*, *thoro'* (2, e, 3).
- c) In earlier English the vowel in *to* was sometimes dropped before infinitives beginning with a vowel or an *h* (2, e, 1).
- d) The Old-English *an*, which was often rounded into *on* (in which form the preposition has come down in Present English), in some cases superseded by *in*, was often weakened into a mere prefix, the proclitic *a*. Thus we have *ablaze*, *aglow*, *alive*, *ashore* *aslant*, *asleep* and many others. By the side of some of these derivatives the fuller forms with the preposition are still in ordinary use; thus in *in a blaze*, *in a glow*, *on shore*. See also Ch. LVII, 6.

#### Vacillation between different Prepositions.

106. The semantic vagueness and insignificance of many of the shorter and commoner prepositions, such as *at*, *by*, *for*, *in*, *on*, *to* and *with*, may also be held responsible for the frequent vacillation between these prepositions in certain combinations or applications, and for the changes they have undergone in their areas of incidence. The discussion of these changes belongs to the province of historical grammar and lexicography, with which this grammar does not profess to deal. The student interested in the subject will find some hints about the subject in EARLE, Phil.<sup>4</sup>, §§ 37—38. For the rest the variability of prepositions has already been incidentally touched on in several places of this grammar.
- a) In the discussion of the gerund- as compared with the infinitive-construction after verbs and adjectives that govern a prepositional object, it has repeatedly been shown that various prepositions are in actual use without a corresponding difference in meaning (Ch. XIX, 23).
- b) In Ch. XLVI, 15 not a few instances have been given of verbs that may indifferently be construed with a non-prepositional object and various prepositional objects.
- c) Mention has already been made of the rather numerous prepositions which do almost the same duty as *by* before the inverted subject in the passive construction (Ch. XLVII, 3—4).
- d) It has already been pointed out above in 62 and 66 that in the complements of nominals *to* and *for* are, to a certain extent, used indifferently.

e) Also in the discussion of prepositional phrases (10) attention has been drawn to the fact that the noun, adjective or adverb in them is, in some cases, preceded or followed by different prepositions, not corresponding to distinct differences in meaning.

f) Numerous instances of this variability of prepositions independent of semantic differences will be given in a contemplated book on other aspects of prepositions than such as can be discussed in this grammar, for which the present writer has long been collecting the necessary materials. In this place a few examples must suffice.

He (sc. Cromwell) set up Parliaments by the stroke of his pen and scattered them with the breath of his mouth. COWLEY.<sup>1)</sup>

There was a tap at the door; and a man came staggering in, without saying with your leave, or by your leave, with something heavy on his head. DICK., *Crick*, III, 104. (For *by your leave* see the O. E. D., s. v. *leave*, 1.)

g) The want of a distinct meaning may also be one of the reasons why some verbs have changed their regimen, i. e. have become transitive through the dropping of a preposition (Ch. XLVI, 13).

### Suppression of Prepositions.

107. The entire or relative want of semantic significance of many of the commoner prepositions may also be held to be the cause of their frequent suppression in certain applications. Many of the cases, however, that strike the modern reader as instances of suppression, may be considered as modifications or continuations of an older practice which placed many complements of verbs or adjectives in the accusative, dative or genitive case, prepositions often, however, occurring together with case-endings. When the case-endings became irre recognizable or disappeared, the expression of the relations to be indicated was, indeed, in many cases relegated to prepositions, but as frequently the uninflected form was simply substituted for the inflected. It is not the task of this grammar to trace the adverbial substantives or substantival word-groups to the forms in which they first appeared in the literary products of the language. In the following discussions, therefore, the combinations in question will be viewed only from the modern standpoint. It stands to reason that, owing to the frequent vacillation between two or more prepositions to be supplied in a given combination (106), it is sometimes impossible to be positive about the particular preposition that might be inserted.

108. Of especial frequency is the suppression of the preposition *of*, which, as has been observed in 49 and subsequent sections, mostly serves only a constructional purpose, and has no meaning.

<sup>1</sup> BAIN, *Rhet.*, 21.

a) It is often dropped in adjuncts that have the value of a *genitivus qualitatis*. See also ZUPITZA, *Anglia*, VII, 156 ff; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 94, 4; WENDT, *Synt.*, II, 74; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 12.325; *ib.*, 15.71. The suppression is particularly frequent in adjuncts denoting a person's age, a length of time, or some dimension, but is by no means confined to such.

1) \* His daughter, a girl about eighteen [etc.]. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. IV, 38.

\*\* The chapels .. looked as if they carried you back to a period a hundred fifty years ago. Mrs. GASK., *Ruth*, Ch. XIV, 106.

\*\*\* This truly interesting archipelago .. has an area the size of Wales. *Westm. Gaz.*, 9/12, 1922, 23 a.

Compare: I indulged in the profound speculations of a boy of eleven years old. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup>

2) An old lady, the shape of an egg, so short and stout was she. READE, *Woman-Hater*, II, 53.<sup>2)</sup>

This morning she wore a morning costume, all one colour. BESANT & RICE, *Gold Butterfly*, I, 70.<sup>2)</sup>

b) Thus also frequently when such an adjunct is used predicatively and stands without a head-word (54, c).

1) It is again in certain adjuncts denoting a person's age or some dimension that *of* is frequently dispensed with; thus such as contain the nouns:

*age*, as in: He is just my age. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3)</sup>, § 371.

These children are exactly the same age. SWEET, *Spok Eng.*, 34.

*breadth*, as in: A narrow shady little walk, which was parallel with the broad green path, but was not half its breadth. YATES, *Nobody's Fortune*, II, 160.<sup>2)</sup>

*height*, as in: He was about the middle height. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 7.

*length*, *width*, as in: Her dresses were neither the right width or length, nor even the right material. NORTON, *Lost and Saved*, I, 52.<sup>2)</sup>

Compare: He (sc. Charles the Fifth) was of about the middle height. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 54 a.

You and I are of the same age. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. X, 143.

She was of the same age with him. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIII, 304. (In this example *of* could not possibly be suppressed.)

2) Similarly the preposition is mostly dispensed with before the names of shades of colours preceded by the indefinite article, as in: Meg had turned a deadly white. DICK., *Chimes*, I.

They often painted the lower half of their columns a bright red. LYTTON, *Pomp*, I, Ch. II, 15 a.

(The rooms) were) painted a heavy slate colour. Mrs. GASK., *The Squire's Story*, (217).

The sand of the cove was bright gold (sic), and the low rocks to either side of it were a dark red. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. IX 3, 122.

Compare: His nether garments were of a bluish grey. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 23 b.

The White House was re-stuccoed (this time of a pale yellow colour). Mrs. GASK., *The Squire's Story* (218).

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, II, 178.

<sup>2)</sup> ZUPITZA, *Anglia*, VII, 156 ff.

c) The absence of *of* may also be frequent enough when the predicative noun is such a word as:

*profession*; thus in: So you haven't made up your mind yet what profession you're going to be when you grow up, Bobby? *Punch*.

*quality*; thus in: I saw it (sc. the book) was good selling quality. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. I, 9.*

*trade*; thus in: What trade art thou? *SHAK., Jul. Cæs., I, I, 5.*

d) Of particular interest is the frequent absence of *of* before the predicative *use*, as in:

What use would a thing like this be to you? *ANSTEV, Vice Versa, Ch. II, II.*

Compare: The helpless, silly father could be of no use. *Mrs. GASK., The Squire's Story, (228).*

For further discussion of the various combinations with *use* see especially Ch. XIX, 12. Compare also *SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 440.*

109. Very common also is the suppression of possessive *of* in combinations with *side*. The suppression is regular in the case of *beside*, and frequent after *inside* and *outside* (33). In their denuded state these words are undistinguishable from ordinary prepositions. But also when *side* enters into combination with other words that distinctly preserve their individual meaning, *of* is frequently dropped; thus in:

Mr. and Mrs. Fezziwig took their stations, one on either side the door. *DICK., Christm. Car., II, 47.*

He had lived too long with our go-ahead brethren, who stride the world on the other side the Atlantic, .. not to have caught their glorious fever for reading. *LYTTON, My Novel, I, v, Ch. II, 292.*

On one side the atrium, a small staircase admitted to the apartments for the slaves on the second floor. *id., Pomp., I, Ch. III, 15 b.*

An alley .. ran parallel with the very high wall on that side the garden. *CH. BRONTË, Vil., Ch. XII, 131.*

There was a great crowd collected on either side the road. *BUTLER, Erewhon, Ch. IX, 89.*

Compare: Germany's Eastern designs and ambitions may well be decided on this side of the Rhine. *Westm. Gaz., No. 7595, I b.*

On the other side of the table an imposing nobleman, aged 46. *SHAW, Saint Joan, IV (Stage-direction).*

Note α) These prepositional word-groups not seldom undergo further shortening by the suppression of *on*, as in:

There's a barrow t'other side the hedge. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 163.*

The brown hair (fell) either side the melancholy, composed face. *MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. VIII, 92.*

β) Before a pronoun the phrase never loses *of*, but it may dispense with *on*, as in:

Madame Lavalette sat as he had left her, her hands either side of her. *ib., I, Ch. XII, 147.*

110. Of the same function is the *of* which may be supplied after:

*on board*, as in: On board the great ship were music and laughter, and the sweet voices of singing women. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will<sup>13</sup>, Ch. VII, 67.*

Note. The suppression is regular when there is no modifier before *ship*, as in *on board ship*, which is practically a compound adverb; thus in: She

*H. POUTSMA, III II.*

goes and tells the people on board ship that it is all my fault. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 60.

Compare: An armament complete enough, even to .. the daily service of God on board of every ship. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XI, 98 *a*.

Amyas was to go as a gentleman adventurer on board of Raleigh's bark. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 97 *b*.

*in despite*. The dropping of *of* appears to be rare. More usual is *despite* as a preposition without either *in* or *of* (13).

111. It is again the semantic insignificance of *of* which is, no doubt, mainly responsible for its frequent suppression after *astride* (33; Ch. LIX, 112, *c*), and in the attributive *out-door* (34, *c*, 3; Ch. LIX, 110, Obs. I).

112. Also the following prepositions are apt to be dropped in certain combinations:

*a) at*, especially: 1) in adjuncts of place; thus in:

The Queen takes place some distance from the King. SHAK., *Henry VIII*, II, 4. (stage-direction).

He passed through the excited shouting crowd, towards a few police who stood a short distance from the stand. GRAPH., 1891, 554 *a*.

2) in adjuncts of time, particularly such as contain the nouns: *instant* (or *moment*), as in: I am destined to die in this place. I felt it the instant I set foot upon the shore. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIII, 195-6. He seized Tom Pinch by both his hands the moment he appeared. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 102 *b*.

Compare: The Prince will be back at any moment. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, II, Ch. I, 155.

Note. *a)* Although *at* appears to be the preposition that might be supplied in the above examples, *upon* is used in: It seems that upon the first moment I was discovered sleeping on the ground after my landing, the Emperor had early notice of it. SWIFT, *Gul.*, I, Ch. I.

*β)* Metrical considerations are responsible for the additional suppression in: But instant as its 'larum rung, | The castle gate was open flung. SCOTT, *Brid.*, I, xv.

*opportunity*, as in: We'll tell you all another opportunity. SHER., *School*, I, I.

You must put it (sc. the letter), the first opportunity you have, into the post at London. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 101.

Compare: It has been the fashion for some time now to decry British commerce at every possible opportunity (*Times*); also: I hope, my dear, you will, *upon* the first opportunity, satisfy my scruples (GAY, *Beg. Op.*, II). I would presume to entreat that he might be promoted *on* some favourable opportunity (SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XII, 133).

*time*, as in: What time shall I wake you, fellows? JER., *Three Men*, Ch. IV, 47.

Each man has, one time or other, a little Rubicon. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIX, 232.

I do not intend to wear them, .. either to-night or any other time. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. XI, 128.

All times I have enjoy'd | Greatly, have suffer'd greatly, both with those | That loved me, and alone. TEN., *Ulysses*, 7.

Note. *a)* For discussion of *at some time* and *sometime*, as compared with *some time*, see Ch. XL, 176, Obs. III; and Ch. LIX, 110.



β) The suppression of *at* is the rule before the adverb *about*, as in: Colonel W. was awake about 11.30 (Times); it is exceptional in: My cheeks glowed with indignation every word he spoke (Miss BURNEY, *Evelina*, LIX, 281).

3) in the expressions *at first (second, etc.) hand*, as in:

Why not buy your tea first-hand? Times.

I only want a little pony-cart — you could get it second-hand for ten or twelve pounds. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, Prol., Ch. II, 29. They were either writers of sensational fiction, or gave their evidence second- or third-hand. Times.

Compare: Very few of the members .. had been in England so as to know her constitution .. at first hand. BRYCE, *Amer. Com.*, I, xxv, 273.<sup>1)</sup>

b) *by*, especially before *wholesale* and *retail*, the latter preserving the preposition more frequently than the former; thus in:

Goods were bought wholesale and sold retail to the members at such prices as ensured the solvency of the business. Times.

Compare: to retail = to sell in small quantities: opposed to selling by wholesale. ANNAND., *Conc. Dict.*, s.v. *retail*; see also *ib.*, s.v. *wholesale*. Note. *By* can also [be supplied in: i. I'll write to my aunt this very post. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 62.

ii. I climbed up the shortest way. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 146

c) *from*, regularly in the expression *time out of mind* (= from time immemorial), as in:

Her (sc. Queen Mab's) chariot is an empty hazel-nut | Made by the joiner squirrel or old grub, | Time out o' mind the fairies' coachmakers. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 4, 69.

d) *in*, especially: 1) in numerous combinations with *way* and its synonyms *wise* and *fashion*; thus in:

i. I promise you .. that one way or other you shall read the name of George Osborne in the *Gazette*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 218.

For me to interfere either way would be at once idle and perilous. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 147.

ii. I'm nowise a man to speak out of my place. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. VI, 39.

iii. The middle compartment of the window opened to the ground, French fashion. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 45.

Compare: i. You should not think in that way. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XXV, 342.

ii. The young lady in nowise made herself disagreeable. *ib.*, Ch. III, 46.

iii. What we fear is that the policy of pacific penetration will not prosper much when it is pursued in this fashion. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 220. 335*b*.

Note. For further discussion see Ch. XLI, 21, 56, 134 and 181; and Ch. LIX, 9, 40*f*.

2) in many combinations consisting of a demonstrative and such nouns as *century*, *year*, *season*, *month*, *week*, *day*, *night*, *moment*, etc.

You have come out this bitter night, why did you? Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 146.

Note. The preposition *in* can also be supplied in a similar combination with *weather*, as in: Let's have it (sc. the pine-apple) for tiffin; very cool and nice this hot weather. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 38.

<sup>1)</sup> O. E. D., s.v. *hand*, 10.

However do you keep warm wading like that this weather? PUNCH, 1897, 213 *a*.

Likewise in the combination *time enough*, as used in: He saw her brought in by the fishermen, who had got her out of the water time enough to save her from any harm. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, III, Ch. VIII, Ch. LXI, 278.

3) before *least* in the negating expression *not in the least* (Ch. LIX, 86).

*e) on*, especially in expressions denoting the time of a happening:

1) before *one day* (*night, evening* etc.). Compare Ch. V, 10, *a*.

One day in private, the two young gentlemen had had a difference. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 42.

Compare: On one day Mr. James, the Colonel, and Horn, the keeper, went out and shot pheasants. *ib.*, II, Ch. X, 105.

Now it befell, upon an afternoon, that he was very busy at a map. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 12 *a*.

Note. The following quotations show that also *of*, and even *in*, could be supplied in these combinations: Presently, of an early morning, all the party set forth for the country. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. III, 21.

Esmond came to this spot in one sunny evening of spring. *ib.*, II, Ch. XIII, 268.

2) before combinations with *last* or *next*, as in:

i. The poor geranium I reared myself, and the dear, dear flower-pot Mr. Caxton bought for me my last birthday! LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. IV, 18.

ii. 'Twas the next day my aunt lound the matter out. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (217).

Compare: On the next morning Alaric and his new companion met each other at an early hour at the Paddington station. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. VII, 80.

Note. *a)* When *following* takes the place of *next*, the omission of (*up*)*on* appears to be less common: thus in: On the following morning .. Norman introduced the subject. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. VI, 66.

He died on the following day. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 21.

*β)* Also in the expressions illustrated in the following quotations the above omission seems to be unusual: On the night before he had come to his aunt's house. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 376.

She had sat up reading until a very late hour on the previous night. MISS BRADDON, *Audley*, II, Ch. VIII, 142.

3) before combinations with a demonstrative, as in:

If I had my will, I would trot off this very night. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 342.

The funeral had evidently taken place that day. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 480.

Compare: He was the third (horse) | Which he had mounted on that glorious day. WORDSW., *Hart-Leap Well*, 8.

4) before dates. The suppression of (*up*)*on* is, however, rather the exception than the rule, at least in speech. The following quotations exhibit no fewer than five different modes of representing dates in print. Compare Ch. XLII, 13, *a*.

David the Second died 22nd February. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*.

Sacred to the Memory of John Pontifex, who was born August 16th, 1727, and died February 8, 1812 in his 85th year. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. III, 13.

Compare: They met on the 9th June 1291. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.* His son had sailed for Australia upon the 9th of September. MISS BRADDON, *Audley*.

The Communist letter came into the hands of the Government . . on October 10, and was first seen by him on October 16. *Manch. Guard*, 31/10, 1924, 362 c.

5) before proper names of days, or names of parts of days, preceded by such proper names. The suppression of *upon* is distinctly exceptional (Ch. V, 8, a, 4).

I preach in town Sunday. CH. KINGSLEY, *Life and Let.*, II, 29.

The clergyman from Gimmerswick comes over alternate Sundays. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, Ch. I, 18.

Compare: She had left Haworth on Friday morning. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 188.

We are expected to be at Tavistock on Tuesday evening. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. VII, 72.

6) before *to-day* (or *this day*), *to-night* (or *this night*), *yesterday*, *the day before yesterday*, *to-morrow*, *the day after to-morrow*. The suppression of (*up*)*on* is practically regular.

f) *to*, especially after (*un*)*like* (26), *near* (*nearer*, *nearest*, *next*) (28 ff), *nigh* (32), and *opposite* (33).

113. In numerous adverbial word-groups, mostly containing two or more nouns, some preposition suggested by the meaning is dispensed with, often together with some other word of little semantic significance, an article or a possessive pronoun (Ch. V, 10, b; Ch. XXXI, 65, d). We may distinguish:

a) such as indicate uninterrupted duration, as in:

Night and noon and morning she brought the abominable drinks ordained by the doctor. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 267.

b) such as indicate thoroughness of action, as in:

Next Lady-day you turn out bag and baggage. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 9.

Compare: He had gone over with bag and baggage to the successful enemy. DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XVIII, 219.

c) such as indicate a manner of action, as in:

They advanced sword in hand. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 372.

114. Sometimes it is not an omission of the preposition, so much as a modification in the function of a verb, which causes the absence of the preposition.

a) Numerous intransitive verbs may be converted into transitives through absorption of the preposition with which they are primarily construed; thus *to walk* in *to walk the streets*, *to run* in *to run an errand*, *to fly* in *to fly the country*, *to travel* in *to travel the Continent*, *to talk* in *to talk business*, etc. (Ch. XLVI, 50 f).

He nearly killed Smirke with terror by putting him on his mare, and taking him a ride over a common. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 34.

b) Another modification of the function of the verb which is the apparent cause of the omission of the preposition is that which follows from the verb taking a kind of cognate object; thus in *to go a journey*, *to go a walk*, *to come a long journey*, etc. (Ch. XLIV, 54, Obs. III).

We are going the campaign together. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 93.

Note. a) Such collocations as *to play cricket*, *peg-top*, etc., in which the nouns may also, with some justice, be understood to be cognate objects (Ch. XLVI, 54, Obs. III), often have the preposition *at*. Compare: *She had played fast and loose with me* (THACK., *Love the Wid.*, Ch. VI) with *It is a shame .. to play at fast and loose with a young girl's affections* (id., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XXI, 223).

β) *To play fiddle*, etc. varies with *to play on the fiddle*, etc. Compare: *We have .. to play the same fiddle as they played* (Times) with *He played tolerably on the fiddle* (WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 111).

c) It seems to be more plausible to assume a modification in the function of the verb than an omission of the preposition in such combinations as *to stay* (or *to stop*) *dinner* and *to wait dinner*. After *to stay* (or *to stop*) the construction with *to* is now the usual one (STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 758). For further discussion and illustration see Ch. V, 11, Note a; Ch. XLV, 23, c; Ch. XLVI, 54, Obs. II.

115. Prepositions are often omitted before gerunds, converting them into present participles or what SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2333) calls half-gerunds. For detailed discussion see Ch. LVI, 50; and compare Ch. II, 37—38 and Ch. LIII, 17.

He was above an hour inspecting it. Mrs. GASK., *The Squire's Story*, (218).

### Prepositions compared with Adverbs.

116. The most important and most interesting among the words and word-groups that do duty as prepositions are those which are used in no further function than that of adverb or conjunction, i. e. such as have been called primary prepositions in 3. With the exception of the Romance *maigre*, *per*, *sans*, *versus* and *vice*, which are used only in technical or archaic language, they belong, one and all, to the native element of the language. As has already been observed in Ch. LIX, 2, *for*, *from*, *of*, *till* and *with* are the only prepositions that are not used as adverbs.
117. Primary prepositions differ from primary adverbs only in that they are furnished with a noun or pronoun by way of complement; or contrarivise primary adverbs may be defined as primary prepositions without a complement.

This will become clear on comparing such sentences as *I saw him pass by the window*, *Run across the road and tell him to come here*, *He is in the room* with respectively *I saw him pass by*, *Run across and tell him to come here*, *He is in*. See Ch. XLV, 27; and compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 394; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gr.*, II, 1.68.

It will be observed that the sentences in the second group differ from those in the first in being vaguer.

118. Particles, of course, preserve their function of prepositions when

their complement is omitted because it is to be found in a preceding or following part of the discourse, as in:

i. HOR. My lord, I came to see your father's funeral. — HAML. I pray thee, do not mock me, fellow-student; | I think it was to see my mother's wedding. — HOR. Indeed, my lord, It follow'd hard upon. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 179.

I have to give them their dinner to take with them ... Sometimes I have to send them without. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, I, 3, (37).

ii. Highbury, perhaps, afforded society enough? — There were several pretty houses in and about it. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXIII, 179.

Your money came out of, or went into, wormy old wooden drawers. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. I, 68.

Note. A preposition which thus stands without its complement may be said to be used absolutely.

119. The absolute use of prepositions is unfrequent when the complement is to be supplied from a preceding part of the sentence. The fact is that the complement is, in this case, mostly represented by a personal pronoun. This pronoun is, accordingly, related to the preceding preposition in the same way as the anaphoric prop-word *one* is to a preceding adnominal word. The following examples represent ordinary practice:

The wind blew — not up the road or down it, though that's bad enough, but sheer across it. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 118.

There is no effective check on M. Poincaré's policy, either in the Chamber or out of it. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/3, 1924, 242 *b*.

The construction with an anaphoric pronoun is, however, impossible or, at least, incongruous, when the preposition forms a kind of compound with the preceding noun; thus in:

All was changed — in-doors and out. WILK. COL., *Wom. in White*, I, Ch. XV, 108.

Sunday was a dull day, out-of-doors and in. *ib.*, I, Ch. XV, 115.

Because she was what they considered wise and good when on duty, they kindly overlooked her timidity when off. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVII, 397.

120. But the particle is to be apprehended as an adverb when there is not in the preceding part of the discourse a (pro)noun that may be understood as its complement, although the context may suggest such a (pro)noun; thus in the following rather interesting examples with:

*across*: The Major beckoned to him gravely, and, tumbling down his books, Pen went across. THACK., *Pen d.*, I, Ch. II, 28.

*between*: I thought, but that your father came between, | In former days you saw me favourably. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 314.

*beyond*: She had no objection to her telling us, of course, but it was not to go beyond. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLI, 325.

*over*: Owing to the scarcity of labourers on farms, boys of twelve and over should be allowed to leave school for the purpose of learning and assisting in farm work during the present crisis. *The New Statesman*, No. 96, 431 *b*.

*under*: Her father was treated as he ought to be treated, by being kept under. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarl.*, Ch. II, 78.

*within*: All within was the same. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 70 *a*.

Note *a*) *In between* seems to be the only example of a sequence of two prepositions being used adverbially (37, *c*); thus in:

Ancoats would make a dash for the brandy and soda on the veranda; and in between I had to listen to tirades against marriage. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXII, 185 *b*.

Without me in between, you would seem like a different species. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. X, 238.

This sequence has grown into a kind of compound, and as such even admits of conversion into a noun; thus in:

She was so busy in admiring those soft blue eyes, in talking and listening, and forming all these schemes in the in-betweens, that the evening flew away at a very unusual rate. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. III, 23.

$\beta$ ) Adverbs may stand adnominally after the noun. Observe especially this adnominal use of *between*, as in:

I have come to town sometimes, with long times between, to take a proud peep at you. DICK., *Hard Times*, III, Ch. V, 116 *a*.

There were riders as young as six, and as old as sixty years, with every age between. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, IV, Ch. I, 81.

I am so very glad that you two should have met and become friends, in spite of all the years between. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, I, Ch. V, 35.

The placing of adnominal adverbs after the noun should not be confounded with the placing of prepositions after their complement as described in 123.

121. Sometimes the grammatical status of the particle is more or less uncertain. Thus in the following examples an anaphoric personal pronoun may, indeed, be supplied, but this would involve a slight modification of the meaning of the sentence, inasmuch as it would do away with the comparative vagueness which attaches to the latter part of the sentence:

See how anxiously the men look round, and behind, and before. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 2.

Follow me, or go before. Take your choice. DICK., *Barn Rudge*, Ch. XVIII, 72 *a*.

Jack fell down and broke his crown, | And Jill came tumbling after. Nursery Rhyme.

122. Group-prepositions as described under 10, *a* or 10, *b*, naturally lose their linking element when used absolutely or adverbially; thus in:

i. At the bottom of this bank .. rose the Abbey-Mill Farm, with meadows in front. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLII, 339.

I could scarcely distinguish a foot in advance. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. II, 10 *b*.

ii. The others were still able to keep ahead, without any obligation of waiting for her. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. X, 86.

A widening of the path permitted them to walk abreast. MRS. GASK, *Ruth*, Ch. V, 48.

123. *a*) For reasons of metre or rhythm poets are sometimes fain to

place prepositions, especially such as have two syllables, after instead of before their complement.

A lovely ladie rode him faire beside. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, I, IV.

The lady sate the Monarch by. SCOTT, *Brid.*, I, XXI, I.

What's Yarrow but a river bare, | That glides the dark hills under? WORDSW., *Yarrow Unvisited*, 26.

Lights came at length, and men, and maids, who found | An awkward spectacle their eyes before. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CLXXXVII.

And his chief beside | Smiling the boy fell dead. BROWNING, *Incident*, V.

*b*) The prepositions *about*, *over*, (*a*)*round* and *through* are often found after their complement also in ordinary prose. This postposition imparts to them more or less the character of adverbs. Thus in *He sailed the world round* it is rather *the world* which modifies *round* than the reverse: indeed *the world* is felt as an intensifying adjunct to *round*, approximating in meaning and function to such an adverb as *entirely*. Compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 104, Obs.; also the O. E. D., s. v. *over*, 7, *d* and 17, *b*. Here follow a few examples illustrating postposition of:

*about*: Secondly, tell me, without any doubt, | How soon I may ride the world about. *Old Ballad (Rainb.)*, II, 47).

*over*: There must be slum-bred Londoners the wide world over. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/12, 1922, 7 *a*.

It is estimated that some five million people the country over heard the admirably phrased and uttered speeches which the King and the Prince of Wales made on the occasion. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/4, 1925, 321.

Compare: They travel all over the country. O. E. D., s. v. *over*, 7, *b*.

(*a*)*round*: Here be five Bideford men, | Which have sail'd the world around. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 19 *b*.

Compare: Had he and all his family sought round the world for a perfect wife for him, they could not have found her superior. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLIX, 403.

*through*: We did not sleep much: we talked the whole night through. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVIII, 352,

The whole morning through she sat listening. WALT. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XXIII, 145.

Note *a*) In such a sentence as *He slept the clock round* (Ch. XLVI, 56, Obs. IV), in which any notion of a movement regarding the action indicated by the predicate is excluded, the alternative word-order is impossible; thus also in:

Anon we'll drink a measure | The table round. SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 4, 12.

*β*) In the following quotation *within* is best understood as an adverb: *him* is then to be apprehended as the object of *burnt*. No good case can be made for the view of considering *within* as a preposition placed after its head-word:

(He) fain had spoken to her, | And loosed in words of sudden fire the wrath | And smoulder'd wrong that burnt him all within. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 107.

124. There is sometimes also a difficulty in telling the function of a particle when it is placed in immediate succession to an intransitive verb: i. e. there may be some hesitation in answering the

question whether it is the particle alone which forms a kind of sense-unit with the verb, or the particle with the following (pro)noun. In the former case it is an adverb, in the latter a preposition. Compare, for example, the two following sentences: The boy had almost talked over his mother. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 80. I stayed over the next day, which was Sunday. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXXIII, 395.

In the first quotation *over* distinctly belongs to *talked*, with which it forms a kind of unit, and which it surpasses in semantic significance and, consequently, in stress. In the second, on the other hand, it is only the whole word-group *over the next day* which can be said to be at all connected with *stayed*, and there can be no doubt that here it is the noun in it which conveys the main meaning and, accordingly, has the greater stress. In the first quotation the intransitive *talk* is turned into the transitive group-verb *talk over*, in the second the intransitive *stay* does not change its status. The first, accordingly, admits of passive conversion, the second does not (Ch. XLVI, 55).

Commenting on *to pass by his eldest son* and *He passed over the bridge*, the O. E. D. (s. v. *pass by* and *pass over*) has it that in both combinations the adverb may also be apprehended as a preposition. Considered in the light of the above exposition, this view can hardly be maintained. In the first sentence the particle clearly preserves its close connexion with the verb, in the second it passes on to the following noun. In the first, therefore, it does not lose the nature of the adverb; in the second it has become a preposition. In the first it does not lose its stress; in the second it has become weak-stressed. See also Ch. XLVI, 56, Obs. IV.

The difference in function also appears from the fact that *by* admits of being placed in post-position, which is not possible with *over*. Compare: I passed him by. OSC. WILDE, *De Profundis*, 17.

b) Some uncertainty seems also to cling to *about* when standing before a numeral or a word-group suggesting a numeral. Thus MÄTZNER (*Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 353) gives as illustrations of a certain application of the preposition *about* such sentences as:

I'm told he's much about my size and figure. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man*. The Vicar was about twenty-five years of age. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, I, Ch. I.

Thus also STOFFEL (*Handb.*, III, 148) regards *about* as a preposition in *He seemed to be much about your age*.

SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 1909) is under the same misapprehension in including *about* among the prepositions with a 'definite and marked meaning', when used in such a connexion as *He is about my height*.

There can, however, be no reasonable doubt that *about* as used in the above connexions is a pure adverb, modifying as it does the following word(-group) in like manner as such indubitable adverbs as *approximately*, *quite*. The misapprehension seems to



due to the fact that the suppression of the preposition *of* (107) or *at* (111) is not realized.

125. Some grammarians will have it that a preposition when detached from its complement (Ch. VIII, 83; Ch. XXXIX, 28) assumes the function of an adverb, at least in passive constructions (Ch. XLVII, 23 ff). Thus DEUTSCHBEIN (System, § 26, 3; § 43, 3, Anm. 2 and 3); KRUISINGA (Handb.<sup>3</sup>, § 2208); SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 396). For a discussion of these views, which are not shared by the present writer, see Ch. XLV, 25, Obs. I.
-



## CHAPTER LXI.

---

### CONJUNCTIONS.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

Definition of the Function of Conjunctions . . . . .	1
Distinction between Co-ordinative and Subordinative Con- junctives. . . . .	2— 3
Words and Word-groups used as Conjunctions . . . . .	4— 8
Difficulties in stating the Status of Particles . . . . .	9—12



1. Conjunctions are words denoting a relation between: *a*) two members of a complex without being an integral part of either, *b*) two elements of a sentence without representing the second as grammatically subservient to the first (DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakk., III, § 121).

As compared with conjunctions, the other words that indicate a relation between two members of a complex, i.e. the relative pronouns, the pronominal adverbs that introduce clauses (Ch. LIX, 43—48), and the conjunctive adverbs (LIX, 105), form part of one of the two members. In this member, which is always placed last, they refer to the other, and thus bring about a kind of union.

As to the word-connecting conjunctions, the above definition clearly distinguishes them from prepositions, which also serve to show a relation between two elements of a sentence. In the case of the latter indeed, the first element is distinctly superior in grammatical rank to the second. Outwardly this is shown by such pronouns as have inflection for case being placed in the objective when preceded by a preposition. The difference is unmistakably brought out by a comparison of two such sentences as the following, which, though semantically almost identical, are grammatically distinctly unlike: *John and I went to Rome*, and *John went to Rome with me*. Compare Ch. XXVI, 23.

2. According as the members of a complex are of equal or unequal grammatical rank, we distinguish co-ordinative and subordinative conjunctions, or conjunctive words or word-groups. As a convenient word including connective words or word-groups, exclusive of relative pronouns, whether used in co-ordination or subordination, the term conjunctive may be used.

In Dutch the two kinds of conjunctives can outwardly be told by the word-order of the member they introduce. Compare *Hij trok zijn overjas aan; want het was erg koud* with *Hij trok zijn overjas aan, omdat het erg koud was*. In English this test can hardly ever be applied: the same word-order being mostly used in subordination as in co-ordination. Compare *He put on his greatcoat; for it was very cold* with *He put on his greatcoat, because it was very cold*.

In one case only has English a different word-order in subordination from that in co-ordination, viz. in subordinate questions, which do not follow the inverted word-order observed in many direct questions. Compare *I will ask him whether (when) he can come* with *Can he come? When can he come?*

Subordinate questions introduced by the interrogative *what*, and perhaps other interrogative words, sometimes have inversion. Examples are,

naturally, most frequent in the case of nominal predicates with *to be*, as back-position of the meaningless copula would give it undue prominence. When the predicate is formed by a verb with a full meaning, inversion is distinctly uncommon.

- i. It appears to me that you and I can do no better than go round to Jenny's and see what's the matter. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 264.
- ii. I think you asked me what did the letter contain. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 296.

The other distinctions between the two kinds of conjunctives apply to English as well as Dutch:

1) In complexes consisting of two co-ordinative members, the one containing the conjunctive cannot stand first. In the spoken language there is a slight pause at the end of the first member, and a slight fall in the pitch.

2) In complexes consisting of two members, one of which is subordinate to the other, either may have front-position. There is no such clear pause at the end of the first member, and no fall of pitch either (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, §§ 409, 423).

3) The distinction which concerns the inner texture of the complex is that in the case of subordination one member represents an element of the other, and is, accordingly, grammatically subordinate to it (Ch. IX).

3. In this place it may, however, be observed that the logical relation between the two members of a complex may be practically the same in co-ordination as in subordination. Thus the following pairs of sentences do not materially differ in meaning:

- i. John is as poor as a church-mouse, and (*or but*) his brother is rolling in wealth.
- ii. John is as poor as a church-mouse, while his brother is rolling in wealth.
- i. John is as rich as Cræsus, for all that he rarely indulges in any comforts.
- ii. Though John is as rich as Cræsus, he rarely indulges in any comforts.
- i. It is getting late, so I will go home.
- ii. As it is getting late, I will go home.
- i. Go and see for yourself. You will find I am right.
- ii. If you go and see for yourself, you will find I am right.

Note. Sometimes the relation between the members of a complex is expressed by a particular word in both; thus in:

Although all shall be offended, yet will not I. Bible, Mark, XIV, 29.

4. The only words which are used only as conjunctions are the co-ordinative *and*, *or*, and *nor*; and the subordinative *because*, *if*, *lest*, *than* and *unless*. SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 399) calls them primary conjunctions.

All the other words which do duty as conjunctions are primarily used in other functions and may, therefore, be called secondary conjunctions. Here belong *as*, *when*, *where*, *whence*, *whither*, *whereat*, *whereupon*, etc., *though*, whose primary function is that of adverb; *like*, whose primary function is that of adjective; *that*, whose primary function is that of demonstrative pronoun;

*whether*, whose primary function is that of interrogative pronoun. Two conjunctions are entire clauses whose component parts have been run into one word, viz. the co-ordinative *howbeit* (Ch. V, 12; Ch. VIII, 63, *a*, 2; Ch. XI, 6, *b*; Ch. XVII, 92) and the subordinative *albeit* (Ch. XVII, 92).

5. There are, besides, numerous words and word-groups which may perform the function of subordinative conjunctives. Most, if not all of them, owe their conjunctive force to *that* or *as* with which they were formerly combined, these words acting as syntactic links and having little or no meaning of their own. In course of time *that* was mostly discarded by most of them, so that the linking duty was transferred to the significant parts of the combinations, which practically converted them into pure conjunctions. Also some of the words whose only function is now that of a subordinative conjunction, were formerly frequently furnished with *that*. Thus also *when* and *where*, which sometimes also took *as*. For further discussion of the rise of the conjunctive function of the words and word-groups concerned see also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 47, Obs.; § 14, Obs. I; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 290.

Note. The optional use of *that* and *as* after certain conjunctives, also to some extent in Modern English, offers some convenience in satisfying the demands of metre, of which some poets are not slow to avail themselves.

6. Among the words and word-groups which in Modern English may assume a conjunctive function we may distinguish the following groups. (The numbers placed after them refer to the sections in which they are illustrated and commented on in Ch. XVII.)

*a*) those in which the significant part is a preposition. Some of them now stand almost invariably without *that*; thus *after* (21—22), *ere* (21—22), *since* (26, 45), *till* or *until* (22); some stand with or without *that*; thus *for* (42); also *but* (22, 67, 118, 135, 156), *except* (77, 156), *save* (156), with which the suppression depends on the function of the complement.

*b*) those in which the most significant part is a noun, 1) which is preceded by a preposition, mostly suppressed in the case of *at*. *a*) *That* is mostly omitted after (*at*) *every time* (23), (*at*) *the moment* (23), (*at*) *the instant* (23), *by the time* (23), *for fear* (44, 60), *in case* (68), (*up*) *on condition* (68). It is never dispensed with after *by reason* (rare, 44), *for the purpose* (60), *in order* (60), *to the end* (60), *to the intent* (60); any more than after *by then* (26), in which the adverb *then* is used substantively.

*β*) As is regularly placed after *in degree* (141), *in proportion* (141)

2) which is not preceded by a preposition; thus *while* (and its variants *whilst*, which may be as common, and *the while*, *the whiles*, *the whilst*, which are only occasionally met with in archaic language), sometimes followed by *that* or *as* (24, 25, 121); *what time*, always without *that* (28).

- c) those in which the most significant part is: 1) an indefinite pronoun, which is preceded by the preposition *for*; thus *for all* (80, 150) and *for anything* (150), which mostly stand without *that*; and *for aught* (150), which always stands without *that*;  
2) the condensed relative *what* preceded by *for* (150).
- d) those in which the significant part is: 1) an adverb of time; thus *directly* (25), and *immediately* (25), now always without *that*; *now* (26) and *once* (26) sometimes with *that*, sometimes without; *where*, which forms a compound with *as*: *whereas* (47).  
2) an adverb of quality; thus *conditionally* (obsolete, 69); *so*, which mostly requires *that* (53, 60), sometimes stands without it, according to its particular meaning (70), and in some rare instances is followed by *as* (70).  
3) a conjunctive adverb: thus *besides* (122), *moreover* (122), *withal* (rare, 45), *only* (157), all of which require *that*.
- e) those in which the most significant part is an adverb, or the indefinite numeral *much* used as an adverb, preceded by *as* or *so*: 1) preceded by a preposition; thus *forasmuch* (47), *inasmuch* (47), *for so much* (149), *in so far* (149), all of them regularly followed by *as*; *in so much* (53), requiring *that*.  
2) not preceded by a preposition; thus *as* (or *so*) *long* (27), *as* (or *so*) *often* (27), *as* (or *so*) *soon* (27), *as* (or *so*) *surely* (27), *as* (or *so*) *far* (149), *as* (or *so*) *nearly* (149), all of them regularly followed by *as*; *so much so* (53), which requires *that*.  
f) those in which the most significant part is the conjunction *if* or *though*, preceded by the conjunction *as* (109—111, 135).
- g) those in which the significant part is a verbal form, i. e.: 1) a present participle; thus *being* (obsolete, 46), *considering* (46), *notwithstanding* (91), *providing* (uncommon, 71), *seeing* (46), *supposing* (71), all of which may stand with or without *that*; *according* (138) which requires *as*.  
2) a past participle; thus *provided* (71), which stands with or without *that*.  
3) an imperative; thus *say* (72), *suppose* (72), which mostly stand without *that*.
7. Ob. I. The words which become conjunctions through the dropping of *that* differ from prepositions only in that their complement, instead of a (pro)noun, is an entire clause. Thus the conjunction *after* in *He never spoke after he fell* has exactly the same meaning as the preposition *after* in *He never spoke after his fall*. Similarly the conjunction *considering* in *Considering the problem is intricate, we are not to be surprised that it has not as yet been satisfactory solved* differs in no way from the preposition *considering* in *Considering the intricacy of the problem etc.*
- II. But also other conjunctions or words that do duty as conjunctions have some features in common with prepositions.
- 1) Thus *than* governs the objective of the relative *who* in the literary construction illustrated by such a sentence as:  
Dr. Adam Smith, than whom few were better judges on this subject, once observed to me that "Johnson knew more books than any man alive". Bosw., *Life of Johnson*, 14a.



2) *But* when construed with a (pro)noun may be regarded with equal propriety as a preposition as a conjunction introducing an incomplete adverbial clause of restriction (Ch. XVII, 154). Hence there is a constant hesitation as to the case of the personal pronoun standing after it. Thus we find both *Nobody went but me* and *Nobody went but I*. (Ch. XXXII, 7).

A similar vacillation as to the case-form of the personal pronoun may be met with after *save* and *except*.

4) *Like* is almost regularly placed in back-position when its complement is an interrogative or relative pronoun (Ch. LX, 24).

4) *As* has been shown above (84), and in Ch. VI, 9, 16, 21, *as*, when serving to connect a predicative adnominal adjunct with its head-word, varies with the preposition *for*. In the following example it has the value of the group-preposition *by way of* (13):

Kundry, a woman who mocked at Jesus Christ, and who, as a punishment, was turned into a witch. *Graph.*, No. 2305, 200 *b*.

In the case of the predicative adjunct being one of the first kind (Ch. VI), *as* even admits of being placed in back-position in like manner as an ordinary preposition (24, Note).

8. Some conjunctions (may) refer to an adverb in the attendant member, to which they are related as a relative pronoun is to its antecedent. The two words are then said to be correlatives. Such correlative pairs are used:

a) in co-ordination; e.g.: *both (at once, alike) .. and, as well .. as, not only .. but (also), either .. or, neither .. nor*, etc.; discussed in Ch. X.

b) in subordination; e.g.: *though .. yet, as .. as, so .. as*; discussed in Ch. XVII, 83, 103, 125, 132.

Also conjunctive adverbs or group-adverbs may form similar correlatives; e.g.: *partly .. partly, in part .. in part, sometimes .. sometimes, now .. now, for one thing .. for another, half .. half, on the one hand .. on the other (hand)*, etc.; discussed in Ch. X. Some examples with remarkable correlatives may find a place here.

As often as the sow farrowed, so sure was the house of Ho-ti to be in a blaze. *LAMB, Elia, Dis. Roast Pig*, (256).

Whenever she was disposed to be well and cheerful, so sure were the people around her to throw, by some means or other, a damp upon her spirits. *DICK., Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXII, 86 *a*.

As sure as Fanny walked in the gardens or park, so sure would her sister come trailing after her. *THACK., Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 166.

9. There appears to be considerable difficulty in fixing the grammatical status of some particles in the particular kinds of sentences or clauses in which they are used, and in giving them appropriate names.

a) Such words as *also, therefore, accordingly, however, yet*, etc., i.e. such as in an earlier part of this grammar have been called conjunctive adverbs, a translation of *voegwoordelijke bijwoorden* of

Dutch grammars are called by BAIN (H. E. Gr., 101) relative adverbs, conjunctive adverbs or adverbial conjunctions.

According to MASON (Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 295) "they are only simple adverbs, not even connective adverbs, still less are they mere conjunctions." ONIONS (Adv. Eng. Synt. (14, 4) is practically of the same opinion as MASON. According to him they "are not Conjunctions at all, but Adverbs." SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 409) refers to them as a class of independent adverbs which closely resemble conjunctions, and proposes to call them half-conjunctions. Independent adverbs, in SWEET's nomenclature, are such as "simply modify some word (or sentence)", e.g.: *very* in *he is very ill*; dependent adverbs such as "not only modify some word, but at the same time make us expect something more to complete the sense", e.g.: "*as* in *he is as tall*, which makes us expect *as I (am)*, or some such complement of the sense" (N. E. Gr., § 356). As (in § 429, Note) he observes that the half-conjunctions, especially those of cause, *for*, *therefore*, *accordingly*, are often regarded as sub-conjunctions (i. e. subordinative conjunctions), and (in § 423) he includes *for* among the half-conjunctions, it is evident that his notion of conjunctive adverbs is not the same as that implied by the term *voegwoordelijke bijwoorden* in Dutch grammars.

b) SWEET (N. E. Gr., §§ 221, 373, 408) holds that *where*, *when*, *why* and *how* in such sentences as *I know where he is*, *I know when he came*, *I know why it was done*, *I know how it was done* are conjunctive adverbs. MASON, (Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup> § 264) appears to be of the same opinion. To the present writer the words in question are pure adverbs without any conjunctive force whatsoever, their function in subordinate questions, as in the above examples, being exactly the same as that in direct questions, in which they are unmistakable adverbs.

c) According to SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 374), *that*, *if* and *whether* in such sentences as *I know that it is true*, *I wonder if it is true*, *I do not know whether it is true or not* are to be considered as conjunctive adverbs. The present writer fails to see any adverbial function in these particles as used in the above examples, and regards them as pure conjunctions.

SWEET rightly distinguishes between *if* and *whether* in subordinate questions, as above, and the "hypothetical" *if* and *whether* (N. E. Gr., § 420, Note), which he sets down as pure conjunctions.

It is, however, difficult to see why *than* and *as*, as in *better than*, *not so good as* should be included among the adverbs, as SWEET does. See his N. E. Gr., §§ 347, 348, 369.

d) In *He came to the house when (or while) I was out* SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 375) considers *when (or while) I was out* as modifiers of *came*, i. e. as word-modifiers, which is, of course, quite right. In *He came yesterday because he knew I was out*, on the other hand, *because he knew I was out* is held to be an adjunct of the whole sentence, a view which is equally unexceptionable. On the strength of this distinction he calls *when (or while)* an adverb, and *because* a conjunction, adding, however, that "it is most practical to call all sentence-connecting adverbs conjunctions, without stopping to enquire into the exact way

in which the connection is effected." In § 381 he corroborates this last view by saying that "it is for ordinary grammatical purposes most convenient to regard all sentence-introducing adverbs as conjunctions." Also MASON (*Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 263) assigns a different function to *when* and *where* as in *Come then when you are ready*, *There where a few torn shrubs the place disclose*, from that which he assigns to *because*, as in *He said that because he believed it*. His distinction is based on practically the same argument as SWEET's. He differs from SWEET, however, in keeping up the name of conjunctive (or relative) adverb for *when* and *where* as used in the above sentences and a great many more words, such as *whither*, *whence*, *wherein*, *whereby*, *wherefore*, *whereon*, *whereat*, *whereout*, *whereafter*, *wherever*, and even *how*, *why*, *as*, *the*, and sometimes *that*.

Likewise BAIN (*H. E. Gr.*, 113) styles *when* and *while* as used in the above examples, relative adverbs. It is, of course, undeniable that the functions of *when* (or *while*), and *because*, as exemplified in the above sentences, are not the same, but it does not therefore, seem necessary to call them by different grammatical names, any more than in the case of relative pronouns, which also may refer to a particular (pro)noun or to a whole sentence.

e) Also *when* and *where* are often enough used with reference to a whole sentence; thus in what have been called continuative adverbial clauses of place or time (Ch. XVII, 13, 31); e.g.: *We went on to Rome, where we stopped a week*. *You had better call again to-morrow, when my father will be at home*.

SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 373) has a special name for *where* and *when* thus used: calling them relative (or progressive) adverbs. It must be admitted that in these last complexes *where* and *when* form an integral part of the last member, so that they can hardly be called conjunctions in the sense in which the term is used in the first section of this chapter. Conjunctive adverbs being chiefly used as a name of such co-ordinative conjunctives as *also*, *however*, *therefore*, etc., SWEET's relative adverb appears to be a suitable name for *where* and *when* used in continuative adverbial clauses like the above. Such words as *whereat*, *whereupon*, when opening continuative adverbial clauses of time (Ch. XVII, 31, c), might be called compound relative adverbs; thus in:

Topper .. answered that a bachelor was a wretched outcast, who had no right to express an opinion on the subject, whereat Scrooge's niece's sister blushed. *Dick., Christm. Car.*, III.

Dominee Van Schaick .. sung a Latin hymn in honour of St. Nicholas; whereupon the goblin threw himself up into the air like a ball. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship*. (*STOF., Handl.*, I, 89).

The same name may be given to their analytical equivalents *at which*, *(up)on which*, etc., as in:

Hans van Pelt screwed his mouth closer together and said nothing; upon which some shook their heads and others shrugged their shoulders. *ib.*, 85.

In Ch. XVII, 14, 50 relative (or progressive) adverbs have been called conjunctive adverbs, which name appears to be at least as suitable as relative adverbs.

*f)* Such words as *when, where, whither, how* and *why* are also used to introduce adnominal clauses (Ch. XVI, 8); thus in *That is the house where I live, This is the only hour when you will find me at home, He got her in a corner whence there was no escape, That was the town whither he went, That is the way how it should be done, The reason why he cannot succeed is evident.*

ONIONS (Adv. Eng. Synt., § 62) calls these words in sentences like the above *relative adverbs*, by which he, most probably, means adverbs that are used in the same function as relative pronouns. The name seems suitable enough, but as it has already been applied to *when, where* and some other words in a totally different function, it seems advisable to transpose the component parts and adopt the name *adverbial relatives*, which has at least this advantage that it brings out the fact that the relative function is more marked than the adverbial. Such words as *whereby, wherein*, etc., and their analytical equivalents *by which, in which*, etc. (Ch. XVI, 7), in like function, might be styled *compound adverbial relatives*. In Ch. XVI, 4 *adverbial relatives* (or *relative adverbs*) have also been called *conjunctive adverbs*.

10. There also appears to be a difficulty in deciding whether *as* and *that* as used in some connexions are conjunctions or relative pronouns. It may, therefore, be useful to devote a few more words to what, in the opinion of the present writer, are the characterizing features of relative pronouns as compared with those of conjunctions.

Like conjunctions, relative pronouns serve to connect two members of a complex: *connective* (or *conjunctive pronouns*) would, accordingly, describe their nature more appropriately. In their connective function conjunctions and relative pronouns differ, however, in an important respect.

While the former are no integral part of either (1), the latter strictly belong to only one of them. In this member they represent, so far as they are used substantively, the subject, the nominal part of the predicate, the non-prepositional object, or, when preceded by a preposition, the most significant part of a prepositional object or adverbial adjunct. The fact that they are pronouns postulates that they indicate the same notion as is indicated by another word or word-group. This word(-group) is mostly a noun or pronoun, with or without adjuncts, but may be an adjective, as in *She described his accent as vulgar, which it was*; or an entire sentence or clause, as in *He likes reading, which I am glad to hear*. It is also this representative function which distinguishes relative pronouns from conjunctions.

It should, further, be observed that the clauses which are introduced by a conjunction are mostly adverbial, while those which open with a relative pronoun are mostly adnominal or, in the case of the relative including the antecedent, substantival.

Now *as* and *that* as conjunctive words occupy a unique position, which it seems advisable to pass in rapid review in this place.

11. a) Apart from many varieties of adverbial clauses (Ch. XVII, 7, 15, 34, 85, 102, 104, 110, 125, 130, 137, 140, 145), *as* may introduce: a) a subordinate statement, now only in vulgar language. In this function it is an indubitable conjunction (Ch. XIII, 3); thus in:

(He) told us *as* "Gospel" meant good news. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 18.

b) an attributive adnominal clause indicating particulars which in the head-clause are referred to by the determinative pronouns *same* or *such*; thus in: *He offered me the same conditions as he offered you. I don't admire such books as he writes.*

MASON (*Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 165) considers *as*, as used in the above sentences, as a relative pronoun, and so does ONIONS, who in § 247 of his *Adv. Eng. Synt.* includes *as* among the relative pronouns. Brought to the test of the above description of relative pronouns, this view seems inadmissible. *As*, indeed, introduces an adnominal clause, but cannot be said to form an integral part of it in like manner as a relative pronoun. Nor can it properly be maintained that it represents *the same* (or *such*) with its head-word, as a relative does its antecedent.

Even the argument that *as* after *same* varies with *that*, and occasionally with *which* (Ch. XVI, 10), does not really speak for *as* being a relative pronoun. Indeed the above sentence with *that* or *which* substituted for *as* readily admits of being expanded into *He offered me the same conditions as those which (or that) he offered you*, and it may be assumed that the shorter construction with the relative placed in immediate succession to the noun modified (*He offered me the same conditions that he offered you*) has been evolved from the expanded. It may, besides, be remarked that *as* differs from *which* in that it does not tolerate to be preceded by a preposition. Thus while *He lived in the same house in which his ancestors had lived* is unexceptionable though, perhaps, bookish English, the same sentence with *as* substituted for *which* would only be possible with the preposition shifted to the end of the clause: *... as his ancestors lived in*. This restriction, indeed, applies with equal force to *that*, but then it is open to question whether *that* when used in a sentence like the above is to be regarded as a pure relative pronoun. In passing it may here be observed that *who*, the relative pronoun 'par excellence' is never used as a variant of *as* after *same* or *such*.

In conclusion it may be observed that from the fact that *that* (or *which*) can often take the place of *as* without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence, it cannot be concluded that *as* has the same grammatical function as *that* or *which*. If that argument held, it might be maintained that also the preposition *with*, which often takes the place of *as* after *same*, is grammatically on a par with *as*, no change of meaning and, frequently, even of construction being involved in the substitution; thus in:

Dupleix entered the town in the same palanquin with the Nizam. MAC., *Clive*, (504 b).

The above reasoning is intended to show that *as* after *same* or *such* is better apprehended as a conjunction than a relative pronoun.

12. a) *That* as a conjunctive word is used to introduce a subordinate statement (Ch. XIII, 9), an adnominal clause (Ch. XVI, Ch. XXXIX), and a variety of adverbial clauses (Ch. XVII, 3, 39, 51, 58, 66, 117, 132). In the first and the third case it is universally held to be a conjunction: in the second it is generally considered a relative pronoun in its most usual application as in *This is the man that told me this*. This view is unexceptionable so far as subordinate statements or adverbial clauses are concerned, but is to be accepted with some reserve as regards adnominal clauses of the above type. In this function it is, no doubt, more than a mere link-word: it is an integral part of the adnominal clause in which it distinctly represents a notion indicated by some word(-group) in the head-clause; it stands in the same grammatical relation to the other elements of the adnominal clause as *who* or *which*, but it differs from these relatives in that it does not admit of being preceded by a preposition. Like *as*, it requires the preposition by which it is governed to be shifted to the end of the sentence. This last feature tinges it with the nature of a conjunction, but, on the strength of its other grammatical characteristics being the same as those of *who* and *which*, it is yet best regarded as a relative pronoun. The reason why the relative *that* bears some resemblance to the conjunction *that* is not far to seek: the development being practically the same in the two functions. The conjunction *that* goes back to the demonstrative *that* which refers to an entire sentence; the relative *that* to the demonstrative *that* which refers to a particular word(-group). Thus *We all know that* (now *this*): *he once lived here* became *We all know that he once lived here*. Similarly *He came to a river; that* (or *this*) *was broad and deep* became *He came to a river that was broad and deep* (O. E. D. s. v. *that*). Compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 296; DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 62.

b) *That* is also found at the head of adnominal clauses which are totally different from such as open with a relative pronoun, as is shown by the following exposition:

1) A subordinate statement without a preposition may modify a noun in like manner as a noun with a preposition. Thus *He has not any hope that he shall* (or *will*) *succeed* is practically identical in meaning with *He has not any hope of success*. It seems unnecessary to point out that *that* in a subordinate statement of this function preserves to the full its character as a conjunction. This is also the case when such a subordinate statement stands by way of apposition to a noun, as in *The idea that I shall give my consent, is ridiculous*.

2) In another variety of adnominal clauses *that* varies with such words as *when*, *where*, etc. or with compounds like *whereby*, *wherein*, etc., or the analytical equivalents of the latter *by which*, *in which*, etc., which have been styled adverbial relatives or compound adverbial relatives respectively (9, f). Thus *I left the day that he arrived* = .. *when he arrived* = .. *where(up)on he arrived* (which is now unusual) = .. *(up)on which he arrived*.

This *that* cannot be regarded as a relative pronoun. If it were a relative pronoun, it would be followed by the same preposition as precedes *which*: i. e. the sentence would then have run \**I left the day that he arrived on*, a construction which seems to be non-existent. The best explanation of the sentence concerned is to consider the *that*-clause as a subordinate statement placed by way of apposition to the preceding noun, which involves that *that* is a conjunction. *That* has the same function in:

I can give no reason .. that I follow thus | A losing suit against him. SHAK., Merch., IV, 1, 59.

In the instant that your messenger came, in loving visitation was with me a young doctor of Rome. ib., IV, 1, 153.

On the day that thou eatest thereof [etc.]. Bible, Gen., II, 17.

This is the way that we live. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 74.

Note. For the *that* in the first of the above quotations Present English would prefer *why*. Compare, however:

Perhaps that is the reason that I do not believe anything he has told me. OSC. WILDE, Dor. Gray, Ch. II, 31.

3) In sentences like *Dora disdained to reply, gentle creature that she was* (Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve, I, 279), in which *that* varies with *as*, the pronominal function which is usually ascribed to it (Ch. XXXIX, 5, *b*, Note *a*) and *β*) is merged into the conjunctive function. See also Ch. XVII, 35, Obs. II.

4) *That* is also used as a variant of *as* after *same*. In this case it is best regarded as a relative pronoun. See above under *as*.

c) KRUISINGA (in English Studies, VI, No. 5, 141 ff) is at great pains to show that the connective *that* is always a conjunction. In his exposition there are, however, some false assumptions which considerably weaken his argument.

"It is impossible to use *that* as an independent relative", i. e. what SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 220) calls a condensed relative. In stating this the learned grammarian, however, overlooks such sentences as *It is Brown that I want* (ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 15, *o*); *It was he that ruined the Bourbons and Mr. John Sedley* (THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 189). In these sentences the word preceding *that* is not the antecedent of the latter. This is conclusively proved by the fact that in a sentence like *It is that which made him ill* it is impossible to replace *that which* by *what*, which can always be done when *which* is the antecedent of *that*. It cannot, accordingly, be denied that *that* as used in sentences of the above type is as distinctly an "independent" relative as *who* and *what* in respectively *Who dainties love, shall beggars prove*, and *What can't be cured must be endured*. For further comment see Ch. XXXIX, 25.

In the second place it cannot be maintained that "*that* is never used in clearly co-ordinate clauses." Some indubitable instances are given in Ch. XXXIX, 17. We copy one: *She's devilish like Miss Cutter, that I used to meet at Dumdum*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 27.

It is also open to question that the relative *which* is particularly rare, even in Late Modern English, when the reference is to a personal

antecedent. A considerable number of instances are to be found in Ch. XXXIX, 11.

The observation that "*that* is usually unstressed, at least in Spoken English" is irrelevant to the argument, since it applies with equal strictness to *who* and *which*.

In conclusion it may be argued that a comparison with the practice in Dutch, in which the development of *dat* as a relative and a conjunction may be assumed to run parallel to that of *that* in English, weakens the argument which is in favour of the view that *that* is a conjunction in the sentences here considered: *the horse that was sold, the horse that I bought*. In Dutch we say *Het kind dat de Koningin bloemen aanbood*, but *De kinderen die de Koningin bloemen aanboden*. These examples show that the word introducing the adnominal clause varies as to the number of the preceding noun, which would not be the case if *dat* were apprehended as a conjunction.

It is only fair to add that the eminent Danish scholar, Prof. JESPERSEN, also seems to be inclined to consider *that* a conjunction in the case here referred to. This may be inferred from what he says in his *The Philosophy of Grammar*, page 85: "indeed it may be questioned whether E. *that* is not the conjunction rather than the pronoun; compare the possibility of omitting *that*: *I know the man (that) you mentioned* and *I know (that) you mentioned the man*, and the impossibility of having a preposition before *that*: *the man that you spoke about* as against *the man about whom you spoke*."



## CHAPTER LXII.



## INTERJECTIONS.





1. Interjections are speech-elements which do not enter into the structure of the sentence and do not, accordingly, fall into any of the categories into which words have been divided.
2. a) Some interjections are mere sounds called forth by some emotion, which the written or printed language tries to reproduce by the same symbols as are used in representing words that express distinct meanings. It is but natural that these representations sometimes vary considerably; thus we find *humph*, *h'mph*, *h'm*; *hush*, *whisht*, and, most probably, some more varieties, for one and the same emotional sound.

b) Many are words, word-groups or even stunt phrases, which are also found as normal elements of a sentence, but have deteriorated in grammatical status; e. g.: *Hold!*, *Shame!*, *Lord (Law, Lawk)!*; *my eye!* *my God!*, *my gracious!*, *my stars!*, *my word!*, (also simply *My!*); *Goodness gracious!*, *for Heaven's sake!*, *Man alive!*, *Great Heavens!*, *bless your heart alive!*, *blessh his flesh!*

Here follow some miscellaneous examples:

i. "Hold!" interrupted the Senator. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, X, Ch. V, 351.

"Shame! shame!" cried a gaunt female. *ib.*, X, Ch. VII, 358.

ii. Great Heavens! .. what a do! RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. I, 7.

My word, what a post! Mrs. WARD., *Rich. Meyn.*, I, Ch. 3.

"Would it not be quite easy to tell them the truth?" — "Man alive, they wouldn't believe it." SHAW, *Saint Joan*, II, (24).

iii. Why, bless your heart alive, my dear, how late you are! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 57.

No, ma'am, it was not the dear boy, bless his flesh, it was I (sc. who pushed out the flower-pot). LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. IV, 18

Well, hang it all! I've done more than old J., anyhow. JEROME, *Three Men*.

To distinguish between the two kinds, the terms *primary* and *secondary* interjections are used by SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, §§ 436—7). Both are subject to endless variation and capable of indefinite addition.

3. As to the emotional nature or purpose of interjections we may distinguish certain groups, which naturally are not, however, divided by rigid lines of demarcation.

a) such as are no more than involuntary responses to certain stimuli affecting either the body or the mind, e. g.: *ah*, *ay*, *eh*, etc.

b) such as are the imperfect manifestations of a wish to reveal certain mental attitudes. Thus joy may be expressed by *hurrah!* *huzza!*, approbation by *bravo!*, grief by *ah!* *alas!*, weariness, or

disappointment by *heigh-ho!*, dislike or vexation by *bah!* *pah!* *ugh!* *pshaw!* *tut!* *fie!*, incredulity by (*Hookey*) *Walker!* Illustration is hardly necessary. We may confine ourselves to the following:

*Walker!*, as in: "It's (sc. the prize Turkey) hanging there now." — "Is it?" said Scrooge. "Go and buy it." — "Walk-er!" exclaimed the boy. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 94. (LYTTON humorously latinizes the word, changing it into *viator* in: My mother took courage and resumed. "Pisistratus is a long name, too! Still one could call him Sisty." — "Sisty, Viator," muttered my father; "that's trite!" LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. III, 14.)

*O!* or *oh!* occasionally varying with *ah*, found before expressions denoting an idle wish, which may be: 1) a subordinate statement opening with *that*, e.g.: *O!* that you could stay longer, dear Rebecca! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 32.

2) an adverbial clause opening with *if*, e.g.:

Ah! if I had only known! BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VI, 24

3) an infinitive clause, e.g.:

Oh! to have been there! ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 42.

4) a preposition-group with *for*, e.g.:

*O!* for another glimpse of it O. E. D., s.v. *o*, int., 2.

For further illustration see Ch. XLIX, 10.

Note. *O(h)!* is also frequent as a kind of intensive of *so*, as in: Sir Henry came pottering in, oh-so shrunken in appearance. (?)

c) such as are intended to reproduce the sounds that have been observed in animate or inanimate creation, often called onomatopoeic or echoic words, e.g.: *boo(h)!* of oxen, *hoot!* of owls, *miaow!* of cats, *peep!* of young birds, mice, etc.; *toot!* of a horn, etc.

Nick-knock, nick-knock, went the cradle. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 21,

d) such as serve to influence the actions or sentiments of persons or animals, e.g.: *halloo!* to incite dogs to the chase; *hallo*, (*halloa*, *hullo*, *hulloo*, *hello*)! to call the attention of persons, mixed with an expression of surprise on the part of the speaker; *ho(o)!* to call the attention of persons at a distance; *lo!* to arouse ocular attention, etc.

e) such as are oaths or other expletives, called forth by vehement passions, desires, etc. and serving to impart an emotional colouring to asseverations, e.g.: *hang it!*, *dash it!*, etc.; *helter-skelter*, *hoity-toity*, *higgledy-piggledy*, etc.

4. A few interjections are occasionally used in some syntactical relation to some element of the sentence, and in that case approach to the status of ordinary parts of speech; thus *ah me!* *ay me!* *o me!* *dear me!*, *my goodness me!*, etc. See also Ch. XXXII, 8, *b*, Note.

Ah me! in sooth he was a shameless wight. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, 11.

Alas for Tiny Tim, he bore a little crutch, and had his limbs supported by an iron frame! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 57.

Ay me! ay me! with what another heart | In days far-off, and with what other eyes | I used to watch — if I be he that watch'd — | The lucid outline forming round thee. TEN., *Tithonus*, 50.

Oh me! oh me! poor boy, what will he do? TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XXIV, 319.

For shame on you! I say for shame! THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. IV, (235).

Note. Also *be hanged!* is sometimes so much considered as a unit as to admit of being furnished with a complement; thus in:

The County Mercury has ratted, and be hanged to it! LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. IV, 45.

5. Some interjections are occasionally converted into ordinary parts of speech, i. e. used as nouns or verbs; thus in:

i. At length, after many hums and haws .. the doctor agreed to take the lad as a disciple. WASH. IRV., *Doll Heyl.* (STOE., *Handl.*, I, 107).

He had a fine voice for a view halloo. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. I, 14. (the shout given by a huntsman on seeing a fox break cover. O. E. D.)

Note. Mention may here be made of *gee* or *gee-gee* (a word of command to a horse, used to direct it to turn to the right, to go forward or to move faster. O. E. D.), which has passed into a child's word for *horse*; and of *tally-ho* (the view-halloo raised by huntsmen on catching sight of the fox. O. E. D.), which was first used as a proper name of a day-coach between London and Birmingham, and subsequently came to designate other fast coaches, so that it became a kind of common noun.

They had resolved that Tom should travel by the Tally-ho, which diverged from the main road and passed through Rugby itself. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 65.

ii. They pooh-poohed away every attempt at further enlargement of the suffrage. KINGSLEY, *Alf. Locke*, Ch. XXXII, 335.

Fred. Murgatroyd hemmed and coughed at the gate, as if he wondered what in the world his master was doing. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. V, 98.

There was no one .. who would not have shoo'd her back into the environment of the war. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo Wonders*, Ch. IX, 152.

Aunt Hester .. had tried to 'shoo' it off a chair, taking it (sc. the hat) for a strange disreputable cat. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

Note. *Hush* has become quite usual, both as a noun and a verb in more than one application, and is occasionally met with as an adjective; thus in:

i. A dead hush lay like a heavy air over the multitude. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, X, Ch. V, 353.

ii. When the little child awoke, and when and how Charley got at it, took it out of bed, and began to walk about hushing it, I don't know. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 266.

iii. The owl has seen him, and is hush. SCOTT, *Rokeby*, VI, III, 8.

# CORRECTIONS.

---

Page 8 line 19 from top : change sham object into sham subject.  
„ 89 „ 7 „ „ : „ *through* „ *round*.  
„ 272 „ 16 „ „ : „ *adverb* „ *adverb*.  
„ 433 „ 16 „ bottom : „ *English* „ *English*.  
„ 483 „ 16 „ top : „ *order* „ *other*.  
„ 621 „ 19 „ bottom : add *namely*.

---

## BIBLIOGRAPHY.

### GRAMMARS AND GRAMMATICAL TREATISES CONSULTED.

- E. A. ABBOT, *A Shakespearean Grammar*<sup>1</sup>, Macmillan & Co., 1883.
- A. ÅKERLUND, *The History of the Definite Tenses in English*, Cambridge, Heffer & Sons, 1911.
- H. ALFORD, *The Queen's English*<sup>3</sup>, George Bell & sons, 1889.
- A. BAIN, *A Higher English Grammar*<sup>2</sup>, Longmans & Co., 1879.
- , *A Companion to the Higher English Grammar*<sup>2</sup>, Longmans, Green & Co., 1877.
- E. BORST, *Die Gradadverbien im Englischen*, Heidelberg, Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung, 1902.
- H. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Macmillan & Co., 1904.
- G. O. CURME, *A Grammar of the German Language*<sup>2</sup>, New York, the Macmillan Company, 1922.
- M. DEUTSCHBEIN, *System der neuenglischen Syntax*, Cöthen, Otto Schulze, 1917.
- DUBISLAW, *Beiträge zur historischen Syntax des Englischen*, Wissenschaftliche Beilage zum Jahresbericht der Oberrealschule II zu Charlottenburg, 1909.
- J. EARLE, *The Philology of the English Tongue*<sup>5</sup>, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press, 1887.
- EILERT EKWALL, *On the Origin and History of the Unchanged Plural in English*, Lund, C. W. K. Gleerup; Leipzig, Otto Harrassowitz, 1912.
- E. EINENKEL, *Streifzüge durch die mittenglische Syntax*, Münster i. W., Verlag von Heinrich Schöningh, 1887.
- , *Das englische Indefinitum*, Halle a. d. S., Verlag von Max Niemeyer, 1903.
- , *Geschichte der englischen Sprache*, II, historische Syntax, Strassburg, Verlag von Carl J. Trübner, 1916.
- J. ELLINGER, *Vermischte Beiträge zur Syntax der neueren englischen Sprache*, Wien und Leipzig, Alfred Hölder, 1909.
- P. FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in English Prose*, Heidelberg, Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung, 1910.
- J. FOELSING, *Wissenschaftliche Grammatik der englischen Sprache*, neu bearbeitet von J. KOCH, Berlin, Verlag von Emil Goldschmidt, 1889.
- H. W. FOWLER and F. G. FOWLER, *The King's English*, Oxford at the Clarendon Press, 1906.
- W. FRANZ, *Shakespeare-Grammatik*<sup>2</sup>, Heidelberg, Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung, 1909.
- C. H. DEN HERTOOG, *Nederlandsche Spraakkunst*, Amsterdam, W. Versluys, 1892.
- W. B. HODGSON, *Errors in the Use of English*, Edinburgh, David Douglas, 1906.
- L. KELLNER, *Historical Outlines of English Syntax*, Macmillan & Co., 1892.
- G. KRÜGER, *Schwierigkeiten des Englischen*<sup>2</sup>, Dresden und Leipzig, C. A. Koch's Verlagsbuchhandlung, 1914.

- E. KRUISINGA, *A Handbook of Present-day English*<sup>1</sup>, Over den Dom te Utrecht, Kemink & Zoon, 1924.
- O. JESPERSEN, *Progress in Language*, Swan Sonnenschein & Co., 1894.
- , *Growth and Structure of the English Language*<sup>2</sup>, Leipzig, Teubner, 1912.
- , *A Modern English Grammar*, I and II, Heidelberg, Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung, 1924.
- , *The Philosophy of Grammar*, George Allen & Unwin, 1924.
- , *Sprogets Logik*, trykt i Universitetsbogtrykkeriet (J. H. Schultz A/S) København, 1913.
- , *Tid og Tempus*, Oversigt over det Kgl Danske Videnskabernes Selskabs Forhandling, 1914, No. 5—6.
- , *De to Hovedarter af Grammatiske Forbindelser*, København, Andr. Fred. Holst & Søn, 1921.
- , *Negation in English and other Languages*, København, Andr. Fred. Holst & Søn, 1917.
- , *Logic and Grammar*, S. P. E., Tract No. XVI, Clarendon Press, 1924.
- J. V. D. LAAN, *An Enquiry on a Psychological Basis into the Use of the Progressive Form in Late Modern English*, Gorinchem, F. Duyn, 1922.
- G. L. LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Language of Robinson Crusoe*, Upsala, Almqvist & Wiksell, 1910.
- VALERIE MARINOFF, *Die periphrastische Form des englischen Verbums in ihrer Verwendung als Intensivum im modernen Sprachgebrauch*, Halle, C. A. Kaemmerer & Co., 1915.
- C. P. MASON, *English Grammar*<sup>31</sup>, George Bell & Sons, 1892.
- E. MÄTZNER, *Englische Grammatik*<sup>2</sup>, Berlin, Weidmannsche Buchhandlung, 1880.
- G. MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty, shall and will*, Blackie & Son, 1897.
- R. MORRIS, *Historical Outlines of English Accidence*, Macmillan & Co., 1877.
- J. C. NESFIELD, *Historical English and Derivation*, Macmillan & Co., 1898.
- C. F. ONIONS, *An Advanced English Syntax*, Swan Sonnenschein & Co., 1904.
- BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute in English Prose*, Lund, Ph. Lindstedts Universitetsbokhandel, 1911.
- H. E. PALMER, *A Grammar of Spoken English*, Cambridge, W. Heffer & Sons, 1924.
- H. PAUL, *Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte*<sup>3</sup>, Halle a. S., Max Niemeyer, 1898.
- I. SCHMIDT, *Grammatik der englischen Sprache*, Berlin, Haude- und Spenersche Buchhandlung, 1883.
- W. W. SKEAT, *Principles of Etymology*, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press, 1887.
- , *A Student's Pastime*, id., id., 1896.
- J. S. SPEYER, *Latijnsche Spraakkunst*<sup>2</sup>, Leiden, E. J. Brill, 1883.
- F. A. STOETT, *Middel-nederlandsche Spraakkunst*<sup>2</sup>, 's-Gravenhage, Martinus Nijhoff, 1909.
- C. STOFFEL, *Studies in English, written and spoken*, Zutphen, W. J. Thieme & Co., 1894.
- , *Intensives and Down-toners*, Heidelberg, Carl Winter's Universitätsbuchhandlung, 1891.
- J. STORM, *Englische Philologie*<sup>2</sup>, Leipzig, Reisland, 1892.



- W. STREITBERG, *Perfektive und Imperfektive Aktionsart im Germanischen*, Habilitationsschrift, Teil I.
- K. F. SUNDEN, *Essay I, The Predicational Categories in English; Essay II, A Category of Predicational Change in English*, Upsala, at the University Press, Edv. Berling, 1916.
- H. SWEET, *A New English Grammar*, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press, 1892.
- R. CH. TRENCH, *English Past and Present*, revised and in part rewritten by A. L. MAYHEW, Kegan Paul, Trench, & Co., 1889.
- , *A Select Glossary*, id., id., id., 1890.
- , *On the Study of Words*, id., id., id., 1892.
- W. UHRSTRÖM, *Studies on the Language of Samuel Richardson*, Upsala, Almqvist & Wiksell, 1907.
- G. WENDT, *Syntax des heutigen English*, Heidelberg, Carl Winter Universitätsbuchhandlung, 1911.
- , *Die Syntax des Adjektivs im heutigen English*, Hamburg. Lütcke & Wulff, 1905.
- , *Der Gebrauch des bestimmten Artikels im Englischen*, Realgymnasium des Johanneums zu Hamburg, 1887.
- AUG. WESTERN, *Om de med hjælpeverbet *be* og nutids particip omskrevne verbalformer i engelsk*, Christiana, Jacob Dybwad, 1896.
- W. WILMANNS, *Deutsche Grammatik*, III, Abteilung: Flexion, 1 Hälfte: Verbum, Strassourg, Karl J. Trübner, 1906.
- H. C. WYLD, *The Growth of English*, John Murray, 1907.
- J. ZEITLIN, *The Accusative with Infinitive and some kindred constructions in English*, New York. The Columbia University Press, 1908.

## BOOKS QUOTED FROM.

- J. ADDISON, *Selection from Addison's Papers contributed to the Spectator*, edited by Thomas Arnold, Oxford at the Clarendon Press.
- MRS. ALEXANDER, *A Ward in Chancery*, T.
- , *For his Sake*, T.
- , *A Life Interest*, T.
- GRANT ALLEN, *The Tents of Shem*, Serial.
- , *Hilda Wade*, (?)
- F. ANSTEY, *The Giant's Robe*, T.
- , *A Fallen Idol*, New York, George Munroe
- , *In Brief Authority*, Smith, Elder, & Co.
- , *Vice Versa*, The Gruno Series, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.
- , *Voces Populi*, Library of Contemporary Authors, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.
- M. ARNOLD, *Selected Poems*, Heinemann.
- JANE AUSTEN, *Sense and Sensibility*, Collins' Clear Type Press.
- , *Mansfield Park*, Every Man's Library, Dent & Co.
- , *Northanger Abbey*, id., id.
- , *Persuasion* id., id.
- , *Pride and Prejudice*, Red Library, Cassell & Co.
- , *Emma*, T.
- F. AYDELOTTE, *Elizabethan Rogues and Vagabonds*, Oxford, Clarendon Press.
- LORD BACON, *Moral and Historical Works*, Bohn's Standard Library, George Bell & Sons.
- R. BAGOT, *My Italian Year*, T.
- , *Darneley Place*, T.
- , *The Just and the Unjust*, T.

- J. BAILEY, *Dr. Johnson and his Circle*, Home University Library of Modern Knowledge, Williams & Norgate.
- FLORENCE L. BARCLAY, *The Rosary*, New York and London, G. P. Putman's Sons.
- W. BARRY, *The Papacy and Modern Times*, Home University Library of Modern Knowledge, Williams & Norgate.
- J. M. BARRIE, *What Every Woman Knows*, Hodder & Stoughton.
- , *The Admirable Crichton*, id.
- , *Peter Pan*, id.
- , *Quality Street*, A New English Library, Groningen, J. B. Wolters.
- MARY BATESON, *Mediæval England*, Fisher Unwin.
- L. BECKE and WALTER JEFFREY, *The Mutineer*, Serial.
- L. BECKE, *A First Fleet Family*, Serial.
- MAX BEERBOHM, *Seven Men*, Heinemann.
- E. BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, Routledge & Sons.
- A. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, T.
- , *Hilda Lessways*, T.
- , *The Card*, Methuen & Co.
- , *Literary Taste*, Hodder & Stoughton.
- E. F. BENSON, *Account Rendered*, T.
- , *Mrs. Ames*, T.
- , *The Relentless City*, T.
- , *Arundel*, Fisher Unwin.
- , *Mr. Teddy*, id.
- , *David Blaize*, Hodder & Stoughton.
- , *Dodo Wonders*, Brussels, Collins & Sons.
- R. H. BENSON, *An Average Man*, T.
- A. C. BENSON, *The Upton Letters*, Smith, Elder, & Co.
- W. BESANT, *London in the Eighteenth Century*, (?)
- , *The Master Craftsman*, T.
- , *The Ivory Gate*, T.
- , *The Bell of St. Paul's*, T.
- , *All Sorts and Conditions of Men*, Chatto & Windus.
- , *Dorothy Forster*, id.
- ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, (?)
- G. A. BIRMINGHAM, *Spanish Gold*, Methuen & Co.
- , *The Adventures of Dr. Whitty*, id.
- W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Serial.
- , *Sunrise*, (?)
- J. WARREN BLACK, *The Comic Spirit in George Meredith*, Longmans, Green, & Co.
- R. D. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Sampson Low, Marston, & Co.
- G. BORROW, *The Bible in Spain*, The World's Classics, Grant Richards.
- J. BOSWELL, *The Life of Samuel Johnson*, Blackwood & Co.
- MARJORIE BOWEN, *I will maintain*, Methuen & Co.
- , *Defender of the Faith*, id.
- , *The Rake's Progress*, William Rider & Co.
- LORD BRABOURNE, *Aunt Jane at the Seaside*, Serial.
- G. T. BRADBY, *Dick*, Smith, Elder, & Co.
- , *"For this I have borne him"*, id.
- MISS M. E. BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, T.
- A. C. BRADLEY, *A Commentary on Tennyson's In Memoriam Macmillan & Co.*
- , *Shakespearean Tragedy*, id.
- R. BRIDGES, *The Humours of the Court*, G. Bell & Sons.
- CHARLOTTE BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, The World's Classics, Grant Richards.

- CHARLOTTE BRONTË, *Villette*, Every Man's Library, J. M. Dent & Sons  
 ———, *Shirley*, T.  
 EMILY BRONTË, *Wuthering Heights*, Collins' Clear-type Press.  
 STOPFORD A. BROOKE, *Studies in Poetry*, Duckworth & Co.  
 R. BROWNING, *The Poetical Works*, T.  
 ELIZABETH BARRETT BROWNING, *Aurora Leigh*, T.  
 W. CULLEN BRYANT, *The Poetical Works*, G. Routledge & Sons.  
 R. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, The Gruno Series, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.  
 E. BULWER, see Lord LYTTON.  
 JOHN BUNYAN, *Grace Abounding and the Pilgrim's Progress*, Cambridge, at the University Press.  
 FRANCES H. BURNETT, *Little Lord Fauntleroy*, The Gruno Series, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.  
 FANNEY BURNEY, *Evelina*, T.  
 R. BURNS, *Works*, Nimmo.  
 J. BLOUNDELL BURTON, *The Hispaniola Plate*, Cassell & Co.  
 S. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, A. C. Titfield.  
 ———, *The Way of All Flesh*, Jonathan Lane.  
 Lord BYRON, *Complete Works*, Paris, W. Galignani & Co.  
 H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, Library of English Literature, Gouda, G. B. Van Goor Zonen.  
 HALL CAINE, *The Prodigal Son*, T.  
 ———, *The Christian*, T.  
 ———, *The Scapegoat*, T.  
 ———, *The Woman Thou gavest me*, Heinemann.  
 ———, *The Deemster*, The Majestic Series, New York, G. Munro's Sons.  
 TH. CAMPBELL, *Select Poems*, W. & R. Chambers.  
 B. CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Constable & Co.  
 T. CARLYLE, *On Heroes, Hero-Worship and the Heroic in History*, Chapman & Hall.  
 ———, *Past and Present*, id.  
 ———, *Sartor Resarus*, id.  
 ———, *The Life of Friedrich Schiller*, T.  
 L. CARROLL, *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*, Oxford University Press.  
 ———, *Through the Looking-Glass*, Macmillan & Co.  
 AGNES and EGERTON CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, T.  
 ———, *Panther's Cub*, Nelson & Sons.  
 ———, *Wroth*, Smith, Elder, & Co.  
 G. CHAUCER, *The Student's Chaucer*, edited by the Rev. Walter W. Skeat, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press.  
 G. K. CHESTERTON, *Manalive*, Nelson & Sons.  
 ———, *A Shilling for my Thoughts*, Methuen & Co.  
 HAROLD CHILD, *Thomas Hardy, Writers of the Day*, Nisbet & Co.  
 MARY CHOLMONDELY, *Notwithstanding*, John Murray.  
 DESMOND COKE, *The Cure*, Chapman & Hall.  
 S. T. COLERIDGE, *The Poetical Works*, Chandos Classics, Frederick Warne & Co.  
 WILKIE COLLINS, *The Woman in White*, The People's Library, Cassell & Co.  
 ———, *No Namer*, (?)  
 W. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, the Mermaid Series, Fisher Unwin.  
 J. CONRAD, *The Secret Agent*, T.  
 ———, *Chance*, Methuen & Co.  
 H. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Bristol, J. W. Arrowsmith.  
 Sir EDWARD COOK, *Delane of "The Times"*, Constable & Co.  
 MARIE CORELLI, *Temporal Power*, T.

- MARIE CORELLI, *The Sorrows of Satan*, T.  
 ———, *The Murder of Delicia*, (?)  
 MRS. CRAIK, *The Laurel Bush*, T.  
 ———, *King Arthur*, T.  
 ———, *A Hero*, T.  
 ———, *Domestic Stories*, T.  
 ———, *John Halifax, Gentleman*, New York, George Munro's Sons.  
 F. MARION CRAWFORD, *Adam Johnstone's Son*, Serial.  
 ———, *Don Orsino*, Serial.  
 ———, *Sant' Ilario*, Serial.  
 ———, *Katharine Lauderdale*, T.  
 ———, *A Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Library of Contemporary Authors, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.  
 ———, *The Children of the King*, (?)  
 VICTORIA CROSS, *Six Chapters of a Man's Life*, Walter Scott.  
 ———, *Life's Shop-Window*, T. Werner Laurie.  
 ———, *Six Women*, id.  
 L. C. DAVIDSON, *A Dead Man's Shadow*, Serial.  
 W. J. DAWSON, *The Making of English Fiction*, (?)  
 MARY H. DEAKIN, *The Early Life of George Eliot*, Manchester, at the University Press.  
 D. DEFOE, *The Adventures of Robinson Crusoe*, *The World's Classics*, Grant Richards.  
 ETHEL M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, Fisher Unwin.  
 ———, *The Rocks of Valpré*, (?)  
 CH. DICKENS, *The Posthumous Papers of the Pickwick Club* Chapman & Hall.  
 ———, *The Adventures of Oliver Twist*, id.  
 ———, *Dombey and Son*, id.  
 ———, *Bleak House*, id.  
 ———, *A Tale of Two Cities*, id.  
 ———, *The Old Curiosity Shop*, Household Ed, id.  
 ———, *The Personal History of David Copperfield*, id.  
 ———, *The Life and Adventures of Nicholas Nickleby*, id.  
 ———, *The Life and Adventures of Martin Chuzzlewit*, id.  
 ———, *Hard Times*, id.  
 ———, *Little Dorrit*, id.  
 ———, *Barnaby Rudge*, id.  
 ———, *Sketches by Boz*, id.  
 ———, *Great Expectations*, Collins' Clear-Type Press.  
 ———, *Our Mutual Friend*, T.  
 ———, *A Christmas Carol*, ed. K. ten Bruggencate, Groningen, J. B. Wolters.  
 ———, *The Chimes*, id., id., id.  
 ———, *The Cricket on the Hearth*, id, id., id.  
 B. DISRAELI, *Sybil*, T.  
 ———, *Lothair*, T.  
 ———, *Endymion*, T.  
 MAUD DIVER, *Captain Desmond*, V. C., Edinburgh, W. Blackwood & Sons.  
 ———, *Desmond's Daughter*, id., id.  
 LORD ALFRED DOUGLAS, *Oscar Wilde and Myself*, John Long.  
 A. CONAN DOYLE, *The Tragedy of the Korosko*, T.  
 ———, *Rodney Stone*, T.  
 ———, *The Memoirs of Sherlock Holmes*, T.  
 ———, *The Refugees*, T.  
 ———, *Micah Clarke*, T.

- A. CONAN DOYLE, *The Hark Munro Letters*, Longmans, Green, & Co.
- J. DRYDEN, *Marriage à la Mode*, *All for Love*, *The Mermaid Series*, Fisher Unwin.
- WALDO H. DUNN, *English Biography*, *The Channels of English Literature*, J. M. Dent & Sons.
- TH. WATTS-DUNTON, Aylwin, *The World's Classics*, Grant Richards.
- G. ELIOT, *Scenes of Clerical Life*, W. Blackwood & Sons.
- , *The Mill on the Floss*, id.
- , *Romola*, id.
- , *Adam Bede*, id.
- , *Middlemarch*, id.
- , *Silas Marner*, id.
- , *The Lifted Veil*, *Brother Jacob*, *The Warwick Edition*, W. Blackwood & Sons.
- , *Daniel Deronda*, *New Cabinet Edition*, W. Blackwood & Sons.
- , *Felix Holt*, id, id.
- R. WALDO EMERSON, *Representative Men and English Traits*, *Popular Library of Literary Treasures*, Ward, Lock, & Co.
- T. H. S. ESCOTT, *England: its People, Polity and Pursuits*, Chapman & Hall.
- G. FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, *The Recruiting Officer*, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, *The Mermaid Series*, Fisher Unwin.
- H. FIELDING, *The Adventures of Joseph Andrews*, Routledge & Sons.
- , *The History of Tom Jones*, id.
- J. FORSTER, *The Life of Charles Dickens*, *Household-Edition*, Chapman & Hall.
- M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Serial.
- J. A. FROUDE, *Oceana*, T.
- J. GALSWORTHY, *Justice*, Duckworth & Co.
- , *The Pigeon*, id.
- , *Beyond*, Heinemann.
- , *Saint's Progress*, id.
- , *Tatterdemalion*, id.
- , *The Country House*, id.
- , *The Forsyte Saga*, id.
- , *The White Monkey*, T.
- , *The Silver Box*, *Joy*, *Strife*, T.
- Mrs. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Collins' Clear-Type Press.
- , *Mary Barton*, *Every Man's Library*, J. M. Dent & Sons.
- , *Wives and Daughters*, Smith, Elder, & Co.
- , *The Life of Charlotte Brontë*, id.
- , *North and South*, The Walter Scott Publishing Co.
- , *The Squire's Story*, John Murray.
- , *Ruth*, *Mr. Harrison's Confessions*, id.
- , *Cousin Philis*, *The Grey Woman*, *A Dark Night's Work*, *The Knutsford Edition*, id.
- , *Sylvia's Lovers*, London, Nelson & Sons.
- JOHN GAY, *The Beggar's Opera*, Boosey & Co.
- DOROTHÉA GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Serial.
- , *Exotic Martha*, T.
- A. HAMILTON GIBBS, *The Compleat Oxford Man*, Steffington & Sons.
- W. S. GILBEY, *Charity*, *Original Plays*, I, Chatto & Windus.
- G. GISSING, *The House of Cobwebs*, Westminster, Constable.
- , *A Life's Morning*, Smith, Elder, & Co.

- ELINOR GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Duckworth & Co,  
     , *Reflections of Ambrosine*, id,  
     , *Halcyone*, T.  
     , *The Point of View*, New York, Appleton & Co,  
 W. GODWIN, *Caleb Williams*, Half-forgotten Books, Routledge & Sons.  
 O. GOLDSMITH, *The Poems and Plays with the addition of the*  
     *Vicar of Wakefield*, Frederick Warne & Co.  
 SARAH GRAND, *The Heavenly Twins*, T.  
     , *Our Manifold Nature*, T.  
 A. K. GREEN, *The House of the Whispering Pines*, Nash.  
 J. R. GREEN, *A Short History of the English People*, Macmillan & Co.  
 J. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, (?)  
 H. RIDER HAGGARD, *Jess*, Smith, Elder, & Co.  
     —, *Mr. Meeson's Will*, Library of Contemporary Authors, Groningen,  
     P. Noordhoff.  
 HAMILTON and HALL, *Book-keeping*, Clarendon Press.  
 DONALD HANKEY, *The Beloved Captain*, Andrew Melrose.  
 T. HARDY, *Tess of the D'Urbervilles*, Macmillan & Co.  
     —, *The Return of the Native*, id.  
     , *Far from the Madding Crowd*, id.  
     —, *Jude the Obscure*, id.  
     , *A Laodicean*, id  
     , *Under the Greenwood Tree*, Collins' Modern Fiction.  
     , *Life's Little Ironies*, T.  
 REV. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, T.  
 BEATRICE HARRADEN, *The Fowler*, Library of Contemporary Authors, Groningen,  
     P. Noordhoff.  
     , *Ships that pass in the Night*, George Newnes.  
 F. HARRIS, *The Women of Shakespeare*, Methuen & Co.  
     —, *Contemporary Portraits*, id.  
     —, *Great Days*, John Lane.  
 F. HARRISON, *On Society*, Macmillan & Co.  
 BRET HARTE, *Tales of the Argonauts*, Students' Series, T.  
 J. HASSELL, *Familiar Objects*, Blackie & Sons.  
 R. HICHENS, *The Garden of Allah*, T.  
     —, *The Fruitful Vine*, Fisher Unwin.  
 GORDON HOLMES, *Silvia Craven*, (?)  
 O. WENDELL HOLMES, *The Autocrat of the Breakfast-table*, The Caxton  
     Series, Routledge & Sons.  
 A. HOPE, *The King's Mirror*, (?)  
     —, *Comedies of Courtship*, Ward, Lock, & Co.  
 KEBLE HOWARD, *One of the Family*, id.  
 T. HUGHES, *Tom Brown's School-days*, Macmillan & Co.  
 DAVID HUME, *Essays*, *The World's Classics*, Grant Richards.  
 FERGUS HUME, *The Piccadilly Puzzle*, White & Co.  
 MRS. HUNGERFORD, *An Unsatisfactory Lover*, (?)  
     , *Molly Bawn*, The American Publishing Company.  
 LEIGH HUNT, *Selections in Prose and Verse*, ed. by J. H. Lobban, Cam-  
     bridge, at the University Press.  
 A. S. M. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, Hodder & Stoughton.  
 BARONESS VON HÜTTEN, *Pam*, Heinemann  
     , *What became of Pam*, id.  
     —, *The Halo*, Methuen & Co.  
 THOMAS HENRY HUXLEY, *Lectures and Essays*, The Rationalist Press Asso-  
     ciation, Watts & Co.

- LEONARD HUXLEY, *Life and Letters of Thomas Henry Huxley*, Macmillan & Co.
- WASHINGTON IRVING, *The Sketch-Book of Geoffrey Crayon, Gent.*, Cassell & Co.
- HOLBROOK JACKSON, *All Manner of Folk*, Grant Richards.
- J. JACOBS, *More English Fairy Tales*, David Nutt.
- W. W. JACOBS, *A Master of Craft*, G. Newnes.
- , *Odd Craft*, T.
- W. L. JAMES, *King Arthur in Historical Romance*, Cambridge University Press.
- F. JEFFREYS, *Essays on English Poets and Poetry*, G. Routledge & Sons.
- H. JENKINS, *Bindle*, Herbert Jenkins.
- J. K. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts of an Idle Fellow*, T.
- , *The Second Thoughts of an Idle Fellow*, T.
- , *They and I*, T.
- , *Three Men on the Bummel*, T.
- , *Three Men in a Boat*, The English Library, Leipzig, Heinemann and Balestier.
- , *Paul Kelter*, Hutchinson & Co.
- , *Miss Hobbs*, Samuel French.
- SAMUEL JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, G. Routledge & Sons.
- , *Lives of the Most Eminent Poets*, Alfred Thomas Crocker.
- , *The Vanity of Human Wishes*, Oxford, Clarendon Press Series.
- BEN JONSON, *Every Man in his Humour*, ed. by Henry B. Wheatly, Longmans, Green, & Co.
- J. JOYCE, *Exiles*, Grant Richards.
- J. KEATS, *The Poetical Works*, The World's Classics, Henry Frowde.
- , *Hyperion*, Book I, Clarendon Press Series, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press.
- LESLEY KEITH, *The Mischiefmaker*, Serial.
- J. MAYNARD KEYNES, *The Economic Consequences of the Peace*, Macmillan.
- R. ASHE KING, *Oliver Goldsmith*, Methuen & Co.
- CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Macmillan & Co.
- , *Hypatia*, sixpenny edition, id.
- , *Westward Ho!* id., id.
- , *Hereward the Wake*, id.
- MRS. KINGSLEY, *Charles Kingsley, His Letters and Memories of his Life*, T.
- RUDYARD KIPLING, *American Notes*, American Series, New York, Ivers.
- , *The Story of the Gadsbys*, id., id. id.
- , *The Phantom Rickshaw and other Tales*, id., id., id.
- , *The Light that failed*, Seaside Library, New York, George Munro's Sons.
- , *Plain Tales from the Hills*, T.
- , *Sea Warfare*, Macmillan & Co.
- , *The Jungle Book*, The English Library, Leipzig, F. A. Brockhaus.
- CH. LAMB, *Poems and Essays*, The Chandos Classics, Frederik Warne & Co.
- CHARLES and MARY LAMB, *Tales from Shakespeare*, T.
- EMILY LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Serial.
- G. H. LEWES, *A Biographical History of Philosophy*, Routledge & Sons.
- J. K. LEYS, *A Dark Secret*, Serial.
- W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clementina Wing*, John Lane.
- , *Stella Maris*, id.
- , *The Rough Road*, id.

- J. GIBSON LOCKHART, *Scott*, Chandos Classics, Frederick Warne & Co.  
 J. LONDON, *The Call of the Wild*, Heinemann.  
 ———, *Martin Eden*, T.  
 ———, *Before Adam*, Werner Laurie.  
 H. WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW, *The Poetical Works*, The Chandos Classics, Frederick Warne & Co.  
 E. V. LUCAS, *One-day and Another*, Methuen & Co.  
 EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, New York, George Munro.  
 ———, *A Hardy Norseman*, Seaside Library, New York, G. Munro's Sons.  
 ———, *Donovan*, T.  
 ———, *We Two*, T.  
 LORD LYTTON, *Eugene Aram*, Paris, Baudry's European Library.  
 ———, *The Caxtons*, Walter Scott.  
 ———, *Rienzi*, id.  
 ———, *What will he do with it?* Routledge & Sons.  
 ———, *My Novel*, id.  
 ———, *The Lady of Lyons*, Library of English Literature, Gouda, G. B. van Goor Zonen.  
 ———, *The Life of Lord Byron*, prefixed to the Paris Edition.  
 ———, *The Last Days of Pompeii*, Routledge's sixpenny Novels.  
 ———, *Night and Morning*, T.  
 ———, *Paul Clifford*, T.  
 J. MCCARTHY, *A History of Our Own Times*, Chatto & Windus.  
 ———, *A Short History of Our Own Times*, id.  
 LORD MACAULAY, *Critical and Historical Essays*, Authorised Edition, Longmans, Green, & Co.  
 ———, *The History of England*, T.  
 ———, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, Macmillan's English Classics.  
 COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Carnival*, Martin Secker.  
 ———, *The Early Life and Adventures of Sylvia Scarlett*, id.  
 G. H. MAIR, *English Literature*, Home University Library of Modern Knowledge.  
 MARLOWE, *Doctor Faustus*, ed. by A. W. Ward, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press.  
 CAPTAIN MARRYAT, *Jacob Faithful*, G. Routledge & Sons.  
 ———, *Peter Simple*, id.  
 ———, *The Children of the New Forest*, The Gruno Series, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.  
 FLORENCE MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, T.  
 EMMA MARSHALL, *Mrs. Mainwaring's Journal*, T.  
 HAPRIOT MARTINEAU, *Autobiography*, Smith, Elder, & Co.  
 F. T. MARZIALS, *Life of Charles Dickens*, Walter Scott.  
 J. MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, Thomas Nelson & Sons.  
 ———, *The Everlasting Mercy*, Sidgwick & Jackson.  
 FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, The People's Books, T. C. & E. C. Jack.  
 G. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, (?)  
 ———, *De Martin*, Serial.  
 ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, Methuen & Co.  
 G. MEREDITH, *The Adventures of Harry Richmond*, Constable & Co.  
 ———, *The Ordeal of Richard Feverel*, id.  
 ———, *Lord Ormont and his Aminta*, Chapman & Hall.  
 H. S. MERRIMAN, *With Edged Tools*, (?)  
 MARY RUSSELL MITFORD, *Our Village*, The People's Library.  
 J. MILTON, *The Poetical Works*, The Chandos Classics, Frederick Warne & Co.  
 ———, *Paradise Lost and Paradise Regained*, ed. by the Rev. J. Edmonston, Nelson & Sons.



- J. MILTON, *Comus*, Clarendon Press Series, Oxford.
- FLORENCE MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood*, The Gruno Series, Groningen, P. Noordhoff.
- THOMAS MOORE, *The Poetical Works*, The Chandos Classics, Frederick Warne & Co.
- G. MOORE, *A Modern Lover*, Walter Scott.
- , *A Drama in Muslin*, id.
- , *Esther Waters*, Library of Popular Novels, New York, G. Munro's Sons.
- F. FRANKFORT MOORE, *The Jessamy Bride*, T.
- W. DE MORGAN, *Joseph Vance*, Heinemann.
- WILLIAM MORRIS, *The Earthly Paradise*, Cheap Edition, Longmans, Green, & Co.
- , *News from Nowhere*, id.
- J. LOTHROP MOTLEY, *The Rise of the Dutch Republic*, Rotterdam, Jacs. G. Robbers.
- JAMES FULLARTON MUIRHEAD, *The Land of Contrasts*, T.
- MISS MULOCK, see Mrs. CRAIK
- W. E. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Macmillan.
- Mrs. OLIPHANT, *Neighbours on the Green*, T.
- BARONESS ORCZY, *The Case of Miss Elliott*, Greening & Co.
- OUIDA, *Held in Bondage*, Chatto & Windus.
- J. OXENHAM, *Great-Heart Gillian*, Hodder & Stoughton.
- J. E. PATTERSON, *The Story of Stephen Compton*, Heinemann.
- J. PAYN, *The Canon's Ward*, Serial.
- , *The Luck of the Darrells*, T.
- , *Glow-Worm Tales*, T.
- W. PEACOCK, *Selected English Essays*, The World's Classics, Grant, Richards.
- MAX PEMBERTON, *I crown thee King*, T.
- , *Doctor Xavier*, Hodder & Stoughton.
- T. PERCY, *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*, ed. by J. V. Prichard, George Bell & Sons.
- W. L. PHELPS, *Essays on Modern Novelists*, New York, the Macmillan Comp.
- F. C. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, Serial.
- , *Madame Leroux*, Serial.
- A. W. PINERO, *Iris*, Heinemann.
- , *Mid-Channel*, id.
- , *The Notorious Mrs. Ebbsmith*, id.
- , *The Second Mrs. Tanqueray*, id.
- E. A. POE, *Selections, Prose and Poetry*, Cassell & Co.
- A. POPE, *The Poetical Works*, The Lansdowne Poets, Frederick Warne & Co.
- T. DE QUINCEY, *Confessions of an Opium-eater*, Ward, Lock, & Co.
- Mrs. RADCLIFFE, *The Mysteries of Udolpho*, Routledge & Sons.
- CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, T.
- , *A Simpleton*, T.
- , *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Nelson & Sons.
- AMBER REEVES, *The Reward of Virtue*, Heinemann.
- SAM. RICHARDSON, *Pamela*, Milner & Co.
- , *Clarissa Harlowe*, id.
- W. RILEY, *Windyridge*, Herbert Jenkins.
- , *Netherleigh*, id.
- RITA (Mrs. DESMOND HUMPHREYS), *America-Through English Eyes*, Stanley, Paul, & Co.
- E. ROBINS, *The Florentine Frame*, John Murray.

- E. ROBINS, *Where are you going to, (?)*
- MORLEY ROBERTS, *Time and Thomas Waring*, Eveleigh Nash.
- J. MACKINNON ROBERTSON, *Elizabethan Literature*, Home University Library, Williams & Norgate.
- J. RUSKIN, *The Crown of Wild Olive*, Every Man's Library, J. M. Dent & Co.
- ALDEN SAMPSON, *Studies in Milton and an Essay on Poetry*, John Murray.
- R. H. SAVAGE, *My Official Wife*, T.
- SIR WALTER SCOTT, *The Poetical Works*, George Routledge & Sons.
- , *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, Macmillan's English Classics.
- , *Marmion*, id.
- , *The Lady of the Lake*, id.
- , *Waverley*, Author's Edition, Edinburgh, Adam & Charles Black.
- , *The Abbot*, Centenary Edition, id., id.
- , *Kenilworth*, id., id.
- , *The Bride of Lammermoor*, id., id.
- , *Quentin Durward*, id., id.
- , *The Pirate*, id., id.
- , *The Fair Maid of Perth*, Pocket Edition, id.
- , *The Heart of Mid-Lothian*, Collins' Clear-Type Press.
- , *Old Mortality*, T.
- , *Ivanhoe*, T.
- G. SETOUN, *Robert Burns*, Edinburgh, Oliphant Anderson & Co.
- SIR ERNEST SHACKLETON, *The Heart of the Antarctic*, Heinemann.
- W. SHAKESPEARE, *Works*, The Globe Edition, ed. by W. G. Clark & W. Aldis Wright, Macmillan & Co.
- THOMAS B. SHAW, *A History of English Literature*, John Murray.
- B. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Constable & Co.
- , *The Shewing up of Blanco Posnet*, id.
- , *Mrs. Warren's Profession*, id.
- , *Widowers' Houses*, id.
- , *The Philanderer*, id.
- , *The Admirable Bashville, or Constance Unrewarded*, id.
- , *Misalliance, The Dark Lady of the Sonnets and Fanny's First Play, with a Treatise on Parents and Children*, id.
- , *How he lied to her Husband*, id.
- , *You never can tell*, id.
- , *The Four Pleasant Plays*, T.
- , *Saint Joan*, T.
- PERCY BYSSHE SHELLEY, *The Poetical Works*, Oxford Edition, Henry Frowde.
- R. BRINSLEY SHERIDAN, *The Dramatic Works*, Bohn's Standard Library, G. Bell & Sons.
- W. SHERREN, *Two Girls and a Mannikin*, Stanley Paul.
- MRS. SIDGWICK, *The Severins*, Methuen & Co.
- UNA L. SILBERRAD, *Success*, Constable & Co.
- T. SMOLLETT, *The Adventures of Roderick Random*, Classic Novels, Hutchinson.
- , *The Adventures of Peregrine Pickle*, G. Routledge & Sons.
- H. SPENCER, *Education*, issued for the Rationalist Press Association, Watts & Co.
- E. SPENCER, *The Faery Queene*, Book I, edited by G. W. Kitchin, Oxford, at the Clarendon Press.
- LESLIE STEPHEN, *George Eliot*, English Men of Letters, Macmillan & Co.
- L. STERNE, *A Sentimental Journey through France and Italy*, George Routledge & Sons.
- , *Tristram Shandy*, id.

- R. L. STEVENSON, *Treasure Island and Kidnapped*, The People's Library, Cassell & Co.
- , *The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*, Selections from English Literature, Utrecht, Kemink & Zoon.
- BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Westminster, Archibald Constable & Co.
- HALLIWELL SUTCLIFFE, *The Lone Adventure*, Fisher Unwin.
- , *Pam de Fiddler*, id.
- A. SUTRO, *The Choice*, Duckworth & Co.
- J. SWIFT, *Works*, London & Edinburgh, William P. Nimmo,
- A. C. SWINBURNE, *Atalanta in Calydon*, T.
- , *Charles Dickens*, Chatto & Windus.
- , *The Tale of Balen*, (?)
- F. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, Martin Secker,
- J. A. SYMONDS, *Sir Philip Sidney*, English Men of Letters, Macmillan & Co.
- , *Shelley*, id., id.
- ALFRED LORD TENNYSON, *Works*, Macmillan & Co.
- HALLAM LORD TENNYSON, *Tennyson and his Friends*, id.
- W. MAKEPEACE THACKERAY, *Vanity Fair*, Smith, Elder, & Co.
- , *The Newcomes*, id.
- , *The History of Henry Esmond, Esq.*, id.
- , *Lovel the Windower, The Wolves and the Lamb*, Denis Duval, id.
- , *The History of Pendennis*, Pocket Edition, id.
- , *The Book of Snobs*, id.
- , *The Memoirs of Barry Lyndon, Esq.*, id.
- , *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, id.
- , *The Virginians*, The Oxford Thackeray, Henry Frowde, Oxford University Press.
- , *The Great Hoggarty Diamond*, Fitz-Boodle Papers, Men's Wives, etc. id.
- , *The Four Georges*, Morley's Universal Library, G. Routledge & Sons.
- , *The English Humourists*, T.
- , *Samuel Titmarsh and the Great Hoggarty Diamond*, Students' Series, T.
- J. THOMPSON, *The Poetical Works*, Milner & Co.
- F. THOMPSON, *Health and Holiness*, Barns & Oates.
- KATHERINE CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., William Blackwood & Sons.
- E. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Mirage*, Chapman & Hall.
- , *The Antagonists*, id.
- , *The Open Window*, id.
- , *Traffic*, id.
- , *The Flower of Gloster*, id.
- , *The City of Beautiful Nonsense*, id.
- , *The Garden of Resurrection*, (?)
- H. BEERBOHM TREE, *Henry VIII and his Court*, Cassell & Co.
- G. O. TREVELYAN, *Life and Letters of Lord Macaulay*, Longmans, Green, & Co.
- A. TROLLOPE, *Framley Parsonage*, Every Man's Library, J. M. Dent & Co.
- , *Barchester Towers*, id. id.
- , *The Warden*, Bohn's Popular Library.
- , *Dr. Thorne*, id.
- , *The Three Clerks*, The World's Classics, Oxford, Henry Frowde.
- , *Thackeray*, English Men of Letters, Macmillan & Co.
- , *An Autobiography*, Blackwood.
- KATH. TYNAN, *The Honourable Molly*, Newnes' Sixpenny Edition.

- H. ANNESLEY VACHELL, *Jelf's*, John Murray.  
H. WALES, *The Yoke*, John Long.  
L. B. WALFORD, *Stay-at-homes*, Serial.  
HOR. WALPOLE, *The Castle of Otranto*, Cassell's National Library.  
HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Cassell & Co.  
——, *The Captives*, Macmillan & Co.  
——, *The Green Mirror*, id.  
J. CUMING WALTERS, *Phases of Dickens*, Chapman & Hall.  
MRS. HUMPHRY WARD, *The Marriage of William Ashe*, T.  
——, *The Mating of Lydia*, Smith, Elder, & Co.  
——, *The Case of Richard Meynell*, id.  
——, *A Great Success*, id.  
——, *Marcella*, id.  
——, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, Newnes Sixpenny Copyright Novels.  
——, *Delia Blanchflower*, Paris, Louis Conard.  
——, *Cousin Philip*, Collins & Co.  
——, *Sir George Tressady*, Cheap Edition, C. Arthur Pearson.  
——, *Robert Elsmere*, T.  
——, *David Grieve*, T.  
——, *The Coryston Family*, T.  
MARY WEBB, *The Golden Arrow*, Constable & Co.  
JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, Hodder & Stoughton.  
H. G. WELLS, *The Wheels of Chance*, T.  
——, *The History of Mr. Polly*, Nelson & Sons.  
——, *Bealby*, G. Newnes.  
——, *Kipps*, Collins' Clear-Type Edition.  
——, *Mr. Britling sees it through*, Cassell & Co.  
STANLEY WEYMAN, *Count Hannibal*, Smith, Elder, & Co.  
——, *Under the Red Robe*, (?)  
EDITH WHARTON, *The Custom of the Country*, Macmillan & Co.  
PERCY WHITE, *To-day*, T.  
R. WHITEING, *Little People*, T.  
OSC. WILDE, *Lady Windermere's Fan*, Methuen & Co.  
——, *A Woman of No Importance*, id.  
——, *The Importance of being Earnest*, id.  
——, *An Ideal Husband*, id.  
——, *Lord Arthur Savile's Crime and other stories*, id.  
——, *The Picture of Dorian Gray*, T.  
C. N. and A. M. WILLIAMSON, *Lady Betty across the Water*, Methuen & Co.  
——, *Lord Loveland discovers America*, id.  
——, *Set in Silver*, T.  
MRS. HENRY WOOD, *The Channings*, R. E. King & Co.  
——, *East Lynne*, T.  
——, *Orville College*, T.  
W. WORDSWORTH, *The Poetical Works*, Oxford Edition, Henry Frowde.  
W. WYCHERLEY, *The Plain Dealer*, *The Gentleman Dancing-Master*,  
*The Mermaid Series*, Fisher Unwin.  
DOLF WYLLARDE, *The Story of Eden*, Heinemann.  
MAY WYNNE, *When Terror Ruled*, Greening & Co.  
CHARL. M. YONGE, *The Heir of Redclyffe*, T.  
I. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, Heinemann.
-

# INDICES.

## ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE INDICES.

absol utely.	comp arative(s),	dif ference.
absorb ing.	comp ared.	dif ferent(ly).
absorp tion.	comp arison.	disguis ed, -ing.
abstr act.	compl ement.	disp ensing,
acces sory.	compl ex.	dispos ition.
ac cusative.	comp ound.	distrib utive(ly).
act ion.	cond itional.	div ided, -ing.
act ive.	conj oint(ly).	dur ative.
activ ity.	conjug ation.	effect ive.
adject ival.	conj unction.	emph asis.
adject ive.	con nected.	emph asized, -ing.
adj unct.	con nexion(s).	emph atical(ly).
adm itting.	cons idered.	Eng lish.
adnom inal(ly).	constit uent.	equiv alent.
adv erb.	constr uction(s).	eth ical.
adv erbial(ly).	constr ued.	expres sed, -ing.
affirm ation.	cont ext.	expres sion(s).
antec edent.	contin uative.	fem inine.
applic ation.	contr acted.	fol lowed, -ing.
apprec iative.	contr action.	form ation.
approx imately, -ing.	conv ersion.	form ative.
art icle.	conv erted.	form ed, -ing.
asp ect.	conv ertible.	frequent ative(ly).
assum ing.	correl ation.	funct ions.
attrib ute.	correl ative(s).	furn ished.
attrib utive(ly).	cor responding.	fut ure.
aux iliary.	corrob orative.	fut urity.
cap able.	dat ive.	gen eralizing.
card inal.	def inite.	gen itive.
caus ative(ly).	def inition.	ger und.
circumst ances.	den oted.	gov erning.
clas sifying.	den oting.	gram matically.
cl ause.	deprec iative.	imper ative.
cogn ate.	descr iption.	imperf ect.
col lective(ly).	determ inative.	impers onal.
combin ation(s).	dial ect(s).	impl ying.
com mon.	dif fer(ing).	impres sion.

- incompl|ete.  
 indef|inite(ly).  
 ind|icated -ing.  
 individ|ual(s).  
 individ|ualizing.  
 inf|initive.  
 infl|ection(al).  
 ingres|sive(ly).  
 intens|ive.  
 interj|ection.  
 interrog|ative(ly).  
 intrans|itive.  
 introd|ucing.  
 invert|ed.  
 irreg|ular(ly),  
 iter|ative(ness).  
 isol|ated.  
 lang|uage.  
 loc|ution(s).  
 log|ical.  
 masc|uline.  
 mean|ing(s).  
 mod|ified, -ing.  
 mod|ifier.  
 moment|aneous(ness).  
 mut|ative.  
 nec|essary.  
 neg|ative.  
 neg|ativ|ing.  
 non-pers|onal.  
 not|ion(s).  
 num|eral(s).  
 obj|ect(ive).  
 obs|olete.
- occas|ioning.  
 oppos|ite.  
 ord|inal.  
 part|ial(ly).  
 part|iciple(s).  
 part|itive.  
 pas|sive(ly).  
 pec|uliar.  
 perf|ect.  
 pers|on(s).  
 pers|onal.  
 periphr|astic(ally).  
 plur|al.  
 pos|ition(s).  
 pos|itive.  
 pos|sessive.  
 prec|eded, -ing.  
 pred|icate.  
 pred|ication.  
 pred|icative(ly).  
 pref|ix.  
 prep|osition(al).  
 pres|ent.  
 pret|erite.  
 prim|ary.  
 prom|ininal.  
 pron|oun(s).  
 prop|er.  
 psych|ical.  
 qual|ity.  
 quest|ion(s).  
 recipr|ocal.  
 ref|erence(s).  
 ref|erring.
- refl|exive.  
 reg|ularl(ly).  
 rep|etition.  
 repl|acing.  
 repres|ented, -ing.  
 req|uired, -ing.  
 sec|ondary.  
 semant|ic(ally).  
 sent|ence(s).  
 sim|ilar.  
 sing|ular.  
 spec|ial.  
 stand|ing.  
 stat|ement(s).  
 sub|ject(ive).  
 subord|inate(ly).  
 subst|antive(ly).  
 substit|ute.  
 suf|fix(es).  
 sup|erlative.  
 sup|pressed.  
 syn|onymous.  
 temp|oral.  
 term|inative.  
 tot|al(ly).  
 transf|erred.  
 trans|itive.  
 un|it.  
 var|iant(s).  
 var|iety.  
 var|ious.  
 var|ying.  
 voc|ative.  
 vulg|ar.
-

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

---

- absolute possessive pronoun** equiv. to *for* + pers. pron., 787.
- absolute use of verbs**, 59.
- absolute use of prepositions**, 806 *f*.
- absorption of object**, 59.
- absorption of preposition**, 82 *ff*, 113.
- accessory notions** expressed by verbs, 19, 36 *f*, 46, 680 *ff*.
- accumulation of negatives**, 679.
- accusative in ellipt. sent.**, 781.
- accusative + infinitive**, 427 *ff*, 488, 774; — as subj., 780 *ff*.
- accusative + gerundium**, 489.
- accusative + present participle**, 519 *ff*.
- active gerund** with pas. mean., 67, 104, 478.
- active infinitive** with pas. mean., 67, 104, 447 *ff*.
- active voice**, 13 *f*.
- adjectival participle**, 534; — mod. by intens., 536 *f*; — in degrees. of comp., 536 *f*; — conv. into noun, 537.
- adjectives** comp. with verbs, 39 *f*; — in adv. funct., 77, 79, 112, 395 *f*, 682 *ff*; — in *able* or *ible* fol. by *by*, 138; — comp. with *ed*, 589 *ff*.
- adverb** in subst. funct., 49, 654; — den. sense-impression, 57; — in *ly* avoided, 77, 79, 81, 632 *ff*, 688 *f*; — in comp. with *ed*, 560; — affirm. and neg. 673, *ff*; — mod. adnom. noun 691 *f*; mod. prep., 692; — mod. prep. word-group, 692; — mod. sent. 692; — mod. adject., 693 *ff*; — in adnom. funct., 698 *ff*, 703; — in subst. funct., 703 *ff*; — conv. into verb, 705; — comp. with prep., 806 *ff*; — placed after noun 808.
- adverbial adjunct**, 29; — comp. with prep. obj., 31 *ff*, 122 *f*.
- adverbial clause** den. sense-impression, 57; — as compl. of prep. 795.
- adverbial conjunction**, 820.
- adverbial genitive**, 610 *ff*, 762.
- adverbial notion** expres. by adject., 77, 79, 112, 395 *f*, 682 *ff*, 686 *ff*; — expres. by nouns, 680 *f*; — expres. by indef. pron. or num., 689; — by phrases, 690 *f*.
- adverbial relative** 822.
- adverbial verbs** 36 *f*, 46, 680 *ff*.
- adverbial word-groups** dispensing with prep., 805.
- affective object**, 27.
- affirmation**, 637 *f*.
- agent-noun**, 684, 701 *f*.
- aktionsart**, 290.
- Anglo-Irish**, 781.
- American English**, 492.
- analytical character of English**, 21 *f*, 387 *ff*.
- anaphoric personal pronoun**, 807 *f*.
- anomalous verbs**, 572, 593 *ff*.
- apodosis in cond. sent.**, 167.
- aspect**, 14, 287 *ff*.
- attributive infinitive** in pas. voice, 452.
- attributive past participle** gov. prep. obj., 550; — of mutative verbs, 550.
- auxiliary**, 15 *f*; — of aspect, 15, 297; — of mood, 15, 161 *ff*; — of periphrasis, 17; — of tense, 15, 213 *ff*, 218 *ff*; — of voice, 15, 93, 99.
- auxiliary phrase**, 16.
- bepaling van gesteldheid**, 18.

- causative verbs**, 27, 71 *ff.*  
**causative converted intransitives**, 71 *ff.*;  
 — (not) adm. of pas. conv., 111 *f.*  
**character**, see *aspect*.  
**characterizing function** of Expanded Form, 336 *ff.*  
**cognate object**, 27, 76; — comp. with effect. obj., 27; — furn. with adnom. adj., 47, 687; — understood after superl., 78 *f.*; — (not) convertible into invert. obj., 112 *f.*  
**common case** before ger., 485 *ff.*; — in elliptical sent., 782 *f.*  
**comparative** as base of adv., 621.  
**complement of preposition**, 792 *ff.*  
**completed action**, 277 *ff.*  
**complex predicate**, 21.  
**complex gerund**, 467.  
**compound adverbial relative**, 822.  
**compound gerund**, 34, 467, 493 *ff.*  
**compound participle**, 34, 538 *ff.*, 554 *ff.*  
**compound relative adverb**, 821.  
**concessive clause** impl. idle wish, 169; — in form of hort. sent., 170; — in form of imper. sent., 202.  
**condensed construction** 363, *ff.*  
**conditional clause** impl. idle wish, 168 *f.*; — in form of hort. sent., 170; — of rejected condition, 170 *ff.*; — in form of imper. sent., 201.  
**conditional mood**, 9, 162 *ff.*; — in sent. expres. idle wish, 168; — in apodosis of cond. sent., 170 *ff.*; — in protasis of cond. sent., 191 *ff.*; — in conces. cl., 195 *f.*; — in cl. of hypothetic similarity, 198.  
**conjugation**, 567 *ff.*  
**conjunctions** comp. with prep., 818 *f.*; — comp. with rel. pron., 822.  
**conjunctive**, 815.  
**conjunctive adverb**, 653, 820.  
**conjunctive pronoun**, 822.  
**connective pronoun**, 822.  
**continuative adnominal clause** as compl. of prep., 795.  
**continuative aspect**, 289; — imparted to dur. verb, 307 *f.*  
**converted adjectives**, 792.  
**converted subject**, 93.  
**co-ordination** compared with subordination, 815 *f.*  
**co-ordinative conjunctives**, 815.  
**copula**, 5 *f.*, 624 *f.*, 630.  
**correlatives**, 819.  
**dates** differently represented in print, 804.  
**dative** in adv. adj., 619.  
**defective verbs**, 572, 593 *ff.*  
**definite article** suppressed after superl., 764 *f.*  
**direct object**, 25.  
**double passive**, 461 *ff.*  
**doubly reported statements**, 234 *ff.*  
**doubtful transitivity**, 46 *ff.*  
**dramatic present**, 253 *f.*  
**durative aspect**, 287; — imparted to moment. pred., 269 *ff.*, 276, 277, cont., 301.  
**durative verbs** made ingressive by context., 291 *ff.*; — made terminative by cont., 300; — made continuative by cont., 307; — made iterative by 308.  
**effective object**, 27.  
**emphatic mood**, 12.  
**empiric aorist**, 208.  
**empiric perfect**, 208.  
**elliptical exclamatory sentences** with (*to* +) inf., 436 *ff.*, 779.  
**ethical dative**, 29.  
**expanded construction**, 363 *ff.*  
**Expanded Form**, 15, 21, 24, 290, 317 *ff.*; 531; — implying futurity, 247, 334 *ff.*; — with ingressive force, 299; — with iterative force, 308 *f.*, 317; — of momentaneous verbs, 317, 323 *f.*; — in temp. cl., 324; — in fut. tense 325 *f.*; — in (plu)perfect tense, 327; — comp. with ger. constr., 333; — comp. with *do*-constr., 333; — in pas. voice, 344, 520; — history of, 348 *f.*, 485; — substitutes for, 346; — in Dutch, 347.  
**factitive verbs**, 27.  
**finite verb**, 41.



- for-adjunct**, 774 *ff*; — with verbs, 774; — with nominals, 774; — con. with inf. cl. 774; — attended by *to*-adj., 777; — fulfilling funct. of subj. to inf.-cl., 779; — rise of. 779 *ff*; — as constituent of adv. cl., 782; — as complement of verbs and adjunct., 783 *ff*; — as modifier of noun, 785 *f*; — in predic. funct., 786 *f*.
- frequentative aspect**, 290.
- future-perfect tense**, 209.
- future tense** use of, 206, 249 *ff*; — form of, 218 *ff*.
- futurity** expressed by var. phrases, 244 *ff*; — implied by Expanded Form, 247, 334 *ff*.
- futurum exactum**, 209.
- general adverbs**, 666.
- genitive** before ger., 491; — in adv. adj., 610 *ff*.
- genetivus qualitatus**, 767.
- genus** of verbs, 13.
- gerund** as subst. verbal, 40 *f*, 467 *ff*; — as cogn. obj., 78; — neutral as to voice, 104, 478 *ff*, 481, 512; — neutral as to tense, 104, 482 *f*, 512; — aspect of, 312; — not in Expanded Form, 329; — conv. into pres. part. through losing prep., 372, 500, 523 *f*. 806; — comp. with inf., 403, 467, 469 *ff*, 481, 496 *f*; — formed from nouns and adv., 468: — in pas. voice, 469, 477 *f*, 512; — in perf. tenses 469, 477 *f*, 512; — not affected by change of time-sphere in head-sent., 470; — comp. with pres. part., 469, 474, 481, 486, 502 *ff*, 557; — prec. by noun-mod., 471, *ff*; — mod. by subj. or obj. gen., 472 *f*, 481; — in adnom. funct., 474; — in plur. 474; — in gen., 475; — prec. by def. art. or dem. pron. and fol. by non-prep. obj., 475 *ff*; — with or without def. art. and fol. by adn. adj. with *of*, 483 *f*; — prec. by common case or gen., 485; — comp. with noun of action, 497 *ff*; — comp. with past part., 502 *ff*; — comp. with verbal noun, 504 *ff*; — hist. of, 507 *ff*.
- gerund-clause** as compl. of prep., 470 *f*, 743, 796.
- gerund-construction** var. with inf. constr., 779, 743, 784.
- gnomic aorist**, 208.
- gnomic perfect**, 208.
- grammatical subject**, 7.
- group-adverbs** 610, *ff*.
- group-future**, 249.
- group-prepositions**, 711 *ff*; — mod. by adv. or adjunct., 791.
- group-verbs**, 86 *f*, 113 *f*, 118 *ff*, 396.
- half-gerund**, 489, 500, 507, 806.
- half-link-verb**, 18.
- haplology**, 411.
- hendiadys**, 438, 557, 640, 697, 770.
- historical present**, 253 *f*.
- historical preterite**, 258.
- hortative sentence**, 166; — in funct. of cond. or conc. cl., 170.
- idle wish**, 166; — in optative sent.; — in complex sent., 175 *f*, 179.
- illogical predicate**, 7, 13, 27, 64.
- imperative mood**, 9 *f*, 162; — applications of, 200 *ff*; — imparting ingressive asp. to dur. verbs, 291; — not in Expanded Form, 291, 329.
- imperfect gerund** cor. to perf. inf., 496.
- impersonal predicate**, 8.
- impersonal passive**, 106.
- incomplete predication**, 17 *ff*.
- indefinite numerals** in adv. funct., 661 *ff*.
- indicative mood**, 9 *f*, 161.
- indirect object**, 25.
- infinitive** as subst. verbal, 40 *f*, 403 *f*; — neutral as to voice, 104; — expressing idle wish, 168; — comp. with pres. part., 310 *f*; — in Expanded Form, 328; — comp. with ger., 403, 467, 469 *ff*, 481, 496 *f*; — in front-position, 407; — in pas. voice, 403, 447 *ff*; — in perf. tenses, 403, 440; — in elliptical sent., 436 *ff*, 781.

- infinitive-clause** as compl. of prep., 795.
- infinitive-clause with *for*-adjunct**, 774 *ff*; varying with inf. cl. with *to*-adj., 775; — with nom. and verb. pred., 776; — prec. head-sent., 776; — after *as*, *than* or *but*, 777; — as nom. part. of the pred., 777; — as prep. obj., 777 *f*; — as apposition, 778; — without head-sent., 779; — implying condition, 779; — equiv. to gerund-clause, 779, 784, 785, 787; — rise of, 779 *ff*; — as constituent of adv. cl., 782 *f*; — as compl. of verbs and adjunct (or adjunct. equiv.), 783 *ff*; — repres. subord. statem., 785; — repres. rel. cl., 785 *f*.
- inflection**, 15; — forming adv., 610 *ff*; — replaced by prep., 761 *ff*, 799.
- inflectional conditional**, 11, 162.
- inflectional subjunctive**, 11, 162.
- ingressiveness** imparted to dur. verbs, 291 *ff*.
- intensives** modifying participles, 536, 552.
- interjections**, 829 *ff*; — furnished with complement, 830; — conv. into verbs or nouns, 831.
- intransitive verbs**, 24; — turned into trans., 47, 67 *ff*, 687, 805; — in caus. mean., 68 *ff*; — in trans. group-verbs, 86 *ff*; — in pas. mean., 158.
- intransitive reflexive verbs**, 144 *ff*.
- intransitiveness** comp. with passiveness, 102 *ff*.
- inverted object**, 98.
- inverted subject**, 93.
- irregular conjugation**, 573 *ff*.
- isolated preterite**, 258.
- isolated forms of verbs**, 572, 599 *ff*.
- iterative aspect**, 289; — imparted to momentaneous pred., 273, 308.
- levelling** of dative and accusative, 126.
- link-verb**, 6.
- logical subject**, 7.
- loos onderwerp**, 8.
- medium voice**, 13 *f*.
- metre** influencing tense, 268, 269, 283.
- middle voice**, 13 *f*.
- modal auxiliary**, 17.
- modal verb**, 17.
- modal adverbial adjunct**, 163.
- momentaneous aspect**, 287.
- momentaneous verbs** assuming durative aspect, 269 *ff*, 276, 277, 301, 306; — in Expanded Form, 306; — assuming iterative aspect, 273.
- mood**, 9 *ff*, 161 *ff*.
- multiplicatives** as base of adv., 621.
- mutative verbs**, 23, 550.
- narrative preterite**, 258.
- negation**, 673 *ff*.
- negative and affirmative constructions** semantically identical, 678.
- negating implied**, 677.
- neutral mood**, 13, 161.
- neutral preterite**, 208.
- neutral tense**, 206.
- neutral time-sphere**, 206.
- nominal predicate**, 5; — requiring compl., 37 *f*; — in pret. instead of pluperf., 281.
- nominative** in ellipt. sent., 781.
- nominative + gerund**, 489.
- nominative + infinitive** as subj., 780 *f*; — in exclam. sent., 781.
- noun** den. nature of sense-impression, 57; — as base of adjunct in *ed*, 558 *ff*; — as base of adv., 621; — as base of adjunct., 624; — in adv. funct. 657; — den. adv. not., 80, 680 *f*, 688 *f*; — den. quality, 692; — as complement of prep., 792.
- noun of action** comp. with verbs, 38, *f*; — aspect of, 312; — comp. with ger., 497; — in compound, 498; — mod. by adjunct., 634.
- number** of verbs, 9.
- numeral** in comp. adjunct. in *ed*, 561 *f*.
- object**, 29 *ff*; — common to more than one verb, 33; — semantically equiv. to adv., adj. 47 *f*, 687; — inferred from context, 48 *ff*.

- objective adjectives**, 38.  
**objective verbs**, 24.  
**of-adjunct** 761, *ff*.  
**onomatopoetic stems**, 289.  
**optative sentence**, 166.  
**ordinal numeral** as base of adv., 621.  
  
**parasyntetic compounds**, 559 *ff*, 768.  
**participles** as *adject. verbals*, 41, 517 *ff*;  
     — aspect of, 310 *f*.  
**participle equivalents**, 541 *ff*, 769.  
**particles**, 605 *ff*; — of uncertain  
     gram. status, 808, 809, 810.  
**partitive** genitive, 762 *ff*.  
**partitive of**, 762 *ff*; — in weakened  
     form, 764 *ff*.  
**passé défini** as pure pret., 211.  
**passé indéfini** ousting *passé défini*,  
     211.  
**passive construction** of (group-)verbs  
     gov. one non-prep. obj., 107; — of  
     (group-)verbs gov. one prep. obj.,  
     115 *ff*: — of verbs mod. by adv.  
     adj., 122 *f*; — of verbs gov. two  
     non-prep. obj., 124 *ff*; — of verbs  
     gov. a prep. and a non-prep. obj.,  
     134; — impracticable 30, 31, 33,  
     101, 107 *ff*, 115 *f*, 122, 124, 130.  
**passive voice** as illogical pred., 7, 93;  
     — form of, 93; — funct. of, 34, 93,  
     — usefulness of, 101; — frequency of,  
     105; — application of, 107 *ff*; — cor.  
     to refl. voice in French or German,  
     158; — of Expanded Form, 344, 520;  
     — of inf., 447 *ff*; — of ger., 469.  
**passiveness** comp. with intransitive-  
     ness, 102 *ff*, 521; — not expressed  
     by pas. voice, 135 *ff*; — expressed  
     by refl. voice, 135, 156 *f*; — expres-  
     sed by *to have* + (pro)noun + past  
     part., 136; — implied in *adject. in*  
     *able* or *ible*, 136 *ff*; — implied in  
     certain phrases and expressions,  
     138 *f*; — disregarded in inf., 447 *ff*,  
     in ger., 478 *ff*, in pres. part., 519 *ff*.  
**passival verbs**, 64.  
**past participle** of varied gram. status,  
     98 *f*, 311 *f*, 531; — comp. with  
     ger. 502; — after verbs of perceiving  
     522; — originally *adject.*, 214 *ff*,  
     528; — in transferred applications,  
     532; — in termin. superl., 552 *f*;  
     — gov. prep. obj., 553; — conv.  
     into noun, 553; — in prep. funct.,  
     553 *f*, 714 *f*; — in comp. 554, 636 *ff*;  
     — as base of adv. in *ly*, 620 *f*.  
**perfect infinitive** after certain verbs,  
     441 *ff*; — comp. with imperf. ger.,  
     496.  
**perfective aspect**, 290.  
**perfect tense** funct. of, 209 *ff*, 256 *ff*;  
     — comp. with pres. tense, 210,  
     268 *ff*, 277 *ff*, 306; — cor. to Dutch  
     pres. tense, 212, 268 *f*; — form of,  
     214 *ff*; — den. continued state, 217;  
     — comp. with pret. tense, 256 *ff*.  
**periphrastic conditional** form of, 11;  
     — with down-toning force, 173 *f*.  
**periphrastic subjunctive**, 11, 162, 165.  
**person** of verbs, 9.  
**personal pronoun** as ethical dative, 29.  
**personification**, 23.  
**person-object**, 25; — as subj. of pas.  
     conv., 125 *ff*.  
**pluperfect tense** form of, 208; — in  
     two funct., 212; — cor. to perf.  
     tense, 277 *ff*; — replaced by pret.  
     tense, 278 *ff*, 282 *f*; — in vivid  
     description, 283.  
**pluperfect conditional** after certain  
     verbs, 445 *f*.  
**præsens historicum**, 254.  
**predicate**, 5.  
**predication**, 5.  
**predicative adjectives** den. adv. not.,  
     368 *ff*, 457 *ff*, 687 *f*.  
**predicative adnominal adjunct**, 626,  
     787 *ff*.  
**prefix** forming adv., 619 *f*.  
**pregnant use** of verbs, 59.  
**preposition** intimately con. with verb  
     or (pro)noun, 33, 116; — said to  
     assume adv. funct., 35, 810 *f*; —  
     comp. with trans. verb, 38; — before  
     ger., 470, 478, 796; — function of,  
     757 *ff*; sometimes of a hybrid  
     character, 757; — semantic signi-  
     ficance of, 759, 776, 796, 798;

- expressing a quality or state, 759, 786, 791; — of constructional value, 761 *ff*; — dispensed with, 786, 794, 795, 799 *ff*; — before *inf.*, 795; — with *var. stress*, 797; — dropping final cons., 798; — vagueness of, 798; — comp. with *adv.*, 806 *ff*; — used absolutely, 806 *f*; — comp. with *conj.*, 818 *f*.
- preposition-group** comp. with group-preposition, 720; — in various funct., 757 *ff*; — without headword, 764; — den. qual. or state, 758 *f*, 790; — mod. by *adv.* or *adj.*, 790; — as complement of *prep.*, 792.
- prepositional object**, 26, 28; — comp. with *adv. adj.*, 31 *ff*, 122 *ff*; — in *pas. conv.*, 33, 115 *ff*.
- present participle** disregarding voice, 104, 519; — not in Expanded Form, 329; — comp. with *ger.*, 469, 474, 481, 486 *f*, 500 *ff*, 557; — after verbs of perceiving, 486, 488, 519 *ff*; — in *perf. tenses*, 517; — in *pas. voice*, 518; — not affected by change of time-sphere in head-sent., 518; — disregarding tense, 519; — in transferred applications, 531 *f*; — mod. by *intens.*, 536 *f*; — *conv.* into noun, 537; — as *intens.*, 537; — in *conj. funct.*, 538; — in *prep. funct.*, 538 *ff*, 711 *ff*; — in *comp.*, 538 *ff*, 636; — replaced by phrases, 541 *ff*; — in *term. superl.*, 537; — as base of *adv.* in *ly*, 620 *f*, 629 *f*, 635; — in *adv. funct.*, 635.
- present perfect tense**, 210.
- present subjunctive** replacing *pret. subj.*, 164.
- present tense** use of, 206; — retained after *pret.*, 213; — in Old English, 218; — instead of *fut. tense*, 249 *ff*, 336; — comp. with *perf. tense*, 210, 268 *ff*, 277 *ff*, 306.
- preterite tense** use of, 206; — comp. with *perf. tense*, 256, *ff*; — instead of *pluperf. tense*, 273 *f*, 277.
- preterite future tense**, 209.
- preterite future perfect**, 209.
- preterite present verbs**, 595.
- primary adverbs**, 607 *ff*, 718.
- primary conjunctions**, 816.
- primary conversion** into passive voice, 125.
- primary dividing-point** of time-spheres, 206.
- primary interjections**, 829.
- primary participant** in activity, 24.
- primary prepositions**, 710.
- primary tenses**, 207.
- progressive verbs**, 821.
- Progressive Form**, 15, 21, 24, 290, 318 *ff*.
- pronominal adverbs**, 652 *ff*.
- pronouns** in adverbial function, 661 *ff*.
- prophetic shall**, 229.
- prospective function** of Expanded Form, 334 *ff*.
- protasis** in *cond. sent.*, 167; — understood, 170 *ff*.
- psychological disposition** den. by verbs, 23.
- psychological subject** comp. with logical and grammatical *subj.*, 7, 338.
- qualifying function of genitive**, 767.
- qualitative function** of Expanded Form, 338 *f*.
- quasi-copula**, 18.
- quasi-impersonal predicate**, 8, 354.
- reciprocal pronoun** expressing meaning of Greek medium, 14, 143; — dispensed with, 59, 64, 153 *ff*; — substitutes of, 155 *f*.
- reflexive pronoun** as constituent of *refl. voice*, 14, 143; — as *ethical dat.*, 29; — absorbed by verb, 59, 64, 146 *ff*; — heaviness of, 106; — not convertible into inverted *obj.*, 108; — in varied *funct.*, 143; — when emphatic 157.
- reflexive voice** *funct.* of, 13 *f*, 143; — form of, 14, 143; — comp. with *pas. voice* and intransitiveness, 156 *ff*; — in French or German *cor. to pas. voice* in Eng., 158.

- rejected fulfilment, 166.  
 rejected condition, 170.  
 relative adverbs, 820, 821.  
 relative pronouns comp. with conj., 822.  
 resultative aktionsart, 290.  
 retained object, 98; — place of, 134 *f*.  
 rhythm influencing tense, 268.
- secondary adverb, 610.  
 secondary conversion into pas. voice, 125; — impracticable, 128.  
 secondary conjunctions, 816.  
 secondary dividing-point of time-spheres, 206.  
 secondary interjections, 829.  
 secondary participant in activity, 24.  
 secondary prepositions, 710.  
 secondary tenses, 207.  
 semantic significance of prepositions, 759.  
 sense-impression den. by verbs, 23, 56 *f*.  
 sequences of prepositions, 751.  
 sham-subject, 8.  
 shortenings of verbal forms, 217, 240 *f*.  
 significant part of predicate, 21.  
 special adverbs, 666 *f*.  
 stage-directions language of, 256, 323.  
 subject of sent., 7; — understood, 167.  
 subjective verbs, 24.  
 subjunct-adjunct, 686.  
 subjunctive inflections, 164.  
 subjunctive mood funct. of, 9 *f*, 161 *ff*;  
 — in optative sent., 167 *f*; — in hortative sent., 169 *f*; — in subordinate statements, 175, 177, 179, 180, 181; — in subordinate questions, 182; — in adverbial clauses, 183, 185, 188, 194, 196, 197.  
 subordinate question as compl. of prep., 793 *f*.  
 subordinate statement as compl. of prep., 792.  
 subordination compared with co-ordination, 815 *f*.  
 subordinative conjunctives, 815.
- substantive clause as compl. of prep., 794 *f*.  
 substantive equivalents as compl. of prep., 792.  
 suffixes form. adv., 620 *ff*.  
 superlative with cogn. obj. understood, 78 *f*.
- tense indicating time-sphere, 9, 205; form of, 213 *ff*; — exhibited by inf., 440 *ff*; — exhibited by ger., 469, 482; — exhibited by pres. part., 517 *ff*.  
 tense-auxiliaries in adv. cl. of time, 185 *f*; — in adv. cl. of condition, 190 *f*.  
 tense-mood, 162.  
 tense-shifting in combination with inf., 441 *ff*.  
 terminativeness imparted by context, 300.  
 tertiary dividing-point of time-sphere, 206.  
 thing-object, 25.  
 time-sphere, 205 *f*.  
 transferred application of participles, 531 *f*.  
 transitiveness, 24; — floating nature of, 45, 49; — faded, 146.  
 transitive-reflexive verbs, 143.  
 transitive verbs turned into intrans., 58 *ff*, 150, 523, 535, 799; — furn. with cogn. obj., 80; — not adm. of pas. conv., 108 *ff*.  
 uncertainty of grammatical function, 624 *ff*.
- Unexpanded Form funct. of, 320.
- variability of aspect, 290 *ff*.  
 variable applicability of predicate, 349 *f*.  
 verb funct. of, 5; — with dif. constr. having an obj. in common 33 *f*, 116; — comp. with noun of action and adject., 38 *ff*; — indicating mode of uttering 47 *f*, 80 *ff*, 112 *f*, 688; — of asking or requesting (not) adm. of pas. conv., 112 *f*;

- of asking, requesting and teaching gov. two accus. in Latin, 126.  
**verbals** 41.  
**verbal noun** comp. with ger., 504 *ff.*  
**verbal participle**, 534,  
**verbal predicate**, 5.  
**voegwoordelijke bijwoorden**, 819.
- voice**, 13 *f.*, 93 *ff.*; — exhibited by inf., 447 *ff.*; — exhibited by ger., 469, 478 *ff.*; — exhibited by pres. part. 518 *ff.*
- word-order** in co-ordination and subordination, 815.

## INDEX OF WORDS, PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES.

## English.

- a** as pref., 373, 619, 709, 798.  
**abide** fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 488.  
**able** (suf.) in adj. with pas. mean., 136 *ff.*  
**able** (adj.) fol. by pas. inf., 464.  
**aboard** as prep., 744.  
**abomination** with pas. mean., 139.  
**abound** + prep. not adm. of pas. conv., 33, 124.  
**about** (adv.) in verbal phrase, 245 *f.*, 441, 470, 703; — = *approximately*, 749, 810; — dispensing with prep., 802, 810.  
**about(s)** as adv. format., 615 *f.*, 654.  
**about** (prep.) in group-prep., 749; — as significant prep., 759; — mod. by intens., 791; — before inf., 795 *f.*; — after noun, 809.  
**above** fol. by pas. ger., 481; — in adnom. funct., 698, 796.  
**above-board** in adnom. funct., 703.  
**above water** id., 699.  
**abreast** with *of* or *with*, 744; — dispensing with prep., 808.  
**abroad** in subst. funct., 654.  
**absent onself** as refl. verb, 145.  
**absolute** den. adv. not., 683.  
**abuse** (v.) cor. to French intrans., 53.  
**abut** + prep. not adm. of pas. conv., 124.  
**accept** in verbal phrases, 115.  
**accord** + prep. not adm. of pas. conv., 124.  
**according to** in prep. funct., 538, 711, 714.
- account** in verbal phrase, 719 *f.*  
**accuse** in pas. voice, 134.  
**ace** in *within an ace of*, 247.  
**acquaintance** of variable asp., 313.  
**acquire** comp. with *to obtain*, 289.  
**acquitted** before or after noun, 533.  
**across** as prep. and adv., 806, 807.  
**act** (n) in *in (the) act of (to)*, 246, 347, 441, 544.  
**act** (v) + prep. in pas. voice, 116.  
**active** mod. agent-noun, 684.  
**add** cor. to Dutch intrans., 53.  
**addicted** in *to be addicted to*, 337.  
**additional** den. adv. not., 682.  
**adjoining** before or after noun, 533.  
**adjourn** absorb. obj., 59; — in pas. mean., 64, 353.  
**admiration** with pas. mean., 138.  
**admired** equiv. to *admirable*, 549.  
**admit** + prep. not adm. of pas. conv., 124.  
**admitted** in pecul. applic., 546.  
**adown** as adv. or prep., 620, 709.  
**advance** in group-prep., 710, 808.  
**advantage** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**advice** in group-prep., 710.  
**afraid** constr. with *of*, 95.  
**affecting** as adj. part., 534.  
**afford** in pas. voice, 131.  
**afraid** constr. with *of*, 95: — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.  
**after** in Irish-English, 217; — fol. by perf. or imperf. ger., 482; — in adj. funct., 698; — originally a comp., 709; — as significant prep., 759; — of uncertain gram. status, 808.

- afterward(s)** as adv. gen., 613; — in subst. funct., 704.  
**against** with adj. value, 38, 758, 791.  
**age** in *of*-adj., 771; — dispensing with *of*, 800.  
**ago** instead of *before*, 207; — in con. with words or word-groups den. a length of time, 270, *ff*; — suppres., 306.  
**agreeable** as obj. adj., 38; — in group-prep., 717, 733, 744.  
**agreeably** as obj. adv., 38; — in group-prep., 717, 733, 744.  
**agreement** in group-prep., 720.  
**ah** as interj., 168, 176, 829; — as adv. of affirmation, 673; — furn. with compl., 830.  
**ahead** in group-prep., 717, 808.  
**aid** id., 710.  
**ail** with dif. subj., 359 *f*.  
**aim** + prep. cor. to French trans., 54, 116.  
**alas** furn. with compl., 830.  
**albeit** as conj. word-group, 817.  
**alike** absorb. prep. + recipr. pron., 155.  
**all** in adv. funct., 663; — in neg. phrase, 676; — fol. or prec. by part. *of*, 762, 763; — in *of all things*, - *men*, - *others*, 764; — before part. equiv., 543, 769.  
**alleged** in pecul. applic., 546.  
**all-obeying** in pas. funct., 535.  
**all** + *our* before ger., 491.  
**allot** in pas. voice, 131.  
**allow** in pas. voice, 130, 132.  
**allowance** in verbal phrase, 118 *f*.  
**allowance (v)** in pas. voice, 131.  
**allusion** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**almost** in adnom. funct., 700.  
**along** in group-prep., 744.  
**alongside (of)** of uncertain gram. status, 703, — in group-prep., 745.  
**alternate (v)** in pas. voice, 73.  
**always** con. with perf. or pret. tense, 257, 262 *f*; — con. with Expanded Form, 308; — after or before *provided*, 554; — as adv. gen., 614.  
**always** as var. of *always*, 614.  
**amble** in caus. mean., 68.  
**American** in *American made*, 630.  
**amid(st)** in group-prep., 745.  
**an (conj.)** fol. by subj., 189.  
**an (prep.)** before verbal in *ing*, 502, 523.  
**anchor** in verbal phrases, 115.  
**and** con. adj. or adv., 640, 697; — replacing *what with*, 663.  
**a-night(s)** as adv. gen., 611.  
**anoint** as verb of incompl. pred., 18.  
**answer (v)** gov. non-prep. obj., 33.  
**answer (n)** in verbal phrase, 394.  
**anticlockwise** as adv., 648.  
**anxiety** constr. with *for* + ger., 785.  
**anxious** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784; — constr. with *for* + ger., 784.  
**any** as adv. adj., 664; — after superl. + part. *of*, 763.  
**anywise** as adv., 649.  
**apace** as adv., 620.  
**apart** id., 620.  
**apparent** den. adv. not., 683.  
**appear** as adv. verb, 6, 19, 36, 46, 680; — with dif. subj., 368 *ff*; — con. with *not*, 371; — in adv. phrase, 691.  
**applaud** cor. to French intrans., 53.  
**applicant** req. compl., 37.  
**apply** with and without refl. pron., 148 *f*.  
**appoint** as verb of incompl. pred., 18.  
**appointed** in pecul. applic., 547.  
**approach** absorb. obj., 59.  
**approaching** in adv. funct., 658.  
**approve** as trans. and intrans., 51.  
**aren't I** instead of *am not I*, 594.  
**arm-in-arm with** as group-prep., 756.  
**arms** in verbal phrases, 115.  
**around** after noun, 809.  
**arrange** absorb. obj., 59; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783; — constr. with *for* + ger., 784.  
**arrive** req. compl., 36; — constr. without prep., 50; — absorb. compl., 63; — kept in pres. tense, 251, 236; — with dur. asp., 306; — in Expanded Form, 335; — + prep. in pas. voice, 116.

- as** (conj.) in pred. adn. adj., 18; — in *as if were*, 198; — in temp. cl., 325; — before (*to* + ) inf., 434 *f*, 774; — in group-prep., 718, 753 *ff*; — comp. with *like*, 735 *ff*; — transposed, 738, 819; — before *for*-adjunct, 777, — before pred. adn. adj., 737, 787, 819; — primarily an adv., 816; — as syntactic link, 817; — equiv. to *by way of*, 819; — introd. subord. statem., 823; — introd. attrib. adnom. cl., 823; — var. with *that* or *which*, 823; — var. with, 823.
- as** (adv.) before word-gr. with part. or adj. in *ed*, 541, 557, 562; — as intens., 672, *f*.
- as against** as group-prep., 754.
- as affecting** id., 755.
- as at** id., 754.
- as between** id., 754.
- as compared** with id., 755.
- as concerns** id., 755.
- as distinct from** id., 755.
- as from** id., 755.
- ashamed** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 785.
- ashen** (or *ashy*) as adv., 633.
- aside** with *from* or *of*, 745.
- as if** fol. by cond., 198.
- as in** as group-prep., 755.
- ask** with cong. obj., 125; — in pres. instead of perf. tense, 254; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.
- as much** in pron. funct., 668.
- as opposed to** as group-prep., 755.
- as regards** (-ed) id., 755.
- as respects** id., 755.
- assist** with dif. obj., 381.
- associate** (v) constr. without prep., 50.
- assure** in pas. voice, 131.
- as though** fol. by cond., 198.
- astir** in *to be astir*, 346.
- as to** as group-prep., 753 *f*; — before subord. quest., 794.
- astride** (of) of uncertain gram. status, 703; — as group-prep., 745.
- at** in *at any time (that)*, 185; — before noun of act., 541 *f*; — in part. equiv., 541 *f*; — in group-prep., 716; — equiv. to *from*, 725; — in *at after*, 753; — in *at ease*, 758 *f*; — equiv. to *present at*, 759; — mod. by intens., 791; — dispensed with, 802 *f*.
- atop of** as group-prep., 745.
- attach** in verbal phrase, 119; — absorb. refl. pron., 149, 152.
- attain** as trans. and intrans., 51.
- attend** id., 51.
- attendant** in group-prep., 733.
- attending** as adj. part., 534.
- attention** in verbal phrase, 119, 394.
- ought** fol. by part. *of*, 762.
- avowed** in pecul. applic., 547.
- awake** dif. conj., 573.
- awaken** var. with *awake*, 55.
- award** in pas. voice, 131.
- aware** absorb. compl., 63.
- away** assisting ingressiveness; — in group-prep., 750.
- awful(ly)** as intens., 694.
- ay(e)** as adv. of affirm., 673 *f*; — as interj., 829; — furn. with compl., 830.
- bachelorwise**, -fashion as adv., 648 *f*.
- back** assisting ingressiveness, 296.
- baffle** with dif. obj., 381.
- bait(v)** as caus. trans., 74.
- balance(v)** absorb. refl. pron., 152.
- bang** in adv. funct., 610.
- banish** in pas. voice, 127, 129; — gov. two non-prep. obj., 128.
- baptize** in pas. mean., 64.
- bare-foot** var. with *barefooted*, 562.
- barring(that)** as conj. or prep., 538, 711 *f*.
- bathe** in caus. mean., 71; — absorb. refl. pron., 150.
- bathed** after *to be*; — used predic., 551, 553.
- bating** in prep. funct., 538, 711 *f*.
- battle** in verbal phrases, 115.
- be(v)** as cop., 5 *f*, 21, 157, 531; — as weak *ought*, 6, 448; — as aux of pas. voice, 13, 93, 98, 531; — as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — den. access. not. of attrib., 37; — in phrases, 144, 278, 292, 294, 376,



- 377, 381, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394; — has spec. forms in subj., 164; — in inflect. cond., 172 *f*; — as finite verb, 199; — as aux. of tense, 215 *ff*; — marking fut., 247 *f*; — kept in pres. tense, 252; — in group-verbs with ingres. asp., 292 *f*; — as independent verb with ingres. asp., 295; — in Expanded Form, 340 *ff*, 531; — fol. by (*a*) *long (time)* etc. with dif. subj., 372; — gov. dif. constr., 373; — fol. by pas. inf., 448 *ff*; — as weak *can* or *ought*, 448; — conjug., 593; — con. pred. adn. adj. with head-word, 787 *f*.
- be** (pref.) form. trans. verbs, 90; — in adj. in *ed*, 558; — form. adv. or prep., 620, 709.
- bear** (v) absorb. obj., 59; — in verbal phrases, 115, 119; — adm. of no second. pas. conv., 128, 130; — comp. with *to fetch*, 288; — with term asp., 300; — fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean., 480; — fol. by pas. inf., 482; — fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 488.
- bear oneself** as intrans. refl. verb., 145.
- beat** (v) as caus. verb, 73; — with dif. obj., 377.
- beaten** as adjunct. part., 545.
- become** as quasi-aux. of pas. voice, 13, 99 *f*; — gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 107; — form. perf. tenses with *to be*, 216; — + nominal as equiv. of ingres. verb, 288; — with dur. asp., 305; — with dif. subj., 374; — in *to become extinct*, 388; — in *to become overcast*, 388.
- becoming** constr. with and without *to*, 339, 392, 536.
- befall** gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109.
- befit** gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109.
- befitting** constr. with and without *to*, 339, 392, 536.
- before** (conj.) fol. by subj., 183.
- before** (adv.) con. with perf. tense, 257, 261 *f*; — of uncertain gram. status, 808; — as prep. after noun, 809.
- beforehand** in pred. funct., 703.
- before-mentioned** before or after noun, 533.
- beg** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.
- begging** in prepos. funct., 712 *ff*.
- begin** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 288, 297, 681; — kept in pres. tense, 252; — in Expanded Form, 317.
- behalf** in group-prep., 719 *ff*.
- be hanged** furn. with compl., 831.
- behaved** in comp., 556, 638.
- behind** of uncertain gram. status, 808.
- beholding** instead of *beholden*, 514, 574.
- behoof** in group-prep., 719, 721.
- behoove** gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109; — with dif. subj. 360.
- being** (*that*) in conj. funct., 538.
- belie** as trans., 90; — not adm. of pas. conv., 114.
- believe** as verb of incompl. pred., 18; — in Expanded Form, 342; — in adv. phrase, 690.
- belong** adm. of no pas. conv., 33; — absorb. obj., 63; — + prep. not adm. of pas. conv., 124; — in Expanded Form, 343.
- below** mod. by intens, 791.
- bemean oneself** as intrans. refl. verb., 145.
- bemoan** as trans., 90; — not adm. of pas. conv., 114.
- bend** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 150.
- bended** as adjunct. part., 558, 574.
- bent** equiv. to *bending*, 548.
- benefit** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55.
- bereave** in pas. voice, 131; — dif. conjug., 575.
- beside(s)** as adv. and prep., 616, 710; — dispensing with *of*, 801; — after noun, 808.
- bespeak** as trans., 90; — not adm. of pas. conv., 114.

**besprent** as isol. form., 599.

**best** in *had best*, 423; — mod. agent-noun, 685.

**bestir oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 145.

**bestow** absorb. compl., 63.

**betake oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 144.

**to bethink oneself** id., 144.

**betimes** as adv. gen., 611.

**better** in *had (would or were) better*, 363, 422, 423; — + *than* in prep. funct., 734.

**better oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 146.

**between** fol. by *and*, 663; — in adj. funct., 699; — as adv., 807, 808.

**bewail** as trans., 90; — not adm. of pas. conv., 114.

**beware** cor. to Dutch refl. verb., 144.

**bewEEP** as trans., 90; — not adm. of pas. conv., 114.

**beyond** fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean., 480; — in adnom. funct., 699; — in subst. funct., 704; — as adv., 807.

**bid** (v) with (pro)noun (+ *to*) + inf., 431 *f*.

**big** in adv. funct., 641.

**binding** constr. with *on*, 536.

(a) **bit** prec. by *not*, 676; — + *of* den. adv. not., 689.

**bitter** in adv. funct., 638.

**blacken** as trans. and intrans., 55.

**blame** (v) as act. inf. with pas. mean., 67, 449; — in pas. voice, 132.

**blanch** as trans. and intrans., 55; — as ingres. verb, 288.

**bleed** in caus. mean., 71; — furn. with effect. obj., 81.

**blend** (v) dif. conj., 576.

**bleSS** with dur. asp., 303; — dif. conj., 577; — in interjectional phrases, 829.

**blind** mod. by *of*-adj., 771.

**blood** in comp., 633, 659.

**blooming** mod. dif. nouns, 531.

**blow** (v) furn. with effect. obj., 82; — in pas. voice, 82; — con. with

adv., 102 *f*; — adm. of no second pas. conv., 129; — fol. by adv. or adj., 640.

**blow** (n) as cogn. obj., 125.

**blue-steel** in adv. function, 658.

**board** in group-prep., 721.

**bob** (v) furn. with cogn. obj., 77.

**bodkin** in adv. function, 659.

**boil** (v) in caus. mean., 71.

**boil** (n) in *on the boil*, 543.

**boiling** as adj. part., 531.

**bone** in comp., 660.

**bore** (v) furn. with refl. pron., 156.

**born** constr. with *of*, 95; — in *to be born*, 102 *f*, 574; — before or after noun, 534; — in *born days*, 546; in *born and bred*, 557.

**borrow** as oppos. to *to lend*, 139.

**both** in adv. funct., 664.

**both our** (etc.) before ger., 491.

**bottom** in verbal phrase, 115.

**bound** not con. with *to bind*, 576.

**bow** (v) den. mode of uttering, 28, 80, 112; — in trans. group-verb., 86.

**bow down** + prep. in pas. voice, 118.

**brand** (v) with var. constr., 788.

**brawling** in transf. applic., 532.

**breadth** dispensing with *of*, 800.

**break** as caus. verb, 55, 71; — in verbal phrase, 115.

**break up** absorb. refl. pron., 152.

**breathe** in caus. mean., 68; — den. mode of uttering, 81; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117.

**breed** (v) in caus. mean., 71; — with var. constr., 737.

**bright** in comp., 638; — mod. noun of act., 684.

**bring** in verbal phrase, 119; — second. pas. conv. unusual, 129, 131; — in dif. tenses, 267; — comp. with *to fetch*, 288.

**bring back** fol. by adj. or adv., 627.

**bring down** with dur. asp., 303.

**bringing-up** = *upbringing*, 494.

**brink** in group-prep., 246.

**British** in *British made*, 631.

**broad** in adv. funct., 639, 641.

**broadcast** (v) conj. irreg., 577.

- broadside** in adv. funct., 649.  
**broadwise** as adv., 648.  
**brokenwise** id., 649.  
**brooded** equiv. to *brooding*, 547.  
**brown** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**brush** (v) + prep. in pas. voice, 123.  
**build** absorb. obj., 59; — in Expanded Form, 330.  
**building** as act. pres. part. with pas. mean., 521, 523.  
**bung** in adv. funct., 658.  
**burn** in caus. mean., 71; — fol. by adjct. or adv., 628.  
**burn down** in pas. voice, 102 *f*.  
**burn out** con. with refl. pron., 146, 157.  
**burst** in caus. mean., 68.  
**burst out** gov. var. constr., 527.  
**busy** (adj.) req. compl., 38; — in *to be busy*, 347, 545.  
**busy oneself** as nec. refl. verb., 145.  
**but** (conj.) conv. into verb, 79; — before (*to* +) inf., 433, 774; — before *for*-adjunct, 777; — introd. subord. statem., 793; — before (pro)noun, 819.  
**but** (adv.) in idle wish, 168; — in *but now*, 263 *f*.  
**but for** as unit, 752, 754.  
**but that** introd. subord. statem., 792.  
**but what** introd. subord. statem., 793, — introd. adnom. cl., 793.  
**by** before invert. subj. 93 *f*, 761, 790, 798; — in *by the time (that)*, 185; — dispensed with, 500, 803; — after part. with *un*, 552; — mod. by dif. adv., 692, 740; — in group-prep., 716; — comp. with *near*, 740; — varying with *with*, 799; — as adv. and prep. 806; — after noun, 808; — in *to pass by*, 810.  
**bystander** = *stander-by*, 702.  
**call** (v) adm. of no second. pas conv., 129; — absorb. recipr. pron., 153; — in dif. tenses, 267 *f*; — in *call to witness*, 773.  
**call** (n) con. with various verbs, 394.  
**can** as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36; — after (*so*) *that*, 187; — as pret.-pres. verb, 211, 595; — expres. iter. asp., 309; — in *cannot but* + inf., 433.  
**cancel out** in pas. mean., 64.  
**capable** fol. by *of* + pas. ger., 464.  
**capsize** in pas. voice, 102.  
**care** (n) in verbal phrase, 119; — in group-prep., 721.  
**care** (v) constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.  
**carry** in verbal phrase, 115; — adm. of no second. pas. conv., 129; — absorb. refl. pron., 151; — comp. with *to fetch*, 288.  
**carry on** absorb. obj., 59.  
**carry oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 145.  
**case** in group-prep., 710.  
**cast** (v) in verbal phrase, 115; — with dur. asp., 304.  
**casual** mod. agent-noun, 685.  
**casual-like** as adv., 650.  
**cast about** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.  
**catch** in pas. mean., 64, 67, 135; — in caus. mean., 71; — mod. by adv. adjunct, 85; — in verbal phrases, 119; — as imper., 202; with dif. subj., 374; — fol. by pres. part., 501.  
**cause** (v) in pas. voice, 131; — with (pro)noun (+ *to*) + inf., 429.  
**ce** disguising gen. suf. *es*, 617.  
**cease** as trans. and intrans., 51; — in verbal. phrase, 115.  
**certain** in *to be certain*, 248 *f*, 371 *f*, 688, 690.  
**certainty** in *of (for or to) a certainty*, 619.  
**chance** (v) as adv. verb., 19, 36, 46, 680; — with dif. subj., 368.  
**change** in verbal phrases, 115.  
**charge** (v) in pas. voice, 134; — with dif. obj., 377.  
**charge** (n) in verbal phrase, 376.  
**charming** as adjct. part., 529.  
**chase** in verbal phrase, 118.  
**chat** (v) constr. without prep., 50.

- chatter** + prep. in pas. voice, 123.  
**cheering** equiv. to *cheerful*, 530.  
**child-fashion** as adv., 650.  
**chock** in *chock-full*, 658.  
**choke** absorb. refl. pron., 151; — in *choke-full*, 658.  
**choose** how constr., 178; — in *cannot choose but* + inf., 433; — fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean., 479; — with var. const., 787 *f*.  
**chosen** as adjunct. part., 545.  
**circulating** in transf. applic., 532.  
**clap** (v) in caus. mean., 73.  
**clean** in adv. funct., 637, 639, 641.  
**clear** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55; — with dif. obj., 378.  
**clear-like** as adv., 650.  
**cleave** dif. conj., 577 *f*.  
**clepe** as isol. form, 601.  
**close** as pred. adn. adj., 628; — in adv. funct., 636 *f*, 639, 641; — in comp. with part., 636; — mod. *by*, 692, 740; — with *to* or (*up*)*on*, 745.  
**closely** as adv., 641 *f*.  
**clothe** dif. conjug., 578.  
**clutch** (v) with dur. asp. 304.  
**collect oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 145.  
**colour** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55; — in verbal phrases, 115.  
**come** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 298, 681; — furn. with quasi cogn. obj., 85, 805; — + *at* in pas. voice, 117; — kept in pres. tense, 251, 336; — in dif. tenses, 268; — in Expanded Form, 335; — with bare inf., 425 *f*. 774; — gov. var. const., 525 *f*; — fol. by adjunct. or adv., 637; — as subjunct. before date, 715.  
**come-at-able** as nonce-form., 137.  
**comfortable** rather act. than pas., 138, 549.  
**come in** with dur. asp., 306.  
**come near** fol. by *to* + ger., 743.  
**commence** as aux. of asp., 19, 297; — in Expanded Form, 317.  
**common** in group-prep., 733.  
**company** id., 721.  
**comparative** den. adv. not., 683.  
**compare** in pas. mean., 65 *f*, 450, 454.  
**comparison** in group-prep., 721.  
**compassion** in verbal phrases, 118, 295.  
**compelling** as adjunct. part., 534.  
**complete** den. adv. not., 683.  
**comply** absorb. compl., 63.  
**comport oneself** as intrans. refl. verb., 144.  
**compose oneself** as nec. refl. verb., 145.  
**concentrate** absorb. refl. pron., 150.  
**concerning** in prepos. funct., 538, 711 *f*, 714.  
**concurrently** in group-prep., 734.  
**condemn** with dur. asp., 305.  
**conditionally** in group-prep., 734.  
**conduct** (v) absorb. obj., 59.  
**conducted** in *to be conducted*, 158.  
**conduct oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 145.  
**confessed** in pecul. applic., 547.  
**confiding** as adjunct. part., 535.  
**confine** (v) with dur. asp., 305.  
**confirmed** as adjunct. part., 546.  
**conformable** in group-prep., 733, 746.  
**conformably** as obj. adv., 38; — in group-prep., 733, 746.  
**conformity** in group-prep., 722.  
**confronting** in prepos. funct., 713.  
**congested** in *to be congested* with dif. subj., 376 *f*.  
**consent** (n) constr. with *for* - adj. + inf., 785.  
**consequence** in group-prep., 722.  
**consequent** id., 734.  
**consideration** id., 722.  
**considering** (that) as conj. or prep., 538, 712.  
**console** furn. with refl. pron., 156.  
**construction** in *under construction*, 544.  
**construe** in pas. mean., 65.  
**contain** not cap. of pas. conv., 110; — absorb. refl. pron., 150.  
**contingent** in group-prep., 734.  
**continue** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 307, 309.  
**contrariwise** as adv., 649.

- contrary** (to) as obj. adjunct., 38; — in prepos. funct., 716, 734.  
**contrast** in group-prep., 722.  
**contrive** absorb. obj., 62.  
**convert** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**convey** furn. with refl. pron., 156.  
**cost** (v) gov. compl. without prep., 47; — in Expand. Form, 343.  
**cough** (v) in (Un)expand. Form, 330.  
**could** as cond., 171; — with down-toning force, 174; — with perf. inf., 442.  
**count** (v) as intrans., 67; — with var. constr., 788.  
**countenance** (n) in verbal phrase, 115.  
**counter** in group-prep., 734.  
**courage** in verbal phrases, 115.  
**course** in group-prep., 347, 544, 722.  
**crack** (v) in caus. mean., 71.  
**crammed** gov. prep. obj., 553.  
**crimson** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**cross** (v) absorb. recipr. pron., 154.  
**cross** (prep.) in comp., 709.  
**crosswise** as adv. 648.  
**crow** (v) dif. conjug., 578.  
**cry** (v) furn. with effect. obj., 81; — in trans. group-verb, 86.  
**cry** (n) con. with various verbs, 394.  
**crystal** in comp., 633, 659.  
**cultivated** in act. mean., 548.  
**curdle** in caus. mean., 68.  
**cure** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 151, 353.  
**curst** equiv. to *cursing*, 548.  
**curtsey** (n) in verbal phrases, 394.  
**cut** (v) absorb. obj., 59; — pas. in mean., 66; — absorb. recipr. pron., 153.  
**cut off** with dif. obj., 381.  
**dab** in caus. mean., 73.  
**damning** as adjunct. part., 535.  
**dance** in caus. mean., 68.  
**dare** as cond., 170 *f*; — as pret. pres. verb, 211, 595: — in Expanded Form, 342; — with or without *to* before inf., 415 *ff*, 773; — constr. with or without *do*, 415 *f*; — as irreg. verb, 416; — in *I dare say* (*answer*, etc.) 419 *f*, 691; — with perf. inf., 442 *f*.  
**dark** in comp., 638.  
**darken** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**darkling** as adv., adj., and part., 645.  
**dash** in refl. voice, 135.  
**dating from** in prepos. funct., 714.  
**day** in *the day was*, 258.  
**dazzling** in comp., 635.  
**dead** in *to be dead*, 273, 294; — con. with various verbs, 301; — in *dead-and-gone*, 557; — in adv. funct., 639, 642; — prec. by *for*, 789.  
**deadly** in adv. funct., 639.  
**death** in *to death*, 301; — of variable asp., 313.  
**death-like** as adjunct., 651.  
**deathly** in adv. funct., 639.  
**debar** adm. of no prim. pas. conv., 130.  
**deceive** with dur. asp., 303.  
**deceive oneself** in dif. shades of mean., 144.  
**decide** in caus. mean., 76.  
**decided** in pecul. applic., 547.  
**declare** absorb. refl. pron., 152; — in adv. phrase, 691.  
**declared** in pecul. applic., 547.  
**decline** (n) in *on the decline*, 346, 543.  
**deep** in adv. funct., 636, 642.  
**deepen** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**deeply** mod. *to drink*, 634.  
**defying** equiv. to *defiant*, 530.  
**(a) degree** in adv. funct., 660.  
**delay** (v) absorb. obj., 62.  
**deliberate** mod. agent-noun, 685.  
**delight** (v) with dif. subj., 360.  
**deny** not constr. with *to*, 127; — in pas. voice, 131.  
**depart** constr. without prep., 50; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117; — with dur. asp., 305.  
**deride** cor. to Dutch intrans., 53.  
**derive** in pas. voice, 64; — absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**descended** in *to be descended*, 387.  
**desert** (v) with dur. asp., 306.  
**deserve** fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean., 479.  
**deserving** constr. with or without *of*, 338 *f*, 392, 536.

- designing** as *adj.* *part.*, 535.  
**deport oneself** as *intrans. refl. verb.*, 144.  
**desire** (*v*) *den. acces. not. of attrib.*, 19, 37, 680; — in *Expand. Form.*, 342; — with (*pro*)*noun* (+ *to*) + *inf.*, 431.  
**desire** (*n*) in *group-prep.*, 723.  
**despair** (*v*) *gov. prep. obj.*, 35; — *constr. without prep.*, 50.  
**despice** in *Expanded Form*, 342.  
**despise** in *group-prep.*, 723; — *dispensing with of*, 723, 802.  
**destined** in *pecul. applic.*, 546.  
**destroy** *absorb. obj.*, 62.  
**determine** in *caus. mean.*, 76.  
**detract** *cor. to Dutch intrans.*, 53.  
**develop** with and without *refl. pron.*, 149, 152.  
**devoted** *absorb. prep. + recipr. pron.*, 155; — in *pecul. applic.*, 547.  
**diamond** *conv. into verb.*, 79.  
**didst** to avoid *pret. in (e)st*, 568.  
**die** *furn. with cogn. obj.*, 77 *f*; — kept in *pres. tense*, 252; — with *dur asp.*, 303.  
**difficult** *fol. by act or pas. inf.*, 457, 459.  
**digest** in *pas. mean.*, 65.  
**dight** as *isolated form*, 599 *f*.  
**dine** in *caus. mean.*, 72: — kept in *pres. tense*, 252; — in *Expanded Form*, 335.  
**diner-out**, 701.  
**dint** in *group-prep.*, 723.  
**dirty** in *adv. funct.*, 633.  
**disappoint** in *verbal phrase*, 115.  
**discontinue** with *dur. asp.*, 305.  
**discover** *furn. with refl. pron.*, 156.  
**discussion** in *under discussion*, 347, 544.  
**disdained** *equiv. to disdaining*, 548.  
**dislike** *constr. with var. prep.*, 760 *f*.  
**dismiss** in *pas. voice*, 127, 129 *f*; — *gov. two non-prep. obj.*, 128; — *absorb. refl. pron.*, 152.  
**dispute** (*v*) in *pas. voice*, 181.  
**dispute** (*n*) in *in dispute*, 542.  
**dissipated** in *pecul. applic.*, 546.  
**dissolve** *absorb. refl. pron.*, 152.  
**distinction** in *group-prep.*, 723.  
**distraught** as *adj.* *part.*, 579.  
**do** as *verb of incompl. pred.*, 18; — *fol. by inf.*, 21; — *fol. by noun of act. or ger.*, 22; — *absorb. obj.*, 62; — + *prep. in pas. voice*, 117; — *not constr. with to*, 127; — in *pas. voice*, 131; — in *imper. sent.*, 201; — *con. with various nouns*, 397; — with (*pro*)*noun* (+ *to*) + *inf.*, 429; — *fol. by but (or except)* (+ *to*) + *inf.*, 433 *f*; — in *act. inf. with pas. mean.*, 450, 454, 456; — as *irreg. verb*, 568, 595.  
**do away** + *prep. in pas. voice*, 117.  
**dog** in *comp.*, 660.  
**doing** as *act. part. with pas. mean.*, 67, 519 *f*, 521.  
**domineer** *absorb. compl.*, 63.  
**double** as *pred. adn. adj.*, 628; — in *comp.*, 636.  
**doubt** (*n*) in *adv. phrase*, 691.  
**down** (*adv.*) *assisting ingressiveness*, 296; — in *pred. funct.*, 703; — as *verb*, 703; — in *group-prep.*, 750.  
**down** (*prep.*) as *significant prep.*, 759.  
**downright** in *subst. funct.*, 704.  
**down-stairs** *comp. with down the stairs*, 288.  
**down-toner**, 702.  
**down-tools** as *verb*, 705.  
**draw clear**, — **up** *absorb. refl. pron.*, 149, 152.  
**dread** *den. acces. not. of attrib.*, 20, 37, 681.  
**dream** *furn. with cogn. obj.*, 76; — *furn. with effect. obj.*, 82.  
**drench** as *caus. trans.*, 74.  
**dress** (*v*) *absorb. refl. pron.*, 151.  
**drill** (*v*) *absorb. refl. pron.*, 152.  
**drill** (*n*) in *upon drill*, 347, 544.  
**drink** (*v*) *constr. with and without to*, 51; — *absorb. obj.*, 59; — with *termin. asp.*, 300; — *dif. conjug.*, 579.  
**drink** (*n*) *on the drink*, 543.  
**drive** (*v*) as *intrans.*, 66.

- drop** (v) in caus. mean., 71; — adm. of no second. pas. conv., 129.  
**dropwise** as adv., 648.  
**drown** in pas. voice, 102.  
**drunk** in act. mean., 549.  
**drunken** as adjunct. part., 529; — mod. dif. nouns, 532; — in act. mean., 549.  
**due** in *to be due* with dif. subj., 377.  
**during** in prep. funct., 538, 713.  
**durst** as cond., 171, 417; — fol. by perf. inf., 442.  
**Dutch** in *Dutch built*, 630.
- e** as adv. suf., 631.  
**early** (adj.) den. adv. not., 682; — in adv. adjunct, 685.  
**early days** as adv. gen., 611.  
**earn** in caus. mean., 75.  
**easily** fol. by pas. inf., 459.  
**east** in group-prep., 718  
**eastward(s)** id., 718.  
**easy** fol. by act. or pas. inf., 458, 459; — in comp., 636.  
**eat** in pas. mean., 65 f.  
**ed** as suf. of adj., 558 ff, 767 f, 771; — as verb. suf., 569, 599; — suppressed, 599.  
**edge-tool** var. with *edged-tool*, 562.  
**effect** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**eftsoons** as adv. gen., 611.  
**either** as adv. adjunct., 664.  
**else** as disguised gen., 618.  
**elseways** as adv. gen., 614.  
**emerald** in comp., 659.  
**employ** (v) comp. with *to engage*, 289; — with ingres. asp., 295,  
**employed** in *to be employed in*, 347, 545.  
**en** suffix forming ingres. verbs, 287 f.  
**enable** in double pas. constr., 463.  
**encounter** (v) fol. by recipr. pron., 153.  
**endlong** as adv. or adjunct., 645.  
**endwise** as adv., 648.  
**endure** absorb. obj., 61 f.  
**engage** absorb. refl. pron., 147, 151; — comp. with *to employ*, 289.  
**engaged** absorb. prep. + recipr. pron., 155; — in *to be engaged in*, 347, 381, 545.  
**enjoy** constr. with *of*, 50; — cor. to French intrans., 53.  
**enlarge** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**enlist** with var. constr., 788.  
**enough** in adv. phrase, 690; — fol. by part. *of*, 762.  
**enough** + *of* den. adv. not., 689.  
**enroll** in pas. voice, 135; — furn. with refl. pron., 156.  
**enter** as caus. verb, 71; — absorb. prep., 83.  
**entrust** with dif. obj., 378.  
**envy** (v) in Expand. Form, 342.  
**equal** den. adv. not., 683.  
**er** suf. form. iter. verbs, 289.  
**ere** (conj.) fol. by subj., 183.  
**ere** (adv.) in adnom. funct., 701.  
**es** form. adv. gen., 610 ff.  
**escape** (v) gov. act. ger. with pas. mean., 67; — absorb. prep., 83; — in pas. voice, 84, 113.  
**eve** in group-prep., 246.  
**even now** con. with pret. or perf. tense, 263.  
**event** in group-prep., 723.  
**ever** in concess. cl., 196; — con. with perf. or pret. tense, 257, 262 f; — before *since*, 272.  
**ever so** = *never so*, 678.  
**every** in adv. adjunct., 660; — in adv. phrase, 704.  
**every-day** in adjunct. funct., 698, 703.  
**evident** den. adv. not., 683.  
**exceeding** as intens., 537 f.  
**except** (conj.) fol. by subj., 189; — before (*to* +) inf., 433 f.  
**except** (prep.) in form an imper., 202, 710; — equiv. to *excepting* and *excepted*, 538, 710; — form. unit with *for*, 752, 754; — fol. by prep.-group, 792.  
**excepting** in prep. funct., 712.  
**exception** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**exchange** in pas. mean., 65.  
**exclusive** den. adv. not., 682; — in group-prep., 733.

- exclusively** in group-prep., 733.  
**excuse** (v) adm. of no. prim. pas. conv., 130; — fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 489 *f*; — constr. with *for* or *from*, 679.  
**exhaust** furn. with refl. pron., 157.  
**exhibit** absorb. obj., 59.  
**exhibition** in *on exhibition*, 544.  
**exist** comp. with *to subsist*, 289; — with ingres. asp., 295.  
**existing** equiv. to *existent*, 530.  
**expectation** in verbal phrases, 115; — in *in expectation*, 346, 542.  
**expected** fol. by perf. inf., 444.  
**expel** in pas. voice, 127; — gov. two non-prep. obj., 128.  
**explain** absorb. obj., 60.  
**expropriate** with dif. obj., 382.  
**extend** with and without refl. pron., 149.
- face** (n) in group-prep., 723 *f*, 756.  
**facetious** den. adv. not., 685.  
**facing** in prep. funct., 711, 714.  
**faded** mod. dif. nouns, 532.  
**fail** negat. pred., 19, 680; — gov. compl. without prep., 46; — as trans. verb, 50; — absorb. obj., 60; — in caus. mean., 70; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109; — with dif. subj., 375.  
**failing** in prep. funct., 538, 713.  
**fair** in adv. funct., 642.  
**faith** in verbal phrases, 122.  
**fall** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 298, 681; — in caus. mean., 70; — fol. by pres. part., 348; — fol. by pas. inf., 448, 455; — gov. var. constr., 525 *f*; — fol. by adv. or adjunct., 624 *f*; — fol. by *for dead*, 789.  
**falling** in *falling-sickness*, 557.  
**false** in substant. funct., 49; in adv. funct., 642.  
**famish** with dur. asp., 303.  
**far away**, - **off** in adj. funct., 698.  
**fare** (v) as impers. and pers. verb, 357.  
**fashion** as adv. format., 649 *f*; — dispensing with *in*, 803.
- fast** (adv.) mod. *by*, 692, 740.  
**fast and loose** con. with *to play*, 806.  
**fasten** absorb. refl. pron., 152.  
**fastly** used for metr. reasons, 632.  
**fatigued** equiv. to *fatiguing*, 548.  
**fatten** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**fault** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**favour** (n) in group-prep., 38, 717.  
**favour** (v) absorb. obj., 62.  
**fear** (v) den. acces. not. of attr., 19, 37, 681; — den. psych. disp., 23; — in caus. mean., 70; — in Expanded Form, 342.  
**feast** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55; — in caus. mean., 70.  
**feed** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 152.  
**feed** (n) in *at feed*, 541.  
**feed down** in pas. voice, 114.  
**feel** den. sense-impression, 56 *f*; — as trans. and intrans., 56 *f*; — absorb. obj., 60; — replacing *to be*, 340; — in Expanded Form, 340 *f*; — with dif. subj., 381.  
**feet** in phrases, 299; — in comp. adjunct., 563.  
**fel'** as caus. trans., 74.  
**fetch** comp. with *to bring*, 288.  
**fidget** in caus. mean., 73.  
**fight** (v) furn. with cogn. obj., 47, 76 *f*, 78; — in pas. voice, 77 *f*, 112; — in *to fight shy*, 340.  
**fight** (n) in *in the fight*, 346.  
**fight out** as trans., 87.  
**fill** as trans. and intrans., 55; — absorb. refl. pron., 149, 523; — pas. in mean., 158; — as ingres. verb, 288.  
**find** in verbal phrase, 119 *f*; — with second. pas. conv., 129; — with term. dur. asp., 302; — in Expanded Form, 341; — with (pro)noun (+ *to*) + inf., 427.  
**find out** with term. dur. asp., 302; — with dur. asp., 305.  
**fine** (adj.) fol. by *and* + adjunct., 640.  
**fire** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**the first** + *of* den. adv. not., 689.  
**first-hand** in pred. funct., 703.  
**the first place**, - **thing** den. adv. not., 660.



- fish** (v) in pas. mean., 65.
- fit** (adj.) fol. by act. or pas. inf., 460, *f*; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.
- fix** (v) absorb. obj., 60; — with dif. obj., 378.
- fixed** as adj. part., 545.
- flash** (v) den. mode of uttering, 80; — furn. with effect. obj., 82; — adm. of no second. pas. conv., 129.
- flatling**, -long as adv., 645.
- flatter** constr. with *with*, 50 *f*.
- flee** as trans. and intrans., 51; — absorb. prep., 83; — not adm. of pas. conv., 113.
- fling** in pas. voice, 131.
- flight** in *in flight*, 542.
- float** in caus. mean., 68; — with contin. asp., 307.
- fluent** mod. agent-noun, 684.
- flush** furn. with cogn. obj., 76.
- flutter** in *in* (or *of*) *a flutter*, 543.
- fly** as trans. and intrans., 51; — in caus. mean., 71; — absorb. prep., 83, 805; — not adm. of pas. conv., 113; — in dif. mean., 579.
- flying** mod. dif. nouns, 531.
- fly away** in pas. voice, 111.
- fly out** + prep. in pas. voice, 118.
- fold** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 152.
- follow** in caus. mean., 72.
- following** before or after noun, 533; — in prep. funct., 712, 714.
- follow up** in caus. mean., 72.
- fond** req. compl., 37.
- foolish-like** as adv., 650.
- for** in pred. adn. adjunct, 18; — as substit. for infl., 29, 774; — no constituent of prep. obj., 29 *f*, 129; — in idle wish, 168; — before *to* + inf., 405 *f*, 790, 795; — + (pro)noun suggested by context, 453 *f*; — + (pro)noun before act. inf., 457, 460, 496 *f*, 775 *ff*; — before act. ger. with pas. mean., 480; — in group-prep., 717, 753; — not used as adv., 610, 806; — equiv. to *as for*, 754; — equiv. to *intended for*, 759; — of mainly constructional value, 761; — varying with *to*, 772 *f*, 774 *f*, 793; — ousting other prep. before inf., 775 *f*, 784 *f*; — as inorganic prep., 780; — den. purpose, 782 *ff*; — + pers. pron. = abs. pos. pron., 787; — with the value of an adj. + prep., 786 *f*; — varying with *as*, 787 *ff*, 819; — before opprobrious names, 789 *f*.
- forbear** as trans. and intrans., 51.
- forbidding** as adj. part., 530.
- force** (v) with double pas., 463.
- force** (n) in *of force*, 619; — in group-prep., 724.
- forecast** (v) conj. regul., 577.
- foreign** in *foreign-going*, 540; — in *foreign-manufactured*, 630.
- foreign-fashion** as adv., 650.
- forever** con. with Expanded Form, 308.
- for fear (that)** fol. by *may*, *might* or *should*, 187.
- forfeit** (v) with dif. obj., 382.
- forget** absorb. obj., 60; — with dur. asp., 302 *f*, 306; — in Expanded Form, 343.
- forgive** not constr. with *to*, 127; — with dur. asp., 306.
- former** in *in former times*, 257, 261 *f*.
- formerly** con. with perf. tense, 257, 261 *f*.
- form up** absorb. refl. pron., 152.
- forsake** with dur. asp., 305.
- for shame** furn. with compl., 830.
- forswear** with dur. asp., 305.
- forswear oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 144.
- forth** in adv. comp., 656; — in group-prep., 750; — as prep., 752.
- forward** as adv. or adj., 613; — in adv. comp., 656.
- frankly** as intens., 695.
- fraught** as adj. part., 580.
- freeze** as trans. verb, 72; — in pas. voice, 103.
- French-fashion** as adv., 650.
- frequent** den. adv. not., 682.
- fresh** in comp., 636.
- frightened** constr. with *of*, 95 *f*; — constr. with *at*, 96.

- fro** in *to and fro*, 607, 700, 756; — in *fro and to*, 756.
- from** in adv. adj., 271 *f*; — not used as adv., 610, 806; — in group-prep., 717; — in prep. sequences, 752; — as significant prep., 753; — dispensed with, 803.
- front** in group-prep., 724, 808.
- frown** (v) den. mode of uttering, 81.
- full** in comp., 638.
- fulfil** in verbal phrase, 115.
- full-dress** as base of adj. in *ed*, 638.
- full-face** in adv. funct., 658.
- full-summer** in adv. funct., 659.
- fun** in verbal phrases, 119.
- further than** with *to* + inf., 436.
- gainsay** in pas. voice, 131.
- gallows** in comp., 660.
- gamble** (n) in *on the gamble*, 543.
- game** (n) in verbal phrase, 119.
- gather** in verbal phrase, 115; — with dur. asp., 306.
- gaze** (v) furn. with quasi-obj., 81.
- gaze** (n) in *at gaze*, 542.
- ge** as pref., 299 *f*.
- gee** as name of a horse, 831.
- get** as quasi-aux. of pas. voice, 13, 99 *f*; — as aux. of asp. 19, 37, 297, 681; — fol. by *the better (rid)* + *of*, 122; — with and without refl. pron., 149 *f*; — fol. by pres. part., 348; — dif. conj., 580.
- get-at-able** as nonce-form., 137.
- get back** kept in pres. tense, 251.
- ghost-like** as adv., 651.
- gild** dif. conjg., 580.
- give** fol. by noun of act., 22; — absorb. obj., 63; — in verbal phrases, 118 *f*, 122; — fol. by *to understand* or *to know*, 125; — in pas. voice, 127 *f*, 133 *f*; — oppos. to *to receive*, 139; — kept in pres. tense, 252; — in Expanded Form, 335; — in *to give a hug*, 395; — con. with various nouns, 398; — constr. with *for* 789.
- given** in *to be given to*, 337; — in prep. funct., 715.
- give over** with dur. asp., 306; — constr. with *for*, 789.
- give up** with dur. asp., 305; — constr. with *for*, 789.
- glad** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 785.
- glance** (v) in caus. mean., 73.
- gnash** with dif. subj., 375.
- gnaw** con. with *through*, 87.
- go** as verb of incompl. pred., 18; — as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 298 *f*, 681; — in *to go in search of*, 20; — absorb. compl., 63; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85, 805; — con. with *through*, 88; — + prep. in pas. voice, 123; — kept in pres. tense, 251, 336; — with mixed asp., 305; — in Expanded Form, 335, 340; — with bare inf., 425 *f*, 525, 774; — gov. var. constr., 525 *f*.
- go in for** in Expanded Form, 335.
- going** in *to be going* 244 *f*, 441, 470.
- golden** in adv. funct., 633.
- gone** in prep. funct., 715.
- go near** fol. by *to* + ger., 743.
- go off** with ingres. asp., 299.
- go on** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 307, 309.
- good** in *had as good*, 424.
- good-humour** as base of adj. in *ed*, 560.
- good-nature** id., 560.
- gone** in adv. funct., 658.
- gorge** absorb. refl. pron., 151.
- got** in *(I) have got*, 211.
- govern** in Expanded Form, 330.
- grace** (n) conv. into verb, 79.
- grant** in pas. voice, 128, 133; — in *God (Heaven) grant*, 175.
- grasping** as adj. part., 535.
- grave** (v) dif. conjg., 581.
- graze** in caus. mean., 68; — in pas. voice, 74.
- great-coat** as base of adj. in *ed*, 638.
- Great Heavens** as interj., 829.
- green** fol. by *and* + *pale*, 640.
- grey** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55.
- grieve** with dif. subj., 360.

- grind** absorb. obj., 62; — dif. conjug., 581.
- ground** (v) equiv. to *grinding*, 548.
- grovelling** as adv. and part., 645 *f*.
- grow** as quasi-aux. of pas. voice, 14, 99 *f*; — as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 298, 681; — in caus. mean., 71; — form. perf. tenses with *to be*, 216; — with contin. asp., 307; — in *to grow overcast*, 388.
- grown-up** as comp., 556.
- guarantee** (v) in pas. voice, 131.
- guard** (n) in verbal phrase, 115.
- guess** as verb of incompl. pred., 18; — with var. constr., 788.
- guiled** equiv. to *guiling*, 548.
- habit** in *to have a habit of*, 337.
- had** in *had rather*, etc., 20, 27, 171, 363, 422 *ff*, 443, 773; — in *I had almost said (or written)*, 173; — in *I had thought (or dreamed)*, 173.
- hail** (v) with var. constr., 788.
- half** in comp. adjunct. in *ed*, 560.
- half-seas-over** as adv. gen., 616.
- hallo(o)** as interj., 830.
- halt** (v) in Unexpand. Form, 323.
- hand** (v) in pas. voice, 131.
- hand** (n) in group-prep., 720, 725, 756; — in (*at*) *first (second, etc.) hand*, 802 *f*.
- hang** in caus. mean., 68, 353; — with dif. obj., 378; — dif. conjug., 582; — in interjectional phrase, 829, 830.
- hanger-on**, 701 *f*.
- hang over** = *overhang*, 89.
- happen** as adv. verb, 19, 36, 46, 680; — kept in pres. tense, 253; — with dif. subj., 368 *ff*; — in perf. tenses, 371; — con. with *not*, 371.
- happen** in adv. funct., 680 *f*.
- haphazard** id., 658.
- hard** (adj.) fol. by act. or pas. inf., 458, 459.
- hard** (adv.) in comp., 636; — mod. *by*, 692, 740.
- harden** as trans. and intrans., 55.
- hardest** mod. agent-noun, 685.
- hardly** con. with pluperf. tense, 280 *f*; — fol. by pas. inf., 459.
- harmony** in *in harmony with*, 38.
- hasten** as trans. and intrans., 55; — cor. to Dutch refl. verb, 144.
- hatch** in pas. mean., 64; — absorb. refl. pron., 152; — fol. by *eggs*, 288.
- hate** den. acces. not. of attrib., 20, 37, 681; — in Expanded Form, 342.
- have** as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — fol. by noun of act., 22; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 37; — (not) admit. of pas. conv., 109; — in verbal phrases, 119, 121, 295; — + (pro)noun + past part. as substit. for pas. voice, 136; — form. perf. tenses, 214 *ff*; its unstressed nature, 217; — suppressed, 217, 447; with ingres. asp., 295; — in Expanded Form, 343; — with dif. subj. and obj., 353, 374; — con. with various nouns, 398 *f*; — with (pro)noun + (*to*) + inf., 428 *f*; — with (pro)noun + *to* + noun, 773.
- haw** (interj.) conv. into verb, 831.
- headlong** as adv. or adjunct., 646.
- heap** (v) with dif. obj., 378 *f*.
- hear** den. sense-impression, 23; — absorb. obj., 60 *f*; — as act. inf. with pas. mean., 67; — with two obj., 126; — in pres. instead of perf. tense, 254; — in Expanded Form, 341; — with (pro)noun (+ *to*) + inf., 427; — in *hear say (or tell)*, 428.
- heart** in verbal phrases, 115; — in *in one's heart of hearts*, 767.
- heave** in verbal phrase, 115; — dif. conjug., 582.
- heavy** in comp., 636; — mod. agent-noun, 685.
- head** in verbal phrases, 118 *f*.
- heighten** as trans. and intrans., 55.
- help** (v) with bare inf., 425 *ff*, 774; — in *cannot help but* + inf., 433; — in *can(not) help*, 679.
- help** (n) in group-prep., 725.
- hem** (interj.) conv. into verb, 831.

- hence** as disguised gen., 618; — as pron. adv., 653.  
**henceforward, -forth** as pron. adv., 657.  
**here** in subst. funct., 49, 654, 703.  
**here** in adnom. funct., 701.  
**hereafter** in subst. funct., 704.  
**hereby** as pron. adv., 654.  
**herein** as pron. adv., 654.  
**heretofore** id., 653 *f*.  
**hereupon** id., 654.  
**herewith** as pron. adv., 655; — in adnom. funct., 700.  
**hide** with and without refl. pron., 148; — with dur. asp., 304.  
**high** comp. with *highly*, 628; — in comp., 636, 638.  
**high-up** in adnom. funct., 699.  
**hight** as isol. verb. form, 600.  
**hither** as pron. adv., 652.  
**hitherto** id., 656.  
**hit it off** with dur. asp., 304.  
**hoist** in verbal phrase, 115.  
**hold** (n) id., 119.  
**hold** (v) with ingres. asp., 295; — dif. conjug., 582; — with var. constr., 788; — as interj., 829.  
**hold back** absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**holy** in *the Holy of Holies*, 767.  
**home** in adv. funct., 657.  
**home-comer**, 702.  
**honour** (n) in *to do honour*, 395.  
**Hookey Walker** as interj., 830.  
**hope** (v) den. acces. not. of attrib., 19, 37, 681; — den. psych. disp., 23; — implying fut., 247; — in Expanded Form, 342; — indic. fut. instead of fol. inf., 441 *f*.  
**hover** + prep. in pas. voice, 123.  
**how** in subst. funct., 704.  
**howbeit** as conj. word-group, 817.  
**however** as intens., 672.  
**huddle** in trans. group-verb, 87.  
**hum** (interj.) conv. into verb, 831.  
**hung** equiv. to *hanging*, 548.  
**hunger** as verb, 354.  
**hunting** after *to go (out)*, 525.  
**hurry** (v) in caus. mean., 69; — cor. to Dutch refl. verb, 144.  
**hurt** (v) with dif. subj., 352 *f*, 381.  
**hush** (interj.) conv. into verb, noun or adj., 831.  
**i'** instead of *in*, 710, 798.  
**ible** as suf. form. adj. with pas. mean., 136 *ff*.  
**ice** in *ice-cold*, 633.  
**icily** in *icily cold*, 633.  
**iclept** as isol. verb. form, 601.  
**icy** in *icy-cold*, 633.  
**I dare say** as adv. phrase, 234, 691.  
**if** in cl. den. idle wish, 168, 176, 194; — fol. by subj., 188; — fol. by cond., 191; — fol. by *shall*, 190; — fol. by *should* or *were to*, 191 *f*.  
**ill** in comp. adj. in *ed*, 560 *f*.  
**imagine** fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 486.  
**imagined** equiv. to *imaginable*, 549.  
**immediate** den. adv. not., 682.  
**impatient** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.  
**importance** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**imploring** as adj. part., 535.  
**impose** form. group-verb with prep., 33, 35; — + (*up*)*on* = *to deceive*, 53, 115; — in pas. voice, 117.  
**imprison** with dur. asp., 304.  
**in** as adv. and prep., 38, 607, 709, 806; — after pas. voice, 97 *f*; — + noun of action equiv. to pres. part., 138; — suppressed, 501; — before verbal in *ing*, 502, 523 *ff*; — before noun of action, 524, 542; — in part. equiv., 542 *f*; — before word-groups with *wise* (or *fashion*), 649 *f*; — in adnom. funct., 698; — in subst. funct., 704; — eliding cons., 710; — in group-prep., 716; fol. by *at*, 748, 751; — ousted by *for* before inf., 775; — dispensed with, 803; — used absolutely, 807.  
**in a fidget** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.  
**in a hurry** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.  
**in at** not a group-prep., 748.

- in between** as prep. sequence, 753;  
 — in adv. funct., 807 *f*; — conv.  
 into noun, 808.  
**inchmeal** as adv., 647.  
**increase** (n) in *on the increase*, 543.  
**independent(ly)** in group-prep., 733.  
**indicated** before or after noun, 533.  
**indifferent** in *to be indifferent* with  
 dif. subj., 377.  
**in-door(s)** in adnom. funct., 700 *f*.  
**in from** as prep. sequence, 753.  
**inhabit** as intrans., 51.  
**injured** before or after noun, 533.  
**inly** as variant of *inwardly*, 622.  
**inside** in adnom. funct., 698; — of  
 uncertain gram. status, 703; — in  
 subst. funct., 704; — as part of  
 group-prep., 746; — dispensing  
 with *of*, 746, 801.  
**inspire** with dif. obj., 379.  
**instance** in group-prep., 725.  
**instant** (adj.) den. adv. not., 682.  
**instant** (n) dispensing with *at*, 802.  
**intend** den. acces. not. of attrib., 37,  
 681; — with dif. constr., 178; —  
 implying fut., 247.  
**intended** fol. by perf. inf., 441, 444.  
**intending** in pecul. applic., 535.  
**inter** as pref. den. recipr. not., 156.  
**interchange** with recipr. mean., 156.  
**interdict** in pas. voice, 132.  
**interested** before or after noun, 533.  
**intermarry** with recipr. mean., 156.  
**into** as group-prep., 747.  
**in to** thought of separately, 748.  
**intoxicate oneself** as nec. refl. verb,  
 145.  
**introduction** absorb. prep. + recipr.  
 pronoun, 156.  
**intrust** with dif. obj., 378.  
**inversely** in group-prep., 734.  
**invitation** in group-prep., 725.  
**invited** before or after noun, 533.  
**in wait** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf.,  
 784.  
**irrespective** in group-prep., 734.  
**issue** (v) in caus. mean., 70; — in  
 Expanded Form, 335.  
**it** as subj. of impers. or quasi-impers.  
 pred., 8, 354 *ff*, 492; — as quasi-  
 obj., 45, 108; — not conv. into inv.  
 obj., 108; — subj. of pas. sent.,  
 108; — as non-pers. pron., 354;  
 — dispensed with, 354 *f*; — repres.  
 inf. whose obj. precedes, 364 *ff*;  
 repres. inf. whose obj. is *which*,  
*that* or *what*, 365 *f*; — antic. ger.  
 cl., 492; — antic. *for*-adj. + inf.,  
 778.  
**it is** as introd. phrase, 269, 275, 282.  
**its** before ger., 472.  
**ivory** in comp., 633, 659.  
**jar** as trans. and intrans., 51.  
**Jerichowise** as adv., 648.  
**join** in verbal phrases, 115, 122.  
**jolly** as adv., 634.  
**jot** in neg. phrase, 676.  
**jump** constr. with and without *over*,  
 51; — in caus. mean., 69; — in  
 adv. funct., 657.  
**just** con. with perf. tense, 263; —  
 con. with Expanded Form, 327.  
**just now** con. with pret. or perf.  
 tense, 263 *f*.  
**keep** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 307; —  
 in pas. mean., 65; — in verbal  
 phrases, 115, 122, 130; — absorb.  
 refl. pron., 150 *f*.  
**keep on** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 307.  
**kind of** in adverb. funct., 661.  
**kindle** absorb. refl. pron., 152.  
**kiss** (v) absorb. recipr. pron., 154.  
**knack** in *to have a knack of*, 309, 337.  
**kneel** dif. conjug., 582.  
**knit** id., 582 *f*.  
**knock** (v) + prep. in pas. voice, 123.  
**knocker-up**, 702.  
**know** in *to know better*, 62, 436; —  
 (not) adm. of pas. conv., 110; —  
 with ingres. asp., 295; — with  
 (pro)noun + (*to*) + inf., 427 *f*; —  
 with var. constr., 789.  
**known** fol. by *to* or *by* 553; — as  
 adjunct. part., 545.  
**knowing** as adjunct. part., 535.  
**knowledge** of variable asp., 313.

- lack** (v) not cap. of pas. conv., 110.  
**lack** (n) in group-prep., 725.  
**lacking** constr. with *in*, 536.  
**lade** dif. conjug., 583.  
**lame** mod. by *of*-adj., 771.  
**lance-fashion** as adv., 650.  
**last** (v) gov. compl. without prep., 46;  
 — in trans. group-verb, 86; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109.  
**last** (adj.) with cogn. obj. understood, 79; — fol. by part. *of*, 766;  
 — + *of* den. adv. not., 689; — dispensing with *on*, 804.  
**last night** instead of *the night before*, 207.  
**the last thing** as adv. adj., 660.  
**late** con. with dif. tenses, 264, 266;  
 — in *of late*, 264 ff; — den. adv. not., 682.  
**lately** con. with dif. tenses, 264 f; — in subst. funct., 703.  
**late(r)** in word-groups, 266 f.  
**latter** id., 267.  
**latterly** con. with perf. tense, 266.  
**laugh** (v) den. mode of uttering, 28, 80 f; — form. un. with prep., 33;  
 — + *at* = *deride*, 53, 115; — furn. with cogn. obj., 77; — in trans. group-verb, 86; — with contin. asp., 307; with dif. obj., 353.  
**laugh** (n) in *on the laugh*, 543.  
**lay** absorb. obj., 60; — as caus. trans., 74 f; — in verbal phrases, 119;  
 — kept in pres. tense, 253; — with dif. obj., 382.  
**lay on** absorb. obj., 60.  
**le** suf. form. iter. verbs, 289.  
**lead** in caus. mean., 7, 75, 353; — as caus. in pas. voice, 75.  
**lead up** + prep. in pas. voice, 117.  
**lean** in caus. mean., 72 f; — not adm. of pas. conv., 111; — dif. conjug., 583.  
**leap** (v) dif. conjug., 583.  
**leap** + prep. in pas. voice, 32, 123.  
**learn** absorb. obj., 60; — in pres. instead of perf. tense, 254; — with ingres. asp., 295; — in *to learn better than* + *to* + *inf.*, 436; — dif. conjug., 583.  
**learned** mod. dif. nouns, 532; — in act. mean., 549; — gov. prep. obj., 553.  
**least** in neg. phrase, 676, 803.  
**leastways** as adv. gen., 614.  
**leastwise** as adv., 649.  
**leave** (v) absorb. obj. 60; — in *to be left (behind)*, 102; — in verbal phrase, 119; — in pas. voice, 132;  
 — kept in pres. tense, 251; — with dur. asp., 304, 305 f; — in double passive constr., 462 f; — fol. by *for dead*, 789.  
**leave** (n) in verbal phrase, 115;  
 — constr. with *for*-adj. + *inf.*, 785;  
 — in *by (or with) your leave*, 799.  
**leaving aside**, — **on one side** in prep. funct., 538, 721, 713.  
**lend** oppos. to *to borrow*, 139.  
**length** dispensing with *of*, 800.  
**lengthen** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**lengthwise** as adv., 648.  
**less** as suffix form. adj. with pas. mean., 137.  
**less** (adj) + *than* in prep. funct., 734.  
**lessen** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**lest** fol. by subj., 181, 185; — fol. by *should*, *might* or *may*, 181, 186.  
**let** as mod. aux., 10, 20, 163; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 680; — in pas. mean., 64 f, 450; — in caus. mean., 74; — in hortative sent., 170.  
**let(ting) alone** in prep. funct., 711, 715.  
**let off** kept in pres. tense, 252.  
**levy** (v) with dif. obj. 382.  
**liable** in *to be liable to*, 337.  
**liberal** as adv., 659.  
**lie** with pred. adn. adj., 85; — + prep. in pas. voice, 123; — with ingres. asp., 295; — with contin. asp., 307;  
 — in Unexpanded Form, 322; — fol. by pres. part., 347 f, 531; — fol. by adject. or adv., 630; — fol. by *for dead*, 789.  
**lie down** with ingres. asp., 296; — furn. with refl. pron., 297.  
**lief** (or *lieve*) in *had as lief* (or *lieve*), 424.

- liefer** (or **liever**) in *had liefer* (or *liever*), 423.
- lieu** in group-prep., 725 *f*.
- life** with contin. asp., 307.
- lift** (v) with dur. asp., 304.
- light** (v) dif. conj., 583.
- light** in adv. funct., 638, 642.
- lightning-like** in adv. funct., 651.
- like**, (v) den. acces. not. of attr., 20, 37, 681; — den. psych. disp., 23; — in Expanded Form, 342; — with dif. subj., 351, 359, 361; — in *should* (or *would*) *like* + perf. inf., 444; — fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 488; — fol. by (pro)noun + past part., 522; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 778.
- like** (adj., adv. or prep.) req. compl., 38; — absorb. prep. + recipr. pron., 155; — in *had* (or *was*) *like* + *to* + perf. inf., 443; — as adv. and adject. format., 650 *ff*; — equiv. to *as it were*, 651; — in various gram. funct., 703, 734 *ff*; — comp. with significant prep., 738; — transposed 738, 819; — mod. by intens., 738; — in degrees of comparison, 738 *f*; — consid. as prep., 738, 759; — constr. with and without (*un*)*to*, 739, 805; — originally an adject., 816.
- likely** in *to be likely*, 248 *f*, 371 *f*, 688.
- like mad** instead of *mad-like*, 651.
- limbmeal** as adv., 647.
- limited** in pecul. applic., 547.
- ling** as adv. suf., 644 *ff*.
- linger** in caus. mean., 70.
- lining** in prep. funct., 712.
- lion-like** in adv. funct., 651.
- list** (v) with dif. subj., 361.
- listen** form. unit with prep., 33, 36; — constr. without prep., 50; — + prep. cor. to French trans., 54, 116.
- little** + *of* den. adv. not., 689.
- a little** in adv. funct., 664 *f*.
- live** as verb of incompl. pred., 18; — furn. with cogn. obj., 47, 79; — in trans. group-verb, 86; — in pas. voice, 112; — with contin. asp., 307; — in Unexpanded Form, 322; — in Expanded Form, 330; — fol. by adject. or adv., 627.
- living** before or after noun, 533; — conv. into noun, 537.
- live out** furn. with cogn. obj., 80.
- lock** (v) in pas. mean., 65.
- lock up** absorb. obj., 60.
- long** (v) in Expanded Form, 342; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.
- long** (adj.) in comp. adject., 563.
- long ago** in adject. funct., 699; — in substant. funct., 704.
- longer** mod. agent-noun, 685.
- longwise** as adv., 648.
- look** (v) den. mode of uttering, 47 *f*, 80 *f*; — constr. without prep., 50; — in trans. group-verb, 87; — not adm. of pas. conv., 114; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117, 123; — as imper., 202; — of variable asp., 291; — as quasi-cop., 340; — in Expanded Form, 340; — fol. by adject. or adv., 624 *ff*; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.
- look down** + prep. in pas. voice, 118.
- looking** in comp., 540.
- looker-on** = *onlooker*, 702.
- look-out** (n) in *on the look-out*, 543.
- lorn** in *love-lorn* and *forlorn*, 584.
- lose** in caus. mean., 75; — in con. which is convert. into ac. + pas. inf., 75; — in verbal phrases, 115, 134; — with dur. asp., 304; — in act. inf. with pas. mean., 454.
- to lose oneself** cor. to Dutch intrans., 144.
- loudest** with cogn. obj. underst., 79.
- love** (v) with ingres. asp., 295; — in Expanded Form, 342.
- low** in adv. funct., 642.
- lower** in verbal phrase, 115.
- lowly** in adv. funct., 634, 642.
- lunch** (v) in Expanded Form, 335.
- ly** as adv. suf., 620 *ff*; — suppressed, 632 *ff*; — as adject. suf., 622, 623 *f*.
- main** fol. by *and* + adject., 640.

- maintain** of cont. dur. asp., 289.
- make** as verb of incompl. pred., 18;  
— fol. by noun of act., 22; — approaching to cop., 46 *f*, 110; — not cap. of pas. conv., 110; — in verbal phrases 115, 118 *f*, 121, 122; — con. with various nouns, 399; — with (pro)noun (+ *to*) + inf., 430; — in *make believe*, 430; — in act. inf. with pas. mean., 454.
- make away** + prep. in pas. voice, 118.
- make fast** absorb. refl. pron., 151.
- making** as act. part. with pas. mean., 67.
- man** (or **men**) suggested by cont., 768.
- manage** absorb. obj., 62.
- man alive** as interj., 829.
- manifest** in refl. voice, 135.
- many** in comp., 541, 562 *f*.
- march** (v) in caus. mean., 69; — in pas. voice, 74, 111.
- march** (n) in *on the march*, 543.
- marriage** of variable asp., 313.
- marry** in caus. mean., 71; — in pas. voice, 103 *f*; — absorb. recipr. pron., 154; — kept in pres. tense, 252.
- marvel** (v) with dif. subj., 361.
- matter** (v) as impers. and pers. verb, 357 *f*.
- matter** (n) in adv. phrase, 660 *f*, 690, 754; — in group-prep., 756; — suggested by cont., 768.
- maugre** as prep., 710, 806.
- may** as mod. verb 10, 161, 168, 174, 175, 177, 181, 186, 187, 188, 195; — as verb of incompl. pred. 19; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 680; — den. potential capability, 187; — varying with imperative, 200; — as pret. pres. verb, 211, 595; con. with Expanded Inf., 328.
- may-be** in adv. funct., 648.
- may-hap(pen)** id., 648.
- me** as eth. dat., 29, 79.
- meal** as adv. suf., 646 *f*.
- mean** (v) den. acces. not of attr., 19, 37, 681; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.
- means** in neg. phrase, 676.
- meditated** in pecul. applic., 547.
- meet** (v) with and without recipr. pron., 153 *f*; — kept in pres. tense, 251; — with dif. subj., 375.
- melt** considered as caus. verb, 23, 71; — dif. conjug., 584.
- member(s)** suggested by cont., 764, 768.
- mend** as intrans., 67.
- mention** in verbal phrase, 119.
- mere** den. adv. not., 683.
- merry-making** as comp. ger., 495.
- meseems** archaic for *it seems to me*, 369.
- middle** in group-prep., 726.
- midmost** id., 746.
- midst** id., 726.
- mid(st)** as aphetized form, 745.
- might** as mod. verb, 10, 162, 170, 174, 175, 177, 181, 186, 187, 195; — in cond. cl., 193; — as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 680; — with down-toning force, 174; — fol. by perf. inf., 442.
- mighty** in adv. funct., 634.
- minute** (n) in *within a minute of*, 247.
- miscarry** in pas. mean., 64, 135; — as intrans., 67.
- misgive** gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109.
- missing** in adnom. funct., 521.
- mist** in comp., 659.
- mistake** (v) absorb. obj., 62.
- mistaken** in act. mean., 549.
- mock** as trans. and intrans., 51.
- modify** absorb. refl. pron., 152.
- moisten** as trans. and intrans., 55.
- moment** dispensing with *at*, 802.
- monstrous** in adv. funct., 634.
- moralise** constr. without prep., 50.
- more** + *than* in prep. funct., 734.
- morrow** in *the morrow*, 208.
- mote** in *so mote it be*, 595.
- motion** (n) in *in motion*, 542.
- mount** in verbal phrase, 115.
- move** (v) furn. with refl. pron., 157; — kept in pres. tense, 251.



- move** (n) in *on the move*, 543.  
**move up** in caus. mean., 72.  
**much** as intens., 552, 665, 670;  
 — + *of* den. adv. not., 689 *f*.  
**much more** = *much less*, 679.  
**mushroom-like** as adv., 651.  
**must** as verb of incompl. pred., 19;  
 — den. acces. not. of attr., 36, 680;  
 — den. conviction, 161; — as cond.,  
 170 *f*; — after verbs of volition,  
 178; — as pret.-pres. verb, 211,  
 595; — con. with Expand. Inf., 328;  
 — fol. by perf. inf., 442.  
**mutual(ly)** in recipr. funct., 155 *f*.  
**my word** as interj., 829.
- native-fashion** as adv., 650.  
**nay** as adv. of neg., 673 *ff*.  
**ne** id., 677 *f*.  
**near** (v) as trans and intrans., 55.  
**near** (adj. or prep.) absorb. prep. +  
 recipr. pron., 155; — as pred. adn.  
 adj., 629; — mod. *by*, 692; — in  
 various gram. funct., 703, 734,  
 739 *ff*; — consid. as prep., 739,  
 759; — comp. with *like*, 739 *ff*;  
 — with and without *to*, 741, 805;  
 — with and without (*up*)*on*, 743;  
 — fol. by *of*, 743; — fol. by inf.,  
 743, 795; — fol. by ger., 743.  
**nearer**, -est with and without *to*,  
 741 *f*, 805.  
**near-by** in adjunct. funct., 699.  
**nearly** id., 699.  
**necessity** in adv. phrase, 618; — constr.  
 with *for* + ger., 785.  
**need** (v) as verb of incompl., pred.,  
 19; — den. acces. not. of attrib.,  
 37; — as cond., 171, 409, 412; —  
 in *if need be*, 189, 411, 413; — in  
*it needs*, 355 *f*; — in two meanings,  
 356, 407 *f*; — with dif. subj., 361;  
 — with or without *to* before inf.,  
 407 *ff*, 773; — const. with or without  
*do*, 407 *ff*; — as irreg. verb, 409 *ff*;  
 — in *it needs not* (or *only*), 410,  
 411, 461; — in *there needs*, 410;  
 — in *he* (*she* or *it*), *need be*, 411,  
 414; — in *as need be*, 411, 414;  
 fol. by perf. inf., 442; — fol. by  
 act. ger. with pas. mean., 479; —  
 fol. by pas. inf., 482.  
**need** (adv.) in *had need* + (*to*) + inf.,  
 424; — in *had need* + noun, 425.  
**need** (n) in *to have need*, 424 *f*; —  
 constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 785.  
**needs** (adv.) emph. *must* or *will*, 163;  
 — as adv. gen., 616, 618.  
**neither** as adv. adj., 664.  
**never** con. with perf. or pret. tense,  
 257, 262 *f*; — as emph. neg., 677.  
**never so** = *ever so*, 678.  
**new** in comp. with part., 636 *f*;  
 — mod. agent-noun, 685.  
**newly** in comp. with part., 637; — in  
*newly rich*, 631.  
**next** with and without *to*, 741.  
**next day** dispensing with prep., 804.  
**next-door** in group-prep., 733.  
**next-room** id., 733.  
**nice** fol. by *and* + adjunct., 640.  
**nigh** with or without (*un*)*to*, 744;  
 — with or without (*up*)*on*, 744.  
**(the) night** in adv. funct., 658; — in  
 comp., 659.  
**no** before ger., 477; — as adv. of  
 neg., 673 *f*; — in *no matter*, 756 *f*.  
**nod** (v) den. mode of uttering, 80,  
 112.  
**none** as adv. adjunct, 666.  
**no sooner** con. with pluperf., 280 *f*.  
**not** con. with words of a dimin.  
 mean., 676 *f*.  
**notice(n)** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**notwithstanding (that)** as prep. and  
 conj., 538, 713.  
**no use** fol. by *for*-adj. + inf., or by  
*for* + ger., 779.  
**now** in subst. funct., 654, 703; — mod.  
 adjunct., 693; — in adnom. funct.,  
 699.  
**now-a-days** as adv. gen., 611.  
**nowhere** in subst. funct., 703.  
**nowise** as adv., 649.  
**o'** instead of *of* or *on*, 710, 798.  
**obey** constr. with *to*, 50.  
**objection** in verbal phrase, 119.

- oblige** in double passive constr, 463.
- observe** absorb. obj., 62; — with dur. asp., 306.
- obstinate** mod. noun of act., 684.
- obstruct** absorb. obj., 62.
- obtain** comp. with *to acquire*, 289.
- occasion** in group-prep., 726 *f*.
- occasional** den. adv. not., 682.
- occupy** in Unexpand. Form, 322.
- of** before invert. subj., 94 *ff*, 771; — comp. with *by* and *from*, 96; — repres. subj. or obj. gen. after ger., 473 *f*, 483 *f*; — replaced by other prep., 499 *f*, 761; — after verbal in *ing*, 527; — before noun of act., 543, 688, 769; — in part. equiv., 543, 769; — as substitute for adv. gen., 618 *f*, 762, 769; — not used as adv., 610, 806; — comp. with *off*, 709; — eliding cons., 710, 798; — in group-prep., 716 *ff*; — of little semantic significance, 748; — repres. gen. inflect., 760 *ff*; — repres. part. gen., 762 *ff*; — after — verbs and adjunct., 762, 769; — dispensed with, 763, 799 *ff*; — after superl., 764 *f*; — after superlative equiv., 764; — between two identical nouns, 766 *f*; — as substit. for gen. of quality, 767; — in adj. den. colour, 769; — in adj. cont. the logical head-word, 770; — in adj. mod. such nouns as *class*, *kind*, etc., 770; — in adj. den. material, 771; — in adj. den. constituent elements, 771; — in adj. mod. adjunct., 771; — before ger. or noun of action, 771; — ousted by *for* before inf., 775.
- off** assisting ingressiveness, 296; — in adnom. funct., 698; — comp. with *of*, 709; — fol. by *of*, 751; — used absolutely, 807.
- offer** (v) in pas. voice, 126; — absorb. refl. pron., 151; — in pas. mean., 158.
- offer** (n) in verbal phrase, 139; — in *on offer*, 544.
- off-hand** as adv., 648.
- of old** prec. by *from*, 752.
- oft(en)** in adnom. funct., 699, 700.
- o(h)** interj. introd. idle wish, 168, 176, 830; — furn. with compl., 830.
- old** in comp. adj., 563.
- omitting** in prep. funct., 713.
- on** (adv.) expres. contin. asp., 307.
- on** (prep.) before verbal in *ing*, 502, 523 *ff*; — before noun of act., 543 *f*; — in part. equiv., 543 *f*; — before word-groups with *wise*, 649; — eliding cons., 710; — in group-prep., 716; — used to the exclusion of *upon*, 748; — as significant prep., 760; — dispensed with, 786, 801, 804 *f*.
- on board** dispensing with *of*, 721, 801 *f*.
- once** as disguised gen., 618; — in subst. funct., 704.
- one** suggested by cont., 764.
- one time** in adnom. funct., 701.
- onlooker** = *looker-on*, 702.
- only** in idle wish, 168; — form. unit with *for*, 752, 754.
- on to** as group-prep., 749 *f*.
- open** (v) trans. and intrans. equally natural, 54.
- operate** cor. to Dutch trans., 53.
- opportunity** dispensing with prep., 802.
- oppose** cor. to French intrans., 53.
- opposite** in group-prep., 734, 746.
- opposition** id., 38, 727.
- ordain** with dur. asp., 306.
- order** (v) with (pro)noun + past part., 522.
- order** (n) in group-prep., 710, 727.
- orders** in verbal phrase, 115.
- ostensible** den. adv. not., 683.
- otherwise** in adnom. funct., 700.
- ought** as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — den. acces. not. of attr., 36, 681; — primarily cond., 171, 595; — with dif. subj., 361 *f*; — fol. by bare inf., 407; — fol. by perf. inf., 442; — as inf. and past part., 595.
- out** (prefix), 90.

- out** (adv.) assisting term. asp., 300;  
— in adnom. funct., 698; — in  
subst. function, 704; — conv. into  
verb, 705; — in prep. funct., 749,  
752, 807; — fol. by various prep.,  
751.
- outgrow** as cont. dur. verb, 289.
- outlive** as trans., 90; — not adm.  
of pas. conv., 114; — of cont. dur.  
asp., 289.
- out of** as group-prep., 748; — prec.  
by *from*, 749.
- out-(of)-door(s)** in adnom. funct.,  
700 *f*, 749.
- out of hand** in adv. funct., 648.
- outright** in adnom. funct., 700.
- outrun** as trans., 90; — not adm. of  
pas. conv., 114.
- outside** in adnom. funct., 698; — of  
uncertain gram. status, 703; — in  
subst. funct., 704; — in group-prep.,  
747; — dispensing with *of*, 747, 801;  
— mod. by intens., 791.
- outstay** as trans., 90; — not adm.  
of pas. conv., 114; — of cont. dur.  
asp., 289.
- over** adv. or prep., 87, 807, 809, 810;  
— originally a compar., 709; —  
after noun, 809; — in *to talk over*,  
809.
- over against** as group-prep., 749.
- over and above** as group-prep., 756.
- overeat oneself** as intrans. refl. verb,  
145.
- overhang** = *to hang over*, 89.
- overleap** as trans., 90.
- overlook** comp. with *to look over*, 89.
- override** as trans., 90.
- oversea(s)** as adv. or adjunct., 617.
- oversleep oneself** as intrans. refl.  
verb, 145.
- overthrow** comp. with *to throw over*,  
89.
- overthwart** as metrical var. of *ath-*  
*wart*, 753.
- overwork oneself** = *to work too*  
*hard*, 144; — as intrans. refl. verb,  
145.
- owe** in pas. voice, 132 *f*.
- owing** as act. pres. part. with pas.  
mean., 521.
- owing to** in prepos. funct., 711.
- own** (v) not cap. of pas. conv., 109 *f*.
- pain** in group-prep., 727 *f*.
- pardon** (v) not constr. with *to*, 127;  
— fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form,  
487.
- part** (v) form. un. with prep., 35; —  
constr. without prep., 50; — + *with*  
in pas. voice, 117; — kept in pres.  
tense, 251.
- part** (n) in group-prep., 728.
- particular** den. adv. not., 682.
- pass** (v) in caus. mean., 71; — in  
trans. group-verb, 87; — with var.  
constr., 789; — in *to pass by*, 810.
- passing** as intens., 537.
- past** in *in the past*, 261 *f*, 266 *f*;  
— fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean.,  
480; — in pecul. applic., 546; — in  
prepos. funct., 714 *f*.
- pay** cor. to Dutch trans., 53; — absorb.  
obj., 60; — in verbal phrases, 118 *f*,  
122; — in pas. voice, 132; — with  
dif. obj., 353, 382.
- paying** as adjunct. part, 530; — mod.  
dif. nouns, 531.
- pearl** in comp., 659.
- peel** (v) in pas. mean., 65.
- pen** (v) dif. conj., 584.
- pending** before or after noun, 533  
— in prep. funct., 538, 713.
- per** as prep., 710, 806.
- peradventure** as mod. adv., 13.
- perhaps** as mod. adv., 13, 163; —  
standing with *may*, 163.
- perfect** den. adv. not., 683 *f*.
- perjure oneself** as intrans. refl. verb,  
145.
- perjured** in adnom. funct., 551.
- permission** constr. with *for*-adj. +  
inf., 785.
- permit** (v) in pas. voice, 133; — fol.  
by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 488.
- piecemeal** as adv. and adjunct., 647.
- piercingly** mod. *cold*, 635.
- pile** (v) with dif. obj., 379.

- pile up** absorb. refl. pron., 152.  
**pique oneself** as intrans. refl. verb, 145.  
**pity** (n) in verbal phrases, 119, 295, 395.  
**pitying** in transf. applic., 582.  
**place** in group-prep., 728.  
**plain** in adv. funct., 642.  
**plant** (v) with dif. obj., 351, 379.  
**play** (v) furn. with cogn. obj., 78; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 86, 805; — + prep. in pas. voice, 124; — not. constr. with *to*, 127; — constr. with *(up)on*, 127; — adm. of no second. pas. conv., 128; — in pas. voice, 132.  
**play** (n) in *at play*, 542.  
**please** with dif. subj., 362.  
**pleased** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 785.  
**pluck up** in verbal phrases, 115.  
**plumb** in adv. funct., 658.  
**point** (v) in caus. mean., 73; — in pas. voice, 73.  
**point** (n) in *at (or on) the point of*, 246; — in *at point to*, 246; — in group-prep., 728.  
**point-blank** in adv. funct., 648.  
**poke** (v) in verbal phrase, 119.  
**ponder** as trans. and intrans., 51.  
**pooh-pooh** as iter. verb, 289, 831.  
**positive** mod. agent-noun, 685.  
**possess** in the mean. of *to inform*, 50; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109 f; — with ingres. asp., 295.  
**possession** in verbal phrase, 119, 299.  
**possibly** as mod. adv., 13.  
**post(-haste)** in adv. funct., 658.  
**practised** in act. mean., 549.  
**prayer** in *to be at prayer*, 346.  
**preach** furn. with cogn. obj., 79; — in trans. group-verb, 86; — + prep. cor. to French trans., 116; — + prep. in pas. voice, 124; — kept in pres. tense, 252.  
**precious** as adv., 635.  
**preliminary** in group-prep., 734.  
**preparation** in *in preparation*, 542.  
**preparatory** as obj. adjunct., 38.  
**presence** in group-prep., 728 f.  
**present** (v) in Unexpanded Form, 323.  
**preside** cor. to Dutch trans., 53.  
**press** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**presumed** in pecul. applic., 547.  
**pretence** in group-prep., 729.  
**pretty** as adv., 635.  
**prevail** + *(up)on* = *to get*, 53.  
**prevent** fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 487.  
**previous** in group-prep., 733, 747.  
**previously** con. with perf. tense, 261 f; — in group-prep., 733, 747.  
**prior** as obj. adjunct., 38; — in group-prep., 734.  
**probable** den. adv. not., 683.  
**proceed** impl. fut., 247.  
**process** in *to be in process of*, 347, 545.  
**professed** in pecul. applic., 547.  
**professing** id., 535.  
**profession** dispensing with *of*, 801.  
**profit** (v) with dif. sub., 375 f.  
**promise** (v) absorb. obj., 60; — in pas. voice, 134.  
**promise** (n) in verbal phrases, 394.  
**pronounce** absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**propos** in group-prep., 733.  
**proud** conv. into verb, 79.  
**prove** dif. conjug., 584.  
**provided (that)** in conj. funct., 538, 554.  
**providing (that)** in conj. funct., 538.  
**prowl** (n) in *on the prowl*, 543.  
**public-school** in adv. funct., 659.  
**publish** kept in pres. tense, 252; — in Expanded Form, 336.  
**pull** in pas. mean., 64.  
**puller-down**, 702.  
**pursuant** in group-prep., 734.  
**put** in verbal phrase, 121.  
**put down** with var. constr., 789.  
**putting aside, -on one side** in prep. funct., 538, 711, 713,  
**put to** absorb. obj., 60.  
**put up** + prep. in pas. voice, 117.  
**quality** absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**quenching** in pas. mean., 535.

- question** (n) as cogn. obj., 125.  
**quick** in comp., 636.  
**quicken** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**quiet-like** in adv. funct., 650.  
**quiver** (v) in caus. mean., 69.  
**quiver** (n) in *in a quiver*, 542.  
**quoth** as isol. form, 600.  
  
**raging** mod. *mad*, 635.  
**rain** furn. with effect. obj., 48, 82, 113;  
   — + prep. in pas. voice, 82, 123;  
   — in Unexpanded Form, 323.  
**raise** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**rambling** as adjunct. part., 535.  
**range** absorb. prep., 83; — not adm.  
   of pas. conv., 113.  
**rapt** replac. by *wrapt*, 571.  
**rare** fol. by *and* + adj., 640; — den.  
   adv. not., 682, 685.  
**rate** in group-prep., 719.  
**raving** mod. *mad*, 635.  
**reach** (v) not constr. with *to*, 127.  
**read** absorb. obj., 58, 60; — in pas.  
   mean., 64 *ff*; — as act. inf. with  
   pas. mean., 67; — in pas. voice,  
   134.  
**read** (part.) in *read in*, 549, 553.  
**ready** implying futurity, 246.  
**really** mod. adj., 693.  
**reave** with dif. obj., 379; — dif. conj.,  
   584.  
**receipt** in *in receipt of*, 542.  
**receive** oppos. to *to give*, 139; kept  
   in pres. tense, 252.  
**recent** in word-group, 267; — den.  
   adv. not., 682.  
**recently** con. with dif. tenses, 264,  
   266 *f*.  
**reception** with pas. mean., 138.  
**reck** with dif. subj., 362.  
**reconcile** in pas. voice, 157.  
**reconciled** absorb. prep. + recipr.  
   pron., 155.  
**recourse** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**redde**n considered as caus. verb, 23;  
   — as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**reduced** as adjunct. part., 530.  
**reference** in group-prep., 729.  
**referring to** in prep. funct., 711, 714.  
  
**refresh** in pas. voice, 157.  
**refuge** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**refuse** absorb. obj., 63; — with dif.  
   obj., 382.  
**regard** (n) in verbal phrase, 399; —  
   in group-prep., 729  
**regarding** in prepos. funct., 538,  
   711 *f*.  
**regular** mod. agent-noun, 685.  
**rehearsal** prec. by *in*, 347, 542.  
**rejoice** constr. without prep., 50; —  
   cor. to Dutch refl. verb, 144; — in  
   Expanded Form, 342.  
**relating to** in prep. funct., 538, 711 *f*.  
**relative(ly)** as obj. adj. or adv., 38;  
   — in group-prep., 733, 747.  
**relive** conv. into trans., 84.  
**reluctant** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf.,  
   785.  
**rely** + prep. in pas. voice, 117.  
**remain** as aux. of asp., 19, 37, 307 *f*;  
   — kept in pres. tense, 253; — fol.  
   by pres. part., 348; — fol. by pas.  
   inf., 448, 455.  
**remain alive** (-seated) of contin. asp.,  
   308.  
**remember** with dur. asp., 302; — fol.  
   by perf. or imperf. ger., 483.  
**renounce** cor. to French intrans., 54.  
**rent** (v) with dif. subj., 381.  
**repair** req. compl., 36.  
**repay** fol. by act. ger. with pas.  
   mean., 480.  
**repelling** equiv. to *repellent*, 530.  
**repent** absorb. obj., 60; — with dif.  
   subj., 362.  
**report** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**repose** (v) in caus. mean., 69.  
**reputed** in pecul. applic., 546.  
**request** in group-prep., 716, 720.  
**require** in Expanded Form, 342; — in  
   *it (there) requires*, 355; — in two  
   meanings, 356; — fol. by act. ger.  
   with pas. mean., 479; — fol. by  
   pas. inf., 482; — fol. by *for*-adj. +  
   inf., 775.  
**required** before or after noun, 533.  
**resemble** gov. compl. without prep.,  
   46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109.

- reside** + prep. in pas. voice, 123.  
**resist** gov. non-prep. obj., 33; — cor. to French intrans., 54.  
**resisting** equiv. to *resistant*, 530.  
**respect** (n) in neg. phrase, 676; — in group-prep., 729.  
**respond** + prep. in pas. voice, 117.  
**rest** (v) in caus. mean., 69; — in pas. voice, 111.  
**restore** in pas. voice, 132; — with dif. obj., 379.  
**resulting** equiv. to *resultant*, 530.  
**retail** dispensing with *by*, 803.  
**retire** in caus. mean., 69; — in pas. voice, 111.  
**retired** in transf. applic., 532.  
**retreating** as adj. part., 535.  
**retrench** mod. by *nothing*, 85.  
**return** (v) in caus. mean., 71; — + prep. in pas. voice, 123 *f*.  
**revealing** as adj. part., 535.  
**revenge** (v) in pas. voice, 157.  
**revolve** furn. with cogn. obj., 78.  
**rid** as trans. verb, 51.  
**ride** + *on* in pas. voice, 32.  
**riddling** in transf. applic., 532.  
**right** in adv. funct., 642.  
**ring** (v) consid. as caus. verb, 71; — fol. by adj. or adv., 624 *f*; — + *for* cor. to French trans., 54, 116; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.  
**right** (n) in *of right*, 618; — in group-prep., 729.  
**rive** dif. conjug., 584.  
**roam** absorb. prep., 83; — not adm. of pas. conv., 113.  
**roar** in *in* (or *on*) *a roar*, 542.  
**rob** with dif. obj., 379.  
**roll** in caus. mean., 69; — furn. with cogn. obj., 78; — mod. by adv. adj., 84.  
**room** in group-prep., 729 *f*.  
**rose** in comp., 659.  
**rosy** in adv. funct., 633.  
**round** adv. or prep., 89, 808, 809; — = *around*, 709; — after noun, 809.  
**round about** as group-prep., 749.  
**rove** absorb. prep., 83; — not adm. of pas. conv., 113.  
**rub** in verbal phrase, 122.  
**ruby** in comp., 659.  
**rummage** with dif. obj., 382.  
**run** absorb. prep., 48, 83, 805; — in caus. mean., 69 *f*; — furn. with cogn., obj., 77; in pas. voice, 77 *f*; 112 *ff*; — as quasi-trans., 83; — in trans. group-verb, 87; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117, 123; — with dif. subj., 376.  
**run away** + prep. in pas. voice, 118.  
**run down** in Expanded Form, 335.  
**running** as adj. part., 531; — mod. dif. nouns, 531.  
**run short** with dif. subj. 376.  
**rush** + prep. in pas. voice, 124.  
**s** end. of adv. gen., 610 *ff*; — ex-crescent, 618.  
**sadly** as adj., 626.  
**sail** (n) in verbal phrases, 115.  
**sail** (v) kept in pres. tense, 251.  
**sake** in group-prep., 719 *f*, 730.  
**salute** (v) absorb. recipr. pron., 153.  
**same** as adv. adj., 662.  
**sans** as prep., 710, 806.  
**sarcastic-like** in adv. funct., 650.  
**save** (v) not constr. with *to*, 127; — in pas. voice, 133.  
**save** (conj.) before (*to* +) infin., 433 *f*.  
**save** in prep. funct., 710; — form. unit with *for*, 752, 754.  
**saving** (*that*) in conj. or prep. funct., 538; 712; — form. unit with *for*, 752, 754.  
**say** in conj. funct., 202; — of doubtful asp., 291; — in Expanded Form, 318, 322; — as irreg. verb, 568, 571; — con. with adv. or adj., 629.  
**says** instead of *said*, 255.  
**scalding** in comp., 635.  
**scan** in pas. mean., 65.  
**scarcely** con. with pluperf., 280 *f*.  
**scared** constr. with *of* or *at*, 96.  
**scatter** in pas. mean., 65.  
**scintillate** furn. with effect. obj., 82.

- scoff** constr. without prep., 50.  
**Scotch-fashion** in adv. funct., 650.  
**scrap** in neg. phrase, 676.  
**scream** (v) conv. into trans. verb, 87.  
**scribble over** in pas. voice, 114.  
**search** con. with *through*, 88 *f*.  
**seated** in *to become seated*, 297.  
**seat oneself** with ingres. asp., 297.  
**secret** mod. noun of act., 684; — in adv. adj., 685.  
**secure** (v) in pas. voice, 128.  
**see** den. sense-impr., 23; — absorb. obj., 62; — con. with *through*, 88; — as imper., 202; — kept in pres. tense, 352; — in Expand. Form, 341; — with (pro)noun + *to* + inf., 427; — in act. inf. with pas. mean., 454; — constr. with *for* + ger., 784.  
**seeing (that)** in conj. funct., 538.  
**seem** as adv. verb, 6, 19, 36, 46, 680; — fol. by pres. part., 348; — with dif. subj., 368 *ff*; — con. with *not*, 371; — in adv. phrase, 691.  
**seeming** constr. without prep., 338; — as adj. part., 535; — in comp., 540.  
**seethe** dif. conj., 585.  
**self** con. with past part., 555.  
**sell** absorb. obj., 60; — in pas. mean., 65, 135, 523; — in caus. mean., 74; — in constr. which is convertible into ac. + inf., 75.  
**seller** as agent-noun, 66, 685.  
**sell out** absorb. obj., 61; — with dif. obj., 383.  
**sell up** with dif. obj., 382 *f*.  
**send** as verb of incompl. pred., 18; — absorb. obj., 60; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117; — in verbal phrase, 119; — in *God (or Heaven) send*, 175; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783.  
**separate** (adj.) den. adv. not., 683.  
**serve** absorb. obj., 61 *f*; — in pas. voice, 132; — with dif. obj., 379; — with var. constr., 789.  
**serve out** with dif. obj., 380.  
**set** in *set to work*, 20; — as caus. trans., 75; — in verbal phrases, 119, 122; — absorb. refl. pron., 151; with dur. asp., 306; — gov. var. const., 525 *f*.  
**setting aside** in prep. funct., 538, 713.  
**set down** absorb. obj., 61; — with var. const. 789.  
**settle** furn. with refl. pron., 157; — with dur. asp., 306.  
**set up** with dur. asp., 306; — with var. constr., 788.  
**seven-league** var. with *seven-leagued*, 563.  
**sew** dif. conjug., 586.  
**shake** in verbal phrase, 122.  
**shall** as mod. verb, 10, 161, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 182, 183, 187, 190, 191, 195, 197, 250; — as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 680; — as tense-aux, 175, 218 *ff*; — in subst. cl., 197; — varying with imper., 200; — as pret. pres. verb., 211, 595; — anciently = *to owe*, 218 *f*; — anciently = *ought*, 219; — in mixed funct., 221 *ff*, 280; — den. absol. certain fulfilment, 225; — in reported statements, 234 *ff*; — in reported questions, 238 *ff*; — in Elizabethan Eng., 241 *ff*; in Auth. Vers., 243 *f*.  
**shame** as interj., 829.  
**shapen** as adj. part. in comp., 586.  
**sharp** in adv. funct., 643.  
**shaven** as adj. part., 586.  
**shear** dif. conjug., 586.  
**sheer** den. adv. not., 683.  
**shend** now obsol., 586.  
**shine** furn. with effect. obj., 82; — fol. by adj. or adv., 624 *f*.  
**shining** in comp., 540.  
**shoe** (v) dif. conjug., 586 *f*.  
**shoo** (interj.) conv. into verb, 831.  
**shoot** with dif. obj., 383.  
**shop** in verbal phrase, 115.  
**short** in adv. funct., 643; — in group-prep., 734.  
**short work** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**should** as mod. verb 10, 162, 172, 177, 179, 180, 182, 186, 187, 191,

- 194, 196, 197; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 680; — in *who should say*, 230; — in *it should seem* (or *appear*), 230; — in *one should think*, 231; — as non-auxil. verb, 170, 233; — var. with *to be*, 178; — fol. by perf. inf., 442.
- show** (v) in pas. voice, 132; — as intrans., 135; — absorb. refl. pron., 153; — with dif. obj., 380; — fol. by adject. or adv., 624 *f*.
- shrink** conjug. dif., 587.
- shrunk** used attrib., 550; — used predic., 551.
- shut** with dur. asp., 306.
- shut up** in verbal phrase, 115.
- sicken** as trans. and intrans., 55.
- side** in group-prep., 730, 756; — dispensing with *of*, 801.
- sideling(s)** var. with *sidelong*, 646.
- sidelong** as adject. or adv., 615, 646.
- sideway** in adnom. funct., 615.
- sideways** in group-prep., 615.
- siege** in verbal phrase, 139.
- sight** id., 119.
- sign** const. with *for*-adj. + inf., 785.
- signify** as impers. and pers. verb, 358.
- silence** in verbal phrase, 115.
- silver** in comp., 659.
- silvery** in adv. funct., 633.
- sin** (v) in pas. voice, 112; — + prep. in pas. voice, 124.
- since** (adv.), 257; — in various phrases, 270; — in two meanings, 272; — con. with various tenses, 272 *f*, 305 *f*; — suppressed, 306; — as disguised gen., 618.
- since** (prep.), 257; — in two mean., 273; — con. with various tenses, 273, 305 *f*; — comp. with Dutch *sinds*, 273.
- since** (conj.), 257; — in two mean., 274; — con. with various tenses, 274 *f*, 277, 293, 296, 305 *f*.
- single** var. with *singly*, 627 *f*.
- sink** (v) in caus. mean., 71; — dif. conjug., 587.
- sit** as verb of incompl. pred., 18, 22; — mod. by adv., 57; — conv. into trans., 84; — con. with pred. adn. adj., 85; — in trans. group-verb, 86; — con. with *through*, 88; — not adm. of pas. conv., 113; — + prep. in pas. voice, 124; — + (*up*) *on eggs* comp. with *to hatch eggs*, 288; — with ingres. asp., 295; — furn. with refl. pron., 297; — in Unexpand. Form, 322; — fol. by pres. part., 347 *f*, 531; — fol. by adject. or adv., 630.
- sit down(-up)** with variable asp., 296; — furn. with refl. pron., 297.
- sitter-up**, 702.
- slay** in pas. voice, 102.
- sleep** (v) in caus. mean., 70; — furn. with cogn. obj., 76 *f*, 86; — in *to sleep the clock round*, 89, 809; — + prep. in pas. voice, 124; — with ingres. asp., 295; — in Expanded Form, 336.
- slow** (v) as trans. and intrans., 55.
- slow** (adv.) in comp., 636.
- slumber** with ingres. asp., 295.
- smack** in caus. mean., 73; — not adm. of pas. conv., 111.
- smash** in adv. funct., 658.
- smell** den. sense-impr., 23, 56 *f*; — as trans. and intrans., 56 *f*; — fol. by adject. or adv., 624 *f*.
- smelling** in comp., 540.
- smile** (v) den. mode of uttering, 47 *f*, 80 *f*; — constr. without prep., 50; — furn. with cogn. obj., 77.
- smoke** (v) with termin. asp., 300.
- smoking** mod. *hot*, 635.
- snap** in caus. mean., 73.
- snow** (v) in pas. voice, 82.
- snow** (n) in comp., 659.
- snowy** in adv. funct., 633.
- so** as quasi-pron., 49, 667 *f*.
- so** (conj.) fol. by subj., 189.
- so** (adv.) before word-group with part. or adject. in *ed*, 541, 557, 562; — as intens., 672 *f*.
- soaking** mod. *wet*, 635.
- so as** fol. by subj., 189.
- sob** (v) den. mode of uttering, 80.
- sodden** as adject. part. and verb, 585.



- soever** in concess. cl., 196, 197.  
**so far** comp. with *thus far*, 668 *f*.  
**so far as** in prep. funct., 753.  
**solve** with emph. refl. pron., 157.  
**some** in adv. funct., 666; — suggested by cont., 764.  
**something** suggested by cont., 764.  
**something** + *of* den. adv. not., 689.  
**sometime** in adnom. funct., 701; — comp. with (*at*) *some time*, 701, 802.  
**sometimes** as adv. gen., 611.  
**somewhat** + *of* den. adv. not., 689.  
**so much** as quasi-pron., 688.  
**soon** in *had as soon*, 424; — in adnom. funct., 700.  
**sooner** in *had sooner*, 424.  
**sore** in comp., 636.  
**sorry** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 785.  
**sort(s)** with depreciative connotation, 770.  
**sort of** in adv. funct., 661.  
**so sure** as member of a pair of correlative, 819.  
**so that** fol. by subj., 186; — fol. by *may*, *might* or *should*, 186; — fol. by *shall*, 187.  
**sound** (v) as quasi-cop., 458; — fol. by adj. or adv., 624 *f*.  
**sound** (adj.) in adv. funct., 644.  
**sounding** in comp., 540.  
**spare** in pas. voice, 127 *f*, 134.  
**speak** gov. prep. obj., 36; — + *to* = *to address*, 53, 116; — absorb. obj., 58; — dif. conj., 588.  
**speed up** with dif. obj., 383; — with regul. conj., 588.  
**spend** con. with refl. pron., 146.  
**spin** (v) id., 146.  
**spit** + prep. in pas. voice, 124.  
**spite** (n) in group-prep., 38, 730 *f*.  
**spoil** (v) in pas. mean., 65; — in verb. phrase, 115; — dif. conj., 588.  
**spoken** in comp., 556, 638.  
**sport** (n) in verbal phrases, 119.  
**spread** absorb. refl. pron., 153; — with dif. obj., 383.  
**sprinkle** with dif. subj., 376.  
**spy** (v) cor. to Dutch trans, 53.  
**squeeze** with refl. pron., 157.  
**stalk** in trans. funct., 30.  
**stamp** in caus. mean., 73.  
**stand** (v) in caus. mean., 68, 70; — (not) in pas. voice, 74, 112, 114; — conv. into trans., 84; — in trans. group-verb, 87; — replac. *to be*, 99; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117; — implying fut., 247; — with ingres. asp., 295, 307; — with contin. asp., 307; — in Unexpand. Form, 322; — fol. by pres. part., 347 *f*, 531; — fol. by pas. inf., 448; — fol. by adj. or adv., 624 *f*, 630.  
**stand** (n) con. with various verbs, 299.  
**stand down-(up)** with ingres. asp., 296.  
**stander-by**, 702.  
**stare** in trans. group-verb, 86 *f*.  
**starkly** used for metrical reasons, 632.  
**start** req. compl., 36; — in caus. mean., 71; — kept in pres. tense, 251.  
**starve** in caus. mean., 71; — in trans. group-verb, 87; — with dur. asp., 303.  
**station** (n) in verbal phrase, 299.  
**stave** (v) dif. conj., 588 *f*.  
**stay** (v) with or without *to*, 30, 85, 806; — in caus. mean., 73; — mod. by adv. adj., 84; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85; — con. with *over*, 88; — cor. to Dutch refl. verb, 144; — as imper, 202; — kept in pres. tense, 252; — in Expanded Form, 336.  
**stead** in group-prep., 731.  
**steal** absorb. refl. pron., 150.  
**steerage** in adverb. funct., 658.  
**stick** (v) gov. prep. obj., 36.  
**stock** in comp., 659.  
**stolen** as adj. part., 529, 545.  
**stone** in comp., 659.  
**stop** (v) with or without prep., 30, 85, 806; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85; — absorb. refl. pron., 150, 153; — with dur. asp., 301 *f*; — fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 487.  
**store** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**straight** in adv. funct., 643.

- straightforward** in adnom. funct., 613.  
**straightway(s)** as adv., 614.  
**strapping** as adj. part., 535.  
**stream** (v) in caus. mean., 70.  
**strengthen** as trans. and intrans., 55.  
**stress** in verbal phrase, 119.  
**strew** with dif. obj., 380; — var. with *to strow*, 589.  
**stride** (v) dif. conj., 589.  
**strife** in *at strife with*, 38.  
**strike** (v) in con. with *cold*, 55; — absorb. obj., 61; — in caus. mean., 73; — furn. with cogn. obj., 78, 125; — in verbal phrase, 115; — with dif. subj., 358 *f*; — with dif. obj., 383; — dif. conj., 589 *f*.  
**strike** (n) in *on strike*, 544.  
**stringed** in *stringed instruments*, 558, 590.  
**strip** (v) with dif. obj., 380.  
**struck** in prep. funct., 715.  
**study** (n) in *at (or in) study*, 346, 542 *f*.  
**subject** (adj.) in group-prep., 734.  
**submit** absorb. compl., 63; — absorb. refl. pron., 151.  
**subsequent** in group-prep., 734.  
**subsist** comp. with *to exist*, 289.  
**substantial** den. adv. not., 683.  
**succeed** cor. to French intrans., 54; with dif. subj., 351, 374, 376.  
**succeeding** in prep. funct., 712.  
**such** in adv. funct., 662.  
**such-a-coloured** as comp. adj., 562.  
**sudden** den. adv. not., 682.  
**sudden-like** as adv., 650.  
**suffer** absorb. obj., 61.  
**suffice** gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109.  
**suggest** furn. with emphatic refl. pron., 157.  
**suit** (v) gov. compl. without prep., 46; — not cap. of pas. conv., 109; — absorb. recipr. pron., 154; — constr. with *for* + ger., 784.  
**summer** in comp., 659.  
**sunken** in adnom. funct., 550 *f*, 587.  
**superficial** mod. agent-noun, 685.  
**suppose** (v) in *I should suppose*, 174; — in Expanded Form, 342; — in adv. phrase, 690.  
**suppose** (conj.) in cond. cl., 194; — originally an imper., 202.  
**sure** in *to be sure*, 248, 371 *f*, 688, 690.  
**surprise** (v) fol. by pres. part., 501.  
**surrendered** in adnom. funct., 551.  
**survive** cor. to French intrans., 54; — in pas. voice, 114 *f*; — of cont. dur. asp., 289.  
**suspect** (v) with dif. obj., 383.  
**swarm** (v) with dif. subj., 376.  
**swear** = *to adjure*, 50; in caus. mean., 71; — in pas. voice, 74; — furn. with refl. pron., 87.  
**sweat** (v) furn. with effect. obj., 82.  
**sweated** in adnom. funct., 558, 590.  
**sweet** fol. by *and* + adj., 640.  
**swell** dif. conj., 590 *f*.  
**swim** absorb. prep., 83.  
**taint** absorb. refl. pron., 152.  
**t** excrescent, 618.  
**t'** instead of *to*, 710, 798.  
**take** absorb. obj., 61 *f*, 805; — in pas. mean. 65; — mod. by adv. adj., 85; — in verbal phrases, 115, 118 *ff*, 134, 295; — admit. of no second. pas. conv., 129; — with dur. asp., 306; — with dif. subj., 367 *f*, 458; — fol. by pres. part., 501; — in *to take to wife*, 773; — fol. by *for*-adjunct, 776, 789; — with var. constr., 789.  
**talk** (v) absorb. prep., 48, 84; — in phrases 79, 84; — in trans. group-verb, 86; — + prep. in pas. voice, 117.  
**talk** (n) with pas. mean., 138.  
**talk over** as trans. group-verb, 86, 809.  
**talk round** as trans. group-verb, 86.  
**tally** gov. prep. obj., 36; — absorb. compl., 63.  
**tally-ho** as name of a coach, 831.  
**tandemwise** as adv., 648.  
**tardy** den. adv. not., 682.  
**tarry** furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85.

- taste** (v) trans. and intrans., 56 *f*; — fol. by adject. or adv., 624 *f*.
- teach** absorb., obj., 63; — in verbal phrase, 125 *f*; — with dif. obj., 383.
- tell** absorb. obj., 62; — in pas. voice, 130; — in pres. instead of perf. tense, 254; — of uncertain asp., 291.
- terms** prec. by adject. absorb. prep. + recipr. pron., 155.
- terrified** constr. with *of*, 95.
- testimony** in verbal phrase, 119.
- than** before (*to* +) inf., 435 *f*, 774; — before *for*-adjunct, 777; — before *whom*, 818.
- thank** (n) conv. into verb, 79.
- thanks to** as group-prep., 756.
- that** (conj.) in cl. den. idle wish, 168, 176; — fol. by subj., 185; — fol. by *may*; *might* or *should*, 186; — fol. by *shall*, 187; — after prep., 792; — dispensed with, 792; — originally a demonstr. pron., 816, 824; — as syntactic link, 817; — introd. var. cl., 824; — development of, 824.
- that** (rel. pron.) after *same*, 825; — as condensed rel. pron., 825; — introd. contin. adnom. cl., 825; — comp. with Dutch *dat*, 826.
- the morrow** = *the next day*, 208.
- then** in subst. funct., 654; — in adnom. funct., 700.
- thenabouts** as adv. gen., 615.
- thenadays** id., 611.
- then and still** in adnom. funct., 700.
- thence** as disguised gen., 618; — as pron. adv., 653.
- thenceforth, -forward** as pron. adv., 657.
- there** as meaningless adv., 104 *ff*, 450, 454 *f*, 669 *f*, 778; — in adnom. funct., 701; — in subst. funct., 654, 703; — in *for*-adjunct + inf., 778.
- thereabouts** emphas. indefiniteness, 615 *f*.
- thereafter, -at**, etc. as pron. adv., 655.
- thing(s)** suggested by context, 761, 268.
- think** con. with *over*, 88; — + *of* in pas. voice, 117; — in *I did not think*, 173; — in *I should think so*, 174; — with ingres. asp., 295; — in adv. phrase, 691; — fol. by *for*, 789.
- thirst** as verb, 354.
- this** in *this afternoon, evening*, etc., 261, 804.
- thither** as pron. adv., 652.
- thitherto** id., 656.
- thoro'** instead of *thorough*, 798.
- thorough** in comp., 636.
- though** fol. by subj., 194 *f*; — fol. by cond., 195; — fol. by *may*, *might* or *shall*, 195; — fol. by *should* or *were (to)*, 196; — originally an adv., 816.
- thought** (v) in *I never thought*, 173; — fol. by perf. inf., 445.
- (a) thought** in adv. funct., 660.
- thread** as quasi-trans., 30.
- threatened** in pecul. applic., 547 *f*.
- thro'** instead of *through*, 710, 798.
- through** (adv. or prep.), 87; — after pas. voice, 94; — assisting terminativeness, 300; — in group-prep., 717; — mod. by intens., 791; — after noun, 809.
- throughout** as group-prep., 748.
- throw** (v) in pas. voice, 133.
- throw off** absorb. refl. pron., 153.
- throw over** comp. with *to overthrow*, 89.
- throw up** absorb. obj., 61.
- thus** in var. funct., 668 *f*.
- tight** in adv. funct., 644.
- till** (conj.) fol. by subj., 183; — in *till such time as*, 185; — in var. phrases con. with perf. or pres. tense, 276; — not. used as adv., 610, 806.
- time** in *in times past*, 257; — in *time was*, 258; — *a good (bad, etc.) time of it*, 763; — dispensing with *of*, 802; — in *time out of mind*, 803; — in *time enough*, 803.
- tingle** with dif. subj., 376.
- tire** = *to (be)come tired*, 388.

- tired** mod. by *much*, 552.
- to** (prep.) as substit. for inflect., 29, 771 ff; — before person-obj. in pas. conv., 127; — in various phrases con. with perf. or pres. tense, 276; — before inf., 404 ff, 773 f; — eliding vowel, 710; — in group-prep., 716, 753 f; — after *like*, 739; — after *near*, 740 ff; — as meaningless prep., 739, 740; — repres. dat. inflect., 760, 771 f; — as substitute for gen. inflect., 772; — varying with *for*, 772, 774 f, 798; — replaced by *as* or *for*, 772.
- to** as adv., 606 ff.
- to and fro** in adnom. funct., 700; — as group-prep., 756.
- to-day** con. with perf. or pret. tense, 261.
- together** in recipr. funct. 155.
- toil** (v) in caus. mean., 71.
- to-morrow** instead of *the day before*, 207.
- to-night** con. with. perf. or pret. tense, 261.
- too** as intens., 460, 672; — comp. with *to*, 607.
- top** in group-prep., 731.
- touch** (v) in verbal phrase, 115.
- touching** in prep. funct., 538, 712, 714.
- tour** in *on tour*, 544.
- to within** as prep. sequence, 753.
- trade** dispensing with *of*, 801.
- tradesman-like** as adv., 651.
- train** (v) absorb. refl. pron., 151.
- tramp** in *on tramp*, 544.
- transformed** equiv. to *transforming*, 548.
- translate** pas. in mean., 66.
- travel** as quasi-trans., 30, 83; — absorb. prep., 83, 805; — in pas. voice, 84.
- travelled** in adnom. funct., 550.
- tread** constr. with or without *on*, 51; — in pas. voice, 113; — + prep. in pas. voice, 124.
- treat** + *of* = *to discuss* 53, 116.
- tremble** (n) in *in* (or *of*) *a tremble*, 346, 542 f.
- trembling** equiv. to *tremulous*, 530.
- tremulous** prec. by *to be*, 39.
- trick** in verbal phrase, 337.
- triple** in comp. adj. in *ed*, 560.
- trot out** in pas. voice, 74.
- truly** in adnom. funct., 700.
- trust** (v) in Expanded Form, 343; — with dif. obj., 380.
- truth** in adv. phrase, 618, 691.
- try** absorb. obj., 61.
- try on** with dif. obj., 384.
- tumble** (v) in caus. mean., 70; — + prep. cor. to French trans., 54; — + prep. in pas. voice, 123.
- turn** (v) absorb. obj., 61; — mod. by adv. adj., 84; — in verbal phrase, 115; — absorb. refl. pron., 150, 152 f; — with dur. asp., 305.
- turn** (n) in *on the turn*, 543.
- turned** (of) in prep. funct., 715.
- twice** as disguised gen., 618.
- two** fol. by qualitative *of*, 768.
- un** as negating pref., 536, 551, 559.
- unavoided** equiv. to *unavoidable*, 549.
- unaware(s)** as adv., 617.
- unbecoming** with or without *to*, 339, 392, 536; — construed with *for*, 773.
- unbefitting** with or without *to*, 339, 392, 536.
- unbend** absorb. refl. pron., 147 f.
- unbroken** equiv. to *unbreaking*, 548; — gov. prep. obj., 553.
- uncomfortable** rather act. than pas., 549.
- under** + noun of action equiv. to pres. part., 138, 544; — in group-prep., 717; — in adv. funct., 807; after noun, 808.
- underneath** in adnom. funct., 699.
- understand** in Expanded Form, 343; — with dif. obj., 353; — fol. by (pro)noun + *ing*-form or inf., 488.
- understanding** as adj. part., 535.
- understanded** constr. with *of*, 95, 589.
- undeserving** with or without *of*, 338 f, 392, 536; — in pas. mean., 535.

- unfathomed** equiv. to *unfathomable*, 549.  
**ung** as suf., 508.  
**unless** (conj.) fol. by subjunct., 189.  
**unless** (prep.) fol. by prep.-group, 792; — fol. by adv. cl., 795.  
**unlike** req. compl., 38; — of uncertain gram. status, 703; — consid. as prep., 738, 759.  
**until** (conj.) fol. by subj., 183; — fol. by mod. *shall*, 183; — in *until such time as*, 185.  
**untimely** den. adv. not., 682.  
**untired** with pas. mean., 138.  
**unto** as lit. equiv. of *to*, 739 *f*.  
**untravelled** in predic. funct., 552.  
**unvalued** equiv. to *invaluable*, 549.  
**unworthy** req. compl., 38; — consid. as prep., 759.  
**up** assisting ingressiveness, 296; — assisting terminativeness, 300 *f*; — in adjunct. funct., 750; — fol. by *to* or *with*, 751.  
**up at** as group-prep., 750.  
**upon** + noun of act. equiv. to pres. part., 138; — after *near*, *close* and *just*, 740; — as group-prep., 747 *f*; — as significant prep., 760.  
**up-stairs** comp. with *up the stairs*, 288.  
**up till** as group-prep., 750.  
**up to** id., 750.  
**use** (v) = *to be used*, 388.  
**use** (n) dispensing with *of*, 801.  
**used** den. acces. not. of attr., 19; — den. discontinuance of act. or state, 217; — expres. iter. asp., 309.  
**usual** after *as* and *than*, 688.  
**utter** den. adv. not., 683 *f*.  
  
**value** (n) in verbal phrase, 119.  
**variance** in group-prep., 38.  
**vault** (v) absorb. prep., 83.  
**verge** in group-prep., 246.  
**versus** as prep., 710, 806.  
**very** as intens., 536 *f*, 552, 670 *ff*, 693.  
**vest** with refl. pron., 146  
**vice** as prep., 711, 806.  
  
**view** in group-prep., 731 *f*.  
**view halloo** as interj., 831.  
**vigil** in verbal phrase, 115.  
**virtual** den. adv. not., 683.  
**virtue** in group-prep., 732.  
**visit** (v) kept in pres. tense, 253.  
**visit** (n) of variable asp., 313; — in verbal phrase, 394.  
**voluble** mod. agent-noun, 684.  
  
**wail** = *bewail*, 90.  
**wait** fol. by noun without prep., 31, 85, 805; — absorb. compl., 63; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85; — in trans. group-verb, 87; — con. with *over*, 88; — as imper., 202; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 783; — constr. with *for* + ger., 784.  
**wake** with dur. asp., 304; — with contin. asp., 307; — dif. conjug., 591.  
**walk** (v) in caus. mean., 7, 68, 70; — as quasi-trans., 30, 83; — absorb. prep., 83, 805; — in pas. voice, 84; — mod. by adv. adj., 84; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85; — in trans. group-verb, 86; — + prep. in pas. voice, 123 *f*.  
**walker** as interj., 830.  
**walker-alone**, 702.  
**wane** (n) in *in* (or *on*) *the wane*, 542 *f*.  
**want** (v) den. acces. notion of attr., 19, 37, 681; — gov. act. ger. with pas. mean., 67; — fol. by subord. stat., 178; — in Expanded Form, 343; — in *it wants* and *there wants*, 355; — fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean., 479; — fol. by (pro)noun + various verb. forms, 521; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 778.  
**wanted** with perf. inf., 445.  
**wanting** assum. funct. of adjunct. or prep., 521, 713.  
**ward(s)** as adv. suf., 613, 620.  
**warrant** (v) in adv. phrase, 690.  
**was** instead of *were*, 164, 594.  
**waste away** furn. with refl. pron., 157.  
**watch** (n) in *at* (or *on*) *the watch*, 542 *f*.

- way** in *to have a way of*, 309; — in neg. phrase, 676; — in group-prep., 732 *f*.
- way(s)** as adv. format., 614 *f*; — var. with *wise*, 614 *f*; — dispensing with *in*, 803.
- we** in hort. sent., 169.
- wear** (n) in *in wear*, 543.
- wear** (v) in pas. mean., 66; — with and without *not*, 679.
- wear away** absorb. refl. pron., 153.
- weather** dispensing with *in*, 803.
- weave** dif. conjug., 591.
- weep** furn. with effect. obj., 48, 82, 113; — = *bewep*, 90; — with ingres. asp., 295; — in Unexpanded Form, 323.
- weigh** absorb. obj., 61; — in verbal phrase, 115.
- weighing** in prep. funct., 713.
- well** in subst. funct., 49, 703; — in comp., 560 *f*, 638.
- well and truly** in adnom. funct., 700.
- well-being** as comp. ger., 495.
- well-looking** var. with *good-looking*, 540, 628.
- wend** as reg. and irreg. verb, 581.
- were** (to) as mod. verb, 10; — as aux. of cond. mood, 162; — in *as it were*, 164; — in subord. stat., 179; — as pret. subj., 179; — after *when(ever)*, 183; — after *if*, etc., 191, 196; — after (*al*)*though*, 196; — indicating futurity, 209; — fol. by perf. inf., 443.
- wert** instead of *wast*, 593.
- what** in adv. funct., 662 *f*; — fol. by part. *of*, 762.
- what(so)ever** fol. by part. *of*, 763.
- what-sort-of-tempered** as comp. adject., 562.
- when** (conj.) fol. by modal *shall*, 183; — fol. by modal *should*, 184; — originally an adv., 816.
- when** (adv. rel.) fol. by indic. or periphr. subj., 185.
- when** (adv.) in subst. funct., 704.
- whence** as disguised gen., 618; — as pron. adv., 653.
- whenever** fol. by modal *should*, 184.
- where** in subst., funct., 703 *f*.
- whereabout(s)** in subst. funct., 616, 704.
- whereby** as comp. adv. rel., 655.
- wherefore** as adv., 655; — in subst. funct., 704.
- wherein** as comp. adv. rel., 655.
- whereof** id., 655.
- where(up)on** id., 655 *f*.
- whereto** id., 655.
- wherewith(al)** id., 656.
- whether** fol. by subj., 197; — fol. by *shall*, 197; — in con. with *no(t)*, 675 *f*; — primarily an interrog. pron., 817.
- while** (conj.) in temp. cl., 325; — as noun in adv. adj., 658.
- whiles** as adv. gen., 612 *f*.
- whilom(e)** as adv. dat., 619.
- whimper** (n) in *on the whimper*, 543.
- whipper-in**, 702.
- whirling** as adject. part., 530.
- whispering** equiv. to *whispered*, 548.
- (a) **whit** prec. by *not*, 676.
- whiten** as trans. and intrans., 55.
- whither** as pron. adv., 652.
- wholesale** dispensing with *by*, 803.
- why** in subst. funct., 704.
- wi'** instead of *with*, 798.
- width** dispensing with *of*, 800.
- wide** in adv. funct., 636, 640, 643.
- will** as verb of incompl. pred., 19; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 680; — furn. with cogn. obj., 80; — comp. with *would* as down-toning verb, 174; — as tense-aux., 178, 184, 185, 190, 218 *ff*, 250; — in non-English English, 191, 220, 226, 228, 232, 233; — varying with *may*, 197; — in enclitic questions, 233; — in reported statements, 234 *ff*; — in reported questions, 238 *ff*; — in Elizabethan Eng., 241 *ff*; — in Authorized Version, 243 *f*; — expres. iter. asp., 309; — as a reg. verb, 407, 595 *ff*; — as anomalous verb, 595 *f*.

- willing** constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784 *f*.
- win** in caus. mean., 75.
- wind** (v) with refl. pron., 146; — dif. conjug., 592.
- wing** in verbal phrase, 115.
- wise** as adv. format., 648; — dispensing with *in*, 803.
- wish** as verb of incompl. pred., 18; den. acces. not. of attrib., 19, 37, 681; — in idle wish, 168, 175 *f*; — with dif. constr., 178; — implying futurity, 247; — in Expanded Form, 343; — with (pro)noun + *to* + inf., 431; — with (pro)noun + past part., 522; — with *for*-adjunct. + inf., 778, 783.
- wish** (n) constr. with *for* + ger., 785.
- wit** as pret. pres. verb, 595; — surviving in certain expr., 598 *f*.
- with** after pas. voice, 96 *f*; — + (pro)noun equiv. to adn. cl., 454; — not used as adv., 610, 806; — in group-prep., 717; — as significant prep., 760; — ousted by *for* before inf., 775; — varying with *by*, 96 *f*, 799.
- with** in pas. voice, 74.
- within** in *within the last few weeks*, etc., 261; — as adv., 807, 809.
- witness** (v) in hort. sent., 169.
- witness** (n) in *to call to witness*, 773.
- wonder** (n) in pas. mean., 138.
- wonder** (v) cor. to Dutch refl. verb, 144; — in Expanded Form, 343.
- wont** (v) = *to be wont*, 388, 600 *f*.
- word** in verbal phrases, 115, 119.
- work** in caus. mean., 70; — furn. with cogn. obj., 80; — + *for* (*towards*) in pas. voice, 117, 124; — dif. conjug., 592 *f*.
- world** in comp. 659; — in adv. phrase, 690.
- worse than** in prep. funct., 734.
- worsen** as trans. and intrans., 55.
- worth** (adj.) constr. without prep., 38, 339, 458, 759; — fol. by act. ger. with pas. mean., 480; — consid. as prep., 759.
- worth** (v) as isol. form, 601.
- worth while** fol. by *for*-adjunct + inf., or by *for* + ger., 779.
- worthy** req. compl., 38; — consid. as prep., 759.
- would** as mod. verb, 10; — den. acces. not. of attrib., 36, 580; — as aux. of cond. mood, 162 *ff*; — in idle wish, 168, 175 *f*; — in *Would (to) God!*, 169; — as cond., 170 *f*; — in apodosis of cond. sent., 172 *ff*; — softening down positiveness, 174; — in cond. cl., 193; — in conc. cl., 196; — varying with *might*, 197; — as tense-auxil., 209; instead of *should*, 226, 228, 232; — in *it would seem* (or *appear*), 230; — in enclitic questions, 233; — fol. by perf. inf., 442.
- wrapt** instead of *rapt*, 571.
- write** absorb. obj., 58, 61; — furn. with quasi-cogn. obj., 85; — + *about* (*to*) in pas. voice, 117, 124; — in pas. voice, 127; — in *as I write*, 325; — dif. conjug., 593; — constr. with *for*-adj. + inf., 784.
- written** as adjunct. part., 532.
- wrong** (n) in pas. mean., 138.
- wrong** (adj.) in adv. funct., 643.
- yea** as adv. of affirm., 674.
- yclept** as isol. form, 601.
- yes** as adv. of affirm., 673 *f*.
- yesterday** instead of *the day before*, 207.
- yield** + prep. in pas. voice, 117.
- you** as eth. dat., 29.

## Dutch.

- achterblijven** cor. to Eng. pas. verb, 102 *f*.
- afbranden** id., 102 *f*.
- baden** with or without refl. pron., 147.
- behoudens** as prep., 711.

- bewegen** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**blindelings** as adv. gen., 645.  
**buigen** id., 146.  
**bukken** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**daargelaten** in prep. funct., 711.  
**draaien** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**geschieden** cor. to Eng. pas. verb, 102.  
**keeren** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**klemmen** id., 147.  
**mocht** cor. to Eng. *should*, 192.  
**nabij** comp. with Eng. *near by*, 740.  
**omslaan** cor. to Eng. pas. verb, 102.  
**omwaaien** id., 102.  
**overblijven** id., 102.  
**rakelings** as adv. gen., 645.  
**sluiten** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**sneuvelen** cor. to Eng. pas. verb, 23, 102.  
**van** after a pas. voice, 96.  
**verdrinken** cor. to Eng. pas. voice, 102.  
**verpoozen** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**verzoeken** in pas. voice, 125.  
**wegwaaien** cor. to Eng. pas. voice, 102 *f*.  
**wennen** with or without refl. pron., 146.  
**wentelen** id., 146.  
**zelf** as emph. pron., 147.  
**zichzelf** as emph. refl. pron., 147.  
**zijdelings** as adv. gen., 645.  
**zwijgen** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.

## German.

- ausruhen** with or without refl. pron., 147.  
**durchaus** comp. with *throughout*, 748.  
**eilen** with or without refl. pron., 147.  
**endigen** id., 147.  
**erübrigen** id., 147.  
**finden** furn. with refl. pron., 158.  
**flüchten** with or without refl. pron., 147.  
**gebaren** id., 147.  
**irren** id., 147.  
**nahen** (näheren) id., 147.  
**schweigen** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**verbluten** with or without refl. pron., 147.  
**verlieren** id., 158.  
**verstehen** id., 158.  
**von** after pas. voice, 96.

## French.

- apprendre** with refl. pron., 158.  
**de** after pas. voice, 96.  
**employer** with refl. pron., 158.  
**naître** cor. to pas. verb. in Eng., 102 *f*.  
**nonobstant** as prep., 713.  
**oublier** with refl. pron., 158.  
**pendant** in prep. funct., 713.  
**semer** with refl. pron., 158.  
**trouver** id., 158.  
**vendre** id., 158.  
**vient de** cor. to certain funct. of Eng. Expanded Form, 327.



## Latin.

- adire** constr. with and without *ad*, 53.  
**æquum est** const. with ac. + inf., 780.  
**appellāri** cons. as cop., 7; — cons. as aux., 17.  
**arēre** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**calēre** id., 388.  
**celāre** trans. and intrans., 53.  
**cervus** mod. by gen. qual., 767.  
**Christus** in *ante Christum natum*, 503.  
**cœpisse** cons. as aux., 17.  
**condēre** in *post urbem conditam*, 503.  
**debēre** cons. as aux., 17.  
**decet** constr. with ac. + inf., 780.  
**desinēre** ib., 17.  
**desperāre** trans. or intrans., 53.  
**docēre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**dolēre** trans. or intrans., 53.  
**edocēre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**esurire** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**existimāri** cons. as aux., 17.  
**exsulāre** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**facere** in *post hoc factum*, 503.  
**flagitāre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**habēri** cons. as aux., 17.  
**interrogāre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**lætāri** trans. and intrans., 53.  
**liquēre** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**mecum** prep. after pron., 654.  
**memini** as a pres., 211.  
**nascor** in *ante Christum natum*, 503.  
**novi** as a pres., 211.  
**oportet** constr. with ac. + inf., 780.  
**orāre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**poscēre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**posse** cons. as aux., 17.  
**precāri** gov. two ac., 126.  
**quēri** trans. and intrans., 53.  
**quousque** prep. before pron., 654.  
**rogāre** gov. two ac., 126.  
**scripsi** perf. or pret., 211.  
**sēqui** trans. and intrans., 53.  
**silēre** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**solēre** cons. as aux., 17; — cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**sperāre** trans. and intrans., 53.  
**tacēre** cor. to cop. + nom. in Eng., 388.  
**tecum** prep. after pron., 654.  
**urbs** in *post urbem conditam*, 503.  
**velle** cons. as aux., 17.  
**vidēri** cons. as cop., 7; — cons. as aux., 17.  
**vir** mod. by gen. qual., 767.
-

H. POUTSMA,

# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH.

For the use of Continental, especially Dutch Students.

Part I. The Sentence. Section I The elements of the Sentence.

Second edition in the press.

Part I. The Sentence. Section II The composite Sentence . . . . . f 4.25

Part II. The Parts of speech.

Section I A. Nouns, Adjectives and Articles . . . . . f 8.75. Cloth - 10.—

Section I B. Pronouns and Numerals . . . . . - 10.25. Cloth - 11 50

Section II. The Verb and the Particles . . . . . - 16.50. Cloth - 18.—

---

"Mr. Poutsma has an immense knowledge of modern English — which he writes like a native. The most striking feature of his work is the copious wealth of examples, drawn chiefly from the great writers of the nineteenth century, with which it is illustrated. (The Spectator.)

"Poutsma hat sich durch die veröfentlichung des 1. teiles seines "Grammar of Late Modern English" einen guten namen und grosze verdienste um die erforschung des neuenglischen erworben. Begreiflich ist daher, dasz die fortsetzung seines werkes mit groszer spannung erwartet wurde; nunmehr liegt ein teil vor, die die syntax des nomens (des attributiven nomens, genitivs, plurals) des adjektivums und des artikels (bestimmten wie unbestimmten) behandelt. Auch in dem neuen band offenbaren sich die vorzüge des verfassers: eine vollständigkeit und ein reichum der belege, wie wir sie uns für wissenschaftliche zwecke nicht idealer denken können; ein blick für das besondere und charakteristische, der gerade gegenüber dem neuenglischen notwendig ist; ferner eine generelle schulung in sprachlichen dingen. Alle diese eigenschaften machen die arbeit Poutsma's zu einer erfreulichen lektüre und fundgrube wissenschaftlicher forschung. Dabei ist besonders zu begrüenzen, dasz der verfasser die belegstellen im einzelnen genau angegeben hat.

Hoffen wir, dasz es Poutsma, dem ausgezeichneten kenner des neuenglischen, vergönnt sein wird, sein grosz angelegtes unternehmen zu einem glücklichen ende zu führen."

M. DEUTSCHBEIN.

(Neuere Sprachen.)

"Das ganze werk ist nichts weniger als eine vorführung des ganzen englischen sprachmaterials in allen seinen verschiedenen anwendungen. Man wird kaum einen einzigen ausdruck in der gesamten englischen literatur von Shakespeare ab nennen können, der nicht seinen bestimmten platz in dieser grammatik fände, und somit kann das buch als die genaueste und vollständigste darstellung der englischen sprachlehre, die wir bisher besitzen, bezeichnet werden. Man wird schwerlich etwas hinzufügen können."

A. WESTERN.

(Anglia.)

... Man hat gesagt, wie es unmöglich ist, das Meer auszuschöpfen und auf Flaschen zu ziehen, so sei es unmöglich, eine lebende Sprache in allen ihren Eigentümlichkeiten zu erfassen und in Regeln zu bringen. Die Reichhaltigkeit, ja Ueberfülle der Belege, die Poutsma für das Englisch der letzten sechs bis sieben Jahrzehnte, aber sehr ausgiebig zurückgreifend bis auf Addison, Pope, Shakespeare und the Authorised Version, gibt, und die Feingliederichkeit des Schema's in das er sie bringt, lassen einen diese Erkenntnis fast vergessen. Es macht sein groszes werk, dessen vorhergehende Teile hier 1906 und 1914 angezeigt wurden, zu einer Schatzkammer des modernen Englischen Sprachgebrauchs, die uns geschicht gearbeitete indices in allen ihren Teilen schnell erschliessen. Wir haben in ihm ein Nachschlagebuch dem an vollständigkeit nichts gleichzustellen ist.

Neuphilologische Blätter, Dec.—Jan. 1919/20.













IMPORTED AND DISTRIBUTED BY

JAPAN PUBLICATIONS TRADING CO.

ROLLAND, VERMONT, U.S.A.



PE Poutsma, Hendrik  
1105 A grammar of late modern  
P6 English 2d ed.  
1928  
v.5

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

